HOLT McDOUGAL
a division of Houghton Mifflin Harcourt

NEW YORK



United States History

and New York History: Beginnings to 1877

William Deverell
Deborah Gray White

HOLT McDOUGAL
a division of Houghton Mifflin Harcourt

Copyright © 2009 by Holt McDougal, a division of Houghton Mifflin Harcourt Publishing Company. All rights reserved.

Warning: All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without the prior written permission of Holt McDougal unless such copying is expressly permitted by federal copyright law. With the exception of not-for-profit transcription in Braille, Holt McDougal is not authorized to grant permission for further uses of copyrighted selections reprinted in this text without the permission of their owners. Permission must be obtained from the individual copyright owners.

Requests for permission to make copies of any part of the work should be mailed to the following address: Permissions Department, Holt McDougal, 10801 N. MoPac Expressway, Building 3, Austin, Texas 78759.

For acknowledgments, see page R124, which is an extension of the copyright page.

HOLT McDOUGAL is a trademark of Houghton Mifflin Harcourt Publishing Company.

Printed in the United States of America

If you have received these materials as examination copies free of charge, Holt McDougal retains title to the materials and they may not be resold. Resale of examination copies is strictly prohibited.

Possession of this publication in print format does not entitle users to convert this publication, or any portion of it, into electronic format.

ISBN 13: 978-0-55-402462-2

ISBN 10: 0-55-402462-4

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 048 11 10 09 08

Program Consultants

Contributing Author

Kylene Beers, Ed.D.
Senior Reading Advisor to Secondary Schools
Teachers College Reading and Writing Project
Columbia University
New York City, New York

A former middle school teacher, Dr. Beers has turned her commitment to helping struggling readers into the major focus of her research, writing, speaking, and teaching. She is the former editor of the National Council of Teachers of English (NCTE) literacy journal *Voices from the Middle*. Currently serving NCTE as vice president, she will assume the presidency in 2008. Her published works include *When Kids Can't Read: What Teachers Can Do* (Heinemann, 2002).

General Editor

Frances Marie Gipson
Secondary Literacy
Los Angeles Unified School District
Los Angeles, California

In her current position, Frances Gipson guides reform work for secondary instruction and supports its implementation. She has designed curriculum at the district, state, and national levels. Her leadership of a coaching collaborative with Subject Matter Projects of the University of California at Los Angeles evolved from her commitment to rigorous instruction and to meeting the needs of diverse learners.

Senior Literature and Writing Specialist

Carol Jago
English Department Chairperson
Santa Monica High School
Santa Monica, California

An English teacher at the middle and high school levels for 26 years, Carol Jago also directs the reading and literature project at UCLA and writes a weekly education column for the Los Angeles Times. She has been published in numerous professional journals and has authored several books, including *Cohesive Writing: Why Concept is Not Enough* (Boynton/Cook, 2002).

Consultants

Martha H. Ball, M.A.
Religion Consultant
Utah 3Rs Project Director
Utah State Office of Education
Salt Lake City, Utah

John Ferguson, M.T.S., J.D.
Senior Religion Consultant
Assistant Professor
Political Science/Criminal Justice
Howard Payne University
Brownwood, Texas

J. Frank Malaret
Senior Consultant
Dean, Downtown and West Sacramento Outreach Centers
Sacramento City College
Sacramento, California

Kimberly A. Plummer, M.A.
Senior Consultant
History-Social Science Educator/Advisor
Holt, Rinehart & Winston

Galit Reichlin
Associate Director
Middle Eastern Affairs and International Analysis
Anti-Defamation League
(Reviewed Chapter 30 for Middle East content)

Andrés Reséndez, Ph.D.
Senior Consultant,
Assistant Professor
Department of History
University of California at Davis
Davis, California

Program Consultants

Contributing Author

Kylene Beers, Ed.D.
Senior Reading Researcher
School Development Program
Yale University
New Haven, Connecticut

A former middle school teacher, Dr. Beers has turned her commitment to helping struggling readers into the major focus of her research, writing, speaking, and teaching. She is the current editor of the National Council of Teachers of English literacy journal *Voices from the Middle* and the author of *When Kids Can't Read: What Teachers Can Do* (Heinemann, 2002).

General Editor

Frances Marie Gipson
Secondary Literacy
Los Angeles Unified School District
Los Angeles, California

In her current position, Frances Gipson guides reform work for secondary instruction and supports its implementation. She has designed curriculum at the district, state, and national levels. Her leadership of a coaching collaborative with Subject Matter Projects of the University of California at Los Angeles evolved from her commitment to rigorous instruction and to meeting the needs of diverse learners.

Senior Literature and Writing Specialist

Carol Jago
English Department Chairperson
Santa Monica High School
Santa Monica, California

An English teacher at the middle and high school levels for 26 years, Carol Jago also directs the reading and literature project at UCLA and writes a weekly education column for the Los Angeles Times. She has been published in numerous professional journals and has authored several books, including *Cohesive Writing: Why Concept is Not Enough* (Boynton/Cook, 2002).

New York Program Advisors

Tim Backus
K-12 Supervisor of Social Studies
Colonie Central High School
Albany, New York

Ann-Jean Paci
Retired Assistant Principal
Social Studies Department
Sheepshead Bay High School
Brooklyn, New York

Anthony Powell
Social Studies Department Chair
Edmund Miles Middle School
Amityville, New York

Walter Robertson
Social Studies Department Chair
Dunkirk High School
Dunkirk, New York

Bob Van Amburgh
Instructional Supervisor
City School District of Albany
Albany, New York



Consultants

Martha H. Ball, M.A.
Religion Consultant
Utah 3Rs Project Director
Utah State Office of Education
Salt Lake City, Utah

John Ferguson, M.T.S., J.D.
Senior Religion Consultant
Assistant Professor
Political Science/Criminal Justice
Howard Payne University
Brownwood, Texas

J. Frank Malaret
Senior Consultant
Dean, Downtown and West Sacramento Outreach Centers
Sacramento City College
Sacramento, California

Kimberly A. Plummer, M.A.
Senior Consultant
History-Social Science Educator/Advisor
Holt, Rinehart & Winston

Galit Reichlin
Associate Director
Middle Eastern Affairs and International Analysis
Anti-Defamation League
(Reviewed Chapter 30 for Middle East content)

Andrés Reséndez, Ph.D.
Senior Consultant,
Assistant Professor
Department of History
University of California at Davis
Davis, California

CHAPTER 3 The English Colonies

(1605–1774) 68

Reading Social Studies *Vocabulary Clues* 70

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Freedom of Religion

Section 1 The Southern Colonies 72

Section 2 The New England Colonies 78

Section 3 The Middle Colonies 85

History and Geography *America's Growth, 1760* 88

Section 4 Life in the English Colonies 90

Section 5 Conflict in the Colonies 98

Social Studies Skills *Interpreting Time Lines* 104

Chapter Review 105

Standardized Test Practice 107

CHAPTER 4 The American Revolution

(1774–1783) 108

Reading Social Studies *Main Ideas in Social Studies* 110

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Being Able to Choose Your Own Government

Section 1 The Revolution Begins 112

Section 2 Declaring Independence 118

Historic Document *The Declaration of Independence* 122

Section 3 Struggle for Liberty 126

Section 4 Independence! 135

Social Studies Skills *Understanding Historical Interpretation* 140

Chapter Review 141

Standardized Test Practice 143

Writing Workshop A Biographical Narrative 144





Contents

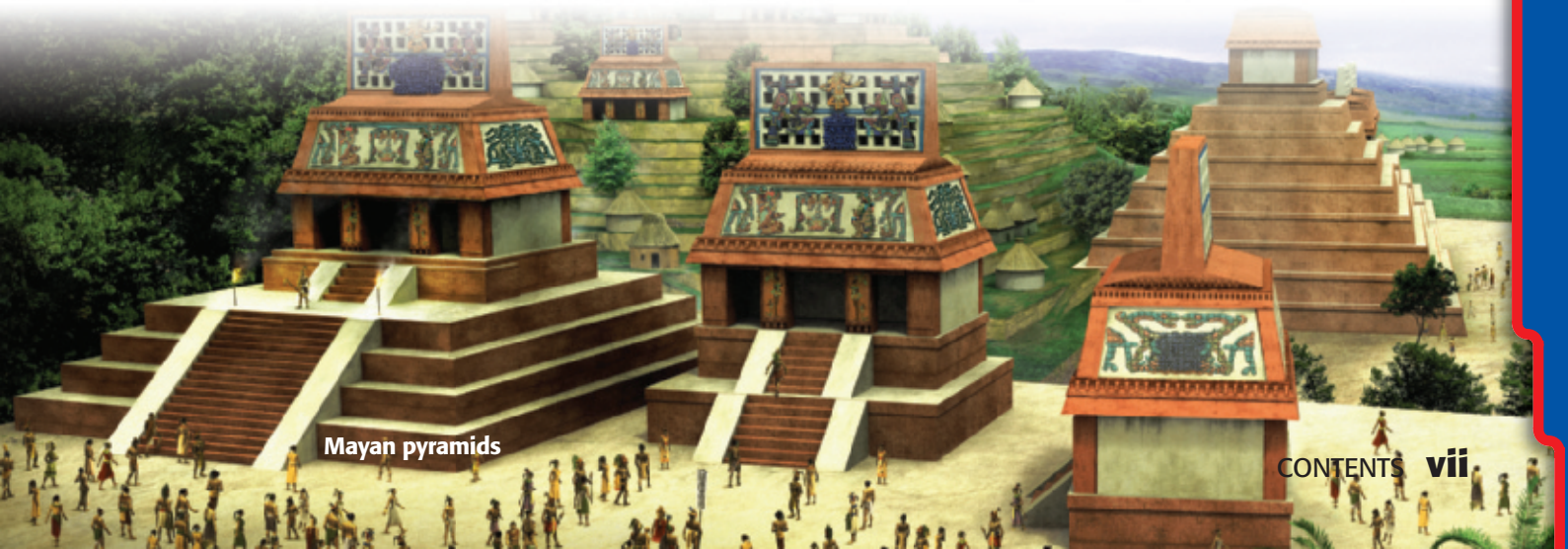
New York Standards ST1
Reading Like a Historian H1
Reading Social Studies H10
Geography and Map Skills H14
How to Make This Book Work for You H26
A Review of New York History NY1

UNIT 1 Our Colonial Heritage (Beginnings–1783) 1

CHAPTER 1 The World before the Opening of the Atlantic (Beginnings–1500) 2
Reading Social Studies *Specialized Vocabulary of Social Studies* 4
History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of the Global Economy
Section 1 The Earliest Americans 6
Focus on New York 8
Section 2 Native American Cultures 10
Focus on New York 14
Focus on New York City 15
Section 3 Trading Kingdoms of West Africa 16
Section 4 Europe before Transatlantic Travel 22
Focus on New York 24
Case Study: History and Geography *The Black Death* 28
Social Studies Skills *Interpreting Diagrams* 30
Chapter Review 31
Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 33



Algonquian basket



Mayan pyramids

CHAPTER 2 **New Empires in the Americas (1400–1750)** 34

Reading Social Studies *Outlining and History* 36

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Different Cultures

Section 1 **Europeans Set Sail** 38

Section 2 **Europeans Reach the Americas** 42

Section 3 **Spain Builds an Empire** 46

Section 4 **The Race for Empires** 52

Focus on New York 54

Focus on New York City 55

Focus on New York City 57

Section 5 **Beginnings of Slavery in the Americas** 58

Case Study: History and Geography *The Atlantic Slave Trade* 62

Social Studies Skills *Framing Historical Questions* 64

Chapter Review 65

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 67

CHAPTER 3 **The English Colonies (1605–1774)** 68

Reading Social Studies *Vocabulary Clues* 70

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Freedom of Religion

Section 1 **The Southern Colonies** 72

Section 2 **The New England Colonies** 78

Section 3 **The Middle Colonies** 85

Focus on New York 86

Focus on New York City 87

Case Study: History and Geography *America's Growth, 1760* 88

Section 4 **Life in the English Colonies** 90

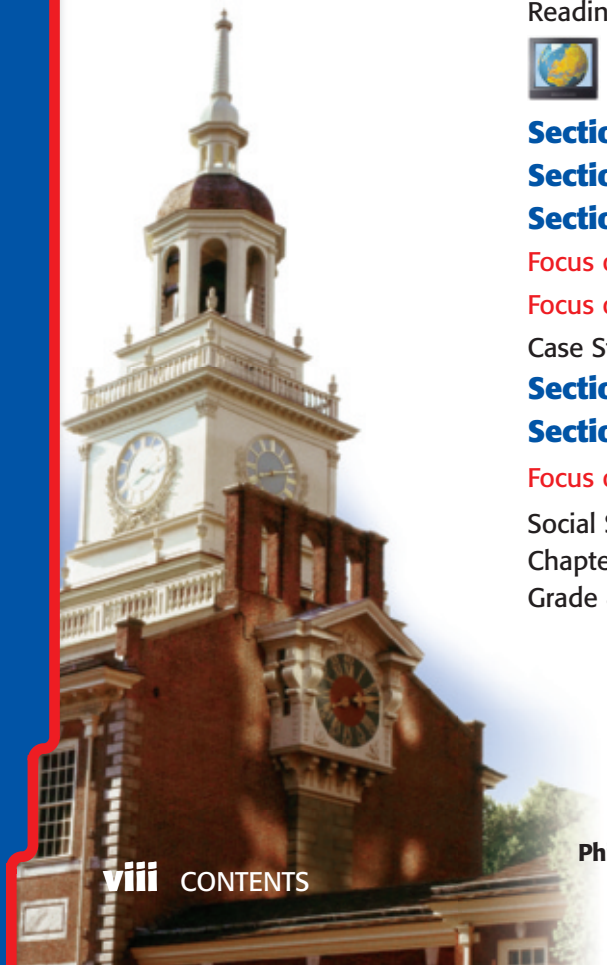
Section 5 **Conflict in the Colonies** 98

Focus on New York City 100

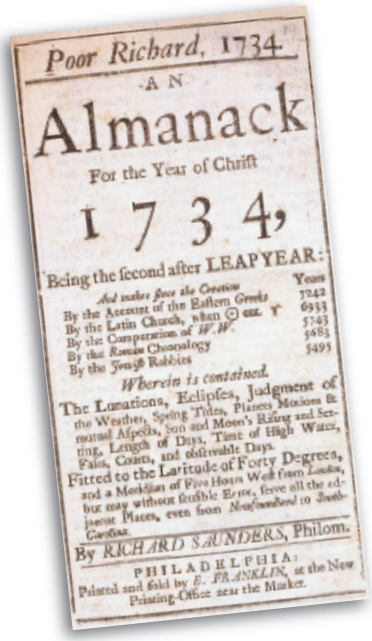
Social Studies Skills *Interpreting Time Lines* 104

Chapter Review 105

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 107



Philadelphia's Independence Hall


Poor Richard, 1734.
AN
Almanack
For the Year of Chriſt
1734,
Being the ſecond after LEAPYEAR:
Wherein is contained
The Lunations, Eclipſes, Judgment of the Weather, Spring Tides, Planets Motions & mutual Aſpects, Sun and Moon's Riſing and Setting, Length of Days, Time of High Water, Fairs, Courts, and obſervable Days.
Fitted to the Latitude of Forty Degrees, and a Meridian of Five Hours Weſt from London, but may without ſenſible Error, ſerve all the adjacent Places, even from Newfoundland to South-Carolina.
By RICHARD SAUNDERS, Philom.
PHILADELPHIA:
Printed and ſold by B. FRANKLIN, at the New Printing-Office near the Market.

Benjamin Franklin's almanac

CHAPTER 4 The American Revolution

(1774–1783) 108

Reading Social Studies *Main Ideas in Social Studies* 110

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Being Able to Choose Your Own Government

Section 1 The Revolution Begins 112

Section 2 Declaring Independence 118

Historic Document *The Declaration of Independence* 122

Section 3 The Struggle for Liberty 126

Focus on New York City 128

Section 4 Independence! 135

Social Studies Skills *Understanding Historical Interpretation* 140

Chapter Review 141

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 143

Document-Based Question: New Colonies, New Nations 144

UNIT 2 A New Nation (1777–1800) 146

CHAPTER 5 Forming a Government

(1777–1791) 148

Reading Social Studies *Understanding Chronological Order* 150

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Adding New States

Section 1 The Articles of Confederation 152

Case Study: History and Geography *Origins of the Constitution* 156

Section 2 The New Nation Faces Challenges 158

Section 3 Creating the Constitution 163

Focus on New York 164

Section 4 Ratifying the Constitution 170

Focus on New York City 172

Social Studies Skills *Determining Different Points of View* 174

Chapter Review 175

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 177



CHAPTER 6 **Citizenship and the Constitution (1787–Present)** 178

Reading Social Studies *Summarizing Historical Texts* 180

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of the Bill of Rights

Section 1 **Understanding the Constitution** 182

Historic Document *The Constitution* 188

Focus on New York 188

Section 2 **The Bill of Rights** 216

Section 3 **Rights and Responsibilities of Citizenship** 222

Focus on New York City 224

Social Studies Skills *Determining the Context of Statements* 226

Chapter Review 227

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 229

CHAPTER 7 **Launching the Nation (1789–1800)** 230

Reading Social Studies *Inferences about History* 232

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Political Parties

Section 1 **Washington Leads a New Nation** 234

Focus on New York City 236

Section 2 **Hamilton and National Finances** 238

Section 3 **Challenges for the New Nation** 243

Focus on New York City 245

Section 4 **John Adams's Presidency** 250

Social Studies Skills *Making Group Decisions* 254

Chapter Review 255

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 257

Document-Based Question: Shaping a New Nation 258



UNIT 3 The New Republic (1800–1855) 260

CHAPTER 8 The Jefferson Era (1800–1815) ... 262

Reading Social Studies *Public Documents in History* 264

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Expanding Frontiers

Section 1 Jefferson Becomes President 266

Section 2 The Louisiana Purchase 272

Focus on New York City 273

Focus on New York 275

Section 3 The Coming of War 278

Section 4 The War of 1812 284

Case Study: History and Geography *America's Growth, 1820* 288

Social Studies Skills *Working in Groups to Solve Issues* 290

Chapter Review 291

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 293

CHAPTER 9 A New National Identity (1812–1830) 294

Reading Social Studies *Bias and Historical Events* 296

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of the United States on Its Neighbors

Section 1 American Foreign Policy 298

Section 2 Nationalism and Sectionalism 302

Focus on New York 303

Case Study: History and Geography *The Erie Canal* 306

Section 3 American Culture 308

Focus on New York 309

Social Studies Skills *Identifying Central Issues* 314

Chapter Review 315

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 317



Cannon at Fort Niagara, New York

CHAPTER 10 The Age of Jackson

(1828–1840) 318

Reading Social Studies *Drawing Conclusions about the Past* 320

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Native American Reservations

Section 1 Jacksonian Democracy 322

Focus on New York City 324

Section 2 Jackson's Administration 326

Section 3 Indian Removal 332

Case Study: History and Geography *The Indian Removal Treaties* 336

Social Studies Skills *Solving Problems* 338

Chapter Review 339

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 341

CHAPTER 11 Expanding West (1800–1855) 342

Reading Social Studies *Vocabulary in Context* 344

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of the California Gold Rush

Section 1 Trails to the West 346

Focus on New York City 347

Section 2 The Texas Revolution 350

Section 3 The Mexican–American War 354

Focus on New York 358

Section 4 The California Gold Rush 364

Case Study: History and Geography *America's Growth, 1850* 370

Social Studies Skills *Interpreting Maps: Expansion* 372

Chapter Review 373

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 375

Document-Based Question: The Young Republic 376

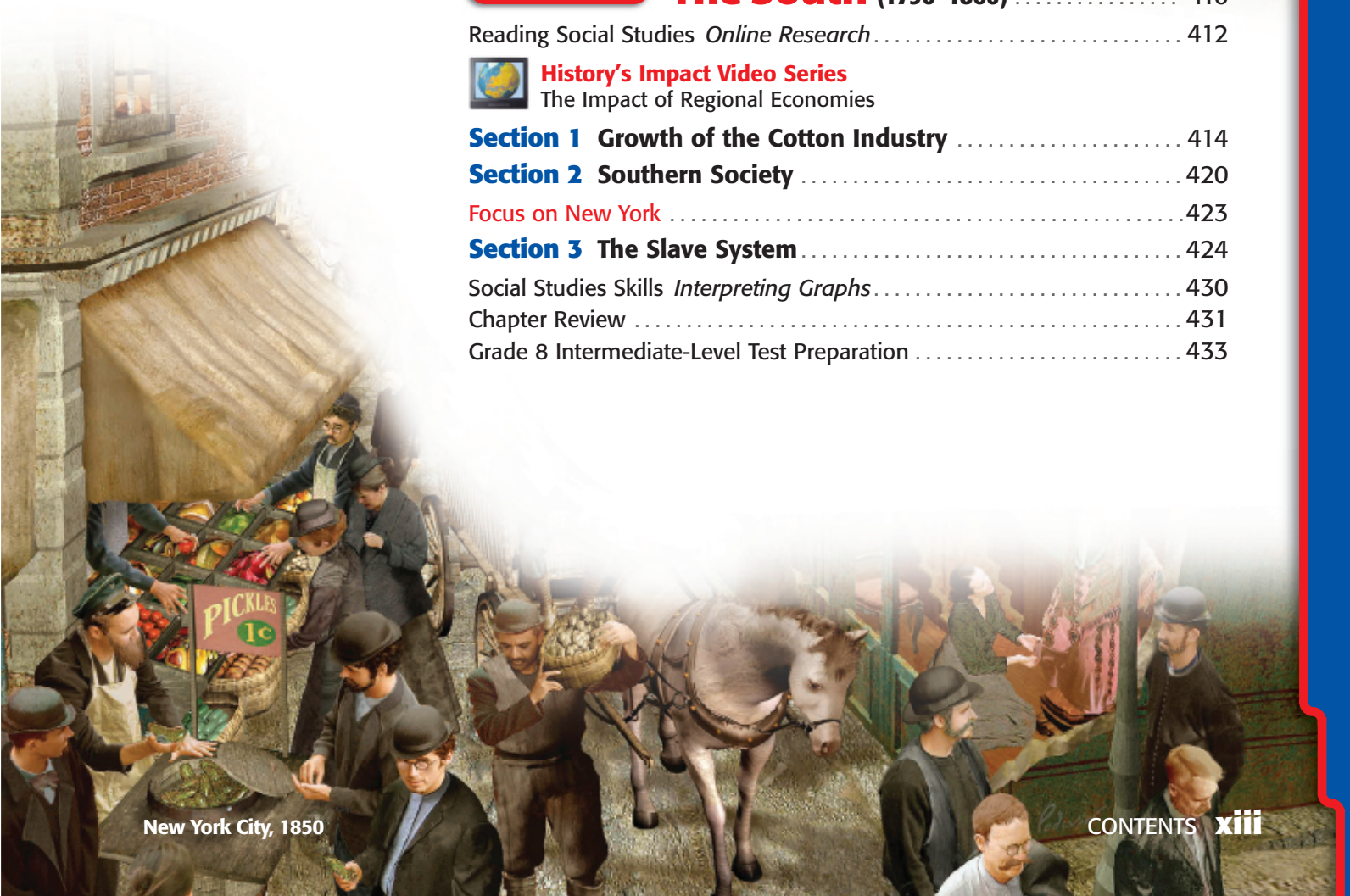


Andrew Jackson

UNIT 4 The Nation Expands (1790–1860) 378

CHAPTER 12 The North (1790–1860) 380
Reading Social Studies *Causes and Effects in History* 382
History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Mass Transportation
Section 1 The Industrial Revolution in America 384
Section 2 Changes in Working Life 390
Section 3 The Transportation Revolution 396
Focus on New York 397
Focus on New York City 398
Section 4 More Technological Advances 402
Focus on New York 404
Social Studies Skills *Personal Conviction and Bias* 406
Chapter Review 407
Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 409

CHAPTER 13 The South (1790–1860) 410
Reading Social Studies *Online Research* 412
History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Regional Economies
Section 1 Growth of the Cotton Industry 414
Section 2 Southern Society 420
Focus on New York 423
Section 3 The Slave System 424
Social Studies Skills *Interpreting Graphs* 430
Chapter Review 431
Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 433



New York City, 1850

CHAPTER 14 **New Movements in America (1815–1850)** 434
Reading Social Studies *Information and Propaganda* 436

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of Individual Rights and Beliefs
Section 1 **Immigrants and Urban Challenges** 438
Section 2 **American Arts** 443
Section 3 **Reforming Society** 448
Focus on New York City 449
Focus on New York City 450
Section 4 **The Movement to End Slavery** 454
Focus on New York 456
Focus on New York 458
Section 5 **Women's Rights** 461
Social Studies Skills *Accepting Social Responsibility* 468
Chapter Review 469
Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 471

CHAPTER 15 **A Divided Nation (1848–1860)** 472
Reading Social Studies *Fact, Opinions, and the Past* 474

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of States' Rights
Section 1 **The Debate over Slavery** 476
Section 2 **Trouble in Kansas** 483
Focus on New York 485
Section 3 **Political Divisions** 488
Section 4 **The Nation Divides** 493
Focus on New York City 495
Social Studies Skills *Assessing Primary and Secondary Sources* 498
Chapter Review 499
Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 501
Document-Based Question: A Divided Nation 502

UNIT 5 The Nation Breaks Apart (1861–1877) 504

CHAPTER 16 The Civil War (1861–1865) 506

Reading Social Studies *Supporting Facts and Details* 508

History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of the Civil War

Section 1 The War Begins 510

Focus on New York 515

Section 2 The War in the East 516

Section 3 The War in the West 522

Case Study: History and Geography *The Vicksburg Strategy* 526

Section 4 Daily Life during the War 528

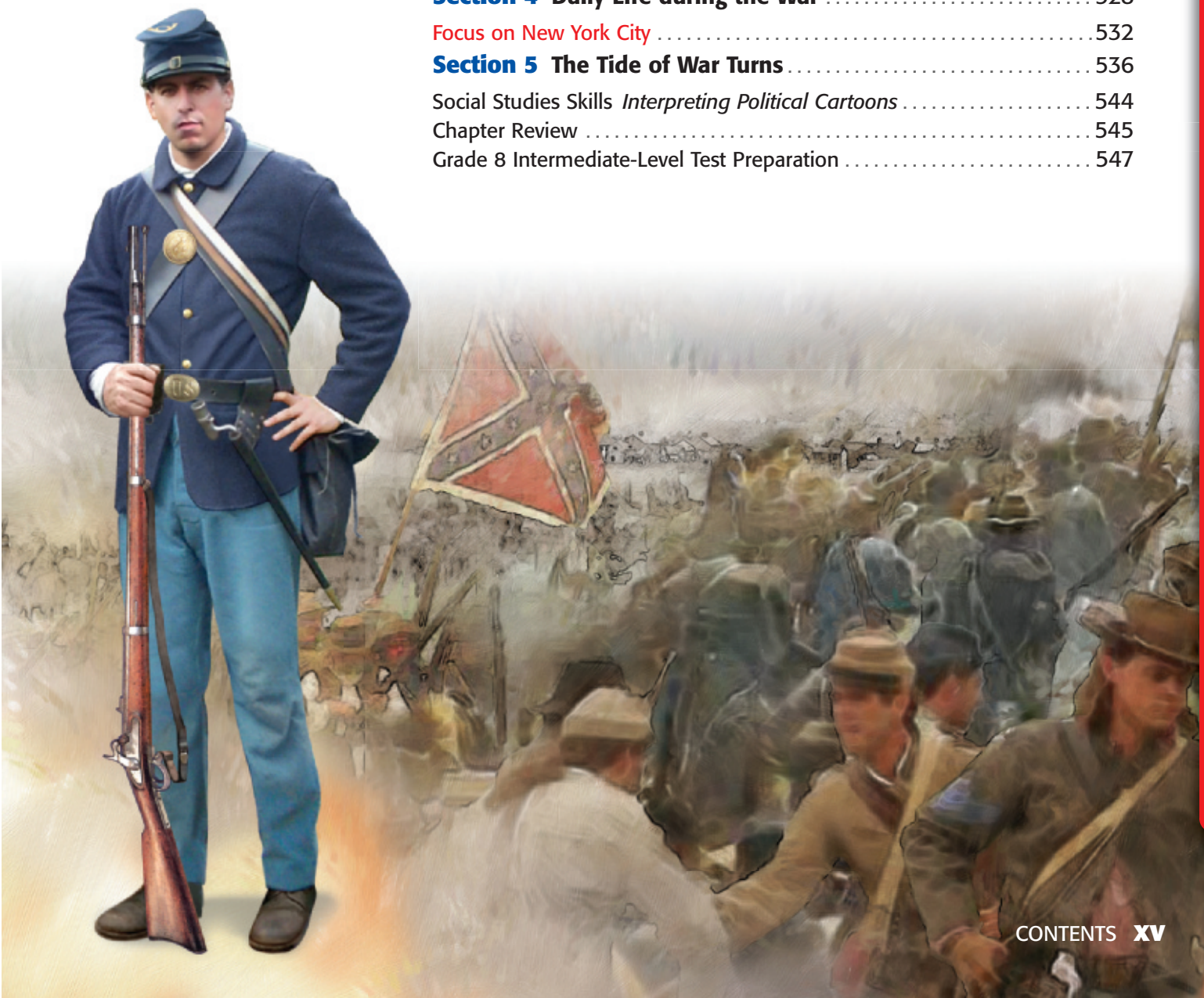
Focus on New York City 532

Section 5 The Tide of War Turns 536

Social Studies Skills *Interpreting Political Cartoons* 544

Chapter Review 545

Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 547



CHAPTER 17 **Reconstruction (1865–1877)** 548
Reading Social Studies *Analyzing Historical Information* 550
History's Impact Video Series
The Impact of the Preservation of the Union
Section 1 **Rebuilding the South** 552
Focus on New York City 557
Section 2 **The Fight over Reconstruction** 558
Focus on New York 561
Section 3 **Reconstruction in the South** 564
Social Studies Skills *Chance, Oversight, and Error in History* 572
Chapter Review 573
Grade 8 Intermediate-Level Test Preparation 575
Document-Based Question: A Nation Torn Apart 576

Reference Section

Atlas R2
New York State Maps R14
New York State Facts R16
New York City Facts R18
Gazetteer R20
Presidents of the United States R25
Facts about the States R30
The American Flag R32
Supreme Court Decisions R34
New York State Constitution R46
Historic Documents R70
Biographical Dictionary R81
Glossary R90
Index R109
Credits and Acknowledgments R124



Statue of Liberty, New York City

Features

History Close-up

See how people lived and how places looked in the past by taking a close–up view of history.

The Caravel 39
Plymouth Colony 81
Battle of Yorktown 137
Ranch Life 356
Life of a Mill Girl 393
A Southern Plantation 421
New York City, Mid-1800s 441
Fort Sumter 511

CASE STUDY Biographies

Meet the people who have influenced history and learn about their lives.

Mansa Musa 21
Anne Hutchinson 82
William Penn 86
Olaudah Equiano 93
Pontiac 97
George Washington 117
Benjamin Franklin 169
James Madison 187
Benjamin Banneker 240
Thomas Jefferson 271
Henry Clay 304
Andrew Jackson 325
Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo 357
Samuel F. B. Morse 403
Horace Mann 451
Frederick Douglass 460
Elizabeth Cady Stanton 467
Abraham Lincoln 535
Robert E. Lee 519
David Farragut 523
Ulysses S. Grant 527

CASE STUDY History and Geography

Explore the relationships between history and geography.

The Black Death 28
The Atlantic Slave Trade 62
America's Growth, 1760 88
Origins of the Constitution 156
America's Growth, 1820 288
The Erie Canal 306
The Indian Removal Treaties 336
America's Growth, 1850 370
The Vicksburg Strategy 525

The Impact Today

Understand how events from the past have had an impact on our world today.

Mosques 19
Greek Scholars 23
Printing 27
Roman Catholicism 50
Brazil 60
Fishing in New England 83
Public Schools 84
New York City 86
Interdependence 92
Independence Day 119
Women in the Military 127
Townships 155



THE IMPACT TODAY, continued

Unicameral Legislature 165
Congress's Salary 173
Homeland Security 185
Supreme Court Rulings 186
Free-Speech Protection 217
New York Stock Exchange 237
Washington, D.C. 240
U.S. Mint 241
Jefferson Memorial 268
"The Star-Spangled Banner" 286
Florida 299
Presidential Elections 323
Modern-Day Cherokee 334
Cinco de Mayo 362
California 368
Foreign Dependence 389
Labor Unions 394
Time Zones 399
Inventions 405
Patent Laws 415
Port of New Orleans 417
Musical Influence 427
Immigration 439
Graded Textbooks 450
Women's Wages 465
Third Parties 477
Political Debates 491
Civil War Re-enactors 517
The *Monitor* 521
American Red Cross 534
Voting Rights Act 563

LINKING TO TODAY

Link people and events from the past to the world you live in today.

Music from Senegal to Memphis 19
Armored Warfare 47
Native Americans and the Commerce Clause 193
The Louisiana Purchase 277
Democracy in Action 323
Mexican Americans Today 362
Modern Manufacturing 388
Battlefield Communications 533

QUICK FACTS

Examine key facts and concepts quickly and easily with graphics.

Democracy and Republic 23
Chapter 1 Visual Summary 31
Causes and Effects of the Discovery of a Sea Route to Asia 40
Reasons for Spanish Victory 48
Chapter 2 Visual Summary 65
Church and State 82
Characteristics of the Middle Colonies 86
The Road to Revolution 102
Chapter 3 Visual Summary 105
Chapter 4 Visual Summary 141
Weaknesses of the Articles of Confederation 162
The Great Compromise 165
The Constitution Strengthens the National Government 168
Federalist vs. Antifederalists 171
Chapter 5 Visual Summary 175
Separation of Powers 183
Checks and Balances 184
Federal Office Terms and Requirements 190
Federal Judicial System 199
Federalism 201
Amending the U.S. Constitution 202
Chapter 6 Visual Summary 227
Hamilton's Economic Plan 239
Chapter 7 Visual Summary 255
The Election of 1800 267
Analyzing the War of 1812 287
Chapter 8 Visual Summary 291
Chapter 9 Visual Summary 315
Regions of the United States, Early 1800s 327
Chapter 10 Visual Summary 339
Westward Movement in the United States 368
Chapter 11 Visual Summary 373
Chapter 12 Visual Summary 407

Chapter 13 Visual Summary 431
Push-Pull Factors of Immigration 439
Chapter 14 Visual Summary 469
Upsetting the Balance 477
A Growing Conflict 490
Chapter 15 Visual Summary 499
North Versus South 512
Chapter 16 Visual Summary 545
The Reconstruction Amendments 562
Hopes Raised and Denied 569
Chapter 17 Visual Summary 573

Charts, Graphs, and Tables

Analyze information presented visually to learn more about history.

CHARTS

Slave Populations In the Colonies 76
Amending the U.S. Constitution 202
Urban vs. Rural Population, 1790 236
Total Debt 239
San Francisco Population, 1847–1850 369
Upstream River Rates 397
U.S. Cotton Production, 1800–1860 416
Resources of the North and South 513

INFOGRAPHICS

Analyze and interpret information from graphics.

Iroquois Longhouse 14
Ghana Salt Trade 17
Trading Centers 26
The Black Death 28
The Caravel 39
The Columbian Exchange 45
The Atlantic Slave Trade 62
Southern Wealth 75
Plymouth Colony 81
America's Growth, 1760 88
The Great Awakening 94
Voice of Protest 99
Declaration of Independence 121
Crossing the Delaware 128
Swamp Fox 136
Battle of Yorktown 137
Women's Suffrage 153
Origins of the Constitution 156
A Farmer Leads a Revolt 160
Signing of the Constitution 164
How a Bill Becomes a Law 192
Responsibilities of Citizens 224
The First Cabinet 235
A Rural Nation 236
Fighting in the Northwest Territory 246
The Journey West 274
The USS *Constitution* 279
Analyzing the War of 1812 287
America's Growth, 1820 288
The Erie Canal 306
American Arts 308
Regions of the United States, Early 1800s 327
Indian Removal 333
The Indian Removal Treaties 336
Settling Texas 351
The Texas Revolution 352
Manifest Destiny 355
Ranch Life 356
Battle of Buena Vista 361
"Gold Fever" 365
Staking a Claim 367
America's Growth, 1850 370
Textile Mill and Water Frame 385
Elements of Mass Production 386
Life of a Mill Girl 393
The Steam Train 398
Cotton Gin 415
The South's Cotton Economy 418
A Southern Plantation 421
Free African Americans in the South 422
A Slave's Daily Life 426
Push-Pull Factors of Immigration 439
New York City, Mid-1800s 441
Art of the Romantic Movement 444
Reform Movements 449
Fort Sumter 511
Union and Confederate Soldiers 514
The Vicksburg Strategy 526
Surrender at Appomattox 543

TIME LINES

See how key events are related in time.

The World before the Opening of the Atlantic . . 2
Key Events in Europe 24
New Empires in the Americas 34
Key Events in European History 52
The English Colonies 68
The American Revolution 108
The Patriots Gain Ground 130
Forming a Government 148
Citizenship and the Constitution 178
Amendments to the U.S. Constitution 206
Launching the Nation 230
The Struggle for Neutrality 244
The Jefferson Era 262
The Journey West 274
America's Road to War 280
A New National Identity 294
American Arts 308
The Age of Jackson 318
Supreme Court and Capitalism 331
Expanding West 342
The North 380
American Inventions 402
The South 410
New Movements In America 434
Women's Rights 462
A Divided Nation 472
The Civil War 506
Three Days at Gettysburg 537
Reconstruction 548

Points of View

See how different people have interpreted historical issues in different ways.

Choosing Sides 119
Compromise and the Slave Trade 166
Role of a Citizen 241
Views of War 282
States' Rights vs. the Union 329

Historical Documents

Examine key documents that have shaped U.S. history.

The Mayflower Compact 79
The Declaration of Independence 122
Federalist Paper No. 10 172
The Constitution of the United States 188
Washington's Farewell Address 248
Jefferson's Inaugural Address 268
The Monroe Doctrine 300

Literature in History

Learn about the beliefs and experiences of people who lived in other times and places through literature pieces.

Literature of the American Frontier 312
Literature of the Young Nation: Romanticism and Realism 446
Antislavery Literature from *Uncle Tom's Cabin* 482

Social Studies Skills

Learn, practice, and apply the skills you need to study and analyze history.

Interpreting Diagrams 30
Framing Historical Questions 64
Interpreting Time Lines 104
Understanding Historical Interpretation 140
Determining Different Points of View 174
Determining the Context of Statements 226
Making Group Decisions 254
Working In Groups to Solve Issues 290
Identifying Central Issues 314
Solving Problems 338
Interpreting Maps: Expansion 372
Personal Conviction and Bias 406
Interpreting Graphs 430
Accepting Social Responsibility 468
Assessing Primary and Secondary Sources . . . 498
Interpreting Political Cartoons 544
Chance, Oversight, and Error in History 572

Reading Social Studies

Learn and practice skills that will help you read your social studies lesson.

Specialized Vocabulary of Social Studies 4
Outlining and History 36
Vocabulary Clues 70
Main Ideas in Social Studies 110
Understanding Chronological Order 150
Summarizing Historical Text 180
Inferences about History 232
Public Documents in History 264
Bias and Historical Events 296
Drawing Conclusions about the Past 320
Vocabulary in Context 344
Causes and Effects in the Past 382
Online Research 412
Information and Propaganda 436
Fact, Opinions, and the Past 474
Supporting Facts and Details 508
Analyzing Historical Information 550

Focus on Writing and Speaking

Use writing to study and reflect on the events and people who made history.

A Travelogue 2
Writing a Letter 34
Writing an Infomercial 68
Giving an Oral Report 108
A Newspaper Editorial 148
A Pamphlet 178
A Nobel Nomination 230
A Letter of Recommendation 262
A Character Sketch 294
An Interview 318
Outline for a Documentary Film 342
Newspaper Advertisement 380
Biographical Sketch 410
Persuasive Letter 434
Writing an Autobiographical Sketch 472
A Newspaper Article 506
Job History 548

Document-Based Questions

Learn to write about history.

New Colonies, New Nations 144
Shaping a New Nation 258
The Young Republic 376
A Divided Nation 502
A Nation Torn Apart 576

Political Cartoons

Interpret political cartoons to learn about U.S. history.

The XYZ Affair 252
The Embargo Act 281
Jackson against the Bank 330
Anaconda Plan 520
Supporting Radial Republican Ideas 559

Supreme Court Decisions

Study the impact of Supreme court decisions on U.S. history.

Background of the Court 185
Marbury v. *Madison* 269
Dred Scott v. *Sandford* 489
Plessy v. *Ferguson* 568

Interdisciplinary Connections

Learn history through connections to other disciplines.

The USS *Constitution* 279
Supreme Court and Capitalism 331
Textile Mill and Water Frame 385
Elements of Mass Production 386
The Steam Train 398
Cotton Gin 415
Art of the Romantic Movement 444

Primary Sources

Read and analyze the exact words of important people and documents as related to the study of U.S. history.

CHAPTER 1

Marco Polo, on traveling in *China, Travels of Marco Polo: The Venetian* 33

CHAPTER 2

Sailor, on a voyage from Portugal, *World Civilizations* 40

Christopher Columbus, 1494 44

Cabeza de Vaca, on his exploration of North America, from *The Journey of Álvar Núñez Cabeza de Vaca* 49

Brief Account of the Devastation of the Indies 51

Samuel de Champlain, on reasons for exploration, *The Canadian Frontier, 1534–1760* ... 55

King Afonso to King Joao III 59

Bernal Díaz del Castillo, on an Aztec market, *The Memoirs of the Conquistador Bernal Díaz del Castillo* 67

CHAPTER 3

A Note from Virginia 74

Olaudah Equiano, on his experiences with slavery, *The Interesting Narrative of Olaudah Equiano* 77

The Mayflower Compact 79

Garangula, on Native Americans' independence, *The Word Turned Upside Down* 95

The Boston Massacre 101

Edward Maria Wingfield, on a meeting with a Native American, *A Discourse on Virginia* .. 107

CHAPTER 4

Patrick Henry, on the Patriot cause, *Eyewitnesses and Others* 113

Abigail Adams, on women's rights, *Notable American Women* 120

Anonymous, on the Revolution, *Born for Liberty* 127

Anonymous, on the Battle of Trenton, *Voices of 1776* 129

George Washington, on lack of supplies at Valley Forge, *George Washington: A Collection* 132

Valley Forge 132

Primary Source

NEWSPAPER ARTICLE

The Boston Massacre

An account of the Boston Massacre appeared in the Boston Gazette and Country Journal *soon after the event.*

"The People were immediately alarmed with the Report of this horrid Massacre, the Bells were set a Ringing, and great Numbers soon assembled at the Place where this tragical Scene had been acted; their Feelings may be better conceived than expressed; and while some were taking Care of the Dead and Wounded, the Rest were in Consultation what to do in these dreadful Circumstances.

But so little intimidated were they [Bostonians], notwithstanding their being within a few Yards of the Main Guard, and seeing the 29th Regiment under Arms, and drawn up in King street; that they kept their Station and appeared, as an Officer of Rank expressed it, ready to run upon the very Muzzles of their Muskets."

—*Boston Gazette and Country Journal,* March 12, 1770



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why do you think the people described were not intimidated by the soldiers?

Sentiments of an American Woman 138
Thomas Paine, on conquering tyranny, *The Crisis* 143

CHAPTER 5

James Madison, on the closing of markets in the British West Indies, quoted in *Independence on Trial* 160
Compromise and the Slave Trade..... 166
Federalist Paper No. 10 172
James Madison, on rights granted by federalism, *Federalist Paper* No. 45..... 177

CHAPTER 6

The Constitution of the United States..... 188
Alexis de Tocqueville, on political participation, *Democracy in America* 224
Alexander Hamilton, on the nature of voters, speech to Continental Congress 226
Alexis de Tocqueville, on political participation, *Democracy in America* 228
Lyndon Johnson, on presidential power, *The Macmillan Dictionary of Political Quotations* 229

CHAPTER 7

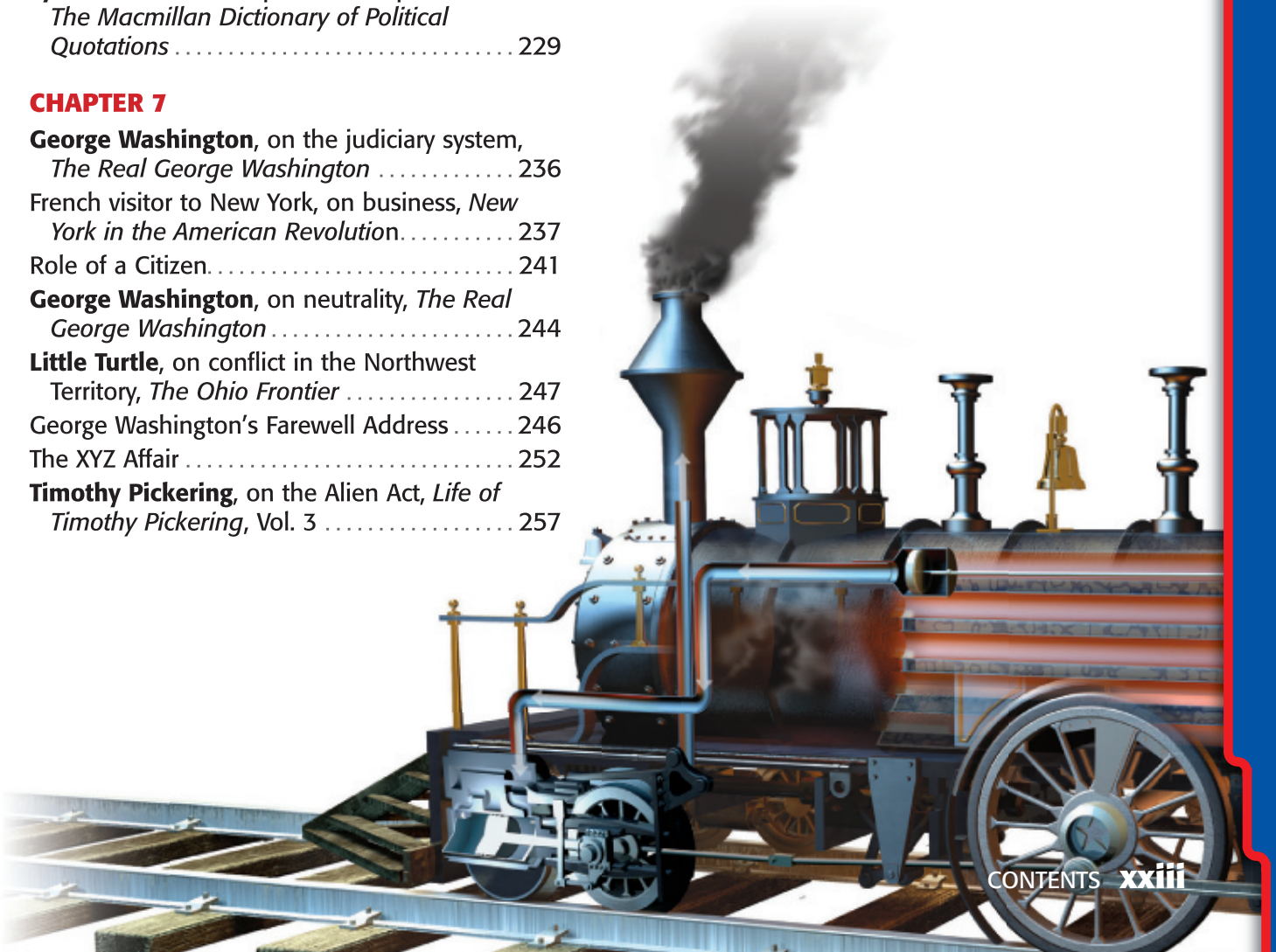
George Washington, on the judiciary system, *The Real George Washington* 236
French visitor to New York, on business, *New York in the American Revolution*..... 237
Role of a Citizen..... 241
George Washington, on neutrality, *The Real George Washington* 244
Little Turtle, on conflict in the Northwest Territory, *The Ohio Frontier* 247
George Washington's Farewell Address..... 246
The XYZ Affair 252
Timothy Pickering, on the Alien Act, *Life of Timothy Pickering*, Vol. 3 257

CHAPTER 8

Rates of Postage 265
Jefferson's Inaugural Address..... 268
Thomas Jefferson, on the importance of New Orleans port, *Annals of America*..... 272
September 17, 1804, Great Plains 276
The Embargo Act..... 281
Views of War..... 282
Thomas Jefferson, on the need for national unity, Inaugural Address..... 293

CHAPTER 9

The Monroe Doctrine..... 300
Frances Anne (Kemble) Butler, on traveling on U.S. roads, *Journal* 303
John Quincy Adams, on the Missouri Compromise, *Memoirs of John Quincy Adams* 314
Anne Newport Royall, on the need for education, *Letters from Alabama, 1817–1822* 317



CHAPTER 10

People's President 324
States' Rights vs. the Union 329
Jackson against the Bank 330
Trail of Tears 334
Daniel Webster, on the debate over slavery, *The Writings and Speeches of Daniel Webster* 341

CHAPTER 11

Alfred Jacob Miller, on a rendezvous, *The Fur Trade of the American West* 347
William Travis, on the desperate situation of the Texans, letter written at the Alamo, 1836 352
Thomas Paine, on his belief in a new and better society, *Common Sense* 354
Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo, on the early days in California, *Eyewitnesses and Others* 356
Richard Henry Dana, Jr. on Californios' hospitality, *Two Years Before the Mast* 357
James K. Polk, on news of war with Mexico, address to Congress, May 11, 1846 358
Catherine Haun, on her first home in California, *Ordinary Americans* 367
W. Kelly, on negative consequences of fast population growth, *The Other Californians* . . 368
Central Dakota flyer 375

CHAPTER 12

Samuel Slater, on his confidence in his machines, *The Ingenious Yankees* 386
Eli Whitney, on his ideas of mass production, *Technology in America* 387
Albert Gallatin, on factories in the United States, *Who Built America?* 388
Thomas Jefferson, on the dependence of the United States on imports, *The Writings of Thomas Jefferson* 389
Family Wanted 391
Sarah G. Bagley and Workers' Rights 394
Lucy Larcom, on mill life, *A New England Girlhood* 394
George Templeton Strong, on steam trains, *The Market Revolution* 399
Alexis de Tocqueville, on Americans' inventions, *Democracy in America* 405
Lucy Larcom, on working in a mill, *A New England Girlhood* 409

CHAPTER 13

Eli Whitney, on the cotton gin, *Eli Whitney and the Birth of American Technology* 416
Hinton Rowan Helper, on industrial growth in the South, *The Impending Crisis of the South* 418
Harry McMillan, on slave punishment, *Major Problems in the History of the American South* 426
Anonymous, from the spiritual "The Heavenly Road," *Afro-American Religious History* 427
Nat Turner's Rebellion 429
Frances Anne Kemble, on slavery, *Journal of a Residence on a Georgian Plantation in 1838–1839* 433

CHAPTER 14

Patrick Dunny, on immigrants' feelings of equality in America, *Who Built America?* . . . 439
Election flyer, *Who Built America?* 440
Horace Mann to the Board of Education 451
David Walker, on African Americans' contributions to America, *From Slavery to Freedom* 455
Angelina Grimké, on overthrowing slavery, *The Grimké Sisters* 455
Frederick Douglass, on the Fourth of July 1852, *From Slavery to Freedom* 456
Anti-Abolitionist Rally 458
Sarah Grimké, on women's rights, *The Grimké Sisters from South Carolina* 461
Sojourner Truth, on women's rights, *A History of Women in America* 462
Declaration of Sentiments 464
Breaking Kegs of Liquor 471

CHAPTER 15

The Seventh of March Speech 478
Daniel Webster, on preservation of the Union, *Battle Cry of Freedom* 479
Southern View of the Compromise of 1850 . . 479
A Fugitive Slave Convention 480
William Henry Seward, on slavery, *The Impending Crisis, 1848–1861* 485

Abraham Lincoln, on the Supreme Court's future rulings, *The Collected Works of Abraham Lincoln* 491
A House Divided 491
John Brown's Last Speech 494
John Brown, on his death sentence, *John Brown, 1800–1859* 494
John A. Garraty, on the Sack of Lawrence 498
Susan Bradford, on secession in Florida, *Heroines of Dixie* 501

CHAPTER 16

Mary Boykin Chesnut, on living during the Civil War, *Mary Chesnut's Civil War* 512
David R. P. Shoemaker, on life in a Union training camp, letter to a friend 515
Charles Coffin, on the Battle of Bull Run, *Voices of the Civil War* 517
Anaconda Plan 520
Response to Farragut 524
Colonel James L. Autry, on Farragut's order to surrender 524
Confederate Soldiers, on the desperate situation at Vicksburg, to General John C. Pemberton 525
Emancipation Proclamation, on freeing Confederate slaves 529
Frederick Douglass, on recruitment of African Americans, *The Life and Writings of Frederick Douglass* 531
June 23, 1863 531
Ulysses S. Grant, on Robert E. Lee, *Battle Cry of Freedom* 542
Copperhead cartoon 544
Lincoln and Slavery cartoon 544
Ulysses S. Grant, on General Lee's feelings at surrender, *Personal Memoirs of U.S. Grant, Vol. 2* 547

CHAPTER 17

Senator Jacob Howard, on the Ten Percent Plan, *Reconstruction: America's Unfinished Revolution* 553
South Carolina convention of African Americans, on legal equality of black men, *There Is a River: The Black Struggle for Freedom in America* 559
Supporting Radical Republican Ideas 559
Johnson vs. Stevens 560
Thaddeus Stevens, on the Reconstruction Acts, *Sources of the American Republic* 562
John Marshall Harlan, on *Plessy* v. *Ferguson*, quoted in Plessy *v.* Ferguson*: A Brief History with Documents* 569
Anonymous Farmer, on sharecroppers' dependence on cotton, *The Promise of the New South* 570
Sarah Chase, on working with the Freedmen's Bureau, *Dear Ones at Home* 575



Niagara Falls

Maps

Interpret maps to see where important events happened and analyze how geography has influenced history.

Interactive Maps

European Exploration of the Americas 56
North American Empires before and after the Treaty of Paris. 96
Battles for Boston, 1775–76 115
Battles in the Middle Colonies 1776–1777 127
Fighting in the Northwest Territory. 246
The Louisiana Purchase and Western Expeditions 273
America's Growth, 1820 288
Mexican American War, 1846–1847 359
Transportation Routes, 1850. 400
Battles in the East 517
The War In the West. 523
Pickett's Charge, July 3, 1863 539

Program Maps

Land Migrations of Early Peoples. 7
Aztec and Inca Civilizations 9
Native American Culture Areas. 13
Empires of West Africa, 800–1500 18
Portuguese Routes and Exploration 41
Columbus's Voyages 1492–1504 43
Transatlantic Travel 43
Spanish Explorations, 1513–1542 49
Spanish Viceroyalties, c. 1650. 50
Northwest Passage 55
African Diaspora in the United States 60
Jamestown Colony. 73
The Southern Colonies 76
The Thirteen Colonies 91
The Triangular Trade 92
Standardized Test Practice Map 107
Paul Revere's Ride 113
Battle of Saratoga. 130
War in the West, 1778–79. 134
North America after the Treaty of Paris of 1783 . . 139
The Land Ordinances of 1785 and 1787. 154
The United States Faces Trade Barriers 159
The Electoral College 196
Pinckney's Treaty 245
The First Political Parties, 1796. 251
The War of 1812. 285
U.S. Boundary Changes, 1818–1819 299
U.S. Roads and Canals, 1850 303
The Missouri Compromise, 1820 304
Second Seminole War 335
Trails Leading West 347
The Texas Revolution 352
The Cotton Kingdom 416
Nat Turner's Rebellion 428
The Underground Railroad 457
From Compromise to Conflict 484
The Kansas-Nebraska Act 485
Election of 1860 495
North Versus the South 512
Union Blockade 521
Emancipation Proclamation 529
Final Campaigns 541
Reconstruction Military Districts 561
African American Representation in the South, 1870 565

An Interview ... 318
Outline for a Documentary Film ... 342
Newspaper Advertisement ... 380
Biographical Sketch ... 410
Persuasive Letter ... 434
Writing an Autobiographical Sketch ... 472
Writing a Newspaper Article ... 506
Job History ... 548
Writing a Letter ... 582
A Business Plan ... 610
A Memo ... 632
Campaign Promises ... 658
A List of Pros and Cons ... 688
Persuasive Speech ... 716
Radio Advertisement ... 748
Journal Entry ... 774
A Radio News Broadcast ... 800
Song Lyrics ... 840
A Civil Rights Bill ... 866
Newscast ... 890
Historical Novel ... 922
Web Site ... 946

Writing Workshop

Learn to write about history.

A Biographical Narrative ... 144
Explaining a Political Process ... 258
Cause and Effect in History ... 376
Comparing People and Events ... 502
A Social Studies Report ... 576
Persuasion and History ... 654
Analyzing a Primary Source ... 744
A Descriptive Essay ... 836
A News Article ... 918
An Oral History ... 970

Political Cartoons

Interpret political cartoons to learn about U.S. history.

The XYZ Affair ... 252
The Embargo Act ... 281
Jackson against the Bank ... 330
Anaconda Plan ... 520
Copperheads ... 544
Supporting Radial Republican Ideas ... 559
Trusts ... 621
The Tammany Ring ... 663
Roosevelt's Imperialism ... 707
Teapot Dome ... 753
"Blame It on Hoover" ... 781
Fear of Communism ... 854

Supreme Court Decisions

Study the impact of Supreme Court decisions on U.S. history.

Background of the Court ... 185
Marbury v. *Madison* ... 269
Dred Scott v. *Sandford* ... 489
Plessy v. *Ferguson* ... 568
Schenck v. *United States* ... 727
Brown v. *Board of Education* ... 871
United States v. *Nixon* ... 930

Interdisciplinary Connections

Learn history through connections to other disciplines.

The USS *Constitution* ... 279
Supreme Court and Capitalism ... 331
Textile Mill and Water Frame ... 385
Elements of Mass Production ... 386
The Steam Train ... 398
Cotton Gin ... 415
Art of the Romantic Movement ... 444
Two Views of a Historic Battle ... 596
Agricultural Supply and Demand ... 603
Frederick Law Olmsted ... 644
Perry Arrives in Japan ... 695
The Panama Canal ... 706
The Model T Assembly Line ... 754
The Great Migration ... 763
Unemployment during the Depression ... 780
Mission to the Moon ... 897
The Energy Crisis ... 927
The Freedom Tower ... 962

Primary Sources

Read and analyze the exact words of important people and documents as related to the study of U.S. history.

CHAPTER 1

Marco Polo, on traveling in *China, Travels of Marco Polo: The Venetian* 33

CHAPTER 2

Sailor, on a voyage from Portugal, *World Civilizations* 40

Christopher Columbus, 1494 44

Cabeza de Vaca, on his exploration of North America, from *The Journey of Álvar Núñez Cabeza de Vaca* 49

Brief Account of the Devastation of the Indies 51

Samuel de Champlain, on reasons for exploration, *The Canadian Frontier, 1534–1760* ... 55

King Afonso to King Joao III 59

Bernal Díaz del Castillo, on an Aztec market, *The Memoirs of the Conquistador Bernal Díaz del Castillo* 67

CHAPTER 3

A Note from Virginia 74

Olaudah Equiano, on his experiences with slavery, *The Interesting Narrative of Olaudah Equiano* 77

The Mayflower Compact 79

Garangula, on Native Americans' independence, *The Word Turned Upside Down* 95

The Boston Massacre 101

Edward Maria Wingfield, on a meeting with a Native American, *A Discourse on Virginia* .. 107

CHAPTER 4

Patrick Henry, on the Patriot cause, *Eyewitnesses and Others* 113

Choosing Sides 119

Abigail Adams, on women's rights, *Notable American Women* 120

Anonymous, on the Revolution, *Born for Liberty* 127

Anonymous, on the Battle of Trenton, *Voices of 1776* 129

George Washington, on lack of supplies at Valley Forge, *George Washington: A Collection* 132

Valley Forge 132

Sentiments of an American Woman 138

Thomas Paine, on conquering tyranny, *The Crisis* 143

CHAPTER 5

James Madison, on the closing of markets in the British West Indies, quoted in *Independence on Trial* 160

Compromise and the Slave Trade 166

Federalist Paper No. 10 172

James Madison, on rights granted by federalism, *Federalist Paper* No. 45 177

CHAPTER 6

The Constitution of the United States 188

Alexis de Tocqueville, on political participation, *Democracy in America* 224

Alexander Hamilton, on the nature of voters, speech to Continental Congress 226

Alexis de Tocqueville, on political participation, *Democracy in America* 228

Lyndon Johnson, on presidential power, *The Macmillan Dictionary of Political Quotations* 229

CHAPTER 7

George Washington, on the judiciary system, *The Real George Washington* 236

French visitor to New York, on business, *New York in the American Revolution* 237

Role of a Citizen 241

George Washington, on neutrality, *The Real George Washington* 244

Little Turtle, on conflict in the Northwest Territory, *The Ohio Frontier* 247

George Washington's Farewell Address 248

The XYZ Affair 252

Timothy Pickering, on the Alien Act, *Life of Timothy Pickering*, Vol. 3 257

CHAPTER 8

Rates of Postage 265

Jefferson's Inaugural Address 268

Thomas Jefferson, on the importance of the port of New Orleans, *Annals of America* . . . 272
September 17, 1804, Great Plains 276
The Embargo Act 281
Views of War 282
Thomas Jefferson, on the need for national unity, Inaugural Address 293

CHAPTER 9

The Monroe Doctrine 300
Frances Anne (Kemble) Butler, on traveling on U.S. roads, *Journal* 303
John Quincy Adams, on the Missouri Compromise, *Memoirs of John Quincy Adams* 314
Anne Newport Royall, on the need for education, *Letters from Alabama, 1817–1822* 317

CHAPTER 10

People's President 324
States' Rights vs. the Union 329
Jackson against the Bank 330
Trail of Tears 334
Daniel Webster, on the debate over slavery, *The Writings and Speeches of Daniel Webster* 341

CHAPTER 11

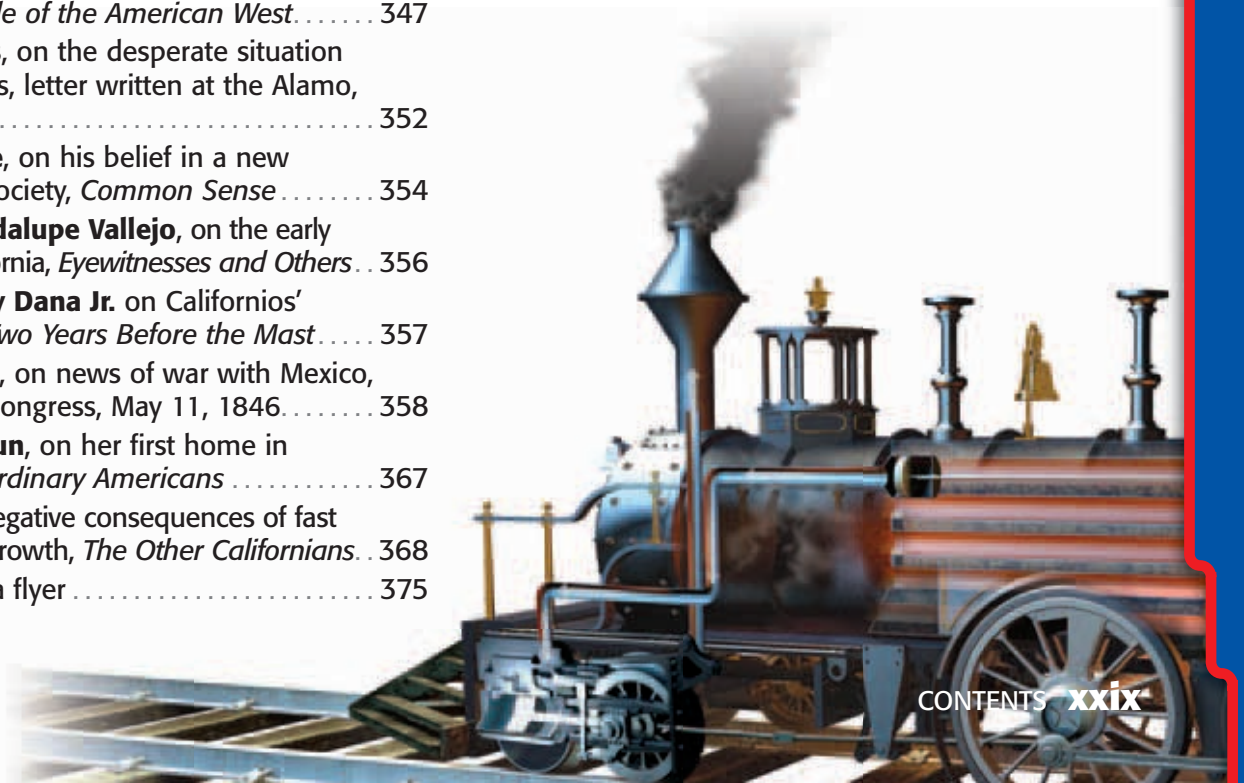
Alfred Jacob Miller, on a rendezvous, *The Fur Trade of the American West* 347
William Travis, on the desperate situation of the Texans, letter written at the Alamo, 1836 352
Thomas Paine, on his belief in a new and better society, *Common Sense* 354
Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo, on the early days in California, *Eyewitnesses and Others* . . 356
Richard Henry Dana Jr. on Californios' hospitality, *Two Years Before the Mast* 357
James K. Polk, on news of war with Mexico, address to Congress, May 11, 1846 358
Catherine Haun, on her first home in California, *Ordinary Americans* 367
W. Kelly, on negative consequences of fast population growth, *The Other Californians* . . 368
Central Dakota flyer 375

CHAPTER 12

Samuel Slater, on his confidence in his machines, *The Ingenious Yankees* 386
Eli Whitney, on his ideas of mass production, *Technology in America* 387
Albert Gallatin, on factories in the United States, *Who Built America?* 388
Thomas Jefferson, on the dependence of the United States on imports, *The Writings of Thomas Jefferson* 389
Family Wanted 391
Sarah G. Bagley and Workers' Rights 394
Lucy Larcom, on mill life, *A New England Girlhood* 394
George Templeton Strong, on steam trains, *The Market Revolution* 399
Alexis de Tocqueville, on Americans' inventions, *Democracy in America* 405
Lucy Larcom, on working in a mill, *A New England Girlhood* 409

CHAPTER 13

Eli Whitney, on the cotton gin, *Eli Whitney and the Birth of American Technology* 416
Hinton Rowan Helper, on industrial growth in the South, *The Impending Crisis of the South* 418
Harry McMillan, on slave punishment, *Major Problems in the History of the American South* 426



Anonymous, from the spiritual "The Heavenly Road," *Afro-American Religious History* 427
Nat Turner's Rebellion 429
Frances Anne Kemble, on slavery, *Journal of a Residence on a Georgian Plantation in 1838–1839* 433

CHAPTER 14

Patrick Dunny, on immigrants' feelings of equality in America, *Who Built America?* . . . 439
Election flyer, *Who Built America?* 440
Horace Mann to the Board of Education 451
David Walker, on African Americans' contributions to America, *From Slavery to Freedom* 455
Angelina Grimké, on overthrowing slavery, *The Grimké Sisters* 455
Frederick Douglass, on the Fourth of July 1852, *From Slavery to Freedom* 456
Anti-Abolitionist Rally 458
Sarah Grimké, on women's rights, *The Grimké Sisters from South Carolina* 461
Sojourner Truth, on women's rights, *A History of Women in America* 462
Declaration of Sentiments 464
Breaking Kegs of Liquor 471

CHAPTER 15

The Seventh of March Speech 478
Daniel Webster, on preservation of the Union, *Battle Cry of Freedom* 479
Southern View of the Compromise of 1850 . . 479
A Fugitive Slave Convention 480
William Henry Seward, on slavery, *The Impending Crisis, 1848–1861* 485
Abraham Lincoln, on the Supreme Court's future rulings, *The Collected Works of Abraham Lincoln* 491
A House Divided 491
John Brown's Last Speech 494
John Brown, on his death sentence, *John Brown, 1800–1859* 494
John A. Garraty, on the Sack of Lawrence . . . 498
Susan Bradford, on secession in Florida, *Heroines of Dixie* 501

CHAPTER 16

Mary Boykin Chesnut, on living during the Civil War, *Mary Chesnut's Civil War* 512
David R. P. Shoemaker, on life in a Union training camp, letter to a friend 515
Charles Coffin, on the Battle of Bull Run, *Voices of the Civil War* 517
Anaconda Plan 520
Response to Farragut 524
Colonel James L. Autry, on Farragut's order to surrender 524
Confederate soldiers, on the desperate situation at Vicksburg, to General John C. Pemberton 525
Emancipation Proclamation, on freeing Confederate slaves 529
Frederick Douglass, on recruitment of African Americans, *The Life and Writings of Frederick Douglass* 531
June 23, 1863 531
Ulysses S. Grant, on Robert E. Lee, *Battle Cry of Freedom* 542
Copperhead cartoon 544
Lincoln and Slavery cartoon 544
Ulysses S. Grant, on General Lee's feelings at surrender, *Personal Memoirs of U.S. Grant, Vol. 2* 547

CHAPTER 17

Senator Jacob Howard, on the Ten Percent Plan, *Reconstruction: America's Unfinished Revolution* 553
South Carolina convention of African Americans, on legal equality of black men, *There Is a River: The Black Struggle for Freedom in America* 559
Supporting Radical Republican Ideas 559
Johnson vs. Stevens 560
Thaddeus Stevens, on the Reconstruction Acts, *Sources of the American Republic* 562
John Marshall Harlan, on *Plessy* v. *Ferguson*, quoted in Plessy *v.* Ferguson*: A Brief History with Documents* 569
Anonymous Farmer, on sharecroppers' dependence on cotton, *The Promise of the New South* 570

Sarah Chase, on working with the Freedmen's Bureau, *Dear Ones at Home* . . 575

CHAPTER 18

Alexander Toponce, on the golden spike used to connect the railroad, *A Treasury of Railroad Folklore* 591

Sitting Bull, protesting against the demands of the United States, *Touch the Earth* 596

Chief Joseph, surrender speech 599

Letter from the Plains, 1863 601

Ten Bears, on the restrictions of reservations, *Eyewitnesses and Others* 609

CHAPTER 19

Thomas Edison, on his approach to science, *American Made* 616

Trusts 621

David Wells, on machinery in industry, *Voices of the American Past* 631

CHAPTER 20

Jacob Riis, on a tenement, *How the Other Half Lives* 634

Anzia Yezierska, on life as an immigrant, *Bread Givers* 635

An Immigrant's Story 637

Miriam Shomer Zusner, on the reality of tenements, *Yesterday: A Memoir of a Russian Jewish Family* 639

Pauline Newman, on working in a shirtwaist factory, *The Immigrant Experience* 640

Chicago, 1900 643

Jacob Riis, on a crowded tenement, *How the Other Half Lives* 646

Lawrence Veiller, on the effects of tenement living on children and society, *Readings in American History* 648

Florence Kelley and Alzina P. Stevens, on working hours, *Hull House Maps and Papers* 649

Newspaper article on the unhealthiness of tenements, *New York Times* 653

CHAPTER 21

Harper's Weekly, on the danger of political machines, *Yellow Journalism* 660

Cincinnati Times-Star, on new forms of communication, *Yellow Journalism* 661

The Tammany Ring 663

Henry Fenner, on voting for political machines, *You Must Remember This* 663

Lincoln Steffens, on political corruption, *The Shame of the Cities* 664

The Other Half 665

Marie Van Vorst, on her thoughts of young children working, *A History of Women in America* 670

Triangle Shirtwaist Fire 673

Carry Nation, on destroying a saloon, *Witnessing America* 676

Ida B. Wells, on lynching, "Lynch Law in America" 677

Fighting Discrimination 678

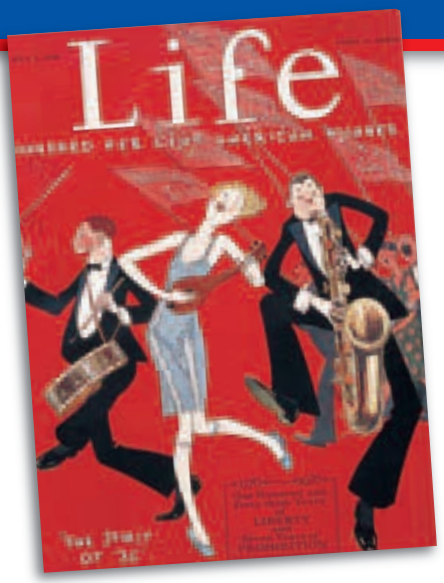
President Theodore Roosevelt, on the Square Deal, *The Presidency of Theodore Roosevelt* 680

John Muir, on the value of nature, *Our National Parks* 681

Hamlin Garland, from his novel *Rose of Dutcher's Coolly* 686

George Washington Plunkitt, on being a political boss, *Eyewitnesses and Others* 687





CHAPTER 22

William McKinley, on American foreign policy, First Inaugural Address 690
Henry Cabot Lodge, on American foreign policy, speech to Congress 690
Theodore Roosevelt, on American foreign policy, message to Congress 691
William Howard Taft, on American foreign policy, message to Congress 691
Richard Harding Davis, on the capture of San Juan Hill, *The American Reader* 700
Roosevelt's Imperialism 707
John Muir, on Hetch Hetchy, *The Yosemite* 714
Gifford Pinchot, on Hetch Hetchy, *Gifford Pinchot and the Making of Modern Environmentalism* 714
Millard Fillmore, on Japanese trade policy, letter to Japan 715

CHAPTER 23

Alan Seeger, on life during trench warfare, *Letters and Diary of Alan Seeger* 723
Sinking of the *Lusitania* 726
Mrs. Guy Napier-Martin, on driving a war ambulance, *The Overseas War Record of the Winsor School, 1914–1919* 728
Soldier's song, on life in the trenches, *Great Push: An Episode of the Great War* 731
Dan Tonkel, on the influenza epidemic, *Influenza 1918: The Worst Epidemic in American History* 736
Woodrow Wilson, on reducing armaments, Fourteen Points 743

CHAPTER 24

Three views of the archduke's assassination, *Eyewitness to History* 751
Teapot Dome 753
Warren G. Harding, on normalcy, 1920 campaign speech 753
Henry Ford, on the Model T, *Daily Life in the United States, 1920–1940* 755
Zelda Fitzgerald, on flappers, *Zelda* 759
Prohibition 761
The Scopes Trial 762
Duke Ellington, on Jazz Age musicians, *Reminiscing in Tempo* 767
"I, Too" 768
F. Scott Fitzgerald, from his novel *The Great Gatsby* 769
Herbert Hoover, on ending poverty, 1928 Inaugural Address 773

CHAPTER 25

Jonathan Norton Leonard, on the panic of Black Tuesday, *Three Years Down* 779
"Blame It on Hoover" 781
Fireside Chats 786
W. H. Kiplinger, on business taxes, *The New Deal and the American People* 786
The Dust Bowl 791
Anonymous teen, on Depression-era life, *The Great Depression* 792
Louis Banks, on racial discrimination, *Hard Times: An Oral History of the Great Depression* 792
"Migrant Mother" 792
John Steinbeck, from his novel *The Grapes of Wrath* 799

CHAPTER 26

George D. Phraner, on the sinking of the USS *Arizona*, *World War II* 809
Winona Espinosa, on women working during wartime, *Ordinary Americans* 811
Supporting the War 811
Tuskegee Airmen 812
Daniel Inouye, on the recruitment of Japanese Americans, *Only What We Could Carry* 814
Wilburt S. Brown, on the Battle of Okinawa, *The Final Campaign* 822
Battle of the Bulge 826
Moritz Vegh, on arriving at a concentration camp, *The Boys: Triumph over Adversity* . . . 828
Anne Frank, on her hope in the face of the Holocaust, *The Diary of Anne Frank* 835

CHAPTER 27

Robert H. Jackson, on the reason for the Nuremberg trials, *The Nuremberg Trial* 845
Bob Dole, on the benefits of the GI Bill, *GI Bill: The Law That Changed America* . . . 848
Fear of Communism 854
McCarthyism 855
Sally Ann Carter, on expectations of women, *The Fifties: A Woman's Oral History* 861
Dwight D. Eisenhower, on the cost of the arms race, 1953 speech 865

CHAPTER 28

Cesar Chavez, on nonviolence taking time, *Chávez, César: Autobiography of La Causa* . . 883
Martin Luther King Jr., from his March on Washington speech 889

CHAPTER 29

Thirteen Days 896
John F. Kennedy, on sending a man to the moon, speech to Congress 897
Vietnam War 903
Robert F. Kennedy, on the Cuban missile crisis, *Thirteen Days: A Memoir of the Cuban Missile Crisis* 917

CHAPTER 30

Barbara Jordan, on her faith in the Constitution, speech before Congress 930
Rachel Carson, on pollution, *Silent Spring* . . 933
The Camp David Accords 935
Geraldine Ferraro, on being chosen to run for vice president, *Ferraro: My Story* 938
Edmund S. Muskie, on the Watergate scandal, *Washington Post* 945

CHAPTER 31

George H. W. Bush, on a new world order, 1991 speech 951
NAFTA 952
George W. Bush, on his goal for the nation, First Inaugural Address 955
Bill Gates, on the effects of new technology, *Newsweek* 961
Rudolph Giuliani, on the spirit of New York City, *The Washington Post* 969



Maps

Interpret maps to see where important events happened and analyze how geography has influenced history.

Interactive Maps

European Exploration of the Americas 56
North American Empires before and after the Treaty of Paris 96
Battles for Boston 115
Battles in the Middle Colonies, 1776–1777 127
Fighting in the Northwest Territory 246
The Louisiana Purchase and Western Expeditions 273
America's Growth, 1820 288
Mexican-American War, 1846–1847 359
Transportation Routes, 1850 400
Battles in the East 517
The War in the West 523
Pickett's Charge, July 3, 1863 539
Native American Land Loss in the West, 1850–1890 594
Major Labor Strikes, Late 1800s 626
The Panama Canal 706
United States in Latin America 708
World War I, 1914–1918 732
The Dust Bowl 791
World War II in Europe, 1939–1941 807
Pearl Harbor, 1941 808
World War II in Europe, 1942–1945 818
War in the Pacific, 1941–1945 823
Freedom Rides, 1961 877
The Vietnam War, 1968 904
The Persian Gulf War, 1990–1991 951

Program Maps

Land Migrations of Early Peoples 7
Aztec and Inca Civilizations 9
Native American Culture Areas 13
Empires of West Africa, 800–1500 18
Portuguese Routes and Exploration 41
Columbus's Voyages, 1492–1504 43
Transatlantic Travel 43
Spanish Explorations 49
Spanish Viceroyalties, c. 1650 50
Northwest Passage 55
African Diaspora in the United States 60
Jamestown Colony 73
The Southern Colonies 76
The Thirteen Colonies 91
The Triangular Trade 92
Standardized Test Practice Map 107
Paul Revere's Ride 113
Battle of Saratoga 130
War in the West 134
North America after the Treaty of Paris of 1783 . . 139
The Land Ordinances of 1785 and 1787 154
The United States Faces Trade Barriers 159
The Electoral College 196
Pinckney's Treaty 245
The First Political Parties, 1796 251
The War of 1812 285
U.S. Boundary Changes, 1818–1819 299
U.S. Roads and Canals, 1850 303
The Missouri Compromise, 1820 304
Standardized Test Practice Map 317
Second Seminole War 335
Trails Leading West 347
The Texas Revolution 352
Skills Page: Expansion 372
Chapter Review Map 374
Standardized Test Practice Map 375
The Cotton Kingdom 416
Nat Turner's Rebellion 428
The Underground Railroad 457
From Compromise to Conflict 484
The Kansas-Nebraska Act 485
Election of 1860 495
North Versus South 512
Union Blockade 521
Emancipation Proclamation 529
Final Campaigns 541
Standardized Test Practice Map 547
Reconstruction Military Districts 561
African American Representation in the South, 1870 565
Routes West 590
Migration, 1850 606
Migration, 1890 606
Social Studies Skills Map 608
Coming to America 638
Election of 1912 682
U.S. Territories in the Pacific, 1856–1899 693
War in the Philippines 699
War in the Caribbean 700
Standardized Test Practice Map 715
Europe After World War I 738
Tennessee Valley Authority, 1933–1945 785
Cold War Europe, 1955 847
The Korean War 853
Crises in Cuba 895
French Indochina 898
The Election of 1972 911
The Election of 1976 934
Central American Conflicts in the 1980s 939
The Election of 2000 955

New York Social Studies Middle School Standards

What are the New York Social Studies Middle School Standards?

Learning standards are simply the things you are expected to know, understand, and be able to do as a result of your education. Learning standards are usually organized by subject and grade. So standards for your United States history course, for example, focus on the knowledge and skills you will need to gain in your social studies class this school year.

How can New York Social Studies Middle School Standards help me?

These learning standards are helpful because they give you a clear picture of what you will be expected to learn. This can help you to focus on key material as you work through the school year. You can think of the standards as a kind of checklist—and you can even check off important subjects and skills as you master them. Another advantage of becoming familiar with the standards is that teachers often base lesson plans and tests on these standards. That means that the standards can give you a preview of what to expect in this course.

How are the New York Social Studies Middle School Standards organized?

New York educators have organized the teaching of social studies by creating different kinds of standards at several levels. At the top level are New York State Learning Standards for Social Studies. These are very broad standards—each one covers a large amount of learning. Because they are so broad, there are only five of them, and only one refers to the study of United States and New York history. You can read it below. On the next page, you will read more detailed parts of the standard.

Each Standard is divided into Key Ideas. These Key Ideas give you a description of the main categories of information you will be learning, as well as the kinds of skills you will be practicing.

Standard 1—History of the United States and New York

Students will use a variety of intellectual skills to demonstrate their understanding of major ideas, eras, themes, developments, and turning points in the history of the United States and New York.

1. The study of New York State and United States history requires an analysis of the development of American culture, its diversity and multicultural context, and the ways people are unified by many values, practices, and traditions.



Central Park, New York City

2. Important ideas, social and cultural values, beliefs, and traditions from New York State and United States history illustrate the connections and interactions of people and events across time and from a variety of perspectives.

3. Study about the major social, political, economic, cultural, and religious developments in New York State and United States history involves learning about the important roles and contributions of individuals and groups.

4. The skills of historical analysis include the ability to: explain the significance of historical evidence; weigh the importance, reliability, and validity of evidence; understand the concept of multiple causation; understand the importance of changing and competing interpretations of different historical developments.

Standard 2—World History

Students will use a variety of intellectual skills to demonstrate their understanding of major ideas, eras, themes, developments, and turning points in world history and examine the broad sweep of history from a variety of perspectives.

1. The study of world history requires an understanding of world cultures and civilizations, including an analysis of important ideas, social and cultural values, beliefs, and traditions. This study also examines the human condition and the connections and interactions of people across time and space and the ways different people view the same event or issue from a variety of perspectives.

2. Establishing timeframes, exploring different periodizations, examining themes across time and within cultures, and focusing on important turning points in world history help organize the study of world cultures and civilizations.

3. Study of the major social, political, cultural, and religious developments in world history involves learning about the important roles and contributions of individuals and groups.

4. The skills of historical analysis include the ability to investigate differing and competing interpretations of the theories of history, hypothesize about why interpretations change over time, explain the importance of historical evidence, and understand the concepts of change and continuity over time.



Standard 3—Geography

Students will use a variety of intellectual skills to demonstrate their understanding of the geography of the interdependent world in which we live—local, national, and global—including the distribution of people, places, and environments over the Earth's surface.

1. Geography can be divided into six essential elements which can be used to analyze important historic, geographic, economic, and environmental questions and issues. These six elements include: the world in spatial terms, places and regions, physical settings (including natural resources), human systems, environment and society, and the use of geography. (Adapted from The National Geography Standards, 1994: Geography for Life)

2. Geography requires the development and application of the skills of asking and answering geographic questions; analyzing theories of geography; and acquiring, organizing, and analyzing geographic information. (Adapted from The National Geography Standards, 1994: Geography for Life)

Standard 4—Economics

Students will use a variety of intellectual skills to demonstrate their understanding of how the United States and other societies develop economic systems and associated institutions to allocate scarce resources, how major decision-making units function in the U.S. and other national economies, and how an economy solves the scarcity problem through market and nonmarket mechanisms.

1. The study of economics requires an understanding of major economic concepts and systems, the principles of economic decision making, and the interdependence of economies and economic systems throughout the world.

2. Economics requires the development and application of the skills needed to make informed and well-reasoned economic decisions in daily and national life.



Grand Central Station New York

Standard 5—Civics, Citizenship, and Government

Students will use a variety of intellectual skills to demonstrate their understanding of the necessity for establishing governments; the governmental system of the U.S. and other nations; the U.S. Constitution; the basic civic values of American constitutional democracy; and the roles, rights, and responsibilities of citizenship, including avenues of participation.

1. The study of civics, citizenship, and government involves learning about political systems; the purposes of government and civic life; and the differing assumptions held by people across time and place regarding power, authority, governance, and law. (Adapted from The National Standards for Civics and Government, 1994)

2. The state and federal governments established by the Constitutions of the United States and the State of New York embody basic civic values (such as justice, honesty, self-discipline, due process, equality, majority rule with respect for minority rights, and respect for self, others, and property), principles, and practices and establish a system of shared and limited government. (Adapted from The National Standards for Civics and Government, 1994)

3. Central to civics and citizenship is an understanding of the roles of the citizen within American constitutional democracy and the scope of a citizen's rights and responsibilities.

4. The study of civics and citizenship requires the ability to probe ideas and assumptions, ask and answer analytical questions, take a skeptical attitude toward questionable arguments, evaluate evidence, formulate rational conclusions, and develop and refine participatory skills.



New York City Harbor

Reading like a Historian

Historians use paintings along with many other tools to help understand the past. The famous painting on the next page, *Washington Crossing the Delaware*, captures the determination of Patriot leaders and soldiers to endure brutal conditions in the hope of winning their struggle for liberty. As you study United States history, you too will learn how to use different historical sources to **Read like a Historian.**

To find out more about reading like a historian and the historical sources that follow, visit

go.hrw.com
More Online
KEYWORD: HISTORIAN

By Frances Marie Gipson
Secondary Literacy Coordinator
Los Angeles Unified School District, Los Angeles, California



H2

What Does It Mean to Read like a Historian?

In your history class you will be doing a lot of reading, thinking, and problem-solving. Much of your reading and thinking will center on different types of texts or materials. Since you are in a history class reading all sorts of things, a question to consider is, "What does it mean to think, read, and solve problems like a historian?"

Historians work with different types of sources to understand and learn from history. Two categories of sources are **primary** and **secondary** sources.

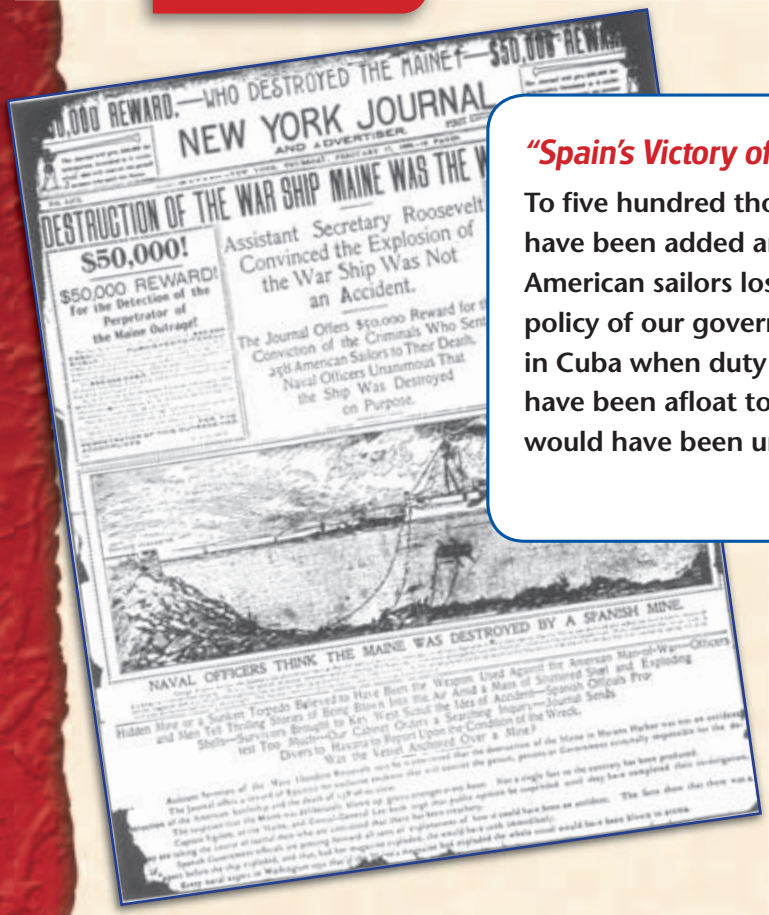
Primary Sources are historical documents, written accounts by a firsthand witness, or objects that have survived from the past. A study of primary sources might include letters, government documents, diaries, photographs, art objects, stamps, coins, and even clothing.

Secondary Sources are accounts of past events created by people some time after the events happened. This textbook and other books written about historical events are examples of secondary sources.

As you learn more about your work as a historian, you will begin to ask questions and analyze historical materials. You will be working as a detective, digging into history to create a richer understanding of the mysteries of the past.

How to Analyze Written Sources

Primary Sources



"Spain's Victory of Peace"

To five hundred thousand Cubans starved or otherwise murdered have been added an American battleship and three hundred American sailors lost as the direct result of the dilatory [delaying] policy of our government toward Spain. If we had stopped the war in Cuba when duty and policy alike urged us to do the *Maine* would have been afloat today, and three hundred homes, now desolate, would have been unscathed [safe from harm].

–*New York Journal*, February 17, 1898

Asking questions can help you determine the relevance and importance of written primary sources, such as this newspaper editorial about the sinking of an American warship. As you analyze the primary source above and the primary and secondary sources included in this textbook, ask yourself questions like the ones below.

- **Who created the source and why?**
- **Did the writer have firsthand knowledge of the event, or does he report what others saw or heard?**
- **Was the writer a neutral party, or did the author have opinions or interests that might have influenced what was recorded?**
- **Did the writer wish to inform or persuade others?**
- **Was the information recorded during the event, immediately after the event, or after some lapse of time?**

Secondary Sources

The Attack on Lawrence, Kansas

"Sheriff Jones, again at the head of an army of Missourians, marched into Lawrence. In broad daylight, they threw the printing presses of two newspapers into a river. They burned down the Free State Hotel and other buildings. Antislavery Kansans seethed with rage. Here is how one eyewitness described the attack: *Sheriff Jones, after looking at the flames rising from the hotel and saying that it was 'the happiest day of his life,' dismissed the troops and they began their lawless destruction.*"

–John A. Garraty, from *The Story of America,* 1994

When reading secondary sources, such as the description of the attack on Lawrence, Kansas, historians ask additional questions to seek understanding. They try to source the text, build evidence, and interpret the message that is being conveyed. For historians, reading is a quest to find evidence to answer or challenge a historical problem. As you study secondary sources, ask questions like the ones below.

- Who is the author? What do I know about this author?
- Did the author have firsthand information? What is the author's relationship to the event?
- What might be the author's motivation in writing this piece?
- What type of evidence did the author look at?
- Are any assumptions or biases present?
- How does this document fit into the larger context of the events I am studying?
- What kind of source is it?
- Is the source an original?
- Is the content probable or reasonable?
- What does the date tell me about the event?
- What do I already know about this topic that will help me understand more of what I am reading?

How to Analyze an Artifact



Artifacts, such as this phonograph invented by Thomas Edison, take many forms. They might be coins, stone tools, pieces of clothing, or even items found in your backpack. As you study artifacts in this textbook, ask yourself questions like the ones below.

- Why was this object created?
- When and where would it have been used?
- What does the artifact tell me about the technology available at the time it was created?
- What can it tell me about the life and times of the people who used it?
- How does the artifact help to make sense of the time period?

How to Analyze a Historical Map



Maps, such as this one from 1719 of New France, are symbolic representations of places shown in relation to one another. All maps necessarily include some details and leave out others. As you study maps in this textbook, ask questions like the ones below.

- When and where was the map produced?
- What details has the mapmaker chosen to include (or exclude) on this map?
- Why was the map drawn?
- How can I determine if the map is accurate?
- How are maps used to analyze the past, present, and future?

How to Analyze a Photograph



Photographs, like the one above of African American soldiers during the Civil War, are another important source for historians. One way to study a photograph is to write down everything you think is important about it. Then divide the image into four sections and describe the important elements from each section. As you study photographs in this textbook, ask questions like the ones below.

- What is the subject of the photograph?
- What does the image reveal about its subject?
- What is the setting for the photograph?
- What other details can I observe?
- When and where in the past was the photograph created?
- How can I describe the photographer's point of view?

How to Analyze a Political Cartoon



In 1871 Thomas Nast published this cartoon—"Who Stole the People's Money?"—poking fun at corruption in politics. As you study political cartoons in this textbook, use the following helpful tips and questions.

- List the parts of the political cartoon and the importance of each part.
- Describe the focus or significance of the political cartoon.
- Do the captions and call-out boxes clarify the political cartoon's purpose?
- Does the cartoon help me understand the information that I am studying in my textbook better?

Become an Active Reader

by Dr. Kylene Beers

Did you ever think you would begin reading your social studies book by reading about reading? Actually, it makes better sense than you might think. You would probably make sure you learned some soccer skills and strategies before playing in a game. Similarly, you need to learn some reading skills and strategies before reading your social studies book. In other words, you need to make sure you know whatever you need to know in order to read this book successfully.

Tip #1
Use the Reading Social Studies Pages

Take advantage of the two pages on reading at the beginning of every chapter. Those pages introduce the chapter themes; explain a reading skill or strategy; and identify key terms, people, and academic vocabulary.

Themes

Why are themes important? They help our minds organize facts and information. For example, when we talk about baseball, we may talk about types of pitches. When we talk about movies, we may discuss animation.

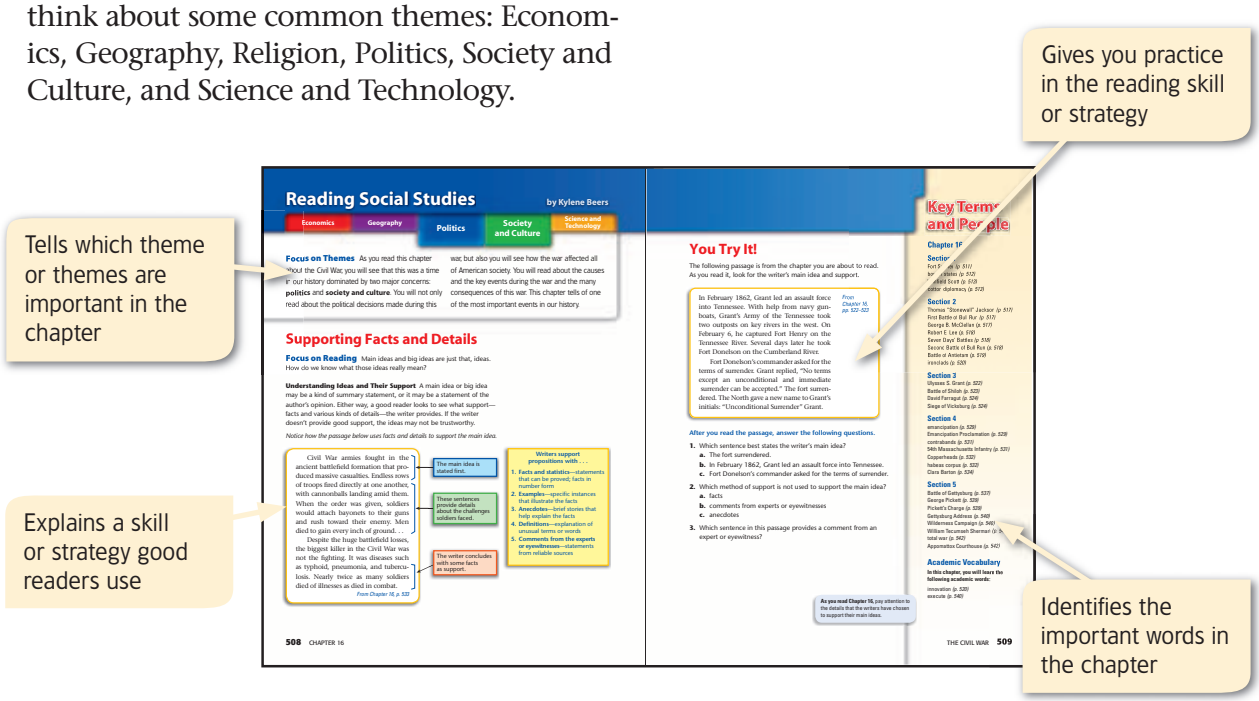
Historians are no different. When they discuss history or social studies, they tend to think about some common themes: Economics, Geography, Religion, Politics, Society and Culture, and Science and Technology.

Reading Skill or Strategy

Good readers use a number of skills and strategies to make sure they understand what they are reading. These lessons will give you the tools you need to read and understand social studies.

Key Terms, People, and Academic Vocabulary

Before you read the chapter, review these words and think about them. Have you heard the word before? What do you already know about the people? Then watch for these words and their meanings as you read the chapter.



Tip #2

Read like a Skilled Reader

You will never get better at reading your social studies book—or any book for that matter—unless you spend some time thinking about how to be a better reader.

Skilled readers do the following:

- They preview what they are supposed to read before they actually begin reading. They look for vocabulary words, titles of sections, information in the margin, or maps or charts they should study.
- They divide their notebook paper into two columns. They title one column "Notes from the Chapter" and the other column "Questions or Comments I Have."
- They take notes in both columns as they read.
- They read like **active readers**. The Active Reading list below shows you what that means.
- They use clues in the text to help them figure out where the text is going. The best clues are called signal words.

  Chronological Order Signal Words: *first, second, third, before, after, later, next, following that, earlier, finally*

  Cause and Effect Signal Words: *because of, due to, as a result of, the reason for, therefore, consequently*

  Comparison/Contrast Signal Words: *likewise, also, as well as, similarly, on the other hand*

Active Reading

Successful readers are **active readers**. These readers know that it is up to them to figure out what the text means. Here are some steps you can take to become an active, and successful, reader.

Predict what will happen next based on what has already happened. When your predictions don't match what happens in the text, reread the confusing parts.

Question what is happening as you read. Constantly ask yourself why things have happened, what things mean, and what caused certain events.

Summarize what you are reading frequently. Do not try to summarize the entire chapter! Read a bit and then summarize it. Then read on.

Connect what is happening in the part you're reading to what you have already read.

Clarify your understanding. Stop occasionally to ask yourself whether you are confused by anything. You may need to reread to clarify, or you may need to read further and collect more information before you can understand.

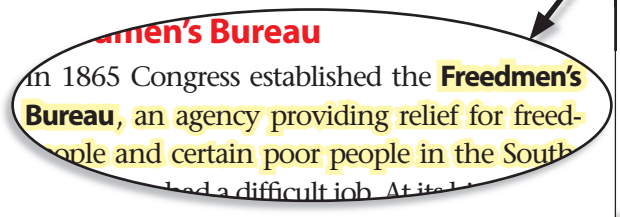
Visualize what is happening in the text. Try to see the events or places in your mind by drawing maps, making charts, or jotting down notes about what you are reading.

Tip #3
Pay Attention to Vocabulary

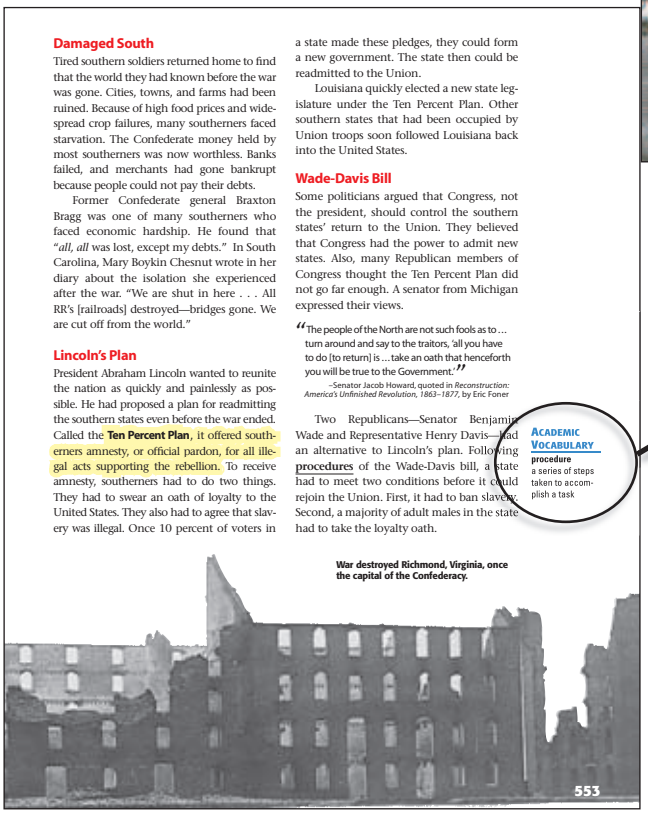
It is no fun to read something when you don't know what the words mean, but you can't learn new words if you only use or read the words you already know. In this book, we know we have probably used some words you don't know. But, we have followed a pattern as we have used more difficult words.

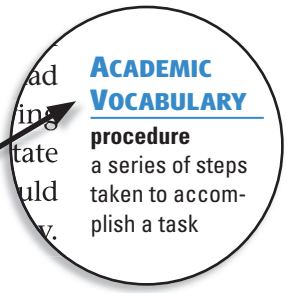
Key Terms and People

At the beginning of each section you will find a list of key terms or people that you will need to know. Be on the lookout for those words as you read through the section.









Academic Vocabulary

When we use a word that is important in all classes, not just social studies, we define it in the margin under the heading *Academic Vocabulary*. You will run into these academic words in other textbooks, so you should learn what they mean while reading this book.

Words to Know

As you read this social studies textbook, you will be more successful if you know or learn the meanings of the words on this page. There are two types of words listed here. The first list contains academic words, the words we discussed at the bottom of the previous page. These words are important in all classes, not just social studies. The second list contains words that are special to this particular topic of social studies, U.S. history.

Academic Words

abstract expressing a quality or idea without reference to an actual thing
acquire to get
advocate to plead in favor of
affect to change or influence
agreement a decision reached by two or more people or groups
aspects parts
authority power, right to rule
cause the reason something happens
circumstances surrounding situation
classical referring to the cultures of ancient Greece or Rome
complex difficult, not simple
concrete specific, real
consequences the effects of a particular event or events
contemporary existing at the same time
contract a binding legal agreement
criteria rules for defining
develop/development 1. the process of growing or improving 2. Creation
distinct separate
distribute to divide among a group of people
effect the results of an action or decision
efficient/efficiency productive and not wasteful
element part
establish to set up or create
execute to perform, carry out
explicit fully revealed without vagueness
facilitate to bring about
factor causes
features characteristics
function use or purpose
ideal ideas or goals that people try to live up to
impact effect, result
implement to put in place
implications effects of a decision
implicit understood though not clearly put into words
incentive something that leads people to follow a certain course of action
influence change or have an effect on
innovation a new idea or way of doing something
logic/logical 1. reasoned, well thought out 2. well thought out ideas
method a way of doing something
motive a reason for doing something
neutral unbiased, not favoring either side in a conflict
policy rule, course of action
primary main, most important
principle basic belief, rule, or law
procedure a series of steps taken to accomplish a task
process a series of steps by which a task is accomplished
purpose the reason something is done
reaction a response
rebel to fight against authority
role 1. a part or function 2. Assigned behavior
strategy a plan for fighting a battle or war
structure the way something is set up or organized
traditional customary, time-honored
values ideas that people hold dear and try to live by
vary/various 1. To be different 2. of many types

Social Studies Words

AD refers to dates after Jesus's birth
BC refers to dates before the birth of Jesus of Nazareth
BCE refers to "Before Common Era," dates before the birth of Jesus of Nazareth
CE refers to "Common Era," dates after Jesus's birth
century a period of 100 years
civilization the culture of a particular time or place
climate the weather conditions in a certain area over a long period of time
culture the knowledge, beliefs, customs, and values of a group of people
custom a repeated practice; tradition
democracy governmental rule by the people, usually on a majority rule principle
economy the system in which people make and exchange goods and services
geography the study of the earth's physical and cultural features
independence freedom from forceful rule
monarchy governmental rule by one person, a king or queen
North the region of the United States sometimes defined by the states that did not secede from the Union during the Civil War
rebellion an organized resistance to the established government
society a group of people who share common traditions
South the region of the United States sometimes defined by the states that seceded from the Union to form the Confederate States of America

Mapping the Earth

A **globe** is a scale model of the earth. It is useful for showing the entire earth or studying large areas of the earth's surface.

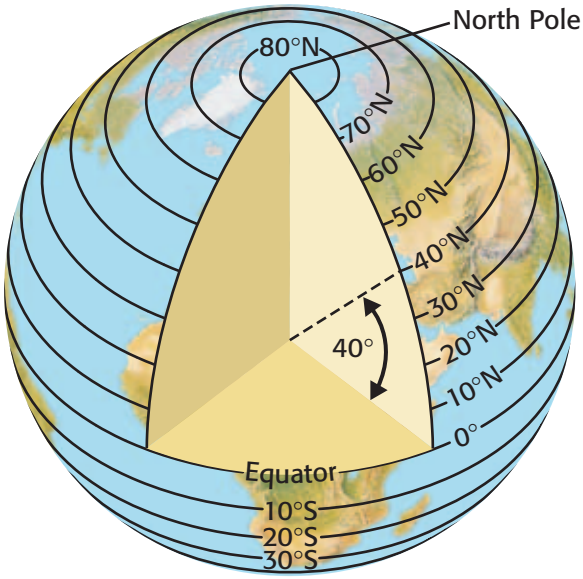
A pattern of lines circles the globe in east-west and north-south directions. It is called a **grid**. The intersection of these imaginary lines helps us find places on the earth.

The east-west lines in the grid are lines of **latitude**. Lines of latitude are called **parallels** because they are always parallel to each other. These imaginary lines measure distance north and south of the **equator**. The equator is an imaginary line that circles the globe halfway between the North and South Poles. Parallels measure distance from the equator in **degrees**. The symbol for degrees is °. Degrees are further divided into **minutes**. The symbol for minutes is ´. There are 60 minutes in a degree. Parallels north of the equator are labeled with an N. Those south of the equator are labeled with an S.

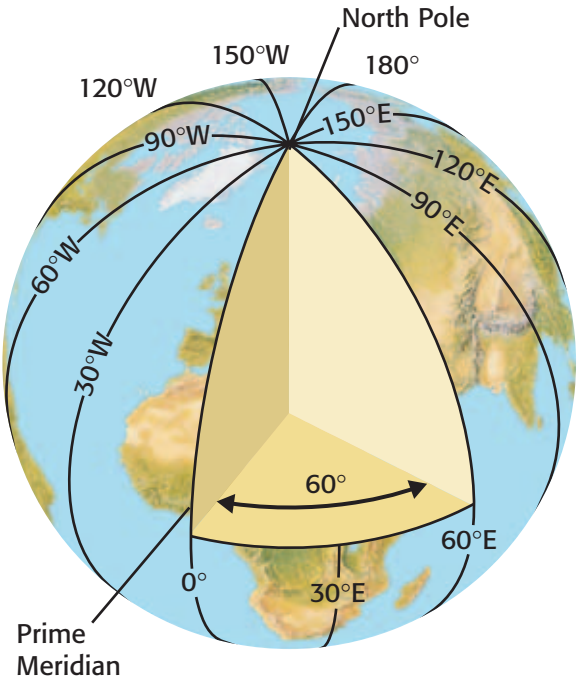
The north-south lines are lines of **longitude**. Lines of longitude are called **meridians**. These imaginary lines pass through the Poles. They measure distance east and west of the **prime meridian**. The prime meridian is an imaginary line that runs through Greenwich, England. It represents 0° longitude.

Lines of latitude range from 0°, for locations on the equator, to 90°N or 90°S, for locations at the Poles. Lines of longitude range from 0° on the prime meridian to 180° on a meridian in the mid-Pacific Ocean. Meridians west of the prime meridian to 180° are labeled with a W. Those east of the prime meridian to 180° are labeled with an E.

Lines of Latitude



Lines of Longitude



The equator divides the globe into two halves, called **hemispheres**. The half north of the equator is the Northern Hemisphere. The southern half is the Southern Hemisphere. The prime meridian and the 180° meridian divide the world into the Eastern Hemisphere and the Western Hemisphere. However, the prime meridian runs right through Europe and Africa. To avoid dividing these continents between two hemispheres, some mapmakers divide the Eastern and Western hemispheres at 20°W. This places all of Europe and Africa in the Eastern Hemisphere.

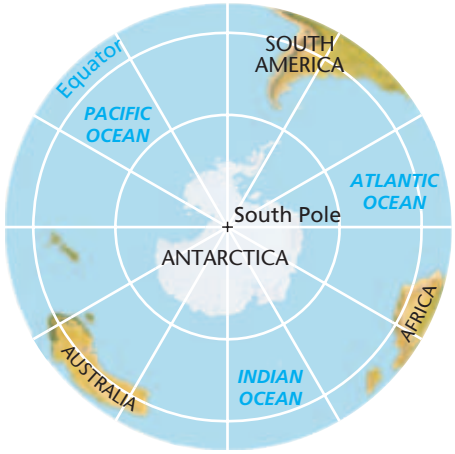
Our planet's land surface is divided into seven large landmasses, called **continents**. They are identified in the maps on this page. Landmasses smaller than continents and completely surrounded by water are called **islands**.

Geographers also organize Earth's water surface into parts. The largest is the world ocean. Geographers divide the world ocean into the Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Indian Ocean, and the Arctic Ocean. Lakes and seas are smaller bodies of water.

Northern Hemisphere



Southern Hemisphere



Western Hemisphere

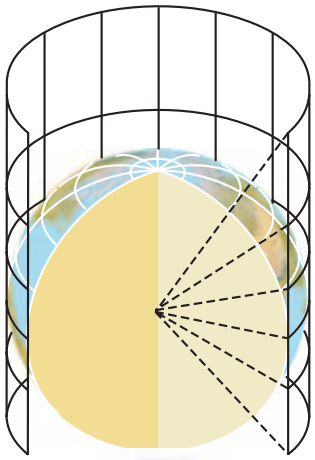


Eastern Hemisphere



Mapmaking

A **map** is a flat diagram of all or part of the earth's surface. Mapmakers have created different ways of showing our round planet on flat maps. These different ways are called **map projections**. Because the earth is round, there is no way to show it accurately in a flat map. All flat maps are distorted in some way. Mapmakers must choose the type of map projection that is best for their purposes. Many map projections are one of three kinds: cylindrical, conic, or flat-plane.

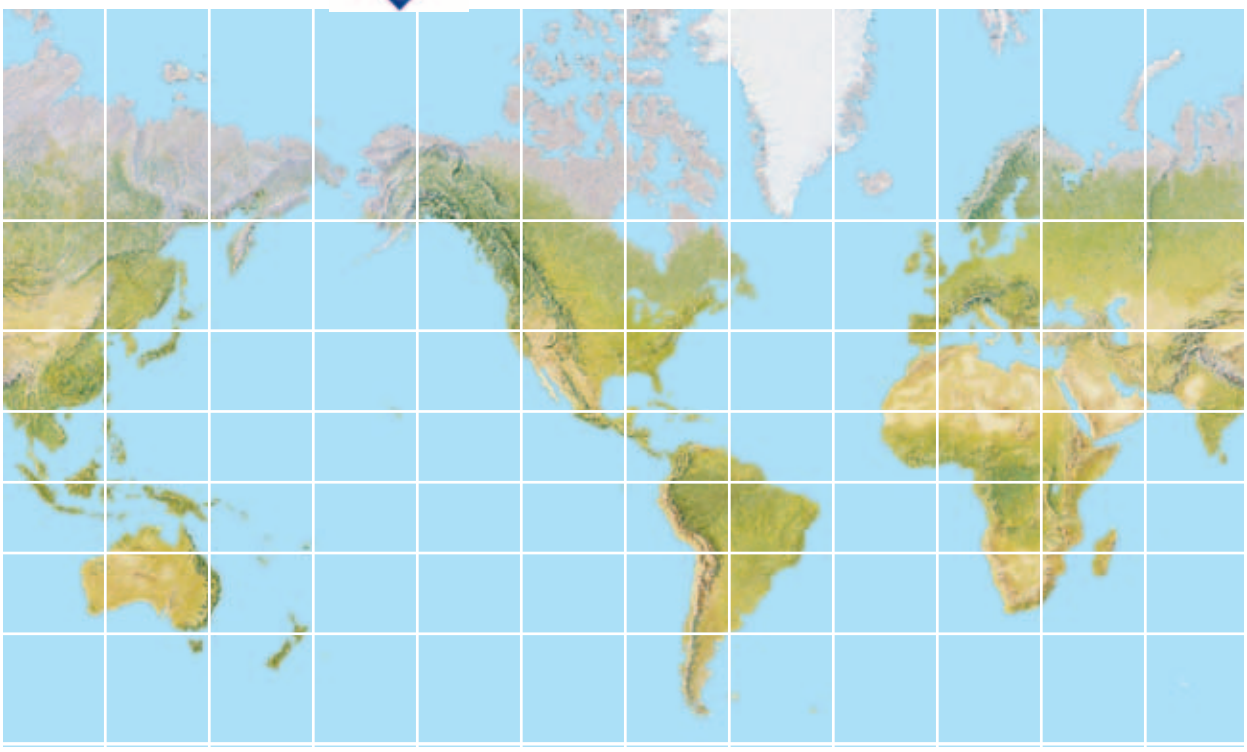


Paper cylinder

Cylindrical Projections

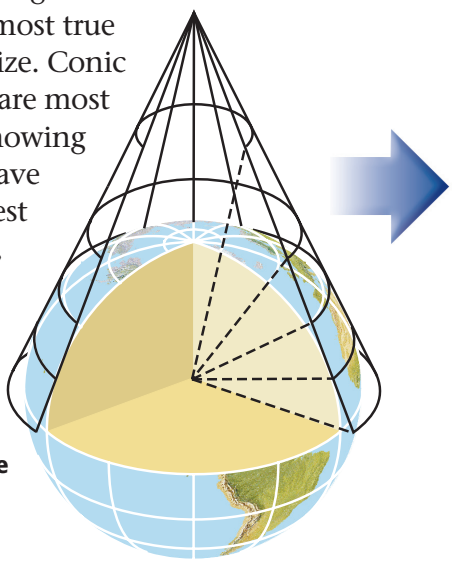
Cylindrical projections are based on a cylinder wrapped around the globe. The cylinder touches the globe only at the equator. The meridians are pulled apart and are parallel to each other instead of meeting at the Poles. This causes landmasses near the Poles to appear larger than they really are. The map below is a Mercator projection, one type of cylindrical projection. The Mercator projection is useful for navigators because it shows true direction and shape. However, it distorts the size of land areas near the Poles.

Mercator projection



Conic Projections

Conic projections are based on a cone placed over the globe. A conic projection is most accurate along the lines of latitude where it touches the globe. It retains almost true shape and size. Conic projections are most useful for showing areas that have long east-west dimensions, such as the United States.



Paper cone

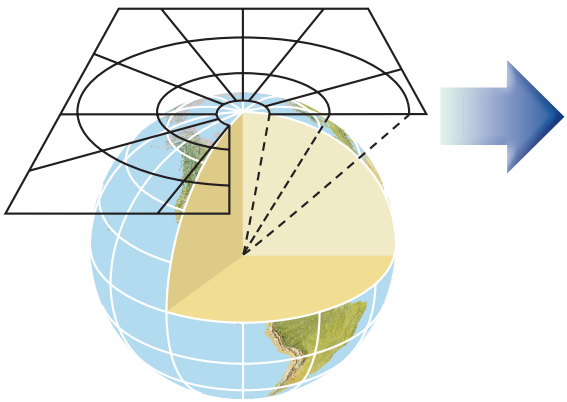


Conic projection

Flat-Plane Projections

Flat-plane projections are based on a plane touching the globe at one point, such as at the North Pole or South Pole. A flat-plane projection is useful for showing true direction for airplane pilots and ship navigators. It also shows true area. However, it distorts the true shapes of landmasses.

Flat plane



Flat-plane projection

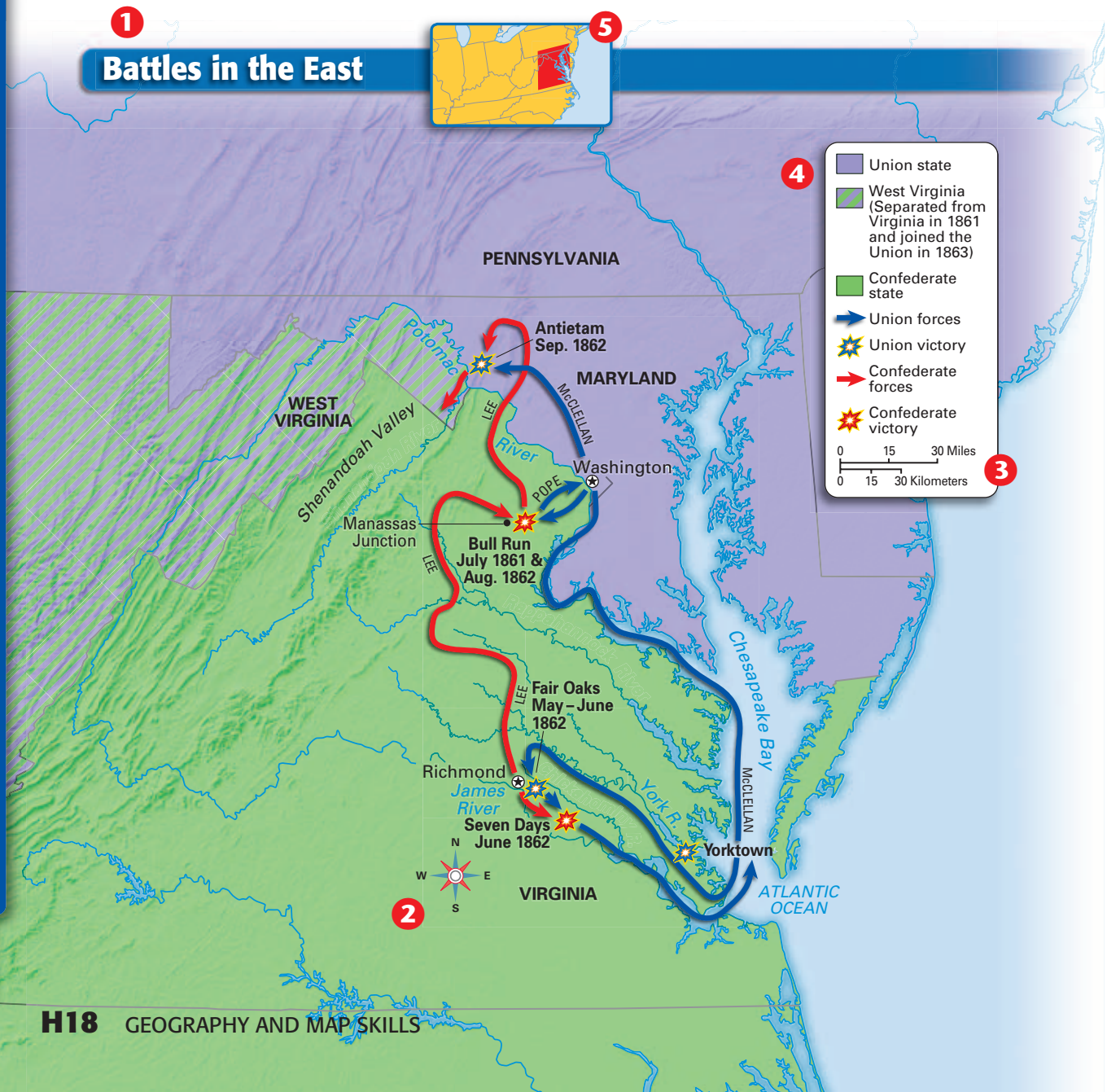


Map Essentials

Maps are like messages sent out in code. Mapmakers provide certain elements that help us translate these codes. These elements help us understand the message they are presenting about a particular part of the world. Of these elements, almost all maps have titles, directional indicators, scales, and legends. The map below has all four of these elements, plus a fifth—a locator map.

1 Title

A map's **title** shows what the subject of the map is. The map title is usually the first thing you should look at when studying a map, because it tells you what the map is trying to show.



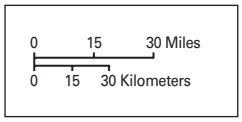
2 Compass Rose

A directional indicator shows which way north, south, east, and west lie on the map. Some mapmakers use a "north arrow," which points toward the North Pole. Remember, "north" is not always at the top of a map. The way a map is drawn and the location of directions on that map depend on the perspective of the mapmaker. Most maps in this textbook indicate direction by using a compass rose. A **compass rose** has arrows that point to all four principal directions, as shown.



3 Scale

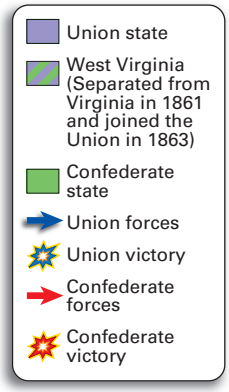
Mapmakers use scales to show the distances between points on a map. Scales may appear on maps in several different forms. The maps in this textbook provide a bar **scale**. Scales give distances in miles and kilometers.



To find the distance between two points on the map, place a piece of paper so that the edge connects the two points. Mark the location of each point on the paper with a line or dot. Then, compare the distance between the two dots with the map's bar scale. The number on the top of the scale gives the distance in miles. The number on the bottom gives the distance in kilometers. Because the distances are given in large intervals, you may have to approximate the actual distance on the scale.

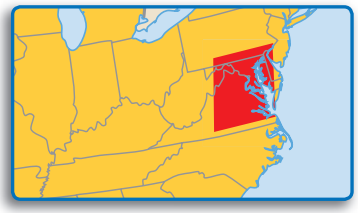
4 Legend

The **legend**, or key, explains what the symbols on the map represent. Point symbols are used to specify the location of things, such as cities, that do not take up much space on the map. Some legends, such as the one shown here, show colors that represent certain elevations. Other maps might have legends with symbols or colors that represent things such as roads. Legends can also show economic resources, land use, population density, and climate.



5 Locator Map

A locator map shows where in the world the area on the main map is located. The area shown on the main map is shown in red on the locator map. The locator map also shows surrounding areas so the map reader can see how the information on the map relates to neighboring lands.

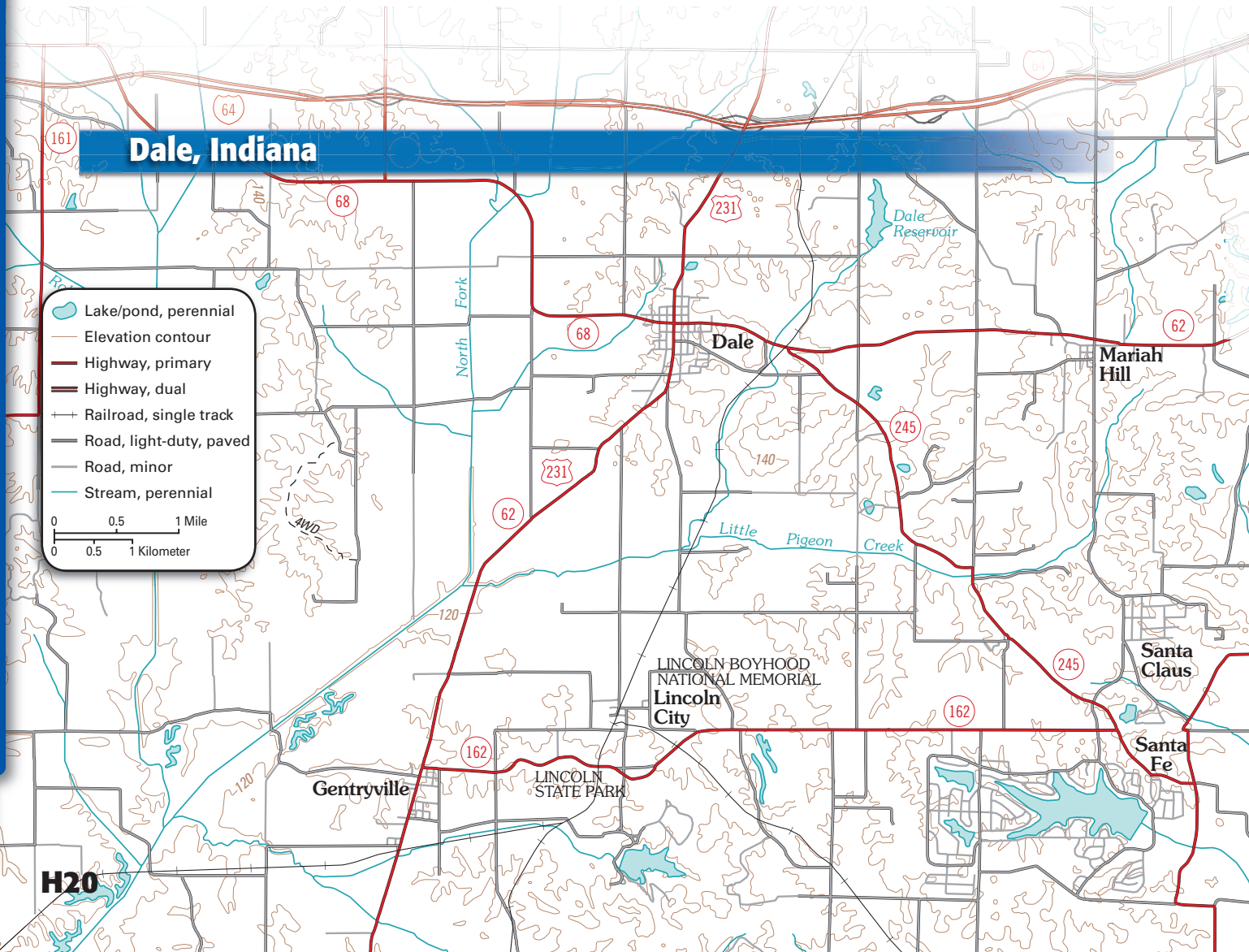


Working with Maps

The Atlas at the back of this textbook includes both physical and political maps. Physical maps, like the one you just saw and the one below, show the major physical features in a region. These features include things like mountain ranges, rivers, islands, and plains. Political maps show the major political features of a region, such as countries and their borders, capitals, and other important cities.

Topographic Maps

Some maps are topographic maps. A topographic map, like this one, shows the shape of the earth's surface using contour lines. Contour lines are imaginary lines connecting points of the same elevation above sea level. The distance between the lines represents the distance between points on the earth's surface. If the lines are close together, the feature is more steep than if the lines are far apart. Symbols on topographic maps represent natural and manmade features such as rivers, mountains, roads, and even buildings. Name five symbols you see on this topographic map.





Historical Map

In this textbook, most of the maps you will study are historical maps. Historical maps, such as this one, are maps that show information about the past. This information might be which lands an empire controlled or where a certain group of people lived. Often colors are used to indicate the different things on the map. What does this map show?

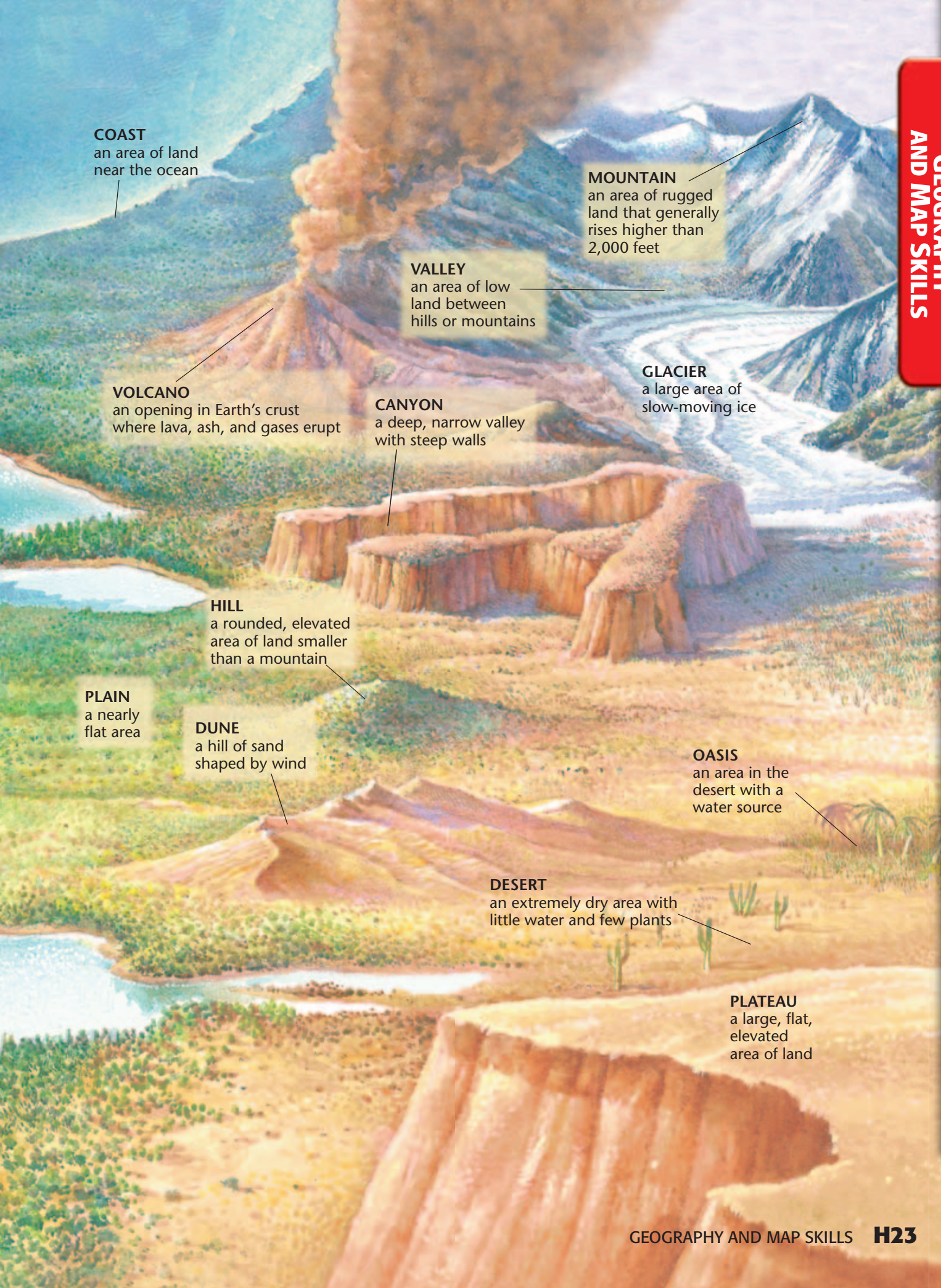
Route Map

One special type of historical map is called a route map. A route map, like the one above, shows the route, or path, that someone or something followed. Route maps can show things like trade routes, invasion routes, or the journeys and travels of people. If more than one route is shown, several arrows of different colors may be used. What does this route map show?

The maps in this textbook will help you study and understand history. By working with these maps, you will see where important events happened, where empires rose and fell, and where people moved. In studying these maps, you will learn how geography has influenced history.

Geographic Dictionary




COAST
an area of land near the ocean
MOUNTAIN
an area of rugged land that generally rises higher than 2,000 feet
VALLEY
an area of low land between hills or mountains
VOLCANO
an opening in Earth's crust where lava, ash, and gases erupt
CANYON
a deep, narrow valley with steep walls
GLACIER
a large area of slow-moving ice
HILL
a rounded, elevated area of land smaller than a mountain
PLAIN
a nearly flat area
DUNE
a hill of sand shaped by wind
OASIS
an area in the desert with a water source
DESERT
an extremely dry area with little water and few plants
PLATEAU
a large, flat, elevated area of land

The Five Themes of Geography



Geography is the study of the world's people and places. As you can imagine, studying the entire world is a big job. To make the job easier, geographers have created the Five Themes of Geography. They are: **Location, Place, Human-Environment Interaction, Movement,** and **Region**. You can think of the Five Themes as five windows you can look through to study a place. If you looked at the same place through five different windows, you would have five different perspectives, or viewpoints, of the place. Using the Five Themes in this way will help you better understand the world's people and places.

1 Location The first thing to study about a place is its location. Where is it? Every place has an absolute location—its exact location on Earth. A place also has a relative location—its location in relation to other places. Use the theme of location to ask questions like, "Where is this place located, and how has its location affected it?"

2 Place Every place in the world is unique and has its own personality and character. Some things that can make a place unique include its weather, plants and animals, history, and the people that live there. Use the theme of place to ask questions like, "What are the unique features of this place, and how are they important?"

3 Human-Environment Interaction People interact with their environment in many ways. They use land to grow food and local materials to build houses. At the same time, a place's environment influences how people live. For example, if the weather is cold, people wear warm clothes. Use the theme of human-environment interaction to ask questions like, "What is this place's environment like, and how does it affect the people who live there?"

4 Movement The world is constantly changing, and places are affected by the movement of people, goods, ideas, and physical forces. For example, people come and go, new businesses begin, and rivers change their course. Use the theme of movement to ask questions like, "How is this place changing, and why?"

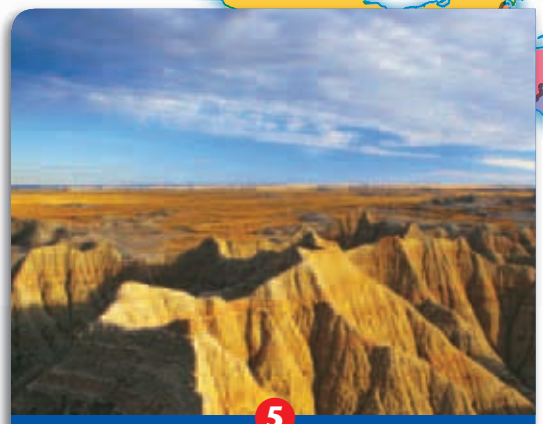
5 Region A region is an area that has one or more features that make it different from surrounding areas. A desert, a country, and a coastal area are all regions. Geographers use regions to break the world into smaller pieces that are easier to study. Use the theme of region to ask questions like "What common features does this area share, and how is it different from other areas?"



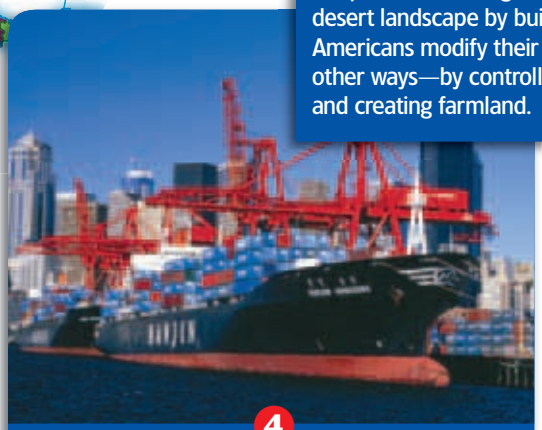
1 LOCATION
The United States is located in the Western Hemisphere. Forty-eight of the states are located between Mexico and Canada. This location has good farmland, many resources, and many different natural environments.

2 PLACE
New York City is one of the most powerful cities in the world. The people of New York also make the city one of the most ethnically diverse places in the world.

3 HUMAN-ENVIRONMENT INTERACTION
People near Las Vegas, Nevada, transform the desert landscape by building new neighborhoods. Americans modify their environment in many other ways—by controlling rivers, building roads, and creating farmland.



5 REGION
The United States is a political region with one government. At the same time, smaller regions can be found inside the country, such as the Badlands in South Dakota.



4 MOVEMENT
People, goods, and ideas are constantly moving to and from places such as Seattle, Washington. As some places grow, others get smaller, but every place is always changing.

How to Make This Book Work for You

Studying U.S. history will be easy for you using this textbook. Take a few minutes to become familiar with the easy-to-use structure and special features of this history book. See how this U.S. history textbook will make history come alive for you!



Unit

Each chapter of this textbook is part of a unit of study focusing on a particular time period. Each unit opener provides an illustration, painting, or photograph that gives you an overview of the exciting topics that you will study in the unit.

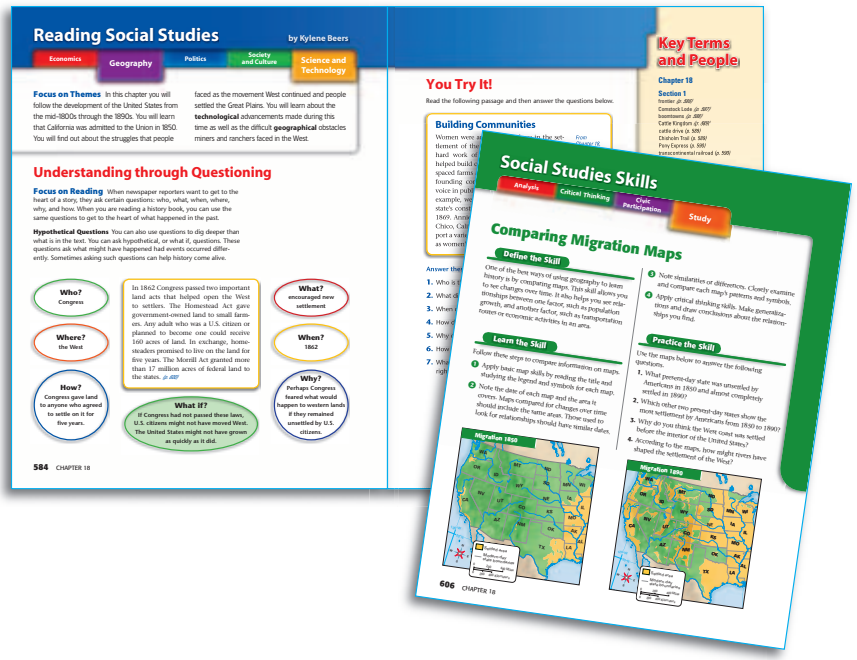


Chapter

Each chapter begins with a chapter-opener introduction where the sections of the chapter are listed out, and ends with Chapter Review pages and a Standardized Test Practice page.

Reading Social Studies These chapter-level reading lessons teach you skills and provide opportunities for practice to help you read the textbook more successfully. Within each chapter there is a point-of-reference *Focus on Reading* note in the margin to demonstrate the reading skill for the chapter. There are also questions in the Chapter Review activity to make sure that you understand the reading skill.

Social Studies Skills The Social Studies Skills lessons, which appear at the end of each chapter, give you an opportunity to learn and use a skill that you will most likely use again while in school. You will also be given a chance to make sure that you understand each skill by answering related questions in the Chapter Review activity.



Section

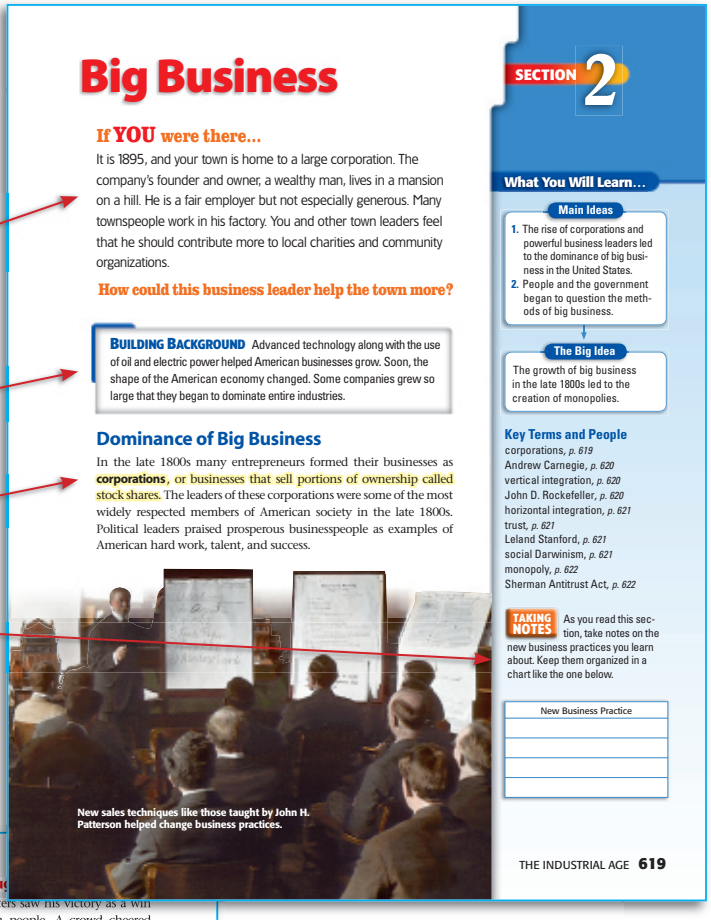
The Section opener pages include: Main Idea statements, an overarching Big Idea statement, and Key Terms and People. In addition, each section includes the following special features.

If You Were There . . . introductions begin each section with a situation for you to respond to, placing you in the time period and in a situation related to the content that you will be studying in the section.

Building Background sections connect what will be covered in this section with what you studied in the previous section.

Short sections of content organize the information in each section into small chunks of text that you should not find too overwhelming.

The **Taking Notes** feature allows you to write down the most important information from the section in a usable format.



Big Business

SECTION 2

If YOU were there...

It is 1895, and your town is home to a large corporation. The company's founder and owner, a wealthy man, lives in a mansion on a hill. He is a fair employer but not especially generous. Many townspeople work in his factory. You and other town leaders feel that he should contribute more to local charities and community organizations.

How could this business leader help the town more?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Advanced technology along with the use of oil and electric power helped American businesses grow. Soon, the shape of the American economy changed. Some companies grew so large that they began to dominate entire industries.

Dominance of Big Business

In the late 1800s many entrepreneurs formed their businesses as **corporations**, or businesses that sell portions of ownership called stock shares. The leaders of these corporations were some of the most widely respected members of American society in the late 1800s. Political leaders praised prosperous businesspeople as examples of American hard work, talent, and success.

New sales techniques like those taught by John H. Patterson helped change business practices.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The rise of corporations and powerful business leaders led to the dominance of big business in the United States.
2. People and the government began to question the methods of big business.

The Big Idea

The growth of big business in the late 1800s led to the creation of monopolies.

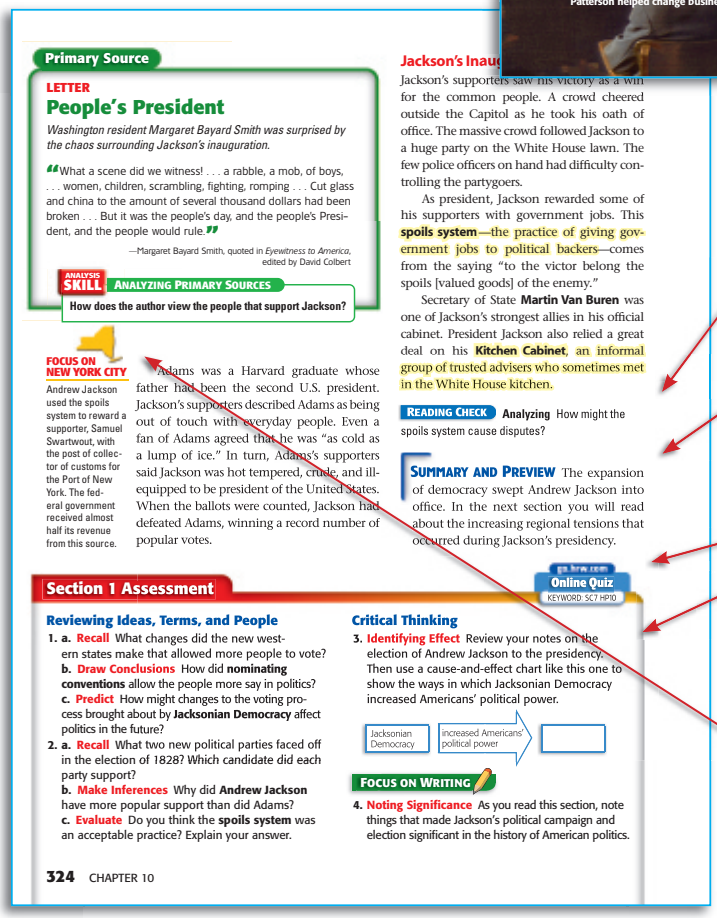
Key Terms and People

corporations, *p. 619*
Andrew Carnegie, *p. 620*
vertical integration, *p. 620*
John D. Rockefeller, *p. 620*
horizontal integration, *p. 621*
trust, *p. 621*
Leland Stanford, *p. 621*
social Darwinism, *p. 621*
monopoly, *p. 622*
Sherman Antitrust Act, *p. 622*

TAKING NOTES As you read this section, take notes on the new business practices you learn about. Keep them organized in a chart like the one below.

New Business Practice

THE INDUSTRIAL AGE 619



Primary Source

LETTER

People's President

Washington resident Margaret Bayard Smith was surprised by the chaos surrounding Jackson's inauguration.

"What a scene did we witness! . . . a rabble, a mob, of boys, . . . women, children, scrambling, fighting, romping . . . Cut glass and china to the amount of several thousand dollars had been broken . . . But it was the people's day, and the people's President, and the people would rule."

—Margaret Bayard Smith, quoted in *Eyewitness to America*, edited by David Colbert

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

How does the author view the people that support Jackson?

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

Andrew Jackson used the spoils system to reward a supporter, Samuel Swartwout, with the post of collector of customs for the Port of New York. The federal government received almost half its revenue from this source.

Adams was a Harvard graduate whose father had been the second U.S. president. Jackson's supporters described Adams as being out of touch with everyday people. Even a fan of Adams agreed that he was "as cold as a lump of ice." In turn, Adams's supporters said Jackson was hot tempered, crude, and ill-equipped to be president of the United States. When the ballots were counted, Jackson had defeated Adams, winning a record number of popular votes.

Jackson's Inau

Jackson's supporters saw his victory as a win for the common people. A crowd cheered outside the Capitol as he took his oath of office. The massive crowd followed Jackson to a huge party on the White House lawn. The few police officers on hand had difficulty controlling the partygoers.

As president, Jackson rewarded some of his supporters with government jobs. This **spoils system**—the practice of giving government jobs to political backers—comes from the saying "to the victor belong the spoils [valued goods] of the enemy."

Secretary of State **Martin Van Buren** was one of Jackson's strongest allies in his official cabinet. President Jackson also relied a great deal on his **Kitchen Cabinet**, an informal group of trusted advisers who sometimes met in the White House kitchen.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How might the spoils system cause disputes?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The expansion of democracy swept Andrew Jackson into office. In the next section you will read about the increasing regional tensions that occurred during Jackson's presidency.

go.hrw.com Online Quiz KEYWORD: SC7 HP10

Section 1 Assessment

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. a. **Recall** What changes did the new western states make that allowed more people to vote?
   b. **Draw Conclusions** How did **nominating conventions** allow the people more say in politics?
   c. **Predict** How might changes to the voting process brought about by **Jacksonian Democracy** affect politics in the future?
2. a. **Recall** What two new political parties faced off in the election of 1828? Which candidate did each party support?
   b. **Make Inferences** Why did **Andrew Jackson** have more popular support than did Adams?
   c. **Evaluate** Do you think the **spoils system** was an acceptable practice? Explain your answer.

Critical Thinking

3. **Identifying Effect** Review your notes on the election of Andrew Jackson to the presidency. Then use a cause-and-effect chart like this one to show the ways in which Jacksonian Democracy increased Americans' political power.

Jacksonian Democracy → increased Americans' political power → [ ]

FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Noting Significance** As you read this section, note things that made Jackson's political campaign and election significant in the history of American politics.

324 CHAPTER 10

Reading Check questions end each section of content so that you can test whether or not you understand what you have just studied.

Summary and Preview statements connect what you have just studied in the section to what you will study in the next section.

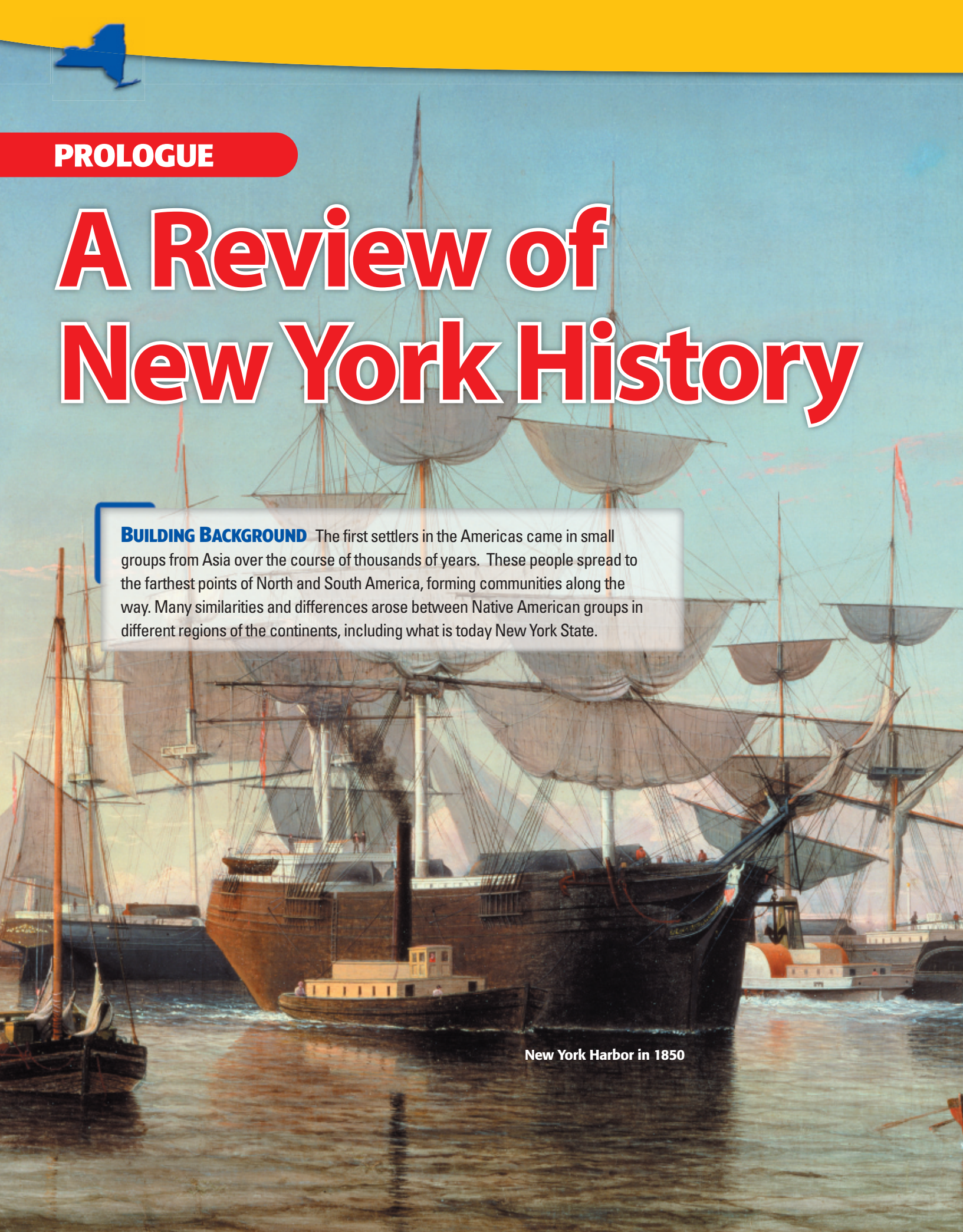
Section Assessment boxes provide an opportunity for you to make sure that you understand the main ideas of the section. We also provide assessment practice online!

Focus on New York City features highlight events in New York City history, while **Focus on New York** features offer additional information about New York state history.

PROLOGUE

A Review of New York History

BUILDING BACKGROUND The first settlers in the Americas came in small groups from Asia over the course of thousands of years. These people spread to the farthest points of North and South America, forming communities along the way. Many similarities and differences arose between Native American groups in different regions of the continents, including what is today New York State.



New York Harbor in 1850

Early New York

Reading Focus *As you read, think about what life might have been like for a colonial New Yorker.*

Archaeologists believe that people began living in what is now New York about 10,000 years ago. By about A.D. 1200, two major Native American cultures had developed in this region—the Algonquin and the Iroquois. Algonquin groups built villages near the Atlantic coast and along the rivers and streams of southern New York. Iroquois groups lived mainly in central and western New York. Both Algonquin and Iroquois groups made use of the natural resources of the Eastern Woodlands. Wood was used to build canoes and tools, and areas of forest land were cleared to plant corn and other crops.

In about 1570, five Iroquois nations—the Seneca, Cayuga, Onondaga, Oneida, and Mohawk—joined to form a powerful alliance that became known as the Iroquois Confederacy. Representatives from the five met often to select leaders, resolve disputes, and decide on policies. The Iroquois Confederacy remained an influential force in the region well into the 1700s.

Colonial New York

Italian explorer Giovanni da Verrazano sailed into what is now New York Harbor in 1524, becoming the first European to see New York. In 1609 Henry Hudson, sailing for the Dutch, explored the river that was soon named for him. Hudson's explorations led the Dutch government to claim New York. The Dutch named their colony New Netherland.

The Dutch and English

Dutch traders were attracted to New Netherland by the abundance of valuable resources, especially fur. In 1624 the Dutch established Fort Orange,

Early New York, 1400–1625



Giovanni da Verrazano

1400s Iroquois tribes build large villages in what is now central and western New York.

1524 Giovanni da Verrazano becomes the first European to see New York.

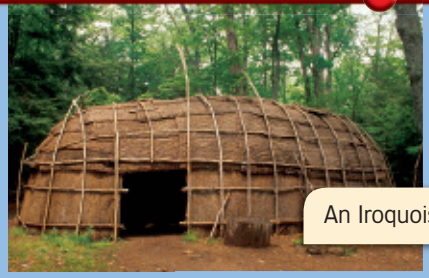
1609 Henry Hudson explores the Hudson River for the Dutch.

1400 — 1625

1400s Algonquin tribes live near rivers and along the seacoast of what is now New York.

1570 Five Iroquois nations form the Iroquois Confederacy.

1624 Dutch colonists establish Fort Orange at the site of present-day Albany.



An Iroquois longhouse

1625 The Dutch establish New Amsterdam on Manhattan Island.

KEY FACTS

- **1625** Dutch New Amsterdam is established on Manhattan.
- **1664** New Amsterdam is renamed New York by the English.
- **1763** The French and Indian War breaks out.
- **1776** The thirteen American colonies declare independence.

a fur-trading post on the Hudson River. The following year, Dutch settlers established New Amsterdam at the southern end of the island of Manhattan. From its earliest days, New Amsterdam was home to a diverse mix of cultures—a visitor in the 1640s reported hearing 18 different languages in the growing city. Outside of the towns, huge tracts of fertile land were granted to wealthy landowners called patrons. Patrons then rented sections of their land to farmers.

Eager to build an empire of its own, England conquered New Netherland in 1664, renaming the colony New York. The city of New Amsterdam became New York City, and Fort Orange was renamed Albany.

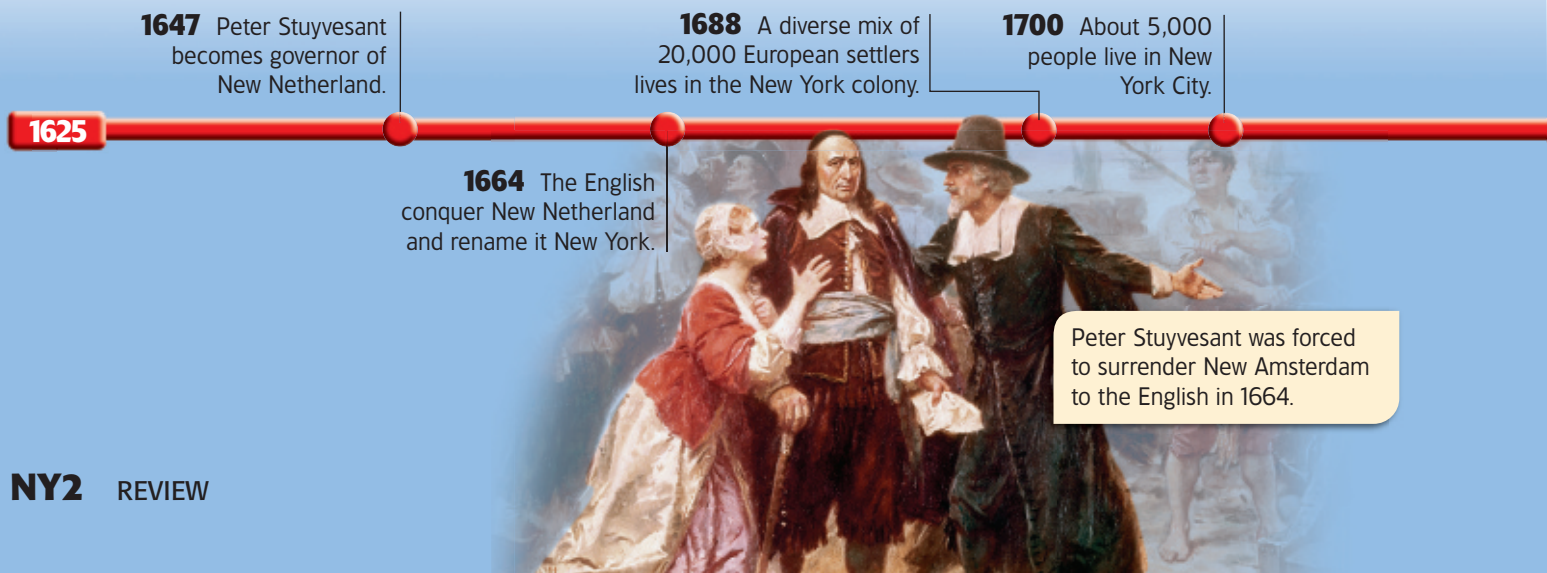
Native Americans and Colonists

By 1700 a diverse mix of about 20,000 European settlers lived in the New York colony. In some ways, these colonists were similar to the Native Americans who also lived in New York. Cultural traditions and family ties were very important in both societies. Both developed systems of organizing communities and choosing leaders. Both worked to be as self-sufficient as possible.

Differences between Native Americans and colonists included the social roles of men and women in each community. Iroquois women had more influence than most women in colonial societies. In addition, in Iroquois communities, women could select and remove tribal leaders and also did much of the farming.

Native Americans and colonists spoke different languages and often addressed each other by different names. Dutch settlers, for example, named Algonquian groups according to nearby geographic features. That explains how the Lenape people, who lived along the Delaware River, became known to Europeans as the Delaware. "Iroquois" was also a name used by Europeans. The Iroquois referred to themselves as Haudenosaunee, meaning "people of the longhouse."

From Colony to State, 1625–1800



From Colony to State

New York continued to grow under British rule, with industries such as farming and shipbuilding gaining importance. By 1733 New York was one of 13 British colonies along the east coast of what is now the United States.

Declaring Independence

In the 1760s, Britain decided to raise the tax on American colonists. New Yorkers joined the protests that soon led to the American Revolution.

The Revolution created challenges for the new states. New Yorkers had to organize a new state government, recruit soldiers, help finance the war effort, and deal with issues such as slavery. Citizens were divided over these important issues, as well as over support for the war. New York City, captured by the British in 1776, became a refuge for Loyalists. In other parts of the state, Loyalists were attacked or had their property confiscated.

New York and the Revolution

New York State witnessed many important battles during the war. In 1775 Patriots seized Fort Ticonderoga, capturing badly needed cannons for the Continental Army. The British invasion of New York in 1777 ended with an American victory at Saratoga—a victory that became known as the "turning point" of the war. New York also saw fierce fighting between Patriots and Iroquois groups, several of which sided with Britain. The war destroyed the power of the Iroquois Confederacy in New York.

When the war finally ended in 1783, George Washington and his officers held a farewell ceremony at Fraunces Tavern in New York City. Many Loyalists fled to Canada. This migration changed the balance between British and French settlers in Canada, resulting in a strengthening of ties to Great Britain.

Participation in the struggle for independence changed the way New Yorkers thought about government. Many now expected to become active citizens in their government. Republican ideals, which emphasized the sharing of power, began to influence politics in the new state.

Revolutionary Battle Map of New York



1733 New York is one of 13 British colonies in North America.

1754 The Albany Plan of Union provides a model for later plans of government.

1763 The British defeat the French in the French and Indian War.

1765 The Stamp Act Congress meets in New York City.

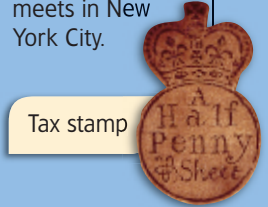
1775 The Patriots capture Fort Ticonderoga.

1776 The British occupy New York City during the American Revolution.

1777 The Americans win the Battle of Saratoga.

1783 Washington says goodbye to his officers at Fraunces Tavern.

1800



Tax stamp

KEY FACTS

- **1777** New York's first state constitution is written.
- **1786** The Annapolis Convention takes place.
- **1788** The Poughkeepsie Convention is held.
- **1788** The U.S. Constitution is ratified by New York.

Forming New Governments

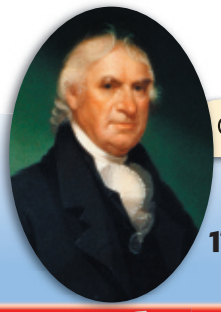
Twenty years before the Revolution, New Yorkers were involved in an early attempt to organize a government with other colonies. This happened in Albany in 1754, when leaders from several colonies met and drafted the Albany Plan of Union. The Albany Plan called for the 13 colonies to work closely together in a central government. Though the plan was not adopted, its ideas would influence later attempts to form a national government.

After declaring independence in July 1776, New Yorkers began work on a state constitution. Led by John Jay, Robert Livingston, and Gouverneur Morris, New York leaders completed drafting a New York constitution in 1777. The constitution, which included the text of the Declaration of Independence, was approved by representatives at the constitutional convention in Kingston, New York. It was not submitted to a popular vote. The constitution set up a government that was similar to New York's colonial government, with several important changes.

The plan of government was based on the principle of majority rule, with protections for the rights and liberties of the minority. A governor with limited authority served a three-year term. New York's legislature had two houses: the Senate and the Assembly. Senators served four-year terms, while Assembly members served a one-year term. New York's first system of state courts was also established by the constitution. The right to vote for elected leaders was limited to men who owned property. New York's new constitution was in effect from 1777 to 1822.

New York's early state government functioned fairly well—more smoothly, in fact, than the national government under the Articles of Confederation. For this reason, the New York constitution became a model for the new national plan of government.

Forming New Governments, 1750–1800



George Clinton

1750

1754 The Albany Plan of Union provides a model for later plans of government.

1754 The French and Indian War begins.

1777 George Clinton is elected first governor of New York.

1777 New York's first state constitution is written.



Draft of the first New York state constitution

New York and the U.S. Constitution

The national government under the Articles of Confederation was clearly unable to solve the young country's problems. In 1786 Alexander Hamilton represented New York at the Annapolis Convention in Annapolis, Maryland. Hamilton and leaders from other states discussed ways to improve the effectiveness of the national government while maintaining key elements of the new philosophy of self-rule. This meeting led to the Constitutional Convention the following year in Philadelphia. Hamilton influenced the debate in Philadelphia with his ideas for a powerful national government. The United States Constitution was completed and signed by delegates in September 1787.

Each state now had to decide whether or not to ratify the new Constitution. This sparked heated debate between Federalists, who supported the Constitution, and Antifederalists, who worried that it gave the federal government too much power. New York governor George Clinton was an outspoken Antifederalist, and it looked as if the Constitution would be rejected by this important state. To try to prevent this, Alexander Hamilton and John Jay joined James Madison of Virginia to write the *Federalist Papers*, a series of articles arguing in favor of ratification. First published in New York City newspapers, the *Federalist Papers* greatly influenced the debate in New York and other states.

New York's ratification convention was held in Poughkeepsie in June 1788. The delegates approved the Constitution in a close vote of 30 to 27. Several Antifederalists voted for ratification based on the promise that a bill of rights would be added to Constitution.

New York City served as the first national capital under the new constitution. George Washington traveled to New York City and was sworn in as the nation's first president on April 30, 1789. Washington chose Alexander Hamilton for the key position of secretary of the treasury.



George Washington

1789 George Washington is sworn in as president in New York City.

1789 Alexander Hamilton becomes the nation's first secretary of the treasury.

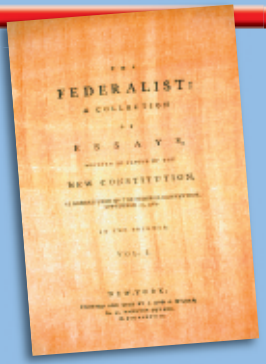
1786 New York leaders attend the Annapolis Convention.

1787–1788 Alexander Hamilton and John Jay help write the *Federalist Papers*.

1788 Delegates to the Poughkeepsie Convention discuss New York's ratification of the Constitution.

1788 New York becomes the eleventh state to ratify the Constitution.

1800



The *Federalist Papers*

The Empire State

KEY FACTS

- **1807** The *Clermont* makes its first voyage.
- **1825** The Erie Canal is completed.
- **1831** New York's first railroad between Albany and Schenectady opens.

Reading Focus *As you read, notice how life changed for New Yorkers during the early and mid-1800s.*

At the time of the American Revolution, New York ranked just seventh in population among the original 13 states. This changed quickly after independence, as New York experienced explosive growth. By 1810 New York had the largest population in the nation and was among the leaders in manufacturing, transportation, and trade. In the early 1800s, people began referring to New York by a new nickname: "the Empire State." The name comes from a quotation by George Washington, who called New York State "the seat of empire." Washington hoped the young nation would prosper as New York had done.

Transportation and Manufacturing

The Transportation Revolution of the 1800s was a major factor in New York's rapid rise. In 1807 Robert Fulton successfully tested his steamboat *Clermont* on the Hudson River. In 1825 the 363-mile Erie Canal was completed, connecting Buffalo, on Lake Erie, with Albany, on the Hudson River. The Erie Canal greatly lowered the cost of transporting goods from the Midwest to the East. Cities along the canal boomed, and New York City became the busiest port in the country. By 1850 a growing network of railroads replaced canals in importance. As canals had done, railroads lowered the cost of moving large quantities of goods between New York and other parts of the country.

The Empire State, 1785–1835



Robert Fulton's *Clermont*

1785

1807 Robert Fulton's steamboat *Clermont* makes its first voyage.

1810 New York City is the biggest city in the United States.

1810 New York State has the largest population of any state.



New York City in 1810

Improvements in transportation helped farmers earn more money—money they wanted to spend on manufactured goods. New York cities became major manufacturing centers as the Industrial Revolution changed life in the United States. By 1860, for example, nearly half of the nation's clothing was being manufactured in New York City.

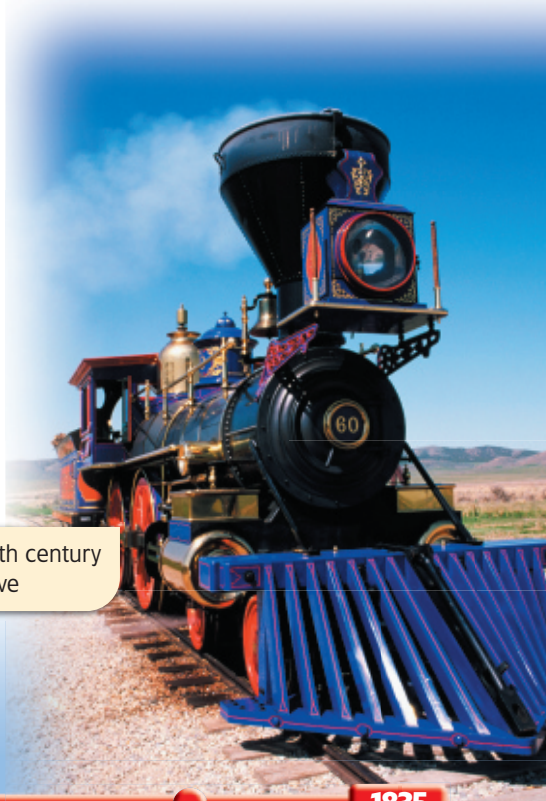
A Wave of Immigration

The rapid growth of American industry attracted millions of immigrants to the United States in the mid-1800s. Economic and political troubles in Germany and a devastating potato famine in Ireland contributed to this large wave of immigration. Most of these immigrants entered the United States at the port of New York City. Many then used the Erie Canal or New York railroads to travel west in search of farmland or factory jobs. Many also settled in New York City. In fact, New York City was not only the nation's largest city—it was also home to the nation's largest population of immigrants. By 1860, 48 percent of New York City's 1 million residents were foreign born.

This large wave of immigration led to tensions in New York, as in other states. The majority of New York's immigrants, especially those form Ireland, were Catholic. Prejudice toward Catholics sparked anti-immigrant feelings in some New Yorkers. Others worried they might lose their jobs to immigrants who would work for lower wages. Opponents of immigration were known as nativists. Nativists formed an organization known as the Know-Nothing Party, which briefly gained influence in New York politics in the 1850s.



Lockport, on the Erie Canal



Nineteenth century locomotive

1825 The Erie Canal opens.

1827 Sojourner Truth escapes from slavery to a New York farm.

1827 Slavery ends in New York State.

1831 New York's first railroad connects Albany and Schenectady.

1835



Sojourner Truth

KEY FACTS

- **1827** Slavery is abolished in New York.
- **1848** The Seneca Falls Convention is held.

Reform Movements

Like many states, New York saw an expansion of voting rights during the Age of Jackson. New York leaders revised the state constitution in 1822, changing the old law that only property owners could vote. All white men who paid taxes were granted the right to vote. Black men, however, were still required to own property in order to vote.

As more New Yorkers became actively involved in the democratic process, many began participating in reform movements. A Protestant religious revival known as the Second Great Awakening inspired reformers in New York. Revivals in central and western New York were so intense, this region became known as the "Burned-Over District" because of the heated sermons given. Inspired by the Second Great Awakening, many New Yorkers worked to solve social problems in the United States.

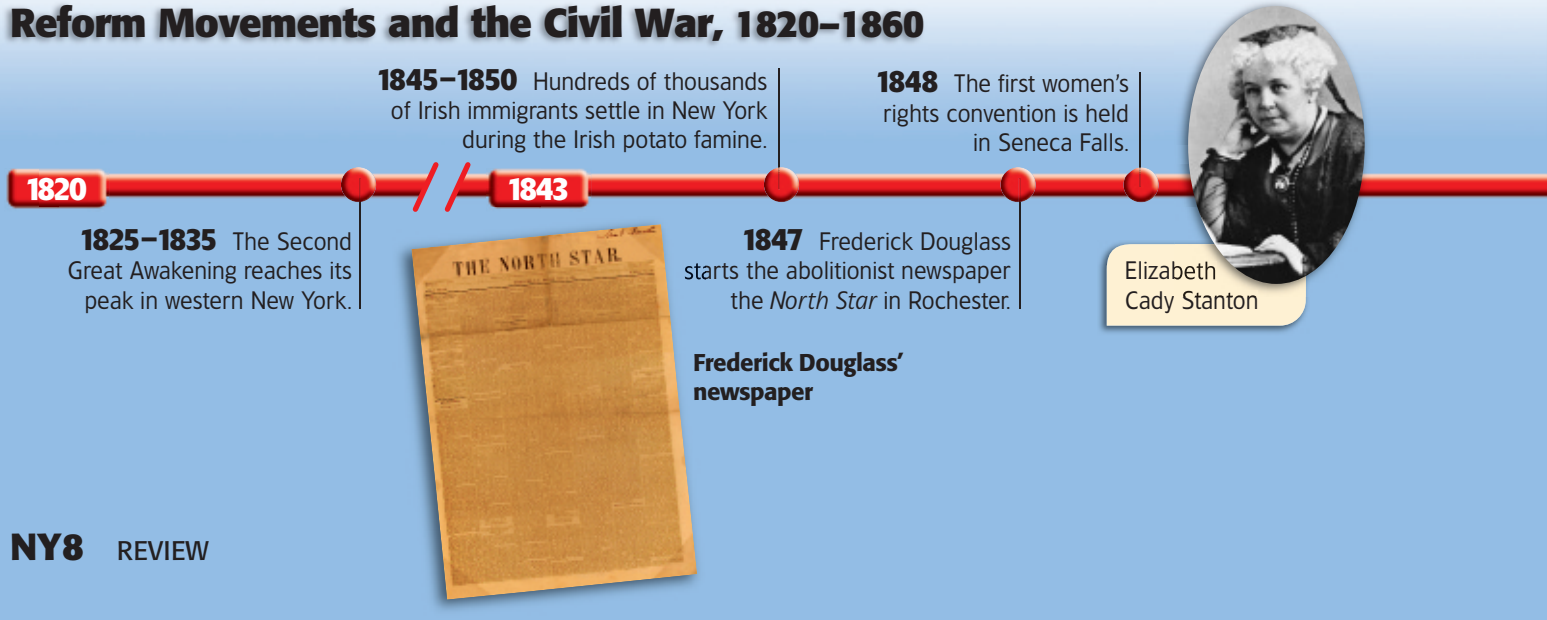
Abolition Movement

In 1799 New York passed a law calling for the gradual abolition of slavery in the state. Slavery was finally ended once and for all in 1827. Many New Yorkers, both black and white, were active in the movement to abolish slavery everywhere in the United States. Abolitionist Frederick Douglass moved to Rochester, New York, where he began publishing the *North Star*, an abolitionist newspaper. Harriet Tubman, who escorted hundreds of slaves to freedom on the Underground Railroad, also moved to New York. Several important Underground Railroad routes passed through New York and continued into Canada.

Women's Rights

New Yorker Elizabeth Cady Stanton organized the nation's first women's rights convention, which was held in Seneca Falls, New York, in 1848. The Seneca Falls Convention launched the women's rights movement. Stanton, along with Susan B. Anthony and other New York activists, helped lead a national campaign for women's property rights and voting rights.

Reform Movements and the Civil War, 1820–1860



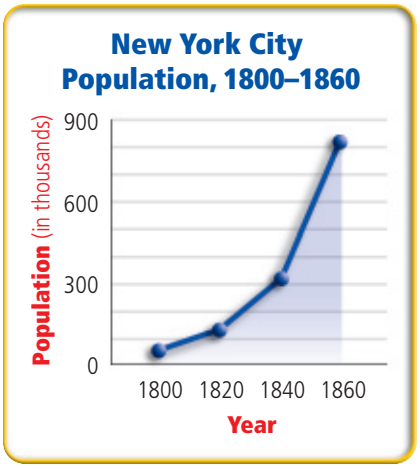
Civil War and Reconstruction

Reading Focus *As you read, explore how the Civil War affected New York state and New York City.*

In the presidential election of 1860, New York voted for Abraham Lincoln, a Republican who opposed the expansion of slavery. The state's 35 electoral votes helped Lincoln win the presidency without receiving a single electoral vote from the South. Seven southern states, protesting his election, quickly seceded from the Union and formed the Confederate States of America. In April 1861 Confederate forces launched an attack on Union troops at Fort Sumter in South Carolina, starting the Civil War. Four more Southern states soon seceded and joined the Confederacy.

New York and the Civil War

Some New Yorkers had economic and political ties to the South, and a large part of New York City's economy relied on the port there and its shipments of Southern cotton to Europe. There was therefore some support for the South in the city. The mayor of New York City even expressed a desire to secede from the Union. With the firing on Fort Sumter, however, support for the Union surged. New Yorkers immediately answered Lincoln's call for troops, and a large pro-Union rally was held at Union Square in New York City. Eventually the state would send more troops, more supplies, and more food than any other state in the nation, north or south. New York sent 500,000 soldiers to the Civil War, and more than 4,000 of these were African Americans. Its soldiers also suffered more casualties than any other state. New York factories contributed to the Union victory by producing war supplies. The Union's



The population of New York City rose dramatically during the first half of the nineteenth century.


New York textile mill in the mid-1800s

1850 New York State leads the nation in manufacturing.


Harriet Tubman

1857 Harriet Tubman moves to Auburn, New York, and continues working on the Underground Railroad.

1860 The population of New York City reaches one million.

1860 Two-thirds of the nation's imports come through the Port of New York.

1860 Abraham Lincoln speaks against slavery at Cooper Union in New York City.

1860 Abraham Lincoln wins New York in the presidential election.

1861

KEY FACTS

- **1861** The Civil War begins.
- **1863** Draft riots take place in New York City.

best known ironclad warship, the USS *Monitor,* was built in a Brooklyn shipyard.

Although no Civil War battles were fought in New York, the war did bring violent conflict to the state. In July 1863, just days after the Battle of Gettysburg, a massive riot broke out in New York City. The direct cause of the riot was the federal government's plan to draft soldiers into the Union army. The plan allowed wealthy citizens to avoid the draft by paying $300 to buy a substitute. Many poor, recent Irish immigrants could not afford the $300 and thought that free African Americans would take the jobs that immigrants wanted. During the public announcement of draftees, people began to violently attack government offices and African American workers and businesses. In five days of rioting, more than 100 people were killed and at least $1 million in damages occurred, including the arson of an African American church and orphanage. The violence finally came to an end when troops were recalled from Gettysburg and dispersed the rioters.

Though New York was too far distant from the South to be invaded by Confederate troops, more than 12,000 captured Confederate soldiers were held in a prisoner of war camp in Elmira, New York. Prisoners were sent to Elmira from other overcrowded camps, but their situations did not improve. Conditions at the camp were largely unsanitary, and much-needed supplies rarely arrived, despite the efforts of the camp's commander. Due to overcrowding and disease, about one-fourth of the prisoners in Elmira died.

Despite the support that most New Yorkers showed for the Union, some continued to sympathize with the cause of the South. As in other Northern states, they were called Copperheads. In 1864 several Copperheads, along with Confederate agents, planned revolts in several Northern cities including New York City. On Election Day, the Confederate agents started fires in more than a dozen important New York buildings. The fires were extinguished by city authorities, and the agents fled to Canada.

Civil War and Reconstruction, 1861–1877

1861 The Civil War begins.

1861 The 79th New York Cameron Highlanders Regiment mutinied against a new commander.

1863 Draft riots break out in New York City.

1864 A prisoner camp for captured Confederate soldiers opens at Elmira.

1865 President Lincoln is assassinated. He will lie in state in Washington and New York City before being buried in Illinois.

1868 The Fourteenth Amendment guarantees all citizens equal protection of the law.

1861



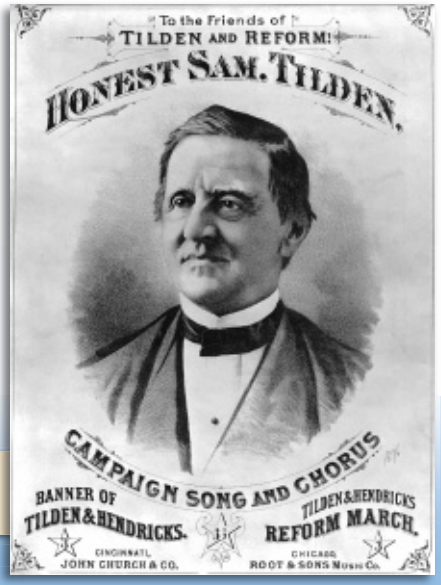
The New York City draft riot

New York in the Era of Reconstruction

Once the war was over, Americans began the process of rebuilding the nation. Republican political leaders at both state and national levels tried to pass legislation that would allow African Americans equal political and economic opportunities, and they sometimes succeeded. More often, however, laws attempting to bring equality to African Americans were thwarted by opposing politicians. In New York, a Republican-led state legislature ratified the Fifteenth Amendment in 1869, granting black men the right to vote. But the next legislature that was elected, made up of a majority of Democrats, reversed this decision. The amendment went into effect anyway when enough other states approved it. Despite the new law, black New Yorkers were subjected to racial discrimination in social, economic, and political arenas.

The political life of New York City during this period was dominated by the Democratic political machine known as Tammany Hall. Tammany Hall leaders appealed to the large population of Irish immigrants in the city. Tammany Hall offered jobs and security to recent immigrants who had few opportunities, but it was not above using prejudice against African Americans or stealing from the city. From 1863 until his conviction in 1873, Tammany Hall was led by William Marcy Tweed. Although the city began large public works projects, such as parks and sewers during Tweed's reign, Tammany Hall politicians used these projects to hide their theft of millions of dollars from the city. Tweed was eventually caught and sent to jail, but the political machine continued to dominate city politics for another 60 years.

In New York City, industries that had benefited from the Civil War, such as banking and clothing manufacture, were able to expand even further. The city is still the most important center for these industries in the United States today. The war and its aftermath also strengthened the city's economic ties with the growing Midwest, as the region's farm products and manufactured goods increasingly flowed through New York City to the rest of the world.



Campaign banner for Samuel J. Tilden

January, 1870 New York reverses its ratification of the Fifteenth Amendment.

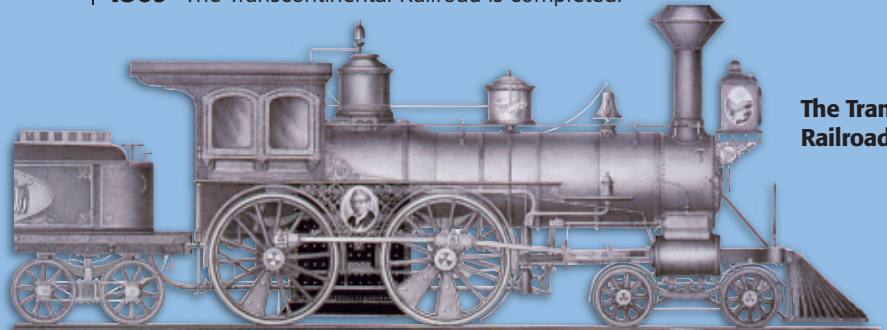
March, 1870 New York again ratifies the Fifteenth Amendment

1869 New York ratifies the Fifteenth Amendment.

1869 The Transcontinental Railroad is completed.

1876 New Yorker Samuel J. Tilden is defeated in the disputed presidential election.

1877



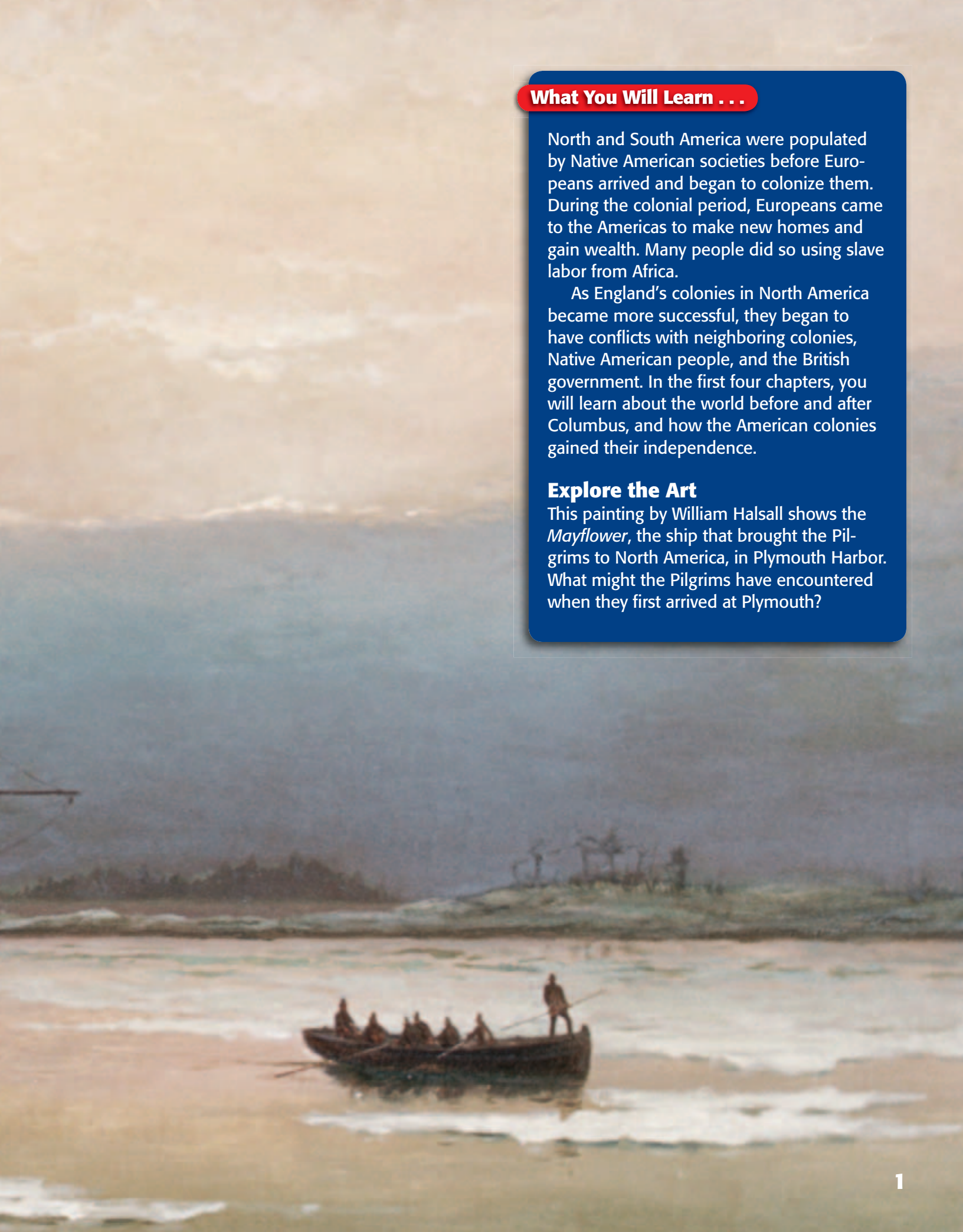
The Transcontinental Railroad

UNIT 1 Beginnings to 1783

Our Colonial Heritage



Chapter 1 The World before the Opening of the Atlantic
Chapter 2 New Empires in the Americas
Chapter 3 The English Colonies
Chapter 4 The American Revolution



What You Will Learn . . .

North and South America were populated by Native American societies before Europeans arrived and began to colonize them. During the colonial period, Europeans came to the Americas to make new homes and gain wealth. Many people did so using slave labor from Africa.

As England's colonies in North America became more successful, they began to have conflicts with neighboring colonies, Native American people, and the British government. In the first four chapters, you will learn about the world before and after Columbus, and how the American colonies gained their independence.

Explore the Art

This painting by William Halsall shows the *Mayflower*, the ship that brought the Pilgrims to North America, in Plymouth Harbor. What might the Pilgrims have encountered when they first arrived at Plymouth?

CHAPTER 1 BEGINNINGS–1500

The World before the Opening of the Atlantic



FOCUS QUESTION

What was the impact of European exploration on Americas' land and people?

SECTION 1
The Earliest Americans 6
Focus on New York The Sky-holder

SECTION 2
Native American Cultures 10
Focus on New York Iroquois Clans
Focus on New York City The Lenape

SECTION 3
Trading Kingdoms of West Africa 16
Linking to Today Music from Senegal to Memphis
Biography Mansa Musa

SECTION 4
Europe before Transatlantic Travel 22
History and Geography The Black Death
Focus on New York Periodization

FOCUS ON WRITING

A Travelogue People who make long trips often write travelogues that describe their journeys. A travelogue allows people who did not make the trip to experience some of the same sights, sounds, and thoughts that the traveler did. In this chapter, you will gather information about different regions of the world and then write a travelogue describing what a place in one of these regions might have been like.



CHAPTER EVENTS

c. 38,000–10,000 BC Paleo-Indians migrate to the Americas.

38,000 BC

WORLD EVENTS

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of the global economy.



What You Will Learn…

Buffalo graze on the plains in South Dakota. Millions of these animals used to roam lands from Canada to Texas. In this chapter you will learn about the first peoples in the Americas, some of whom relied on buffalo to survive.

c. 3000 BC
The Algonquian group begins to spread across Long Island.

c. 5000 BC
Communities in Mexico cultivate corn.



c. 1200 BC
Olmec begin their civilization in Mesoamerica.

1492 Christopher Columbus and his crew reach the Americas on October 12.

5000 BC — 1000 BC — AD 1500

c. 2600 BC
The Great Pyramid is built at Giza, Egypt, as the tomb for the pharaoh Khufu.



c. 1350 New ideas begin to spread through Europe during the Renaissance.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes This chapter explains the early development of Mesoamerica and North America. You will read about early explorers from Europe, learn about early American settlements, and discover why the Spanish, the English, and the French all wanted a part of this new land. As you read the chapter, you will see how **geography** affected exploration and will learn about the **economic** issues that influenced growth and settlement.

Specialized Vocabulary of Social Studies

Focus on Reading If you flipped through the pages of this book, would you expect to see anything about square roots or formulas? How about petri dishes or hypotheses? Of course you wouldn't. Those are terms you'd only see in math and science books.

Specialized Vocabulary Like most subjects, social studies has its own specialized vocabulary. Included in it are words and phrases you will see over and over as you read social studies materials. The charts below list some terms you may encounter as you read this book.

Terms that deal with time	
Decade	a period of 10 years
Century	a period of 100 years
Era	a long period marked by great events, developments, or figures
BC	a term used to identify dates that occurred long ago, before the birth of Jesus Christ, the founder of Christianity; it means "before Christ." BC dates get smaller as time passes, so the larger the number, the earlier the date.
AD	a term used to identify dates that occurred after Jesus's birth; it comes from a Latin phrase that means "in the year of our Lord." Unlike BC dates, AD dates get larger as time passes, so the larger the number, the later the date.
BCE	another way to refer to BC dates; it stands for "before the common era"
CE	another way to refer to AD dates; it stands for "common era"

Terms that deal with government and society	
politics	the art of creating government policies
economics	the study of the creation and use of goods and services
movement	a series of actions that bring about or try to bring about a change in society
campaign	an effort to win a political office, or a series of military actions
colony	a territory settled and controlled by a country

You Try It!

The following passage shows you how some specialized vocabulary is defined in context.

Migration to the Americas

Native Americans in the Pacific Northwest carved images on **totems**—ancestor or animal spirits—on tall, wooden poles. Totem poles held great religious and historical significance for Native Americans of the Northwest. Feasts called potlatches were another unique, or unusual, aspect of these Native Americans' culture.

From Chapter 1, p. 12

Use the clues to understand meaning.

1. Find the word *totems.* The phrase after the **dash** is the definition. Often in this book, specialized vocabulary words are defined after a dash. So be on the lookout for dashes.
2. The word *potlatch* is defined in the third sentence. The clue to finding this definition is the word **called**. Words like **called** and **known as** can indicate that a definition is coming up. In this case, the word *feasts* is a definition of potlatch.
3. In the first sentence, you see a term that is in boldface print. You should recognize that word from seeing it in the section opener. The definition is **highlighted**. Why do you think some specialized vocabulary words are in boldface print, while others are not?
4. The word *unique* is defined in the final sentence. The clue to finding this definition is the **comma** followed by the word **or**. So be on the lookout for commas followed by *or*.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 1

Section 1

Bering Land Bridge *(p. 6)*
Paleo-Indians *(p. 6)*
migration *(p. 6)*
hunter-gatherers *(p. 6)*
environments *(p. 7)*
culture *(p. 7)*

Section 2

pueblos *(p. 11)*
kivas *(p. 11)*
totems *(p. 12)*
teepees *(p. 14)*
matrilineal *(p. 14)*
Iroquois League *(p. 14)*

Section 3

Berbers *(p. 16)*
Mansa Musa *(p. 18)*
hajj *(p. 18)*
mosques *(p. 19)*
Askia the Great *(p. 19)*

Section 4

Socrates *(p. 22)*
Plato *(p. 22)*
Aristotle *(p. 22)*
reason *(p. 22)*
democracy *(p. 23)*
knights *(p. 24)*
Black Death *(p. 25)*
Michelangelo *(p. 26)*
Leonardo da Vinci *(p. 26)*
Johannes Gutenberg *(p. 27)*
joint-stock companies *(p. 27)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

develop *(p. 8)*
classical *(p. 23)*

As you read Chapter 1, keep track in your notebook of the specialized vocabulary you learn.

SECTION 1

The Earliest Americans

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Climate changes allowed Paleo-Indians to begin the first migration to the Americas.
2. Early societies existed in Mesoamerica and South America.

The Big Idea

Native American societies developed across Mesoamerica and South America.

Key Terms and People

Bering Land Bridge, *p. 6*
Paleo-Indians, *p. 6*
migration, *p. 6*
hunter-gatherers, *p. 6*
environments, *p. 7*
culture, *p. 7*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the migrations of early peoples to the Americas as well as their earliest societies and locations.

Early Migrations to the Americas	Early Societies and Their Locations

If YOU were there...

You are living in North America about 10,000 years ago, close to the end of the Ice Age. For weeks, your group has been following a herd of elk across a marshy landscape. This trip has taken you far from your usual hunting grounds. The air is warmer here. There are thick grasses and bushes full of berries. You decide to camp here for the summer and perhaps stay a while.

How would settling here change your way of life?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The first settlers to the Americas probably came in small groups from Asia. Over thousands of years, they moved into nearly every region of North and South America. In the Americas, these people encountered, and adapted to, many different climates and types of land.

First Migration to the Americas

Many scientists believe that the first people arrived in North America during the last Ice Age. At the start of the Ice Age, Earth's climate became intensely cold. Large amounts of water froze into huge, moving sheets of ice called glaciers. As a result, ocean levels dropped more than 300 feet lower than they are today. When the sea level fell, a land bridge between northeastern Asia and present-day Alaska was exposed. Geographers call this strip of land the **Bering Land Bridge**. Although no one knows exactly when or how people crossed into North America, evidence suggests that people called **Paleo-Indians** crossed this bridge into Alaska between 38,000 and 10,000 BC.

This **migration**—a movement of people or animals from one region to another—took place over a long time. It is believed that Paleo-Indians traveled south into Canada, the United States, and Mexico following herds of animals. Over time, their descendants went as far as the southern tip of South America. These people were **hunter-gatherers**, people who hunted animals and gathered wild plants for food.

Land Migrations of Early Peoples

About 8000 BC, Earth's climate grew warmer, and the Ice Age ended. Rising temperatures melted glaciers. Water levels in the oceans rose, and the Bering Land Bridge was covered with water.

The warmer climate at the end of the Ice Age created new **environments**, climates and landscapes that surround living things. Large herds of animals such as buffalo and deer ate new short grasses that thrived in the warm climate. As the number of these animals grew, Paleo-Indians hunted these animals for survival.

Varied environments influenced the development of different Native American societies, or groups that share a culture. **Culture** is a group's set of common values and traditions, including language, government, and family relationships.

Like all societies, Native American groups changed over time. People planted seeds, and eventually they learned to breed animals, farm, and grow plants. Maize, or corn, was one of their most important early crops. Later, they learned to grow beans and squash. As people migrated to new areas of the Americas, knowledge of farming began to spread. Farming allowed people to stop moving around looking for food and to settle in one place. With adequate food supplies, settlements could support larger populations. As populations grew, more advanced societies began to develop.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** How did climate change affect early peoples' migrations?


Mammoth skeleton


Kernels of maize


Maya pyramid, Tikal, Guatemala

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Movement** In what general direction did early peoples migrate?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** What natural features affected the route people took from Alaska to southern North America?

Early Mesoamerican and South American Societies

Some of the earliest American cultures arose in Mesoamerica, a region that includes the southern part of what is now Mexico and the northern parts of Central America.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

develop the process of growing or improving

Olmec and Maya

Around 1200 BC the Olmec **developed** the earliest known civilization in Mesoamerica. The Olmec are known for their use of stone in architecture and sculpture. They built the first pyramids in the Americas, and they created sculptures of huge stone heads. When their civilization ended around 400 BC, trade had spread Olmec culture throughout the region.

Like the Olmec, the Maya grew maize and other crops and lived in small villages. These villages traded goods with each other, and by about AD 200, the Maya were building large cities.

Maya cities had pyramids, large stone temples, palaces, and bridges. The Maya also paved large plazas for public gatherings and built canals to control the flow of water through the cities.

In the 900s Maya civilization began to collapse. Historians are still not sure what caused this great civilization's decline.

Aztec

The Aztec were fierce warriors, and their superior military ability was key to their success. Around the mid-1100s AD, the Aztec migrated south to central Mexico. They conquered many towns, made alliances to build their empire, and controlled a huge trade network.

In AD 1325, the Aztec founded their capital, Tenochtitlán (tay-nawch-teet-LAHN), on an island in Lake Texcoco. It became the greatest city in the Americas and one of the world's largest cities. The city's island location made travel and trade difficult, so the Aztec built raised roads to connect the island to the shore.

Trade and tribute paid by conquered people in the form of cotton, gold, and food made the Aztec rich. By the early 1500s, they ruled the most powerful state in Mesoamerica.

Inca

The Inca began as a small tribe in the Andes Mountains of South America. They named their capital city Cuzco (KOO-skoh). In the

FOCUS ON NEW YORK

Many Native Americans tell stories about the origins of their people. One creation account of the Iroquois, a New York group, says that their ancestors in North America were created by the Sky-holder, who lived above the earth.



The ancient Maya city of Palenque was a major power on the border between the Maya highlands and lowlands. Its great temples and plazas were typical of the Classic Age of Maya civilization.

mid-1400s, the Inca began to expand their territory. By the 1500s the empire stretched along the Pacific coast from what is now northern Ecuador to central Chile. In time, the empire was home to about 12 million people. The Inca formed a strong central government with a king as ruler. The official language of the empire was Quechua. Because there was no written language, records were kept on a system of knotted strings called *quipu*.

The Inca are known for building and for art. Massive buildings and forts were made of huge stone blocks. An advanced system of highways ran the length of the empire. Paved roads and rope bridges connected all parts of Inca territory. This enabled the Inca to communicate with and control their large empire.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What early civilizations existed in Mesoamerica and South America?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Early people migrated into North and South America and developed societies. In the next section you will learn about Native American cultures in North America.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Location** Which early civilization was located in Mesoamerica?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** Why do you think Peru was settled after Mexico?

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP1

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** What was the Ice Age?
   b. Summarize Why were early peoples able to use the **Bering Land Bridge**?
   c. Predict Why do you think early peoples in the Americas **migrated** south?
2. **a. Identify** What is the earliest known civilization in the Americas, and where was it located?
   b. Analyze How did the Aztec build such a powerful, rich state?
   c. Draw Conclusions Which of the four civilizations discussed do you think was the most highly developed?

Critical Thinking

3. **Categorizing** Review your notes on the migration of early peoples and their societies. Then copy the table below and use it to identify the accomplishments of early American civilizations.

	Rise	Significant Accomplishments
Olmec		
Maya		
Aztec		
Inca		

FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Understanding Ancient Peoples** Use the descriptions of the earliest Americans found in this section to list some similarities and differences between the lives of ancient peoples and your life today.

SECTION 2

Native American Cultures

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Several early societies developed in North America long before Europeans explored the continent.
2. Geographic areas influenced Native American cultures.
3. Native American cultures shared beliefs about religion and land ownership.

The Big Idea

Many diverse Native American cultures developed across the different geographic regions of North America.

Key Terms and People

pueblos, *p. 11*
kivas, *p. 11*
totems, *p. 12*
teepees, *p. 14*
matrilineal, *p. 14*
Iroquois League, *p. 14*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on early societies. Write your notes in a chart like the one below.

Early Societies	
Culture Areas	
Beliefs	

If YOU were there...

You live in the North American Southwest about 1,000 years ago. You've been working in the fields for several hours today. The maize crop looks good this summer, and you are hoping for a successful harvest. After finishing your work, you walk home. The opening to your house is in a cliff wall 30 feet above a canyon floor. You must use ladders to get to the opening.

Do you like the location of your home? Why?

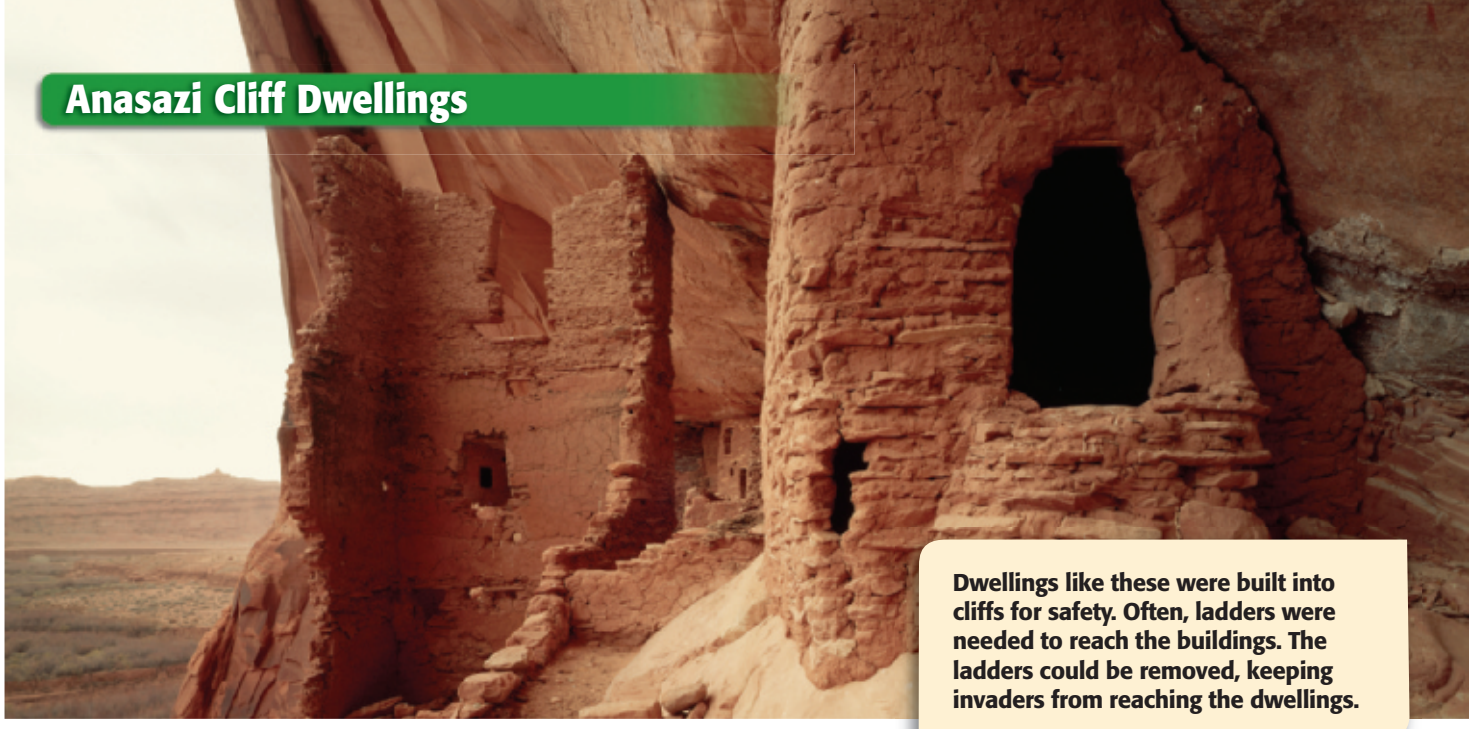
BUILDING BACKGROUND After crossing the land bridge from Asia during the Ice Age, hunter-gatherer groups spread into every region of North America. Many diverse cultures formed as Native Americans adapted to their different environments.

Early Societies

The earliest people in North America were hunter-gatherers. After 5000 BC some of these people learned how to farm, and they settled in villages. Although less populated than South America and Mesoamerica, North America had many complex societies long before Europeans reached the continent.

Anasazi

By 1500 BC the people who lived in the North American Southwest, like those who lived in Mesoamerica, were growing maize. One of the early farm cultures in the Southwest was the Anasazi (ah-nuh-SAH-zee). The Anasazi lived in the Four Corners region, where present-day Arizona, Colorado, New Mexico, and Utah meet. Anasazi farmers adapted to their dry environment and grew maize, beans, and squash. Over time, they began to use irrigation to increase food production. By the time the Anasazi settled in the area, they were already skilled basket makers. They wove straw, vines, and yucca to make containers for food and other items, and they eventually became skilled potters as well.



Anasazi Cliff Dwellings

Dwellings like these were built into cliffs for safety. Often, ladders were needed to reach the buildings. The ladders could be removed, keeping invaders from reaching the dwellings.

The early Anasazi lived in pit houses dug into the ground. After about AD 750 they built **pueblos**, or aboveground houses made of a heavy clay called adobe. The Anasazi built these houses on top of each other, creating large multistoried complexes. Some pueblos had several hundred rooms and could house 1,000 people.

The Anasazi often built their houses in canyon walls and had to use ladders to enter their homes. These cliff dwellings provided a strong defense against enemies. The Anasazi also built **kivas**, underground ceremonial chambers, at the center of each community. Kivas were sacred areas used for religious ceremonies. Some of these rituals focused on the life-giving forces of rain and maize.

The Anasazi thrived for hundreds of years. After AD 1300, however, they began to abandon their villages. Scholars believe that drought, disease, or raids by nomadic tribes from the north may have caused the Anasazi to move away from their pueblos.

Mound Builders

Several farming societies developed in the eastern part of North America after 1000 BC. The Hopewell lived along the Mississippi, Ohio, and lower Missouri river valleys. They supported their large population with agriculture and trade. They built large burial mounds to honor their dead.

The Hopewell culture had declined by AD 700. Another culture, the Mississippian, began to thrive in the same area. Skilled farmers and traders, the Mississippian built large settlements. Their largest city, Cahokia, was located near present-day Saint Louis, Missouri. It had a population of 30,000.

The Mississippian built hundreds of mounds for religious ceremonies. Cahokia alone had more than 100 temple and burial mounds. These mounds had flat tops, and temples were built on top of the mounds. Many of the mounds were gigantic. Monks Mound, near Collinsville, Illinois, for example, was 100 feet high and covered 16 acres.

Several other mound-building cultures thrived in eastern North America. More than 10,000 mounds have been found in the Ohio River valley alone. Some of these mounds are shaped like birds and snakes. The mound-building cultures had declined by the time European explorers reached the Southeast. Their societies no longer existed by the early 1700s.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Why did some Native American groups build mounds?

Native American Culture Areas

Researchers use culture areas—the geographic locations that influenced societies—to help them describe ancient Native American peoples. North America is divided into several culture areas.

North and Northwest

The far north of North America is divided into the Arctic and Subarctic culture areas. Few plants grow in the Arctic because the ground is always frozen beneath a thin top layer of soil. This harsh environment was home to two groups of people, the Inuit and the Aleut. The Inuit lived in present-day northern Alaska and Canada. Their homes were igloos, hide tents, and huts. The Aleut, whose home was in western and southern Alaska, lived in multifamily houses that were partially underground. The two groups shared many cultural features, including language. Both groups survived by fishing and hunting large mammals. The Aleut and Inuit also depended on dogs for many tasks, such as hunting and pulling sleds.

South of the Arctic lies the Subarctic, home to groups such as the Dogrib and Montagnais peoples. While they followed the seasonal migrations of deer, these peoples lived in shelters made of animal skins. At other times, they lived in villages made up of log houses. Farther south, the Kwakiutl and the Chinook thrived, thanks to the rich supply of game animals, fish, and wild plants that allowed large populations to increase without the need for farming.

Native Americans in the Pacific Northwest carved images of **totems**—ancestor or animal spirits—on tall, wooden poles. Totem poles held great religious and historical significance for Native Americans of the Northwest. Feasts called potlatches were another unique, or unusual, aspect of these Native Americans' culture. At these gatherings, hosts, usually chiefs or wealthy people, gave away most of their belongings as gifts. In this way, the hosts increased their social importance.

FOCUS ON READING

What is the definition of **totems** according to this sentence?



West and Southwest

Farther south along the Pacific coast was the California region, which included the area between the Pacific and the Sierra Nevada mountain range. Food sources were plentiful, so farming was not necessary. One major plant food was acorns, which were ground into flour. People also fished and hunted deer and other game. Most Native Americans in the California region lived in groups of families of about 50 to 300. Among these groups, including the Hupa, Miwok, and Yokuts, more than 100 languages were spoken.

The area east of the Sierra Nevada Mountains, the Great Basin, received little rain. To survive, Native Americans adapted to the drier climate by gathering seeds, digging roots, and trapping small animals for food. Most groups in this area, including the Paiute, Shoshone, and Ute, spoke the same language.

The Southwest culture region included the present-day states of Arizona and New Mexico, and parts of Colorado and Texas. Pueblo groups, such as the Hopi and Zuni, lived there. Like the Anasazi, these Native Americans also adapted to a dry climate. The Pueblo irrigated the land and grew maize, squash, and beans. These crops were vital to southwestern peoples. The Pueblo religion focused on two key areas of Pueblo life, rain and maize. The Pueblo performed religious rituals hoping to bring rain and a successful maize crop to their peoples.

The Apache and Navajo also lived in the Southwest. These groups were nomadic—they moved from place to place hunting small animals and foraging for food. The Apache and Navajo also supported themselves by raiding the villages of the Pueblo and others.

Native American Culture Areas

Arctic
Subarctic
Northwest Coast
Plateau
Great Plains
Northeast
Great Basin
California
Southwest
Southeast

0 250 500 Miles
0 250 500 Kilometers



Human-hand carving, Great Plains culture area



Beaver-shaped pipe, Northeast culture area

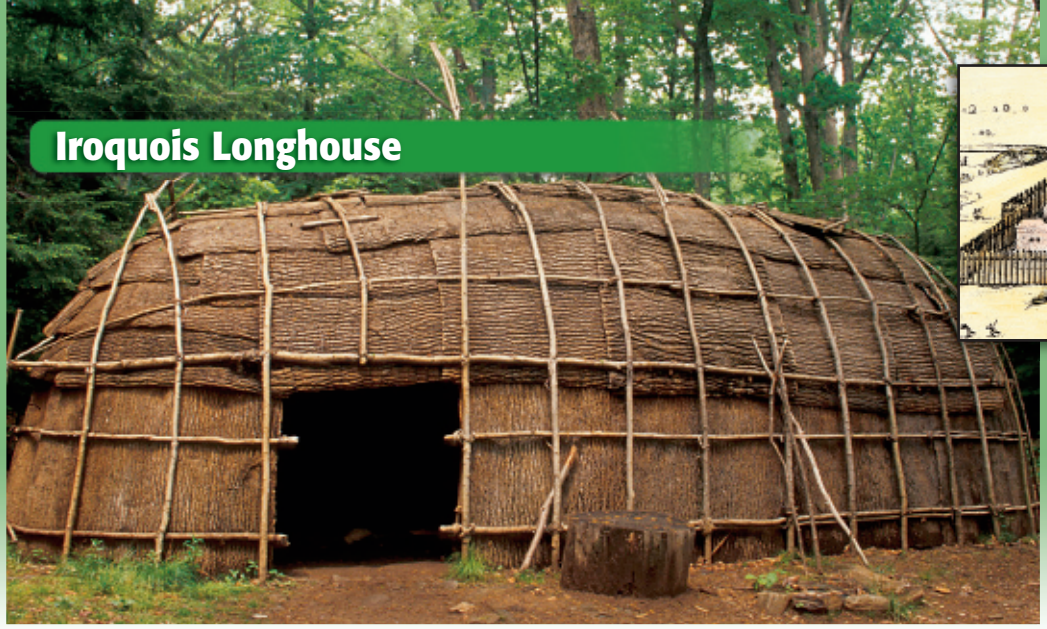


Human figure, Southwest culture area

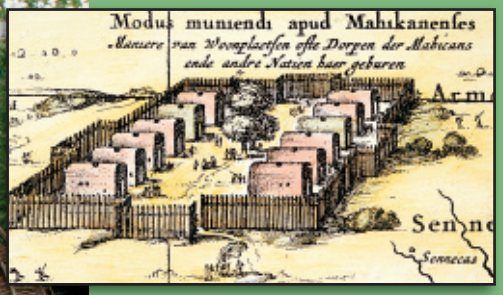
Inuit
Ingalik
Han
Inuit
Saschutkenne
Eyak
Dogrib
Inuit
Tagish
Tlingit
Tongass
Carrier
Haisla
Haida
Chipewyan
Hudson Bay
Swampy Cree
Beothuk
Montagnais
Heiltsuk
Kwakiutl
Nootka
Shuswap
Squamish
Makah
Nooksack
Chimakum
Coast Salish
Columbia
Spokane
Chinook
Yakima
Klickitat
Walla Walla
Nez Perce
Blackfoot
Plains Cree
Plains Ojibway
Crow
Mandan
ROCKY MOUNTAINS
NORTH AMERICA
Micmac
Algonquian
Ottawa
Huron
Massachuset
Great Lakes
Iroquois
Mohawk
Oneida
Onondaga
Cayuga
Seneca
Mohegan
Pequot
Narragansett
Wampanoag
Yaquina
Molala
Umpqua
Tolowa
Hupa
Modoc
Achomawi
Maidu
Washo
Yuki
Wappo
Miwok
Costanoan
Esselen
Yokuts
Chumash
Northern Paiute
Northern Shoshone
Western Shoshone
Mono
Kawaiisu
Ute
Cheyenne
Teton Sioux
Santee Sioux
Sauk
Fox
Potawatomi
Kickapoo
Miami
Illinois
Iowa
Omaha
Pawnee
Arapaho
Missouri
Kansa
Cahokia
Osage
Shawnee
Delaware
Susquehanna
Powhatan
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Cherokee
Cheraw
Chickasaw
Tuskegee
Creek
Alabama
Choctaw
Mobile
Apalachee
Cusabo
Hopi (Pueblo)
Navajo
Zuni (Pueblo)
Apache
Mohave
Yuma
Nakipa
Pima
Suma
Jumano
Apache
Kiowa
Comanche
Wichita
Caddo
Tonkawa
Karankawa
Cochimi
Seri
Ignacieno
Yaqui
Tarahumara
Gulf of Mexico
Seminole
Calusa
Taino
Waicura
Lagunero
Guachichil
MESOAMERICA
Caribbean Sea
PACIFIC OCEAN

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Region** Why did some culture areas have fewer groups of people than other culture areas did?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** What natural features served as boundaries between culture areas?



Iroquois Longhouse



Northeastern Native Americans such as the Iroquois lived in longhouses made of tree bark. The drawing shows the longhouses in one Iroquois village.

Why do you think a fence was placed around the longhouses?

Great Plains

The huge Great Plains region stretches south from Canada into Texas. This culture area is bordered by the Mississippi Valley on the east and the Rocky Mountains on the west. The Plains were mainly grassland, home to millions of buffalo. Deer, elk, and other game also thrived there.

Most Great Plains peoples were nomadic hunters. Many groups hunted buffalo using bows and spears. Blackfoot and Arapaho hunters sometimes chased the animals over cliffs, drove them into corrals, or trapped them in a ring of fire. Native Americans used buffalo skins for shields, clothing, and coverings for their **teepees**—cone-shaped shelters.

Some Plains groups were farmers. The Mandan and Pawnee settled in villages and grew corn, beans, and squash. The Pawnee lived in round lodges made of dirt. Like some other Native American groups, Pawnee society was **matrilineal**. This means that people traced their ancestry through their mothers, not their fathers.

Northeast and Southeast

Eastern North America was rich in sources for food and shelter. Animals, plant foods, fish, and wood for housing were plentiful in the region's woodlands and river valleys.

Most southeastern groups, including the Cherokee, Creek, and Seminole, lived in farming villages governed by village councils. In the Northeast, groups like the Algonquian survived by hunting and gathering plants. Those in the south farmed, hunted, gathered plants, and fished. Many groups used strings of beads known as wampum for money.

To the east of the Algonquian lived the Iroquois (or Haudenosaunee). They were farmers, hunters, and traders who lived in longhouses, or rectangular homes made from logs and bark, that housed 8 to 10 families.

For Native Americans of the Northeast, daily life changed with the changing seasons and weather patterns. During winter, for example, Iroquois families often left their farming villages and moved to smaller hunting camps.

The Iroquois created the **Iroquois League**. This confederation, or alliance, was established by the Cayuga, Mohawk, Oneida, Onondaga, and Seneca. The league waged war against and made peace with non-Iroquois peoples. Its goal was to strengthen the alliance against invasion. The league helped the Iroquois become one of the most powerful Native American peoples in North America.

READING CHECK **Generalizing** How did environment influence Native American cultures in North America?

FOCUS ON NEW YORK

Different Iroquois groups share some aspects of their culture. For example, women have an especially important role. Iroquois society is divided into matrilineal clans. Clan leaders called "clan mothers" are teachers and appoint the chiefs of some Iroquois communities in New York today. However, Iroquois in different areas may not speak the same language—there are eleven Iroquoian languages in all.

Shared Beliefs

Although they were different culturally and geographically, Native American groups of North America shared certain beliefs. The religion of most Native American peoples, for example, was linked to nature. Native Americans believed that spiritual forces were everywhere, dwelling in heavenly bodies and in sacred places on the earth. Spirits even lived within animals and plants. Native Americans tried to honor the spirits in their daily lives.

Ceremonies maintained the group's relationship with Earth and Sky, which were believed to be the sustainers of life. In addition, individuals who wanted help prayed to their spirit protector.

Native Americans also shared beliefs about property. They believed that individual ownership only applied to the crops one grew. The land itself was for the use of everyone in the village, and a person's right to use it was temporary. Native Americans also thought they should preserve the land for future generations. These beliefs contrasted sharply with those of Europeans— a difference that would cause conflict.

Despite their shared beliefs, the diverse culture groups of North America had little interest in joining together into large political units. As a result, Native Americans on the North American continent did not form large empires like the Aztec and Inca of Meso- and South America did.

READING CHECK **Identifying Points of View**
What religious beliefs did Native American groups share?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW People of North America formed many complex societies. In the next section you will read about societies in West Africa.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

A Native American group known as the Lenape lived in the area that is now New York City. Like many other Native American cultures, the Lenapes organized their society along matrilineal lines. The three clans of the Lenapes (Wolf, Turkey, and Turtle) consisted of groups of families related to a particular woman.

Section 2 Assessment

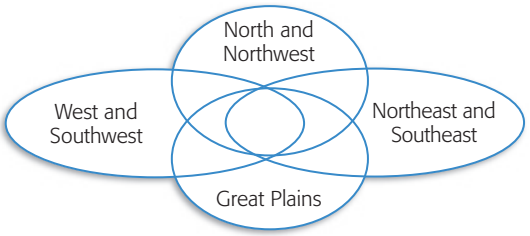
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP1

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** Why did the Anasazi build **kivas**?
   b. Summarize What different types of housing were built by the Anasazi?
   c. Draw Conclusions Why do you think that some mounds were built in the shape of birds and snakes?
2. **a. Identify** What are culture areas?
   b. Contrast How did food sources for Native Americans of the North and Northwest differ from those of Native Americans living in the West and Southwest?
   c. Elaborate Why was the formation of the **Iroquois League** considered to be a significant political development?
3. **a. Recall** How did Native Americans view land ownership?
   b. Analyze What role did religion play in the lives of Native Americans?
   c. Predict Why do you think most Native American groups did not form large empires like the Aztec and the Inca did?

Critical Thinking

4. **Comparing and Contrasting** Review your notes on early societies and culture areas. Then use a Venn diagram like this one to identify similarities and differences among Native American culture groups.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Describing Culture** Look back through this section to discover ways in which a group's beliefs, environment, and practices can be described. Write down phrases that you think are especially useful in understanding Native American cultures.

SECTION 3

Trading Kingdoms of West Africa

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. West Africa developed three great kingdoms that grew wealthy through their control of trade.
2. Slaves became a valuable trade item in West Africa.

The Big Idea

Using trade to gain wealth, Ghana, Mali, and Songhai were West Africa's most powerful kingdoms.

Key Terms and People

Berbers, *p. 16*
Mansa Musa, *p. 18*
hajj, *p. 18*
mosques, *p. 19*
Askia the Great, *p. 19*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the rise of early African kingdoms and the role of trade in their development. Use a chart like the one below.

Kingdom	Rise	The Role of Trade
Ghana		
Mali		
Songhai		

If YOU were there...

You are a trader's assistant from the Middle East, traveling in a caravan headed for West Africa. The caravan carries many goods, but the most precious is salt. Your job is to trade the salt for gold and return the gold to your employer immediately. Your boss never meets the traders face to face.

Why is your boss so secretive?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The continent of Africa was luxuriously rich in resources. West Africa had both fertile soils and valuable minerals, especially gold and iron. Ancient trade routes had connected Africa with the Middle East and Asia for hundreds of years. Over time, trade developed between regions with different resources. Trade and abundant resources led to the growth of several great kingdoms in West Africa.

West Africa's Great Kingdoms

For hundreds of years, trade routes crisscrossed West Africa. For most of that time, West Africans did not profit much from the Saharan trade because the routes were run by **Berbers**, a group of people from northern Africa. Eventually, that situation changed. A succession of three great kingdoms came to power as their peoples gained control of valuable trade routes in West Africa. Ghana (GAH-nuh) was the first of these empires, followed by the kingdoms of Mali (MAH-lee) and Songhai (SAWNG-hy).

Kingdom of Ghana

Historians think the first people in Ghana were farmers along the Niger River. Sometime after AD 300 these farmers, the Soninke (soh-NING-kee), were threatened by nomadic herders. The herders wanted to take the farmers' water and pastures. For protection, groups of Soninke families began to band together. This banding together was the beginning of Ghana.





Ghana's rulers grew wealthy by controlling trade in salt and gold. Salt came from the north in large slabs, and gold came from the south.

What does the photo to the left suggest about the amount of salt traded in a market?

Ghana was in an ideal position to become a trading center. To the north lay the vast Sahara, the source of much of the salt. Ghana itself was rich in gold. People wanted gold for its beauty, but they needed salt in their diets to survive. Salt, which could be used to preserve food, also made bland food tasty. These qualities made salt very valuable. In fact, Africans sometimes cut up slabs of salt and used the pieces as money.

As trade in gold and salt increased, Ghana's rulers gained power. Eventually, they built up armies equipped with iron weapons that were superior to the weapons of nearby people. Over time, Ghana took control of trade from merchants. Merchants from the north and south then met to exchange goods in Ghana.

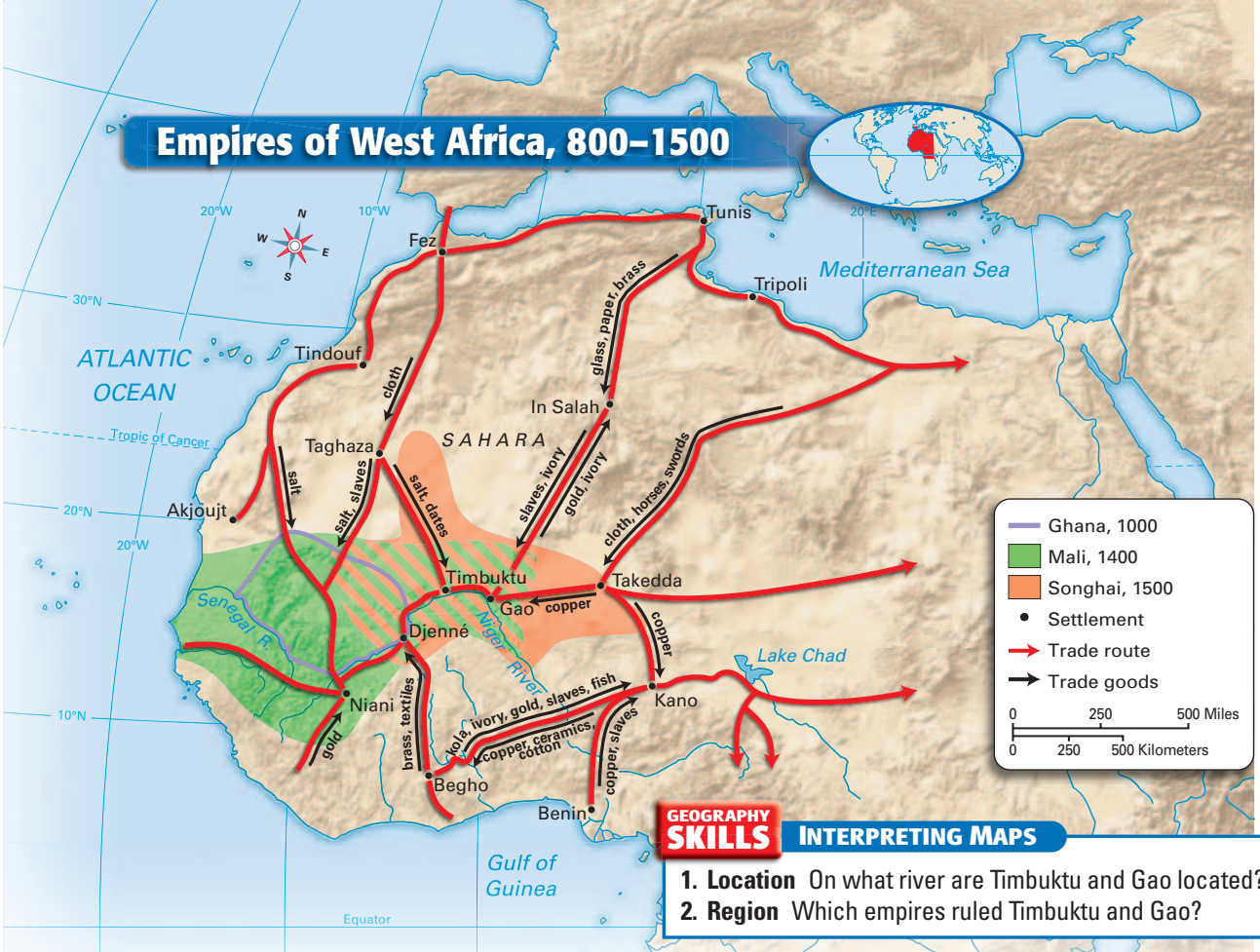
By 800 Ghana was firmly in control of West Africa's trade routes. Nearly all trade between northern and southern Africa passed through Ghana. With so many traders passing through their lands, Ghana's rulers looked for ways to make money from them. One way they raised money was by forcing traders to pay taxes. Every trader who entered Ghana had to pay a special tax on the goods he carried. Then he had to pay another tax on any goods he took with him when he left. Ghana's rulers gained incredible wealth from trade, taxes on traders and on the people of Ghana, and their own personal stores of gold. They used their wealth to build an army and an empire.

Islam in Ghana

Extensive trade routes brought the people of Ghana into contact with people of many different cultures and beliefs. As the kingdom of Ghana extended into the Sahara, increased contact with Arab traders from the east brought the religion of Islam to Ghana.

Islam was founded in the 600s by an Arab named Muhammad. Muslims, followers of Islam, believe that God had spoken to Muhammad through an angel and had made him a prophet, someone who tells of God's messages. After Muhammad's death, his followers wrote down his teachings to form the book known as the Qur'an. Islam spread quickly through the Arabian Peninsula.

In the 1060s, a Muslim group called the Almoravids (al-muh-RAH-vuhdz) attacked Ghana in an effort to force its leaders to



convert to Islam. The Almoravids weakened Ghana's empire and cut off many trade routes. Without its trade, Ghana could not support its empire, and the empire eventually fell. The influence of Islam, however, remained strong. By the late 1400s Islam would become the most practiced religion in the region.

Kingdom of Mali

Like Ghana, Mali lay along the upper Niger River. This area's fertile soil helped Mali grow. In addition, Mali's location on the Niger allowed its people to control trade on the river. Through this control of trade, the empire grew rich and powerful. According to legend, Mali's rise to power began under a ruler named Sundiata. Sundiata won back his country's independence and conquered nearby kingdoms, including Ghana.

Mali's most famous ruler, however, was a Muslim king named **Mansa Musa** (MAHN-sah moo-SAH). Under his leadership, Mali reached the height of its wealth, power, and fame.

Mansa Musa ruled Mali for about 25 years, from 1312 to 1337. During that time, Mali added many important trade cities, including Timbuktu (tim-buhk-TOO), Djenné (je-NAY), and Gao (GOW), to its empire. Traders came to Timbuktu from the north and the south to trade for salt, gold, metals, shells, and many other goods.

Religion was also very important to Mansa Musa. In 1324 he left Mali on a **hajj**, or pilgrimage to Mecca. Making this journey once in their lives is the spiritual duty of all Muslims. As he traveled to Mecca, Mansa Musa introduced his empire to the world. The stories of Mali's wealth and religion spread far and wide. Because of Mansa Musa's influence, Islam spread through a large part of West Africa.

Mansa Musa wanted all Muslims to be able to read the Qur'an. Therefore, he stressed the importance of learning to read and write the Arabic language. He sent scholars to study in Morocco. These scholars later set up schools in Mali for studying the Qur'an.

To encourage the spread of Islam in West Africa, Mansa Musa brought back artists and architects from other Muslim countries to build **mosques**, or buildings for Muslim prayer, throughout his lands.

The architectural advances in cities like Timbuktu as well as an organized government, an emphasis on education, and expansion of trade all combined to make Mansa Musa Mali's most successful ruler. Much of Mali's success depended on strong leaders. After Mansa Musa died, poor leadership weakened the empire. By 1500 nearly all of the lands the kingdom once ruled were lost. Only a small area of Mali remained.

Songhai Empire

In the 1300s Mansa Musa had conquered a rival kingdom of people called the Songhai, who also lived along the Niger River. As the Mali Empire weakened in the 1400s, the Songhai grew in strength. They took advantage of Mali's decline, regained their independence, and eventually conquered most of Mali.

One of Songhai's greatest rulers was Muhammad Ture, who chose the title *askia,* a title of military rank. He became known as **Askia the Great**. Like Mansa Musa, Askia the Great was a devout Muslim who supported education and learning. Under his rule, the cities of Gao and Timbuktu flourished. They contained great mosques, universities, schools, and libraries. People came from all parts of West Africa to study mathematics, science, medicine, grammar, and law.

Askia understood that an empire needed effective government. He created a professional army, and to improve the government, he set up five provinces within Songhai. He removed local leaders and appointed new governors who were loyal to him. He also created specialized departments to oversee various tasks, much like modern-day government offices do.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Some of the mosques built by Mansa Musa can still be seen in West Africa today.

LINKING TO TODAY

Music from Senegal to Memphis

Did you know that the music you listen to today may have begun with the griots, musicians from West Africa? From the 1600s to the 1800s, many people from West Africa were brought to America as slaves. In America, these slaves continued to sing the way they had in Africa. They also continued to play traditional instruments such as the kora, shown here being played by Senegalese musician Soriba Kouyaté (far right). Over time, this music developed into a style called the blues, made popular by such artists as B. B. King (near right). In turn, the blues shaped other styles of music, including jazz and rock. So, the next time you hear a Memphis blues song or a cool jazz tune, listen for its ancient African roots.





ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

How did West African music affect modern American music?

Soon after Askia the Great lost power, the empire of Songhai declined. Songhai was invaded by the Moroccans, the kingdom's northern neighbors. The Moroccans wanted to control the Saharan salt mines. They had superior military power and were able to take over Timbuktu and Gao. Changes in trade patterns completed Songhai's fall.

READING CHECK **Comparing** What did Ghana, Mali, and Songhai have in common?

West African Slave Trade

The practice of slavery had existed in Africa and in many parts of the world for centuries. Traditionally, slavery in West Africa mostly involved only black Africans, who were both slaveholders and slaves. This changed in the 600s when Arab Muslims, and later Europeans, became slave traders. Though Europeans had long traded resources with Africa, they became more interested in the growing slave trade.

People who were captured by warring groups during battle could be sold into slavery. In addition, criminals were sometimes sold as slaves. Other enslaved people were captured during raids on villages, and sometimes even the relatives of people who owed money were sold into slavery as payment for debts. Enslaved Africans were often bought to perform menial labor and domestic chores. In some cultures, having slaves raised the status of the slaveholder.

The market for West African slaves increased as Muslim traders bought or seized black Africans to sell in North Africa. West Africa was also home to many enslaved Africans brought to the Americas.

Over time, the slave trade became even more important to the West African economy. Kings traded slaves for valuable goods, such as horses from the Middle East and textiles and weapons from Europe. The trans-Saharan slave trade contributed to the power of Ghana, Mali, and Songhai.

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences** Why did the slave trade in West Africa continue to grow?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Trade was important to the kingdoms of West Africa. In the next section you will learn about European trade.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP1

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** How did West African kingdoms grow wealthy through trade?
   b. Describe How did **Mansa Musa** introduce his empire to the world?
   c. Elaborate Why was trade crucial to the survival of Ghana, Mali, and Songhai?
2. **a. Describe** How did some people become slaves in West Africa?
   b. Analyze What role did geography play in the development of the slave trade?
   c. Judge Why did the value of slaves as an export increase over time?

Critical Thinking

3. **Comparing and Contrasting** Review your chart on African kingdoms and trade. Then copy the diagram below and use it to show the similarities and differences in the fall of each kingdom.

Fall of Ghana, Mali, and Songhai	Similarities	Differences

FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Gathering Information on Economies** Make a list of things that were important to the economies of the kingdoms of West Africa. Include your ideas about what seems most important to West Africans and things that you did not know about before reading this section.



BIOGRAPHY

Mansa Musa

How could one man's travels become a historic event?

When did he live? the late 1200s and early 1300s

Where did he live? Mali

What did he do? Mansa Musa, the ruler of Mali, was one of the Muslim kings of West Africa. He became a major figure in African and world history largely because of a pilgrimage he made to the city of Mecca.

Why is he important? Mansa Musa's spectacular journey attracted the attention of the Muslim world and of Europe. For the first time, other people's eyes turned to West Africa. During his travels, Mansa Musa gave out huge amounts of gold. His spending made people eager to find the source of such wealth. Within 200 years, European explorers would arrive on the shores of western Africa.

Identifying Points of View How do you think Mansa Musa changed people's views of West Africa?

KEY FACTS

According to chroniclers of the time, Mansa Musa was accompanied on his journey to Mecca by some 60,000 people. Of those people,

- **12,000** were servants to attend to the king.
- **500** were servants to attend to his wife.
- **14,000** were slaves wearing rich fabrics such as silk.
- **500** carried staffs heavily decorated with gold. Historians have estimated that the gold Mansa Musa gave away on his trip would be worth more than $100 million today.



THE GRANGER COLLECTION, NEW YORK

This Spanish map from 1375 shows Mansa Musa sitting on his throne.

SECTION 4

Europe before Transatlantic Travel

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The Greeks and Romans established new forms of government.
2. During the Middle Ages, society eventually changed from a feudal system to a system with a middle class of artisans and merchants.
3. The Renaissance was a time of rebirth in the arts and in learning.

The Big Idea

New ideas and trade changed Europeans' lives.

Key Terms and People

Socrates, *p. 22*
Plato, *p. 22*
Aristotle, *p. 22*
reason, *p. 22*
democracy, *p. 23*
knights, *p. 24*
Black Death, *p. 25*
Michelangelo, *p. 26*
Leonardo da Vinci, *p. 26*
Johannes Gutenberg, *p. 27*
joint-stock companies, *p. 27*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the changes in society during the periods listed. Write your notes in a chart like this one.

Period of Time	Major Changes
Ancient Greece	
Roman Republic	
Middle Ages	
Renaissance	

If YOU were there...

You are a peasant in the Middle Ages, living on the land of a noble. Although you and your family work very hard from sunrise to sundown, much of the food you grow goes to the noble. Your house is very small and has a dirt floor. Your parents are tired and weak, and you wish you could do something to improve their lives.

Is there any way you could change your life?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Hard work was a constant theme in the lives of peasants in the Middle Ages. Nobles were not free to live as they chose, either. As the Middle Ages ended, the Renaissance brought new ways of thinking, and the growth of cities brought big changes to the way people lived and worked.

Greek and Roman Government

During the Renaissance, European thinkers and artists rediscovered the traditions of Greece and Rome. Ancient Greek and Roman texts were translated, and their ideas began to revolutionize European societies.

Greek Philosophers and Government

Ancient Greeks valued human reason and believed in the power of the human mind to think, explain, and understand life. Three of the greatest Greek thinkers, or philosophers, were **Socrates**, **Plato**, and **Aristotle**. Socrates, a great teacher, wanted to make people think and question their own beliefs. Plato, a philosopher and teacher, wrote a work called *The Republic*. It describes an ideal society based on justice and fairness for everyone. Aristotle taught that people should live lives based on **reason**, or clear and ordered thinking.

Greek scientists and mathematicians also gained fame for their contributions to geometry and for accurately calculating the size of Earth. Doctors studied the human body to understand how it worked. One Greek engineering invention that is still used today is a water screw, which brings water to farm fields.

One of the Greeks' most lasting contributions, however, is their political system. During the time known as the **Classical** Period, around the fifth and fourth centuries BC, Greece was organized into several hundred independent city-states, which became the foundation for Greek civilization. Athens was the first Greek city-state to establish **democracy**—a form of government in which people rule themselves. All male citizens in Athens had the right to participate in the assembly, a gathering of citizens, to debate and create the city's laws. Because all male citizens in Athens participated directly in government, we call the Greek form of government a direct democracy.

Roman Law and Government

Later, Rome followed Greece's example by establishing a form of democratic government. The Roman Republic was created in 509 BC. Each year Romans elected officials to rule the city. These officials had many powers, but they only stayed in power for one year. This early republic was not a democracy. Later, the Romans changed their government into one with three parts. These three parts were made up of elected representatives who protected the city and its residents.

Roman laws were written and kept on public display so all people could know them. Roman concepts of equality before the law and innocent until proven guilty protected Roman citizens' rights.

The political ideas of Greece and Rome survived to influence governments around the world, including that of the United States. In the U.S. political system, citizens vote for representatives, making the nation a democratic republic.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did Roman and Greek governments influence the United States?

Democracy and Republic

QUICK FACTS

Direct democracies and republics are similar forms of government in which the people rule. There are some slight differences, though.

Direct Democracy	Republic
• Every citizen votes on every issue. • Ideas are debated at an assembly of all citizens.	• Citizens elect representatives to vote on issues. • Ideas are debated at an assembly of representatives.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Many of the geometry rules we learn in school today come straight from the Greek mathematician Euclid. Many doctors recite the Hippocratic Oath, named after the Greek doctor Hippocrates.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

classical referring to the cultures of ancient Greece or Rome



The Roman Senate played a principal role in the Roman government.

FOCUS ON NEW YORK

The term "Middle Ages" is used by historians to describe a period of time in which European societies shared a particular set of cultural values and practices. Scholars organize the study of history based on different eras, ages, or time periods that mark distinct shifts in a culture. "Classical civilization," for example, refers to ancient Greek and Roman culture, while the "Industrial Revolution" describes a period of time in which industry changed dramatically.

Middle Ages

As the Roman Empire fell, groups from the north and east moved into former Roman lands. By the early 500s Europe was divided into many small kingdoms. This marked the beginning of the Middle Ages, a period that lasted about a thousand years.

Feudalism

In the 480s a powerful group called the Franks conquered Gaul, the region we now call France. The Franks created a huge empire in Europe. When invaders began to attack in the 800s, the Frankish kings could not defend their empire. Frankish nobles, therefore, had to defend their own lands. As a result, nobles became more powerful than the kings. Although loyal to the king, these nobles ruled their lands as independent territories.

Powerful nobles, called lords, divided their land among lesser nobles, known as vassals, in exchange for promises of loyalty and military service. Vassals in turn might divide their land among other lesser nobles. Many of the lesser nobles were called **knights**, warriors who fought on horseback. This interrelated political and social system is known as known as feudalism.

Peasants were at the bottom of feudal society. They owned no land, but they had to grow food to live. In turn, nobles needed someone to farm their large estates, called manors. As a result, a new economic system developed. Nobles allowed peasants to farm land on their manors. They also provided protection. In exchange, peasants paid the noble with food or other goods.

Because of its structure, feudalism promoted the separation of territories and people. The Catholic Church, however, served as a strong unifying force among the states and people of Europe. During the Middle Ages, nearly everyone in Europe was Christian. Life revolved around the local church with markets, festivals, and religious ceremonies.

The Crusades

In the late 1000s European Christians began a long series of holy wars called the Crusades against the Muslims Turks. The Turks had conquered Palestine, which Christians considered

Time Line

Key Events in Europe





509 BC Rome is established as a republic.

AD 455 The Vandals sack Rome.

500 BC — 600 — 800

800 Charlemagne is crowned emperor of the Holy Roman Empire.

The Turks had captured Palestine, the Holy Land where Jesus had lived. Christians no longer felt safe to travel there on pilgrimages. Christians were called upon to go to war with the Turks to recapture Palestine.

Although the Crusades failed, they changed Europe forever. Trade between Europe and Asia began to grow, introducing Europeans to new products such as apricots, rice, and cotton cloth, as well as the ideas of Muslim thinkers.

Travel, Trade, and Towns

In the Middle Ages, towns were small. After about 1000, this situation began to change. New technology meant farmers could produce larger harvests. As farmers grew more food, the population increased.

Travel became safer as increased protection from stronger rulers kept larger territories secure. Over time, kingdoms became nation-states—organized political units with central governments. This development provided even more protection to merchants.

The rulers of the Mongols made routes like the Silk Road, a caravan route that started in China and ended at the Mediterranean Sea, safe for travelers and traders. Among these traders was Marco Polo. In 1271 he journeyed from Europe to China along part of the old Silk Road. He spent 20 years living and traveling in Asia. When Marco Polo returned to Europe, he brought back stories of spices, coal, and paper money.

Trade routes spread all across Europe. Merchants brought goods from Asia and Africa to sell in European markets. Their ships also brought back rats infected with the plague. The disease, known as the **Black Death**, spread across Europe, killing an estimated 25 million people. The European economy was dramatically affected by the shortage of workers. Peasants and serfs could now demand payment for their labor. They began to move to cities, which began to grow in size.

In time, the growth of trade led to the decline of feudalism and the manor system. A new middle class of artisans and merchants emerged, and trade cities became commercial centers. Trade associations called guilds became an influential part of European life.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** How did travel and trade affect the feudal system?





1066 England is conquered by the Norman king William the Conqueror.

1215 Nobles force King John to sign Magna Carta.

1347 The Black Death arrives in Europe, eventually killing millions.

c. 1350 The Renaissance begins.

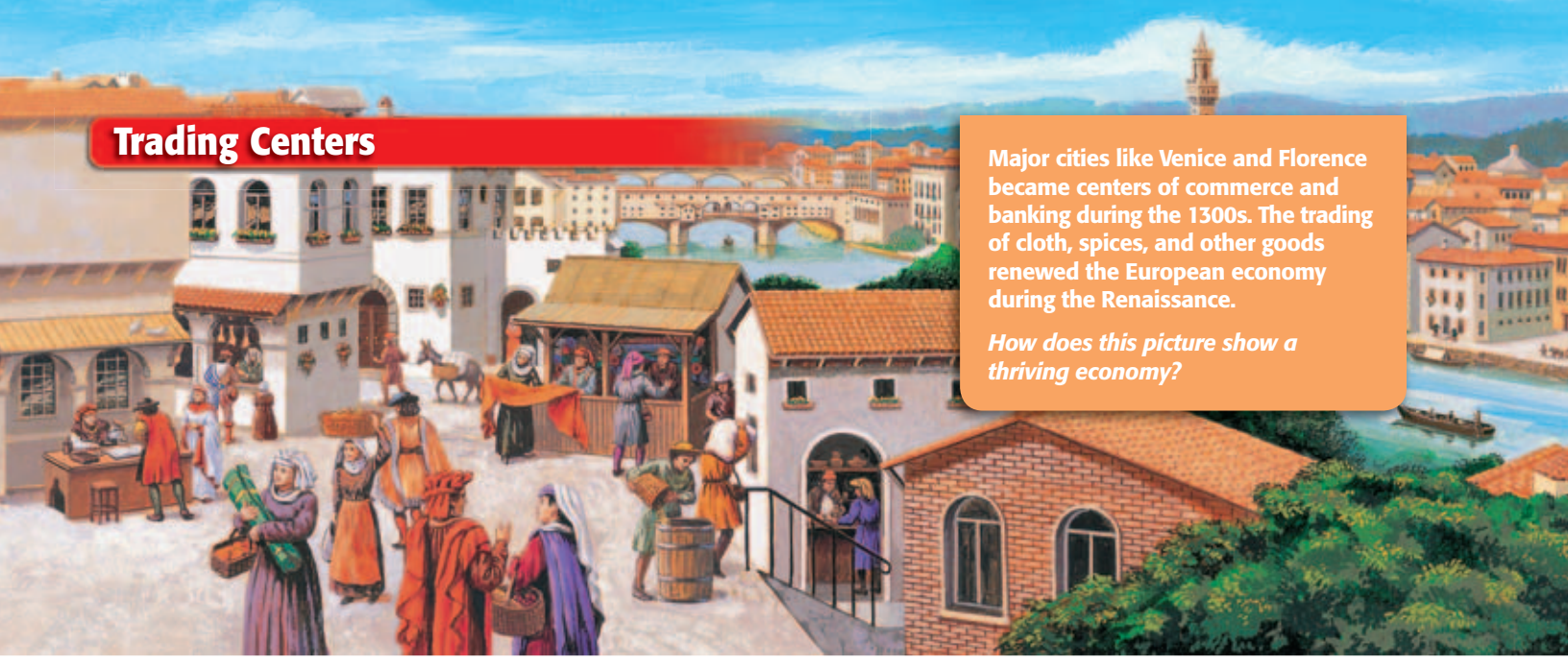
1436 Johannes Gutenberg perfects his invention of the printing press.



1000 1200 1400

ANALYSIS SKILL **READING TIME LINES**

What two factors on the time line most helped spread literacy in Europe?



Trading Centers

Major cities like Venice and Florence became centers of commerce and banking during the 1300s. The trading of cloth, spices, and other goods renewed the European economy during the Renaissance.

How does this picture show a thriving economy?

Renaissance

The Renaissance period brought new ways of thinking to Europe, weakening the old feudal system even more. The word *Renaissance* means "rebirth" and refers to the period that followed the Middle Ages in Europe. This movement began in Italy and eventually spread to other parts of Europe.

During the Renaissance, European rulers began to increase their power over the nobles in their countries. Fewer invasions from outside forces helped bring a period of order and stability to Europe.

Search for Knowledge

Love of art and education was a key feature of the Renaissance. As Turks conquered much of the Byzantine Empire in the East, scholars fled to Italy. They brought ancient classical writings with them. Some of the works were by Greek thinkers like Plato.

Excited by the discoveries brought by Turkish scholars, European scholars went looking for ancient texts in Latin. They discovered many Latin texts in monasteries, which had preserved works by Roman writers. As Italian scholars read these ancient texts, they rediscovered the glories of Greece and Rome.

The search for knowledge and learning spread to all fields, including art, literature, science, and political thought. The Renaissance emphasized the importance of people rather than focusing on religion. This new focus on human value and the study of humanities was called humanism. People's interest in the humanities led them to respect those who could write, create, or speak well. During the Middle Ages, most people had worked only to glorify God.

Italian artists created some of the most beautiful paintings and sculptures in the world. Their art reflected the basic Renaissance idea—the value of human beings. **Michelangelo** and **Leonardo da Vinci** are two of the greatest Renaissance artists. They are known for their work in painting, sculpture, and architecture. Da Vinci was also an inventor, engineer, and mapmaker.

Italian writers also penned great works of literature. Dante Alighieri was a politician and poet. Before Dante, most authors wrote in Latin, the language of the church. But Dante chose to write in Italian, the common language of the people. This gave ordinary people the opportunity to read Dante's work.

Many texts that Europeans rediscovered in the 1300s dealt with science. After reading these works, Renaissance scholars went on

to make their own scientific advances. They also studied ancient math texts and built on the ideas they read about. For example, they created symbols for the square root and for positive and negative numbers. Astronomers discovered that Earth moves around the sun. Other scientists used measurements and made calculations to create better, more accurate maps.

The development of the printing press was a giant step forward in spreading new ideas. In the mid-1400s, a German man, **Johannes Gutenberg** (GOOT-uhn-berk), developed a printing press that used movable type. This allowed an entire page to be printed at once. For the first time in history, thousands of people could read the same books and share ideas about them.

Economic Changes Affect Trade

The growth in trade and services at the beginning of the Renaissance sparked a commercial revolution. This also brought a rise in mercantilism. Mercantilism is an economic system that unifies and increases the power and wealth of a nation.

Four northern Italian cities, Florence, Genoa, Milan, and Venice, developed into important trading centers. These cities played two major roles in trade. They served as ports along the Mediterranean Sea. They also served as manufacturing centers and specialized in certain crafts. This economic activity made some families in these cities very wealthy.

As trade and commerce grew, the need for banks arose. Bankers in Florence, Italy, kept money for merchants from all over Europe. The bankers also made money by charging interest on funds they loaned to merchants. The greatest bankers in Florence were from the Medici family. Although Florence was already wealthy from trade, banking increased that wealth.

During this time, merchants began to create **joint-stock companies**, or businesses in which a group of people invest together. In a joint-stock company, the investors share in the companies' profits and losses. Forming joint-stock companies allowed investors to take fewer risks.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** How did the Renaissance lead to trade and a commercial revolution?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Greek and Roman traditions provided new ways for people to govern themselves. In the next chapter you will read about how the Renaissance paved the way for exploration of the Americas.

THE IMPACT TODAY

The demand for more books led to improvements in printing and binding that have made modern books affordable.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP1

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What is the difference between a direct democracy and a republic?
   b. Elaborate What is the importance of having a written law code?
2. **a. Describe** What is the relationship between **knights** and nobles?
   b. Elaborate How did the Crusades affect the feudal system?
3. **a. Identify** What does the term *Renaissance* mean?
   b. Analyze What is the relationship among trade, banking, and **joint-stock companies**?
   c. Elaborate What do you think was the greatest accomplishment of the Renaissance?

Critical Thinking

4. **Supporting a Point of View** Review your notes on the major changes that took place in Europe during the periods discussed in the section. In a chart like the one below, identify which period you think was most important, and explain why.

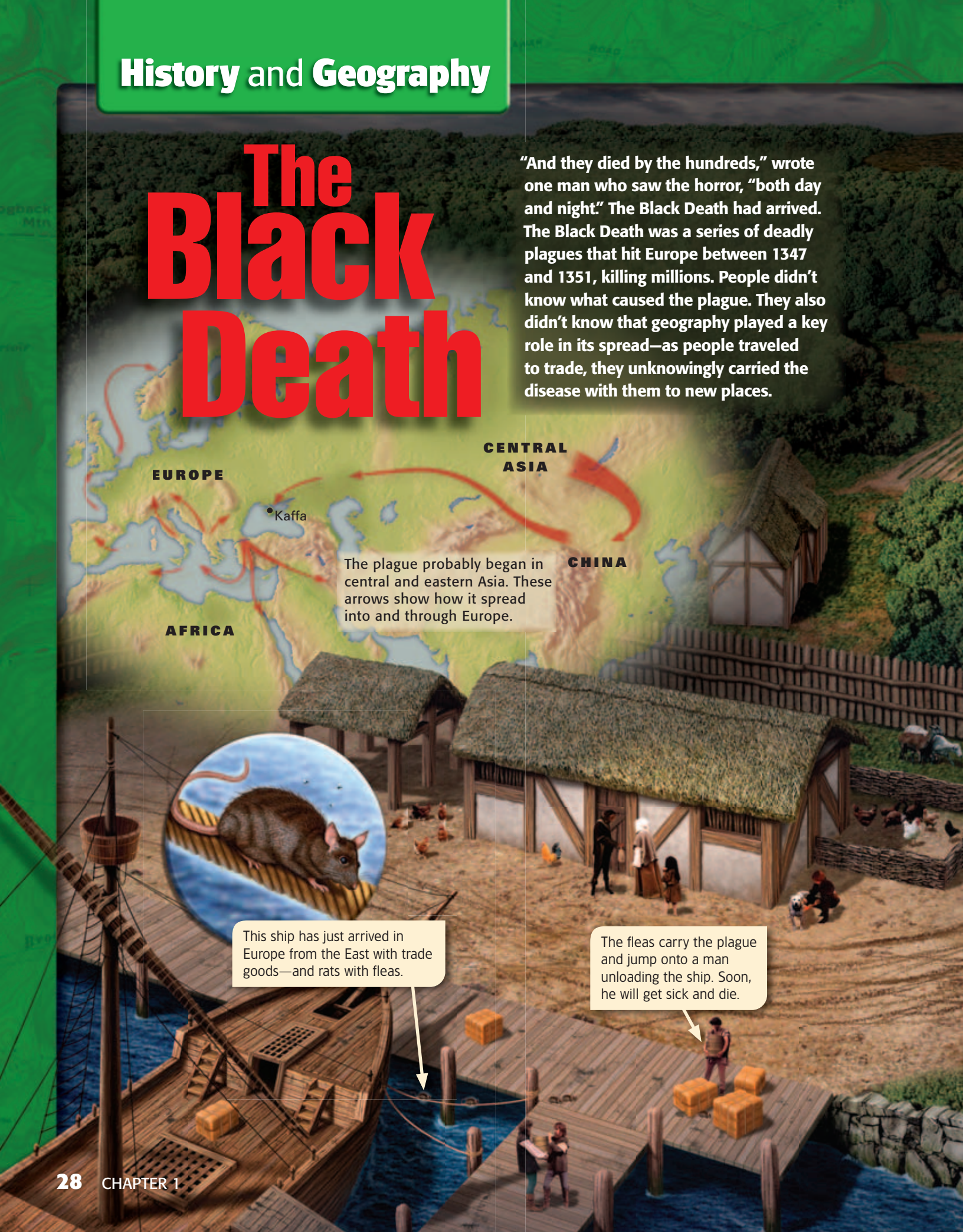
Most Important	Why

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Organizing a Chronology** Make a list of important events in Europe during the time discussed in this section. Reorder them from earliest to most recent.

The Black Death

"And they died by the hundreds," wrote one man who saw the horror, "both day and night." The Black Death had arrived. The Black Death was a series of deadly plagues that hit Europe between 1347 and 1351, killing millions. People didn't know what caused the plague. They also didn't know that geography played a key role in its spread—as people traveled to trade, they unknowingly carried the disease with them to new places.





GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Movement** How did the Black Death reach Europe from Asia?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** What helped spread the plague throughout Europe?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civil Participation | Study

Interpreting Diagrams

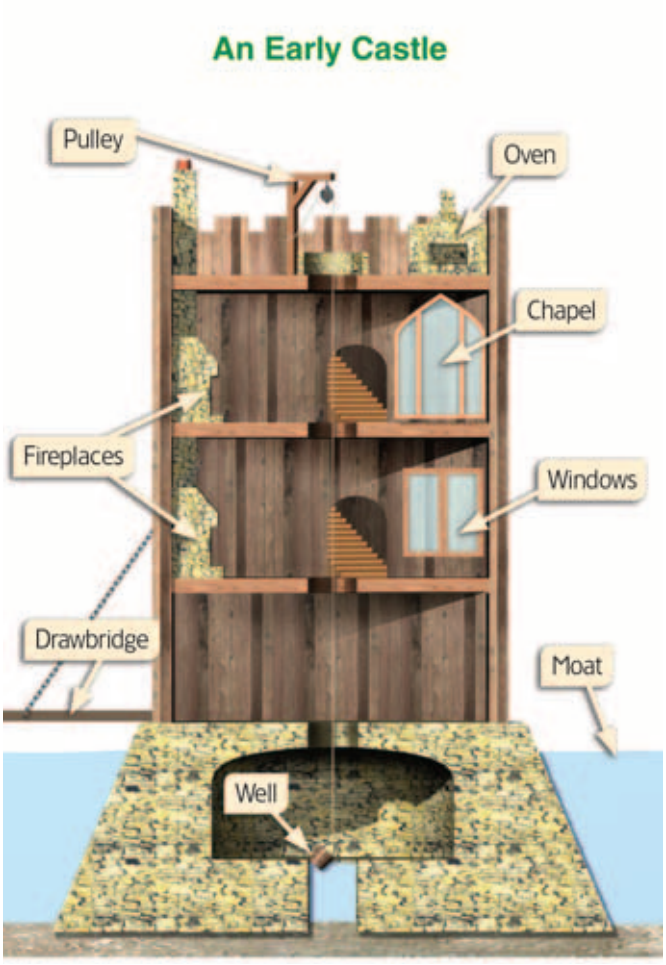
Understand the Skill

Diagrams are drawings that use lines and labels to explain or illustrate something. Different types of diagrams have different purposes. *Pictorial diagrams* show an object in simple form, much like it would look if you were viewing it. *Cutaway diagrams* show the "insides" of an object. *Component diagrams* show how an object is organized by separating it into parts. Such diagrams are sometimes also called *schematic drawings*. The ability to interpret diagrams will help you to better understand a historical object, its function, and how it worked.

Learn the Skill

Use these basic steps to interpret a diagram:

1. Determine what type of diagram it is.
2. Read the diagram's title or caption to find out what the diagram represents.
3. Look for any labels and read them carefully. Most diagrams include text that identifies the object's parts or explains relationships between the parts.
4. If a legend is present, study it to identify and understand any symbols and colors that are used in the diagram.
5. Look for numbers or letters that might indicate a sequence of steps. Also, look for any arrows that might show direction or movement.



Practice and Apply the Skill

Interpret the diagram of an early castle, and answer the following questions.

1. What type of diagram is this?
2. What labels in the diagram suggest how the castle was heated?
3. What was the purpose of the pulley?
4. Of what materials was the castle made?
5. What features of the castle helped make it secure against attack?

CHAPTER 1

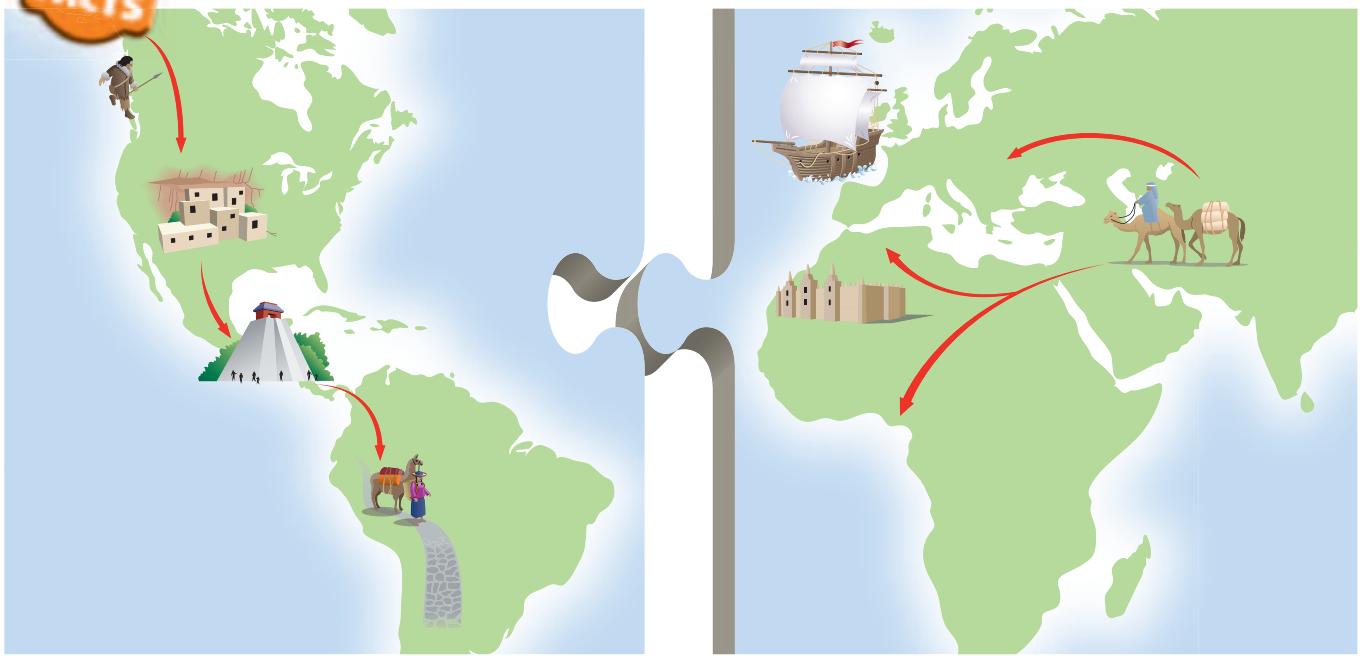
Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
Why do some American exports often depend on imported goods?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



The Americas and the Old World each had complex societies, trade routes, and economies.

Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Complete each sentence by filling in the blank with the correct term or person.

1. During the Ice Age, a narrow strip of land called the _____ was exposed.
2. The _____ of Paleo-Indians from North to South America took thousands of years.
3. Native Americans living in the Pacific Northwest carved _____ on tall poles.
4. The first political confederation of Native Americans in North America was the _____.
5. The most famous ruler of Mali was _____.
6. While Mali's leader was on a _____, or pilgrimage, to Mecca, he introduced his empire to the world.
7. The most famous ruler of Songhai took the name _____.
8. _____ describes an ideal society based on justice in *Republic*.

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 6–9)*

9. a. Describe How did early peoples in the Americas get their food?

b. Analyze What led to the development of different culture groups in the Americas?

c. Elaborate What features did the early civilizations of Mesoamerica and South America have in common?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 10–15)*

10. a. Identify Which early Native American society built cliff dwellings, and which built mounds?

b. Analyze How did Native Americans' religious beliefs affect their lives in North America?

c. Evaluate Do you think it was easier for Native Americans to live in the dry climates of the Southwest, where rainfall was unpredictable, or in the North, where the cold climate presented a constant challenge?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 16–20)*

11. a. Describe How did geography contribute to Ghana's wealth?

b. Compare What characteristics did Mansa Musa and Askia the Great have in common?

c. Elaborate How did West Africa develop a large slave-trade network?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 22–27)*

12. a. Recall What role did Greek and Roman traditions play in the development of the United States?

b. Summarize How did the Crusades in Southwest Asia and the travels of Marco Polo in Asia contribute to the growth of trade in Europe?

c. Evaluate Which do you think contributed the most to the advances in learning that occurred during the Renaissance—writing in the common language of a people or inventing the printing press?

Reviewing Themes

13. Geography How did changes in climate lead to migration to the Americas?

14. Economics Describe the development of the European economy during the Middle Ages.

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY1

15. Activity: Compare and Contrast What causes large groups of people to migrate? Factors that influence why people migrate can be labeled as "push" and "pull." Poor climate and lack of resources "pushed" Paleo-Indians to North America. This activity will help you understand factors of migration. Enter the activity keyword, then compare and contrast push-pull factors involved in Paleo-Indian migration with the factors influencing immigration to the United States today. Create an illustrated chart to display your research.

Reading Skills

Specialized Vocabulary of Social Studies *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> To encourage the spread of Islam in West Africa, Mansa Musa brought back artists and architects from other Muslim countries to build **mosques,** or buildings for Muslim prayer, throughout his lands. (p. 19)

16. What is the definition of the word *mosques* in the sentence above?

Social Studies Skills

Understanding Diagrams *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question below.*

17. Look back at the diagram on page 30. Which of the following is the main way to enter the castle?

a. well

b. moat

c. drawbridge

d. windows

Focus on Writing

18. Writing Your Travelogue. You have read about many cultures across a long span of history. Pick one area that you found the most interesting in the chapter. Organize your thoughts about the kinds of people you would have met and the kind of things you would have done if you had traveled there during the time discussed.

Try to include information about a culture's history, customs, beliefs, practices, economies, political systems, and natural environments. Write a paragraph about what you might have liked or disliked about your trip. Be sure to include a main idea sentence and several sentences that support the main idea with evidence.

CHAPTER 1

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Before the arrival of Europeans, the most advanced Native American societies were located in what is now**

A California.
B the eastern United States.
C the American Southwest.
D Mexico.

2 **The trade in gold, salt, and slaves is closely related to**

A the Inca Empire.
B the Roman Empire.
C West Africa.
D the Renaissance.

3 **Which of the following statements *best* describes the cause of increased trade between Europe and Asia in the late Middle Ages?**

A The interruption of trade caused by the Crusades led many merchants to travel to Asia in search of trade partners.
B European merchants traded with Asia due to a lack of valuable natural resources in Europe.
C The growth of towns during the Middle Ages led to an increased demand for Asian trade goods.
D Marco Polo's stories of Asia's great wealth led many Europeans to seek out Asian goods.

4 **How did the societies of North America differ from those of Central and South America?**

A Societies in North America did not create political units like those in Central and South America.
B North American culture groups lacked the diversity of those in Central and South America.
C North American societies were significantly more advanced than those to the south.
D Culture groups in North America worshipped many gods, while those in Central and South America were monotheistic.

5 **A result of Johannes Gutenberg's printing press was that**

A the Renaissance began.
B more people could read the same books and share ideas.
C European trade and commerce grew.
D overseas trade and travel became more popular.

6 **The exposure of a land bridge between Asia and present-day Alaska during the last Ice Age resulted in**

A the introduction of new plants and animals to Asia and Europe.
B the development of farming in the Americas.
C the migration of people into the Americas.
D the establishment of advanced cultures in North America.

7 **Examine the following passage by Marco Polo about his travels through China. Then answer the question that follows.**

> "Upon leaving Ta-in-fu, we traveled for seven days through a fine county in which there were many cities, where commerce and manufactures [goods] prevailed. We reached a large city named Pi-an-fu, which is very famous. Like Ta-in-fu, this city contains numerous merchants and artisans. Silk is produced here also in great quantity."
>
> —Marco Polo, from the *Travels of Marco Polo: The Venetian*

Document-Based Question **What is the main idea of this passage?**

CHAPTER 2 1400–1750

New Empires in the Americas



Focus Question

What was the impact of European exploration on Americas' land and people?

SECTION 1
Europeans Set Sail 38
History Close-up The Caravel
Quick Facts Causes and Effects of the Discovery of a Sea Route to Asia

SECTION 2
Europeans Reach the Americas 42
Primary Source Christopher Columbus, 1494

SECTION 3
Spain Builds an Empire 46
Linking to Today Armored Warfare

SECTION 4
The Race for Empires 52
Focus on New York Henry Hudson
Focus on New York City Mannahatta
Focus on New York City Peter Minuit

SECTION 5
Beginnings of Slavery in the Americas 58
Primary Source King Afonso to King Joao III
History and Geography The Atlantic Slave Trade

Focus on Writing

Writing a Letter As you read this chapter, you will learn about different groups of people who came to the Americas. You will pretend to be a member of one of these groups and write a letter home to tell your friends and family about the people you meet and the experiences you have in the Americas.

World

1416
Prince Henry the Navigator establishes a center for naval exploration at Sagres, Portugal.

1400



HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of different cultures.

What You Will Learn...

The ships of explorer Christopher Columbus sail again in the form of these replicas. Columbus discovered land where Europeans did not expect land to be. The news excited Europe and set off the great Age of Exploration. The Americas and Europe—and the world—would never be the same again. In this chapter you will learn more about the Europeans who colonized North America.

NY

1525
Esteban Gomez, a black sailor from Portugal, sails up the Deer (now Hudson) River.



1492
Christopher Columbus lands in the Bahamas.

1609
Henry Hudson makes his first voyage to North America.



1619
The first Africans in North America arrive at Jamestown, Virginia.

1500 | 1600 | 1700





1533
Francisco Pizarro and his men kill Inca leader Atahualpa.



1609
Galileo Galilei becomes the first person to use a telescope to view the heavens.

1644
The Qing dynasty begins in China and rules until 1912.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes In this chapter you will read about European exploration of the sea and of North and South America. As you read, you will learn about how **politics** encouraged the desire to explore new trade routes and lands. You will also read about how **geography** affected the race for empires in the New World. European nations began exploring the newly discovered continents in an effort to establish colonies.

Outlining and History

Focus on Reading How can you make sense of all the facts and ideas in a chapter? One way is to take notes in the form of an outline.

Outlining a Chapter Here is an example of a partial outline for Section 4 of this chapter. Compare the outline to the information on pages 52–57. Notice how the writer looked at the headings in the chapter to determine the main and supporting ideas.

The writer picked up the first heading in the section (p. 52) as the first main idea. She identified it with Roman numeral I.

Section 4: The Race for Empires

I. Events in Europe
  A. The Protestant Reformation
  B. Spain and England Go to War
    1. Sea dogs
    2. Spanish Armada
II. Search for a Northwest Passage
III. European Presence in North America
  A. English Presence in the New World
  B. French Presence in the New World
    1. Huguenots
    2. Canada
    3. Explorers
      a. Cartier
      b. Champlain
      c. Jolliet and Marquette
      d. La Salle
  C. Dutch Presence in the New World

The writer saw two smaller headings under the bigger heading on pages 52–53 and listed them as A and B.

The writer identified three facts that supported III.B. She listed them as numbers 1, 2, and 3.

The writer decided it was important to note some individual facts under B.3. That's why she added points a. through d.

Outlining a Few Paragraphs When you need to outline only a few paragraphs, you can use the same outline form. Just look for the main idea of each paragraph and give each one a Roman numeral. Supporting ideas within the paragraph can be listed with A, B, and so forth. You can use Arabic numbers for specific details and facts.

You Try It!

Read the following passage from this chapter. Then fill in the blanks to complete the outline below.

Conquest of the Aztec Empire

Moctezuma ruled the Aztec Empire, which was at the height of its power in the early 1500s. Moctezuma's capital, Tenochtitlán, was built in the middle of Lake Texcoco, near the present-day site of Mexico City. Tenochtitlán was a large city with temples, a palace, and buildings that were built on an island in the middle of the lake. The buildings and riches of the city impressed the Spaniards. They saw the Aztec Empire as a good source of gold and silver. They also wanted to convert the Aztec to Christianity.

Chapter 2, (p. 46)

The Aztec had thousand of warriors. In contrast, Cortés had only 508 soldiers, about 100 sailors, 16 horses, and some guns. Cortés hoped that his superior weapons would bring him victory.

Complete this outline based on the passage you just read.

I. Moctezuma and the Aztec Empire were at the height of power in the 1500s.

A. Tenochtitlán was the capital

1. Built in Lake Texcoco
2. _____

B. The buildings and riches impressed the conquistadors

1. _____
2. Christianity

II. _____

A. Cortés had fewer soldiers

B. _____

Key Terms and People

Chapter 2

Section 1

Leif Eriksson *(p. 38)*
Henry the Navigator *(p. 39)*
astrolabe *(p. 40)*
caravels *(p. 40)*

Section 2

Christopher Columbus *(p. 42)*
Line of Demarcation *(p. 44)*
Treaty of Tordesillas *(p. 44)*
Ferdinand Magellan *(p. 44)*
circumnavigate *(p. 44)*
Columbian Exchange *(p. 45)*

Section 3

conquistadors *(p. 46)*
Hernán Cortés *(p. 46)*
Moctezuma II *(p. 46)*
Francisco Pizarro *(p. 47)*
encomienda system *(p. 50)*
plantations *(p. 50)*
Bartolomé de Las Casas *(p. 51)*

Section 4

Protestant Reformation *(p. 53)*
Protestants *(p. 53)*
Spanish Armada *(p. 53)*
Northwest Passage *(p. 54)*
Jacques Cartier *(p. 54)*
charter *(p. 54)*

Section 5

immune *(p. 58)*
Middle Passage *(p. 59)*
African Diaspora *(p. 60)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words.

effect *(p. 40)*
structure *(p. 59)*

SECTION 1

Europeans Set Sail

If YOU were there...

You are a sailor living in Portugal in the mid-1400s. Several of your friends are excited about joining an expedition to sail to new lands. Although Portuguese navigators have made improvements to sailing ships and advancements in ocean travel, you have heard about the dangers other sailors have faced on the open seas.

Will you join the expedition or stay behind? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Europeans were interested in the goods of Africa and Asia. In order to find new routes to these goods and to find new lands to settle, many European nations sent explorers on voyages.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Vikings were skilled sailors, and they were the first Europeans to reach North America.
2. Prince Henry the Navigator established a school for sailors and provided financial support that enabled the Portuguese to start exploring the oceans.
3. Portuguese sailors sailed around Africa and found a sea route to Asia.

The Big Idea

Europeans explored the world, searching for new lands and new trade routes.

Key Terms and People

Leif Eriksson, *p. 38*
Henry the Navigator, *p. 39*
astrolabe, *p. 40*
caravels, *p. 40*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on European exploration. List the countries that explored the world and the places they explored. Write your notes in a chart like the one below.

Countries	Places Explored

Viking Sailors Reach North America

The Vikings were the first Europeans to make contact with North America. They came from Scandinavia, a peninsula that includes the present-day countries of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden. The Vikings were skilled sailors who developed a new style of ship, called the longship, that curved up at both ends. Viking vessels traveled the rough North Atlantic seas better than earlier ships because their designs were more stable.

The Vikings raided countries throughout Europe, but they also developed large trading networks. Viking ships sailed to the British Isles and the Mediterranean and Black seas. Eventually, the Vikings sailed west into the North Atlantic. There they founded a settlement on the island of Iceland in about 874. More than 100 years later, Viking Erik the Red left Iceland to settle Greenland.

Leif Eriksson, the son of Erik the Red, shared his father's love of adventure. In the year 1000, he was sailing from west Norway to Greenland when strong winds blew his ship off course and carried his ship all the way to the North American coast.

Eriksson and his crew landed on the Labrador Peninsula in present-day Canada. The Vikings then sailed farther south to the island of Newfoundland, and perhaps to what is now New England. According to their myths, Vikings saw forests, meadows, and rivers that held "larger salmon than they had ever seen."

Eriksson settled in a coastal area he called Vinland, but the Vikings left after only a few years. Attacks by Native Americans posed a constant threat, and the area may have been too far from other Viking settlements to be supported.

After the Vikings left North America, Europeans did not return to the continent for centuries. In the 1400s, however, a growing interest in discovery and exploration spread across Europe.

READING CHECK **Sequencing** List the stages of exploration that led to the Vikings' landing in North America.

Prince Henry the Navigator

In the early 1400s Portugal became a leader in world exploration. One man in particular, Prince **Henry the Navigator**, was responsible for advances that would make exploration more successful. Although he never set out on a voyage himself, Henry greatly advanced Portugal's exploration efforts.

In the early 1400s Prince Henry built an observatory and founded a school of navigation to teach better methods of sailing. He also financed research by mapmakers and shipbuilders. Finally, he paid for expeditions to explore the west coast of Africa.

Riches in Asia

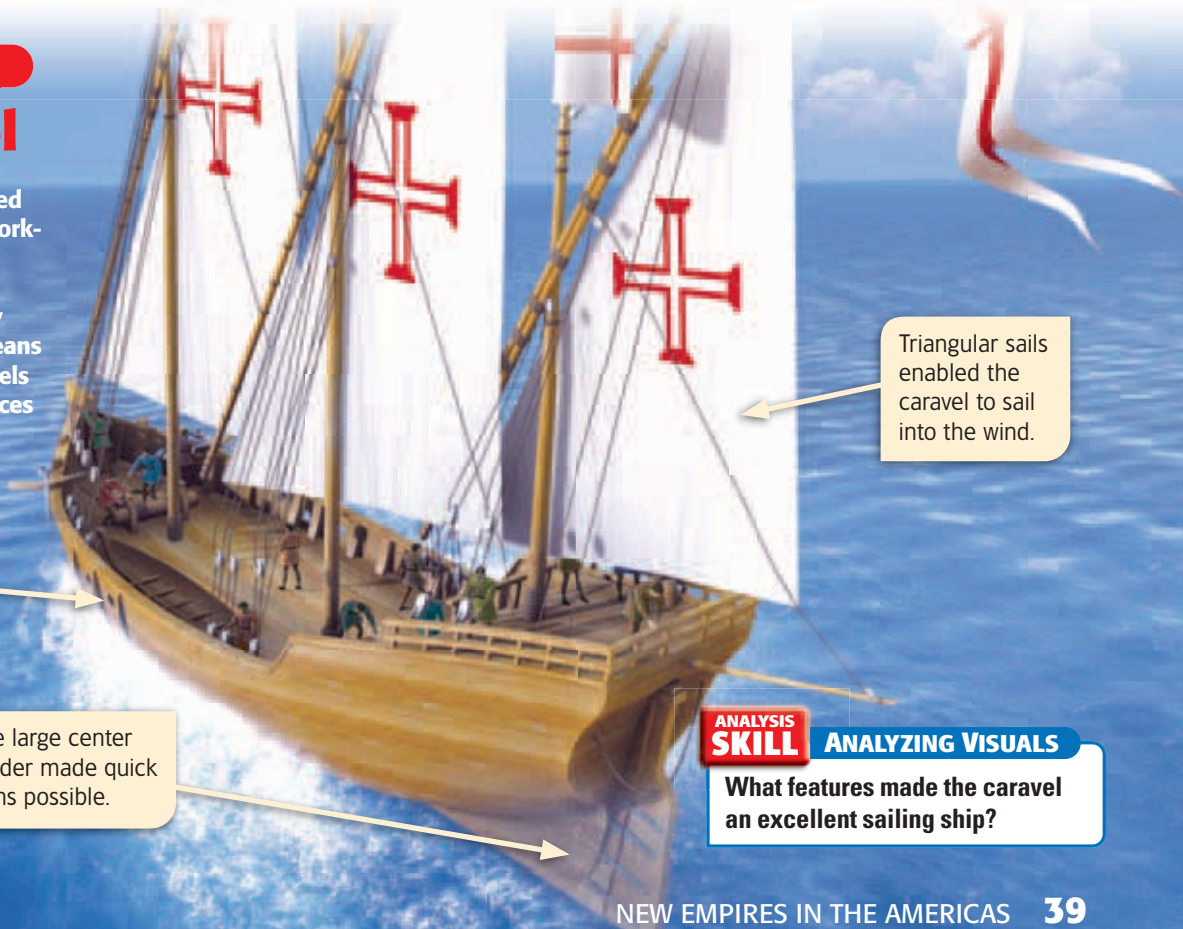
During the 1400s, Europeans had several reasons to explore the world. First, they wanted Asian spices. They hoped to bypass the merchants who had a monopoly on, or economic control of, the Asian products that reached the Mediterranean. If a sea route to Asia could be found, countries could buy spices and other items directly.

Second, religion played a role in exploration. Christians in Europe wanted to convert more people to their faith. Third, many Europeans had become interested in Asian cultures. Explorer Marco Polo's book about his travels throughout Asia remained popular in Europe long after his death in 1324. Many Europeans wanted to learn more about Asia and its cultures.

History Close-up

The Caravel

A special type of ship called the caravel became the workhorse of many European explorers. Though small, caravels were sturdy. They could sail across huge oceans and up small rivers. Caravels featured important advances in sailing technology.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

What features made the caravel an excellent sailing ship?

Causes and Effects of the Discovery of a Sea Route to Asia

QUICK FACTS

Several factors led to the discovery of a sea route from Europe to Asia.

Causes

- Financial backing from Prince Henry the Navigator
- New technology (caravel and mariner's astrolabe)
- Seeking trade with Asia and financial gain
- Converting people to Christianity
- Curiosity

Effects

- Discovery of a sea route to Asia
- Face-to-face contact with traders in distant lands
- Awareness of different cultures and ways of life

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

Why was trade with Asia so important to Europeans?

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

effect the result of an action or decision

FOCUS ON READING

Make an outline for the heading "A Sea Route to Asia."

Technological Advances

New technology played a major role in advancing world exploration. Sailors began to use tools such as the magnetic compass and the **astrolabe**, a device that enabled navigators to learn their ship's location by charting the position of the stars. Better instruments made it possible for sailors to travel the open seas without landmarks to guide them.

The Portuguese also made advances in shipbuilding. They began designing ships that were smaller, lighter, and easier to steer than the heavy galleons they had used before. These new ships, called **caravels** (ker-uh-velz), used triangular sails that, unlike traditional square sails, allowed ships to sail against the wind. By placing rudders at the back of the ship, the Portuguese also improved the steering of ships.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did Henry the Navigator promote exploration?

A Sea Route to Asia

By the 1400s Portugal had several motives, financial support, and the technology necessary for exploration. Portuguese explorers set out to find new lands.

Rounding Africa

Even with new technology, travel on the open seas was dangerous and difficult. One person described the **effect** on sailors of a voyage south from Portugal.

> "Those which survived could hardly be recognized as human. They had lost flesh and hair, the nails had gone from hands and feet . . . They spoke of heat so incredible that it was a marvel that ships and crews were not burnt."
>
> –Sailor, quoted in *World Civilizations*, edited by Edward McNall Burns, et al.

In spite of the dangers, Portuguese explorers continued sailing south, setting up trading posts along the way.

In 1488 Portuguese navigator Bartolomeu Dias led an expedition from Portugal southward along the African coast. A storm blew his ships around the southern tip of Africa. This point became known as the Cape of Good Hope. Dias wanted to continue his voyage, but his men did not. Since supplies were very low, Dias decided to call off the voyage and return to Portugal.

Later, King Manuel of Portugal sent another explorer, Vasco da Gama, on an expedition around the Cape of Good Hope. Da Gama left Lisbon, Portugal, in July 1497 and arrived in southwestern India the next year. Portugal had won the European race for a sea route to Asia.

When da Gama reached the Indian port of Calicut, Muslim traders met him and his men. The Muslims surprised the sailors by speaking to them in Portuguese. Soon da Gama and his crew learned that the people of India had been trading with Muslim and Italian merchants who knew Portuguese. Da Gama made two more trips back to India. He even governed a small colony there.

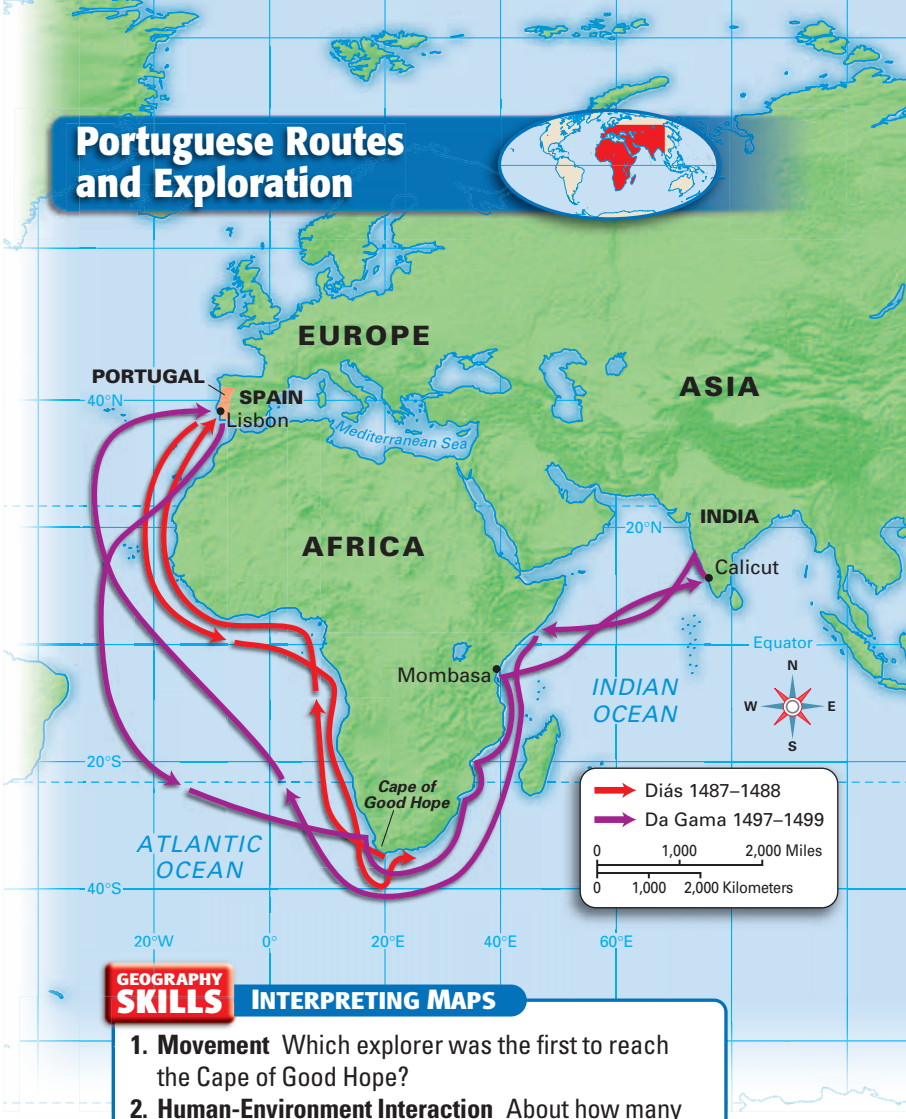
Results of Exploration

Portugal's explorations would have major results, including the start of the Atlantic slave trade. As Portuguese sailors explored the west coast of Africa, they negotiated for gold, ivory, and slaves. The slave trade devastated African communities. It led to increased warfare among kingdoms and broke up many families. The Portuguese sent many enslaved Africans to Europe and to islands in the Atlantic, where they lived and worked under brutal conditions.

The other nations of Europe watched as new trade routes brought increased wealth and power to Portugal. They soon launched voyages of exploration to find their own water routes to Asia.

READING CHECK **Predicting** How would continued exploration affect Africans?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In the 1400s, the Portuguese started a new era of exploration. In the next section you will learn how Europeans reached the American continents.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Movement** Which explorer was the first to reach the Cape of Good Hope?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** About how many miles was da Gama's 1497–1499 voyage?

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP2

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** Who was **Leif Eriksson**?
   b. Summarize How did the Vikings eventually establish Vinland?
   c. Draw Inferences Why do you think the Vikings did not try to colonize the Americas?
2. **a. Identify** Who was Prince **Henry the Navigator**?
   b. Compare Why were **caravels** able to sail against the wind while other ships could not?
3. **a. Recall** Who was the first explorer to find a sea route from Europe to Asia?
   b. Explain How did Muslims living in India learn Portuguese?
   c. Draw Conclusions How did the slave trade affect West Africa?

Critical Thinking

4. **Summarizing** Review your notes on European exploration. Then copy the chart below and use it to explain the reason for the explorations, the technology that made explorations possible, and the results of the explorations.

Reason / Technology	→	Results

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Taking Notes on Early Explorers** As you read this section, take notes on groups of explorers. Make sure to note the differences and similarities between the groups, where they traveled, and why.

SECTION 2

Europeans Reach the Americas

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Christopher Columbus sailed across the Atlantic Ocean and reached a continent that was previously unknown to him.
2. After Columbus's voyages, other explorers sailed to the Americas.

The Big Idea

Christopher Columbus's voyages led to new exchanges between Europe, Africa, and the Americas.

Key Terms and People

Christopher Columbus, *p. 42*
Line of Demarcation, *p. 44*
Treaty of Tordesillas, *p. 44*
Ferdinand Magellan, *p. 44*
circumnavigate, *p. 44*
Columbian Exchange, *p. 45*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the explorers, their journeys, and the effects of European voyages to the Americas. Write your notes in a chart like the one below.

Explorer	Sponsored by	Traveled to

Effects of Journeys

If YOU were there...

You are a European explorer who just returned to your homeland from the Americas. While you were gone, you tried new and different foods, including corn, potatoes, and cocoa. You have brought some of these foods back with you. You want your friends and family to sample these items, but they resist.

What will you say about these new foods?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Europeans, Africans, and Asians had traded with each other for centuries using land and sea routes. Native American groups also knew of each other through trade routes. Although sailors often explored new areas, before 1492 the two worlds had no communication with each other.

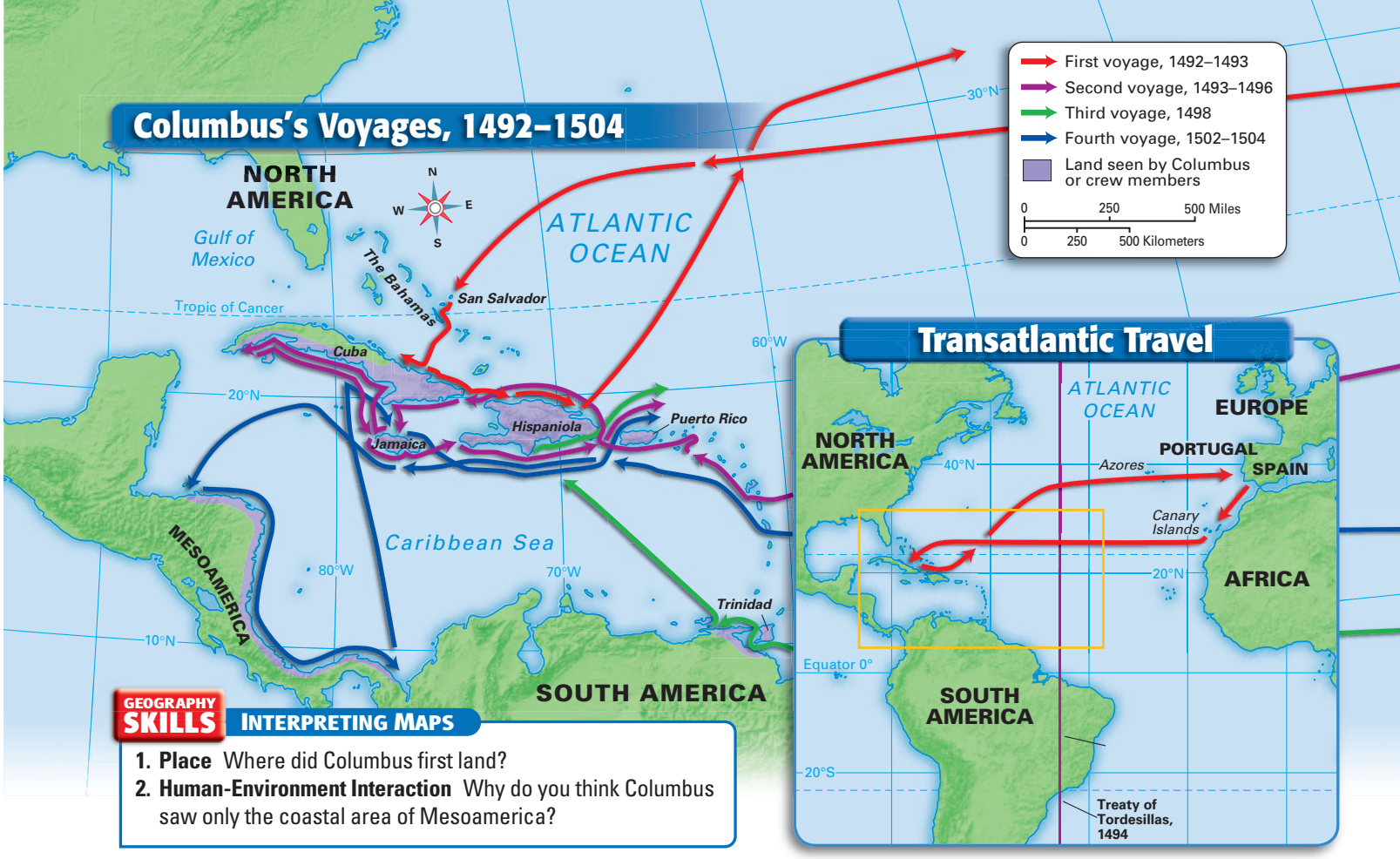
Columbus Sails across the Atlantic

Stories of fabulous kingdoms and wealth in Asia captured the imagination of **Christopher Columbus**, a sailor from Genoa, Italy. Columbus was convinced that he could reach Asia by sailing west across the Atlantic Ocean.

The Journey Begins

Columbus asked King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain to pay for an expedition across the Atlantic. He promised them great riches, new territory, and Catholic converts. It took Columbus several years to convince the king and queen, but they finally agreed to help finance the journey. Ferdinand and Isabella ordered Columbus to bring back any items of value and to claim for Spain any lands he explored.

On August 3, 1492, Columbus's three ships set sail. The *Niña* and the *Pinta* were caravels. Columbus sailed in the larger *Santa María*. The ships carried about 90 sailors and a year's worth of supplies. They made a stop in the Canary Islands, and then on September 6, they resumed their journey. Soon, they passed the limits of Columbus's



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Place** Where did Columbus first land?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** Why do you think Columbus saw only the coastal area of Mesoamerica?

maps and sailed into uncharted seas. After more than a month with no sight of land, the crew grew restless.

Soon the crew saw signs of land—birds and floating tree branches. Columbus promised a reward "to him who first sang out that he saw land." On October 12, 1492, a lookout cried, "Land! Land!" ending the long journey from the Canary Islands.

The ships landed on an island in the Bahamas. Columbus thought he had found a new route to Asia. Instead, he had reached another continent that was unknown to him. Columbus called the island San Salvador, which means "Holy Savior." Columbus also visited another island he called Hispaniola. There he met the Taino (TY-noh). At that time Europeans called Asia the Indies, so Columbus, believing he was in Asia, called these Native American people Indians.

The Taino lived in small farming communities. In his journal, Columbus wrote that the Taino were "so generous . . . that no one would believe it who has not seen it." However, Columbus and his crew were not interested in Taino culture, but in gold. After three months of exploring, looking for gold, and collecting exotic plants and animals, Columbus returned to Spain.

Columbus made three more journeys to the Americas during his lifetime. In 1504 he returned to Spain in poor health. Columbus died two years later, still believing that he had reached Asia.

Impact of Columbus's Voyages

The voyages of Columbus changed the way Europeans thought of the world and their place in it. A new era of interaction between Europe and the Americas had begun.

Columbus's discovery also created conflict between European countries. Both Spain and Portugal wanted to add these lands to their growing empires. In 1493, Pope Alexander VI, originally from Spain, issued a decree that drew a new boundary for Spain and Portugal.

Primary Source

LETTER

Christopher Columbus, 1494

Two years after discovering the island of Hispaniola, Columbus wrote a letter to the Spanish king and queen outlining his ideas of its colonization.

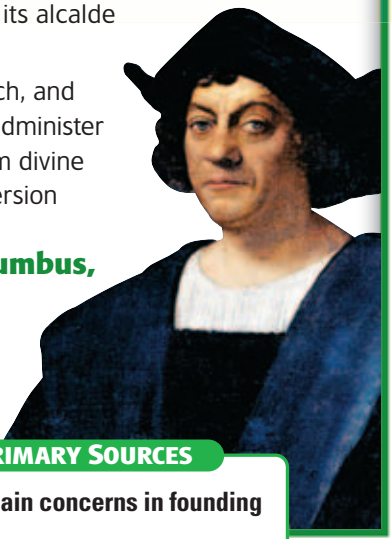
Most High and Mighty Sovereigns,

In the first place, as regards the Island of Espanola: Inasmuch as the number of colonists who desire to go thither [there] amounts to two thousand, owing to the land being safer and better for farming and trading . . .

1. That in the said island there shall be founded three or four towns . . .
2. That for the better and more speedy colonization of the said island, no one shall have liberty to collect gold in it except those who have taken out colonists' papers . . .
3. That each town shall have its alcalde [Mayor] . . .
4. That there shall be a church, and parish priests or friars to administer the sacraments, to perform divine worship, and for the conversion of the Indians.

–Christopher Columbus,

letter to the king and queen of Spain, 1494



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

What were Columbus's main concerns in founding a colony on Hispaniola?

This imaginary **Line of Demarcation** divided the Atlantic Ocean. Spain could claim all land west of the line.

The Portuguese king believed that this arrangement favored Spain. To prevent war, the leaders of the two nations signed the **Treaty of Tordesillas**, which moved the Line of Demarcation 800 miles further west. This gave Portugal more opportunity to claim lands unexplored by other Europeans.

READING CHECK **Identifying Points of View**

Why did Columbus want to sail across the Atlantic?

Other Explorers Sail to the Americas

Columbus's discoveries inspired others to sail across the Atlantic Ocean. In 1501 explorer Amerigo Vespucci (vuh-SPOO-chee) led a Spanish fleet to the coast of present-day South America. He was convinced the land he reached was not Asia. Instead, Vespucci believed he had found a "new world." A German mapmaker labeled the continents across the ocean *America* in honor of Vespucci. Europeans began using the names North America and South America for these lands.

In a Spanish settlement in present-day Panama, another explorer, Vasco Núñez de Balboa (NOON-yays day bahl-BOH-uh), heard stories from local Native Americans about another ocean farther west. Balboa set out to find it. For weeks he and his men struggled through thick jungle and deadly swamps. In 1513 they reached the top of a mountain. From this spot Balboa saw a great blue sea—the Pacific Ocean—stretching out before him.

In 1519, **Ferdinand Magellan** (muh-JEHL-uhn), a Portuguese navigator, set out with a Spanish fleet to sail down the east coast of South America. After sailing around the southern tip of the continent, Magellan continued into the Pacific even though his ships were dangerously low on food and fresh water.

Magellan's fleet sailed across the Pacific Ocean. In the Philippines, Magellan was killed in a battle with native peoples. Down to three ships, the expedition continued sailing west into the Indian Ocean. In 1522 the voyage's only remaining ship returned to Spain. Only 18 members of Magellan's original crew survived. These sailors were the first people to **circumnavigate**, or go all the way around, the globe. Their entire journey was some 40,000 miles long.

European explorers and settlers took plants and animals with them to the Americas. They also brought back a variety of new plants and animals to Europe, Asia, and Africa.

This transfer became known as the **Columbian Exchange** because it started with Columbus's explorations. The Columbian Exchange dramatically changed the world.

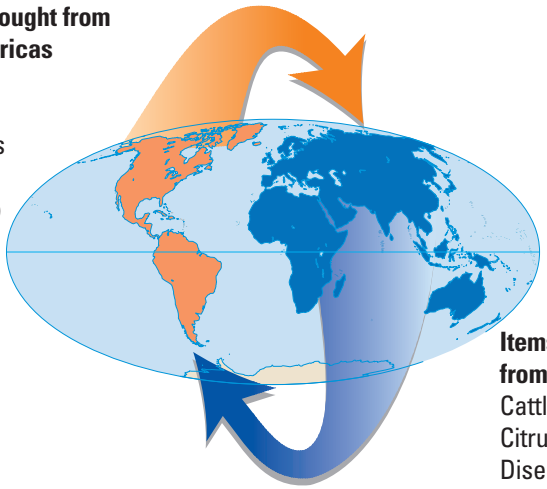
European explorers found many plants in the Americas that were unknown to them, including corn, potatoes, tobacco, and cocoa. They brought these items to Europe, where they were highly valued. The explorers also introduced horses, cattle, and pigs to the Americas. Native Americans came to use these animals for food and transportation. They also started to farm European grains such as wheat and barley.

Without intending to do so, the explorers also introduced deadly new diseases to the Americas. Native Americans had no natural resistance to European diseases and often died as a result of their exposure to them.

Over time, a trading pattern involving the exchange of raw materials, manufactured products, and slaves developed among Europe, Africa, and the Americas. Europeans shipped millions of enslaved Africans to work in the colonies in the New World.

READING CHECK **Evaluating** What were the negative aspects of the Columbian Exchange?

The Columbian Exchange



ANALYSIS SKILL

Which side of the Atlantic did cattle come from? Potatoes? Sugarcane?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Columbus's voyages to America inspired other Europeans to explore the "New World." This led to new exchanges between both sides of the Atlantic. In the next section you will learn about Spain's empire in the Americas.

Section 2 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP2

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** What agreement did **Christopher Columbus** make with Queen Isabella and King Ferdinand of Spain?
   b. Explain Where did Columbus think he had landed when he reached the Bahamas?
   c. Evaluate How did Columbus's voyage lead to a dispute between Spain and Portugal?
2. **a. Identify** Who was the first European explorer to see the Pacific Ocean?
   b. Summarize What route did **Ferdinand Magellan**'s ships take to **circumnavigate** the globe?
   c. Draw Conclusions How did the **Columbian Exchange** and the slave trade affect the economies and the people of Europe, Africa, and the Americas?

Critical Thinking

3. **Supporting a Point of View** Review your notes on European exploration. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to rank, in order, the two most important results of European voyages to the Americas. Explain your choices in the "Why" column.

Most Important	Why

FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Understanding Christopher Columbus** As you read this section, pay attention to what life might have been like for Columbus and his crew as they sailed across the Atlantic. Note ways in which their voyage changed life for many Europeans.

SECTION 3

Spain Builds an Empire

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Spanish conquistadors conquered the Aztec and Inca empires.
2. Spanish explorers traveled through the borderlands of New Spain, claiming more land.
3. Spanish settlers treated Native Americans harshly, forcing them to work on plantations and in mines.

The Big Idea

Spain established a large empire in the Americas.

Key Terms and People

conquistadors, *p. 46*
Hernán Cortés, *p. 46*
Moctezuma II, *p. 46*
Francisco Pizarro, *p. 47*
encomienda system, *p. 50*
plantations, *p. 50*
Bartolomé de Las Casas, *p. 51*

TAKING NOTES Create a chart like the one below. As you read, take notes on Spanish conquest and settlement in the Americas.

Spanish Conquest and Settlement	
Aztec Empire	
Inca Empire	
Borderlands–Southeast	
Borderlands–Southwest	

If YOU were there...

You are an Aztec warrior living in central Mexico in the 1500s. You are proud to serve your ruler, Moctezuma II. One day several hundred foreigners arrive on your shores. They are pale, bearded men, and they have strange animals and equipment.

From where do you think these strangers have come?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Spain sent many expeditions to the Americas. Like explorers from other countries, Spanish explorers claimed the land they found for their country. Much of this land was already filled with Native American communities, however.

Spanish Conquistadors

The Spanish sent **conquistadors** (kahn-kees-tuh-DAWRS), soldiers who led military expeditions in the Americas. Conquistador **Hernán Cortés** left Cuba to sail to present-day Mexico in 1519. Cortés had heard of a wealthy land to the west ruled by a king named **Moctezuma II** (mawk-tay-SOO-mah).

Conquest of the Aztec Empire

Moctezuma ruled the Aztec Empire, which was at the height of its power in the early 1500s. Moctezuma's capital, Tenochtitlán, was built in the middle of Lake Texcoco, near the present-day site of Mexico City. Tenochtitlán was a large city with temples, a palace, and buildings that were built on an island in the middle of the lake. The buildings and riches of the city impressed the Spaniards. They saw the Aztec Empire as a good source of gold and silver. They also wanted to convert the Aztec to Christianity.

The Aztec had thousands of warriors. In contrast, Cortés had only 508 soldiers, about 100 sailors, 16 horses, and some guns. Cortés hoped that his superior weapons would bring him victory. Cortés also sought help from enemies of the Aztec. An Indian woman named Malintzin (mah-LINT-suhn) helped Cortés win allies.

At first Moctezuma believed Cortés to be a god and welcomed him. Cortés then took Moctezuma prisoner and seized control of Tenochtitlán. Eventually, Tenochtitlán was destroyed and Moctezuma was killed. Smallpox and other diseases brought by the Spanish quickened the fall of the Aztec Empire.

Conquest of the Inca Empire

Another conquistador, **Francisco Pizarro** (puh-ZAHR-oh), heard rumors of the Inca cities in the Andes of South America. The Inca ruled a large territory that stretched along the Pacific coast from present-day Chile to northern Ecuador.

Pizarro had fewer than 400 men in his army. But the Inca, like the Aztec, had no weapons to match the conquistadors' swords and guns. Though outnumbered, Pizarro's troops captured the great Inca capital at Cuzco in present-day Peru and killed the Inca leaders. By 1534 Pizarro and his Native American allies had conquered the entire Inca Empire.

In only a few years, the Spanish had conquered two great American empires. During the conquest, the Spanish and their allies killed thousands of Inca and Aztec and looted their settlements. Moreover, possibly more than three-quarters of the Aztec and Inca populations were killed by the diseases the Europeans brought.

Spanish Settlements

The Spanish began to settle their vast empire, which they called New Spain. Spain's government wanted to control migration to the Americas. Most of the emigrants were Spanish, though a few non-Spanish subjects of the king also migrated. Jews, Muslims, and non-Christians were forbidden to settle in New Spain. At first, most emigrants were men. The government then encouraged families to migrate. Eventually, women comprised one-quarter of the total emigration from Spain.

Spain ruled its large American empire through a system of royal officials. At the top was the Council of the Indies, formed in 1524 to govern the Americas from Spain. The Council appointed two viceroys, or royal governors. The Viceroyalty of Peru governed most of South America. The Viceroyalty of New Spain governed all Spanish territories in

LINKING TO TODAY

Armored Warfare

The armor of the Spanish conquistadors helped them defeat the Aztec and Inca. Spanish soldiers and their horses wore armor made of steel. The steel protected the soldiers from enemy weapons but was heavy and hard to wear. Armored weapons of today's soldiers include tanks and other large vehicles. Inside these vehicles, soldiers are safer from enemy gunfire.



ANALYSIS SKILL ANALYZING INFORMATION

1. Why did armor need to be heavy?
2. Why do modern armies still use armor?

Central America, Mexico, and the southern part of what is now the United States.

The Spanish established three kinds of settlements in New Spain. Pueblos served as trading posts and sometimes as centers of government. Priests started missions where they converted local Native Americans to Catholicism. The Spanish also built presidios, or military bases, to protect towns and missions.

To connect some of the scattered communities of New Spain, Spanish settlers built *El Camino Real*, or "the Royal Road." This network of roads ran for hundreds of miles, from Mexico City to Santa Fe. The roads later stretched to settlements in California.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did the Spanish conquer the great Aztec and Inca empires?

Reasons for Spanish Victory

QUICK FACTS

Several advantages helped the Spanish defeat the Aztec and Inca.

Causes of the Aztec and Inca Defeat

- Spanish steel armor and weapons
- Spanish horses
- European diseases
- Spanish alliances with Aztec and Inca enemies

Effects

- Reduced Native American population
- Spanish rule of the Americas
- Columbian Exchange

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

Which cause do you think was most important to the Spanish victory?

Exploring the Borderlands of New Spain

Spain's American empire was not limited to lands taken from the conquered Aztec and Inca empires. Many other Spanish explorers came to North America. They explored the borderlands of New Spain and claimed many new lands for the Spanish crown.

Exploring the Southeast

In 1508 explorer Juan Ponce de León landed on the Caribbean island of Puerto Rico. By 1511 he had conquered the island for Spain and founded the city of San Juan. De León also discovered gold on Puerto Rico. Spanish officials appointed him governor of the colony.

In 1512 de León discovered the coast of present-day Florida. The next year he searched Florida for a mythical Fountain of Youth. Though he never found the fabled fountain, Ponce de León acquired royal permission to colonize Florida. However, he failed in his quest to colonize the area.

Two decades later another explorer traveled through Florida. Royal officials gave Hernando de Soto permission to explore the coastal region of the Gulf of Mexico. In 1539 his expedition landed in an area near the present-day city of Tampa Bay, Florida.

De Soto then led his men north through what is now Georgia and the Carolinas. The expedition then turned west and crossed the Appalachian Mountains. De Soto discovered the Mississippi River in 1541. The explorers then traveled west into present-day Oklahoma. De Soto died in 1542 on this journey.

Exploring the Southwest

The Spanish also explored what is now the southwestern United States. In 1528 explorer Álvar Núñez Cabeza de Vaca joined conquistador Pánfilo de Narváez on an expedition to North America. Their group of 300 men first landed on the Florida coast. They faced many severe problems, including a shortage of food.

The group built boats, which made it possible for them to travel around the Florida panhandle. The explorers continued along the Gulf Coast and eventually reached the Mississippi River. Severe weather hit this group hard, and many members of the expedition died. De Vaca's boat shipwrecked on what is now Galveston Island in Texas. Only de Vaca and three other men survived. One survivor was a Moroccan-born slave named Estevanico. His Spanish slaveholder also survived.

Each of the four survivors was captured and enslaved by Native American groups living in the area. After six years of captivity, the men finally escaped. They journeyed on foot throughout the North American Southwest, receiving help from Native Americans they met along the way. In 1536, after turning south, the group reached Spanish settlements in Mexico.

Soon after their journey ended, Estevanico's slaveholder sold him to a Spanish viceroy. The viceroy assigned Estevanico to serve as a guide for a new expedition he was sending into the Southwest. Native Americans killed the enslaved African in 1539.

De Vaca eventually returned to Spain, where he called for better treatment of Native Americans. De Vaca later wrote about his experiences in the first European book exclusively devoted to North America. De Vaca's book increased Spanish interest in the New World. His writings fueled the rumors that riches could be found in North America.

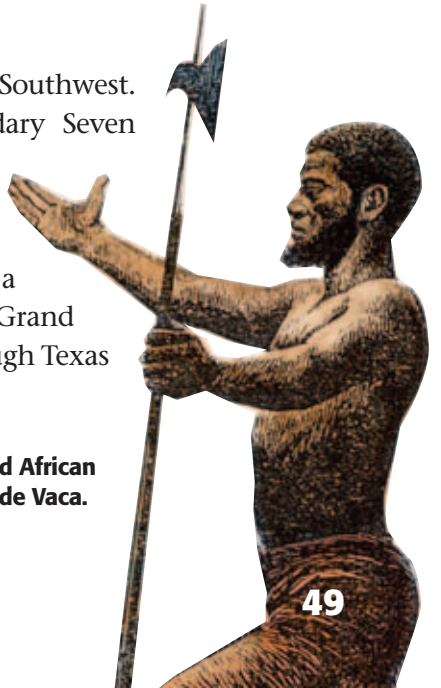
> "For two thousand leagues did we travel, on land, and by sea in barges, besides ten months more after our rescue from captivity; untiringly did we walk across the land, . . . During all that time we crossed from one ocean to the other, . . . We heard that on the shores of the South there are pearls and great wealth, and that the richest and best is near there."
>
> –Cabeza de Vaca, *The Journey of Álvar Núñez Cabeza de Vaca*

De Vaca's account inspired other explorers to travel to North America. In 1540 Francisco Vásquez de Coronado set out to explore the North American Southwest. He wanted to find the legendary Seven Cities of Gold that were rumored to exist there. His expedition went through present-day New Mexico and Arizona, where a group of his men discovered the Grand Canyon. Coronado trekked through Texas



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Movement** Which explorer went the farthest north, according to the map?
2. **Location** What city did Cortés reach in 1519?



Estevanico was an enslaved African who traveled with Cabeza de Vaca.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Location** What was the capital of the Viceroyalty of Peru?
2. **Place** Which viceroyalty included modern-day Mexico?

THE IMPACT TODAY

Roman Catholicism is still the most commonly practiced religion in Latin America. More than 80 percent of the population is Catholic.

and Oklahoma, going as far north as Kansas before turning around. He never found the fabled cities of gold.

READING CHECK **Comparing** How were the expeditions of Ponce de León and Coronado similar?

Spanish Treatment of Native Americans

The journeys of the Spanish explorers allowed Spain to claim a huge empire in the Americas. Spain's American colonies helped make the country very wealthy. From 1503 to 1660, Spanish fleets loaded with treasure carried 200 tons of gold and 18,600 tons of silver from the former Aztec and Inca empires to Spain. Mexico and Peru also grew food to help support Spain's growing empire. However, these gains came with a price for Native Americans. Native peoples suffered greatly at the hands of the Spanish.

Forced Labor

By 1650 the Spanish Empire in the Americas had grown to some 3 to 4 million people. Native Americans made up about 80 percent of the population. The rest were whites, Africans, and people of mixed racial background. Settlers who came from Spain were called *peninsulares* (pay-neen-soo-LAHR-ays) and usually held the highest government positions. To reward settlers for their service to the Crown, Spain established the **encomienda** (en-koh-mee-EN-duh) **system**. It gave settlers the right to tax local Native Americans or to make them work. In exchange, these settlers were supposed to protect the Native American people and convert them to Christianity. Instead, most Spanish treated the Native Americans as slaves. Native Americans were forced to work in terrible conditions. They faced cruelty and desperate situations on a daily basis.

The Spanish operated many **plantations**, large farms that grew just one kind of crop. Plantations throughout the Caribbean colonies made huge profits for their owners. It took many workers to run a plantation, however, so colonists forced thousands of Native Americans to work in the fields. Indians who were taken to work on haciendas, the vast Spanish estates in Central and South America, had to raise and herd livestock. Other Native Americans were forced to endure the backbreaking work of mining gold and silver. The forced labor and harsh treatment killed many native people in New Spain.

The Role of the Catholic Church

The Catholic Church played a major role in the interactions of the Spanish with Native Americans. The Spanish king commanded priests to convert the local people to the Christian faith. Some Native Americans combined Spanish customs with their own. Others rejected Spanish ideas completely.

Some European settlers in the Americas protested the terrible treatment of Native Americans. A priest named **Bartolomé de Las Casas** said that the Spanish should try to convert Native Americans to Christianity by showing them love, gentleness, and kindness. The Spanish monarchs agreed, but the colonists did not always follow their laws.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** How did the encomienda system strengthen Spanish rule?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In the 1500s Spain built a vast empire in the Americas. The Spanish treated the Native Americans harshly in their new empire. In the next section you will learn about other European empires in the Americas.

Primary Source

BOOK

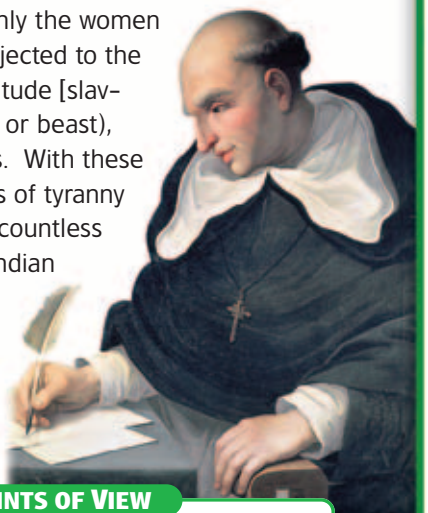
Brief Account of the Devastation of the Indies

Bartolomé de Las Casas, a Catholic priest in New Spain, encouraged better treatment of Native Americans.

"When they [Spaniards] have slain all those who fought for their lives or to escape the tortures they would have to endure, that is to say, when they have slain all the native rulers and young men (since the Spaniards usually spare only the women and children, who are subjected to the hardest and bitterest servitude [slavery] ever suffered by man or beast), they enslave any survivors. With these infernal [devilish] methods of tyranny they debase and weaken countless numbers of those pitiful Indian nations."

–Bartolomé de Las Casas,

from *Brief Account of the Devastation of the Indies*



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING POINTS OF VIEW**

How did Las Casas's view of the treatment of Native American groups differ from the views of other Spaniards?

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP2

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** Who was **Moctezuma II**?
   b. Analyze How was **Hernán Cortés** able to conquer the Aztec Empire?
   c. Elaborate What advantages did the Spanish have over Native Americans?
2. **a. Recall** Which Spanish explorer received permission to colonize Florida?
   b. Analyze Why do you think Cabeza de Vaca wrote of great riches that could be found in the Americas?
   c. Evaluate Why do you think de Vaca called for better treatment of Native Americans after having been held prisoner by them?
3. **a. Identify** What was the **encomienda system**?
   b. Analyze Why do you think the king of Spain commanded Catholic priests to teach Native Americans about Christianity?

Critical Thinking

4. **Categorizing** Review your notes on Spanish conquest and settlement in the Americas. Then copy the following graphic organizer and use it to explain the impact Spain had on the Americas.

Spanish America	
government	
religion	
labor	

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Taking Notes on the Spanish Empire** Take notes on the Spanish conquest of the Aztec Empire and the founding of the Spanish Empire. How did this empire affect Native Americans?

SECTION 4

The Race for Empires

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Events in Europe affected settlement of North America.
2. Several explorers searched for a Northwest Passage to the Pacific Ocean.
3. European nations raced to establish empires in North America.

The Big Idea

Other European nations challenged Spain in the Americas.

Key Terms and People

Protestant Reformation, *p. 53*
Protestants, *p. 53*
Spanish Armada, *p. 53*
Northwest Passage, *p. 54*
Jacques Cartier, *p. 54*
charter, *p. 54*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the reasons for European voyages to North America, the search for a Northwest Passage, and the development of European empires in North America.

Reasons for Voyages	Explorers' Search for a NW Passage	European Empires

If YOU were there...

The people of your village in France have always belonged to the same church. Now in the 1600s, your village is divided over religious beliefs. You have heard about the Dutch colony of New Netherland in America, where people can practice any religion freely. You would like to leave for America, but your parents are unwilling to leave their home.

How would you persuade your family to emigrate?

BUILDING BACKGROUND During the 1400s, the Catholic Church was one of the most powerful institutions in Europe. Not everyone agreed with all of its teachings, however. Disagreement, and sometimes violence, led some people to search for new places to settle.

Events in Europe

Many significant events took place in Europe in the 1500s. Disagreements about religion threw Europe into turmoil. Some of these disagreements eventually led to wars. At the same time, several European nations began to compete for land and power overseas.

Key Events in European History, 1450–1588



c. 1450

Johannes Gutenberg develops his movable-type printing press.



The Protestant Reformation

In 1517 a German priest named Martin Luther publicly criticized the Roman Catholic Church. Luther charged that the church was too wealthy and that it abused its power. Criticisms like Luther's started the **Protestant Reformation**. This religious movement began in small German towns but quickly spread to most of Europe. It became a part of many political disputes as well. The **Protestants** were reformers who protested some of the Catholic Church's practices. Many Protestants believed God meant for religion to be simple.

The printing press—a machine that produces printed copies using movable type—helped spread the ideas of the Reformation. Protestants printed large numbers of Bibles as well as short essays explaining their ideas. This let more people read and think about the Bible on their own, rather than relying solely on the teachings of a priest.

Conflicts between Catholics and Protestants took place throughout Europe, often leading to civil war. In the late 1500s French Catholics fought French Protestants, known as Huguenots (HYOO-guh-nahts). Many Huguenots eventually emigrated to the Americas in search of religious freedom.

In 1534 King Henry VIII founded the Church of England, or the Anglican Church. By making himself the head of the church, Henry challenged the authority of the pope and angered Catholics. Political issues soon became mixed with the religious struggles.

Spain and England Go to War

In the late 1500s King Philip II used Spain's great wealth to lead a Catholic Reformation against the Protestant movement. He hoped to drive the Protestants out of England. Standing in his way was the Protestant English queen Elizabeth I and her sea dogs. Sea dogs was the name given to English sailors who raided Spanish treasure ships. The most successful and daring was Sir Francis Drake.

Philip was angered by English piracy. He began gathering the **Spanish Armada**, a huge fleet of warships meant to end English plans. The Armada had about 130 ships and some 27,000 sailors and soldiers. This mighty fleet was launched to invade England and overthrow Queen Elizabeth and the Anglican Church. But in July 1588, the smaller, but faster, English fleet defeated the Armada in a huge battle.

The Armada's defeat shocked the Spanish. In addition to the naval defeat, Spain's economy was in trouble. The gold and silver that Spain received from the Americas caused high inflation. Inflation is a rise in the price of goods caused by an increase in the amount of money in use. Economic problems in Spain combined with the defeat of the Spanish Armada led countries such as England, France, and the Netherlands to challenge Spanish power overseas.

READING CHECK **Analyzing**
What led to the decline of the Spanish Empire?



1517
Martin Luther nails his ninety-five theses to the door of a church in Wittenberg, Germany.

1588
The English defeat the Spanish Armada. The loss greatly weakens Spain, allowing other European countries to claim land in North America.



Search for a Northwest Passage

Europeans wanted to find a **Northwest Passage**, a water route through North America that would allow ships to sail from the Atlantic to the Pacific. The English began sending explorers to find it.

Italian sailor John Cabot knew that the king of England wanted to find such a route. Cabot offered to pay for his own expedition, asking only that the king of England grant him a royal charter to any lands he found. The king agreed, and Cabot made voyages to North America for England in 1497 and 1498.

Cabot sailed to North America, but he left very few records of his journeys. It is believed that he traveled along the coast of present-day Newfoundland in Canada. Although Cabot did not find a passage to the Pacific Ocean, his voyages were successful. They became the basis of England's claim to land in North America.

In 1524 France sent an Italian captain, Giovanni da Verrazano (vayr-raht-SAHN-oh), to seek a Northwest Passage. Verrazano sailed along the coast of North America from present-day North Carolina to Maine. **Jacques Cartier** (kahr-tyay), a French sailor, led France's next major exploration of North America. He made two trips to what is now Canada. Cartier sailed into the Saint Lawrence River and traveled all the way to present-day Montreal, claiming the areas he explored for France.

The Dutch also entered the race. They hired English captain Henry Hudson to find a Northwest Passage. Hudson first sailed to present-day New York in 1609. The following year Hudson returned to North America, sailing under the English flag. He traveled far to the north. Eventually he reached a strait that he hoped would lead to the Pacific Ocean. Instead, it led into a huge bay, later named Hudson Bay.

None of these explorers ever found a Northwest Passage. Their explorations, however, led to increased European interest in North America.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** Why did European explorers seek a Northwest Passage?



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

New York's Hudson River is also named after Henry Hudson. When he explored it in 1609, there were about 10,000 Native Americans living on either side of the river. Hudson's crew traded with Native Americans they encountered, in one case receiving tobacco in exchange for knives and beads.

European Presence in North America

The Spanish and the Portuguese were the early leaders in overseas exploration. They dominated the colonization of the New World through the 1500s. However, Spain and Portugal focused on Central America, the Caribbean, and South America. They left much of North America unexplored. The English, French, and Dutch explored North America. These nations then sought to expand their own empires there.

English Presence in the New World

In the late 1500s England decided to set up a permanent settlement in North America. This colony was to establish an English presence in the New World. Sir Walter Raleigh received a **charter**, a document giving him permission to start a colony. In 1584 he sent an expedition that landed in present-day Virginia and North Carolina. Raleigh named the entire area Virginia.

The following year, Raleigh sent another group to found a colony on Roanoke Island, off the coast of North Carolina. The English colonists at Roanoke found life hard. They fought with Native Americans and had trouble finding and growing food. After only a year, the remaining colonists returned to England.

John White, a talented artist, and 150 colonists resettled Roanoke in the spring of 1587. White's granddaughter, Virginia Dare, was the first English colonist born in North America. After a few months, White went back to England to get more supplies. War with Spain prevented White from returning for three years. When he came back, White found the colony deserted. The only clue he found to the fate of the colonists was the word *Croatoan*, the name of a nearby island, carved into a post. Did the colonists try to escape a Native American attack by fleeing to the island? White never found out. To this day, no one is certain what happened to the "lost colony" at Roanoke.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. Movement According to the map, which explorers made two voyages to find a Northwest Passage?
2. Place Which explorer started farthest south in searching for a Northwest Passage?

French Presence in the New World

France built its first North American settlement in Florida, when Huguenots started a few small colonies there in 1564. The Spanish soon destroyed these settlements and drove out the French. Religious wars in France slowed further French efforts to colonize North America. When the fighting ended, the French renewed efforts to settle present-day eastern Canada. The explorations of Jacques Cartier and Samuel de Champlain gave France a claim to this region.

Nearly 70 years after Cartier sailed up the Saint Lawrence, French sailor Samuel de Champlain began exploring North America. He recorded his ideas about European exploration in his journal.

> "Through [exploration] we gain knowledge of different countries, regions and kingdoms; through it we attract and bring into our countries all kinds of riches; through it …Christianity [is spread] in all parts of the earth."
>
> –Samuel de Champlain, quoted in *The Canadian Frontier, 1534–1760,* by W. J. Eccles

Champlain followed Cartier's old paths. Over the years he made many journeys along the Saint Lawrence River. He also visited the Great Lakes, led by Native American guides.

In 1608 Champlain founded a small colony on the Saint Lawrence River. He named the colony Quebec. This trading post opened fur-trading routes for the French throughout the region. Champlain's explorations became the basis of France's claim to much of Canada.

In the late 1600s the French began spreading out from the Saint Lawrence River. Calling their North American territory New France, French fur traders, explorers, and missionaries were all on the move.

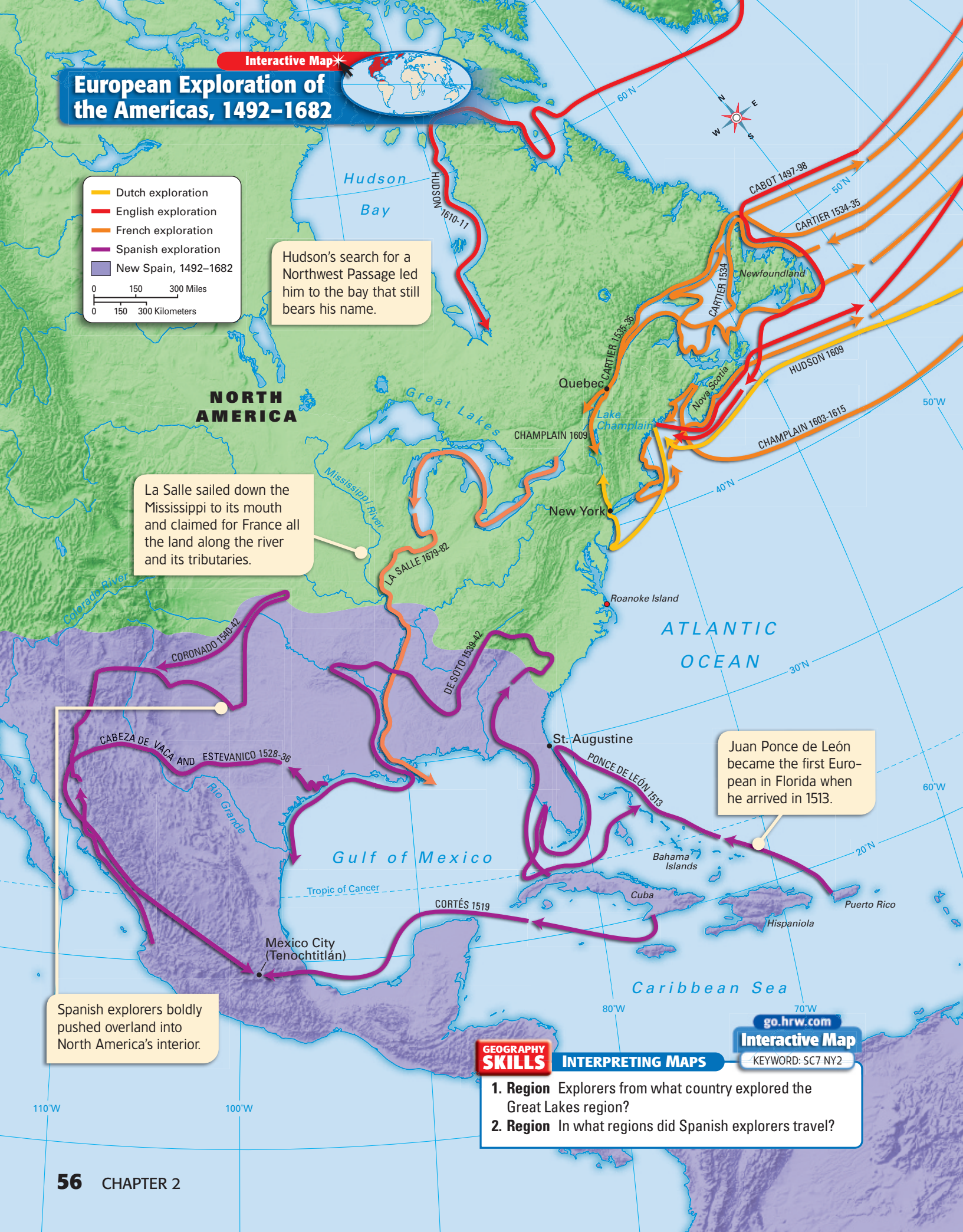
In the 1650s French missionaries told stories about "a beautiful river, large, broad, and deep." In 1673 explorer Louis Jolliet (jahl-ee-ET) and missionary Jacques Marquette set out to find this great river, the Mississippi. (Hernando de Soto was the first European to find the Mississippi River, in 1541.) They reached the river and traveled down it as far as present-day Arkansas.

Nine years later René-Robert de La Salle followed the Mississippi River to the Gulf of



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

An Italian explorer working for the French king was the first European to see the island of Manhattan. Although the Lenapes that lived on the island called it Mannahatta (meaning "land of many hills"), the explorer Giovanni da Verrazano named the island New Angoulême in 1524.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

go.hrw.com
Interactive Map
KEYWORD: SC7 NY2

1. **Region** Explorers from what country explored the Great Lakes region?
2. **Region** In what regions did Spanish explorers travel?

Mexico. He claimed the Mississippi Valley for King Louis XIV of France. To honor the king, La Salle named the region Louisiana.

Starting in the 1700s, the French built new outposts. These included Detroit on the Great Lakes and Saint Louis and New Orleans along the Mississippi River. Most towns in the French territory were small. As late as 1688 there were only about 12,000 French settlers in New France. Its small population and the value of the fur trade led French settlers to ally and trade with local Native American groups.

Because of their close trading relationships, the French treated the Native Americans with more respect than some other European settlers had done. Many French settlers learned Native American languages, and they even adopted their ways of life.

Dutch Presence in the New World

The English and the French were not the only European powers to seek an empire in North America. The Dutch, who had merchant fleets around the world, came in search of trade. They claimed the land between the Delaware and Hudson rivers and called it New Netherland. This area included parts of what is now New York, New Jersey, Connecticut, and Delaware. In 1624 the newly formed Dutch West India Company sent about 30 families to settle in New Netherland. Two years later Peter Minuit bought Manhattan Island from local Native Americans for about $24. Minuit then founded the town of New Amsterdam, today called New York City. To attract colonists, the Dutch allowed members of all religions to settle in their colony.

Minuit also helped Swedish settlers found New Sweden along the Delaware River. The first settlement, Fort Christina, was begun in 1638. The Swedish settlement was small, but the Dutch felt that it threatened Dutch lands and fur trading. The two sides fought a series of battles. Finally, the governor of New Netherland, Peter Stuyvesant (STY-vi-suhnt), conquered New Sweden in 1655. He allowed the Swedes to continue their colony, but he called it the "Swedish Nation."

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**
Were the French explorers in North America successful? Explain.

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The English, French, Dutch, and Swedish explored the North American continent and later established colonies there. In the next section you will learn about the establishment of slavery in the Americas.

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

Dutch colonial official Peter Minuit exchanged goods such as cloth, beads, and hatchets worth approximately 60 guilders to "purchase" the island.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP2

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What was the **Protestant Reformation**?
   b. Explain What role did the printing press play in the Protestant Reformation?
   c. Summarize What were Martin Luther's reasons for protesting the Catholic Church?
2. **a. Identify** Who was the first European to search for the **Northwest Passage**?
   b. Describe Which French and Dutch explorers tried to find the Northwest Passage?
3. **a. Recall** What happened to the first English settlements in North America?
   b. Evaluate Which European empire in North America do you think was most successful? Why?

Critical Thinking

4. **Sequencing** Review your notes on European exploration and settlement. Then create a time line like the one below and place the four events you think were most important to the development of European empires in North America on the time line. Be sure to include the date of the event, as well as a description of it and its significance.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Learning about the French Empire and Other Settlements** Take notes about the French, Dutch, Swedish, and English people who settled in America. Why did they come? What did they want and need in their new home?

SECTION 5

Beginnings of Slavery in the Americas

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. European diseases wiped out much of the Native American population, causing colonists to look for a new labor force.
2. Europeans enslaved millions of Africans and sent them to work in their colonies.
3. Slaves in the Americas created a distinct culture.

The Big Idea

Europeans forced millions of African slaves to work in their colonies.

Key Terms and People

immune, *p. 58*
Middle Passage, *p. 59*
African Diaspora, *p. 60*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on slavery in the Americas. Use a chart like the one below.

The Slave Trade		
Need for Workers		
Slave Trade		
Slave Culture		

If YOU were there...

You are an enslaved African living in North America. Your family is all that you have. You help each other, and your family provides some relief from the forced labor and harsh life on the plantation. Still, you long for your freedom. A fellow slave has told you of a plan to escape.

Will you stay with your family or try to flee?

BUILDING BACKGROUND European settlers in the Americas relied on support from their home countries to establish trade and provide protection. In return, the colonies were expected to produce money for the home country. Many colonies did this through plantations, mines, and other ventures that required a large labor force.

The Need for a New Labor Force

European diseases had a devastating effect on the Native American population. Measles, smallpox, and typhus were common in Europe. As a result, most adult Europeans were **immune**, or had a natural resistance, to them. Native Americans, however, had never been exposed to such diseases and had no immunity to them. As a result, many Native Americans became terribly sick after their first encounters with Europeans. Millions of them died in the years after Columbus reached the New World.

No one knows exactly how many Native Americans died from European diseases, but the loss of life was staggering. Spanish author Fernández de Oviedo reported in 1548 about the destruction of the Native Americans of Hispaniola. He reported that, of the estimated 1 million Indians who had lived on the island in 1492, "there are not now believed to be at the present time . . . five hundred persons [left]." In North America the Native American population north of Mexico was about 10 million when Columbus arrived. This

number would drop to less than a million. The drop in the native population played a major role in the emerging need for an alternative labor force.

Plantation agriculture was a mainstay of the colonial economic **structure**. Spain and Portugal established sugar plantations that relied on large numbers of native laborers. In the 1600s English tobacco farmers in North America also needed workers for their plantations. With a lack of Native American workers, they, too, needed another source of labor. Plantation owners in both North and South America wanted a cheap work force.

Some colonists, including Spanish priest Bartolomé de Las Casas, suggested using enslaved Africans as workers. Africans had already developed immunity to European diseases. The colonists soon agreed that slaves from West Africa could be the solution to their labor needs.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did disease contribute to the slave trade?

The Slave Trade

In 1510 the Spanish government legalized the sale of slaves in its colonies. The first full cargo ship of Africans arrived in the Americas eight years later. Over the next century, more than a million enslaved Africans were brought to the Spanish and Portuguese colonies in the New World. The Dutch and English also became active in the slave trade.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
structure the way something is set up or organized

Middle Passage

Enslavement was a horrible experience for the slaves. Most enslaved people had been captured in the interior of Africa, often by Africans who profited from selling slaves to Europeans. The captives were chained around the neck and then marched to the coast. This journey could be as long as 1,000 miles.

The **Middle Passage** was the voyage across the Atlantic Ocean that enslaved Africans were forced to endure. Africans were packed like cargo in the lower decks of the slave ships. The slaves were chained together and crammed

Primary Source

LETTER

King Afonso to King Joao III

King Afonso of the African nation of Kongo wrote a letter to the king of Portugal in 1526 asking him to do what he could to stop the practice of taking African slaves.

Sir, Your Highness should know how our Kingdom is being lost in so many ways . . . [M]erchants are taking every day our natives, sons of the land and the sons of our noblemen and vassals and our relatives, because the thieved and men of bad conscience grab them . . . [T]hey grab them and get them to be sold; and so great, Sir, is the corruption and licentiousness [law breaking] that our country is being completely depopulated, and Your Highness should not agree with this nor accept it as in your service. And to avoid it we need from those

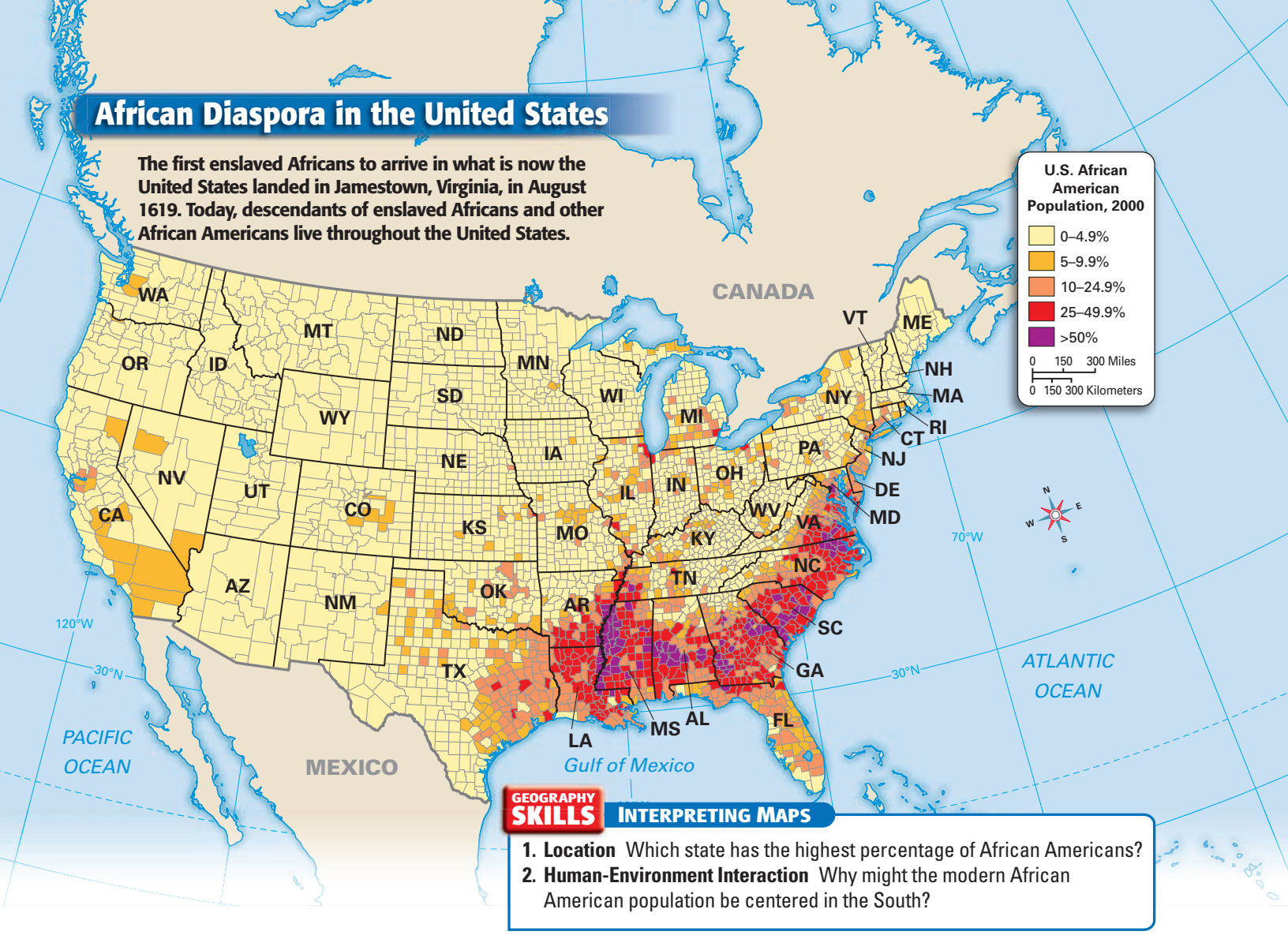


(your) Kingdoms no more than some priests and a few people to teach in schools, and no other goods except wine and flour for the holy sacrament [religious service].

–King Afonso of Kongo,
letter to the king of Portugal, 1526

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

1. **Why does Afonso ask the Portuguese king to help stop the slave trade?**
2. **What does Afonso request from the king?**



into spaces about the size of coffins. The height between the decks was sometimes only 18 inches.

In this confinement, disease spread quickly, killing many Africans. Others suffocated or died from malnutrition. Some slaves took their own lives to end their suffering. It is estimated that one out of every six Africans died during the Middle Passage.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Almost half of Brazil's current population is of African descent.

African Diaspora

Between the 1520s and 1860s about 12 million Africans were shipped across the Atlantic as slaves. More than 10 million of these captives survived the voyage and reached the Americas. The slave trade led to the **African Diaspora**. (A diaspora is the scattering of a people.) Enslaved Africans were sent all across the New World.

More than a third of the enslaved Africans, nearly 4 million people, were sent to Brazil. Most of those slaves were forced to work on Portuguese sugar plantations. Nearly 2 million slaves went to the colonies of New Spain. Some worked on plantations in the Caribbean, while others were taken to the mines of Peru and Mexico. Some 3 million slaves worked in British and French colonies in the Caribbean and Latin America. More than 600,000 slaves went to Britain's North American colonies that later became the United States.

Colonial leaders across the Americas developed laws that regulated slave treatment and behavior. Slaves were given few rights in the colonies. The law considered enslaved Africans to be property. In some colonies, a slaveholder was not charged with

murder if he killed a slave while punishing him. Enslaved Africans, on the other hand, received harsh penalties for minor offenses, such as breaking a tool. Runaways were often tortured and sometimes killed.

The treatment of enslaved Africans varied. Some slaves reported that their masters treated them kindly. To protect their investment, some slaveholders provided adequate food and clothing for their slaves. However, severe treatment was very common. Whippings, brandings, and even worse torture were all part of American slavery.

READING CHECK **Generalizing** How were enslaved Africans treated in the Americas?

Slave Culture in the Americas

Slaves in the Americas came from many different parts of Africa. They spoke different languages and had different cultural backgrounds. But enslaved Africans also shared many customs and viewpoints. They built upon what they had in common to create a new African American culture.

Families were a vital part of slave culture. Families provided a refuge—a place not fully under the slaveholders' control. However, slave families faced many challenges. Families were often broken apart when a family member was sold to another owner. In Latin America, there were many more enslaved males than females. This made it difficult for slaves there to form stable families.

Religion was a second refuge for slaves. It gave enslaved Africans a form of expression that was partially free from their slaveholders' control. Slave religion was primarily Christian, but it included traditional elements from African religions as well. Religion gave slaves a sense of self worth and a hope for salvation in this life and the next. Spirituals were a common form of religious expression among slaves. Slaves also used songs and folktales to tell their stories of sorrow, hope, agony, and joy.

Many slaves expressed themselves through art and dance. Dances were important social events in slave communities. Like most elements of slave culture, art and dance were heavily influenced by African traditions.

READING CHECK **Identifying Points of View** Why was religion important to slaves in the Americas?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW After disease wiped out much of the Native American population, colonists turned to slave labor. In the next chapter you will learn about English colonies in the Americas.

Section 5 Assessment

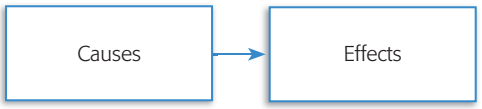
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP2

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** Why did so many Native Americans die after coming into contact with Europeans?
   b. Summarize Why did plantation owners turn to enslaved Africans as a labor force?
2. **a. Identify** What was the **Middle Passage**?
   b. Describe Explain how enslaved Africans were treated after they reached the colonies in the Americas.
3. **a. Explain** What are spirituals?
   b. Analyze How did religion and family provide a refuge from the harsh life enslaved Africans were forced to endure?

Critical Thinking

4. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on the slave trade. Use a chart like the one below to explain the causes and the effects of the slave trade.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Writing about Slavery** Add information about the beginnings of slavery in the Americas to your notes. Include notes about slave culture. What refuges did enslaved people have from their suffering?

The Atlantic Slave Trade

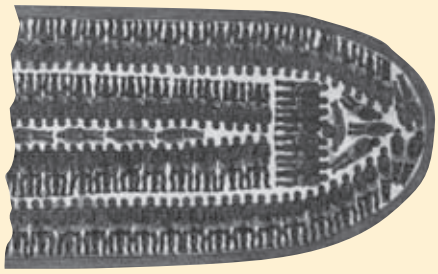
The slave system that arose in the American colonies was strongly influenced by geographic forces. The climate of the southern colonies was suited to growing certain crops, like cotton, tobacco, and sugarcane. These crops required a great deal of labor to grow and to process. To meet this great demand for labor, the colonists looked to one main source—enslaved Africans.

Colonial Slave Ports Slave ships sailed to slave ports, where they unloaded their human cargo. Slave ports like Boston, Newport, and Charleston were located near farming areas and the mouths of rivers.



The West Indies Africans were brought to the West Indies to work on large sugar plantations. Sugarcane thrived in the West Indies, but it required huge amounts of labor to grow.

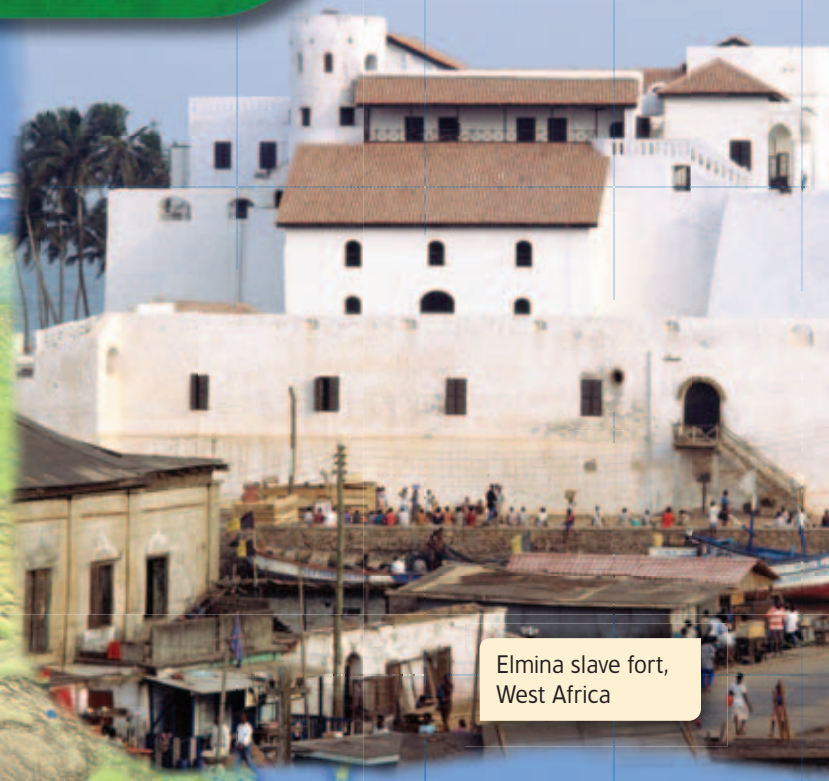
The Middle Passage
The terrifying and deadly voyage across the Atlantic was known as the Middle Passage. Enslaved Africans were chained and crowded together under ships' decks on this long voyage, as this drawing shows.



Slave forts began as trading posts. They were built near river mouths to provide easy access to both the sea and inland areas.

St. Luis de Senegal
James Fort
Accra
Elmina
Whydah
Assinie
AFRICA

New England traders exchanged goods for slaves on the West African coast and then transported the slaves to the American colonies or to the West Indies.



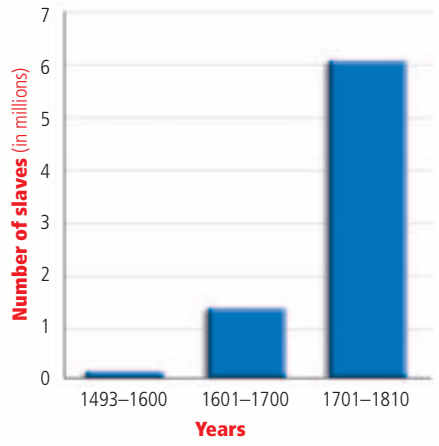
Elmina slave fort, West Africa

Kidnapped and Taken to a Slave Ship

Mahommah G. Baquaqua was captured and sold into slavery as a young man. In this 1854 account, he recalls being taken to the African coast to board a slave ship.

"I was taken down to the river and placed on board a boat; the river was very large and branched off in two different directions, previous to emptying itself into the sea . . . We were two nights and one day on this river, when we came to a . . . place . . . [where] the slaves were all put into a pen, and placed with our backs to the fire . . . When all were ready to go aboard, we were chained together, and tied with ropes round about our necks, and were thus drawn down to the sea shore."

Slaves Brought to the Americas, 1493–1810



20° N
20° S
Tropic of Capricorn
40° S
60° S
20° E
40° E
60° E
80° E
100° E

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Location** Why were slave forts located where they were?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** What geographic factors influenced the development of the Atlantic slave trade?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Framing Historical Questions

Define the Skill

One of the most valuable ways that people gain knowledge is by asking effective questions. An effective question is one that obtains the kind of information the person asking the question desires. The ability to frame, or construct, effective questions is an important life skill as well as a key to gaining a better understanding of history. Asking effective historical questions will aid you in studying history and in conducting historical research.

Learn the Skill

Effective questions are specific, straightforward, and directly related to the topic. When we do not obtain the information we want or need, often it is because we have asked the wrong questions. Asking effective questions is not as easy as it seems. It requires thought and preparation. The following guidelines will help you in framing effective questions about history and other topics as well.

1. Determine exactly what you want to know.
2. Decide what questions to ask and write them down. Having written questions is very important. They will help guide your study or research and keep you focused on your topic and goal.
3. Review each of your questions to make sure it is specific, straightforward, and directly related to your topic.
4. Rewrite any questions that are vague, too broad, or biased.

Questions that are vague or too broad are likely to produce information not directly related to what you want to know. For example, if you wanted to know more about trade and the voyages of exploration that are discussed in Chapter 2, "What were the voyages of exploration?" may not be a good question to ask. This question is too broad. Its answer would not give you the information you want.

Asking "Why was trade the most important cause of the voyages of exploration?" would not be an effective question either. This question is biased because it *assumes* trade was the main reason for the voyages, when that might not have been true. Good historical investigation assumes nothing that is not known to be fact. A more effective question, which would get the information you want, is "Were trade and the voyages of exploration connected, and, if so, in what ways?" Do you see now why wording is so important in asking effective questions and why you should write out and review your questions beforehand?

Practice the Skill

Reread the information about Cortés and the Aztec on pages 46–47, then complete the activities below.

1. Suppose you wanted to learn more about Cortés's defeat of the Aztec. Decide whether each of the following would be an effective question to ask about this topic. Explain why or why not.
   - **a.** What happened when the Aztec and the Spanish met?
   - **b.** Why did other Indians betray the Aztec?
   - **c.** What resources did Cortés have that helped him conquer the Aztec?
2. Frame five questions that would be effective in helping you to learn more about this topic.

CHAPTER 2

Chapter Review

Geography's Impact

▶ **video series**

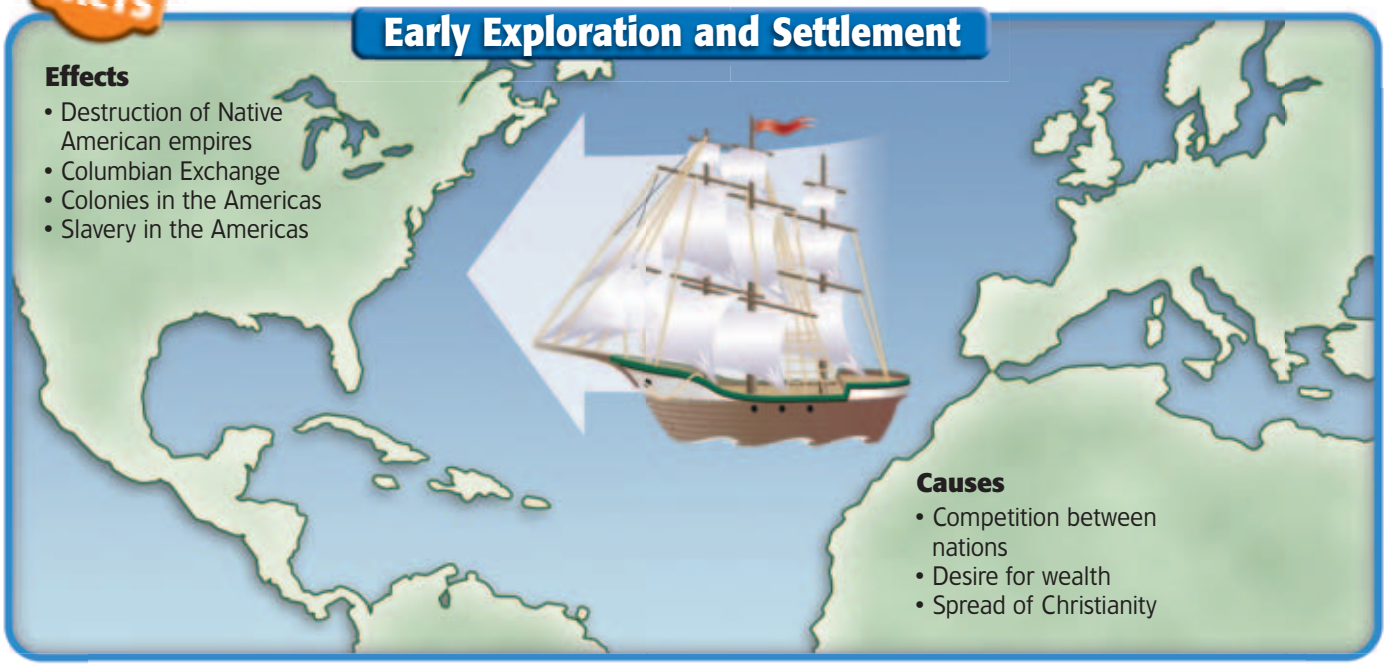
Review the video to answer the closing question:

How can protesting and demonstrating help people who feel that their ethnic group is not being treated fairly?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

1. The first Europeans to reach the east coast of North America were the _____.
2. _____ established a navigation school and financed expeditions to the west coast of Africa.
3. One of the most important European explorers was _____, who was the first person to claim lands in the Americas for Spain.
4. The first voyage that sailed completely around the world was headed by _____.
5. Sir Walter Raleigh founded the colony of Virginia after receiving a _____, a grant to set up a colony, from the queen of England.
6. Large farms or _____, that specialize in growing one type of crop for profit, were common in Spanish America.

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 38–41)*

7. a. Recall On which two islands did the Vikings establish settlements before coming to North America?

b. Analyze What factors led Europeans to begin their voyages of exploration?

c. Evaluate What do you think motivated sailors to sign on for voyages of exploration?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 42–45)*

8. a. Recall Why was Columbus's first voyage important?

b. Summarize Explain the conflict that emerged between Spain and Portugal over their empires in the Americas and how it was resolved.

c. Evaluate Do you think the Columbian Exchange improved life or made life worse in the Americas? Explain your answer.

SECTION 3 *(Pages 46–51)*

9. a. Identify What territories in the Americas did Spain control?

b. Analyze What factors enabled the Spanish to defeat the Aztec and the Inca?

c. Elaborate Why was the encomienda system important to Spanish settlers?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 52–57)*

10. a. Describe What were the results of the defeat of the Spanish Armada?

b. Contrast How did French settlements in the Americas differ from the English and Spanish settlements?

c. Predict What problems might arise among the different empires with settlements in North America?

SECTION 5 *(Pages 58–61)*

11. a. Explain Why did the Spanish turn to enslaved Africans as a labor force in the Americas?

b. Analyze In what ways did enslaved Africans create their own unique culture in the Americas?

c. Evaluate What effects do you think slavery had on the populations and cultures of West African countries?

Reviewing Themes

12. Geography What geographic features in North America helped and hindered the exploration and colonization of the continent?

13. Politics In what way were the expansions of empires motivated by the politics among European nations?

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY2

14. Activity: Illustrated Map Columbus's successful return from the New World sparked an interest in exploration that resulted in an explosion of explorers. Each explorer mapped his route and the lands that he explored. Our knowledge of the New World increased quickly as explorers made maps and kept detailed logs to catalog what they found. Enter the activity keyword. Then choose a group of explorers and research the routes these sailors took from the country of origin to the place upon which they landed. Present your research in an annotated and illustrated map or log book. Write from the point of view of an explorer and include information about the areas explored.

Reading Skills

Outlining and History *Use the Reading Social Studies Skill taught in this chapter to answer the following question.*

15. Make a short but complete outline of the section on pages 50–51 under the heading "Spanish Treatment of Native Americans."

Social Studies Skills

Framing Historical Questions *Use the Social Studies Skill taught in this chapter to answer the following question.*

16. Write a historical question for each of the five sections of this chapter.

Focus on Writing

17. Writing Your Letter First, review your notes and decide which group you want to write about. Which details from your notes will your friends and family be most interested in? Which do you find most important? What do you want to tell your family and friends about the Americas?



CHAPTER 2

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Which of the following best illustrates the process known as the Columbian Exchange?**

A Christopher Columbus sailed west to reach Asia and encountered the Americas.

B Corn and tomatoes were introduced to Europe from America.

C Asian goods moved long distances along the Silk Road to reach Europe.

D Advances in technology allowed sailors to better navigate on the open seas.

2 **The decimation of the native population of the Americas and the need for plantation labor resulted in the**

A encomienda system.

B establishment of religious tolerance.

C transatlantic slave trade.

D Columbian Exchange.

3 **The desire to convert people to Christianity and the demand for Asian trade goods led to**

A increased interest in exploration.

B the Renaissance.

C the conquest of the Americas.

D efforts to end the slave trade.

4 **Spain's empire in the Americas included which of the following?**

A New York

B Virginia

C Mexico

D Canada

5 **Which of the following established colonies in North America?**

A the Portuguese

B the Dutch

C the Greeks

D the Romans

6 **The voyage of enslaved Africans across the Atlantic to the Americas was known as the**

A Northwest Passage.

B African Diaspora.

C triangular trade.

D Middle Passage.

7 **Examine the following passage from Bernal Díaz del Castillo's account of an Aztec marketplace. Then answer the question below.**

> "The bustle and noise caused by this large crowd of people was so great that it could be heard more than four miles away. Some of our men, who had traveled through Italy, said that they never had seen a marketplace that covered so large an area, which was so well regulated, and so crowded with people as this one at Mexico."
>
> —Bernal Díaz del Castillo, adapted from *The Memoirs of the Conquistador Bernal Díaz del Castillo*

Document-Based Question **What is the author's impression of the Aztec marketplace? How can you tell?**

CHAPTER 3 1605–1774

The English Colonies

Focus Question

How did the development of the colonies lead to rebellion?

SECTION 1
The Southern Colonies 72
Primary Source A Note from Virginia

SECTION 2
The New England Colonies 78
Primary Source The Mayflower Compact

SECTION 3
The Middle Colonies 85
Quick Facts Characteristics of the Middle Colonies
Focus on New York The Dutch and the English
Focus on New York City Colonial New York City

SECTION 4
Life in the English Colonies 90
Biography Olaudah Equiano

SECTION 5
Conflict in the Colonies 98
Focus on New York City The Stamp Act Congress

Focus on Writing

Writing an Infomercial What if television had been invented during the time that the English colonies were being founded in North America? Instead of relying on printed flyers and word of mouth to attract settlers, the founders of colonies might have made infomercials. In this chapter you will read about life in the American colonies during different times. You will choose one time period and colony and write an infomercial encouraging English citizens to settle in the colony of your choice.





United States

1620 The Pilgrims sign the Mayflower Compact.

1620

World



1648 Work is finished on India's Taj Mahal.

Mayflower Compact courtesy of the Pilgrim Society, Plymouth, Massachusetts.

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of freedom of religion.

What You Will Learn...

Plymouth Colony thrives again in this highly accurate re-creation. The original colonists came to North America in 1620 in search of religious freedom. By 1627, the year this scene re-creates, the colonists were well established. Their success encouraged others. In this chapter you will learn about English settlements that dotted the east coast of North America.

NY

1685
The Duke of York becomes King James II and the colony of New York becomes a royal province.



1763
Pontiac, an American Indian, leads a rebellion on the western frontier.

1773
Patriots stage the Boston Tea Party.

1670 — 1720 — 1770

1681
William Penn establishes the colony of Pennsylvania.



1682
Peter the Great becomes czar of Russia.



1768
British explorer James Cook sets sail on his first trip to the South Pacific, meeting people like this Sandwich Islander.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes In this chapter you will read about the people who settled the early colonies of North America. You will learn about the problems they faced as they felt the tug between their homeland and their new land. You will see how they settled political differences (sometimes peacefully, other times not) and learned how to trade goods and grow crops to establish a thriving economy. You will discover that the **economy** often influenced their **politics**.

Vocabulary Clues

Focus on Reading When you are reading your history textbook, you may often come across a word you do not know. If that word isn't listed as a key term, how do you find out what it means?

Using Context Clues Context means surroundings. Authors often include clues to the meaning of a difficult word in its context. You just have to know how and where to look.

Clue	How It Works	Example	Explanation
Direct Definition	Includes a definition in the same or a nearby sentence	In the late 1600s England, like most western European nations, mercantilism, *a system of creating and maintaining wealth through carefully controlled trade.*	The phrase "a system of creating and maintaining wealth through carefully controlled trade" defines *mercantilism.*
Restatement	Uses different words to say the same thing	The British continued to keep a standing, *or permanent,* army in North America to protect the colonists against Indian attacks.	The word *permanent* is another way to say *standing.*
Comparisons or Contrasts	Compares or contrasts the unfamiliar word with a familiar one	*Unlike legal traders,* smugglers did not have permission to bring goods into the country.	The word *unlike* indicates that smugglers are different from legal traders.

You Try It!

The following sentences are from this chapter. Each uses a definition or restatement clue to explain unfamiliar words. See if you can use the context to figure out the meaning of the words in italics.

Context Clues Up Close

From Chapter 3

1. In 1605 a company of English merchants asked King James I for the right to *found*, or establish, a settlement. *(p. 72)*
2. The majority of workers were *indentured servants*. These servants signed a contract to work four to seven years for those who paid for their journey to America. *(p. 74)*
3. In New England, the center of politics was the *town meeting*. In town meetings people talked about and decided on issues of local interest, such as paying for schools. *(p. 91)*

Answer the questions about the sentences you read.

1. In example 1, what does the word *found* mean? What hints did you find in the sentence to figure that out?
2. In example 2, where do you find the meaning of *indentured servants*? What does this phrase mean?
3. In example 3, you learn the definition of *town meeting* in the second sentence. Can you combine these two sentences into one sentence? Try putting a dash after the word *meeting* and replacing "In town meetings" with "a place where . . ."

As you read Chapter 3, look for context clues that can help you figure out the meanings of unfamiliar words or terms.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 3

Section 1

Jamestown *(p. 72)*
John Smith *(p. 73)*
Pocahontas *(p. 73)*
indentured servants *(p. 74)*
Bacon's Rebellion *(p. 74)*
Toleration Act of 1649 *(p. 75)*
Olaudah Equiano *(p. 77)*
slave codes *(p. 77)*

Section 2

Puritans *(p. 78)*
Pilgrims *(p. 78)*
immigrants *(p. 78)*
Mayflower Compact *(p. 79)*
Squanto *(p. 79)*
John Winthrop *(p. 80)*
Anne Hutchinson *(p. 82)*

Section 3

Peter Stuyvesant *(p. 85)*
Quakers *(p. 86)*
William Penn *(p. 86)*
staple crops *(p. 87)*

Section 4

town meeting *(p. 91)*
English Bill of Rights *(p. 91)*
triangular trade *(p. 93)*
Great Awakening *(p. 94)*
Jonathan Edwards *(p. 94)*
Enlightenment *(p. 95)*
John Locke *(p. 95)*
Pontiac *(p. 97)*

Section 5

Samuel Adams *(p. 99)*
Committees of Correspondence *(p. 99)*
Stamp Act of 1765 *(p. 100)*
Boston Massacre *(p. 101)*
Tea Act *(p. 102)*
Boston Tea Party *(p. 102)*
Intolerable Acts *(p. 102)*
Quartering Act *(p. 102)*

Academic Vocabulary

In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

authority *(p. 73)*
factors *(p. 74)*

SECTION 1

The Southern Colonies

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Jamestown was the first permanent English settlement in America.
2. Daily life in Virginia was challenging to the colonists.
3. Religious freedom and economic opportunities were motives for founding other southern colonies, including Maryland, the Carolinas, and Georgia.
4. Farming and slavery were important to the economies of the southern colonies.

The Big Idea

Despite a difficult beginning, the southern colonies soon flourished.

Key Terms and People

Jamestown, *p. 72*
John Smith, *p. 73*
Pocahontas, *p. 73*
indentured servants, *p. 74*
Bacon's Rebellion, *p. 74*
Toleration Act of 1649, *p. 75*
Olaudah Equiano, *p. 77*
slave codes, *p. 77*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes in a chart like the one below on the founding of the southern colonies.

Colony	Year	Why Founded

If YOU were there...

A year ago, in 1609, you moved to the colony of Virginia. Life here has been hard. During the winter many people died of cold or sickness. Food is always scarce. Now it is spring, and a ship has come from England bringing supplies. In a week it will sail home. Some of your neighbors are giving up and returning to England. They ask you to come, too.

Would you take the ship back to England?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Several European nations took part in the race to claim lands in the Americas. Their next step was to establish colonies in the lands that they claimed. The first English colonies were started in the late 1500s but failed. Even in successful colonies, colonists faced hardships and challenges.

Settlement in Jamestown

In 1605 a company of English merchants asked King James I for the right to found, or establish, a settlement. In 1606 the king granted the request of the company to settle in a region called Virginia.

Founding a New Colony

The investors in the new settlement formed a joint-stock company called the London Company. This allowed the group to share the cost and risk of establishing the colony. On April 26, 1607, the first 105 colonists sent by the London Company arrived in America. On May 14, about 40 miles up the James River in Virginia, the colonists founded **Jamestown**, the first permanent English settlement in North America.

A lack of preparation cost a lot of the colonists their lives. Most of the men who came to Jamestown were adventurers with no farming experience or useful skills such as carpentry. Jamestown was surrounded by marshes full of disease-carrying mosquitoes. By the time winter arrived, two-thirds of the original colonists had died.



Powhatan Confederacy

Jamestown fared better under **John Smith,** who took control of the colony and built a fort in 1608. He forced the settlers to work harder and to build better housing by creating rules that rewarded harder workers with food. The colonists received help from the powerful Powhatan Confederacy of Native Americans after Smith made an agreement with them. The Powhatan brought food to help the colonists and taught them how to grow corn.

In 1609 some 400 more settlers arrived in Jamestown. That winter, disease and famine once again hit the colony. The colonists called this period the starving time. By the spring of 1610, only 60 colonists were still alive. Jamestown failed to make a profit until colonist John Rolfe introduced a new type of tobacco that sold well in England.

War in Virginia

John Rolfe married **Pocahontas**, daughter of the Powhatan leader, in 1614. Their marriage helped the colonists form more peaceful relations with the Powhatan. However, Pocahontas died three years later in England, which she was visiting with Rolfe.

In 1622, colonists killed a Powhatan leader. The Powhatan responded by attacking the Virginia settlers later that year. Fighting between the colonists and the Powhatan continued for the next 20 years. Because the London Company could not protect its colonists, the English Crown canceled the company's charter in 1624. Virginia became a royal colony and existed under the **authority** of a governor chosen by the king.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
authority power, right to rule

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What problems did the Jamestown colonists face?

Daily Life in Virginia

In early Virginia, people lived on scattered farms rather than in towns. Tobacco farmers established large farms called plantations. Tobacco was so valuable that it was sometimes used as money.

Headright System

These plantations were made possible in part by the headright system, which was started by the London Company. Under this system, colonists who paid their own way to Virginia received 50 acres of land. A colonist could earn another 50 acres for every additional person brought from England. Rich colonists who brought servants or relatives to Virginia gained large amounts of land.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
factors
causes

Primary Source

LETTER

A Note from Virginia

In this 1619 letter, the secretary of the Virginia colony, John Pory, encouraged people to move to Virginia.

"As touching the quality of this country, three things there be, which in few years may bring this colony to perfection; the English plow, vineyards, & cattle . . . All our riches for the present do consist in tobacco, wherein one man by his own labor has in one year, raised to himself to the value of 200 pounds sterling; and another by the means of six servants has cleared at one crop a thousand pound English. These be true, yet indeed rare examples, yet possible to be done by others."

—from *The Power of Words*, edited by T. H. Breen

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

How does this letter indicate the importance of tobacco in Virginia?

Labor in Virginia

Colonists in Virginia suffered very high death rates, which led to labor shortages. The majority of workers were **indentured servants**. These servants signed a contract to work for four to seven years for those who paid for their journey to America.

Expansion of Slavery

Not all laborers in Virginia came from Europe. A Dutch ship brought the first Africans to Virginia in 1619. Some Africans were servants; others had been enslaved. Some African servants became successful farmers when their contracts ended.

The demand for workers was soon greater than the supply of people willing to work as indentured servants. Over time, the cost of slaves fell. These **factors** led some colonists to turn to slave labor. By the mid-1600s most Africans in Virginia were being kept in lifelong slavery.

Bacon's Rebellion

As plantations grew, the economy of Jamestown began to expand. Soon, colonial officials began to ask for more taxes. During the mid-1600s poor colonists protested the higher taxes. They were also upset about the governor's policies toward Native Americans. They thought the colony was not well protected against attack. In 1676 a group of former indentured servants led by Nathaniel Bacon attacked some friendly American Indians. Bacon opposed the governor's policies promoting trade with American Indians. He also thought the colonists should be able to take the Indians' land. When the governor tried to stop him, Bacon and his followers attacked and burned Jamestown in an uprising known as **Bacon's Rebellion**.

At one point, Bacon controlled much of the colony. He died of fever, however, and the rebellion soon ended.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** What factors led to the increased use of slave labor in Virginia?



Southern Wealth

Colonists overcame tough beginnings to create large and wealthy settlements like this one in Virginia. Churches were often the first major buildings in a growing town.

How does the large church in the picture show Virginia's wealth?

Colonial Williamsburg Foundation

Other Southern Colonies

As Jamestown was developing in Virginia, new groups of colonists began planning their move to America. Many English Catholics came to America to escape religious persecution. English Catholics had long been against England's separation from the Roman Catholic Church. For this reason they were not allowed by the Church of England to worship freely. English leaders also feared that English Catholics would ally with Catholic countries such as France and Spain in conflicts.

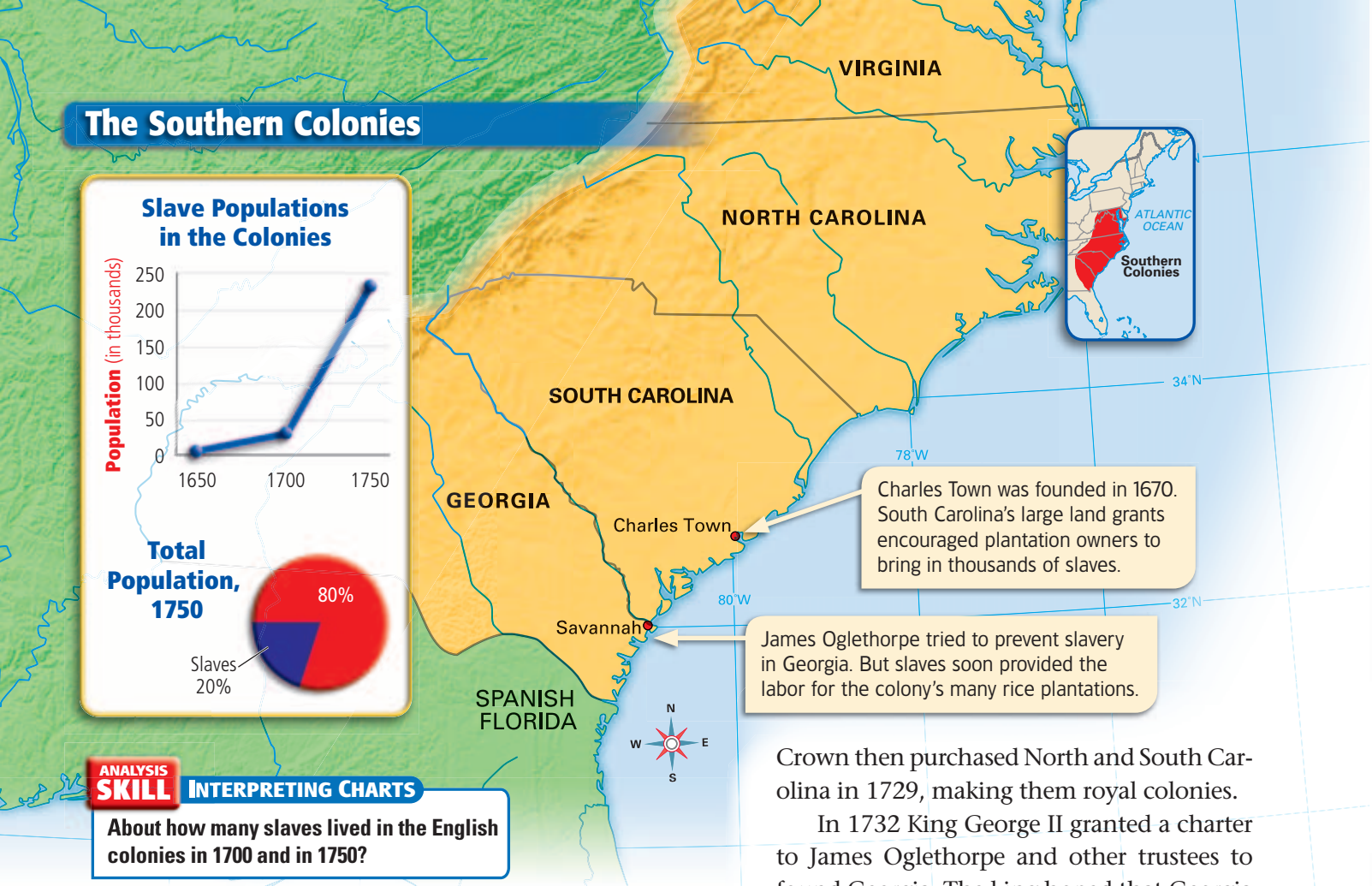
Maryland

In the 1620s George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, asked King Charles I for a charter establishing a new colony in America for Catholics. In 1632 Charles issued the charter to Calvert's son, Cecilius, who took over the planning of the colony. Cecilius, known as the second Lord Baltimore, named the colony Maryland in honor of England's queen, Henrietta Maria. It was located just north of Virginia in the Chesapeake Bay area. Calvert intended for the colony to be a refuge for English Catholics. It would also be a proprietary colony. This meant that the colony's proprietors, or owners, controlled the government.

In 1634 a group of 200 English Catholics came to Maryland. Included in the group were wealthy landowners, servants, craftspeople, and farmers. Settlers in Maryland benefited from the lessons learned by the Jamestown colonists. They spent their time raising corn, cattle, and hogs so that they would have enough to eat. Before long, many colonists also began growing tobacco for profit.

Although Catholics founded Maryland, a growing number of Protestants began moving there in the 1640s. Soon, religious conflicts arose between Catholics and Protestants in the colony. To reduce tensions, Lord Baltimore presented a bill to the colonial assembly that became known as the **Toleration Act of 1649**. This bill made it a crime to restrict the religious rights of Christians. This was the first law supporting religious tolerance passed in the English colonies.

The Toleration Act did not stop all religious conflict. However, it did show that the government wanted to offer some religious freedom and to protect the rights of minority groups.



ANALYSIS SKILL **INTERPRETING CHARTS**

About how many slaves lived in the English colonies in 1700 and in 1750?

The Carolinas and Georgia

Colonies were also established south of Virginia. In 1663 the English king, Charles II, gave much of the land between Virginia and Spanish Florida to eight of his supporters. At first Carolina was a single colony. However, the settlements were far apart, and it was hard to govern them. In 1712 the colony separated into North and South Carolina.

Most of the colonists in North Carolina were farmers who had moved south from Virginia. Colonists primarily from Europe settled South Carolina. Those who paid their own way received large grants of land, and some brought enslaved Africans with them. By 1730 about 20,000 enslaved Africans were living in the colony, compared to some 10,000 white settlers.

South Carolina's proprietors managed the colony poorly, and in 1719 the proprietary government was overthrown. The Crown then purchased North and South Carolina in 1729, making them royal colonies.

In 1732 King George II granted a charter to James Oglethorpe and other trustees to found Georgia. The king hoped that Georgia would shield Britain's other colonies from Spanish Florida. Oglethorpe wanted the new colony to be a place where debtors, who had been jailed for their debts in England, could make a new start. In 1733 Oglethorpe and 120 colonists, mostly from England, founded the city of Savannah.

Oglethorpe did not want Georgia to have large plantations owned by a few wealthy individuals. He wanted many small farmers. To reach this goal, Oglethorpe outlawed slavery and limited the size of land grants. Soon, however, the settlers grew unhappy with Oglethorpe's strict rules. In 1752 the British government made Georgia a royal colony with new laws. Coastal Georgia was soon filled with large rice plantations worked by thousands of slaves.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What were some of the reasons colonists came to the southern colonies?

Economies of the Southern Colonies

The economies of the southern colonies depended on agriculture. They also exported materials for building ships, such as wood and tar. Some colonies traded with local Indians for deerskins to sell.

The colonies had many small farms and some large plantations. Farms did well because the South enjoyed a warm climate and a long growing season. Many farms grew cash crops that were sold for profit. Tobacco, rice, and indigo—a plant used to make blue dye—were the most important cash crops.

The southern colonies' cash crops required a great deal of difficult work to grow and harvest. This meant a large workforce was needed. By the 1700s enslaved Africans, rather than indentured servants, had become the main source of labor.

Slavery was a viciously brutal condition for many inhabitants of the southern colonies. One former slave named **Olaudah Equiano** recorded his experiences.

> "Tortures, murder, and every other imaginable barbarity … are practiced upon the poor slaves with impunity [no punishment]. I hope the slave-trade will be abolished."
>
> —Olaudah Equiano, from *The Interesting Narrative of the Life of Olaudah Equiano, or Gustavus Vassa, the African*

Most of the southern colonies passed **slave codes**, or laws to control slaves. Colonies with large numbers of slaves had the strictest slave codes. For example, South Carolina's slaveholders feared that slaves would revolt. As a result, South Carolina's code said slaves could not hold meetings or own weapons. Some colonies did not allow slaveholders to free their slaves.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What role did slavery play in the southern plantation economy? How was it regulated?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you read about life in the southern colonies. In the next section you will learn about the New England colonies.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP3

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** How did **John Smith** improve conditions in **Jamestown**?
   b. Explain What events led to a conflict between the Jamestown settlers and the Powhatan Confederacy?
2. **a. Recall** Why were **indentured servants** necessary in Virginia?
   b. Evaluate What do you think was the most serious problem faced by settlers in Virginia? Why?
3. **a. Identify** Which colony was the first to promote religious tolerance?
   b. Analyze Why did more enslaved Africans live in South Carolina than did white settlers?
   c. Predict How might the colony of Georgia have been different if Oglethorpe's plan had succeeded?
4. **a. Recall** What was the purpose of **slave codes**?
   b. Analyze Why were slaves in high demand in the southern colonies?

Critical Thinking

5. **Summarizing** Review your notes on the southern colonies. Then add a new column to your chart that summarizes the successes and/or failures of each colony.

Colony	Year	Why Founded	Successes/Failures

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Gathering Some Ideas** As you read this section, take notes on the early colonies of Virginia, Maryland, the Carolinas, and Georgia. Be sure to note what advantages they offered to settlers and what difficulties settlers faced. Start to think about the people who would be most likely to settle in the southern colonies.

SECTION 2

The New England Colonies

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The Pilgrims and Puritans came to America to avoid religious persecution.
2. Religion and government were closely linked in the New England colonies.
3. The New England economy was based on trade and farming.
4. Education was important in the New England colonies.

The Big Idea

English colonists traveled to New England to gain religious freedom.

Key Terms and People

Puritans, *p. 78*
Pilgrims, *p. 78*
immigrants, *p. 78*
Mayflower Compact, *p. 79*
Squanto, *p. 79*
John Winthrop, *p. 80*
Anne Hutchinson, *p. 82*

TAKING NOTES As you read, identify the reasons English colonists came to New England. Use a chart like the one below for your notes.

Reasons for Coming to New England	
Pilgrims	
Puritans	

If YOU were there...

You live in a town near London in the early 1700s. Some of your neighbors are starting new lives in the American colonies. You would like to go with them, but you cannot afford the cost of the trip. There is one way you can go, though. You can sign a paper promising to work as a servant for five years. Then you would be free—and in a new country!

Would you sign the paper and go to America?

BUILDING BACKGROUND England's first successful colonial settlements were in Virginia. They were started mainly as business ventures. Other colonists in North America had different reasons for leaving their homes. Many, like the Pilgrims and Puritans, came to have freedom to practice their religious beliefs. Others, like the person above, simply wanted a new way of life.

Pilgrims and Puritans

Religious tensions in England remained high after the Protestant Reformation. A Protestant group called the **Puritans** wanted to purify, or reform, the Anglican Church. The Puritans thought that bishops and priests had too much power over church members.

Pilgrims on the Move

The most extreme English Protestants wanted to separate from the Church of England. These Separatists formed their own churches and cut all ties with the Church of England. In response, Anglican leaders began to punish Separatists.

The **Pilgrims** were one Separatist group that left England in the early 1600s to escape persecution. The Pilgrims moved to the Netherlands in 1608. The Pilgrims were **immigrants**—people who have left the country of their birth to live in another country.

The Pilgrims were glad to be able to practice their religion freely. They were not happy, however, that their children were

learning the Dutch language and culture. The Pilgrims feared that their children would forget their English traditions. The Pilgrims decided to leave Europe altogether. They formed a joint-stock company with some merchants and then received permission from England to settle in Virginia.

On September 16, 1620, a ship called the *Mayflower* left England with more than 100 men, women, and children aboard. Not all of these colonists were Pilgrims. However, Pilgrim leaders such as William Bradford sailed with the group.

The Mayflower Compact

After two months of rough ocean travel, the Pilgrims sighted land far north of Virginia. The Pilgrims knew that they would thus be outside the authority of Virginia's colonial government when they landed. Their charter would not apply. So, they decided to establish their own basic laws and social rules to govern the colony they would found.

On November 21, 1620, 41 of the male passengers on the ship signed the **Mayflower Compact**, a legal contract in which they agreed to have fair laws to protect the general good. The Compact represents one of the first attempts at self-government in the English colonies.

In late 1620 the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth Rock in present-day Massachusetts. The colonists struggled through the winter to build the Plymouth settlement. Nearly half died during this first winter from sickness and the freezing weather.

Pilgrims and Native Americans

In March 1621 a Native American named Samoset walked boldly into the colonists' settlement. He spoke in broken English. Samoset had learned some English from the crews of English fishing boats. He gave the Pilgrims useful information about the peoples and places of the area. He also introduced them to a Patuxet Indian named **Squanto**. Squanto had at one time lived in Europe and spoke English as well.

Primary Source

HISTORICAL DOCUMENT

The Mayflower Compact

In November 1620, Pilgrim leaders aboard the Mayflower *drafted the Mayflower Compact. This excerpt from the Mayflower Compact describes the principles of the Pilgrim colony's government.*

We whose names are underwritten . . . having undertaken, for the glory of God, and advancement of the Christian faith, and the honour of our King and country, a voyage to plant the first colony in the northern parts of Virginia, do by these presents solemnly and mutually in the presence of God, and one of another, covenant and combine ourselves together into a civil body politic for our better ordering and preservation and furtherance of the ends aforesaid; and by virtue hereof, to enact, constitute, and frame such just and equal laws, ordinances, acts, constitutions, and offices . . . as shall be thought most meet and convenient for the general good of the colony unto which we promise all due . . . obedience.

The Pilgrims describe the reasons they want to form a colony in North America.

The Pilgrims promise to obey laws that help the whole colony.

by these presents: by this document
covenant: promise
civil body politic: group organized to govern
aforesaid: mentioned above
virtue: authority
ordinances: regulations
meet: fitting

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

1. **Why do you think the colonists felt the need to establish a government for themselves?**
2. **How do you think the Mayflower Compact influenced later governments in America?**

From Squanto the Pilgrims learned to fertilize the soil with fish remains. Squanto also helped the Pilgrims establish relations with the local Wampanoag Indians. Conditions in the Plymouth colony began to improve.

The Pilgrims invited Wampanoag chief Massasoit and 90 other guests to celebrate their harvest. This feast became known as the first Thanksgiving. For the event, the Pilgrims killed wild turkeys. This event marked the survival of the Pilgrims in the new colony.

Pilgrim Community

Although the Pilgrims overcame many problems, their small settlement still struggled. Most Pilgrims became farmers, but the farmland around their settlement was poor. They had hoped to make money by trading furs and by fishing. Unfortunately, fishing and hunting conditions were not good in the area. Some colonists traded corn with American Indians for beaver furs. The Pilgrims made little money but were able to form a strong community. The colony began to grow stronger in the mid-1620s after new settlers arrived and, as in Jamestown, colonists began to have more rights to farm their own land.

The Pilgrims' settlement was different from Virginia's in that it had many families. The Pilgrims taught their children to read and offered some education to their indentured servants. Families served as centers of religious life, health care, and community well-being.

All family members worked together to survive during the early years of the colony. Women generally cooked, spun and wove wool, and sewed clothing. They also made soap and butter, carried water, dried fruit, and cared for livestock. Men spent most of their time repairing tools and working in the fields. They also chopped wood and built shelters.

Women in the Colony

In Plymouth, women had more legal rights than they did in England. In England women were not allowed to make contracts, to sue, or to own property. In America, Pilgrim women had the right to sign contracts and to bring some cases before local courts. Widows could also own property.

From time to time, local courts recognized the ways women helped the business community. Widow Naomi Silvester received a large share of her husband's estate. The court called her "a frugal [thrifty] and laborious [hardworking] woman."

Puritans Leave England

During the 1620s England's economy suffered. Many people lost their jobs. The English king, Charles I, made the situation worse by raising taxes. This unpopular act led to a political crisis. At the same time, the Church of England began to punish Puritans because they were dissenters, or people who disagree with official opinions. King Charles refused to allow Puritans to criticize church actions.

Great Migration

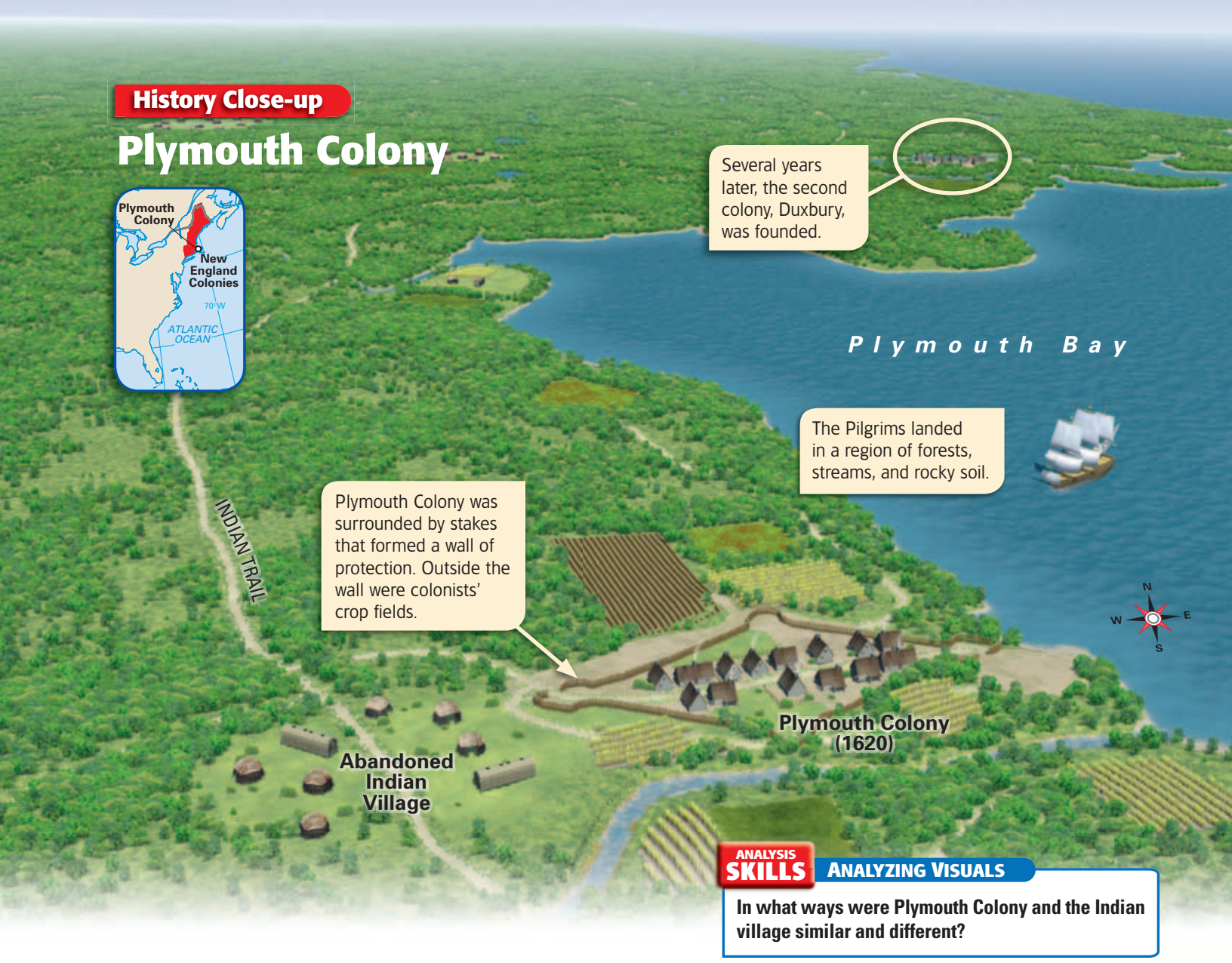
These economic, political, and religious problems in England led to the Great Migration. Between 1629 and 1640 many thousands of English men, women, and children left England. More than 40,000 of these people moved to English colonies in New England and the Caribbean. In 1629, Charles granted a group of Puritans and merchants a charter to settle in New England. They formed the Massachusetts Bay Company.

In 1630 a fleet of ships carrying Puritan colonists left England for Massachusetts to seek religious freedom. They were led by **John Winthrop**. The Puritans believed that they had made a covenant, or promise, with God to build an ideal Christian community.

A New Colony

The Puritans arrived in New England well prepared to start their colony. They brought large amounts of tools and livestock with them. Like the Pilgrims, the Puritans faced little resistance from local American Indians. Trade with the Plymouth colony helped them too. In addition, the region around Boston had a fairly healthful climate. Thus, few Puritans died from sickness. All of these things helped the Massachusetts Bay Colony do well. By 1691, the Massachusetts Bay Colony had expanded to include the Pilgrims' Plymouth Colony.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What role did religion play in the establishment of the Massachusetts Bay Colony?



Religion and Government in New England

Massachusetts Bay Colony had to obey English laws. However, its charter provided more independence than did the royal charter of Virginia. For example, it created a General Court to help run the Massachusetts colony.

The Puritan colonists turned this court into a type of self-government to represent the needs of the people. Each town sent two or three delegates to the Court. After John Winthrop served as the colony's first governor, the General Court elected the governor and his assistants. In 1644 the General Court became a two-house, or bicameral, legislature.

Politics and religion were closely linked in Puritan New England. Government leaders were also church members, and ministers often had a great deal of power in Puritan communities. Male church members were the only colonists who could vote. Colonists became full members in the church by becoming what the Puritans called God's "elect," or chosen. Reaching this status was a difficult process. Individuals had to pass a public test to prove that their faith was strong.



Biography

Anne Hutchinson

1591–1643

In 1634 Anne Hutchinson emigrated with her family from England to the Massachusetts Bay Colony. After settling in Boston, she worked as a nurse and midwife. She also hosted a Bible-study class that met in her home. Over time, Hutchinson began to question the teachings of the local ministers. Meanwhile, her popularity grew.

After being banished from the colony, Hutchinson settled in Rhode Island and, later, Long Island. She died in an American Indian attack. Today we remember her as a symbol of the struggle for religious freedom.

Drawing Conclusions Why do you think church leaders disliked Hutchinson's ideas?

Church and State

QUICK FACTS

Religion Affected Government

- Government leaders were church members.
- Ministers had great authority.

Government Affected Religion

- Government leaders outlawed certain religions.
- Government leaders punished dissenters.

In 1636 minister Thomas Hooker and his followers left Massachusetts to help found Connecticut, another New England colony. In 1639 Hooker wrote the Fundamental Orders of Connecticut. This set of principles made Connecticut's government more democratic. For example, the Orders allowed men who were not church members to vote. As a result, some historians call Hooker the father of American democracy. The Fundamental Orders of Connecticut also outlined the powers of the general courts.

Not all Puritans shared the same religious views. Minister Roger Williams did not agree with the leadership of Massachusetts. He called for his church to separate completely from the other New England congregations. Williams also criticized the General Court for taking land from American Indians without paying them.

Puritan leaders worried that Williams's ideas might hurt the unity of the colony. They made him leave Massachusetts. Williams took his supporters to southern New England. They formed a new settlement called Providence. This settlement later developed into the colony of Rhode Island. In Providence, Williams supported the separation of the church from the state. He also believed in religious tolerance for all members of the community.

In Boston, an outspoken woman also angered Puritan church leaders. **Anne Hutchinson** publicly discussed religious ideas that some leaders thought were radical. For example, Hutchinson believed that people's relationship with God did not need guidance from ministers.

Hutchinson's views alarmed Puritans such as John Winthrop. Puritan leaders did not believe that women should be religious leaders. Puritan leaders put Hutchinson on trial for her ideas. The court decided to force her out of the colony. With a group of followers, Hutchinson helped found the new

colony of Portsmouth, later a part of the colony of Rhode Island.

Perhaps the worst community conflicts in New England involved the witchcraft trials of the early 1690s. The largest number of trials were held in Salem, Massachusetts. In Salem a group of girls had accused people of casting spells on them. The community formed a special court to judge the witchcraft cases. The court often pressured the suspected witches to confess. Before the trials had ended, the Salem witch trials led to 19 people being put to death.

READING CHECK **Identifying Cause and Effect** What led to religious disagreements among the Puritans, and what was the result?

New England Economy

Connecticut, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island were very different from the southern colonies. The often harsh climate and rocky soil meant that few New England farms could grow cash crops. Most farming families grew crops and raised animals for their own use. There was thus little demand for farm laborers. Although some people held slaves, slavery did not become as important to this region.

Merchants

Trade was vital to New England's economy. New England merchants traded goods locally, with other colonies, and overseas. Many of them traded local products such as furs, pickled beef, and pork. Many merchants grew in power and wealth, becoming leading members of the New England colonies.

Fishing

Fishing became one of the region's leading industries. The rich waters off New England's coast served as home to many fish, including cod, mackerel, and halibut. Merchants exported dried fish. Colonists also began hunting for whales that swam close to shore. Whales were captured with harpoons, or spears, and dragged to shore. Whaling provided valuable oil for lighting.

Shipbuilding

Shipbuilding became an important industry in New England for several reasons. The area had plenty of forests that provided materials for shipbuilding. As trade—particularly in slaves—in the New England seaports grew, more merchant ships were built. The fishing industry also needed ships. New England shipyards made high-quality, valuable vessels. Ship owners sometimes even told their captains to sell the ship along with the cargo when they reached their destination.

Skilled Craftspeople

The northern economy needed skilled craftspeople. Families often sent younger sons to learn skilled trades such as blacksmithing, weaving, shipbuilding, and printing. The young boys who learned skilled trades were known as apprentices.

Apprentices lived with a master craftsman and learned from him. In exchange, the boys performed simple tasks. Apprentices promised to work for a master craftsman for a set number of years. They learned trades that were essential to the survival of the colonies. Apprentices received food and often clothing from the craftsmen. Gabriel Ginings, for example, was an apprentice in Portsmouth, Rhode Island. He received "sufficient food and raiment [clothing] suitable for such an apprentice," as his 1663 contract stated.

After a certain amount of time had passed, apprentices became journeymen. They usually traveled and learned new skills in their trade. Eventually they would become a master of the trade themselves.

READING CHECK **Categorizing** What types of jobs were common in the New England colonies?

THE IMPACT TODAY

Fishing remains an important industry in New England, earning hundreds of millions of dollars each year.

Education in the Colonies

Education was important in colonial New England. Mothers and fathers wanted their children to be able to read the Bible. The Massachusetts Bay Colony passed some of the first laws requiring parents to provide instruction for their children.

Public Education

To be sure that future generations would have educated ministers, communities established town schools. In 1647 the General Court of Massachusetts issued an order that a school be founded in every township of 50 families.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Public schools remain the primary source of education for most U.S. children. Total enrollment today is around 55 million students.

Schoolchildren often used the *New England Primer,* which had characters and stories from the Bible. They learned to read at the same time that they learned about the community's religious values.

The availability of schooling varied in the colonies. There were more schools in New England than in the other colonies where most children lived far from towns. These children had to be taught by their parents or by private tutors. Most colonial children stopped their education after the elementary grades. Many went to work, either on their family farm or away from home.

Higher Education

Higher education was also important to the colonists. In 1636 John Harvard and the General Court founded Harvard College. Harvard taught ministers and met the colony's need for higher education. The second college founded in the colonies, William and Mary, was established in Virginia in 1693.

By 1700 about 70 percent of men and 45 percent of women in New England could read and write. These figures were much lower in Virginia, where Jamestown was the only major settlement.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why was education important to the New England colonies?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned about the role that religion played in the New England colonies. In the next section you'll learn about New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania.

Section 2 Assessment

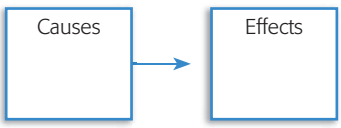
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP3

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a.** **Recall** Why did the **Pilgrims** and **Puritans** leave Europe for the Americas?
   b. **Elaborate** Do you think the Pilgrims could have survived without the assistance of **Squanto** and Massasoit? Explain your answer.
2. **a.** **Describe** What role did the church play in Massachusetts?
   b. **Analyze** Why did some colonists disagree with the leaders of Massachusetts?
3. **a.** **Identify** Describe the economy in the New England colonies.
   b. **Analyze** Why do you think New England merchants became leading members of society?
4. **a.** **Describe** What steps did the Massachusetts Bay Colony take to promote education?
   b. **Predict** What are some possible benefits that New England's emphasis on education might bring?

Critical Thinking

5. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on the reasons English colonists came to New England. Then copy the diagram below and use it to show how the colonists' experiences caused them to build certain types of colonies.



FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Comparing Colonies** Take notes on the early New England colonies. Be sure to note what advantages they offered to settlers and what difficulties settlers faced. Put a star beside the colony or colonies you might use in your infomercial.

The Middle Colonies

SECTION 3

If YOU were there...

You are a farmer in southern Germany in 1730. Religious wars have torn your country apart for many years. Now you hear stories about a place in America where people of all religions are welcome. But the leaders of the colony—and many of its people—are English. You would not know their language or customs. Still, you would be free to live and worship as you like.

How would you feel about moving to a country full of strangers?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The middle section of the Atlantic coast offered good land and a moderate climate. Several prominent English people established colonies that promised religious freedom. To people like the settler above, these colonies promised a new life.

New York and New Jersey

The Dutch founded New Netherland in 1613 as a trading post for exchanging furs with the Iroquois. The center of the fur trade in New Netherland was the town of New Amsterdam on Manhattan Island. Generous land grants to patroons, or lords, and religious tolerance soon brought Jews, French Huguenots, Puritans, and others to the colony. Director General **Peter Stuyvesant** (STY-vuh-suhnt) led the colony beginning in 1647.



Peter Stuyvesant was forced to surrender New Amsterdam to the English in 1664.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The English created New York and New Jersey from former Dutch territory.
2. William Penn established the colony of Pennsylvania.
3. The economy of the middle colonies was supported by trade and staple crops.

The Big Idea

People from many nations settled in the middle colonies.

Key Terms and People

Peter Stuyvesant, *p. 85*
Quakers, *p. 86*
William Penn, *p. 86*
staple crops, *p. 87*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on which nation founded each of the middle colonies. Record your notes in a chart like the one shown below.

Colony	Founding Nation
New York	
New Jersey	
Pennsylvania	

Characteristics of the Middle Colonies

QUICK FACTS

Social

- New York: Dutch influence
- New Jersey: diverse population
- Pennsylvania: founded by Quakers

Economic

- successful farming of staple crops
- work force of slaves and indentured servants
- active trade with Britain and West Indies

FOCUS ON NEW YORK

Since the 1650s, the Dutch and the English had been fighting over trade and naval supremacy in Europe. The struggle between the Dutch and the English to control New York was just a small part of a larger conflict between the two countries.

In 1664 an English fleet captured the undefended colony of New Amsterdam without firing a single shot. New Netherland was renamed New York, and New Amsterdam became New York City.

Soon after the English conquest in 1664, the Duke of York made Sir George Carteret and Lord John Berkeley proprietors of New Jersey. This colony occupied lands between the Hudson and Delaware rivers. It had a diverse population, including Dutch, Swedes, Finns, and Scots. The fur trade was important to the economies of New York and New Jersey through the end of the 1600s.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Today New York City is the largest city in the United States, with more than 8 million people.

READING CHECK **Comparing** How were New York and New Jersey similar?



CASE STUDY **BIOGRAPHY**

William Penn
1644–1718

William Penn was born in London as the son of a wealthy admiral. Penn joined the Quakers in 1666 and became an active preacher and writer of religious works. He supported toleration of dissenters.

In 1681 he received a charter to establish a new colony called Pennsylvania. There, Penn put his beliefs into practice. He insisted on fair dealings with local American Indians, welcomed immigrants, and promised religious toleration.

Making Generalizations How did Penn's ideas influence the rules of the colony?

Penn's Colony

The Society of Friends, or the **Quakers**, made up one of the largest religious groups in New Jersey. Quakers did not follow formal religious practices and dressed plainly. They believed in the equality of men and women before God. They also supported nonviolence and religious tolerance for all people. At the time, many Quaker beliefs and practices shocked most Christians. As a result, Quakers were persecuted in both England and America.

One proprietor of the New Jersey colony was a Quaker named **William Penn**. Penn wished to found a larger colony under his own control that would provide a safe home for Quakers. In 1681 King Charles II agreed to grant Penn a charter to begin a colony west of New Jersey.

Penn's colony, known as Pennsylvania, grew rapidly. Penn limited his own power and established an elected assembly. He also promised religious freedom to all who believed in God. His work made Pennsylvania an important example of representative self-government—a government that reflects its citizens' will—in the colonies.

Penn named the capital of his colony Philadelphia, which means "the city of brotherly love." In 1682 the Duke of York sold Penn a region to the south of Pennsylvania. This area, called Delaware, remained part of Pennsylvania until 1776.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**
Why did William Penn establish Pennsylvania, and how did he influence its government?

Economy of the Middle Colonies

The middle colonies combined characteristics of the New England and southern colonies. With a good climate and rich land, farmers there could grow large amounts of **staple crops**—crops that are always needed. These crops included wheat, barley, and oats. Farmers also raised livestock.

Slaves were somewhat more important to the middle colonies than they were to New England. They worked in cities as skilled laborers, such as blacksmiths and carpenters. Other slaves worked on farms, onboard ships, and in the growing shipbuilding industry. However, indentured servants largely filled the middle colonies' growing labor needs. Between 1700 and 1775 about 135,000 indentured servants came to the middle colonies. By 1760 Philadelphia and New York City had become the largest British colonial cities.

Trade was important to the economy of the middle colonies. Merchants in Philadelphia and New York City exported colonial goods to markets in Britain and the West Indies. These products included wheat from New York, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey.

Families formed the foundation of colonial society and economy. Family members spent much of their time working together at home on farms and in workshops. Throughout the colonies, women made important contributions to the economy. They ran farms and businesses such as clothing and grocery stores, bakeries, and drugstores. Some women also practiced medicine and worked as nurses and midwives. However, colonial laws and customs limited women's economic opportunities.

Most colonial women worked primarily in the home. Married women managed households and raised children. Sometimes they earned money for their families by selling products like butter. They also provided paid services such as washing clothes.

READING CHECK **Finding the Main Idea**
On what were the economies of the middle colonies based?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned about the middle colonies. In the next section you will read about colonial government, the slave trade, and conflicts that arose in the English colonies.

FOCUS ON READING
You can tell **staple crops** means "crops that are always needed" because of the dash between the vocabulary term and the definition.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY
Life in colonial New York was very different from life there today. People communicated through letters, rather than by telephone or e-mail. Many people traveled using horses, or in coaches pulled by horses. Merchants traveled down the Hudson River, carrying goods to be sold in Manhattan.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP3

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** Name the middle colonies. Where were they located?
   b. Draw Inferences What led to the diverse populations of New York and New Jersey?
2. **a. Identify** Who are the **Quakers**?
   b. Analyze How did **William Penn** attempt to create a colonial government that would be fair to all?
3. **a. Describe** What different types of jobs did slaves in the middle colonies hold?
   b. Evaluate In what ways were women essential to the middle colonies?

Critical Thinking

4. **Sequencing** Review your notes about which nation founded each middle colony. Then complete the time line below by listing the event that occurred on each of the dates on the time line.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Comparing Colonies** You've just read about early colonies in New York, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania. Think about the advantages they offered to settlers and what difficulties settlers faced. In your notes, put a star beside one of the colonies you might use in your infomercial.

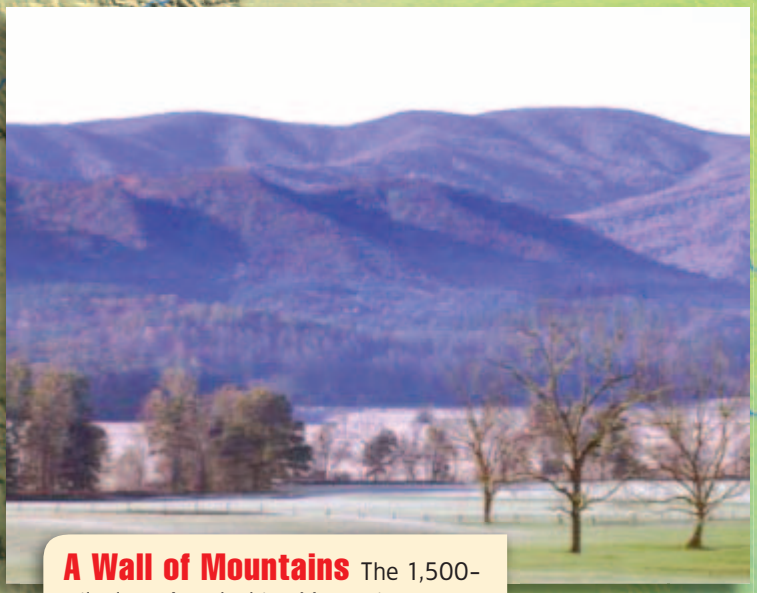
America's Growth

1760



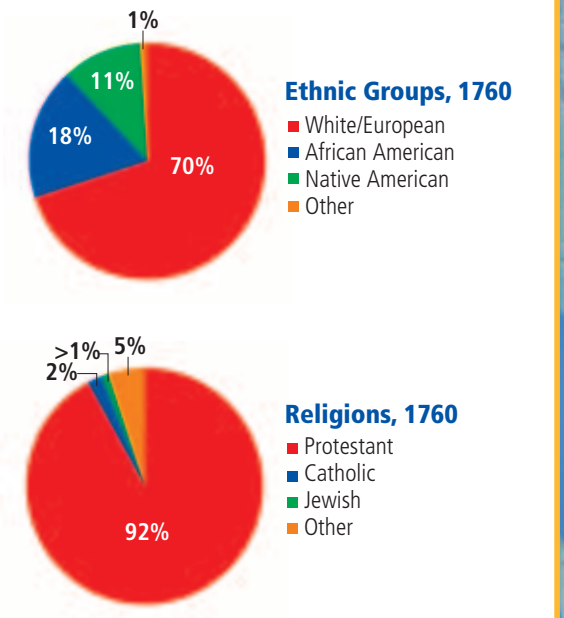
The English colonies in 1760 were located between the Atlantic Ocean and the Appalachian Mountains. The total population of the colonies was around 1.8 million. Soon, however, the colonies began to grow both in size and in population.

In 1763 Great Britain and France signed the Treaty of Paris, giving Britain control over all lands east of the Mississippi River. With the stroke of a pen, the colonies increased enormously in size. The westward expansion of the English colonies—soon to be the United States—had begun.



A Wall of Mountains The 1,500-mile-long Appalachian Mountain range formed a natural barrier to westward expansion. The Appalachians' dense forests and steep terrain made passage on foot or by horse difficult.

America's Population, 1760: 1.8 million



Natural Harbors The largest cities in the colonies, such as Philadelphia, New York, and Boston, grew where the best natural ports were. Ships were vital to the colonies: for the growing fishing industry, for overseas trade, and to bring more settlers to the new land.



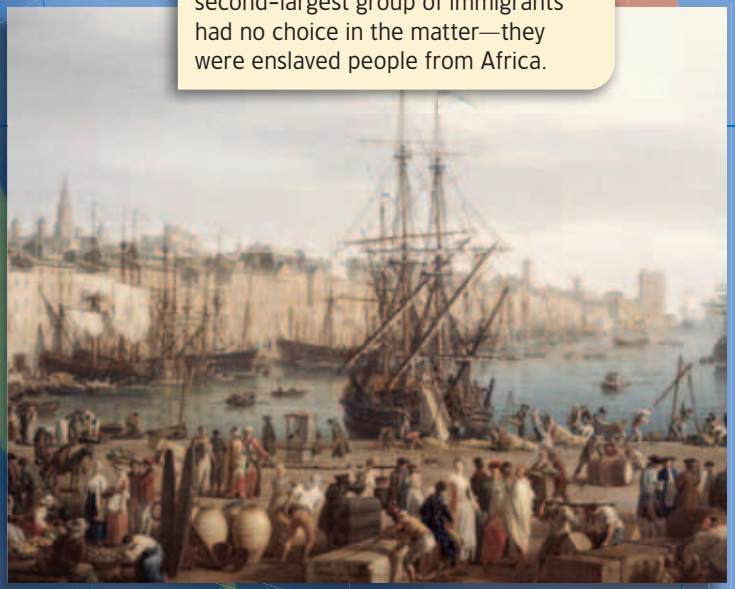
Boston Harbor provided natural protection for ships.

ME (part of MA)
NH
NY
MA
CT
RI
PA
NJ
MD
DE (part of PA)
VA
NC
SC
GA

Boston, population 16,000
New York, population 25,000
Philadelphia, population 25,000

APPALACHIAN MOUNTAINS
Mississippi River
ATLANTIC OCEAN
40° N
Tropic of Cancer
90° W
70° W

A Flood of People The colonial population doubled between 1750 and 1770. Roughly half of the immigrants to the colonies were English. But the second-largest group of immigrants had no choice in the matter—they were enslaved people from Africa.



New England colonies
Middle colonies
Southern colonies

0 150 300 Miles
0 150 300 Kilometers

N
W E
S

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Location** Where were the colonies' largest cities located at this time?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** How did mountains and seas influence the location of the colonies?

SECTION 4

Life in the English Colonies

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Colonial governments were influenced by political changes in England.
2. English trade laws limited free trade in the colonies.
3. The Great Awakening and the Enlightenment led to ideas of political equality among many colonists.
4. The French and Indian War gave England control of more land in North America.

The Big Idea

The English colonies continued to grow despite many challenges.

Key Terms and People

town meeting, *p. 91*
English Bill of Rights, *p. 91*
triangular trade, *p. 93*
Great Awakening, *p. 94*
Jonathan Edwards, *p. 94*
Enlightenment, *p. 95*
John Locke, *p. 95*
Pontiac, *p. 97*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on how the following developments affected the growing colonies.

Development	Effects
Establishment of local government	
Political change in England	
Trade laws	
Great Awakening/ Enlightenment	
French and Indian War	

If YOU were there...

Your family migrated to America in the 1700s and started a small farm in western Pennsylvania. Now, more and more people are moving in. You would like to move farther west, into the Ohio River valley. But a new law says you cannot move west of the mountains because it is too dangerous. Still, you are restless and want more land and more freedom.

Why might you decide to break the law and move west?

BUILDING BACKGROUND When they moved to America, the English colonists brought their ideas about government. They expected to have the same rights as citizens in England. However, many officials in England wanted tight control over the colonies. As a result, some colonists, like this family, were unhappy with the policies of colonial governments.

Colonial Governments

The English colonies in North America all had their own governments. Each government was given power by a charter. The English monarch had ultimate authority over all of the colonies. A group of royal advisers called the Privy Council set English colonial policies.

Colonial Governors and Legislatures

Each colony had a governor who served as head of the government. Most governors were assisted by an advisory council. In royal colonies the English king or queen selected the governor and the council members. In proprietary colonies, the proprietors chose all of these officials. In a few colonies, such as Connecticut, the people elected the governor.

In some colonies the people also elected representatives to help make laws and set policy. These officials served on assemblies. Each colonial assembly passed laws that had to be approved first by the advisory council and then by the governor.

Established in 1619, Virginia's assembly was the first colonial legislature in North America. At first it met as a single body, but it was later split into two houses. The first house was known as the Council of State. The governor's advisory council and the London Company selected its members. The House of Burgesses was the assembly's second house. The members were elected by colonists.

In New England the center of politics was the **town meeting**. In town meetings people talked about and decided on issues of local interest, such as paying for schools.

In the southern colonies, people typically lived farther away from one another. Therefore, many decisions were made at the county level. The middle colonies used both county meetings and town meetings to make laws.

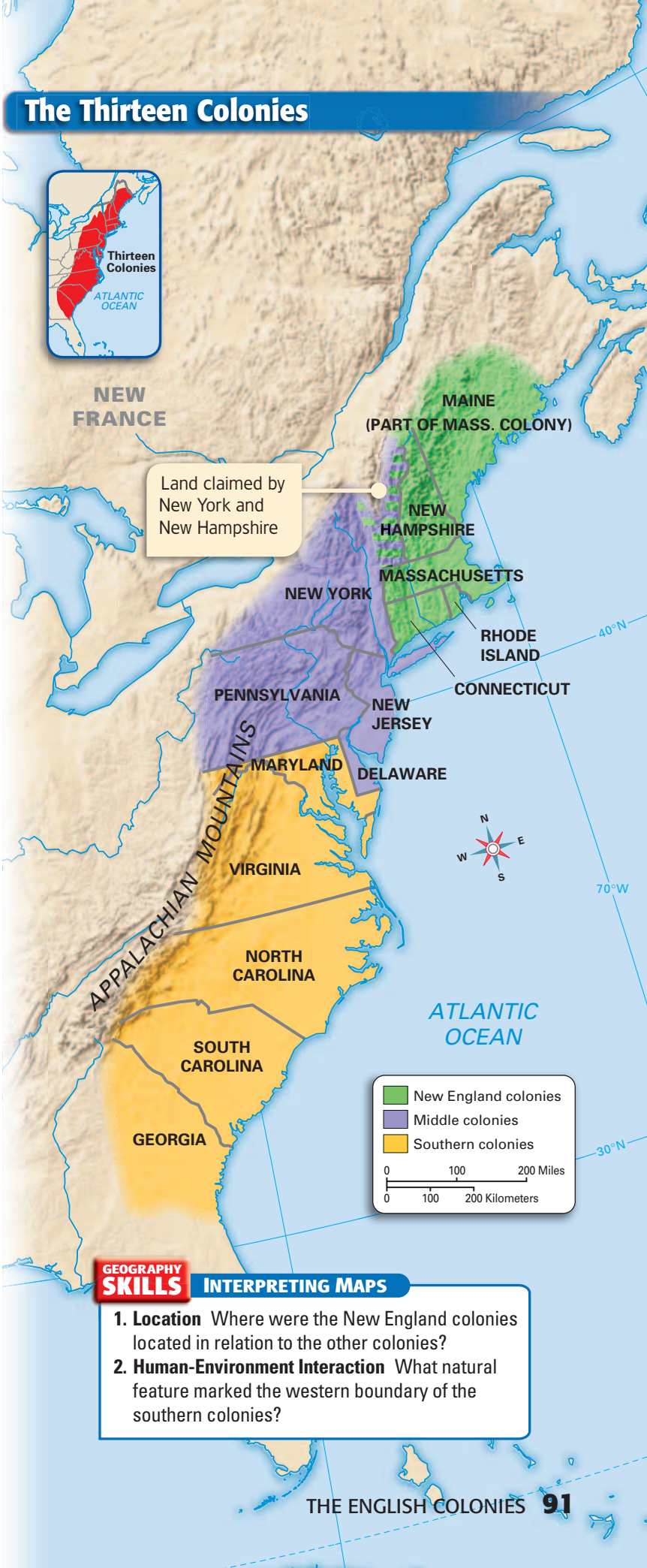
Political Change in England

In 1685 James II became king of England. He was determined to take more control over the English government, both in England and in the colonies.

James believed that the colonies were too independent. In 1686 he united the northern colonies under one government called the Dominion of New England. James named Sir Edmund Andros royal governor of the Dominion. The colonists disliked Andros because he used his authority to limit the powers of town meetings.

English Bill of Rights

Parliament replaced the unpopular King James and passed the **English Bill of Rights** in 1689. This act reduced the powers of the English monarch. At the same time, Parliament gained power. As time went on, the colonists valued their own right to elect representatives to decide local issues. Following these changes, the colonies in the Dominion quickly formed new assemblies and charters.



Colonial Courts

Colonial courts made up another important part of colonial governments. Whenever possible, colonists used the courts to control local affairs. In general, the courts reflected the beliefs of their local communities. For example, many laws in Massachusetts enforced the Puritans' religious beliefs. Laws based on the Bible set the standard for the community's conduct.

Sometimes colonial courts also protected individual freedoms. For example, in 1733 officials arrested John Peter Zenger for printing a false statement that damaged the reputation of the governor of New York. Andrew Hamilton, Zenger's attorney, argued that Zenger could publish whatever he wished as long as it was true. Jury members believed that colonists had a right to voice their ideas openly and found him not guilty.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Like the colonies and Great Britain, nations today are economically interdependent. They rely on one another to buy and sell goods and services to keep their economies healthy. Communications technology has increased this interdependence, as huge sums of money can change hands each day with ease.

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**

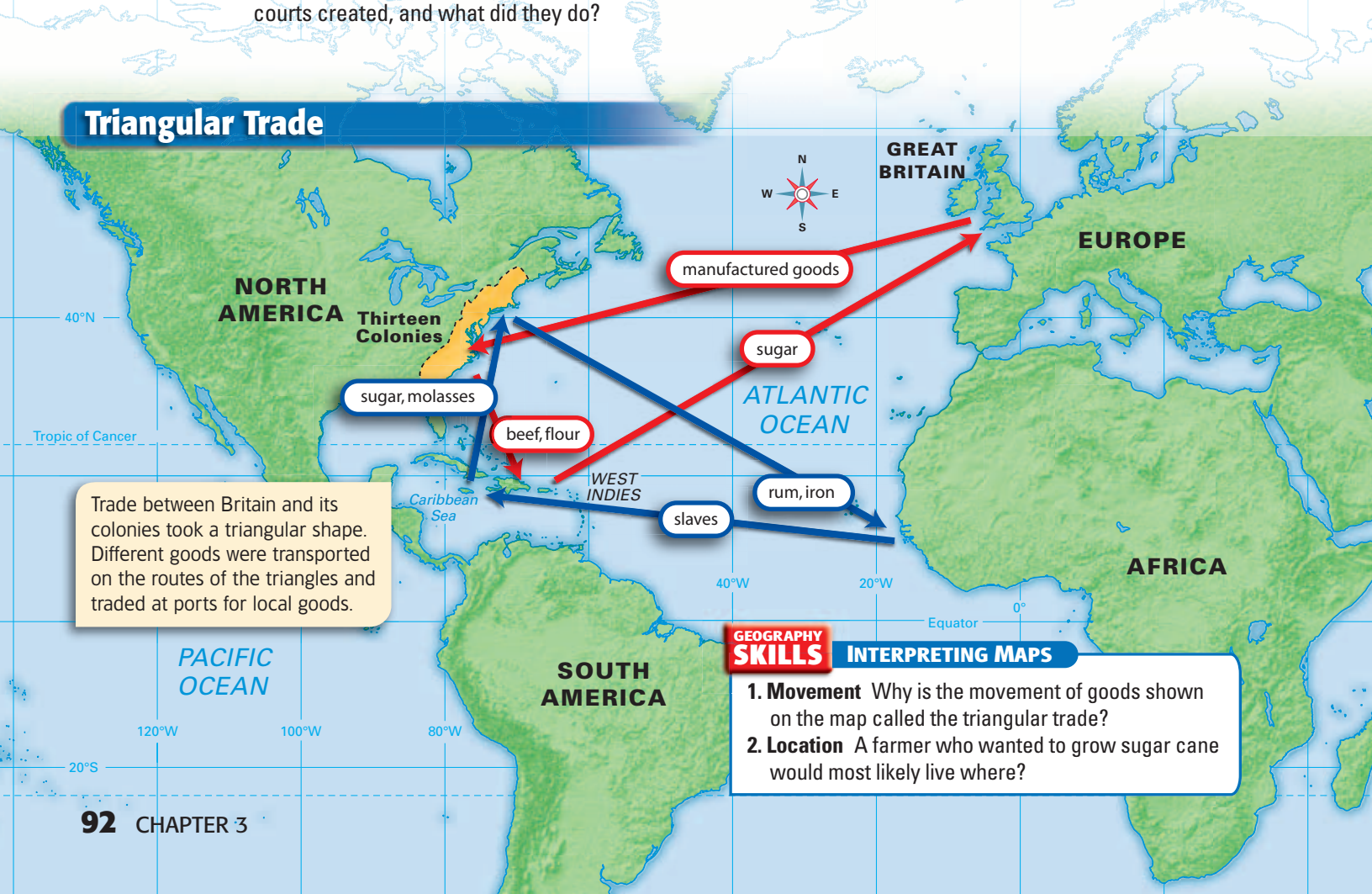
Why were colonial assemblies and colonial courts created, and what did they do?

English Trade Laws

One of England's main reasons for founding and controlling its American colonies was to earn money from trade. In the late 1600s England, like most western European nations, practiced mercantilism, a system of creating and maintaining wealth through carefully controlled trade. A country gained wealth if it had fewer imports—goods bought from other countries—than exports—goods sold to other countries.

To support this system of mercantilism, between 1650 and 1696 Parliament passed a series of Navigation Acts limiting colonial trade. For example, the Navigation Act of 1660 forbade colonists from trading specific items such as sugar and cotton with any country other than England. The act also required colonists to use English ships to transport goods. Parliament later passed other acts that required all trade goods to pass through English ports, where duties, or import taxes, were added to the items.

Triangular Trade



Trade between Britain and its colonies took a triangular shape. Different goods were transported on the routes of the triangles and traded at ports for local goods.

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Movement** Why is the movement of goods shown on the map called the triangular trade?
2. **Location** A farmer who wanted to grow sugar cane would most likely live where?

England claimed that the Navigation Acts were good for the colonies. After all, the colonies had a steady market in England for their goods. But not all colonists agreed. Many colonists wanted more freedom to buy or sell goods wherever they could get the best price. Local demand for colonial goods was small compared to foreign demand.

Despite colonial complaints, the trade restrictions continued into the 1700s. Some traders turned to smuggling, or illegal trading. They often smuggled sugar, molasses, and rum into the colonies from non-English islands in the Caribbean. Parliament responded with the Molasses Act of 1733, which placed duties on these items. British officials, however, rarely carried out this law.

By the early 1700s English merchants were trading around the world. Most American merchants traded directly with Great Britain or the West Indies. By importing and exporting goods such as sugar and tobacco, some American merchants became wealthy.

Triangular Trade

Trade between the American colonies and Great Britain was not direct. Rather, it generally took the form of **triangular trade**—a system in which goods and slaves were traded among the Americas, Britain, and Africa. There were several routes of the triangular trade. In one route colonists exchanged goods like beef and flour with plantation owners in the West Indies for sugar, some of which they shipped to Britain. The sugar was then exchanged for manufactured products to be sold in the colonies. Colonial merchants traveled great distances to find the best markets.

BIOGRAPHY

Olaudah Equiano

1745–1797



Olaudah Equiano claimed to have been born in Africa in present-day Nigeria. His autobiography told the story of his enslavement. According to his autobiography, Equiano survived the Middle Passage, traveling in a slave ship across the Atlantic. After arriving in the colonies, a Virginia planter purchased him and again sold him to a British naval officer. While working as a sailor, Equiano eventually earned enough money to purchase his own freedom in 1766. Equiano later settled in England and devoted himself to ending slavery.

Analyzing Information How did Equiano gain his freedom?



"I received such a salutation [smell] in my nostrils, as I had never experienced in my life; . . . I became so sick and low that I was not able to eat . . .
The groans of the dying, rendered [made] the whole a scene of horror almost inconceivable [unbelievable]."

—Olaudah Equiano, from *The Interesting Narrative of the Life of Olaudah Equiano, or Gustavus Vassa, the African*

The Great Awakening

George Whitefield gives a powerful sermon during the Great Awakening. Ministers like Whitefield emphasized personal religious experiences over official church rules. They also allowed ordinary church members—whatever their race, class, or gender—to play a role in services. The value placed on individuals of all types during the Great Awakening helped shape American political ideas about who should have a say in government.

How do you think religious freedom led to political freedom?



Middle Passage

One version of the triangular trade began with traders exchanging rum for slaves on the West African coast. The traders then sold the enslaved Africans in the West Indies for molasses or brought them to sell in the mainland American colonies.

The slave trade brought millions of Africans across the Atlantic Ocean in a voyage called the Middle Passage. This was a terrifying and deadly journey that could last as long as three months.

Enslaved Africans lived in a space not even three feet high. Slave traders fit as many slaves as possible on board so they could earn greater profits. Thousands of captives died on slave ships during the Middle Passage. In many cases, they died from diseases such as smallpox. As farmers began to use fewer indentured servants, slaves became even more valuable.

READING CHECK **Identifying Cause and Effect**
What factors caused the slave trade to grow? How did this affect conditions on the Middle Passage?

Great Awakening and Enlightenment

In the early 1700s revolutions in both religious and nonreligious thought transformed the Western world. These movements began in Europe and affected life in the American colonies.

Great Awakening

After years of population growth, religious leaders wanted to spread religious feeling throughout the colonies. In the late 1730s these ministers began holding revivals, emotional gatherings where people came together to hear sermons.

Many American colonists experienced "a great awakening" in their religious lives. This **Great Awakening**—a religious movement that swept through the colonies in the 1730s and 1740s—changed colonial religion. It also affected social and political life. **Jonathan Edwards** of Massachusetts was one of the most important leaders of the Great Awakening. His dramatic sermons told

sinners to seek forgiveness for their sins or face punishment in Hell forever. British minister George Whitefield held revivals from Georgia to New England.

The Great Awakening drew people of different regions, classes, and races. Women, members of minority groups, and poor people often took part in services. Ministers from different colonies met and shared ideas with one another. This represented one of the few exchanges between colonies.

The Great Awakening promoted ideas that may also have affected colonial politics. Sermons about the spiritual equality of all people led some colonists to begin demanding more political equality. Revivals became popular places to talk about political and social issues. People from those colonies with less political freedom were thus introduced to more democratic systems used in other colonies.

Enlightenment

During the 1600s Europeans began to reexamine their world. Scientists began to better understand the basic laws that govern nature. Their new ideas about the universe began the Scientific Revolution. The revolution changed how people thought of the world.

Many colonists were also influenced by the **Enlightenment**. This movement, which took place during the 1700s, spread the idea that reason and logic could improve society. Enlightenment thinkers also formed ideas about how government should work.

Some Enlightenment thinkers believed that there was a social contract between government and citizens. Philosophers such as **John Locke** thought that people had natural rights such as equality and liberty. Ideas of the Scientific Revolution and the Enlightenment eventually influenced colonial leaders.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did the Great Awakening and the Enlightenment influence colonial society?

French and Indian War

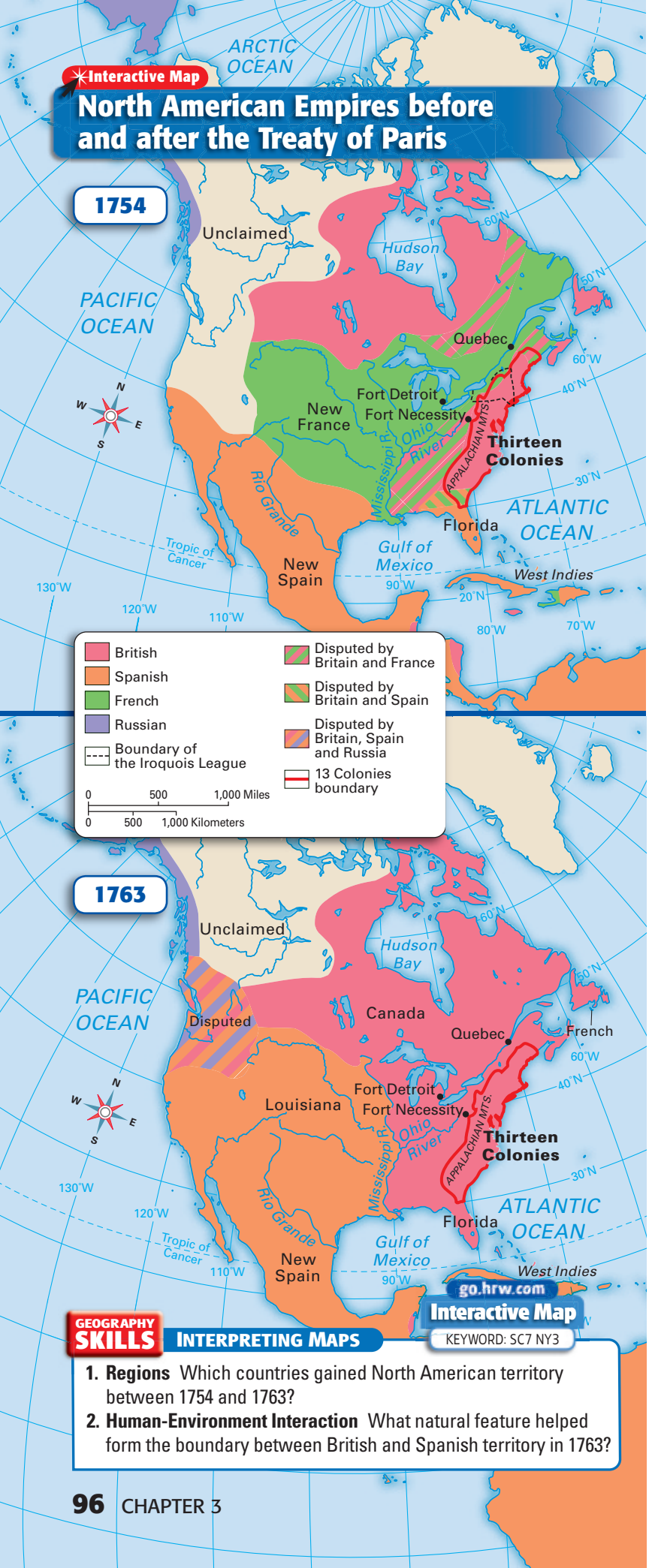
By the 1670s tensions had arisen between New England colonists and the Wampanoag. Metacomet, a Wampanoag leader also known as King Philip, opposed the colonists' efforts to take his people's lands. In 1675 these tensions finally erupted in a conflict known as King Philip's War. The colonial militia—civilians serving as soldiers—fought American Indian warriors. Both sides attacked each other's settlements, killing men, women, and children. The fighting finally ended in 1676, but only after about 600 colonists and some 3,000 Indians had been killed, including Metacomet.

Native American Allies

Some Native Americans allied with the colonists to fight against Metacomet and his forces. These Indians had developed trade relations with colonists. They wanted tools, weapons, and other goods that Europeans could provide. In exchange, the colonists wanted furs, which they sold for large profits in Europe. As a result, each side came to depend upon the other.

French colonists traded and allied with the Algonquian and Huron. English colonists traded and allied with the Iroquois League. This powerful group united American Indians from six different groups. Many American Indians trusted the French more than they did the English. The smaller French settlements were less threatening than the rapidly growing English colonies. No matter who their allies were, many Indian leaders took care to protect their people's independence. As one leader said:

> "We are born free. We neither depend upon [the governor of New France] nor [the governor of New York]. We may go where we please … and buy and sell what we please."
>
> —Garangula, quoted in *The World Turned Upside Down*, edited by Colin G. Calloway



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Regions** Which countries gained North American territory between 1754 and 1763?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** What natural feature helped form the boundary between British and Spanish territory in 1763?

War Erupts

Until the mid-1700s, France and Great Britain struggled for control of territory in North America. British colonists wanted to settle in the Ohio River valley, where they could take advantage of the valuable fur trade. The French believed this settlement would hurt their fur trade profits. A standoff developed in the Ohio Valley where the French had built three forts. Fighting erupted in 1753 as the British military moved to take over the valley.

When a young Virginian named George Washington arrived with more soldiers, he found the area under French control. Washington and his troops built a small, simple fort that he named Fort Necessity. After his troops suffered many casualties—captured, injured, or killed soldiers—Washington finally surrendered. His defeat in 1754 was the start of the French and Indian War. Leaders from the colonies met to discuss defense. The convention produced a plan for uniting the colonies called the Albany Plan. Meanwhile, in 1756 fighting broke out between France and Great Britain, starting what became known as the Seven Years' War.

Treaty of Paris

The turning point of the war came in 1759. That year British general James Wolfe captured Quebec, gaining the advantage in the war. However, the war dragged on for four more years. Finally, in 1763 Britain and France signed the Treaty of Paris, officially ending the war.

The terms of the treaty gave Canada to Britain. Britain also gained all French lands east of the Mississippi River except the city of New Orleans and two small islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. From Spain, which had allied with France in 1762, Britain received Florida. In an earlier treaty, Spain had received Louisiana, the land that France had claimed west of the Mississippi River. The Treaty of Paris changed the balance of power in North America. Soon British settlers began moving west to settle new lands.

Western Frontier

Most colonial settlements were located along the Atlantic coast. Colonial settlers, or pioneers, slowly moved into the Virginia and Carolina backcountry and the Ohio River valley.

Indian leaders like Chief **Pontiac** opposed British settlement of this new land. Pontiac's Rebellion began in May 1763 when his forces attacked British forts on the frontier. Within one month, they had destroyed or captured seven forts. Pontiac then led an attack on Fort Detroit. The British held out for months.

British leaders feared that more fighting would take place on the frontier if colonists kept moving onto American Indian lands. To avoid more conflict, King George III issued the Proclamation of 1763. This law banned British settlement west of the Appalachian Mountains. The law also ordered settlers to leave the upper Ohio River valley.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Why did George III issue the Proclamation of 1763?

BIOGRAPHY

Pontiac
1720–1769

Pontiac, an Ottawa chief who had fought for France, tried to resist British settlement west of the Appalachians. Calling them "dogs dressed in red who have come to rob us," he attacked the British in the Ohio country in 1763. Pontiac's rebellion was put down, and he surrendered in 1766.

Analyzing Information How did Pontiac try to stop the British?



SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you read about colonial governments, the slave trade, and the conflicts with foreign countries and with Native Americans that the colonies faced as they grew. In the next section you'll learn about the increasing tension between the colonies and Great Britain that led to independence.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP3

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** How were colonial governments organized?
   b. Analyze How did political change in England affect colonial governments?
2. **a. Explain** What is **mercantilism**?
   b. Analyze How did the Navigation Acts support the system of mercantilism?
   c. Evaluate Did the colonies benefit from mercantilism? Why or why not?
3. **a. Identify** What was the **Great Awakening**?
   b. Compare How was the **Enlightenment** similar to the Great Awakening?
4. **a. Explain** What caused the French and Indian War?
   b. Evaluate Defend the British decision to ban colonists from settling on the western frontier.

Critical Thinking

5. **Summarizing** Review your notes on the developments in the colonies during the late 1600s to mid-1700s. Then add a box to the bottom of your chart in which you briefly summarize how the colonies grew and changed during the period, as well as the challenges they faced.

Development	Effects
Establishment of local government	
Political change in England	
Trade laws	
Great Awakening/Enlightenment	
French and Indian War	

↓

How the colonies grew and changed and challenges faced

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Reviewing the Information** This section focused on what life was like in all the English colonies discussed so far. Does this information give you any new ideas about the colony you'll use in your infomercial?

SECTION 5

Conflict in the Colonies



What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. British efforts to raise taxes on colonists sparked protest.
2. The Boston Massacre caused colonial resentment toward Great Britain.
3. Colonists protested the British tax on tea with the Boston Tea Party.
4. Great Britain responded to colonial actions by passing the Intolerable Acts.

The Big Idea

Tensions developed as the British government placed tax after tax on the colonies.

Key Terms and People

Samuel Adams, *p. 99*
Committees of Correspondence, *p. 99*
Stamp Act of 1765, *p. 100*
Boston Massacre, *p. 101*
Tea Act, *p. 102*
Boston Tea Party, *p. 102*
Intolerable Acts, *p. 102*
Quartering Act, *p. 102*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes in a chart like the one below on each of the new laws passed by the British government.

Law
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

If YOU were there...

You live in the New England colonies in the 1700s. Recently, British officials have placed new taxes on tea—your favorite beverage. You've never been very interested in politics, but you're beginning to think that people far across the ocean in Britain shouldn't be able to tell you what to do. Some of your friends have joined a group that refuses to buy British tea.

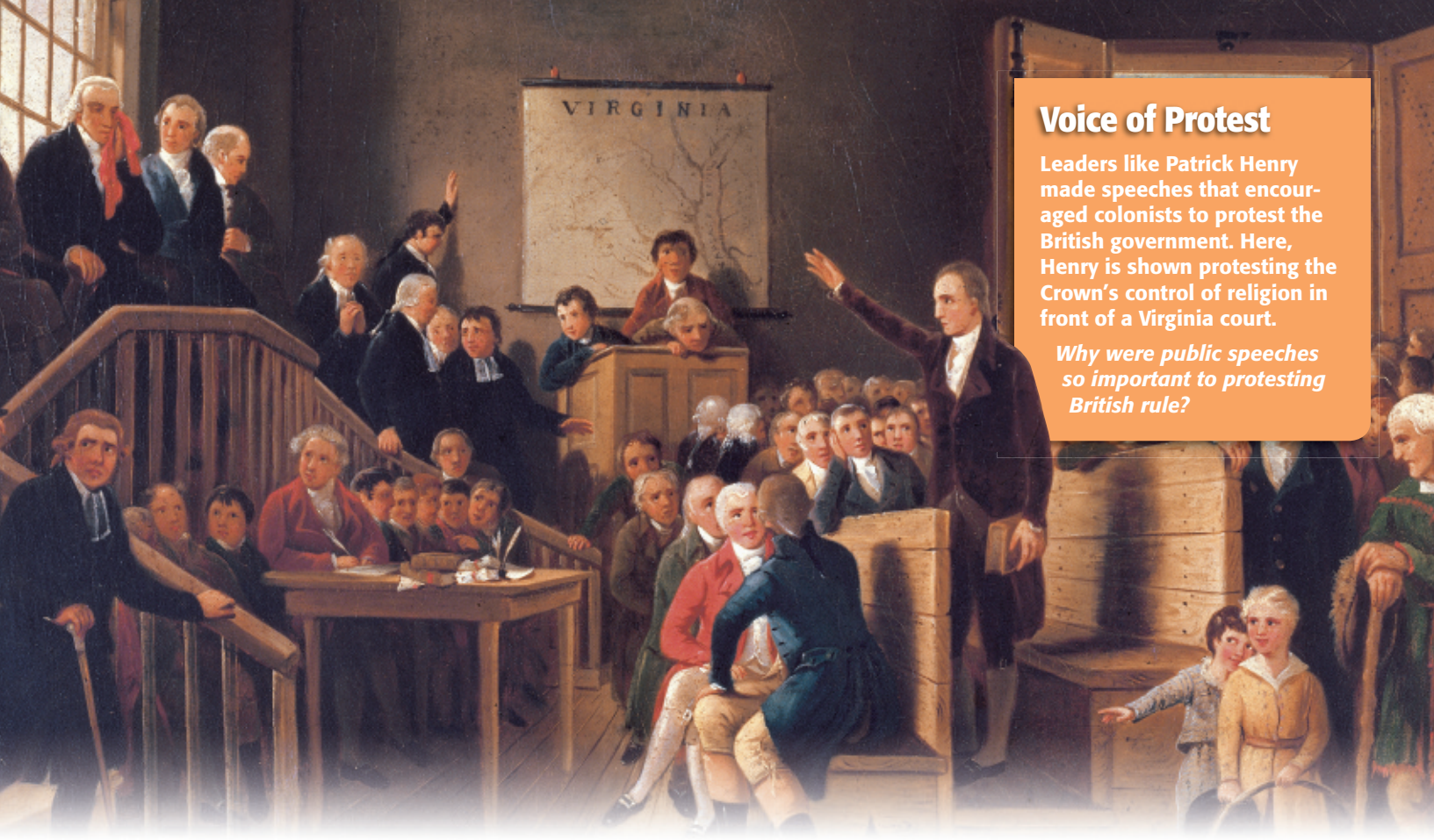
Would you give up your favorite drink to join the boycott?

BUILDING BACKGROUND As the British colonies grew and became prosperous, the colonists got used to running their own lives. Britain began to seem very far away. At the same time, officials in Britain still expected the colonies to obey them and to earn money for Britain. Parliament passed new laws and imposed new taxes. But the colonists found various ways to challenge them.

Great Britain Raises Taxes

Great Britain had won the French and Indian War, but Parliament still had to pay for it. The British continued to keep a standing, or permanent, army in North America to protect the colonists against Indian attacks. To help pay for this army, Prime Minister George Grenville asked Parliament to tax the colonists. In 1764 Parliament passed the Sugar Act, which set duties on molasses and sugar imported by colonists. This was the first act passed specifically to raise money in the colonies.

British officials also tried harder to arrest smugglers. Colonial merchants were required to list all the trade goods they carried aboard their ships. These lists had to be approved before ships could leave colonial ports. This made it difficult for traders to avoid paying duties. The British navy also began to stop and search ships for smuggled goods.



Voice of Protest

Leaders like Patrick Henry made speeches that encouraged colonists to protest the British government. Here, Henry is shown protesting the Crown's control of religion in front of a Virginia court.

Why were public speeches so important to protesting British rule?

Parliament also changed the colonies' legal system by giving greater powers to the vice-admiralty courts. These courts had no juries, and the judges treated suspected smugglers as guilty until proven innocent. In regular British courts, accused persons were treated as innocent until proven guilty.

Taxation without Representation

Parliament's actions upset many colonists who had grown used to being independent. The rising merchant class thought the taxes were unfair and hurt business. Many believed that Great Britain had no right to tax the colonies at all without popular consent.

James Otis argued that the power of the Crown and Parliament was limited. Otis said they could not "take from any man any part of his property, without his consent in person or by representation." Colonial assemblies had little influence on Parliament's decisions. In addition, the colonists had no direct representatives in Parliament. The colonists were subjects of the Crown instead of citizens of England.

At a Boston town meeting in May 1764, local leader **Samuel Adams** agreed with Otis. He believed that Parliament could not tax the colonists without their permission. The ideas of Otis and Adams were summed up in the slogan "No Taxation without Representation," which spread throughout the colonies.

Adams helped found the **Committees of Correspondence**. Each committee got in touch with other towns and colonies. Its members shared ideas and information about the new British laws and ways to challenge them.

A popular method of protest was the boycott, in which people refused to buy British goods. The first colonial boycott started in New York in 1765. It soon spread to other colonies. Colonists hoped that their efforts would hurt the British economy and might convince Parliament to end the new taxes.

Stamp Act

The British government continued to search for new ways to tax the American colonies, further angering many colonists. For example, Prime Minister Grenville proposed the **Stamp Act of 1765**. This act required colonists to pay for an official stamp, or seal, when they bought paper items. The tax had to be paid on legal documents, licenses, newspapers, pamphlets, and even playing cards. Colonists who refused to buy stamps could be fined or sent to jail.

Grenville did not expect this tax to spark protest. After all, in Britain people already paid similar taxes. But colonists saw it differently. The Stamp Act was Parliament's first attempt to raise money by taxing the colonists directly, rather than by taxing imported goods.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

The Stamp Act Congress met in New York City during the fall of 1765. Intense riots against the Stamp Act occurred in the city, as people hanged an effigy of the governor and stole his carriage.

Protests against the Stamp Act began almost immediately. Colonists formed a secret society called the Sons of Liberty. Samuel Adams helped organize the group in Boston. This group sometimes used violence to frighten tax collectors. Many colonial courts shut down because people refused to buy the stamps required for legal documents. Businesses openly ignored the law by refusing to buy stamps.

In May 1765 a Virginia lawyer named Patrick Henry presented a series of resolutions to the Virginia House of Burgesses. These resolutions stated that the Stamp Act violated colonists' rights. In addition to taxation without representation, the Stamp Act denied the accused a trial by jury. Henry's speech in support of the resolutions convinced the assembly to support some of his ideas.

Repealing the Stamp Act

In Boston the members of the Massachusetts legislature called for a Stamp Act Congress. In October 1765, delegates from nine colonies met in New York. They issued a declaration that the Stamp Act was a violation of their rights and liberties.

Pressure on Parliament to repeal, or do away with, the Stamp Act grew quickly. A group of London merchants complained that their trade suffered from the colonial boycott. Parliament repealed the Stamp Act in 1766.

Members of Parliament were upset that colonists had challenged their authority. Thus, Parliament issued the Declaratory Act, which stated that Parliament had the power to make laws for the colonies "in all cases whatsoever." The Declaratory Act further worried the colonists. The act stripped away much of their independence.

Townshend Acts

In June 1767 Parliament passed the Townshend Acts. These acts placed duties on glass, lead, paints, paper, and tea. To enforce the Townshend Acts, British officials used writs of assistance. These allowed tax collectors to search for smuggled goods. Colonists hated the new laws because they took power away from colonial governments.

The colonists responded to the Townshend Acts by once again boycotting many British goods. Women calling themselves the Daughters of Liberty supported the boycott. In February 1768 Samuel Adams wrote a letter arguing that the laws violated the legal rights of the colonists. The Massachusetts legislature sent the letter to other colonies' legislatures, who voted to join the protest.

At the same time, tax collectors in Massachusetts seized the ship *Liberty* on suspicion of smuggling. This action angered the ship's owner and the Sons of Liberty. They attacked the houses of customs officials in protest. In response, the governor broke up the Massachusetts legislature. He also asked troops to restore order. British soldiers arrived in Boston in October 1768.

READING CHECK **Sequencing** What series of events led to the arrival of British troops in Boston in 1768?

Primary Source

NEWSPAPER ARTICLE

The Boston Massacre

An account of the Boston Massacre appeared in the Boston Gazette and Country Journal *soon after the event.*

"The People were immediately alarmed with the Report of this horrid Massacre, the Bells were set a Ringing, and great Numbers soon assembled at the Place where this tragical Scene had been acted; their Feelings may be better conceived than expressed; and while some were taking Care of the Dead and Wounded, the Rest were in Consultation what to do in these dreadful Circumstances.

But so little intimidated were they [Bostonians], notwithstanding their being within a few Yards of the Main Guard, and seeing the 29th Regiment under Arms, and drawn up in King street; that they kept their Station and appeared, as an Officer of Rank expressed it, ready to run upon the very Muzzles of their Muskets."

—*Boston Gazette and Country Journal,* March 12, 1770



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why do you think the people described were not intimidated by the soldiers?

Boston Massacre

Many Bostonians saw the presence of British troops as a threat by the British government against its critics in Massachusetts. Some colonists agreed with Samuel Adams, who said, "I look upon [British soldiers] as foreign enemies." The soldiers knew that they were not welcome. Both sides resented each other, and name-calling, arguments, and fights between Bostonians and the soldiers were common.

The tension exploded on March 5, 1770. A lone British soldier standing guard had an argument with a colonist and struck him. A crowd gathered around the soldier, throwing snowballs and shouting insults. Soon a small number of troops arrived. The crowd grew louder and angrier by the moment. Some yelled, "Come on you rascals . . . Fire if you dare!" Suddenly, the soldiers fired into the crowd, instantly killing three men, including sailor Crispus Attucks. "Half Indian, half negro, and altogether rowdy," as he was called, Attucks is the best-remembered casualty of the incident. Two others died within a few days.

Samuel Adams and other protesters quickly spread the story of the shootings. They used it as propaganda—a story giving only one side in an argument—against the British. Colonists called the shootings the **Boston Massacre**. Paul Revere created an elaborate color print titled "The Bloody Massacre perpetrated in King Street" (above).

The soldiers and their officer, Thomas Preston, were charged with murder. Two Boston lawyers, Josiah Quincy and John Adams—Samuel Adams's cousin—agreed to defend the soldiers. They argued that the troops had acted in self-defense. The Boston jury agreed, finding Preston and six soldiers not guilty. Two soldiers were convicted of killing people in the crowd by accident. These men were branded on the hand and released. The trial helped calm people down, but many were still angry at the British.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** What was the significance of the Boston Massacre?

The Road to Revolution

Colonists reacted to British laws with anger and violence. Parliament continued to pass tax after tax.

QUICK FACTS





	1764 The Sugar Act	1765 The Stamp Act
British Actions	The Sugar Act is passed to raise money from the colonies for Britain.	The Stamp Act taxes newspapers, licenses, and colonial paper products.
Colonists' Reactions	Samuel Adams founds the Committees of Correspondence to improve communication among the colonies.	A series of resolutions is published stating that the Stamp Act violates the rights of colonists.

The Boston Tea Party

To reduce tensions in the colonies, Parliament repealed almost all of the Townshend Acts. However, it kept the tax on tea. British officials knew that the colonial demand for tea was high despite the boycott. But colonial merchants were smuggling most of this imported tea and paying no duty on it.

The British East India Company offered Parliament a solution. The company had huge amounts of tea but was not allowed to sell it directly to the colonists. If the company could sell directly to the colonists, it could charge low prices and still make money. Cheaper tea might encourage colonists to stop smuggling. Less smuggling would result in more tax money.

Parliament agreed and passed the **Tea Act** in 1773, which allowed the British East India Company to sell tea directly to the colonists. Many colonial merchants and smugglers feared that the British East India Company's cheap tea would put them out of business.

Three ships loaded with tea from the British East India Company arrived in Boston Harbor in 1773. Members of the Sons of Liberty demanded that the ships leave. But the governor of Massachusetts would not let the ships leave without paying the duty. Unsure of what to do, the captains waited in the harbor.

On the night of December 16, 1773, colonists disguised as Indians sneaked onto the three tea-filled ships and dumped over 340 tea chests into Boston Harbor. This event became known as the **Boston Tea Party**. Soon the streets echoed with shouts of "Boston harbour is a teapot tonight!"

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What factors led to the Boston Tea Party?

The Intolerable Acts

Lord North, the new British prime minister, was furious when he heard the news. Parliament decided to punish Boston. In the spring of 1774 it passed the Coercive Acts. Colonists called these laws the **Intolerable Acts**. The acts had several effects.

1. Boston Harbor was closed until Boston paid for the ruined tea.
2. Massachusetts's charter was canceled. The governor decided if and when the legislature could meet.
3. Royal officials accused of crimes were sent to Britain for trial. This let them face a more friendly judge and jury.
4. A new **Quartering Act** required colonists to house British solders.
5. The Quebec Act gave a large amount of land to the colony of Quebec.





1770 The Boston Massacre

British soldiers fire into a crowd of colonists, killing five men.

Colonists protest and bring the soldiers to trial.

1773 The Boston Tea Party

The Tea Act is passed, making British tea cheaper than colonial tea.

Colonists protest by dumping shipments of British tea into Boston Harbor.

1774 The Intolerable Acts

Boston Harbor is closed, and British troops are quartered.

Colonists' resentment toward Britain builds.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

In what year did the conflict between Britain and the colonists turn violent?

6. General Thomas Gage became the new governor of Massachusetts.

The British hoped that these steps would bring back order in the colonies. Instead they simply increased people's anger at Britain.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** What was the purpose of the Intolerable Acts?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned about the increasing dissatisfaction between the colonists and Great Britain. In the next chapter you'll learn about the result of these conflicts—the American Revolution.

Section 5 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP3

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Explain** Why did Great Britain raise taxes in its American colonies?
   b. Evaluate Which method of protesting taxes do you think was most successful for colonists? Why?
2. **a. Describe** What events led to the **Boston Massacre**?
   b. Elaborate Why do you think John Adams and Josiah Quincy agreed to defend the British soldiers that were involved in the Boston Massacre?
3. **a. Recall** What was the purpose of the **Tea Act**?
   b. Draw Conclusions What message did the **Boston Tea Party** send to the British government?
4. **a. Explain** Why did Parliament pass the **Intolerable Acts**?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why do you think the colonists believed that these laws were "intolerable"?

Critical Thinking

5. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on the laws passed by the British government. Then add a new column to your chart and identify the laws' results.

Law	Result
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Gathering Information** Now you have some information about the political situation in Boston in the late 1700s. Why might someone from Britain want to immigrate to Boston at this time? Would you consider the city of Boston, rather than a whole colony, for the subject of your infomercial?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Interpreting Time Lines

Define the Skill

Knowing the sequence, or order, in which historical events took place is important to understanding these events. Time lines visually display the sequence of events during a particular period of time. They also let you easily see time spans between events, such as how long after one event a related event took place—and what events occurred in between. In addition, comparing time lines for different places makes relationships between distant events easier to identify and understand.

Learn the Skill

Follow these guidelines to read, interpret, and compare time lines.

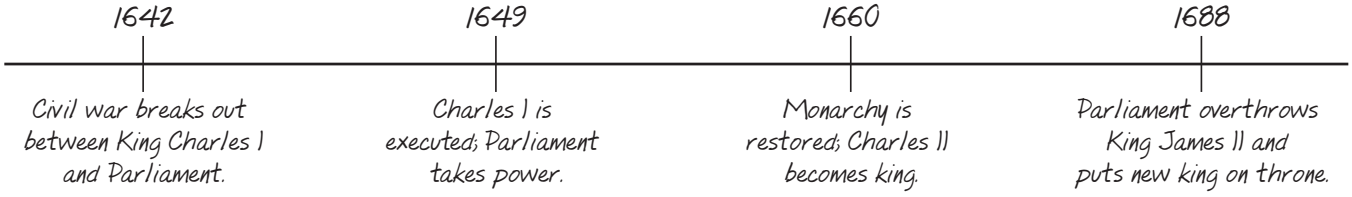
1. Determine each time line's framework. Note the years it covers and the periods of time into which it is divided. Be aware that a pair of time lines may not have the same framework.
2. Study the order of events on each time line. Note the length of time between events. Compare what was taking place on different time lines around the same time period.
3. Look for relationships between events. Pay particular attention to how an event on one time line might relate to an event on another.

Practice the Skill

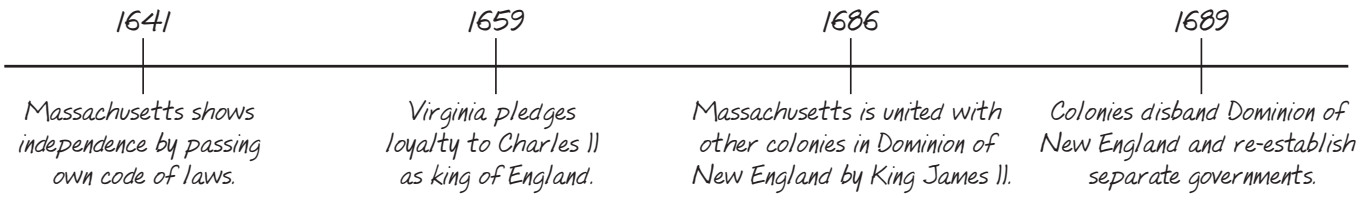
Interpret the time lines below to answer the following questions.

1. What is each time line's framework?
2. How long was England without a king?
3. What event in England allowed the colonists to get rid of the Dominion of New England in 1689?
4. Massachusetts's independence had troubled English officials for many years. What do the time lines suggest about why this colony was allowed to remain independent until 1686?

Events in England



Events in the Colonies



CHAPTER 3

Chapter Review

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**

Review the video to answer the closing question:

How does the value that Americans place on religious freedom limit government actions?

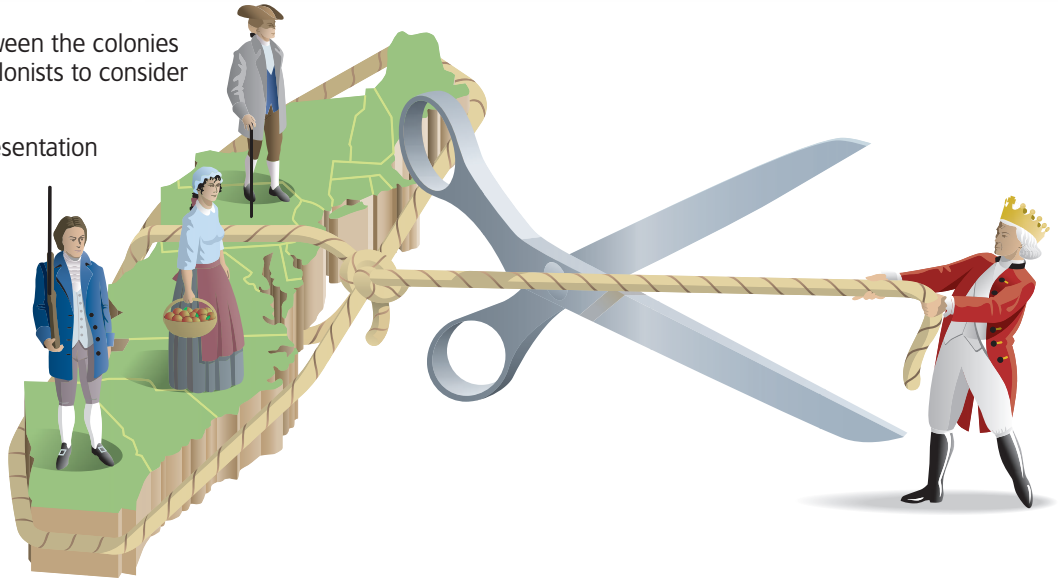
Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.

Increasing tensions between the colonies and Britain led many colonists to consider cutting ties to Britain.

- Taxation without representation
- Acts of Parliament
- Violence between colonists and British troops



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Match the words in the left column with the correct definition in the right column.

1. Committees of Correspondence
2. Jonathan Edwards
3. mercantilism
4. immigrants
5. indentured servants
6. William Penn
7. Pocahontas
8. Quakers
9. staple crops
10. town meeting

a. colonists who received free passage to North America in exchange for working without pay for a certain number of years

b. created in Massachusetts, these groups helped towns and colonies share information about resisting the new British laws

c. crops that are continuously in demand

d. daughter of Powhatan chief whose marriage to colonist John Rolfe eased tensions between the Powhatan and the colonists

e. one of the leaders of the Great Awakening, he urged sinners to seek forgiveness

f. Protestant sect founded in England that believed salvation was available to all people

g. people who move to another country after leaving their homeland

h. political gathering at which people make decisions on local issues

i. Quaker leader who established a colony with the goal of fair government for all

j. system of creating and maintaining wealth through controlled trade

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 72–77)*

11. a. Explain What problems did the settlers of Virginia face?

b. Draw Conclusions Why was Maryland's Toleration Act of 1649 important?

c. Predict How might the southern colonies' reliance on slave labor eventually cause problems?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 78–84)*

12. a. Describe On what was the economy of the New England colonies based?

b. Compare and Contrast How were the Pilgrim and Puritan colonies similar and different?

c. Evaluate Explain why you think the close ties between church and state in Massachusetts helped or hurt its government.

SECTION 3 *(Pages 85–87)*

13. a. Identify What types of crops were grown in the middle colonies?

b. Draw Conclusions Why did the middle colonies have a more diverse population than either New England or the South?

c. Elaborate Why would immigrants have chosen to live in the middle colonies?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 90–97)*

14. a. Identify What challenges did the English colonies face?

b. Analyze What effect did the Great Awakening and the Enlightenment have on the colonies?

c. Evaluate Explain which you think had a greater impact on colonial government—the passage of the English Bill of Rights or the Great Awakening.

SECTION 5 *(Pages 98–103)*

15. a. Recall Why did the British believe it was necessary to raise taxes on the American colonists?

b. Draw Conclusions How did the Boston Massacre and the Boston Tea Party affect relations between Great Britain and the colonies?

c. Evaluate Did the British government overreact to colonial protests by issuing the Intolerable Acts? Why or why not?

Reviewing Themes

16. Politics What political influences shaped the governments of the British colonies?

17. Economics How did mercantilism affect the economies of Great Britain and the colonies?

Reading Skills

Vocabulary Clues *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> A popular method of protest was the boycott, in which people refused to buy British goods. *(p. 99)*

18. According to the reading selection above, what is the best definition of *boycott*?

a. a popular method

b. buying British goods

c. people refusing

d. protest in which people refuse to buy goods

Social Studies Skills

Interpreting Time Lines *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the questions about the time lines on page 104.*

19. How many years after the English Civil War did Parliament overthrow King James II?

20. How many years did the Dominion of New England last?

a. 41

b. 18

c. 3

d. 6

FOCUS ON WRITING

21. Writing Your Infomercial Choose a colony and time period. Review your list of reasons why English citizens might want to live there. Then write an infomercial with at least four scenes. Each scene should have video and a voice-over telling one of the reasons for immigrating.

CHAPTER 3

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Use the map below to answer the following question.**



The red box on this map indicates which early colonial settlement?

A Plymouth
B Massachusetts Bay
C New Amsterdam
D Jamestown

2 **Ideas about spiritual, social, and political equality arose in the colonies in the 1700s in a religious movement called**

A Separatism.
B the Enlightenment.
C the Great Awakening.
D Puritanism.

3 **How did Parliament's passage of the English Bill of Rights in 1689 affect England's North American colonies?**

A Colonists became more interested in being governed by representatives they elected.
B Several colonies decided to unite and formed the Dominion of New England.
C The Great Awakening took place.
D A movement to end slavery developed.

4 **What was the central issue in the dispute between Britain and its American colonies?**

A the restrictions Parliament placed on trade
B the presence of British troops in the colonies
C the colonists' right to religious freedom
D the power to tax the colonists

5 **Which side did Native Americans take in the French and Indian War?**

A the British
B the French
C different groups sided with each country
D Native Americans did not fight in the French and Indian War

6 **Examine the following passage from an early colonist's journal and then use it to answer the question below.**

> "An Indian came to us from the chief, the great Powhatan, with the word of peace. He said that Powhatan greatly desired our friendship, and that chiefs Pasyaheigh and Tapahanagh wanted to be our friends. Powhatan said that we would be able to sow and reap our crops in peace or else he would make war upon our enemies. This message turned out to be true, for these chiefs have ever since remained in peace and continued to trade with us. We rewarded the messenger with many small gifts, which were great wonders to him."
>
> —Edward Maria Wingfield, from *A Discourse on Virginia*

Document-Based Question **Why do you think Native American chiefs wanted to make peace with early English colonists?**

CHAPTER 4 1774–1783

The American Revolution

Focus Question

How did the development of the colonies lead to rebellion?

SECTION 1
The Revolution Begins 112
Interactive Map Battles for Boston, 1775–76
Biography George Washington

SECTION 2
Declaring Independence 118
Primary Source Choosing Sides
Primary Source The Declaration of Independence

SECTION 3
The Struggle for Liberty 126
Focus on New York City Delancey's Brigade
Interactive Map Battles in the Middle Colonies, 1776–77
Time Line The Patriots Gain Ground
Primary Source Valley Forge

SECTION 4
Independence! 135
History Close-up Battle of Yorktown
Primary Source Sentiments of an American Woman

Focus on Speaking

Giving an Oral Report The Revolutionary War was a very exciting time in our history, a time filled with deeds of courage and daring and ending with an amazing victory for the underdog. As you read this chapter, you will learn about the great events and heroic people of that time. Then you will prepare and give an oral report on the history of the American Revolution.





United States

1774 The First Continental Congress meets.

1775 The Revolutionary War begins with the fighting at Lexington and Concord.

1774

World

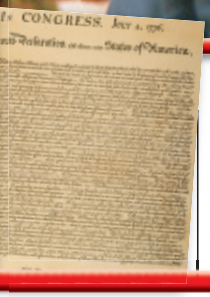
HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of being able to choose your own government.

What You Will Learn...

Soldiers fight with single-shot muskets in this re-enactment of the Revolutionary War. The men in the colonial militias did not have regular uniforms like the British soldiers did. They wore their own clothes and often used their own supplies. In this chapter you will learn about the American War for Independece.



1776
On July 4 the thirteen colonies issue the Declaration of Independence and break away from Great Britain.



1777
The Americans win the Battle of Saratoga in upstate New York, a turning point in the war.

1781
The British surrender to George Washington at Yorktown.

1783 The Treaty of Paris is signed, ending the war.

1777 — 1780 — 1783

1778 France allies with the Americans and joins the war against Great Britain.

1779 Spain declares war against Great Britain.





1783 Simon Bolívar is born in present-day Venezuela.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes In this chapter you will read about the events of the Revolutionary War, the war by which the United States won its independence. You will learn about some of the major battles that occurred between the American colonists and the British army and how **geography** sometimes affected their outcomes. You will also read the Declaration of Independence, one of the most important **political** documents in all of American history.

Main Ideas in Social Studies

Focus on Reading When you are reading, it is not always necessary to remember every tiny detail of the text. Instead, what you want to remember are the main ideas, the most important concepts around which the text is based.

Identifying Main Ideas Most paragraphs in history books include main ideas. Sometimes the main idea is stated clearly in a single sentence. At other times, the main idea is suggested, not stated. However, that idea still shapes the paragraph's content and the meaning of all of the facts and details in it.

News of the work spread throughout the colonies, eventually selling some 500,000 copies. Paine reached a wide audience by writing as a common person speaking to common people. *Common Sense* changed the way many colonists viewed their king. *(p. 118)*

Topic: The paragraph is about the pamphlet *Common Sense* by Thomas Paine.

+

Facts and Details:
- Many people from different colonies read the pamphlet.
- *Common Sense* eventually sold 500,000 copies.
- Thomas Paine's writing style was easy for the common people to read.

Main Idea: The pamphlet *Common Sense* shaped the way some colonists thought about their rulers.

Steps in Identifying Main Ideas

1. Read the paragraph. Ask yourself, "What is this paragraph mostly about?" This will be the topic of the paragraph.
2. List the important facts and details that relate to that topic.
3. Ask yourself, "What seems to be the most important point the writer is making about the topic?" Or ask, "If the writer could say only one thing about this paragraph, what would it be?" This is the **main idea** of the paragraph.

You Try It!

The following passage is from the chapter you are about to read. Read it and then answer the questions below.

The Treaty of Paris

From Chapter 4, p. 139

After Yorktown, only a few small battles took place. Lacking the money to pay for a new army, Great Britain entered into peace talks with America. Benjamin Franklin had an influential role in the negotiations.

Delegates took more than two years to come to a peace agreement. In the Treaty of Paris of 1783, Great Britain recognized the independence of the United States. The treaty also set America's borders. A separate treaty between Britain and Spain returned Florida to the Spanish. British leaders also accepted American rights to settle and trade west of the original thirteen colonies.

After you have read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. The main idea of the second paragraph is stated in a sentence. Which sentence expresses the main idea?
2. What is the first paragraph about? What facts and details are included in the paragraph? Based on your answers to these questions, what is the main idea of the first paragraph?

Key Terms and People

Chapter 4

Section 1

First Continental Congress *(p. 112)*
Patriots *(p. 113)*
minutemen *(p. 114)*
Redcoats *(p. 114)*
Second Continental Congress *(p. 114)*
Continental Army *(p. 114)*
George Washington *(p. 114)*
Battle of Bunker Hill *(p. 115)*

Section 2

Common Sense (p. 118)
Thomas Paine *(p. 118)*
Declaration of Independence *(p. 119)*
Thomas Jefferson *(p. 119)*
Loyalists *(p. 119)*

Section 3

mercenaries *(p. 128)*
Battle of Trenton *(p.129)*
Battle of Saratoga *(p. 130)*
Marquis de Lafayette *(p. 131)*
Baron Friedrich von Steuben *(p. 131)*
Bernardo de Gálvez *(p. 131)*
John Paul Jones *(p. 133)*
George Rogers Clark *(p. 133)*

Section 4

Francis Marion *(p. 136)*
Comte de Rochambeau *(p. 137)*
Battle of Yorktown *(p. 137)*
Treaty of Paris of 1783 *(p. 139)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

reaction *(p. 114)*
strategy *(p. 129)*

As you read Chapter 4, identify the main ideas of the paragraphs you are reading.

SECTION 1

The Revolution Begins



What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The First Continental Congress demanded certain rights from Great Britain.
2. Armed conflict between British soldiers and colonists broke out with the "shot heard 'round the world."
3. The Second Continental Congress created the Continental Army to fight the British.
4. In two early battles, the army lost control of Boston but then regained it.

The Big Idea

The tensions between the colonies and Great Britain led to armed conflict in 1775.

Key Terms and People

First Continental Congress, *p. 112*
Patriots, *p. 113*
minutemen, *p. 114*
Redcoats, *p. 114*
Second Continental Congress, *p. 114*
Continental Army, *p. 114*
George Washington, *p. 114*
Battle of Bunker Hill, *p. 115*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the events that occurred in the early days of the American Revolution. Write your notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.

First Continental Congress	Battles	Second Continental Congress

If YOU were there...

You are a member of the British Parliament in the 1770s. Some members say that the Americans are defying the king. Others point out that the colonists are British citizens who have certain rights. Now the king must decide to punish the rebellious colonists or listen to their complaints.

What advice would you give the king?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Taxes and harsh new laws led some colonists to protest against the British. In some places, the protests turned violent. The British government refused to listen, ignoring the colonists' demands for more rights. That set the stage for war.

First Continental Congress

To many colonists the closing of Boston Harbor was the final insult in a long list of abuses. In response to the mounting crisis, all the colonies except Georgia sent representatives to a meeting in October 1774. This meeting, known as the **First Continental Congress**, was a gathering of colonial leaders who were deeply troubled about the relationship between Great Britain and its colonies in America. At Carpenters' Hall in Philadelphia, the leaders remained locked in weeks of intense debate. Patrick Henry and others believed that violence was unavoidable. On the other hand, delegates from Pennsylvania and New York had strict orders to seek peace.

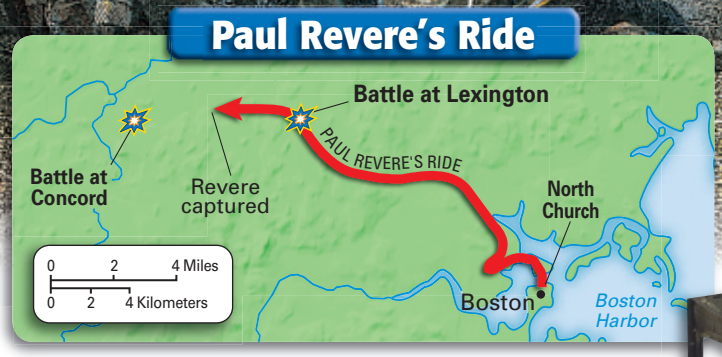
Wisely, the delegates compromised. They encouraged colonists to continue boycotting British goods but told colonial militias to prepare for war. Meanwhile, they drafted the Declaration of Rights, a list of 10 resolutions to be presented to King George III. Included was the colonists' right to "life, liberty, and property."

The First Continental Congress did not seek a separation from Britain. Its goal was to state the colonists' concerns and ask the king to correct the problems. But before they left Philadelphia, the delegates agreed to meet in 1775 if the king refused their petition.

Patrick Henry returned from the Congress and reported to his fellow Virginians. To encourage them to support the Patriot cause,

Battle of Lexington

The Battle of Lexington was the first battle of the Revolutionary War. The map shows the route that Paul Revere used to warn the minutemen of Lexington. He was captured before he could get to Concord. The photo below shows one of the actual candle lanterns used to signal Revere.





Henry voiced these famous words:

> "They tell us, Sir, that we are weak; unable to cope with so formidable an adversary. But when will we be stronger? Gentlemen may cry, Peace, Peace—but there is no peace. I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty or give me death."
>
> —Patrick Henry, quoted in *Eyewitnesses and Others*

In time many colonists came to agree with Henry. They became known as **Patriots**—colonists who chose to fight for independence from Great Britain.

READING CHECK **Identifying Cause and Effect**
Why did the delegates attend the First Continental Congress? What were the results?

"Shot Heard 'round the World"

The Continental Congress planned to meet again in 1775. Before it could, the situation in the colonies had changed—for the worse.

The Ride of Paul Revere

British military leaders in the colonies grew uneasy when local militias seemed to be preparing for action. The governor of Massachusetts, Thomas Gage, learned that a stockpile of weapons was stored in Concord, about 20 miles from Boston. In April 1775 he decided to seize the supplies.

Gage thought he had kept his plan a secret. However, Boston was full of spies for the Patriot cause. They noticed the British were preparing for action and quickly informed the Patriots. Unsure of how the British would strike, Sons of Liberty member Paul Revere enlisted the aid of Robert Newman. Newman was to climb into the steeple of the Old North Church and watch for British soldiers. If they advanced across land, Newman would display one lantern from the steeple. If they rowed across the Charles River, Newman would display two lanterns.

When Revere and fellow Patriot William Dawes saw two lights shine, they set off on horseback. Using two different routes out of Boston, they sounded the alert. As the riders advanced, drums and church bells called out the local militia, or **minutemen**—who got their name because they were ready to fight at a minute's notice.

Battles at Lexington and Concord

At dawn on April 19, the British troops arrived at the town of Lexington, near Concord, where 70 armed minutemen waited. Patriot captain John Parker yelled to his troops, "Don't fire unless fired upon." Suddenly a shot rang out. To this day, no one knows who fired this "shot heard 'round the world."

The battle at Lexington ended in minutes with only a few volleys fired. When the smoke cleared, 8 of the badly outnumbered minutemen lay dead, and 10 were wounded. The British, with only one soldier wounded, marched on to Concord.

Although Revere had been arrested, the citizens of Concord were warned by another rider, Samuel Prescott. Most of the weapons in Concord had already been hidden, but the few that were left were now concealed. Some of the British troops, frustrated because the stockpile had disappeared, set fire to a few buildings. In **reaction** the minutemen charged forward.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
reaction
response

For the skilled colonial marksmen of Concord, the British soldiers made an easy target. They were wearing the British military uniform with its bright red jacket. For some time the colonists had called the British soldiers **Redcoats** because of these jackets. The British were forced to retreat to Boston, suffering many casualties along the way.

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences** Why did the Patriots need several riders? Why did they take different routes?

Second Continental Congress

King George III had refused to address the concerns listed in the Declaration of Rights. In May 1775, delegates from 12 colonies met again in Philadelphia for the **Second Continental Congress**. This second group of delegates from the colonies was still far from unified, but represented the first attempt at a Republican government in the colonies.

Some of the delegates called for a war, others for peace. Once again they compromised. Although the Congress did not openly revolt, delegates showed their growing dissatisfaction. They sent word to colonial authorities asking for new state constitutions. States set up conventions to write them. They also authorized the Massachusetts militia to become the **Continental Army**. This force would soon include soldiers from all colonies and would carry out the fight against Britain. Congress named a Virginian, **George Washington**, to command the army.

As Washington prepared for war, the Congress pursued peace. On July 5 the delegates signed the Olive Branch Petition as a final attempt to restore harmony. King George refused to read it. Instead, he looked for new ways to punish the colonies.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What did the Second Continental Congress accomplish?

Early Battles

While the Congress discussed peace, the Massachusetts militia began to fight. Boston was a key city in the early days of the war. Both Patriots and the British fought to hold it.

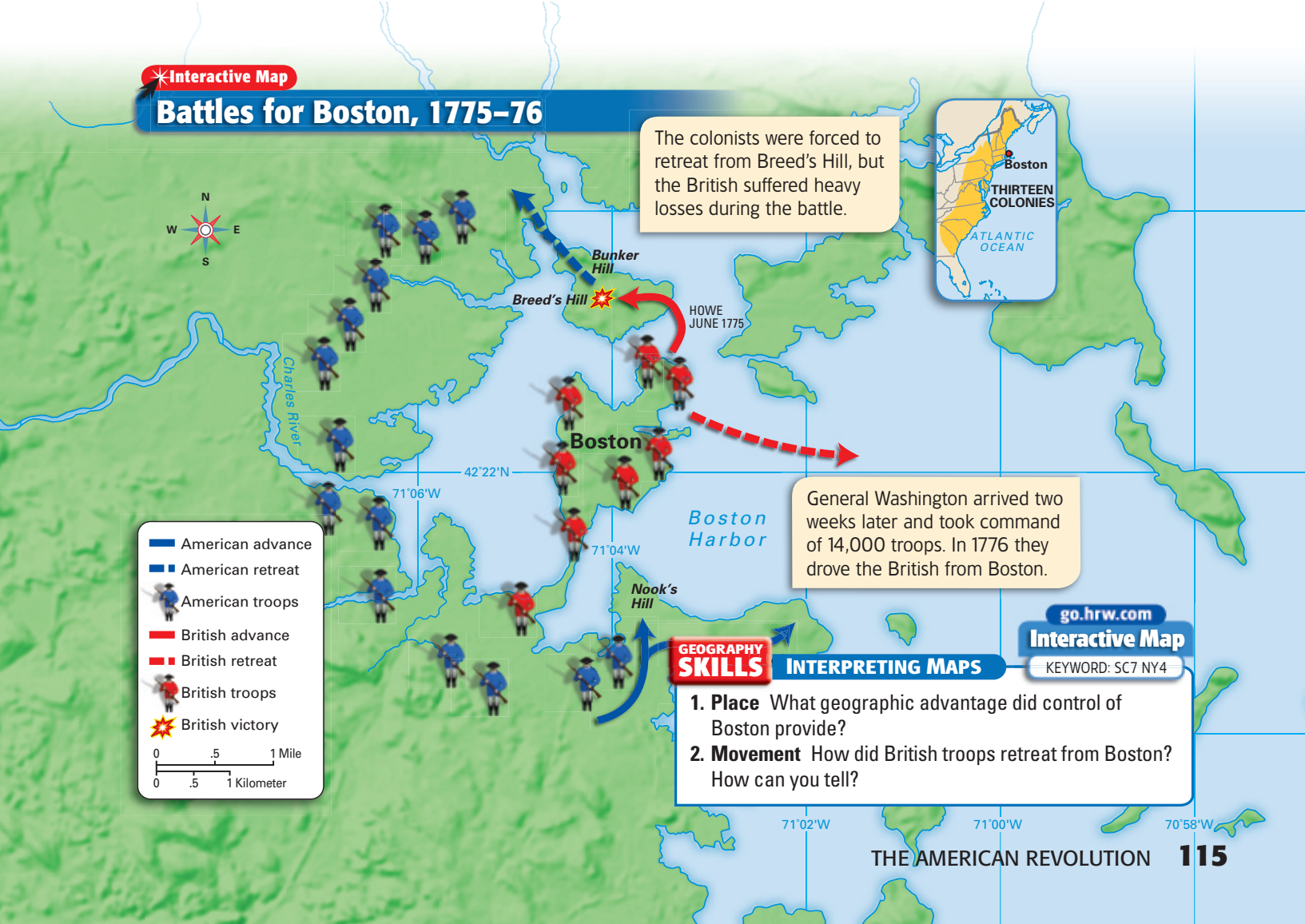
Bunker Hill

Desperate for supplies, leaders in Boston sent Benedict Arnold and a force of 400 men to New York State. Their objective was to attack the British at Fort Ticonderoga. In May 1775, Arnold captured the fort and its large supply of weapons.

Meanwhile, the poorly supplied Patriots kept the British pinned down inside Boston. Although British leaders were trying to form a battle plan, they awoke on June 17 to a stunning sight. The colonial forces had quietly dug in at Breed's Hill, a point overlooking north Boston. The Redcoats would have to cross Boston Harbor and fight their way uphill.

As the British force of 2,400 advanced, 1,600 militia members waited. Low on gunpowder, the commander ordered his troops not to fire "until you see the whites of their eyes." As they climbed the exposed hillside with their heavy packs, the British soldiers were cut down. Twice they retreated. Stepping over the dead and wounded, they returned for a third try. The colonists were now out of ammunition, and eventually they had to retreat.

This famous conflict is now known as the **Battle of Bunker Hill**, although it was actually launched from Breed's Hill. While the Patriots lost, they proved they could take on the Redcoats. For the British, the battle was a tragic victory. To win, they had sacrificed about double the number of Patriot soldiers.



Dorchester Heights

Shortly after the Battle of Bunker Hill, General Washington arrived in Boston to command the Continental Army. Washington knew that he would need heavier guns to drive the British out of Boston, and he knew where to get them—Fort Ticonderoga. Colonel Henry Knox was assigned to transport the captured cannons from Fort Ticonderoga to Boston. He successfully brought the heavy guns over 300 miles of rough terrain in the middle of winter. When Knox delivered the cannons, Washington was ready to regain control of Boston.

On March 4, 1776, Washington moved his army to Dorchester Heights, an area that overlooked Boston from the south. He stationed the cannons and his troops on Nook's Hill overlooking British general William Howe's position. When Howe awoke the next morning and saw the Patriots' well-positioned artillery, he knew he would have to retreat. "The Rebels have done more in one night than my whole army could do in months," Howe declared. On March 7 Howe retreated from Boston to Canada. The birthplace of the rebellion was now in Patriot hands.

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences** Why was the geography of the Boston area important in forming a battle plan?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Some colonial leaders became convinced that they could not avoid war with Great Britain. In the next section you will read about another step toward war—the writing of the Declaration of Independence.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP4

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What was the **First Continental Congress**?
   b. Make Inferences Why did the First Continental Congress send the Declaration of Rights to the king?
   c. Elaborate Why did King George III refuse to consider the colonists' declaration?
2. **a. Identify** Who warned the colonists of the British advance toward Lexington and Concord?
   b. Analyze Why did the British army march on Lexington and Concord?
   c. Elaborate What is meant by the expression "shot heard 'round the world"?
3. **a. Describe** What was the purpose of the **Second Continental Congress**?
   b. Draw Conclusions Were the delegates to the Second Continental Congress ready to revolt against George III? Explain.
   c. Evaluate Defend George III's response to the Declaration of Rights and the Olive Branch Petition.
4. **a. Identify** What leader captured Fort Ticonderoga?
   b. Draw Conclusions How was the **Continental Army** able to drive British forces out of Boston?
   c. Evaluate How would you evaluate the performance of the Continental Army in the early battles of the war? Explain.

Critical Thinking

5. **Categorizing** Review your notes on the early battles of the Revolution. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to categorize events in the early days of the Revolution. Some events will be attempts at peace; others will be movement toward war.

Attempts at Peace	Movement toward War

FOCUS ON SPEAKING

6. **Thinking about the Beginning** You'll have about five minutes for your report and only a minute or two to talk about the beginning of the war. What are the one or two most important things you want to say?

BIOGRAPHY

George Washington

What would you do if you were asked to lead a new country?

When did he live? 1732–1799

Where did he live? George Washington was a true American, born in the Virginia colony. As president, he lived in New York City and Philadelphia, the nation's first two capitals. When he retired, he returned to his plantation at Mount Vernon.

What did he do? Although Washington was a wealthy farmer, he spent most of his life in the military and in politics. Leading the colonial forces to victory in the Revolutionary War, he then helped shape the new government of the United States. On April 30, 1789, he was sworn in as the first president of the United States.

Why is he so important? George Washington inspired Americans and helped to unite them. One of his great accomplishments as president was to keep the peace with Britain and France. Upon leaving the presidency, he urged Americans to avoid becoming politically divided.

Drawing Conclusions How might Washington's leadership in the Revolutionary War have prepared him for his role as president?

KEY EVENTS

- **1775** Serves in Second Continental Congress; selected commander of the Continental Army
- **1789** Inaugurated as president
- **1793** Begins second term as president
- **1796** Publishes his Farewell Address and retires to his plantation at Mount Vernon
- **1799** Dies at Mount Vernon; his will frees his slaves



Mount Vernon was Washington's plantation.

SECTION 2

Declaring Independence

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Thomas Paine's *Common Sense* led many colonists to support independence.
2. Colonists had to choose sides when independence was declared.
3. The Declaration of Independence did not address the rights of all colonists.

The Big Idea

The colonies formally declared their independence from Great Britain.

Key Terms and People

Common Sense, *p. 118*
Thomas Paine, *p. 118*
Declaration of Independence, *p. 119*
Thomas Jefferson, *p. 119*
Loyalists, *p. 119*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the Declaration of Independence. Write your notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.

Influence of *Common Sense* on Declaration	Main Ideas of Declaration	People Not Included

If YOU were there...

You live on a farm in New York in 1776. The conflicts with the British have torn your family apart. Your father is loyal to King George and wants to remain British. But your mother is a fierce Patriot, and your brother wants to join the Continental Army. Your father and others who feel the same way are moving to British-held Canada. Now you must decide what you will do.

Would you go to Canada or support the Patriots?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The outbreak of violence at Lexington, Concord, and Boston took some colonists by surprise. Many, like the father above, opposed independence from Britain. Those who supported freedom began to promote their cause in many ways.

Paine's *Common Sense*

"[There] is something very absurd in supporting a continent to be perpetually [forever] governed by an island." This plainspoken argument against British rule over America appeared in ***Common Sense***, a 47-page pamphlet that was distributed in Philadelphia in January 1776. *Common Sense* was published anonymously—that is, without the author's name. The author, **Thomas Paine**, argued that citizens, not kings and queens, should make laws. At a time when monarchs ruled much of the world, this was a bold idea.

News of the work spread throughout the colonies, eventually selling some 500,000 copies. Paine reached a wide audience by writing as a common person speaking to common people. *Common Sense* changed the way many colonists viewed their king. It made a strong case for economic freedom and for the right to military self-defense. It cried out against tyranny—that is, the abuse of government power. Thomas Paine's words rang out in his time, and they have echoed throughout American history.

READING CHECK **Supporting a Point of View** Would you have agreed with Thomas Paine? Explain.

Independence Is Declared

Many colonial leaders agreed with Paine. In June 1776 the Second Continental Congress formed a committee to write a document declaring the colonies' independence. A committee also created a seal for the new country with the Latin motto "*E pluribus unum*" or "out of many, one." This motto recognized the new union of states.

A New Philosophy of Government

The **Declaration of Independence** formally announced the colonies' break from Great Britain. In doing so, it expressed three main ideas. First, **Thomas Jefferson**, the document's main author, argued that all people possess unalienable rights, including the rights of "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness."

Next, Jefferson asserted that King George III had violated the colonists' rights by taxing them without their consent. Jefferson accused the king of passing unfair laws and interfering with colonial governments. He also believed that stationing a large British army within the colonies was a burden.

Third, Jefferson stated that the colonies had the right to break from Britain. Influenced by the Enlightenment ideal of the social contract, he maintained that governments and rulers must protect the rights of citizens. In exchange, the people agree to be governed. Jefferson argued that King George III had broken the social contract.

On July 4, 1776, the Continental Congress approved the Declaration of Independence. This act broke all ties to the British crown. The United States of America was born.

Choosing Sides

The signing of the Declaration made the rebellion a full-scale revolt against Britain. Those who supported it would be considered traitors. Colonists who chose to side with the British were known as **Loyalists**—often called Tories.

THE IMPACT TODAY

The Continental Congress voted for independence on July 2. However, because the Declaration was not approved until July 4, the fourth is celebrated today as Independence Day.

Primary Source

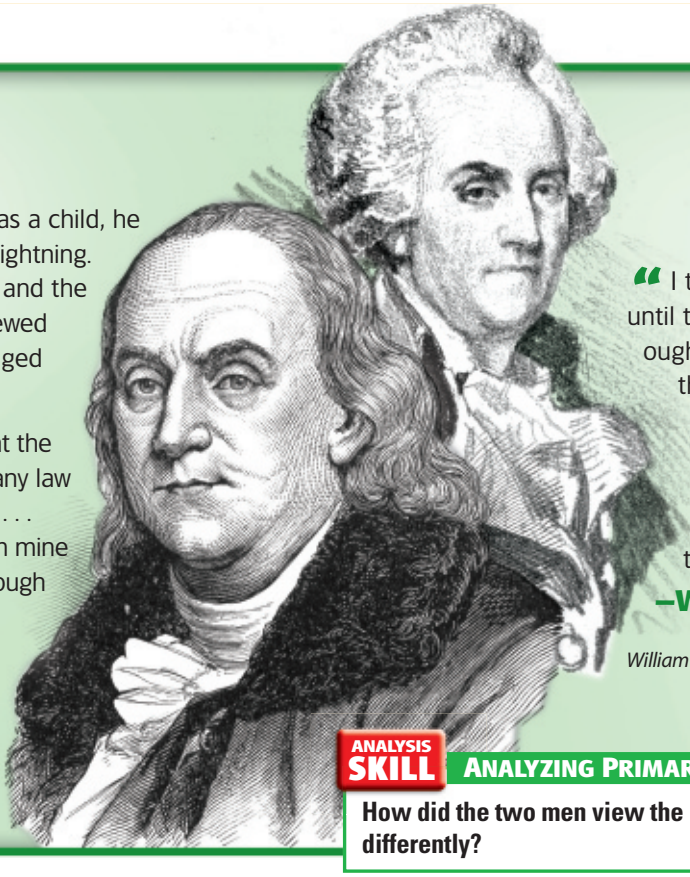
POINTS OF VIEW

Choosing Sides

When Ben Franklin's son William was a child, he helped his father experiment with lightning. But by the time William had grown and the Revolution started, the two men viewed the conflict differently. They exchanged letters on the subject.

"I am indeed of the opinion, that the parliament has no right to make any law whatever, binding on the colonies . . . I know your sentiments differ from mine on these subjects. You are a thorough government man, which I do not wonder at, nor do I aim at converting you. I only wish you to act uprightly and steadily."

—Benjamin Franklin,
quoted in *The Writings of Benjamin Franklin Vol. III*



"I think that all laws until they are repealed ought to be obeyed and that it is the duty of those who are entrusted with the executive part of government to see that they are so."

—William Franklin,
quoted in *Benjamin and William Franklin* by Sheila L. Skemp

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

How did the two men view the British government differently?



Signing the Declaration of Independence

Historians estimate that 40 to 45 percent of Americans were Patriots, while 20 to 30 percent were Loyalists. The rest were neutral.

Because of persecution by Patriots, more than 50,000 Loyalists fled the colonies during the Revolution. Most went to Canada, where Britain allowed them more self-rule after the Revolution. In doing so, they abandoned their homes and property. Divided allegiances tore apart families and friendships—even Benjamin Franklin became separated from his Loyalist son William.

Native Americans were at first encouraged by both sides to remain neutral. By the summer of 1776, however, both Patriots and the British were aggressively recruiting Indian fighters. Most sided with the British. In northern New York, four of the six Iroquois nations fought for the British. However, the Oneida and Tuscarora helped the Patriots, even delivering food to the soldiers at Valley Forge.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** Why would Native Americans have lost out no matter who won the war?

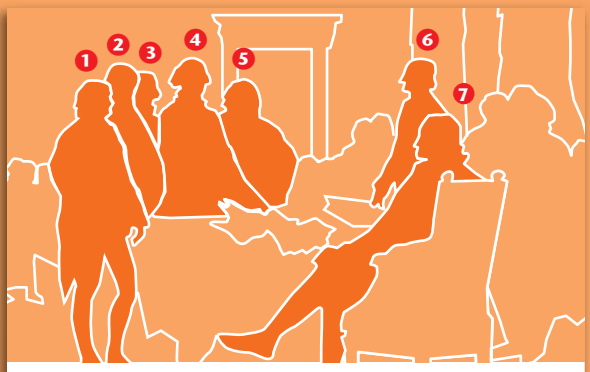
Unfinished Business

Today we recognize that the Declaration of Independence excluded many colonists. While it declared that "all men are created equal," the document failed to mention women, enslaved Africans, or Native Americans. The rights of these minorities would be subject to the rule of the majority.

Women

Although many women were Patriots, the Declaration did not address their rights. At least one delegate's wife, Abigail Adams, tried to influence her husband, John, to include women's rights in the Declaration. In a failed effort, she expressed her concerns:

> "Remember the Ladies, and be more generous and favorable to them than your ancestors. Do not put such unlimited power into the hands of the Husbands . . . If particular care and attention is not paid to the Ladies we are and will not hold ourselves bound by Laws in which we have no voice, or Representation."
>
> —Abigail Adams, quoted in *Notable American Women*



1. John Adams
2. Roger Sherman
3. Robert Livingston
4. Thomas Jefferson
5. Benjamin Franklin
6. Charles Thomson
7. John Hancock

The Declaration of Independence was adopted on July 4, 1776. This painting shows 47 of the 56 signers of the document. The man sitting on the right is John Hancock, who was the president of the Second Continental Congress. He is accepting the Declaration from the committee that wrote it.

How realistic do you think this painting is?

African and Native Americans

The Declaration did not recognize the rights of enslaved Africans, either. The authors had compared life under British rule to living as an enslaved people. The obvious question arose: Why did any form of slavery exist in a land that valued personal freedom? Even Thomas Jefferson, the main author of the Declaration, was a slaveholder.

In July 1776 slavery was legal in all the colonies. By the 1780s the New England colonies were taking steps to end slavery. Even so, the conflict over slavery continued long after the Revolutionary War.

The Declaration of Independence also did not address the rights of Native Americans to life, liberty, or property. Despite the Proclamation of 1763, American colonists had been quietly settling on lands that belonged to Native Americans. This tendency to disregard the rights of Native Americans would develop into a pattern after the colonists won their independence from Great Britain.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What groups were unrepresented in the Declaration of Independence?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In 1776 the colonists declared their independence. To achieve their goal, however, they would have to win a war against the British army. In the next section you will learn about some of the battles of the Revolutionary War. For a time, it seemed as if the British would defeat the colonists.

Section 2 Assessment

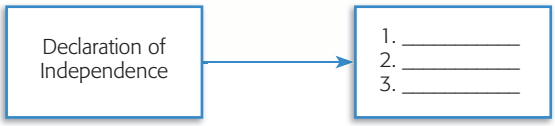
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP4

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** Who was **Thomas Paine**?
   b. Make Inferences Why do you think Thomas Paine originally published ***Common Sense*** anonymously?
   c. Elaborate Do you think that most colonists would have supported independence from Britain without Thomas Paine's publication of *Common Sense*? Explain.
2. **a. Identify** What two sides emerged in response to the **Declaration of Independence**? What did each side favor?
   b. Explain What arguments did the authors of the Declaration of Independence give for declaring the colonies free from British control?
   c. Predict How might some groups use the Declaration of Independence in the future to gain rights?
3. **a. Identify** Who urged her husband to "remember the ladies"?
   b. Making Inferences Why did the authors of the Declaration of Independence fail to address the rights of women, Native Americans, and African Americans in the document?

Critical Thinking

4. **Analyzing** Review your notes on the Declaration of Independence. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to identify three results of the Declaration of Independence.



FOCUS ON SPEAKING

5. **Gathering Ideas about the Declaration of Independence** You are living at the time of the American Revolution. What is new and surprising about the colonists' actions? In one or two minutes, what is the most important thing you can say about the colonies' declaring independence?

The Declaration of Independence

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT Thomas Jefferson wrote the first draft of the Declaration in a little more than two weeks. **How is the Declaration's idea about why governments are formed still important to our country today?**

Vocabulary

impel force

endowed provided

usurpations wrongful seizures of power

evinces clearly displays

despotism unlimited power

tyranny oppressive power exerted by a government or ruler

candid fair

In Congress, July 4, 1776
The unanimous Declaration of the thirteen united States of America,

When in the Course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the Powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the Laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which **impel** them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are **endowed** by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty, and the pursuit of Happiness. That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed, That whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new Government, laying its foundation on such principles and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their Safety and Happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that Governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and **usurpations**, pursuing invariably the same Object **evinces** a design to reduce them under absolute **Despotism**, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such Government, and to provide new Guards for their future security.—Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former Systems of Government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute **Tyranny** over these States. To prove this, let Facts be submitted to a **candid** world.

He has refused his Assent to Laws, the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass Laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his Assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT Here the Declaration lists the charges that the colonists had against King George III. **How does the language in the list appeal to people's emotions?**

He has refused to pass other Laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would **relinquish** the right of Representation in the Legislature, a right **inestimable** to them and **formidable** to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their Public Records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved Representative Houses repeatedly, for opposing with manly firmness his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused for a long time, after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the Legislative Powers, incapable of **Annihilation**, have returned to the People at large for their exercise; the State remaining in the mean time exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without, and **convulsions** within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the Laws of **Naturalization of Foreigners**; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new **Appropriations of Lands**.

He has obstructed the Administration of Justice, by refusing his Assent to Laws for establishing Judiciary Powers.

He has made Judges dependent on his Will alone, for the **tenure** of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected **a multitude of** New Offices, and sent hither swarms of Officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, Standing Armies without the Consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the Military independent of and superior to the Civil Power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his Assent to their Acts of pretended legislation:

For **quartering** large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock Trial, from Punishment for any Murders which they should commit on the Inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our Trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our Consent:

For depriving us in many cases, of the benefits of Trial by Jury:

Vocabulary

relinquish release, yield
inestimable priceless
formidable causing dread
annihilation destruction
convulsions violent disturbances
naturalization of foreigners the process by which foreign-born persons become citizens
appropriations of lands setting aside land for settlement
tenure term
a multitude of many
quartering lodging, housing



Mum Bett, a Massachusetts slave, believed that the words "all men are created equal" should apply to her and other enslaved Africans. She successfully sued for her freedom in 1781.

Vocabulary

arbitrary not based on law
render make
abdicated given up
foreign mercenaries soldiers hired to fight for a country not their own
perfidy violation of trust
insurrections rebellions
petitioned for redress asked formally for a correction of wrongs
unwarrantable jurisdiction unjustified authority
magnanimity generous spirit
conjured urgently called upon
consanguinity common ancestry
acquiesce consent to

For transporting us beyond Seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free System of English Laws in a neighboring Province, establishing therein an **Arbitrary** government, and enlarging its Boundaries so as to **render** it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these Colonies:

For taking away our Charters, abolishing our most valuable Laws, and altering fundamentally the Forms of our Governments:

For suspending our own Legislature, and declaring themselves invested with Power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has **abdicated** Government here, by declaring us out of his Protection and waging War against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our Coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of **foreign mercenaries** to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of Cruelty & **perfidy** scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the Head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow Citizens taken Captive on the high Seas to bear Arms against their Country, to become the executioners of their friends and Brethren, or to fall themselves by their Hands.

He has excited domestic **insurrections** amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian Savages, whose known rule of warfare, is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes and conditions.

In every stage of these Oppressions We have **Petitioned for Redress** in the most humble terms: Our repeated Petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A Prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a Tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free People.

Nor have We been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them from time to time of attempts by their legislature to extend an **unwarrantable jurisdiction** over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and **magnanimity**, and we have **conjured** them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which, would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They too have been deaf to the voice of justice and of **consanguinity**. We must, therefore, **acquiesce** in the necessity, which denounces our Separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, Enemies in War, in Peace Friends.

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT Here the Declaration calls the king a tyrant. **What do you think *tyrant* means in this passage?**

We, therefore, the Representatives of the united States of America, in General Congress, Assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the **rectitude** of our intentions, do, in the Name, and by Authority of the good People of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of Right ought to be Free and Independent States; that they are Absolved from all Allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is and ought to be totally dissolved; and that as Free and Independent States, they have full Power to levy War, conclude Peace, contract Alliances, establish Commerce, and to do all other Acts and Things which Independent States may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the Protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our Lives, our Fortunes and our sacred Honor.

John Hancock
Button Gwinnett
Lyman Hall
George Walton
William Hooper
Joseph Hewes
John Penn
Edward Rutledge
Thomas Heyward, Jr.
Thomas Lynch, Jr.
Arthur Middleton
Samuel Chase
William Paca
Thomas Stone
Charles Carroll of Carrollton
George Wythe
Richard Henry Lee
Thomas Jefferson

Benjamin Harrison
Thomas Nelson, Jr.
Francis Lightfoot Lee
Carter Braxton
Robert Morris
Benjamin Rush
Benjamin Franklin
John Morton
George Clymer
James Smith
George Taylor
James Wilson
George Ross
Caesar Rodney
George Read
Thomas McKean
William Floyd
Philip Livingston
Francis Lewis

Lewis Morris
Richard Stockton
John Witherspoon
Francis Hopkinson
John Hart
Abraham Clark
Josiah Bartlett
William Whipple
Samuel Adams
John Adams
Robert Treat Paine
Elbridge Gerry
Stephen Hopkins
William Ellery
Roger Sherman
Samuel Huntington
William Williams
Oliver Wolcott
Matthew Thornton

Vocabulary

rectitude rightness

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT Here is where the document declares the independence of the colonies. **Whose authority does the Congress use to declare independence?**

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT The Congress adopted the final draft of the Declaration of Independence on July 4, 1776. A formal copy, written on parchment paper, was signed on August 2, 1776. **From whom did the Declaration's signers receive their authority to declare independence?**

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT The following is part of a passage that the Congress removed from Jefferson's original draft: "He has waged cruel war against human nature itself, violating its most sacred rights of life and liberty in the persons of a distant people who never offended him, captivating and carrying them into slavery in another hemisphere, or to incur miserable death in their transportation thither." **Why do you think the Congress deleted this passage?**

SECTION 3

The Struggle for Liberty

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Many Americans supported the war effort.
2. The Patriots both won and lost battles during the years 1775–1777.
3. France and Spain helped the Patriots fight the British.
4. The winter at Valley Forge tested the strength of Patriot troops.
5. The war continued at sea and in the West.

The Big Idea

Patriot forces faced many obstacles in the war against Britain.

Key Terms and People

mercenaries, *p. 128*
Battle of Trenton, *p. 129*
Battle of Saratoga, *p. 130*
Marquis de Lafayette, *p. 131*
Baron Friedrich von Steuben, *p. 131*
Bernardo de Gálvez, *p. 131*
John Paul Jones, *p. 133*
George Rogers Clark, *p. 133*

TAKING NOTES Create a time line like the one below. As you read, identify and describe the events occurring on each of the dates listed on your time line.

June 1776 | Nov. 1776 | Dec. 1776 | Jan. 1777 | Oct. 1777 | May 1778 | Sept. 1779

If YOU were there...

You are a serving maid at an inn in New York City. British soldiers often stop at the inn for a meal. You sometimes overhear their conversations, though they don't notice you. Now a Patriot leader has asked you to bring him any information you hear. You want to help the Patriot cause but wonder what will happen if you are caught spying.

Would you agree to spy for the Patriots?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Many colonists struggled for the Patriot cause. Men, women, and children all made important contributions. They fought, kept farms and shops running, and provided food and supplies. In spite of their efforts, winning the war was a great challenge.

Supporting the War Effort

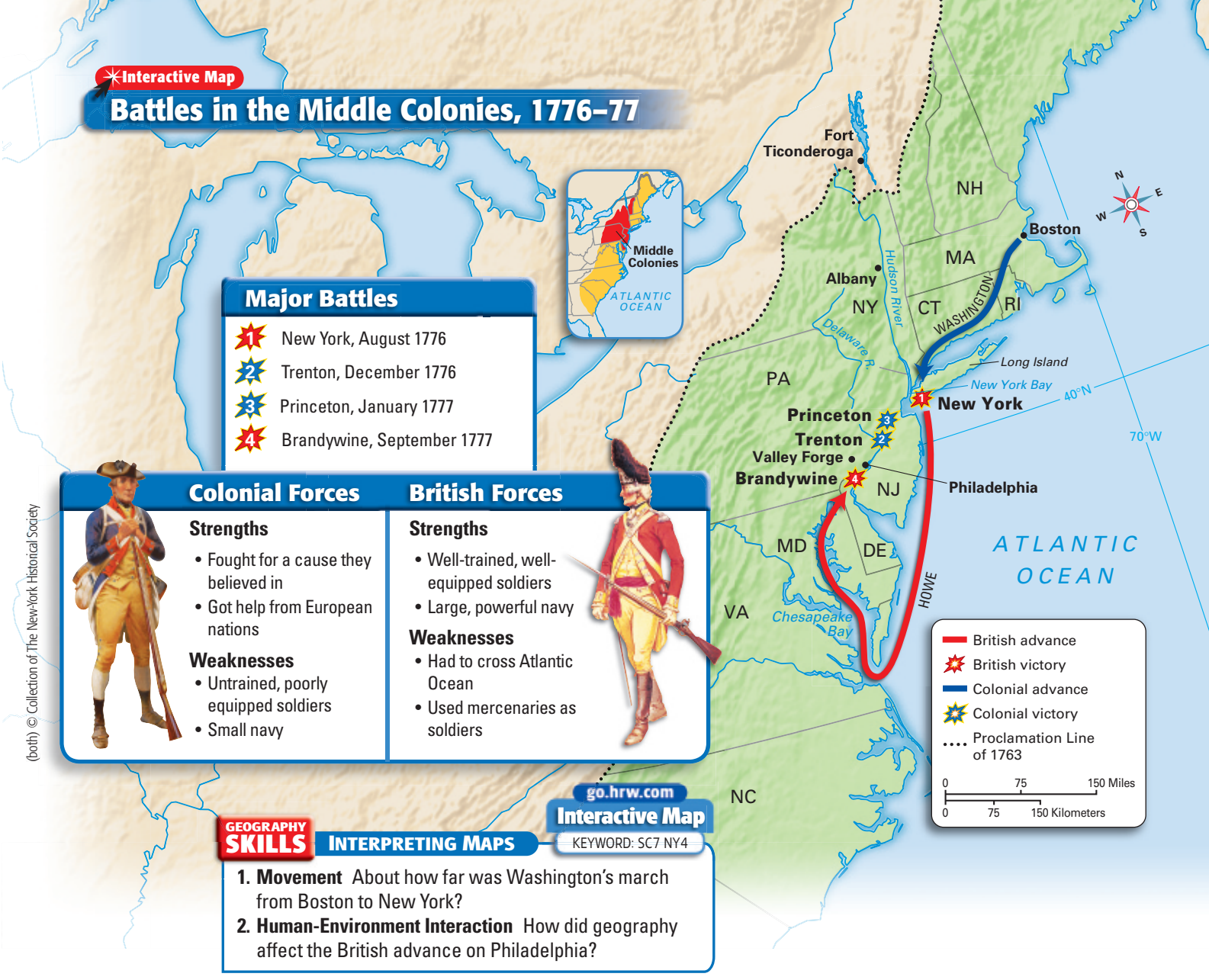
George Washington's chief task as the Continental Army's commander in chief was to raise troops. During the war, more than 230,000 soldiers served in the Continental Army, and another 145,000 enlisted in local militias. The typical soldier was young, often under the legal age of 16, and had little money or property. The army offered low pay, harsh conditions, and a big chance of becoming a casualty. Yet the Patriots knew they were fighting for their homes and their freedom.

Finding and keeping dedicated soldiers would be a constant challenge throughout the war. In time, the Continental Congress required states to supply soldiers. Men who could afford it often paid others, such as slaves or apprentices, to fight in their places.

One question facing General Washington was whether to recruit African Americans. Many white southerners opposed the idea, and at first Washington banned African Americans from serving. When the British promised freedom to any slave who fought on their side, however, thousands of African Americans joined the Redcoats.

Interactive Map

Battles in the Middle Colonies, 1776–77



Major Battles

1. New York, August 1776
2. Trenton, December 1776
3. Princeton, January 1777
4. Brandywine, September 1777

Colonial Forces

Strengths

- Fought for a cause they believed in
- Got help from European nations

Weaknesses

- Untrained, poorly equipped soldiers
- Small navy

British Forces

Strengths

- Well-trained, well-equipped soldiers
- Large, powerful navy

Weaknesses

- Had to cross Atlantic Ocean
- Used mercenaries as soldiers

(both) © Collection of The New-York Historical Society

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

go.hrw.com Interactive Map KEYWORD: SC7 NY4

1. **Movement** About how far was Washington's march from Boston to New York?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** How did geography affect the British advance on Philadelphia?

In response, the Continental Army began allowing free African Americans to serve.

While men served as soldiers, many women ran farms and businesses. Others helped the army by raising money for supplies or making clothing. Women served as messengers, nurses, and spies. A Massachusetts man noted:

> "At every house Women and children [are] making Cartridges, running Bullets . . . and at the same time animating [encouraging] their Husbands and Sons to fight."
>
> —Anonymous, quoted in *Born for Liberty*, by Sara M. Evans

Perhaps the best known woman to fight in the war was Mary Ludwig Hays. She was called Molly Pitcher because she brought water to the troops. When her husband was wounded in a 1778 battle, she took his place loading cannons. Another woman, Deborah Sampson, dressed as a man and fought in several battles.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did various groups contribute to the war effort?

Defeats and Victories

As the Revolution gathered steam, it became more deadly. At first the Continental Army suffered a number of defeats. In time, though, the Patriots' patience began to pay off.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Women are still banned from ground combat. But in Operation Iraqi Freedom, women operated warships and flew combat jets and helicopters for the first time in a major air-ground conflict.

Canada

In part because the army was short on supplies, many Patriot leaders favored fighting a defensive war. Others wanted to invade British-controlled Canada and make it the "14th colony."

Patriot troops led by General Richard Montgomery captured Montreal in November 1775. The next major target was the city of Quebec. Benedict Arnold, now a general, led his troops north on a remarkable trek through the rough backcountry of Maine. He reached Quebec around the same time that Montreal fell to Montgomery. Since his first attempt to take the city failed, Arnold waited for Montgomery's troops to join his.

Taking an immense chance, the combined armies attacked during a fierce blizzard on New Year's Eve. They were quickly defeated. The Americans had suffered a crushing loss, and the Patriots' hopes of taking Canada faded.

New York



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

After the British takeover in 1776, many Loyalists settled in New York City and formed military regiments that attacked New York's patriots. One of the largest of these regiments was led by a New York businessman, Oliver DeLancey. Delancey's Brigade served as a police force in the city and helped fight two major battles in North Carolina.

New York City became the next battleground. General Washington had moved his troops to New York, expecting the British arrival. Sure enough, in June 1776, a fleet of British ships approached New York Bay. Led by General William Howe, the British forced the Continental Army off Long Island.

Howe's 32,000 soldiers were much better equipped than Washington's 23,000 men, most of whom were militia. The Patriot general had to use all of his skills just to save his army.

In a series of battles, known as the Battle of Long Island or the Battle of Brooklyn, Howe pounded the Continental Army, forcing it to retreat farther and farther. The Redcoats captured Patriots as well as supplies. Eventually, the British pushed Washington across the Hudson River into New Jersey. Howe's revenge for his defeat at Boston was complete.

FOCUS ON READING

What is the main idea of the third paragraph under "New York"?

During the New York campaigns, a young Connecticut officer named Nathan Hale went behind British lines to get secret information. Seized by the British with documents hidden in the soles of his shoes, Hale was ordered to be hanged. Before his execution, he is said to have declared, "I regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."



Crossing the Delaware

George Washington and his troops crossed the partially frozen Delaware River on the night of December 25, 1776. This daring act led to a key Patriot victory at the Battle of Trenton. German American artist Emanuel Leutze created this famous painting in 1851. A version of Leutze's *Washington Crossing the Delaware* hangs in the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City.

What feelings do you think Leutze wanted to inspire with this painting?

New Jersey

In November 1776 the tattered Continental Army was on the run. Washington's remaining 6,000 men were tired and discouraged. The one-year contract for many of them would end on December 31. Who would re-enlist in this losing army, and who would replace the soldiers who left? Washington's army was in danger of vanishing.

Thinking the rebellion would end soon, Howe left New Jersey in the hands of soldiers from the German state of Hesse. The Hessians were **mercenaries**—foreign soldiers who fought not out of loyalty, but for pay.

On December 7 Washington retreated across the Delaware River into Pennsylvania. Even with 2,000 fresh troops, the Patriots were near the end. "These are the times that try men's souls," wrote Thomas Paine in *The American Crisis*, a series of pamphlets he began publishing in late 1776.

Without a convincing victory, Washington knew he would lose his army. He decided to take a big chance and go on the offensive. The Americans would attack the Hessians at Trenton, New Jersey.



On Christmas night, 1776, with a winter storm lashing about them, Washington and 2,400 soldiers silently rowed across the ice-clogged Delaware River. As morning broke, the men, short on supplies and many with no shoes, marched through the snow to reach the enemy camp.

The Hessians, having celebrated the holiday the night before, were fast asleep when the Patriots sprang upon them. The **Battle of Trenton** was an important Patriot victory. American soldiers took more than 900 prisoners.

British general Charles Cornwallis rushed to stop Washington as he marched northeast to Princeton. On the night of January 2, 1777, the Patriots left their campfires burning, then slipped into the darkness and circled behind the British troops. In the morning, Washington attacked. A local resident witnessed it:

> "The battle was plainly seen from our door … and the guns went off so quick and many together that they could not be numbered … Almost as soon as the firing was over, our house was filled and surrounded with General Washington's men."
>
> —Anonymous, quoted in *Voices of 1776* by Richard Wheeler

As Washington watched the Redcoats flee Princeton, he cheered, "It is a fine fox chase, my boys!" Now, new soldiers joined the chase. Others re-enlisted. The army—and the Revolution—was saved.

Saratoga

The two quick defeats stung the British. In the spring of 1777, they wanted a victory.

British general John Burgoyne decided to push through New York State and cut off New England from the other colonies. The **strategy** required perfect timing. According

Academic Vocabulary

strategy a plan for fighting a battle or war

to the plan, Burgoyne's army would invade from Canada, recapture Fort Ticonderoga, and sweep south to Albany. General Howe, in New York City, would sail up the Hudson River to meet him, strangling New England.

Indeed, Burgoyne took Ticonderoga in early July and headed toward Albany. Here, the timing went wrong for the British. Unknown to Burgoyne, Howe had left New York, sailed up the Chesapeake Bay, and captured Philadelphia. Delegates to the Continental Congress were forced to flee.

Meanwhile, Burgoyne's army bogged down in thick forests. The Patriots had chopped down large trees and dammed rivers to create obstacles. All along the route, the militia swarmed out of nowhere to attack the Redcoats. As Burgoyne neared Saratoga, New York, he found himself surrounded. On October 17, 1777, he was forced to surrender his entire army to General Horatio Gates.

The **Battle of Saratoga** in New York was the turning point of the Revolutionary War. It was the greatest victory yet for the American forces. Morale soared. Patriot James Thacher wrote, "This event will make one of the most brilliant pages of American history."

READING CHECK **Summarizing**
Why was the Battle of Saratoga a turning point in the war?

Help from Europe

The French and Indian War had drastically changed the balance of power in North America. The French and Spanish had lost a large expanse of valuable land to the British. Both countries were delighted to see their powerful rival experiencing trouble in its American colonies.

The victory at Saratoga gave the Patriots something they had been desperately seeking: foreign help. Not surprisingly, it came from Britain's enemies, France and Spain. Even Britain's old ally, Holland, joined the fight on the side of the Patriots.



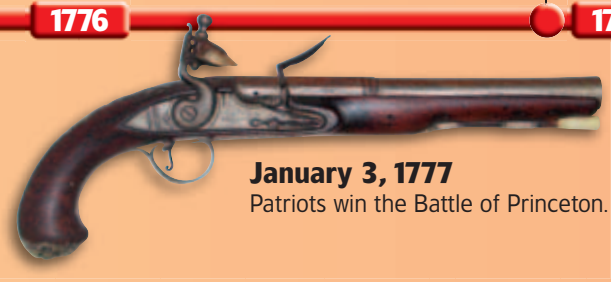
October 17, 1777 British forces under General John Burgoyne marched south, heading for Albany. They were crushed by Patriot forces under General Horatio Gates at Saratoga.

Time Line

The Patriots Gain Ground

December 26, 1776
Patriots win the Battle of Trenton.

1776 — 1777



January 3, 1777
Patriots win the Battle of Princeton.

July 27, 1777 Marquis de Lafayette arrives in Philadelphia to offer his assistance to the Patriot cause.



Two Remarkable Europeans

"The welfare of America is closely bound up with the welfare of mankind," declared a wealthy young Frenchman, the **Marquis de Lafayette**. Inspired by the ideas of the Revolution, Lafayette bought his own ship and arrived in America in 1777. He brought with him a group of well-trained soldiers and volunteered to serve in the Continental Army himself without pay.

Lafayette spoke little English and had never seen battle. However, he quickly became a skillful commander, earning the title of major general. Lafayette led 2,000 Patriots to successfully pursue 6,000 Redcoats throughout Virginia during 1780–81. He gave $200,000 of his own money to support the Revolution and wrote many letters home to powerful friends and family asking their aid for the Patriot cause.

In February 1778 another European came to serve heroically under Washington. **Baron Friedrich von Steuben**, an experienced military officer from Prussia, led with a combination of respect and fear. He started training the American troops, focusing on basic military drills. Soon he turned the Continental Army into a finely tuned fighting force. A historian called von Steuben's feat "perhaps the most remarkable achievement in rapid military training in the history of the world."

Help from France

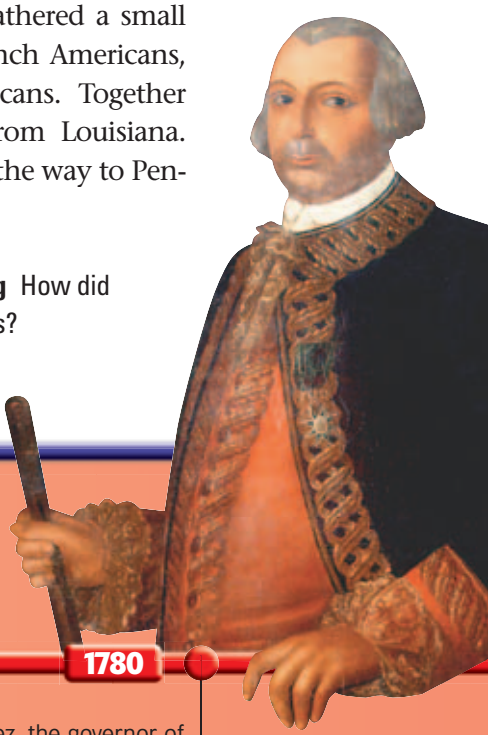
Benjamin Franklin, a skilled and experienced diplomat, had gone to France in 1776 to ask for support from King Louis XVI. Finally, the Battle of Saratoga in 1777 persuaded the French king that the colonists could win the war. Not until then did the king agree to an alliance with the Patriots.

In May 1778 the Continental Congress ratified the treaty of support with France. The French had been helping the Patriots all along with supplies and ammunition. After the treaty became official, the French increased the level of supplies and agreed to provide soldiers and ships. The French naval support would be a key ingredient in defeating the British.

Help from Spain

Spain, also a bitter enemy of Britain, joined the war in 1779. **Bernardo de Gálvez**, the governor of Spanish Louisiana, became a key ally to the Patriots. Gálvez gathered a small army of Spanish soldiers, French Americans, colonists, and Native Americans. Together they made their way east from Louisiana. Gálvez seized British posts all the way to Pensacola, Florida.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did France and Spain help the Patriots?



February 1778
Baron Friedrich von Steuben begins training Patriot soldiers.

June 21, 1779
Spain declares war against Britain.

1778 — 1779 — 1780

May 1778 France joins the Patriots in an alliance.

March 14, 1780 Bernardo de Gálvez, the governor of Spanish Louisiana, captures the British stronghold of Fort Charlotte at present-day Mobile, Alabama.



ANALYSIS SKILL **READING TIME LINES**

Which nations joined the Patriot cause?

Primary Source

JOURNAL ENTRY

Valley Forge

A surgeon at Valley Forge, Albigence Waldo kept a journal of what he saw during the winter of 1777–78.

"The Army which has been surprisingly healthy hitherto, now begins to grow sickly from the continued fatigues they have suffered this Campaign. Yet they still show a spirit of Alacrity [cheerful readiness] and Contentment not to be expected from so young Troops. I am Sick—discontented—and out of humour. Poor food—hard lodging—Cold Weather—fatigue—Nasty Cloaths [clothes]—nasty Cookery . . . smoke and Cold—hunger and filthyness—A pox on my bad luck."

—Albigence Waldo, from *Diary of Surgeon Albigence Waldo of the Connecticut Line*

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why did Waldo seem surprised by the soldiers' attitude?



Winter at Valley Forge

The entry of France and Spain into the war came at a crucial moment. The Continental Army was running very low on food and clothing. In December 1777, Washington settled his 12,000 men at Valley Forge, north of Philadelphia.

To this day, the name of Valley Forge brings to mind suffering—and courage. Yet no battles took place here. The only enemy was the brutal winter of 1777–78.

Washington's men lacked even the most basic protections against shin-deep snows. In spite of the general's repeated requests for supplies, conflicts over funding between state authorities and Congress kept supplies from coming. Washington wrote in a letter:

"To see men without clothes . . . without blankets to lie upon, without shoes . . . without a house or hut to cover them until those could be built, and submitting without a murmur, is a proof of patience and obedience which, in my opinion, can scarcely be paralleled [matched]."

—George Washington, quoted in *George Washington: A Collection*

As winter roared in, soldiers quickly built crude shelters that offered little protection against the weather. Some soldiers had no shirts. Others had marched the shoes off their feet. At their guard posts, they stood on their hats to keep their feet from touching the freezing ground. One soldier wrote that getting food was the "business that usually employed us."

During that terrible winter, some 2,000 soldiers died of disease and malnutrition. Amazingly, the survivors not only stayed—they drilled and marched to the orders of Baron von Steuben, becoming better soldiers.

While the soldiers suffered through the winter at Valley Forge, the British lived a life of luxury in Philadelphia. Most of the Patriots had fled the city, leaving only Loyalists and British soldiers. Together they enjoyed the city's houses, taverns, and theaters, and held parties and balls.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What challenges did the Continental Army face at Valley Forge?

War at Sea and in the West

While some Americans struggled against the British on land in the former colonies, others fought at sea and on the western frontier. Each area posed tough challenges.

War at Sea

The entry of the French navy into the war greatly aided the colonists. Many people had thought that the mighty British navy would crush the much smaller American fleet. However, the British failed to use their powerful navy effectively during the war.

In the fall of 1775, the Continental Congress made plans to build four American warships. Soon afterward the Congress formally established the marines and the Continental Navy. By adapting merchant vessels, the navy had eight fighting ships ready for combat by February 1776.

That month the tiny American navy launched a major offensive to damage the operating ability of the British fleet located off the Carolina coast. Rather than attack the fleet directly, the Patriots went after the British supply base on Nassau, in the Bahamas.

The American troops seized the main supply fort on the island. They then raised the newly created flag of the American Revolution over Nassau. After that campaign, the American navy focused on seizing British supply ships and weakening Britain's naval forces in the West Indies.

John Paul Jones

The Patriots owed much of their success on the seas to naval hero **John Paul Jones**. Jones had once been considered an outlaw. He was born John Paul in Scotland and began working on ships at a young age. After accidentally killing the leader of a mutiny, he fled to America and added Jones to his name.

When the war broke out, Jones volunteered his services to the newly created navy. He quickly established himself as a brave and clever sailor. Considered a pirate by the British, Jones captured many British supply ships. The French greatly admired Jones. When France entered the war in 1778, French leaders presented him with a small fleet of seven vessels to command. He named his flagship *Bonhomme Richard* ("Gentleman Richard") in honor of Benjamin Franklin's *Poor Richard's Almanac*.

One of Jones's most famous victories was the capture of the British warship *Serapis* on September 23, 1779. Early in the battle, the British knocked out the heaviest artillery on the *Bonhomme Richard*. Captain Richard Pearson of the *Serapis* then called out to Jones, "Has your ship struck [surrendered]?" Jones replied, "I have not yet begun to fight!" The battle continued for more than two hours. Finally the Americans wore down the British, who surrendered at 10:30 p.m.

The Continental Navy used fewer than 100 ships over the course of the war. Yet the British lost more than 200 ships to the small but effective American naval force.

War in the West

The lands west of the Appalachian Mountains were controlled by Native American nations. Both the British and the Patriots tried to enlist these groups in their cause.

George Rogers Clark volunteered to lead the western campaign. Clark had been a surveyor along the Ohio and Kentucky rivers. By the time the war broke out, he knew the lands of the Midwest well. Clark created an army from the scattered settlements in the area. One of the best-known groups was the Over Mountain Men, a band of settlers from present-day Tennessee.

Determined to weaken British support systems, Clark targeted trading villages. Following the Ohio River to the Tennessee, Clark's force set out on a 120-mile overland trek to Kaskaskia, in present-day Illinois. The village's leaders learned of the attack and surrendered. Other Patriots took Cahokia without a fight.

In February 1779 Clark launched a surprise attack on Fort Sackville near the town



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. Movement How far did the Patriots march to get to Vincennes?

2. Human-Environment Interaction Why did military forces follow river routes?

of Vincennes. The attack was unexpected because the nearby Wabash River was icy and flooded. Despite overflowing riverbanks, Clark's force of 150 men endured an 18-day march through freezing water. They also managed to bring enough Patriot flags for an army of hundreds. The flags were displayed near the fort, and the skilled pioneers sustained enough musket fire to indicate a much larger army. Falling for the ruse, the commander of Fort Sackville surrendered.

In general the British were more successful at winning over the Native Americans. But Clark's many campaigns undermined British support in the West.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** How did Jones and Clark help the Patriots' war effort?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The Patriots faced hardships as the war continued. In the next section, you will see how they finally achieved their goal of independence.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP4

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What groups supported the Patriot war effort? How did each group contribute?
   b. Analyze Why was it difficult to find and keep soldiers in the Continental Army?
2. **a. Describe** What early defeats did the Patriots face?
   b. Elaborate Was it a mistake for the British to use **mercenaries** to help them fight the war? Why or why not?
3. **a. Elaborate** Why do you think European nations supported the colonists rather than Great Britain?
   b. Evaluate Do you think that the Patriots would have won the war without help from France and Spain? Why or why not?
4. **a. Describe** What difficulties did the Patriots face at Valley Forge?
   b. Elaborate How might weather conditions affect the outcome of a battle?
5. **a. Identify** Who was **John Paul Jones**?
   b. Compare In what ways was Jones's naval strategy like that of the Continental Army?

Critical Thinking

6. **Drawing Conclusions** Review the events on your time line. Copy the chart below and use it to identify the region in which the events took place and how the events reflected the Patriots' successes and failures.

Region	Patriot Problems	Patriot Successes

FOCUS ON SPEAKING

7. **Thinking about the Struggle for Liberty** Why was this period of the war so difficult for the Patriots? How did they struggle through? What are the one or two points that are the most important about this period of the war?

Independence!

SECTION 4

If YOU were there...

You have grown up on a farm in South Carolina. You know every inch of the woods and marshes around your home. You are too young to join the Continental Army, but you have heard stories about a brave group of soldiers who carry out quick raids on the British, then disappear into the woods. These fighters get no pay and live in constant danger.

Would you consider joining the fighters? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND As the war moved to the South, American forces encountered new problems. They suffered several major defeats. But American resistance in the southern colonies was strong. Backwoods fighters confused and frustrated the British army.

War in the South

The war across the ocean was not going the way the British government in London had planned. The northern colonies, with their ragged, scrappy fighters, proved to be tough to tame. So the British switched strategies and set their sights on the South.

The British hoped to find support from the large Loyalist populations living in Georgia, the Carolinas, and Virginia. As they moved across the South, the British also planned to free enslaved Africans and enlist them as British soldiers. Under the leadership of a new commander, General Henry Clinton, the strategy paid off—for a while.

Brutal Fighting

The southern war was particularly brutal. Much more than in the North, this phase of the war pitted Americans—Patriots versus Loyalists—against one another in direct combat. The British also destroyed crops, farm animals, and other property as they marched through the South. One British officer, Banastre Tarleton, sowed fear throughout the South by refusing to take prisoners and killing soldiers who tried to surrender.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Patriot forces faced many problems in the war in the South.
2. The American Patriots finally defeated the British at the Battle of Yorktown.
3. The British and the Americans officially ended the war by signing the Treaty of Paris of 1783.

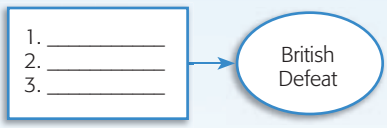
The Big Idea

The war spread to the southern colonies, where the British were finally defeated.

Key Terms and People

Francis Marion, *p. 136*
Comte de Rochambeau, *p. 137*
Battle of Yorktown, *p. 137*
Treaty of Paris of 1783, *p. 139*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the major events that led to the British defeat. Write your notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.



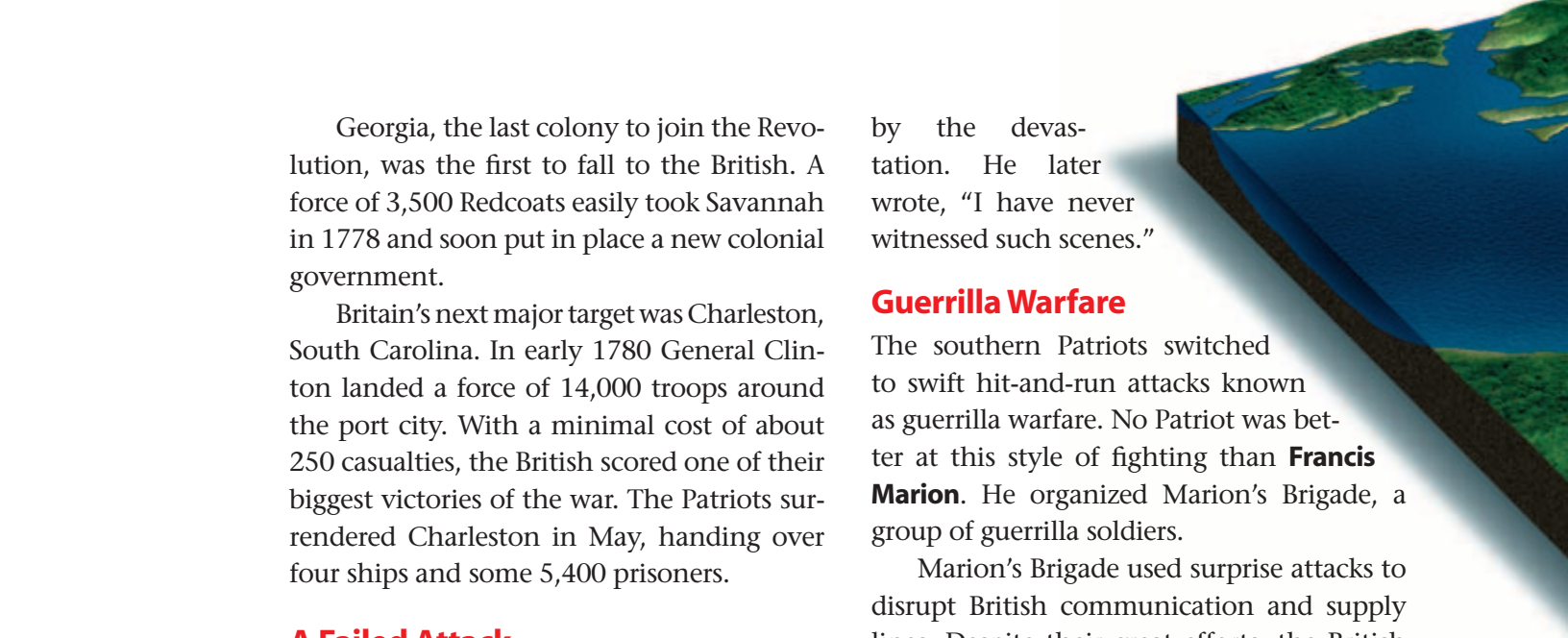
Georgia, the last colony to join the Revolution, was the first to fall to the British. A force of 3,500 Redcoats easily took Savannah in 1778 and soon put in place a new colonial government.

Britain's next major target was Charleston, South Carolina. In early 1780 General Clinton landed a force of 14,000 troops around the port city. With a minimal cost of about 250 casualties, the British scored one of their biggest victories of the war. The Patriots surrendered Charleston in May, handing over four ships and some 5,400 prisoners.

A Failed Attack

In August 1780, Patriot forces led by Horatio Gates tried to drive the British out of Camden, South Carolina. The attack was poorly executed, however. Gates had only half as many soldiers as he had planned for, and most were tired and hungry. In the heat of battle, many panicked and ran. The Patriot attack quickly fell apart. Of some 4,000 American troops, only about 700 escaped.

General Nathanael Greene arrived to reorganize the army. As he rode through the southern countryside, he was discouraged by the devastation. He later wrote, "I have never witnessed such scenes."



Guerrilla Warfare

The southern Patriots switched to swift hit-and-run attacks known as guerrilla warfare. No Patriot was better at this style of fighting than **Francis Marion**. He organized Marion's Brigade, a group of guerrilla soldiers.

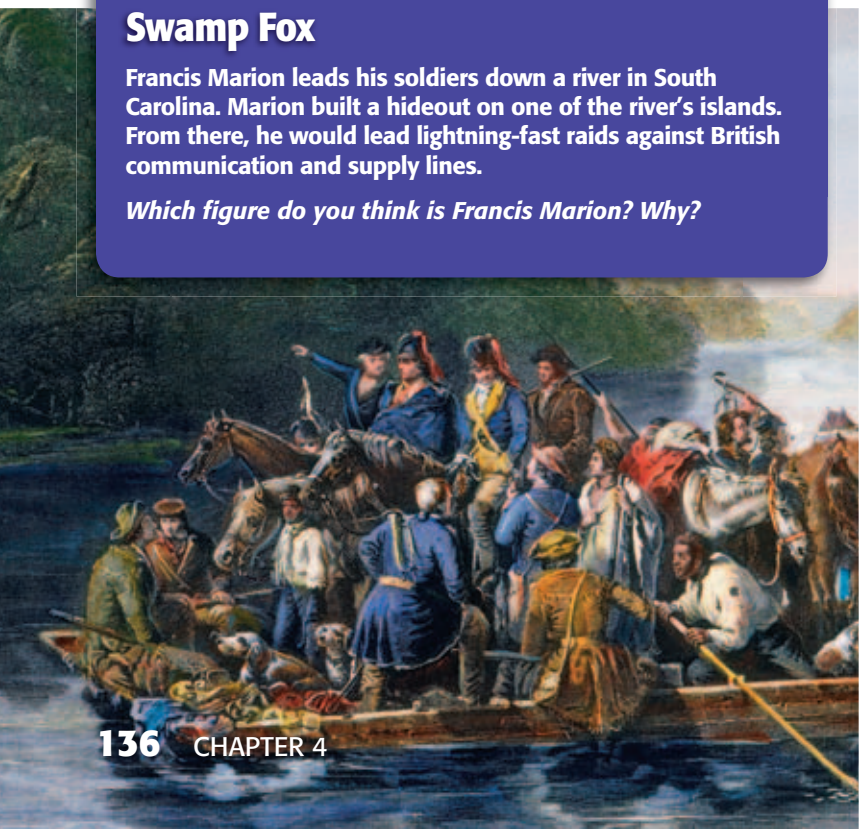
Marion's Brigade used surprise attacks to disrupt British communication and supply lines. Despite their great efforts, the British could not catch Marion and his men. One frustrated general claimed, "As for this . . . old fox, the devil himself could not catch him." From that point on, Marion was known as the Swamp Fox.

READING CHECK **Sequencing** List the events of the war in the South in chronological order.

Swamp Fox

Francis Marion leads his soldiers down a river in South Carolina. Marion built a hideout on one of the river's islands. From there, he would lead lightning-fast raids against British communication and supply lines.

Which figure do you think is Francis Marion? Why?



Battle of Yorktown

In early 1781 the war was going badly for the Patriots. They were low on money to pay soldiers and buy supplies. The help of their foreign allies had not brought the war to a quick end as they had hoped. The British held most of the South, plus Philadelphia and New York City. The Patriots' morale took another blow when Benedict Arnold, one of America's most gifted officers, turned traitor.

Regrouped under Nathanael Greene, the Continental Army began harassing British general Charles Cornwallis in the Carolinas. Hoping to stay in communication with the British naval fleet, Cornwallis moved his force of 7,200 men to Yorktown, Virginia. It was a fatal mistake.

General Washington, in New York, saw a chance to trap Cornwallis at Yorktown. He ordered Lafayette to block Cornwallis's escape by land. Then he combined his 2,500 troops

History Close-up

Battle of Yorktown

The British scuttled, or purposely sank, dozens of their ships. This formed a barrier that kept the French ships from coming too close.



In October 1781, American and French troops surrounded British forces and defeated them in the Battle of Yorktown.

ANALYSIS SKILLS **ANALYZING VISUALS**

Human-Environment Interaction How did American and French forces trap the British at Yorktown?

with 4,000 French troops commanded by the **Comte de Rochambeau** (raw-shahn-BOH). Washington led the French-American force on a swift march to Virginia to cut off the other escape routes. The Patriots surrounded Cornwallis with some 16,000 soldiers. Meanwhile, a French naval fleet seized control of the Chesapeake Bay, preventing British ships from rescuing Cornwallis's stranded army.

The siege began. For weeks, the fighting steadily wore down the British defenses. In early October, Washington prepared for a major attack on the weakened British troops.

Facing near-certain defeat, on October 19, 1781, Cornwallis sent a drummer and a soldier with a white flag of surrender to Washington's camp. The Patriots took some 8,000 British prisoners—the largest British army in America.

The **Battle of Yorktown** was the last major battle of the American Revolution. Prime Minister Lord North received word of the Yorktown surrender in November. In shock he declared, "It is all over!"

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** Why did the victory at Yorktown end the fighting?

Primary Source

PAMPHLET

Sentiments of an American Woman

The Continental Army received aid from female Patriots led by Esther DeBerdt Reed and Sarah Franklin Bache, the daughter of Benjamin Franklin. In 1780 these women organized a campaign that raised $300,000 for soldiers' clothing. The following pamphlet, written by the campaign's leaders, announced the campaign. In it, the authors used images of women helping with war efforts of the past to gain support for their cause.

"On the **commencement** of actual war, the Women of America **manifested** a firm resolution to contribute . . . to the deliverance of their country. Animated by the purest patriotism they are sensible of sorrow at this day, in not offering more than barren wishes for the success of so glorious a Revolution. They aspire to **render** themselves more really useful; and this sentiment is universal from the north to the south of the Thirteen United States. Our ambition is kindled by the fame of those heroines of **antiquity**, who . . . have proved to the universe, that . . . if opinion and manners did not forbid us to march to glory by the same paths as the Men, we should at least equal, and sometimes surpass them in our love for the public good. I glory in all that which my sex has done great and **commendable**. I call to mind with enthusiasm and with admiration, all those acts of courage, of constancy and patriotism, which history has transmitted to us . . ."

"So many famous sieges where the Women have been seen . . . building new walls, digging trenches with their feeble hands, furnishing arms to their defenders, they themselves darting the missile weapons of the enemy, resigning the ornaments of their apparel, and their fortune, to fill the public treasury, and to hasten the deliverance of their country; burying themselves under its ruins; throwing themselves into the flames rather than submit to the disgrace of humiliation before a proud enemy."

"Born for liberty, **disdaining** to bear the irons of a **tyrannic** Government, we associate ourselves . . . [with those rulers] who have extended the empire of liberty, and **contented** to reign by sweetness and justice, have broken the chains of slavery, forged by tyrants."



A female spy passes news to a colonial officer.

1. **commencement**: start 2. **manifested**: presented
3. **render**: make 4. **antiquity**: ancient times
5. **commendable**: praiseworthy 6. **disdaining**: refusing
7. **tyrannic**: unjust 8. **contented**: determined

The women declare that they would fight if they were allowed.

The authors list ways in which women have helped fight wars in the past.

In this phrase, the women link themselves to great women rulers of the past.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

1. **What do the writers "call to mind" in asking women to join the Patriots' cause?**
2. **With whom do the writers associate themselves?**

The Treaty of Paris

After Yorktown, only a few small battles took place. Lacking the money to pay for a new army, Great Britain entered into peace talks with America. Benjamin Franklin had a key role in the negotiations.

Delegates took more than two years to come to a peace agreement. In the **Treaty of Paris of 1783**, Great Britain recognized the independence of the United States. The treaty also set America's borders. A separate treaty between Britain and Spain returned Florida to the Spanish. British leaders also accepted American rights to settle and trade west of the original thirteen colonies.

At the war's end, Patriot soldiers returned to their homes and families. The courage of soldiers and civilians had made America's victory possible. As they returned home, George Washington thanked his troops for their devotion. "I . . . wish that your latter days be as prosperous as your former ones have been glorious."

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Explain how the War for Independence finally came to an end.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

Region Which three countries disputed the area in the northwest of the continent?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Americans won their independence from Great Britain in 1783. In the next chapter you will learn how the new nation formed its first government.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP4

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What problems did the Patriots experience in the war in the South?
   b. Analyze What advantages did the southern Patriots have over the British in the South?
2. **a. Describe** What was the Patriots' strategy for defeating the British at Yorktown?
   b. Elaborate Why do you think General Cornwallis decided to surrender at the **Battle of Yorktown**?
3. **a. Identify** Who helped to negotiate the **Treaty of Paris** for the Americans?
   b. Predict How might relations between Great Britain and its former colonies be affected by the war?

Critical Thinking

4. **Evaluating** Review your notes on the events that led to the end of the war. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to identify and describe the most important event in turning the war in the Patriots' favor.

Event	Importance to end of war

FOCUS ON SPEAKING

5. **Thinking About the Revolution's End** After reading this section, you have a picture of the whole war. In your talk, what do you want to say about how the war ended? Were there any moments that were especially trying for the colonists?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Understanding Historical Interpretation

Define the Skill

Historical interpretations are ways of explaining the past. They are based on what is known about the people, ideas, and actions that make up history. Two historians can look at the same set of facts about a person or event of the past and see things in different ways. Their explanations of the person or event, and the conclusions they reach, can be very different. The ability to recognize, understand, and evaluate historical interpretations is a valuable skill in the study of history.

Learn the Skill

When people study the past, they decide which facts are the most important in explaining why something happened. One person may believe certain facts to be important, while other people may believe other facts are more important. Therefore, their explanation of the topic, and the conclusions they draw about it, may not be the same. In addition, if new facts are uncovered about the topic, still more interpretations of it may result.

Asking the following questions will help you to understand and evaluate historical interpretations.

1. What is the main idea in the way the topic is explained? What conclusions are reached? Be aware that these may not be directly stated but only hinted at in the information provided.
2. On what facts has the writer or speaker relied? Do these facts seem to support his or her explanation and conclusions?
3. Is there important information about the topic that the writer or speaker has dismissed or ignored? If so, you should suspect that the interpretation may be inaccurate or deliberately slanted to prove a particular point of view.

Just because interpretations differ, one is not necessarily "right" and others "wrong." As long as a person considers all the evidence and draws conclusions based on a fair evaluation of that evidence, his or her interpretation is probably acceptable.

Remember, however, that trained historians let the facts *lead* them to conclusions. People who *start* with a conclusion, select only facts that support it, and ignore opposing evidence produce interpretations that have little value for understanding history.

Practice the Skill

Two widely accepted interpretations exist of the causes of the American Revolution. One holds that the Revolution was a struggle by freedom-loving Americans to be free from harsh British rule. In this view the colonists were used to self-government and resisted British efforts to take rights they claimed. The other interpretation is that a clash of economic interests caused the Revolution. In this view, the war resulted from a struggle between British and colonial merchants over control of America's economy.

Review Sections 4 and 5 of Chapter 3 and Sections 1 and 2 of Chapter 4. Then answer the following questions.

1. What facts in the textbook support the economic interpretation of the Revolution? What evidence supports the political interpretation?
2. Which interpretation seems more convincing? Explain why.

CHAPTER 4

Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
Why do you think African Americans, women, and young adults under 21 fought for the vote?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Speeches and protests ignited revolutionary feelings.

Patriots fought Loyalists in the Revolutionary War.

The American colonies gained independence and became the United States.

Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

1. What were American colonists who remained loyal to Great Britain called?

a. Whigs **c.** Royalists

b. Loyalists **d.** Democrats

2. What was the name of the battle in which the Patriots finally defeated the British?

a. Battle of Saratoga **c.** Battle of Yorktown

b. Battle of New Jersey **d.** Battle of Valley Forge

3. What was the name for the colonial military force created to fight the British?

a. mercenaries **c.** Hessians

b. Redcoats **d.** Continental Army

4. Who was the French nobleman who helped the Patriots fight the British?

a. Bernardo de Gálvez **c.** Baron von Steuben

b. Marquis de Lafayette **d.** Lord Dunmore

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 112–116)*

5. a. Recall What actions did the First and Second Continental Congresses take?

b. Analyze How did the events at Lexington and Concord change the conflict between Great Britain and the colonies?

c. Elaborate Why do you think that control of Boston early in the Revolutionary War was important?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 118–121)*

6. a. Identify Why is July 4, 1776, a significant date?

b. Draw Conclusions What effect did *Common Sense* have on colonial attitudes toward Great Britain?

c. Predict How might the content of the Declaration of Independence lead to questions over the issue of slavery?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 126–134)*

7. a. Describe What difficulties did the Patriots experience in the early years of the war?

b. Analyze How did the Patriots turn the tide of the war?

c. Elaborate Could the Patriots have succeeded in the war without foreign help? Explain.

SECTION 4 *(Pages 135–139)*

8. a. Recall Why did the British think they might find support in the southern colonies?

b. Make Inferences Why did it take more than two years for the British and the Americans to agree to the terms of the Treaty of Paris?

c. Evaluate In your opinion, what was the most important reason for the Patriots' defeat of the British?

Social Studies Skills

Understanding Historical Interpretation *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the questions about the reading selection below.*

> In a series of battles, Howe pounded the Continental Army, forcing it to retreat farther and farther. The Redcoats captured Patriots as well as supplies. Eventually, the British pushed Washington across the Hudson River into New Jersey. Howe's revenge for his defeat at Boston was complete. (p. 128)

9. Which statement from the passage is an interpretation of historical facts?

a. The Redcoats captured Patriots as well as supplies.

b. Eventually, the British pushed Washington across the Hudson River into New Jersey.

c. Howe's revenge for his defeat at Boston was complete.

10. What might a different interpretation of the facts be?

Reviewing Themes

11. Politics What are three important rights listed in the Declaration of Independence?

12. Geography What role did geography play in the fighting that took place in the West?

Reading Skills

Main Ideas in Social Studies *Use the Reading Skills taught at the beginning of the chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> (1) Native Americans were at first encouraged by both sides to remain neutral. (2) By the summer of 1776, however, both Patriots and the British were aggressively recruiting Indian fighters. (3) Most sided with the British. (4) In northern New York, four of the six Iroquois nations fought for the British. (p. 120)

13. Which sentence contains the main idea of the paragraph?

a. Sentence 1

b. Sentence 2

c. Sentence 3

d. Sentence 4

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY4

14. Activity: Researching The Battle of Saratoga showed the world that the Patriots were capable of defeating the British. This victory gave Benjamin Franklin the chance to use his fame as a scientist and diplomat to convince France to aid the Patriots. Enter the activity keyword and explain how these factors led to a Patriot victory and how the American Revolution affected France.

FOCUS ON SPEAKING

15. Prepare Your Oral Report Review your notes and be sure you've identified one or two important ideas, events, or people for each period of the war. Now, start to prepare your oral report by writing a one-sentence introduction to your talk. Then write a sentence or two about each period of the war. Write a concluding sentence that makes a quick connection between the Revolutionary War and our lives today. Practice your talk until you can give it with only a glance or two at your notes.

CHAPTER 4

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **What action would a Loyalist have been likely to take during the Revolution?**

A attend the Continental Congress
B support the Olive Branch Petition
C support the Declaration of Independence
D join the Continental Army

2 **Which of the following events took place *last?***

A The Declaration of Independence was issued.
B The Second Continental Congress met.
C The battles at Lexington and Concord occurred.
D The Battle of Bunker Hill took place.

3 **Why was the victory at the Battle of Saratoga so important to the Patriot cause?**

A It allowed the Declaration of Independence to be issued.
B It forced the British army to retreat from Boston.
C It convinced France to aid the colonies in their fight.
D It caused the British government to give up the war.

4 **The most brutal and destructive fighting of the war probably occurred**

A in the southern colonies.
B at Valley Forge.
C in New England.
D at Lexington and Concord.

5 **The Declaration of Independence's claim that people have a right to "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness" shows the influence of what Enlightenment thinker from Europe?**

A Jonathan Edwards
B John Locke
C King George III
D Thomas Paine

6 **In what way was Clark's battle strategy the same as John Paul Jones's strategy?**

A They both were badly outnumbered by the British.
B They both knew the colonial midwest region well.
C They both aimed to weaken the British by attacking their supply lines.
D They both survived the winter at Valley Forge.

7 **Read the following passage from Thomas Paine's *The Crisis* and use it to answer the question below.**

> "These are the times that try men's souls. The summer soldier and the sunshine patriot will, in this crisis, shrink from the service of his country, but he that stands it now, deserves the love and thanks of man and woman. Tyranny . . . is not easily conquered, yet we have this consolation with us, that the harder the conflict, the more glorious the triumph."
>
> —Thomas Paine, *The Crisis,* 1776

Document-Based Question **What point is Paine trying to make in this passage?**

DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTION

New Colonies, New Nations

Part A: Short-Answer Questions

Directions: Read and examine the following documents. Then, on a separate sheet of paper, answer the questions using complete sentences.

DOCUMENT 1

In 1493 Christopher Columbus returned to Hispaniola with settlers and soldiers to start a colony. In 1494, he wrote to the rulers of Spain describing his ideas about the colony.

> In the first place, as regards the Island of Espanola: Inasmuch as the number of colonists who desire to go thither [there] amounts to two thousand, owing to the land being safer and better for farming and trading . . .
>
> 1. That in the said island there shall be founded three or four towns . . .
> 2. That for the better and more speedy colonization of the said island, no one shall have liberty to collect gold in it except those who have taken out colonists' papers . . .
> 3. That each town shall have its alcalde [Mayor] . . .
> 4. That there shall be a church, and parish priests or friars to administer the sacraments [religious rituals], to perform divine worship, and for the conversion of the Indians . . .
>
> —**Christopher Columbus**, letter to the king and queen of Spain, 1494

1a. For what activity does Columbus want people to have "colonists' papers"?

_____

1b. What does the last part of the letter say about Columbus's intentions regarding Indians?

_____

DOCUMENT 2

Some Europeans opposed the harsh treatment of Native Americans. Bartolomé de Las Casas first went to the Americas in 1502. Over time, he became increasingly concerned with how the Spanish treated Native Americans. In a report to the Spanish king, written in 1542, he described this treatment in detail.

> When they [Spaniards] have slain all those who fought for their lives or to escape the tortures they would have to endure, that is to say, when they have slain all the native rulers and young men (since the Spaniards usually spare only the women and children, who are subjected to the hardest and bitterest servitude [slavery] ever suffered by man or beast), they enslave any survivors. With these infernal [devilish] methods of tyranny they debase [lower in status] and weaken countless numbers of those pitiful Indian nations.
>
> —**Bartolomé de Las Casas**, from *Brief Account of the Devastation of the Indies*

2a. What did the Spanish do to Native Americans who fought them and survived the battle?

_____

2b. What was Las Casas's attitude toward the treatment of Native Americans?

_____

3. Evaluate and Revise

Evaluating

Read through your completed draft to make sure your narrative is complete, coherent, and clear. Then look for ways to improve it.

Evaluation Questions for a Biographical Narrative

- Does your introduction grab the reader's attention? Do you introduce the historical person and tell how the event or situation began?
- Do you include details to make the person, place, and event seem real?
- Are the actions in the story in the order in which they occurred?
- Have you included all of the actions and details a reader would need to understand what happened?
- Does the conclusion tell how the event or situation affected the person and history?

Revising

When you revise your narrative, you may need to add transition words. Transition words help you link ideas between sentences and paragraphs. Notice the words in bold in the following sentences.

> **After** Cabeza de Vaca and the other adventurers left the beach and started inland, they separated into different groups. **Later**, Cabeza de Vaca heard that many of the others had died. **Still**, he never lost faith that he would reach his fellow Spaniards in Mexico.

TIP **Showing Sequence** A clear sense of the sequence of events is important in any narrative. Here is a list of words that show those relationships.

after	next
before	now
finally	soon
first	still
(second, etc.)	then
last	when
later	while

4. Proofread and Publish

Proofreading

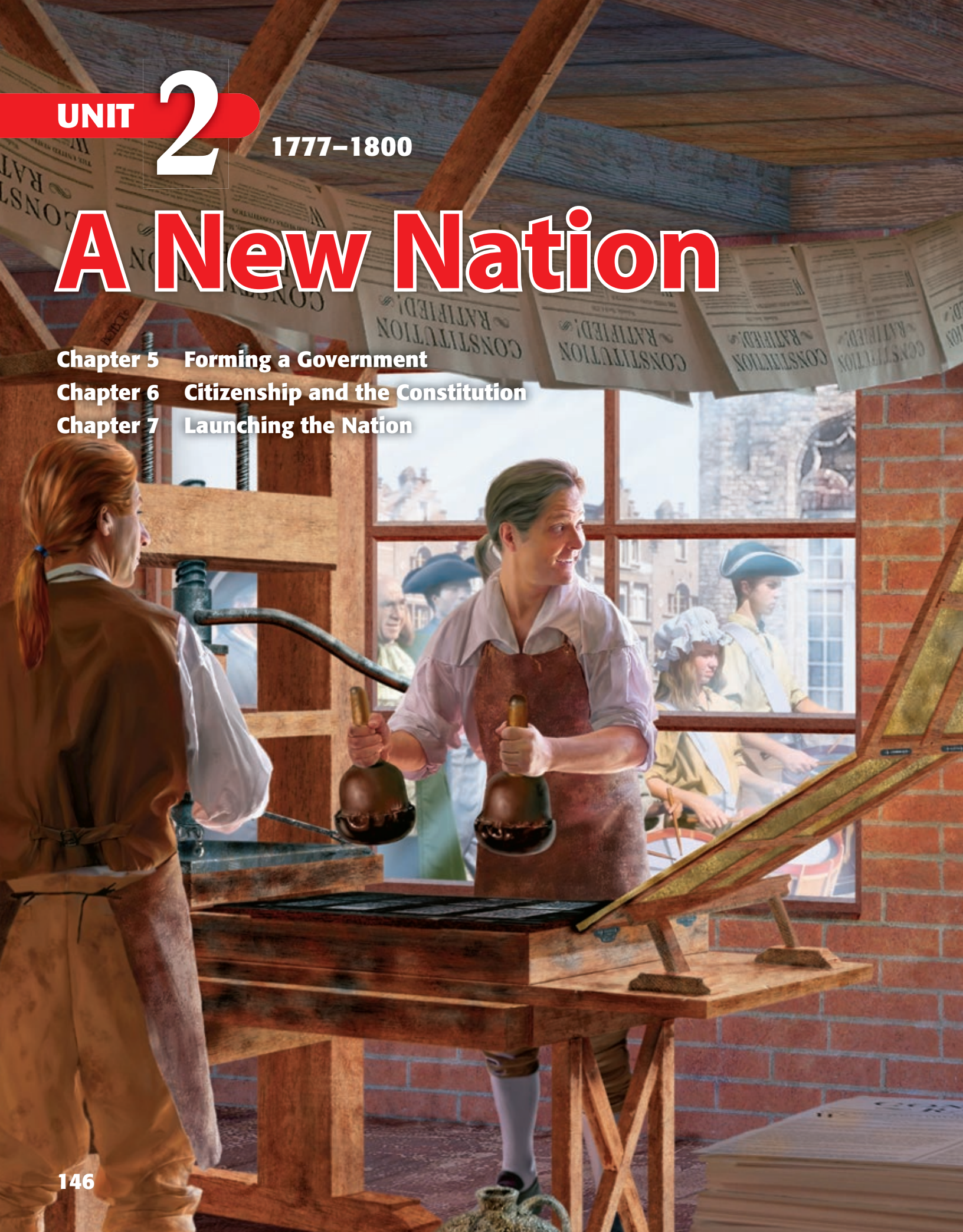
Throughout your narrative, you used transition words to link events. Make sure that you have spelled the words correctly and have not confused them with other words. For example, be sure to use two *l*'s in *finally* and not to mistake the transition word *then* for the comparative word *than*.

Publishing

One good way to share your biographical narrative is to exchange it with one or more classmates who have written about the same person you have. After reading each other's narratives, you can compare and contrast them. How are your stories similar? How do they differ?

5. Practice and Apply

Use the steps and strategies outlined in this workshop to write your biographical narrative.

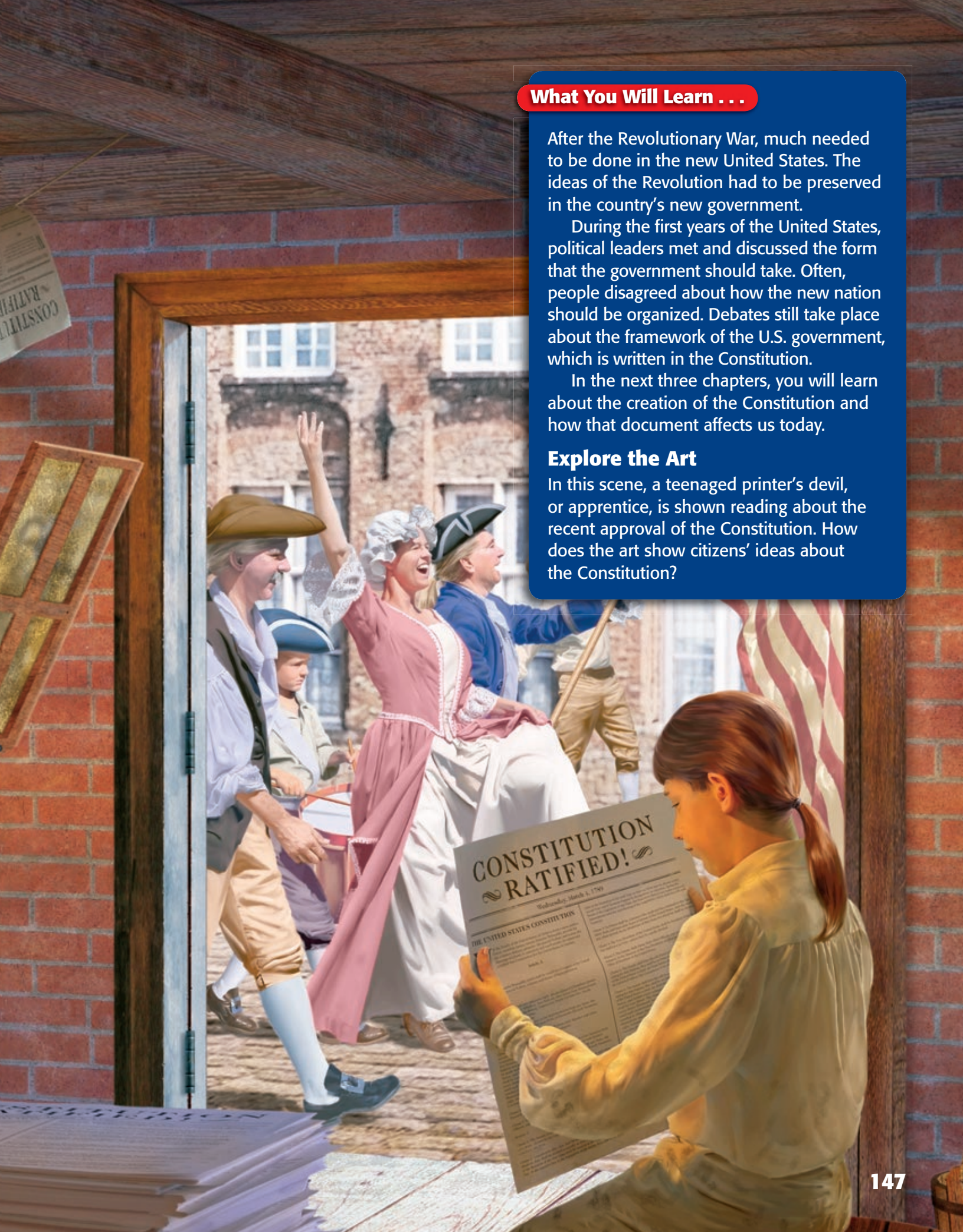


UNIT 2

1777–1800

A New Nation

Chapter 5 Forming a Government
Chapter 6 Citizenship and the Constitution
Chapter 7 Launching the Nation



What You Will Learn . . .

After the Revolutionary War, much needed to be done in the new United States. The ideas of the Revolution had to be preserved in the country's new government.

During the first years of the United States, political leaders met and discussed the form that the government should take. Often, people disagreed about how the new nation should be organized. Debates still take place about the framework of the U.S. government, which is written in the Constitution.

In the next three chapters, you will learn about the creation of the Constitution and how that document affects us today.

Explore the Art

In this scene, a teenaged printer's devil, or apprentice, is shown reading about the recent approval of the Constitution. How does the art show citizens' ideas about the Constitution?

CHAPTER 5 1777–1791

Forming a Government

Focus Question

How did the new nation respond to independence?

SECTION 1
The Articles of Confederation 152
History and Geography Origins of the Constitution

SECTION 2
The New Nation Faces Challenges 158
Quick Facts Weaknesses of the Articles of Confederation

SECTION 3
Creating the Constitution 163
Focus on New York Albany Plan of Union
Quick Facts Great Compromise
Primary Source Compromise and the Slave Trade
Linking to Today Legislative Branch
Quick Facts The Constitution Strengthens the National Government
Biography Benjamin Franklin

SECTION 4
Ratifying the Constitution 170
Quick Facts Federalists vs. Antifederalists
Primary Source *Federalist Paper* No. 10
Focus on New York City Secession of New York City

Focus on Writing

A Newspaper Editorial It is 1788 and you're writing an editorial for a local newspaper. You want to convince your readers that the new Constitution will be much better than the old Articles of Confederation. In this chapter you'll find the information you need to support your opinion.





1775

United States
1777 The Continental Congress approves the Articles of Confederation on November 15.

World
1778 The United States and France become allies.



HOLT

History's Impact

video series

Watch the video to understand the impact of adding new states to the United States.

What You Will Learn . . .

This photo shows Speaker of the House Nancy Pelosi swearing in the 110th Congress, the legislative branch of the U.S. government. In this chapter, you will learn about the nation's earliest government, the Articles of Confederation, and its failures to achieve national unity. You will also read about the writing of the Constitution and how it attempted to solve the problems of the Articles by creating a new system of government with three branches.

1786
Delegates from Virginia, Delaware, New York, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey meet at the Annapolis Convention.

1780

1781
On March 1 the Articles of Confederation go into effect after being ratified by all 13 states.

1782
Spain completes its conquest of British Florida.



1785

1785
The United States begins using the dollar currency.

1786
Shays's Rebellion breaks out in Massachusetts.

1787
The Ottoman Empire declares war on Russia.



1787
On May 14, state delegates begin to arrive at the Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia.

1790

1791
The Bill of Rights is ratified by the states in December.

1791
The *Lady Washington* becomes the first U.S. ship to reach Japan.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

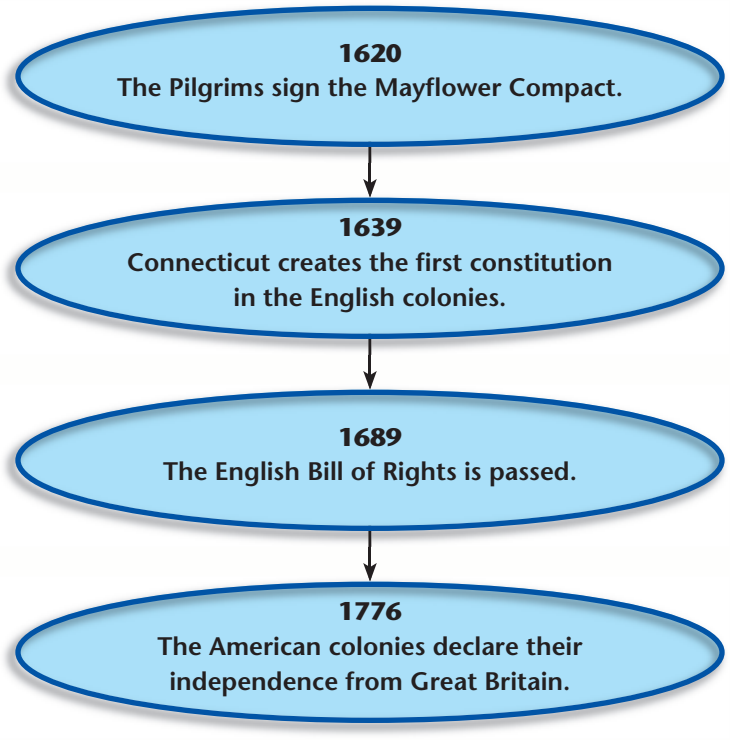
Focus on Themes Visualize a row of dominoes, lined up one after the other. Push over the first one, and—one after the other—all eventually fall. In this way, the events in this chapter are like dominoes that cause each other to occur. These events, one after another, finally led to the formation of a new government and a new **society**. If you read closely, you will see that **political** disagreements started the entire process.

Understanding Chronological Order

Focus on Reading Like falling dominoes, historical events can create huge chains of results, often stretching over many years. To understand history and events, therefore, we often need to see how they are related in time.

Understanding Chronological Order The word ***chronological*** means "related to time." Events discussed in this history book are discussed in **sequence**, in the order in which they happened. To understand history better, you can use a sequence chain to take notes about events in the order they happened.

Sequence Chain



Tip: Writers sometimes signal chronological order, or sequence, by using words or phrases like these:

first, before, then, later, soon, after, before long, next, eventually, finally

You Try It!

Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow.

Farmers Rebel

From Chapter 5, p. 161

In August 1786, farmers in three western counties began a revolt. Bands of angry citizens closed down courts in western Massachusetts. Their reasoning was simple—with the courts shut down, no one's property could be taken. In September a poor farmer and Revolutionary War veteran, Daniel Shays, led hundreds of men in a forced shutdown of the Supreme Court in Springfield, Massachusetts. The state government ordered the farmers to stop the revolt under threat of capture and death. These threats only made Shays and his followers more determined. The uprising of farmers to protest high taxes and heavy debt became known as Shays's Rebellion.

Shays's forces were defeated by state troops in January 1787. By February many of the rebels were in prison. During their trials, 14 leaders were sentenced to death. However, the state soon freed most of the rebels, including Shays.

After you have read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. Which happened first—citizens closing courts in western Massachusetts or Shays shutting down the Supreme Court? How can you tell?
2. What happened after Shays's forces were defeated by state troops?
3. Draw a sequence chain that shows the effects of Shays's Rebellion in the order they occurred.

Before you read Chapter 5, look for clues that signal the order in which events occurred.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 5

Section 1

Magna Carta *(p. 152)*
constitution *(p. 153)*
Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom *(p. 153)*
suffrage *(p. 153)*
Articles of Confederation *(p. 154)*
ratification *(p. 154)*
Land Ordinance of 1785 *(p. 155)*
Northwest Ordinance of 1787 *(p. 155)*
Northwest Territory *(p. 155)*

Section 2

tariffs *(p. 159)*
interstate commerce *(p. 160)*
inflation *(p. 161)*
depression *(p. 161)*
Daniel Shays *(p. 161)*
Shays's Rebellion *(p. 161)*

Section 3

Constitutional Convention *(p. 164)*
James Madison *(p. 164)*
Virginia Plan *(p. 164)*
New Jersey Plan *(p. 165)*
Great Compromise *(p. 165)*
Three-Fifths Compromise *(p. 166)*
popular sovereignty *(p. 167)*
federalism *(p. 167)*
legislative branch *(p. 167)*
executive branch *(p. 167)*
judicial branch *(p. 167)*
checks and balances *(p. 167)*

Section 4

Antifederalists *(p. 170)*
George Mason *(p. 170)*
Federalists *(p. 170)*
Federalist Papers (p. 171)
amendments *(p. 173)*
Bill of Rights *(p. 173)*

Academic Vocabulary

In this chapter, you will learn the following academic word:

advocate *(p. 171)*

SECTION 1

The Articles of Confederation

What You Will Learn . . .

Main Ideas

1. The American people examined many ideas about government.
2. The Articles of Confederation laid the base for the first national government of the United States.
3. The Confederation Congress established the Northwest Territory.

The Big Idea

The Articles of Confederation provided a framework for a national government.

Key Terms and People

Magna Carta, *p. 152*
constitution, *p. 153*
Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom, *p. 153*
suffrage, *p. 153*
Articles of Confederation, *p. 154*
ratification, *p. 154*
Land Ordinance of 1785, *p. 155*
Northwest Ordinance of 1787, *p. 155*
Northwest Territory, *p. 155*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the new American government in a chart like this one.

New American Government	
1. Influences on new government	
2. Structure of the Articles of Confederation	

If YOU were there...

You live in a town in New England during the 1770s. In the town meeting, people are hotly debating about who will have the right to vote. Most think that only men who own property should be able to vote. Some think that all property owners—men and women—should have that right. A few others want all free men to have the vote. Now it is time for the meeting to decide.

How would you have voted on this issue?

BUILDING BACKGROUND At the time of the Revolution, each of the 13 states had its own government. The rights of citizens varied from state to state. In their town meetings, people often argued about exactly what those rights ought to be. Solving such issues was one step in moving toward a national government.

Ideas about Government

The American colonies had taken a bold step in declaring their independence from Great Britain in July 1776. Their next political goal was to form a new government. To do so, the American people drew from a wide range of political ideas.

English Laws and the Enlightenment

One source of inspiration was the rule of law. This rule makes even government officials subject to law. England had limited the power of its kings and queens in two documents. These were Magna Carta and the English Bill of Rights. **Magna Carta**, a document signed by King John in 1215, made the king subject to law. The English Bill of rights, passed in 1689, declared the supremacy of Parliament. It kept the king or queen from changing laws without Parliament's consent. As a result, the people's representatives had a strong voice in England's government.

Many Americans were also influenced by the Enlightenment—a philosophical movement that emphasized the use of reason to

examine old ideas and traditions. Philosopher John Locke believed that a social contract existed between political rulers and the people they ruled. Baron de Montesquieu argued that the only way to achieve liberty was through the separation of governmental powers.

American Models of Government

Americans had their own models of self-government to follow, like town meetings, the Virginia House of Burgesses, and the Mayflower Compact. In 1639 the people of Connecticut drew up the English colonies' first written **constitution**. A constitution is a set of basic principles and laws that states the powers and duties of the government. In addition, the Declaration of Independence clearly set forth the beliefs on which Americans thought government should be based.

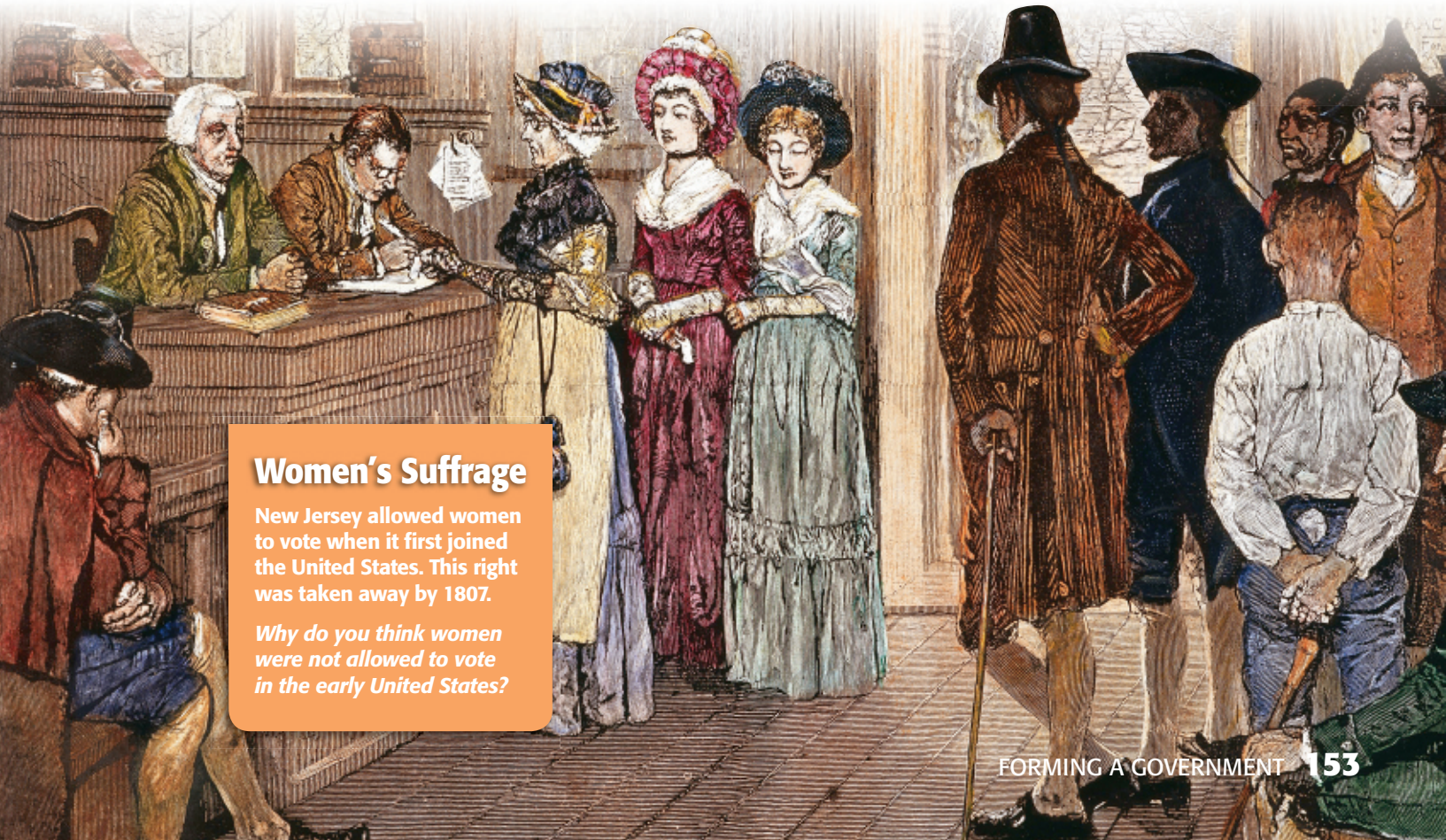
To keep individual leaders from gaining too much power, the new state constitutions created limited governments, or governments whose activities are defined by laws. Most state constitutions had rules to protect the rights of citizens or those accused of crimes. Some banned slavery. The Massachusetts constitution of 1780 is the oldest state constitution still in effect.

Thomas Jefferson's ideas about religious freedom were included in the **Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom**. This document declared that no person could be forced to attend a particular church or be required to pay for a church with tax money.

Right to Vote

Under British rule, only free, white men who owned property could vote. Many states' constitutions expanded **suffrage**, or the right to vote, by allowing any white man who paid taxes to vote. In every state, however, only propertyowners could hold public office. Some states originally allowed women and free African Americans to vote, but these rights were soon taken away. Suffrage would not be restored to these groups for decades to come.

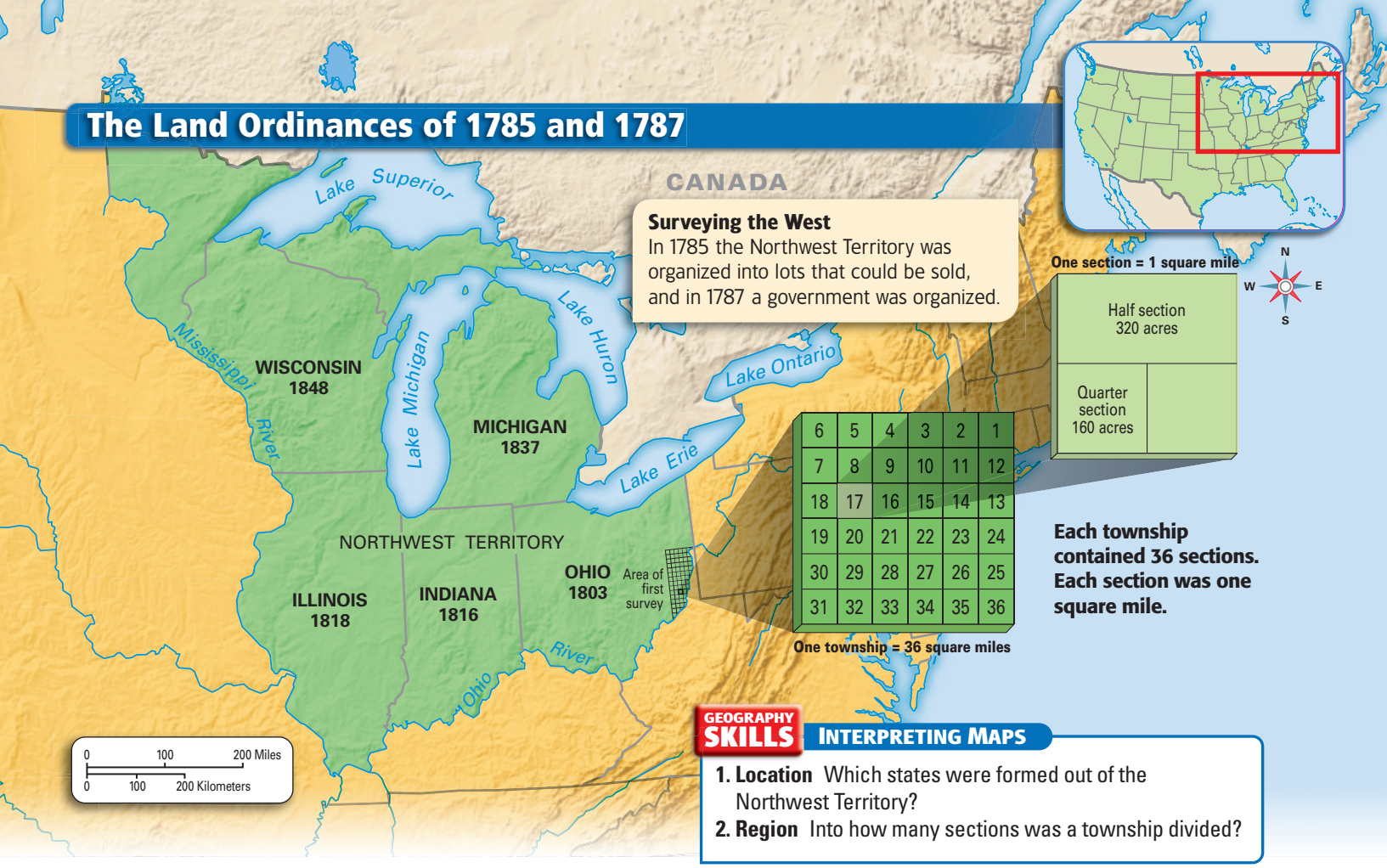
READING CHECK **Comparing** What two principles were common to state constitutions written during the Revolutionary War?



Women's Suffrage

New Jersey allowed women to vote when it first joined the United States. This right was taken away by 1807.

Why do you think women were not allowed to vote in the early United States?



Articles of Confederation

The Second Continental Congress was organized to create a national government. The Continental Congress appointed a Committee of Thirteen, with one member from each colony. This group was assigned to discuss and draft the Articles of Confederation, the new national constitution.

Under the **Articles of Confederation**, Congress would become the single branch of the national government, but it would have limited powers in order to protect the liberties of the people. Each state had one vote in the Congress. Congress could settle conflicts among the states, make war, issue coins, borrow money, and make treaties with other countries and with Native Americans. Congress could also ask the states for money and soldiers. However, states had the power to refuse these requests. The government did not have a president or a national court system, and it could not levy any taxes.

The Second Continental Congress passed the Articles of Confederation on November 15, 1777. Then it sent the Articles to each state legislature for **ratification**, or official approval, before the new national government could take effect.

Conflicts over claims to western lands slowed the process, but by 1779 every state except Maryland had ratified the Articles. Maryland's leaders refused to ratify until other states gave up their western land claims. Thomas Jefferson assured Maryland that western lands would be made into new states, rather than increasing territory for existing states. Satisfied with this condition, in March 1781 Maryland ratified the Articles. This put the first national government of the United States into effect.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were two weaknesses of the new national government?

Northwest Territory

Congress had to decide what to do with the western lands now under its control and how to raise money to pay debts. It tried to solve both problems by selling the western lands. Congress passed the **Land Ordinance of 1785**, which set up a system for surveying and dividing western lands. The land was split into townships, which were 36 square miles divided into 36 lots of 640 acres each. One lot was reserved for a public school, and four lots were given to veterans. The remaining lots were sold to the public.

To form a political system for the region, Congress passed the **Northwest Ordinance of 1787**. The ordinance established the **Northwest Territory**, which included areas that are now in Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Ohio, Minnesota, and Wisconsin. The Northwest Ordinance created a system for bringing new states into the Union. Congress agreed that the Northwest Territory would be divided into several smaller territories with a governor appointed by Congress. When the population of a territory reached 60,000, its settlers could draft their own constitution and ask to join the Union.

In addition, the law protected civil liberties and required that public education be provided. Finally, the ordinance stated that "there shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude [forced labor] in the . . . territory." This last condition banned slavery in the Territory and set the standard for future territories. However, slavery would continue to be a controversial issue.

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**
How did the Northwest Ordinance of 1787 affect the United States?

THE IMPACT TODAY
Townships remained the unit of local government after the Northwest Territory was divided into states. Many of these townships still exist today.

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The Northwest Ordinance settled the future of the Northwest Territory. In the next section you will read about other challenges the new government faced.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP5

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What documents influenced ideas about government in the United States?
   b. Draw Conclusions What impact did the **Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom** have on the U.S. government?
   c. Elaborate Why is the separation of government powers a requirement for a society to be free?
2. **a. Identify** What was the **Articles of Confederation**?
   b. Summarize What powers were granted to Congress by the Articles of Confederation?
   c. Predict What are some possible problems that might result from the lack of a national court system?
3. **a. Describe** How were public lands in the West divided by the **Land Ordinance of 1785**?
   b. Evaluate In your opinion, what was the most important element of the **Northwest Ordinance of 1787**? Why?
   c. Elaborate What does the assignment of township lots reveal about values of Americans at this time?

Critical Thinking

4. **Categorizing** Review your notes on the Articles of Confederation. Copy the chart below and use it to show the strengths and weaknesses of the new government.

Articles of Confederation

Strengths	Weaknesses

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Thinking about the Articles of Confederation** Make a list of powers the Articles of Confederation gave the national government. Which ones seem strong? Can you think of any important powers that are missing?

Origins of the Constitution

The U.S. Constitution created a republican form of government based on the consent of the people. The framers of the Constitution blended ideas and examples from both the American colonies and from England to write this lasting document.

THE MAYFLOWER COMPACT, 1620



The *Mayflower*, shown here in an illustration, sailed to America in 1620. Aboard the ship, 41 men signed the Mayflower Compact, the first document in the colonies to establish guidelines for self-government. The signers agreed that they and their families would combine to form a "civil body politic," or community.

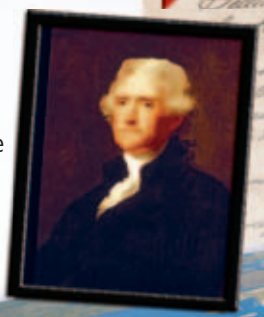
COLONIAL ASSEMBLIES

The British Parliament's two-chamber structure also influenced colonial governments. In Article I, Section 1, of the Constitution, the framers continued the practice of a two-chamber legislature.

"All legislative powers . . . shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives."

—Article I, Section 1, U.S. Constitution

VIRGINIA STATUTE FOR RELIGIOUS FREEDOM, 1786



Classical liberal principles such as the written protection of citizens' personal liberties were reflected in the addition of the Bill of Rights. The First Amendment's freedom of religion clauses were based on Thomas Jefferson's Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom. The document, which was accepted by the Virginia legislature in 1786, ensured the separation of church and state in Virginia.

"Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof . . ."

—First Amendment, U.S. Constitution

American colonies

MAGNA CARTA, 1215



In this painting King John of England is signing Magna Carta, or the Great Charter, which established that the king was subject to the law just like everyone else. It also declared that people could not be deprived of their lives, liberty, or property ***"except by the lawful judgment of [their] peers, or by the law of the land."*** Compare this language to that of the Fifth Amendment to the Constitution.

"No person shall be . . . deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law . . ."
—Fifth Amendment, U.S. Constitution

THE ENGLISH BILL OF RIGHTS, 1689



This painting shows King William and Queen Mary of England. Before taking the throne, William and Mary had to accept the English Bill of Rights. The English Bill of Rights took even more power away from the monarch than did Magna Carta. It also protected the rights of English citizens. These ideas would later influence the U.S. Constitution.

"Excessive bail ought not be required, nor excessive fines imposed; nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted."
—English Bill of Rights

THE ENLIGHTENMENT, 1700s



Enlightenment thinkers such as English philosopher John Locke supported the movement toward self-government. Locke argued in his writings that government could exist only with ***"the consent of the governed."*** The framers of the Constitution looked to Locke for inspiration when writing the Constitution, as you can see from its very first words.

"We the people of the United States . . . "
—Preamble, U.S. Constitution

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

1. What documents did the framers look to when writing the Constitution?
2. How did the English Parliamentary system affect the kind of government the framers created?

England

SECTION 2

The New Nation Faces Challenges

What You Will Learn . . .

Main Ideas

1. The United States had difficulties with other nations.
2. Internal economic problems plagued the new nation.
3. Shays's Rebellion pointed out weaknesses in the Articles of Confederation.
4. Many Americans called for changes in the national government.

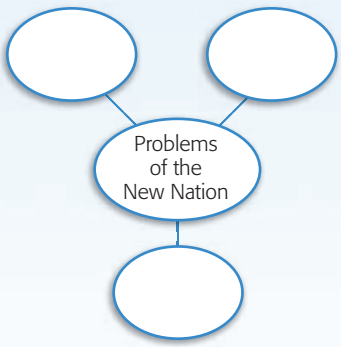
The Big Idea

Problems faced by the young nation made it clear that a new constitution was needed.

Key Terms and People

tariffs, *p. 159*
interstate commerce, *p. 160*
inflation, *p. 161*
depression, *p. 161*
Daniel Shays, *p. 161*
Shays's Rebellion, *p. 161*

TAKING NOTES As you read, use a graphic organizer like the one below to identify problems faced by the new nation.



If YOU were there...

You own an orchard in Maryland in the 1780s. When you sell apples and apple pies in the market, people pay you with paper money. But now the tax collector says you must pay your taxes in gold or silver coins, not paper money. You and the other farmers are furious. Is this the liberty you fought a war for?

What would you do to protest these taxes?

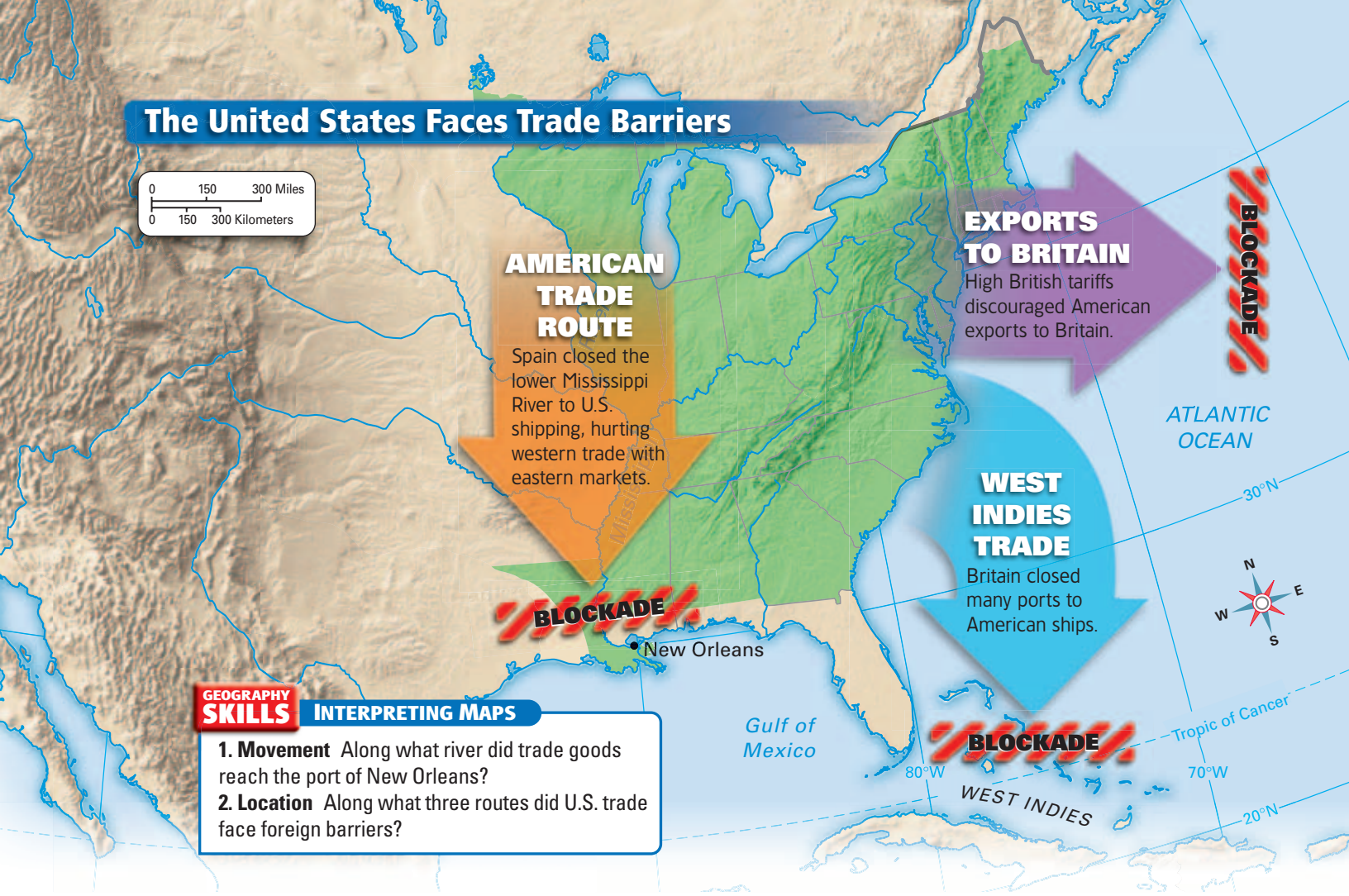
BUILDING BACKGROUND Americans surprised the world by winning their independence from Great Britain. But the 13 new states were far from being a strong nation. Internal problems, especially with taxes and the economy, led to protests and rebellion. The government also had trouble with foreign trade and treaties.

Relations with Other Countries

Under the Articles of Confederation, Congress could not force states to provide soldiers for an army. The Continental Army had disbanded, or dissolved, soon after the signing of the Treaty of Paris of 1783. Without an army, the national government found it difficult to protect its citizens against foreign threats.

Trouble with Britain

It was also difficult to enforce international treaties such as the Treaty of Paris of 1783. The United States found it especially hard to force the British to turn over "with all convenient speed" their forts on the American side of the Great Lakes. The United States wanted to gain control of these forts because they protected valuable land and fur-trade routes. Still, Britain was slow to withdraw from the area. A British official warned against the United States trying to seize the forts by force. He said that any attempt to do so would be opposed by the thousands of British soldiers who had settled in Canada after the Revolution "who are ready to fly to arms at a moment's warning."



Trade with Britain

The United States also faced problems trading with Great Britain. After the signing of the Treaty of Paris, Britain closed many of its ports to American ships. Before the Revolutionary War, colonial ships had traded a great deal with the British West Indies and stopped there on their way to other destinations. This travel and trading stopped after 1783.

In addition, Britain forced American merchants to pay high **tariffs**—taxes on imports or exports. The tariffs applied to goods such as rice, tobacco, tar, and oil that were grown or mined in the United States and then sold in Britain. Merchants had to raise prices to cover the tariffs. Ultimately, the costs would be passed on to customers, who had to pay higher prices for the goods. The economic condition of the country was getting worse by the day.

Trade with Spain

In 1784 Spanish officials closed the lower Mississippi River to U.S. shipping. Western farmers and merchants were furious because they used the Mississippi to send goods to eastern and foreign markets. Congress tried to work out an agreement with Spain, but the plan did not receive a majority vote in Congress. The plan could not be passed. As a result, Spain broke off the negotiations.

Many state leaders began to criticize the national government. Rhode Island's representatives wrote, "Our federal government is but a name; a mere shadow without substance [power]." Critics believed that Spain might have continued to negotiate if the United States had possessed a strong military. These leaders believed that the national government needed to be more powerful.

Impact of Closed Markets

The closing of markets in the British West Indies seriously affected the U.S. economy. James Madison of Virginia wrote about the crisis.

> "The Revolution has robbed us of our trade with the West Indies . . . without opening any other channels to compensate [make up for] it. In every point of view, indeed, the trade of this country is in a deplorable [terrible] condition."
>
> —James Madison, quoted in *Independence on Trial* by Frederick W. Marks III

Farmers could no longer export their goods to the British West Indies. They also had to hire British ships to carry their goods to British markets, which was very expensive. American exports dropped while British goods flowed freely into the United States.

This unequal trade caused serious economic problems for the new nation. British merchants could sell manufactured products in the United States at much lower prices than locally made goods. This difference in prices hurt American businesses.

The Confederation Congress could not correct the problem because it did not have the authority either to pass tariffs or to order the states to pass tariffs. The states could offer little help. If one state passed a tariff, the British could simply sell their goods in another state. Most states did not cooperate in trade matters. Instead, states worked only to increase their own trade rather than working to improve the trade situation for the whole country.

In 1785 the situation led a British magazine to call the new nation the Dis-United States. As a result of the trade problems with Britain, American merchants began looking for other markets such as China, France, and the Netherlands. Despite such attempts, Britain remained the most important trading partner of the United States.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why was the Confederation Congress unable to solve America's international trade problems?

Economic Problems

In addition to international trade issues, other challenges soon appeared. Trade problems among the states, war debts, and a weak economy plagued the states.

Trade among States

Because the Confederation Congress had no power to regulate **interstate commerce**—trade between two or more states—states followed their own trade interests. As a result, trade laws differed from state to state. This situation made trade difficult for merchants whose businesses crossed state lines.

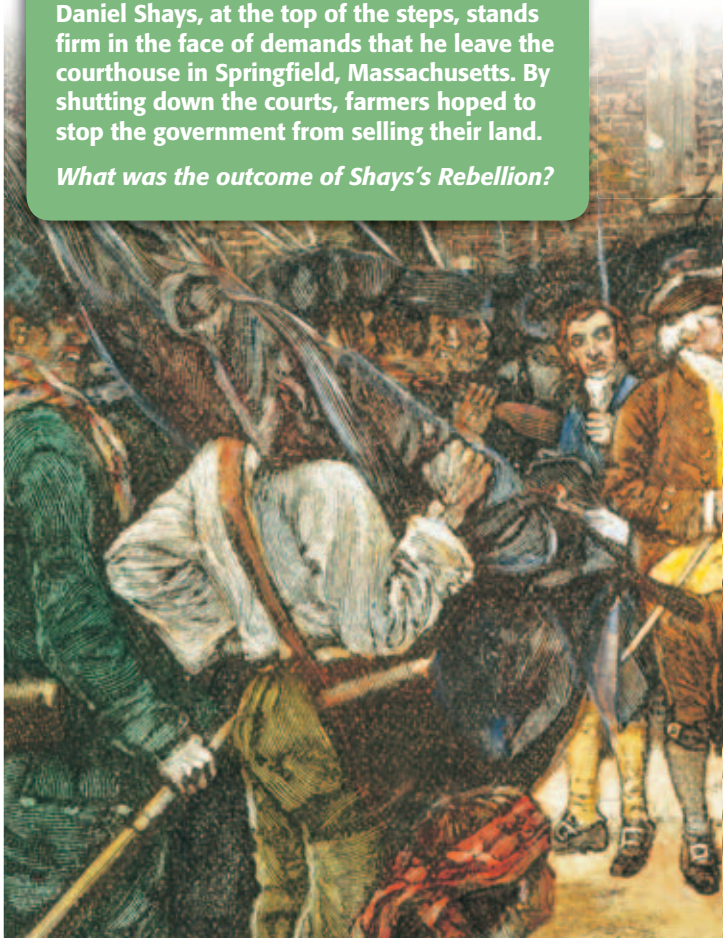
Inflation

After the Revolutionary War, most states had a hard time paying off war debts and struggled to collect overdue taxes. To ease this hardship, some states began printing large amounts of paper money. The result was inflation. This money had little

A Farmer Leads a Revolt

Daniel Shays, at the top of the steps, stands firm in the face of demands that he leave the courthouse in Springfield, Massachusetts. By shutting down the courts, farmers hoped to stop the government from selling their land.

What was the outcome of Shays's Rebellion?



or no real value, because states did not have gold or silver reserves to back it up. **Inflation** occurs when there are increased prices for goods and services combined with the reduced value of money. Congress had no power to stop states from issuing more paper money and thus stop inflation.

Weak Economy

In Rhode Island the state legislature printed large amounts of paper money worth very little. This made debtors—people who owe money—quite happy. They could pay back their debts with paper money worth less than the coins they had borrowed. However, creditors—people who lend money—were upset. Hundreds of creditors fled Rhode Island to avoid being paid back with worthless money.

The loss of trade with Britain combined with inflation created a **depression**. A depression is a period of low economic activity combined with a rise in unemployment.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What economic problems did the new nation face?



Shays's Rebellion

Each state handled its economic problems differently. Massachusetts refused to print worthless paper money. It tried to pay its war debts by collecting taxes on land.

Heavy Debts for Farmers

Massachusetts's tax policy hit farmers hard. As landowners, they had to pay the new taxes. However, farmers had trouble paying their debts. The courts began forcing them to sell their property. Some farmers had to serve terms in debtors' prison; others had to sell their labor.

Many government leaders in the state did not care about the problems of poor farmers, however. In some cases, farmers actually owed these leaders money.

Farmers Rebel

In August 1786, farmers in three western counties began a revolt. Bands of angry citizens closed down courts in western Massachusetts. Their reasoning was simple—with the courts shut down, no one's property could be taken. In September a poor farmer and Revolutionary War veteran, **Daniel Shays**, led hundreds of men in a forced shutdown of the Supreme Court in Springfield, Massachusetts. The state government ordered the farmers to stop the revolt under threat of capture and death. These threats only made Shays and his followers more determined. The uprising of farmers to protest high taxes and heavy debt became known as **Shays's Rebellion**.

Shays's Defeat

Shays's forces were defeated by state troops in January 1787. By February many of the rebels were in prison. During their trials, 14 leaders were sentenced to death. However, the state soon freed most of the rebels, including Shays. State officials knew that many citizens of the state agreed with the rebels and their cause.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What led to Shays's Rebellion?

Calls for Change

In the end, Shays's Rebellion showed the weakness of the Confederation government. It led some Americans to admit that the Articles of Confederation had failed to protect the ideals of liberty set forth in the Declaration of Independence.

Weaknesses of the Articles of Confederation (QUICK FACTS)

- Most power held by states
- One branch of government
- Legislative branch has few powers
- No executive branch
- No judicial system
- No system of checks and balances

When Massachusetts had asked the national government to help put down Shays's Rebellion, Congress could offer little help. More Americans began calling for a stronger central government. They wanted leaders who would be able to protect the nation in times of crisis.

Earlier in 1786 the Virginia legislature had called for a national conference. It wanted to talk about economic problems and ways to change the Articles of Confederation. The meeting took place in Annapolis, Maryland, in September 1786.

Nine states decided to send delegates to the Annapolis Convention but some of their delegates were late and missed the meeting. Connecticut, Georgia, Maryland, and South Carolina did not respond to the request at all and sent no delegates.

Because of the poor attendance, the participants, including James Madison and Alexander Hamilton, called on all 13 states to send delegates to a Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia in May 1787. They planned to revise the Articles of Confederation to better meet the needs of the nation.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**

Why did some people believe the national government needed to change?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Many Americans believed that Shays's Rebellion was final proof that the national government needed to be changed. In the next section you will read about the Constitutional Convention.

Section 2 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP5

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Summarize** What problems did the United States experience with Spain and Great Britain?
   b. Predict What are some possible results of the growing problems between the United States and Great Britain? Why?
2. **a. Describe** What difficulties were involved with **interstate commerce**?
   b. Analyze What was the cause of **inflation** in the new nation, and how could it have been prevented?
3. **a. Explain** How did Massachusetts's tax policy affect farmers?
   b. Evaluate Defend the actions of **Daniel Shays** and the other rebels.
4. **a. Recall** Why did Madison and Hamilton call for a Constitutional Convention?
   b. Analyze How did **Shays's Rebellion** lead to a call for change in the United States?

Critical Thinking

5. **Categorizing** Review your notes on the problems faced by the new nation. Then identify those problems as either domestic or international in a graphic organizer like the one shown below.

Domestic Problems	International Problems

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Identifying Problems** In this section you learned about several problems of the young United States. Were any of those problems made worse by the powers that the Articles of Confederation did or did not give the national government?

Creating the Constitution

SECTION 3

If YOU were there...

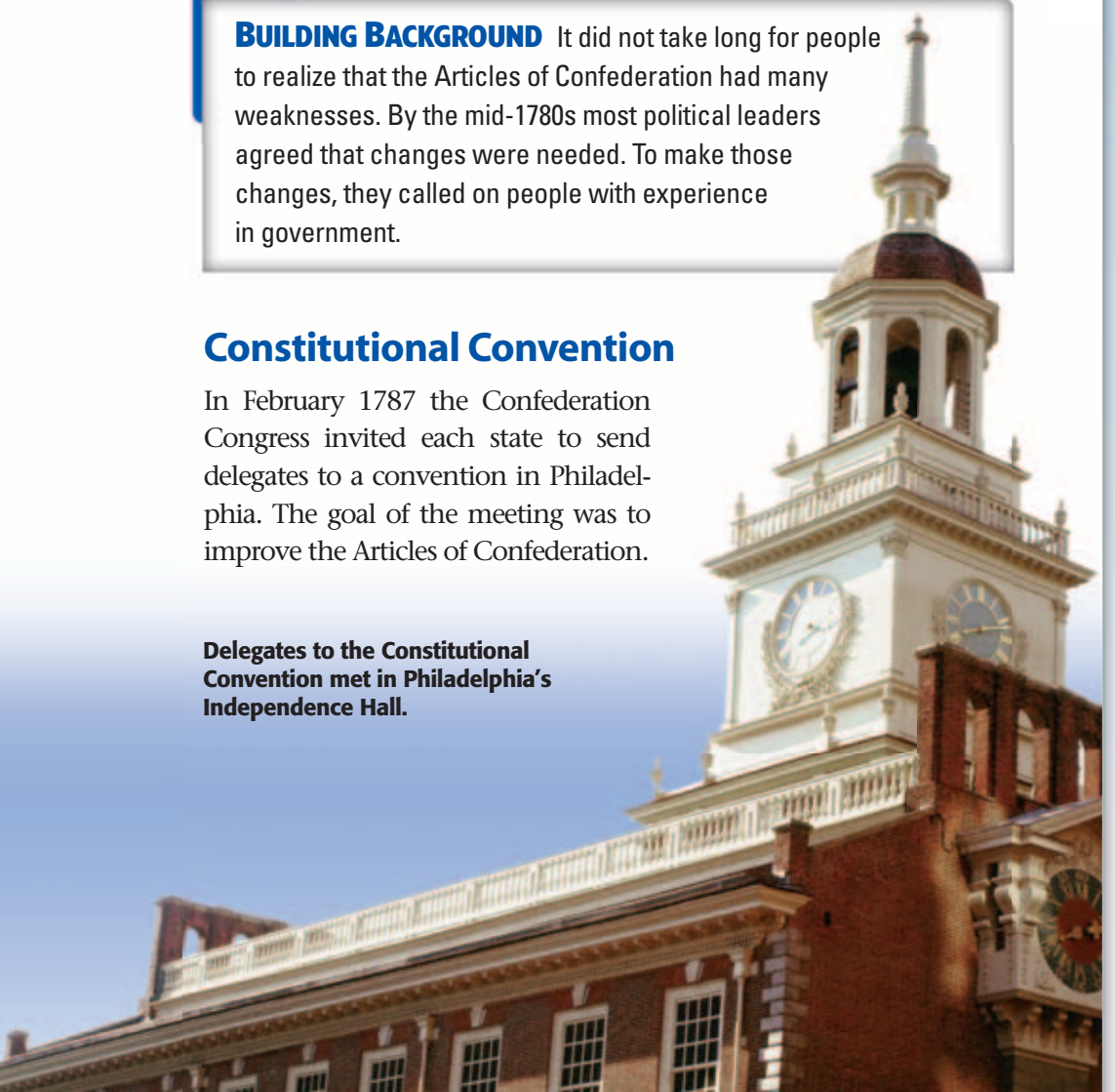
You are a merchant in Connecticut in 1787. You have been a member of your state legislature for several years. This spring, the legislature is choosing delegates to a convention to revise the Articles of Confederation. Delegates will meet in Philadelphia. It means leaving your business in others' hands for most of the summer. Still, you hope to be chosen.

Why would you want to go to the Constitutional Convention?

BUILDING BACKGROUND It did not take long for people to realize that the Articles of Confederation had many weaknesses. By the mid-1780s most political leaders agreed that changes were needed. To make those changes, they called on people with experience in government.

Constitutional Convention

In February 1787 the Confederation Congress invited each state to send delegates to a convention in Philadelphia. The goal of the meeting was to improve the Articles of Confederation.



Delegates to the Constitutional Convention met in Philadelphia's Independence Hall.

What You Will Learn . . .

Main Ideas

1. The Constitutional Convention met to improve the government of the United States.
2. The issue of representation led to the Great Compromise.
3. Regional debate over slavery led to the Three-Fifths Compromise.
4. The U.S. Constitution created federalism and a balance of power.

The Big Idea

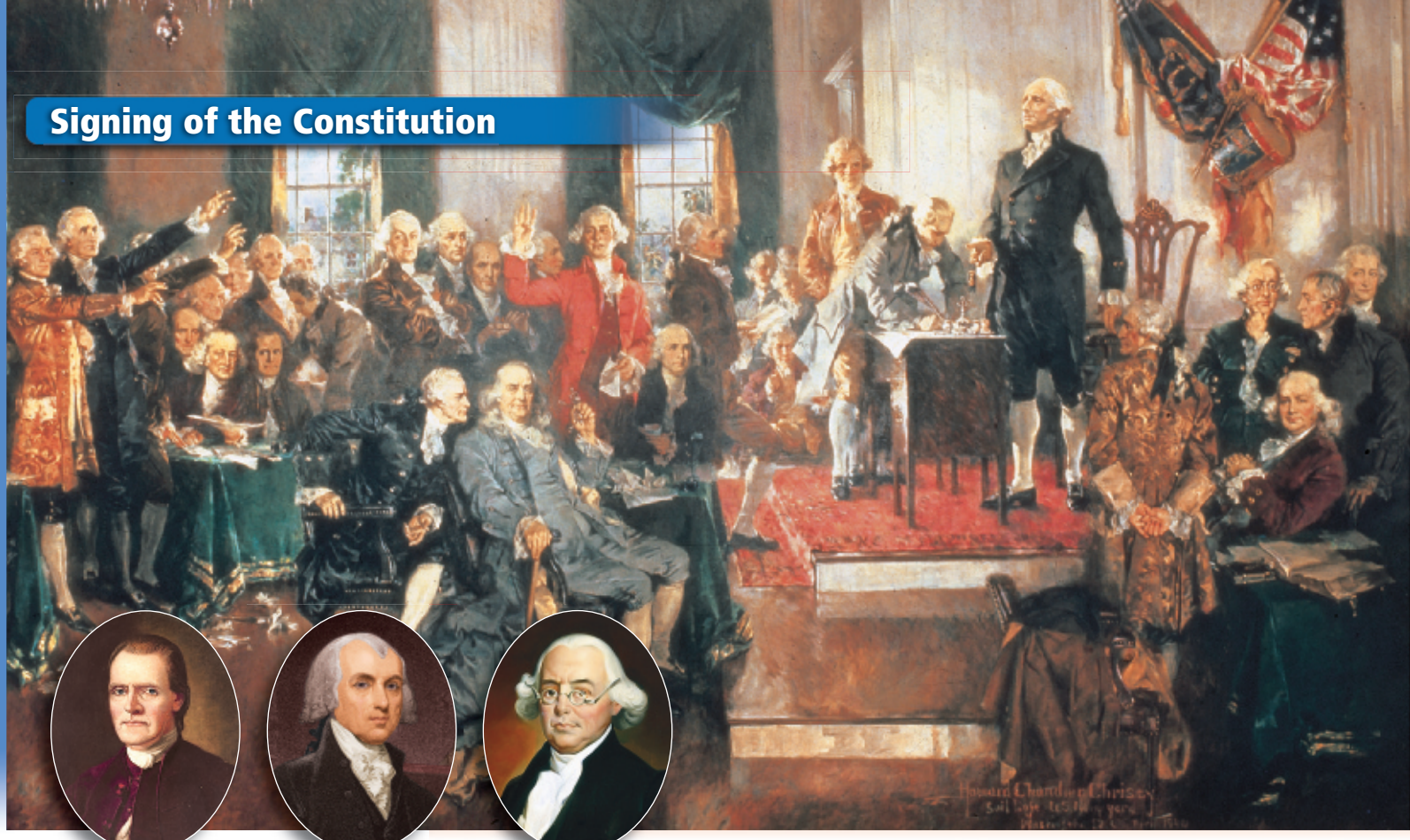
A new constitution provided a framework for a stronger national government.

Key Terms and People

Constitutional Convention, *p. 164*
James Madison, *p. 164*
Virginia Plan, *p. 164*
New Jersey Plan, *p. 165*
Great Compromise, *p. 165*
Three-Fifths Compromise, *p. 166*
popular sovereignty, *p. 167*
federalism, *p. 167*
legislative branch, *p. 167*
executive branch, *p. 167*
judicial branch, *p. 167*
checks and balances, *p. 167*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the conflicts that arose during the Constitutional Convention and the compromises reached.

Conflicts	→	Compromises



Signing of the Constitution

Roger Sherman

James Madison

James Wilson



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

At a 1754 meeting held in New York called the Albany Congress, Benjamin Franklin proposed a plan to unite the colonies. Though his proposal never came to pass, some features of the plan were later included in the Articles of Confederation and the Constitution.

The **Constitutional Convention** was held in May 1787 in Philadelphia's Independence Hall to improve the Articles of Confederation. However, delegates would leave with an entirely new U.S. Constitution. This decision angered some of the participants.

Most delegates were well educated, and many had served in state legislatures or Congress. Benjamin Franklin and **James Madison** were there. Revolutionary War hero George Washington was elected president of the Convention.

Several important voices were absent. John Adams and Thomas Jefferson could not attend. Patrick Henry chose not to attend because he did not want a stronger central government. Women, African Americans, and Native Americans did not take part because they did not yet have the rights of citizens.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What was the purpose of the Constitutional Convention?

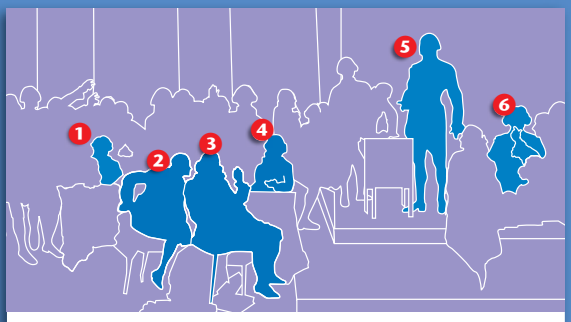
Great Compromise

Several issues divided the delegates to the Constitutional Convention. Some members wanted only small changes to the Articles of Confederation, while others wanted to rewrite the Articles completely.

Those delegates who wanted major changes to the Articles had different goals. For example, small and large states had different ideas about representation, economic concerns such as tariffs, and slavery. In addition, delegates disagreed over how strong to make the national government.

Virginia Plan

After the delegates had met for four days, Edmund Randolph of Virginia presented the **Virginia Plan**. He proposed a new federal constitution that would give sovereignty, or supreme power, to the central government. The legislature would be bicameral—made



1. Roger Sherman
2. Alexander Hamilton
3. Benjamin Franklin
4. James Madison
5. George Washington
6. James Wilson

This painting shows the signing of the Constitution on September 17, 1787. James Madison, number 4 on the diagram, became known as the "Father of the Constitution" for his ideas about government and his ability to lead the delegates to agreement. *Which person did the artist choose to make the focus of this painting? Why do you think that is?*

up of two houses, or groups of representatives—and chosen on the basis of state populations. Larger states would thus have more representatives than would smaller states. Delegates from the smaller states believed that it would give too much power to the larger states.

New Jersey Plan

The smaller states came up with a plan to stop the larger states from getting too much power. New Jersey delegate William Paterson presented the small-state or **New Jersey Plan**, which called for a unicameral, or one-house, legislature. The plan gave each state an equal number of votes, and thus an equal voice, in the federal government. The plan gave the federal government the power to tax citizens in all states, and it allowed the government to regulate commerce.

Compromise Is Reached

After a month of debate, the delegates were unable to agree on how states should be represented. The convention reached a deadlock.

Finally, Roger Sherman of Connecticut proposed a compromise plan. The legislative branch would have two houses. Each state, regardless of its size, would have two representatives in the Senate, or upper house. This would give each state an equal voice, pleasing the smaller states. In the House of Representatives, or lower house, the number of representatives for each state would be determined by the state's population. This pleased the larger states. The agreement to create a two-house legislature became known as the **Great Compromise**. James Wilson, a great speaker, saw his dream of a strong national government come true.

THE IMPACT TODAY

All U.S. states but one modeled their legislative branches on the federal one, with a House of Representatives and a Senate. Nebraska has a unicameral legislature.

READING CHECK **Contrasting** How did the Virginia Plan and New Jersey Plan differ?

QUICK FACTS

Virginia Plan	Great Compromise	New Jersey Plan
• Gave more power to national government • Bicameral legislature • Number in both houses based on population	• Bicameral legislature • Number of representatives based on state populations in lower house • Number of representatives equal from each state in upper house	• Gave more power to state governments • Unicameral legislature • Number of representatives equal from each state

Primary Source

POINTS OF VIEW

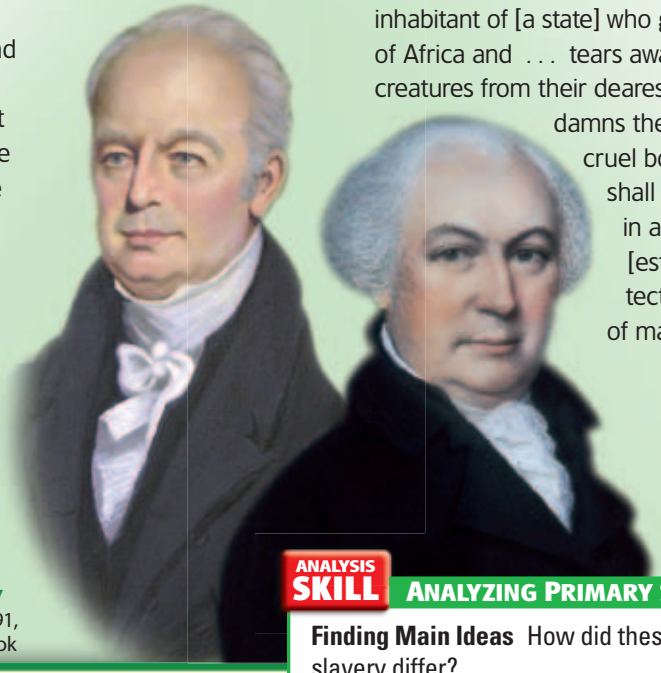
Compromise and the Slave Trade

The issue of slavery highlighted the growing division between the North and the South. Gouverneur Morris of New York spoke with much emotion against the Three-Fifths Compromise. Also, the idea of banning the foreign slave trade prompted southerners such as John Rutledge of South Carolina to defend the practice.

"If the Convention thinks that North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia will ever agree to the plan [to prohibit the slave trade], unless their right to import slaves be untouched, the expectation is vain [useless]."

—John Rutledge,

quoted in *The Atlantic Monthly,* February 1891, by Frank Gaylord Cook



"The admission of slaves into the Representation . . . comes to this: that the inhabitant of [a state] who goes to the coast of Africa and . . . tears away his fellow creatures from their dearest connections and damns them to the most cruel bondage [slavery], shall have more votes in a Government [established] for protection of the rights of mankind."

—Gouverneur Morris,

quoted in *Founding the Republic,* edited by John J. Patrick

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Finding Main Ideas How did these two views of slavery differ?

Three-Fifths Compromise

The debate over representation also involved regional differences. Southern delegates wanted enslaved Africans to be counted as part of their state populations. This way they would have more representatives, and more power, in Congress. Northerners disagreed. They wanted the number of slaves to determine taxes but not representation.

To resolve this problem, some delegates thought of a compromise. They wanted to count three-fifths of the slaves in each state as part of that state's population to decide how many representatives a state would have. After much debate, the delegates voted to accept the proposal, called the **Three-Fifths Compromise**. Under this agreement only three-fifths of a state's slave population would count when determining representation.

Another major issue was the foreign slave trade. Some of the delegates believed slavery was wrong and wanted the federal government to ban the slave trade. Others said that the southern states' economies needed the slave trade. Many southern delegates said they would leave the Union if the Constitution immediately ended the slave trade. Also at issue was Congress's ability to tax imports and exports.

Worried delegates reached another compromise. The Commerce Compromises allowed Congress to levy tariffs on imports, but not exports, and allowed the importation of slaves until the end of 1807. The delegates omitted, or left out, the words *slavery* and *slave* in the Constitution. They referred instead to "free Persons" and "all other Persons."

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What compromise was reached over the issue of the slave trade?

The Living Constitution

Most Convention delegates wanted a strong national government. At the same time, they hoped to protect **popular sovereignty**, the idea that political authority belongs to the people. Americans had boldly declared this idea in the Declaration of Independence.

Federalist Government

The delegates also wanted to balance the power of the central government with the power of the states. Therefore, the delegates created **federalism**. Federalism is the sharing of power between a central government and the states that make up a country. Under the previous confederal system, states were loosely joined together without a strong central government.

Under the Constitution, each state must obey the authority of the federal, or national, government. States have control over government functions not specifically assigned to the federal government. This includes control of local government, education, the chartering of corporations, and the supervision of religious bodies. States also have the power to create and oversee civil and criminal law. States, however, must protect the welfare of their citizens.

Checks and Balances

The Constitution also balances the power among three branches, each responsible for separate tasks. The first is the **legislative branch**, or Congress. Congress is responsible for proposing and passing laws. It is made up of two houses, as created in the Great Compromise. The Senate has two members from each state. In the House of Representatives each state is represented according to its population.

The second branch, the **executive branch**, includes the president and the departments that help run the government. The executive branch makes sure the law is carried out. The third branch is the **judicial branch**. The judicial branch is made up of all the national courts. This branch is responsible for interpreting laws, punishing criminals, and settling disputes between states.

The framers of the Constitution created a system of **checks and balances**, which keeps any branch of government from becoming too powerful. For example, Congress has the power to pass bills into law. The president has the power to veto, or reject, laws that Congress passes. However, Congress can override the president's veto with a two-thirds

LINKING TO TODAY

Legislative Branch

When it first met in 1789, the U.S. House of Representatives had just 65 members. As the nation's population grew, more members were added. Today, the number has been set at 435, to prevent the size of the House from growing unmanageable. Though the numbers of women and minorities in Congress are still unrepresentative of the population as a whole, Congress has become more diverse. Linda and Loretta Sanchez, pictured here, are the first sisters to serve in Congress at the same time.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

How is the change in makeup of the legislative branch shown through Linda and Loretta Sanchez?

The Constitution Strengthens the National Government

QUICK FACTS

Strengths of the Constitution	Weaknesses of the Articles of Confederation
✔ most power held by national government	• most power held by states
✔ three branches of government	• one branch of government
✔ legislative branch has many powers	• legislative branch has few powers
✔ executive branch led by president	• no executive branch
✔ judicial branch to review the laws	• no judicial system
✔ firm system of checks and balances	• no system of checks and balances

majority vote. The Supreme Court has the power to review laws passed by Congress and strike down any law that violates the Constitution by declaring it *unconstitutional*.

The final draft of the Constitution was completed in September 1787. Only 3 of the 42 delegates who remained refused to sign. The signed Constitution was sent first to Congress and then to the states for ratification. The delegates knew that the Constitution was not a perfect document, but they believed they had protected the ideas of republicanism.

READING CHECK **Comparing and Contrasting** What are the differences between monarchies, federal systems, and confederal systems?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The Constitution balanced power among three branches of the federal government but was only written after many compromises. In the next section you will read about Antifederalist and Federalist views of the Constitution, and the struggle to get it approved by the states.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP5

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** Why did the Confederation Congress call for a **Constitutional Convention**?
   b. Elaborate Why do you think it was important that most delegates had served in state legislatures?
2. **a. Identify** What was the **Great Compromise**?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did state issues lead to debate over structure of the central government?
3. **a. Explain** What was the debate between North and South over counting slave populations?
   b. Contrast How did delegates' views differ on the issue of the foreign slave trade?
4. **a. Recall** Why did the framers of the Constitution create a system of **checks and balances**?
   b. Evaluate Did the Constitution resolve the weaknesses in the Articles of Confederation? Explain your answer.

Critical Thinking

5. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on the Constitutional Convention compromises. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to show how the compromises affected the framework of the new government.

Compromise	→	Effect

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Thinking about the Constitution** Look back through what you've just read and make a list of important features of the Constitution. Be sure to note important compromises.



BIOGRAPHY

Benjamin Franklin

How did one man accomplish so much?

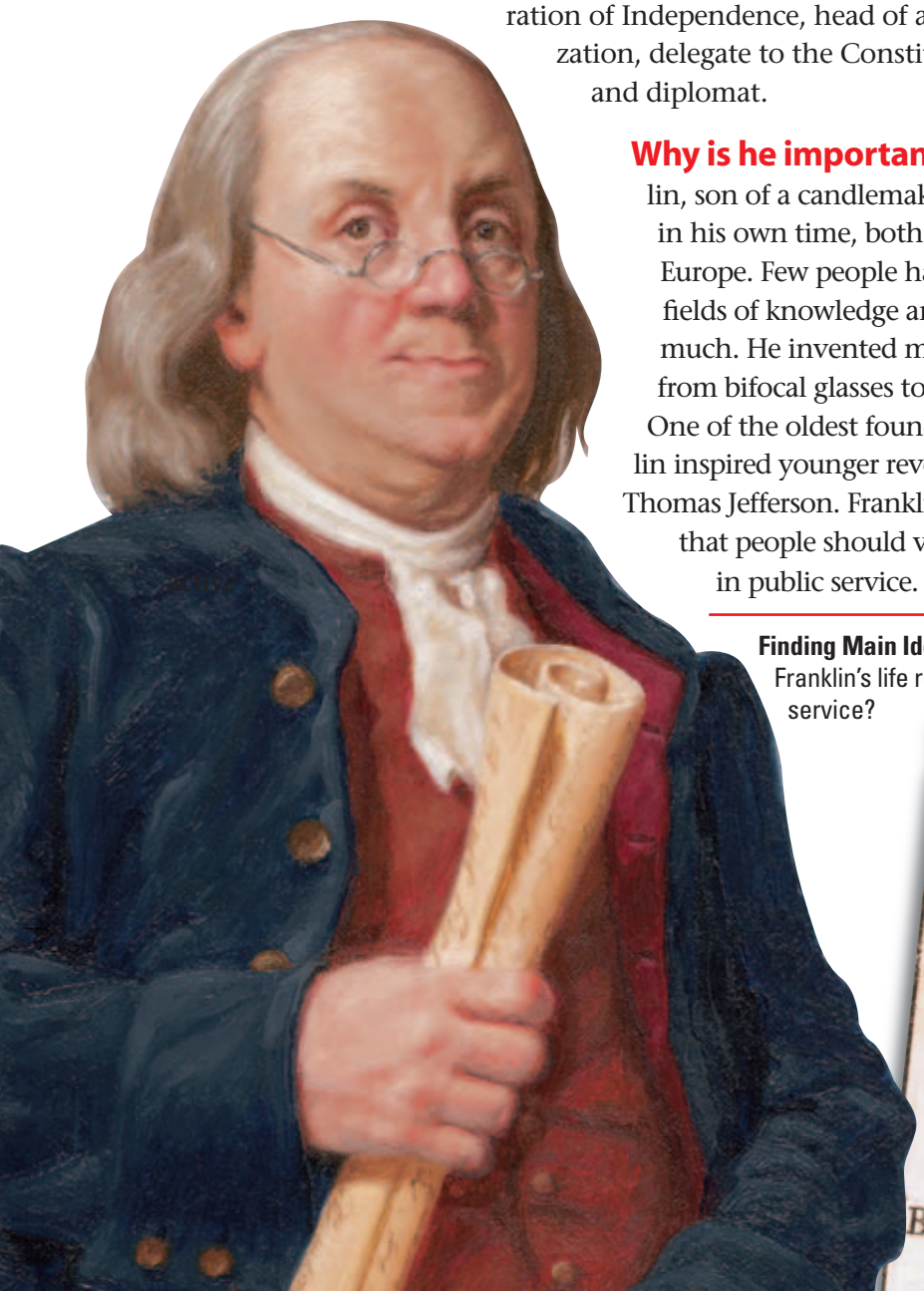
When did he live? 1706–1790

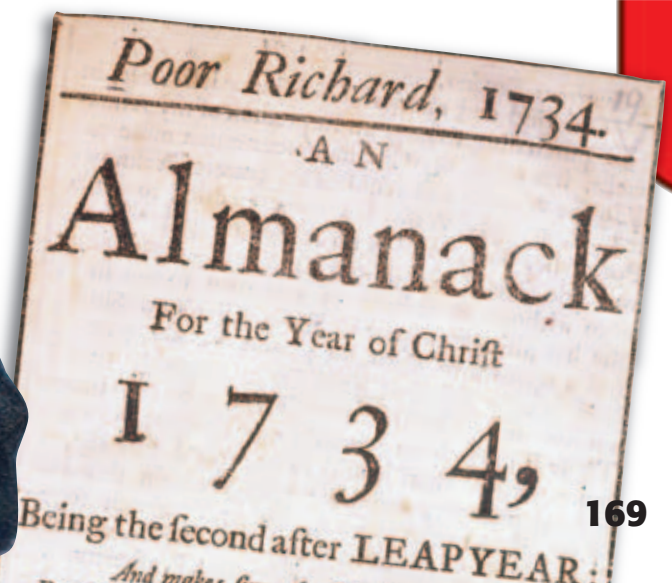
Where did he live? Benjamin Franklin was born in Boston but ran away to Philadelphia at age 17 and made it his home. He also crossed the Atlantic Ocean eight times and visited 10 countries.

What did he do? What *didn't* he do! He was a printer, publisher, creator of the first circulating library, the first president of the University of Pennsylvania, inventor, scientist, philosopher, musician, economist, and the first U.S. Postmaster General. In politics he was a leading revolutionary, signer of the Declaration of Independence, head of an antislavery organization, delegate to the Constitutional Convention, and diplomat.

Why is he important? Benjamin Franklin, son of a candlemaker, became a celebrity in his own time, both in America and in Europe. Few people have mastered so many fields of knowledge and accomplished so much. He invented many useful objects, from bifocal glasses to the lightning rod. One of the oldest founding fathers, Franklin inspired younger revolutionaries such as Thomas Jefferson. Franklin believed strongly that people should volunteer and be in public service.

Finding Main Ideas How did Benjamin Franklin's life reflect his belief in public service?





KEY EVENTS

1729
Becomes owner and publisher of the *Pennsylvania Gazette*

1732–1758
Publishes *Poor Richard: An Almanack*

1752
Performs famous experiment using a kite to show that electricity exists in storm clouds

1775
Submits the Articles of Confederation

1779
Appointed minister to France

1782
Helps negotiate the Treaty of Paris with Britain

SECTION 4

Ratifying the Constitution

What You Will Learn . . .

Main Ideas

1. Federalists and Antifederalists engaged in debate over the new Constitution.
2. The *Federalist Papers* played an important role in the fight for ratification of the Constitution.
3. Ten amendments were added to the Constitution to provide a Bill of Rights to protect citizens.

The Big Idea

Americans carried on a vigorous debate before ratifying the Constitution.

Key Terms and People

Antifederalists, *p. 170*
George Mason, *p. 170*
Federalists, *p. 170*
Federalist Papers, *p. 171*
amendments, *p. 173*
Bill of Rights, *p. 173*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the differing views of the U.S. Constitution.

Federalists		Antifederalists
	vs.	

If YOU were there...

You are a newspaper editor in Philadelphia. During colonial rule, officials sometimes closed down your newspaper because you had criticized the governor. Now you are one of many Americans who want to be sure the new Constitution will guarantee individual rights. You are writing an editorial in your paper explaining what you want.

What rights would you want the Constitution to protect?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The new Constitution did not make everyone happy. Even its framers knew they had not made a perfect document. Many people were afraid a strong national government would become as tyrannical as the British government had been. Before approving the Constitution, they wanted to be sure that their rights would be protected.

Federalists and Antifederalists

When the Constitution was made public, a huge debate began among many Americans. **Antifederalists**—people who opposed the Constitution—thought that the Constitutional Convention should not have created a new government. Others thought the Constitution gave too much power to the central government. For some Antifederalists, the main problem was that the Constitution did not have a section that guaranteed individual rights. Delegate **George Mason** became an Antifederalist for this reason.

Many Antifederalists were small farmers and debtors. Some Patriots were also strong Antifederalists, including Samuel Adams and Patrick Henry. Antifederalists were challenged by those who believed that the United States needed a stronger central government.

Federalists, supporters of the Constitution, included James Madison, George Washington, Benjamin Franklin, and Alexander Hamilton. Most Federalists believed that the Constitution offered a good balance of power between various political views. Many

Federalists vs. Antifederalists

QUICK FACTS



Alexander Hamilton
Federalist

- Supported the Constitution as an excellent plan for government
- Defended his views in the *Federalist Papers*

George Mason
Antifederalist

- Opposed the Constitution
- Believed the Constitution needed a section guaranteeing individual rights

Federalists were wealthy planters, farmers, and lawyers. However, others were workers and craftspeople.

Federalists and Antifederalists debated whether the new Constitution should be approved. They made speeches and printed pamphlets **advocating** their views. Mercy Otis Warren, an ardent Patriot during the war, wrote a pamphlet entitled *Observations on the New Constitution*, in which she criticized the lack of individual rights it provided. The Federalists had to convince people a change in the structure of government was needed. To do this, they had to overcome people's fears that the Constitution would make the government too powerful.

READING CHECK **Comparing and Contrasting**
Explain the similarities and differences between the Antifederalists and the Federalists.

Federalist Papers

One of the most important defenses of the Constitution appeared in a series of essays that became known as the ***Federalist Papers***. These essays supporting the Constitution were written anonymously under the name Publius. They were actually written by Hamilton, Madison, and Jay.

The authors of the *Federalist Papers* tried to reassure Americans that the new federal government would not overpower the states. In *Federalist Paper* No. 10, Madison argued that the diversity of the United States would prevent any single group from dominating the government.

The *Federalist Papers* were widely reprinted in newspapers around the country as the debate over the Constitution continued. Finally, they were collected and published in book form in 1788.

FOCUS ON READING
Take notes on the chronological order of this section. Which was written first, the *Federalist Papers* or the Bill of Rights?

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
advocate
to plead in favor of

Primary Source

HISTORIC DOCUMENT

Federalist Paper No. 10

In November 1787, Number 10 in the series called the Federalist Papers *was written in support of the Constitution. In it, James Madison describes the way federalism will overcome disagreements within society.*

"A landed interest, a manufacturing interest, a mercantile [trading] interest, a moneyed interest, with many lesser interests, grow up of necessity in civilized nations, and divide them into different classes, actuated [moved] by different sentiments and views. The regulation of these various and interfering interests [opinions] forms the principal task of modern legislation, and involves the spirit of party and faction [group] in the necessary and ordinary operations of the government . . .

The federal Constitution forms a happy combination . . . the great . . . interests being referred to the national [legislature]; the local and particular to the state legislatures . . . The influence of factious leaders may kindle [start] a flame within their particular states, but will be unable to spread a general conflagration [large fire] through the other states."

—James Madison, quoted in *Living American Documents*, edited by Isidore Starr, et al.

Madison believes that lawmakers are responsible for regulating the many competing concerns that make up society.

The federal government will handle issues affecting the nation as a whole; state and local governments will handle those concerning local issues.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why does Madison think federalism will prevent disagreement?

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

In the heated debate over the ratification of the U.S. Constitution, some residents of New York City, especially Staten Island, threatened to secede from the state. The leader of the state's Antifederalists, DeWitt Clinton, finally agreed to approve the document to prevent the city's secession.

The Constitution needed only 9 states to pass it. However, to establish and preserve national unity, each state needed to ratify it. Every state except Rhode Island held special state conventions that gave citizens the chance to discuss and vote on the Constitution.

Paul Revere served on a committee supporting ratification. He wrote of the Constitution, "The proposed . . . government, is well calculated [planned] to secure the liberties, protect the property, and guard the rights of the citizens of America." Antifederalists also spoke out in state conventions, and wrote articles and pamphlets that became known as the Antifederalist Papers. In New York, one citizen said, "It appears that the government will fall into the hands of the few and the great."

On December 7, 1787, Delaware became the first state to ratify the Constitution. It went into effect in June 1788 after New Hampshire became the ninth state to ratify it.

Political leaders across America knew the new government needed the support of the large states of Virginia and New York, where debate still raged. Finally, Madison and fellow Virginia Federalists convinced Virginia to ratify it in mid-1788. In New York, riots had occurred when the draft of the Constitution was made public. At the state convention in Poughkeepsie to discuss ratification, Hamilton argued convincingly against the Antifederalists led by DeWitt Clinton. When news arrived of Virginia's ratification, New York ratified it as well. Rhode Island was the last state to ratify the Constitution in May 1790.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**

Why were Virginia and New York important to the ratification of the Constitution?

Bill of Rights

Several states ratified the Constitution only after they were promised that a bill protecting individual rights would be added to it. Many Antifederalists did not think that the Constitution would protect personal freedoms.

Some Federalists said that the nation did not need a federal bill of rights because the Constitution itself was a bill of rights. It was, they argued, written to protect the liberty of all U.S. citizens.

James Madison wanted to make a bill of rights one of the new government's first priorities. In Congress's first session, Madison encouraged the legislators to put together a bill of rights. The rights would then be added to the Constitution as **amendments**, or official changes. In Article V of the Constitution, the founders had provided a way to change the document when necessary in order to reflect the will of the people. The process requires that proposed amendments must be approved by a two-thirds majority of both houses of Congress and then ratified by three-fourths of the states before taking effect.

Legislators took ideas from the state ratifying conventions, the Virginia Declaration of Rights, the English Bill of Rights, and the Declaration of Independence to make sure that the abuses listed in the Declaration of Independence would be illegal under the new government. In September 1789 Congress proposed 12 amendments and sent them to the states for ratification. By December 1791 the states had ratified the **Bill of Rights**—10 of the proposed amendments intended to protect citizens' rights.

These 10 amendments set a clear example of how to amend the Constitution to fit the needs of a changing nation. The flexibility of the U.S. Constitution has allowed it to survive for more than 200 years.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Why is being able to amend the Constitution important?

THE IMPACT TODAY

In 1789, Madison suggested an amendment limiting Congress's power over its own salary. This amendment was not passed until 1992.

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Early disagreements over individual rights resulted in the Bill of Rights. In the next chapter you will learn about the structure of the Constitution.

Section 4 Assessment

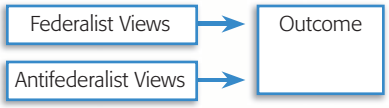
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP5

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** Who were the **Federalists** and the **Antifederalists**?
   b. Draw Conclusions What was the main argument of the Antifederalists against the Constitution?
   c. Elaborate Do you agree with the Antifederalists or the Federalists? Explain your position.
2. **a. Recall** When did the Constitution go into effect?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why was it important that all 13 states ratify the Constitution?
   c. Elaborate Do you think that the ***Federalist Papers*** played an essential role in the ratification of the Constitution? Explain your answer.
3. **a. Recall** Why did Congress add the **Bill of Rights**?
   b. Explain From where did legislators' ideas for the Bill of Rights come?
   c. Elaborate Do you think the process for amending the Constitution is too difficult? Explain your position.

Critical Thinking

4. **Analyzing** Review your notes on Federalist and Antifederalist views. Then identify the outcome of the debate in a graphic organizer like the one below. Be sure to mention the Bill of Rights.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Organizing Your Evidence** In this section you learned how the Bill of Rights was an important addition to the Constitution. You now have all your evidence about the difference between the Articles of Confederation and the Constitution. Choose two or three of the most important points and prepare to defend the Constitution, just like Alexander Hamilton and James Madison did in the *Federalist Papers*.

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Determining Different Points of View

Define the Skill

A *point of view* is a person's outlook or attitude. It is the way that he or she looks at a topic or thing. Each person's point of view is shaped by his or her background. Because people's backgrounds are different, their points of view are too. Since a person's point of view shapes his or her opinions, knowing that point of view helps you understand and evaluate those opinions. Being able to detect differences in point of view is important to understanding differences in people's opinions and actions in history.

Learn the Skill

When you encounter someone's beliefs, opinions, or actions in your study of history, use the following guidelines to determine his or her point of view.

1. Look for information about the person's background.
2. Ask yourself what factors in the person's background might have influenced his or her opinion or action concerning the topic or event.
3. Be aware that sometimes the person's opinions or actions themselves will provide clues to his or her point of view.

Benjamin Lincoln led the troops that put down Shays's Rebellion in Massachusetts. He was also a state politician and a general during the Revolution. Lincoln offered this explanation of Shays's uprising.

> "Among [the main causes] I rank the ease with which … credit was obtained …in the time of [the Revolution] … The moment the day arrived when all discovered that things were fast returning [to normal],…and that the indolent [lazy persons] and improvident [unwise persons] would soon experience the evils of their idleness and sloth, many startled [panicked] …and …complained … of the weight of public taxes … and at the cruelty of … creditors [those to whom money is owed] to call for their just dues [rightful payment] … The disaffected [unhappy people] … attempted … to stop the courts of law, and to suspend the operations of government. This they hoped to do until … an end should thereby be put to public and private debts."

Lincoln's background as a general, state official, and leader against the rebels likely gave him a negative point of view on the revolt. His reference to the rebels as lazy and unwise also provides clues to his attitude. You should weigh such factors when evaluating the accuracy of his statement.

Practice the Skill

The following statement about Shays's Rebellion came from a Massachusetts farmer. Read it and apply the guidelines to answer the questions.

> "I have labored hard …all my days. I have been … obliged to do more than my part in the [Revolution], been loaded with …rates [taxes], …have been …[abused] by sheriffs …and [debt] collectors …I have lost a great deal …[T]he great men are going to get all we have, and I think it is time for us to …put a stop to it."

1. From what point of view is this person commenting on the revolt? What is his opinion of it?
2. How does his view of himself differ from Lincoln's view of people like him?
3. Is this view of the revolt likely to be more accurate than Lincoln's view? Why or why not?

CHAPTER 5

Chapter Review

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**

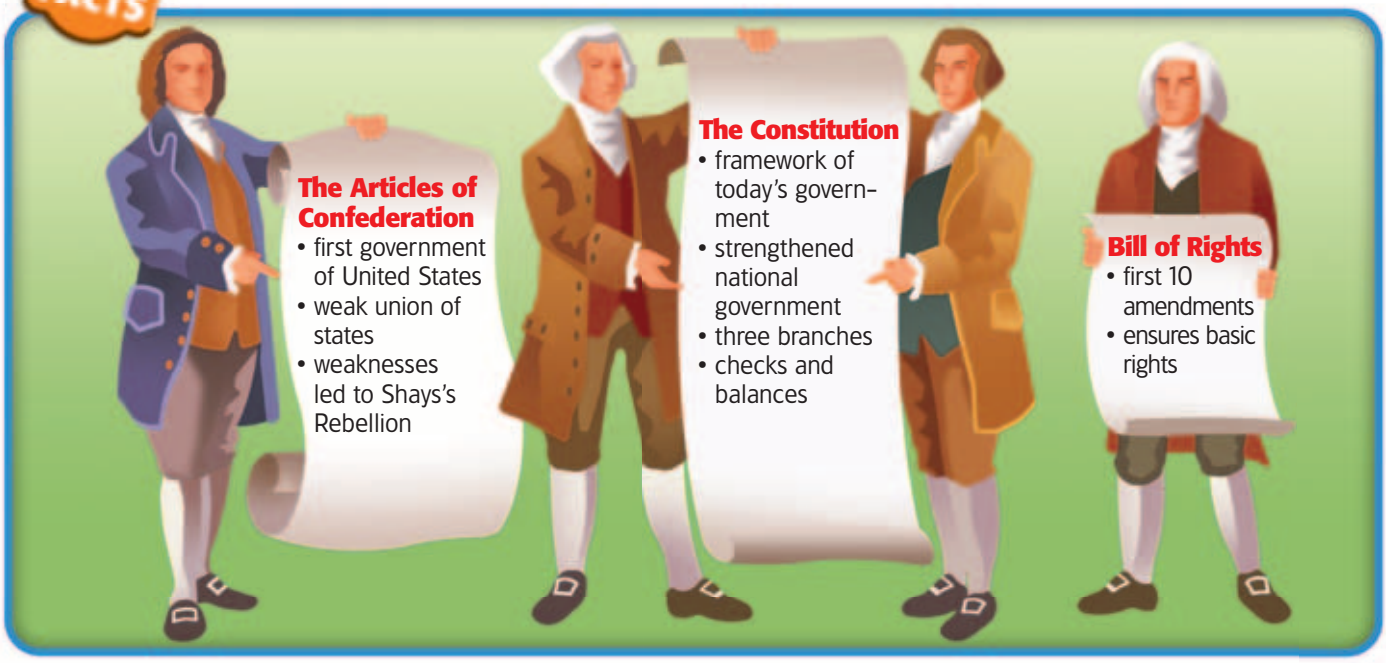
Review the video to answer the closing question:

Why would adding more U.S. territory have been appealing in the 1700s and 1800s?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Match the numbered person or term with the correct lettered definition.

1. Bill of Rights
2. checks and balances
3. constitution
4. Constitutional Convention
5. *Federalist Papers*
6. inflation
7. Northwest Territory
8. George Mason
9. tariffs
10. Three-Fifths Compromise

a. agreement that stated that each slave would be counted as three-fifths of a person when determining representation

b. delegate to the Constitutional Convention who became an Antifederalist

c. increased prices for goods and services combined with the reduced value of money

d. area including present-day Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Ohio, Wisconsin, and part of Minnesota

e. meetings held in Philadelphia at which delegates from the states attempted to improve the existing government

f. series of essays in support of the Constitution

g. set of basic principles that determines the powers and duties of a government

h. system that prevents any branch of government from becoming too powerful

i. taxes on imports or exports

j. the first 10 amendments to the Constitution

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 152–155)*

11. a. Describe What powers did the Articles of Confederation give the national government?

b. Summarize What did the Confederation Congress do to strengthen the United States?

c. Evaluate Which document or institution do you think had the greatest influence on the development of the United States? Why?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 158–162)*

12. a. Recall What was Shays's Rebellion?

b. Draw Conclusions What was the general attitude of foreign nations toward the new government of the United States? Why?

c. Evaluate Of the problems experienced by the Confederation Congress, which do you think was the most harmful? Why?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 163–168)*

13. a. Describe In what ways did the Constitution strengthen the central government?

b. Explain How did the two compromises reached during the Constitutional Convention satisfy competing groups?

c. Elaborate In your opinion were there any weaknesses in the Constitution? Explain your answer.

SECTION 4 *(Pages 170–173)*

14. a. Recall Why was the Bill of Rights added to the Constitution?

b. Draw Conclusions Why were some Americans opposed to the Constitution?

c. Evaluate Would you have supported the Federalists or the Antifederalists? Explain your answer.

Reviewing Themes

15. Politics What political problems resulted from a weak central government under the Articles of Confederation?

16. Politics How did political disagreements lead to important compromises in the creation of the Constitution?

Reading Skills

Understanding Chronological Order *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question below.*

17. Organize the following events chronologically according to the chapter.

a. The *Federalist Papers* are published.

b. The Constitution is ratified.

c. The Articles of Confederation are ratified.

d. Shays's Rebellion occurs.

e. The Constitutional Convention meets in Philadelphia.

Social Studies Skills

Determining Different Points of View *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question below.*

18. List three differences between the Virginia Plan and the New Jersey Plan.

FOCUS ON WRITING

19. Writing Your Editorial You should start your editorial with a strong statement of your opinion about the Constitution. Then write two sentences about each of your main points of support—a weakness of the Articles of Confederation and/or a strength of the Constitution. End your editorial with a call to action: Ask the delegates to the Constitutional Convention to ratify the Constitution. Remember that you are trying to convince people to make a very important decision for our country—be persuasive.

CHAPTER 5

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Which term would *best* describe the newly independent nation in the 1780s?**

A strong
B united
C troubled
D confident

2 **Under the Articles of Confederation, the greatest amount of power was in the hands of the**

A Congress.
B American people.
C national government.
D states.

3 **The structure of the U.S. Congress was created at the Constitutional Convention by the**

A Virginia Plan.
B Great Compromise.
C New Jersey Plan.
D Three-Fifths Compromise.

4 **The nation's most widespread problems under the Articles of Confederation involved**

A trade.
B suffrage.
C slavery.
D rebellion.

5 **The main objective of the Northwest Ordinance of 1787 was to**

A establish a national government with limited powers.
B create a system for bringing new states into the Union.
C settle border disputes between the United States and Canada.
D regulate interstate commerce and curb inflation.

6 **Which of the following documents influenced the system of government established by the U.S. Constitution?**

A Bill of Rights
B Mayflower Compact
C Federalist Papers
D Olive Branch Petition

7 **Read the following passage from one of the *Federalist Papers* and use it to answer the question below.**

> "The powers delegated by the proposed Constitution to the federal government are few and defined. Those which are to remain in the State governments are numerous and . . . will extend to all objects which . . . concern the lives, liberties, and properties of the people . . . The operations of the federal government will be most extensive and important in times of war and danger; those of the State governments in times of peace and security."
>
> —James Madison, *Federalist Paper* No. 45

Document-Based Question **What point was Madison making about the system of government created by the proposed U.S. Constitution?**

CHAPTER 6 1787–PRESENT

Citizenship and the Constitution



FOCUS QUESTION

How did the new nation respond to independence?

SECTION 1
Understanding the Constitution 182
Quick Facts Separation of Powers
Quick Facts Checks and Balances
Supreme Court Decisions Background of the Court
Biography James Madison

THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES 188
Quick Facts Federal Office Terms and Requirements
Quick Facts Federal Judicial System
Quick Facts Federalism
Quick Facts Amending the U.S. Constitution

SECTION 2
The Bill of Rights 216

SECTION 3
Rights and Responsibilities of Citizenship 222
Focus on New York City City Government

FOCUS ON WRITING

A Pamphlet Everyone in the United States benefits from our Constitution. However, many people don't know the Constitution as well as they should. In this chapter you will read about the Constitution and the rights and responsibilities it grants to citizens. Then you'll create a four-page pamphlet to share this information with your fellow citizens.

UNITED STATES

1788 The Constitution goes into effect after New Hampshire becomes the ninth state to ratify it.

1787 — 1800

1791 The Bill of Rights becomes part of the Constitution on December 15.

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of the Bill of Rights.

What You Will Learn...

In this chapter you will learn about the U.S. Constitution, the Bill of Rights, and what it means to be an American citizen. Young citizens like the ones pictured here must be informed in order to fulfill the rights and responsibilities of citizenship.

1954
Ellis Island Immigrant Station closes, after admitting more than 12 million immigrants into the United States.



1920
The Nineteenth Amendment gives all American women the right to vote.

1942
The Fair Employment Act bans discrimination in the workplace.



1971
The Twenty-sixth Amendment is ratified, giving the right to vote to all U.S. citizens 18 years or older.

1930 | 1950 | 1970 | 1990



1954 In *Brown* v. *Board of Education*, the Supreme Court declares segregation in public schools to be unconstitutional.

1990
The Americans with Disabilities Act is passed.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | **Politics** | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes In this chapter you will read about the three branches of government, the Bill of Rights, and the duties and responsibilities of a United States citizen. As you read about each of these topics, you will see the American **political system** at work—not only in the Bill of Rights, but also through the responsibilities U.S. citizens have as they vote for leaders and work to help their communities and nation.

Summarizing Historical Texts

Focus on Reading History books are full of information. Sometimes the sheer amount of information they contain can make processing what you read difficult. In those cases, it may be helpful to stop for a moment and summarize what you've read.

Writing a Summary A summary is a short restatement of the most important ideas in a text. The example below shows three steps used in writing a summary. First underline important details. Then write a short summary of each paragraph. Finally, combine these paragraph summaries into a short summary of the whole passage.

The Constitution

Article II, Section 1

1. The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows:

2. Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole Number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

Summary of Paragraph 1
The executive branch is headed by a president and vice president, each elected for four-year terms.

Summary of Paragraph 2
The electors who choose the president and vice president are appointed. Each state has the same number of electors as it has members of Congress.

Combined Summary
The president and vice president who run the executive branch are elected every four years by state-appointed electors.

You Try It!

The following passage is from the U.S. Constitution. As you read it, decide which facts you would include in a summary of the passage.

The Constitution

Article I, Section 2

1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

2. No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of twenty five years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of the State in which he shall be chosen.

After you read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. Which of the following statements best summarizes the first paragraph of this passage?

a. Congress has a House of Representatives.

b. Members of the House of Representatives are elected every two years by state electors.

2. Using the steps described on the previous page, write a summary of the second paragraph of this passage.

3. Combine the summary statement you chose in Question 1 with the summary statement you wrote in Question 2 to create a single summary of this entire passage.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 6

Section 1

federal system *(p. 182)*
impeach *(p. 184)*
veto *(p. 184)*
executive orders *(p. 185)*
pardons *(p. 185)*
Thurgood Marshall *(p. 186)*
Sandra Day O'Connor *(p. 186)*

Section 2

James Madison *(p. 216)*
majority rule *(p. 216)*
petition *(p. 217)*
search warrant *(p. 218)*
due process *(p. 218)*
indict *(p. 218)*
double jeopardy *(p. 218)*
eminent domain *(p. 218)*

Section 3

naturalized citizens *(p. 222)*
deport *(p. 222)*
draft *(p. 223)*
political action committees *(p. 224)*
interest groups *(p. 224)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

distinct *(p. 183)*
influence *(p. 224)*

As you read Chapter 6, think about what details you would include in a summary of each paragraph.

SECTION 1

Understanding the Constitution

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The framers of the Constitution devised the federal system.
2. The legislative branch makes the nation's laws.
3. The executive branch enforces the nation's laws.
4. The judicial branch determines whether or not laws are constitutional.

The Big Idea

The U.S. Constitution balances the powers of the federal government among the legislative, executive, and judicial branches.

Key Terms and People

federal system, *p. 182*
impeach, *p. 184*
veto, *p. 184*
executive orders, *p. 185*
pardons, *p. 185*
Thurgood Marshall, *p. 186*
Sandra Day O'Connor, *p. 186*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the structure of each of the branches of government in a chart like the one below.

Branch	Structure
Legislative	
Executive	
Judicial	

If YOU were there...

You have just been elected to the U.S. House of Representatives. You know that committees do much of the work in Congress. They deal with many different fields such as foreign policy, agriculture, national security, science, and education. You would like to ask for a spot on a committee whose work interests you.

Which committee would you ask to serve on?

BUILDING BACKGROUND When the framers of the Constitution met in Philadelphia in 1787, they created a national government with three branches that balance one another's powers.

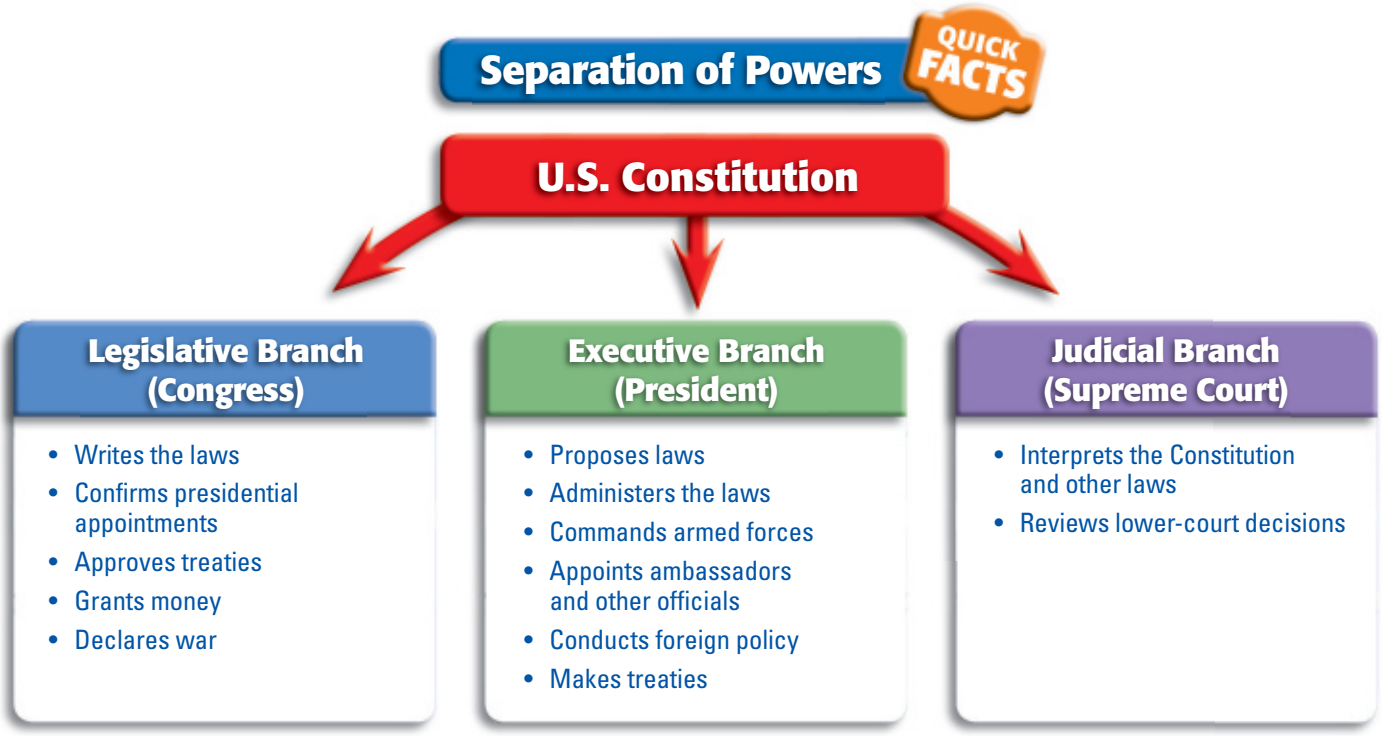
The Federal System

The framers of the Constitution wanted to create a government powerful enough to protect the rights of citizens and defend the country against its enemies. To do so, they set up a **federal system** of government, a system that divided powers between the states and the federal government.

The Constitution assigns certain powers to the national government. These are called delegated powers. Among them are the rights to coin money and to regulate trade. Reserved powers are those kept by the states. These powers include creating local governments and holding elections. Concurrent powers are those shared by the federal and state governments. They include taxing, borrowing money, and enforcing laws.

Sometimes, Congress has had to stretch its delegated powers to deal with new or unexpected issues. A clause in the Constitution states that Congress may "make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper" for carrying out its duties. This clause, called the elastic clause—because it can be stretched (like elastic)—provides flexibility for the government. The federal government has used this clause to provide public services such as funding for the arts and humanities.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How is power divided between the federal and state governments?



Legislative Branch

The federal government has three branches, each with **distinct** responsibilities and powers. This separation balances the branches and keeps any one of them from growing too powerful. The first branch of government is the legislative branch, or Congress. It makes the nation's laws. Article I of the Constitution divides Congress into the House of Representatives and the Senate.

With 435 members, the House of Representatives is the larger congressional house. The U.S. Census, a population count made every 10 years, determines how many members represent each state. A system called apportionment keeps total membership at 435. If one state gains a member, another state loses one. Members must be at least 25 years old, live in the state where they were elected, and have been U.S. citizens for seven years. They serve two-year terms.

The Senate has two members, or senators, per state. Senators represent the interests of the whole state, not just a district. They must be at least 30 years old, have been U.S. citizens for nine years, and live in the state they represent. They serve six-year terms. The senior senator of a state is the one who has served the longer of the two. Members of Congress can serve an unlimited number of terms in office.

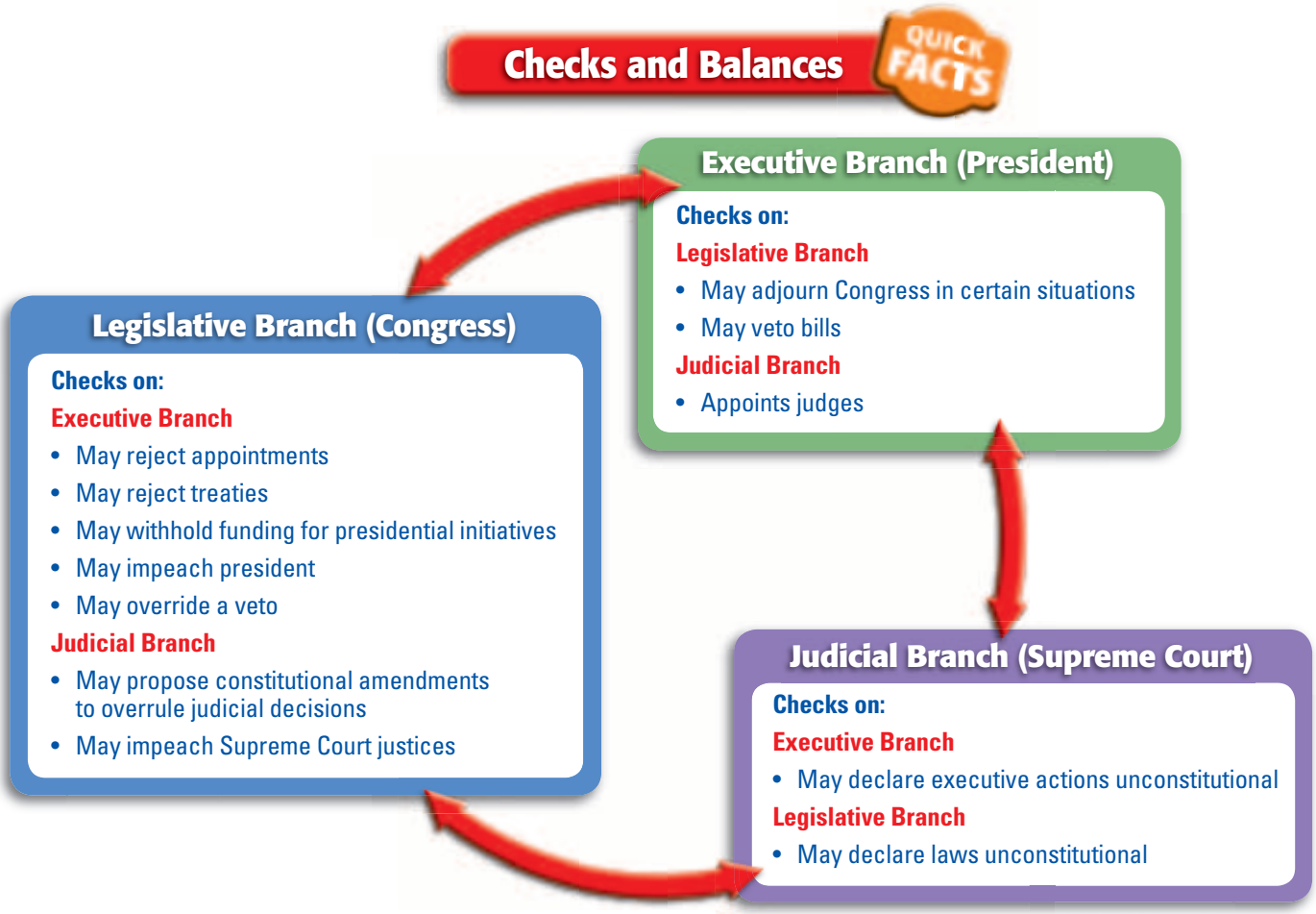
The political party with more members in each house is the majority party. The one with fewer members is the minority party. The leader of the House of Representatives, or Speaker of the House, is elected by House members from the majority party.

The U.S. vice president serves as president of the Senate. He takes no part in Senate debates but can vote to break ties. If he is absent, the president pro tempore (pro tem for short) leads the Senate. There is no law for how the Senate must choose this position, but it traditionally goes to the majority party's senator who has served the longest.

Congress begins sessions, or meetings, each year in the first week of January. Both houses do most of their work in committees. Each committee studies certain types of bills, or suggested laws. For example, all bills about taxes begin in the House Ways and Means Committee.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
distinct
separate

READING CHECK **Comparing and Contrasting**
What are the similarities in requirements for members of the House of Representatives and the Senate? What are the differences?



Executive Branch

Article II of the Constitution lists the powers of the executive branch. This branch enforces the laws passed by Congress.

President and Vice President

As head of the executive branch, the president is the most powerful elected leader in the United States. To qualify for the presidency or vice presidency, one must be a native-born U.S. citizen at least 35 years old. The president must also have been a U.S. resident for 14 years.

Americans elect a president and vice president every four years. Franklin D. Roosevelt, who won four times, was the only president to serve more than two terms. Now, the Twenty-second Amendment limits presidents to two terms. If a president dies, resigns, or is removed from office, the vice president becomes president for the rest of the term.

The House of Representatives can **impeach**, or vote to bring charges of serious crimes against, a president. Impeachment cases are tried in the Senate. If a president is found guilty, Congress can remove him from office. In 1868 Andrew Johnson was the first president to be impeached. President Bill Clinton was impeached in 1998. However, the Senate found each man not guilty.

Working with Congress

The president and Congress are often on different sides of an issue. However, they must still work together.

Congress passes laws. The president, however, can ask Congress to pass or reject bills. The president also can **veto**, or cancel, laws Congress has passed. Congress can try to override, or undo, the veto. However, this is difficult since it takes a two-thirds

majority vote in each house. To carry out laws affecting the Constitution, treaties, and statutes, the president issues **executive orders**. These commands have the power of law. The president may grant **pardons**, or freedom from punishment, to persons convicted of federal crimes or facing criminal charges.

The president also commands the armed forces. In emergencies, the president can call on U.S. troops. Only Congress, however, can declare war. Other executive duties include conducting foreign relations and creating treaties. Executive departments do most of the executive branch work. As of 2004 there were 15 such departments. The president chooses department heads, who are called secretaries, and the Senate approves them. The heads make up the cabinet, which advises the president.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**
What is the president's most important power?

Judicial Branch

The third branch of government, the judicial branch, is made up of a system of federal courts headed by the U.S. Supreme Court. The Constitution created the Supreme Court, but the Judiciary Act of 1789 created the system of lower district and circuit courts.

Article III generally outlines the courts' duties. Federal courts can strike down a state or federal law if the court finds a law unconstitutional. Congress can then try to revise the law to make it constitutional.

District Courts

The president makes appointments to federal courts. In an effort to keep federal judges free of party influence, the judges are given life appointments. The lower federal courts are divided according to cases over which they have jurisdiction, or authority. Each state has at least one of the 94 district courts.

THE IMPACT TODAY
In 2002 the new Department of Homeland Security was given cabinet-level status to protect against terrorism.



Supreme Court Decisions

Background of the Court

The rest of the Supreme Court decisions you see in this book will highlight important cases of the Court. But in this first one, we'll discuss the history of the Court.

The first Supreme Court met in 1790 at the Royal Exchange in New York City. The ground floor of this building was an open-air market. When the national government moved to Philadelphia, the Court met in basement rooms in Independence Hall. Once in Washington, the Court heard cases in the Capitol building until the present Supreme Court building was completed in 1932.

Circuit Riding

Today the Supreme Court holds court only in Washington, D.C. In the past, however, the justices had to travel through assigned circuits, hearing cases together with a district judge in a practice known as riding circuit.

The justices complained bitterly about the inconvenience of travel, which was often over unpaved roads and in bad weather. This system was not just inconvenient to the justices, however. Some people worried about the fairness of a system that required justices who had heard cases at trial to rule on them again on appeal. Other people, however, thought that the practice helped keep the justices in touch with the needs and feelings of the average citizen. Eventually, circuit riding interfered so much with the increased amount of business of the Supreme Court that Congress passed a law ending the practice in the late 1800s.

Path to the Supreme Court

When a case is decided by a state or federal court, the losing side may have a chance to appeal the decision to a higher court. Under the federal system, this higher court is called the court of appeals. A person who loses in that court may then appeal to the Supreme Court to review the case. But the Supreme Court does not have to accept all appeals. It usually chooses to hear only cases in which there is an important legal principle to be decided or if two federal courts of appeals disagree on how an issue should be decided.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

1. What are two reasons why the practice of circuit riding ended?
2. Why do you think the Supreme Court does not hear every case that is appealed to it?

FOCUS ON READING

Jot down a short summary of the appeals process after reading this paragraph.

Courts of Appeals

If someone convicted of a crime believes the trial was unfair, he or she may take the case to the court of appeals. There are 13 courts of appeals. Each has a panel of judges to decide if cases heard in the lower courts were tried appropriately. If the judges uphold, or accept, the original decision, the original outcome stands. Otherwise, the case may be retried in the lower court.

Supreme Court

THE IMPACT TODAY

Supreme Court rulings can have dramatic effects on the nation, as in *Bush* v. *Gore*, which decided the outcome of the 2000 presidential election.

After a case is decided by the court of appeals, the losing side may appeal the decision to the Supreme Court. Thousands of cases go to the Supreme Court yearly in the hope of a hearing, but the Court has time to hear only about 100. Generally, the cases heard involve important constitutional or public-interest issues. If the Court declines to hear a case, the court of appeals decision is final.

Nine justices sit on the Supreme Court. The chief justice of the United States leads the Court. Unlike the president and members of Congress, there are no specific constitutional requirements for becoming a justice.

In recent decades, the Supreme Court has become more diverse. In 1967 **Thurgood Marshall** became the first African American justice. **Sandra Day O'Connor** became the first female Court justice after her 1981 appointment by President Ronald Reagan.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Describe the structure and responsibilities of the judicial branch.

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned about the balance between the different branches of the federal government. In the next section you will learn about the Bill of Rights.

Section 1 Assessment

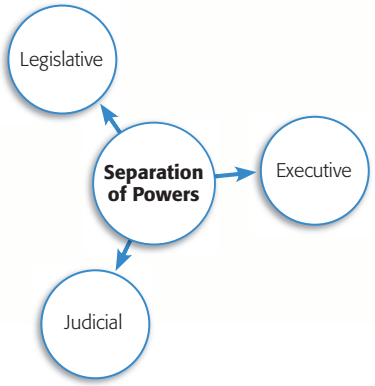
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP6

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What type of government did the Constitution establish for the United States?
   b. Contrast What is the difference between delegated, reserved, and concurrent powers?
2. **a. Recall** What role does the vice president serve in the legislative branch?
   b. Compare and Contrast In what ways are the Senate and the House of Representatives similar and different?
   c. Elaborate Why do you think the requirements for serving in the Senate are stricter than those for serving in the House of Representatives?
3. **a. Describe** What powers are granted to the president?
   b. Make Generalizations Why is it important that the president and Congress work together in resolving governmental issues?
   c. Evaluate What do you think is the most important power granted to the president? Why?
4. **a. Explain** What is the main power of the judicial branch?
   b. Evaluate Which branch of government do you feel is most important? Explain your answer.

Critical Thinking

5. **Categorizing** Review your notes on the branches of government. Then copy the web diagram below and use it to show two powers of each branch of government.



FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Gathering Information about the Constitution** Look back through what you've just read about the Constitution. Make a list of four or five of the most important features of the Constitution. You'll put that list on the second page of your pamphlet.



BIOGRAPHY

James Madison

What would you do to create a brand-new government?

When did he live? 1751–1836

Where did he live? Like several of the founding fathers, James Madison was a Virginian. He grew up in the town of Montpelier, and he kept a home there for his whole life.

What did he do? Through the persuasive power of his writing, Madison helped create the foundations of the U.S. government.

Why is he important? Madison is known as the Father of the Constitution. A brilliant thinker, he provided many of the basic ideas in the Constitution. He argued tirelessly for a strong national government, for separate branches of government, and for rights such as freedom of religion. He then rallied support for adoption of the Constitution and the Bill of Rights. In 1809 Madison became the fourth president of the United States. As president, he led the country through another war with Britain, the War of 1812. He and his wife, Dolley, were forced to flee Washington temporarily when the British invaded the capital and set fire to the White House.

Summarizing Why is Madison known as the Father of the Constitution?

KEY EVENTS

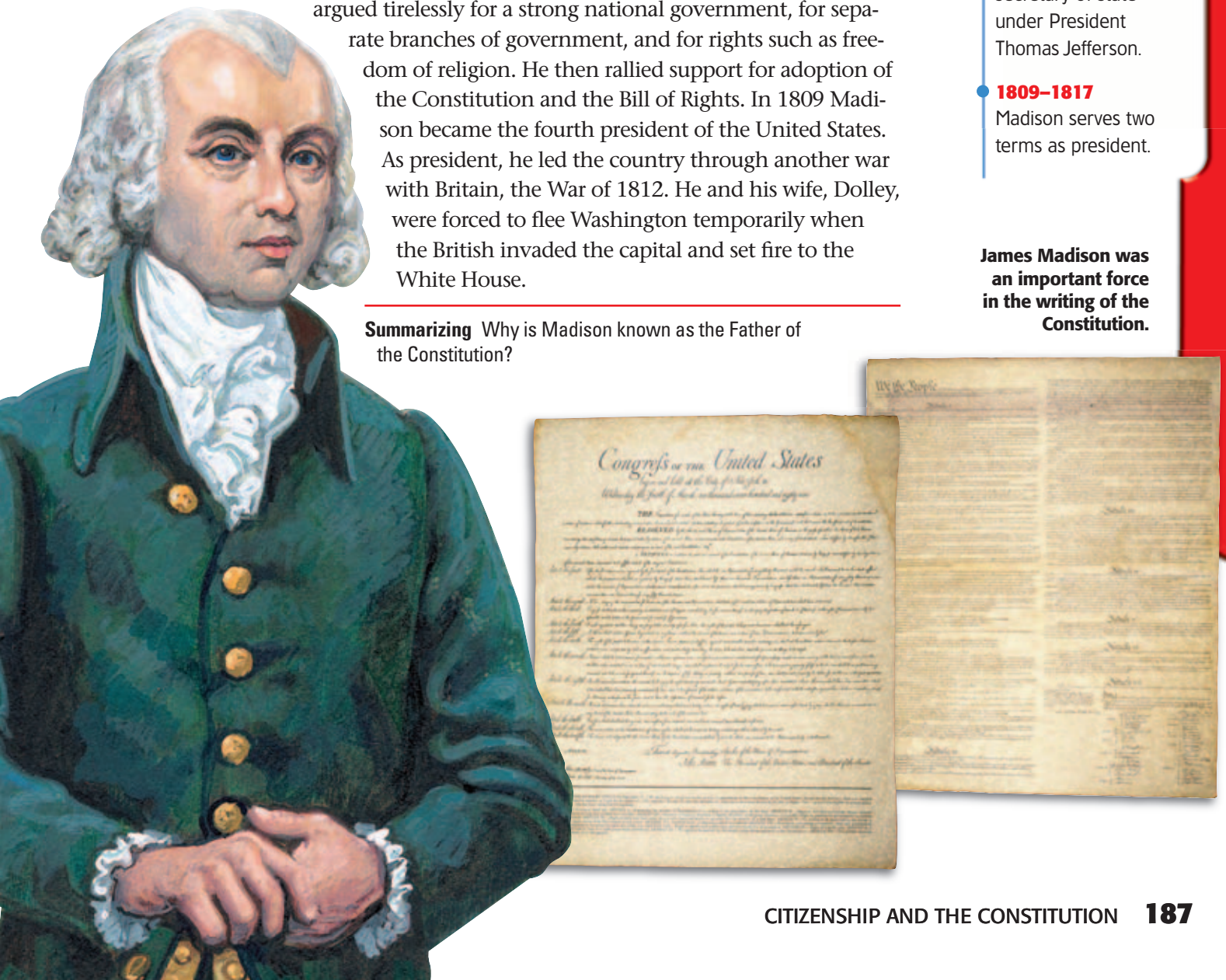
1780
Madison serves in the Continental Congress.

1787
Madison keeps a written record of the Constitutional Convention.

1787–1788
Madison helps write the *Federalist Papers*, urging support for the Constitution.

1801–1809
Madison serves as secretary of state under President Thomas Jefferson.

1809–1817
Madison serves two terms as president.



James Madison was an important force in the writing of the Constitution.

The Constitution of the United States

Preamble

The short and dignified preamble explains the goals of the new government under the Constitution.

We the People of the United States, in Order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

Note: The parts of the Constitution that have been lined through are no longer in force or no longer apply because of later amendments. The titles of the sections and articles are added for easier reference.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

The New York State Constitution of 1777 served as a model for the U.S. Constitution. Though influential, New York's constitution was not perfect. Many of its administrative procedures were cumbersome and inefficient. It also had a system of vetoes that allowed special councils to reject decisions made by the governor and the Supreme Court. Many of these problems were fixed when the constitution was revised in 1821.

Article I The Legislature

Section 1. Congress

All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

Section 2. The House of Representatives

1. Elections The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

2. Qualifications No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age of twenty five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3. Number of Representatives Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers~~, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including~~ **~~those bound to Service~~**[1] ~~for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of~~ **~~all other Persons~~**.[2] The actual **Enumeration**[3] shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have at Least one Representative~~; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New-York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.~~

4. Vacancies When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

5. Officers and Impeachment The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other Officers; and shall have the sole Power of impeachment.

Legislative Branch

Article I explains how the legislative branch, called Congress, is organized. The chief purpose of the legislative branch is to make laws. Congress is made up of the Senate and the House of Representatives.

The House of Representatives

The number of members each state has in the House is based on the population of the individual state. In 1929 Congress permanently fixed the size of the House at 435 members.

Vocabulary

[1] **those bound to Service** indentured servants

[2] **all other Persons** slaves

[3] **Enumeration** census or official population count

Section 3. The Senate

1. Number of Senators The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, ~~chosen by the Legislature thereof,~~ for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

2. Classifying Terms Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second Year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one third may be chosen every second Year; ~~and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.~~

3. Qualifications No Person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4. Role of Vice President The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. Officers The Senate shall choose their other Officers, and also a President **pro tempore**,[4] in the Absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

6. Impeachment Trials The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all **Impeachments**.[5] When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two thirds of the Members present.

7. Punishment for Impeachment Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from Office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any Office of honor, Trust or Profit under the United States: but the Party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial, Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.

The Vice President

The only duty that the Constitution assigns to the vice president is to preside over meetings of the Senate. Modern presidents have usually given their vice presidents more responsibilities.

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT If the House of Representatives charges a government official with wrongdoing, the Senate acts as a court to decide if the official is guilty.
How does the power of impeachment represent part of the system of checks and balances?

Vocabulary

[4] **pro tempore** temporarily

[5] **Impeachments** official accusations of federal wrongdoing

Federal Office Terms and Requirements — QUICK FACTS

Position	Term	Minimum Age	Residency	Citizenship
President	4 years	35	14 years in the U.S.	natural-born
Vice President	4 years	35	14 years in the U.S.	natural-born
Supreme Court Justice	unlimited	none	none	none
Senator	6 years	30	state in which elected	9 years
Representative	2 years	25	state in which elected	7 years

Section 4. Congressional Elections

1. Regulations The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the Places of choosing Senators.

2. Sessions ~~The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.~~

Section 5. Rules/Procedures

1. Quorum Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a **Quorum**[6] to do Business; but a smaller Number may **adjourn**[7] from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

2. Rules and Conduct Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two thirds, expel a Member.

3. Records Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal.

4. Adjournment Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

Section 6. Payment

1. Salary The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.

2. Restrictions No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the **Emoluments**[8] whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his **Continuance**[9] in Office.

Vocabulary

[6] **Quorum** the minimum number of people needed to conduct business

[7] **adjourn** to stop indefinitely

[8] **Emoluments** salary

[9] **Continuance** term

Vocabulary

[10] **Bills** proposed laws

Section 7. How a Bill Becomes a Law

1. Tax Bills All **Bills**[10] for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

2. Lawmaking Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States: If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the Objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each House respectively. If any Bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same shall be a Law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.

3. Role of the President Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the Same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT The framers felt that because members of the House are elected every two years, representatives would listen to the public and seek its approval before passing taxes. **How does Section 7 address the colonial demand of "no taxation without representation"?**

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT The veto power of the president is one of the important checks and balances in the Constitution. **Why do you think the framers included the ability of Congress to override a veto?**

How a Bill Becomes a Law

1. A member of the House or the Senate introduces a bill and refers it to a committee.
2. The House or Senate Committee may approve, rewrite, or kill the bill.



3. The House or the Senate debates and votes on its version of the bill.
4. House and Senate conference committee members work out the differences between the two versions.
5. Both houses of Congress pass the revised bill.



Section 8.

Powers Granted to Congress

1. Taxation The Congress shall have Power To lay and collect Taxes, **Duties**,[11] **Imposts**[12] and **Excises**,[13] to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defense and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2. Credit To borrow Money on the credit of the United States;

3. Commerce To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;

4. Naturalization and Bankruptcy To establish an uniform **Rule of Naturalization**,[14] and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;

5. Money To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;

6. Counterfeiting To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the **Securities**[15] and current Coin of the United States;

7. Post Office To establish Post Offices and post Roads;

8. Patents and Copyrights To promote the Progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries;

9. Courts To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;

10. International Law To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations;

LINKING TO TODAY

Native Americans and the Commerce Clause

The commerce clause gives Congress the power to "regulate Commerce with . . . the Indian Tribes." The clause has been interpreted to mean that the states cannot tax or interfere with businesses on Indian reservations, but that the federal government can. It also allows American Indian nations to develop their own governments and laws. These laws, however, can be challenged in federal court. Although reservation land usually belongs to the government of the Indian group, it is administered by the U.S. government.

Drawing Conclusions How would you describe the status of American Indian nations under the commerce clause?

Vocabulary

[11] **Duties** tariffs

[12] **Imposts** taxes

[13] **Excises** internal taxes on the manufacture, sale, or consumption of a commodity

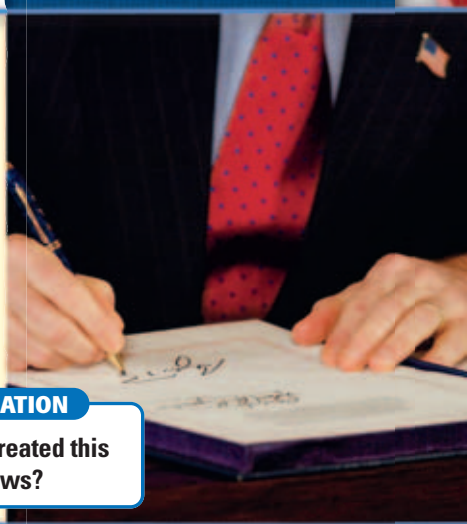
[14] **Rule of Naturalization** a law by which a foreign-born person becomes a citizen

[15] **Securities** bonds



6 The president signs or vetoes the bill.

7 Two-thirds majority vote of Congress is needed to approve a vetoed bill. Bill becomes a law.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

Why do you think the framers created this complex system for adopting laws?

Vocabulary

[16] **Letters of Marque and Reprisal** documents issued by governments allowing merchant ships to arm themselves and attack ships of an enemy nation

11. War To declare War, grant **Letters of Marque and Reprisal**,[16] and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;

12. Army To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;

13. Navy To provide and maintain a Navy;

14. Regulation of the Military To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces;

15. Militia To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;

16. Regulation of the Militia To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

17. District of Columbia To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings;—And

The Elastic Clause

The framers of the Constitution wanted a national government that was strong enough to be effective. This section lists the powers given to Congress. The last portion of Section 8 contains the so-called elastic clause.

18. Necessary and Proper Clause To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.



Section 9. Powers Denied Congress

1. Slave Trade ~~The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.~~

2. Habeas Corpus The Privilege of the **Writ of Habeas Corpus**[17] shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

3. Illegal Punishment No **Bill of Attainder**[18] or **ex post facto Law**[19] shall be passed.

4. Direct Taxes No **Capitation**,[20] or other direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

5. Export Taxes No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

6. No Favorites No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another; nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

7. Public Money No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.

8. Titles of Nobility No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.

Section 10. Powers Denied the States

1. Restrictions No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

2. Import and Export Taxes No State shall, without the Consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing it's inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Control of the Congress.

3. Peacetime and War Restraints No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of delay.

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT Although Congress has implied powers, there are also limits to its powers. Section 9 lists powers that are denied to the federal government. Several of the clauses protect the people of the United States from unjust treatment. **In what ways does the Constitution limit the powers of the federal government?**

Vocabulary

[17] **Writ of Habeas Corpus** a court order that requires the government to bring a prisoner to court and explain why he or she is being held

[18] **Bill of Attainder** a law declaring that a person is guilty of a particular crime

[19] **ex post facto Law** a law that is made effective prior to the date that it was passed and therefore punishes people for acts that were not illegal at the time

[20] **Capitation** a direct uniform tax imposed on each head, or person

Executive Branch

The president is the chief of the executive branch. It is the job of the president to enforce the laws. The framers wanted the president's and vice president's terms of office and manner of selection to be different from those of members of Congress. They decided on four-year terms, but they had a difficult time agreeing on how to select the president and vice president. The framers finally set up an electoral system, which varies greatly from our electoral process today.

Presidential Elections

In 1845 Congress set the Tuesday following the first Monday in November of every fourth year as the general election date for selecting presidential electors.

Article II The Executive

Section 1. The Presidency

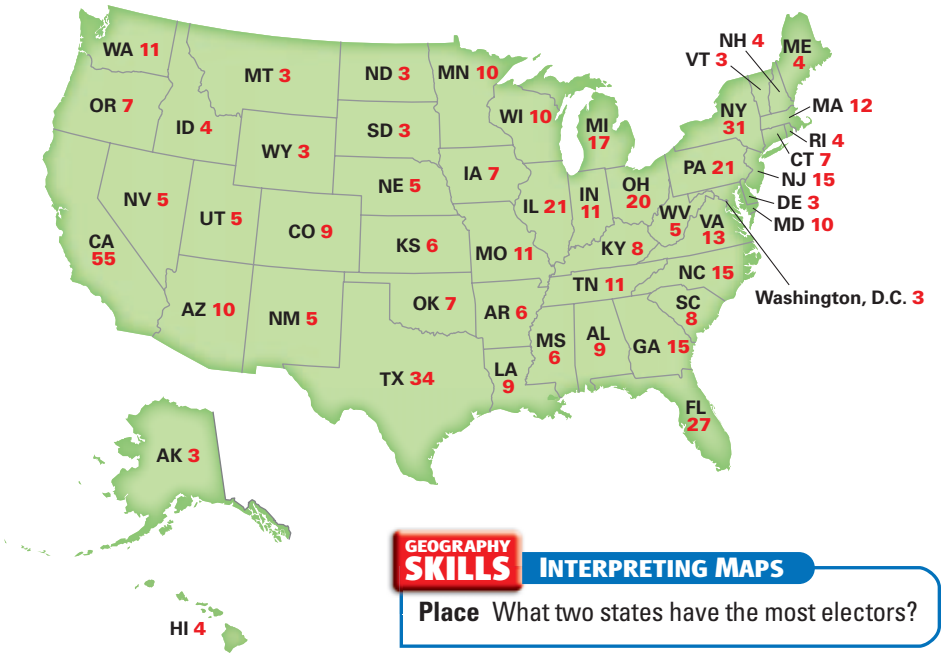
1. Terms of Office The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows:

2. Electoral College Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole Number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

3. Former Method of Electing President ~~The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by Ballot for two Persons, of whom one at least shall not be an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall~~

The Electoral College

11 Number of Electors



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

Place What two states have the most electors?

~~then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such Majority, and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by Ballot one of them for President; and if no Person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote; A quorum for this purpose shall consist of a Member or Members from two thirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the Person having the greatest Number of Votes of the Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall choose from them by Ballot the Vice President.~~

4. Election Day The Congress may determine the Time of choosing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. Qualifications No Person except a natural born Citizen~~, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution~~, shall be eligible to the Office of President; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

6. Succession In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office, the Same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation or Inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

7. Salary The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Oath of Office Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States."

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT The youngest elected president was John F. Kennedy; he was 43 years old when he was inaugurated. (Theodore Roosevelt was 42 when he assumed office after the assassination of McKinley.) **What is the minimum required age for the office of president?**

Presidential Salary

In 1999 Congress voted to set future presidents' salaries at $400,000 per year. The president also receives an annual expense account. The president must pay taxes only on the salary.

Commander in Chief

Today the president is in charge of the army, navy, air force, marines, and coast guard. Only Congress, however, can decide if the United States will declare war.

Appointments

Most of the president's appointments to office must be approved by the Senate.

Vocabulary

[21] **Reprieves** delays of punishment

[22] **Pardons** releases from the legal penalties associated with a crime

The State of the Union

Every year the president presents to Congress a State of the Union message. In this message, the president introduces and explains a legislative plan for the coming year.

Section 2. Powers of Presidency

1. Military Powers The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any Subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant **Reprieves**[21] and **Pardons**[22] for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

2. Treaties and Appointments He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law: but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

3. Vacancies The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

Section 3. Presidential Duties

He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the Officers of the United States.

Section 4. Impeachment

The President, Vice President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

Article III The Judiciary

Section 1. Federal Courts and Judges

The judicial Power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

Section 2. Authority of the Courts

1. General Authority The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority;—to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls;—to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction;—to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party;—to Controversies between two or more States ~~—between a State and Citizens of another State;~~ —between Citizens of different States;—between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States~~, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.~~

2. Supreme Authority In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.



Judicial Branch

The Articles of Confederation did not set up a federal court system. One of the first points that the framers of the Constitution agreed upon was to set up a national judiciary. In the Judiciary Act of 1789, Congress provided for the establishment of lower courts, such as district courts, circuit courts of appeals, and various other federal courts. The judicial system provides a check on the legislative branch: it can declare a law unconstitutional.

3. Trial by Jury The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

Section 3. Treason

1. Definition Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

2. Punishment The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work **Corruption of Blood**,[23] or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attainted.

Vocabulary

[23] **Corruption of Blood** punishing the family of a person convicted of treason

Article IV Relations among States

Section 1. State Acts and Records

Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

The States

States must honor the laws, records, and court decisions of other states. A person cannot escape a legal obligation by moving from one state to another.

Section 2. Rights of Citizens

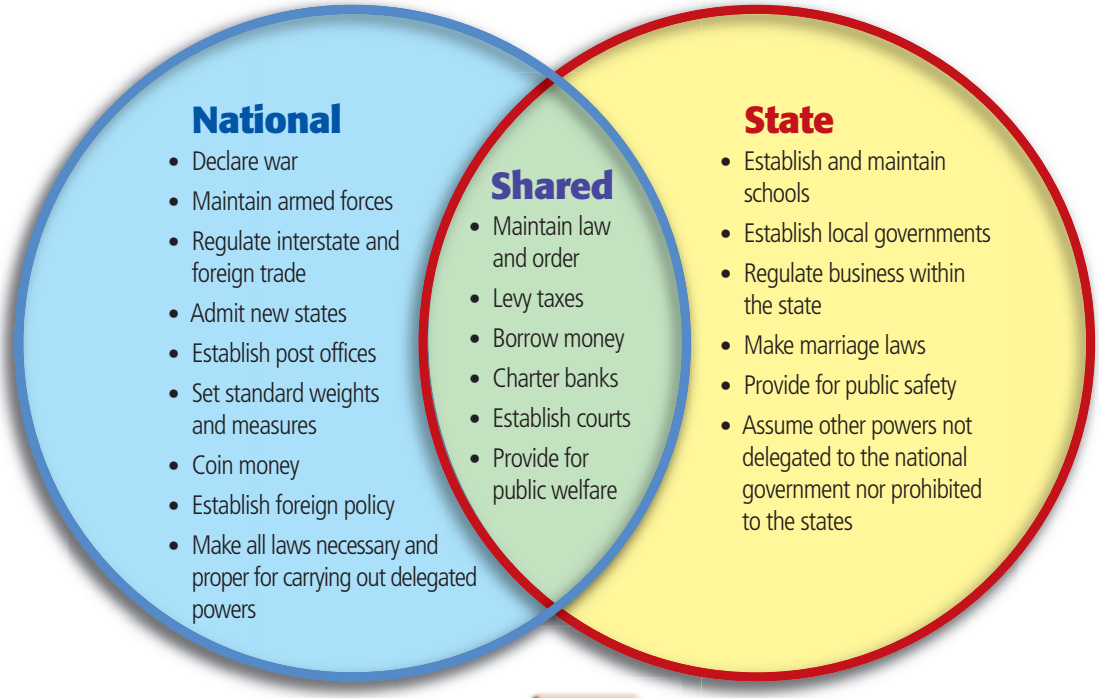
1. Citizenship The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

2. Extradition A Person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

3. Fugitive Slaves ~~No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.~~

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT The framers wanted to ensure that citizens could determine how state governments would operate. **How does the need to respect the laws of each state support the principle of popular sovereignty?**

Federalism



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

Why does the power to declare war belong only to the national government?

Section 3. New States

1. Admission New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or Parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

2. Congressional Authority The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

Section 4. Guarantees to the States

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion; and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened), against domestic Violence.

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT In a republic, voters elect representatives to act in their best interest. **How does Article IV protect the practice of republicanism in the United States?**

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT America's founders may not have realized how long the Constitution would last, but they did set up a system for changing or adding to it. They did not want to make it easy to change the Constitution. **By what methods may the Constitution be amended? Under what sorts of circumstances do you think an amendment might be necessary?**

Article V Amending the Constitution

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either Case, shall be valid to all Intents and Purposes, as Part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided that ~~no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year One thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.~~

National Supremacy

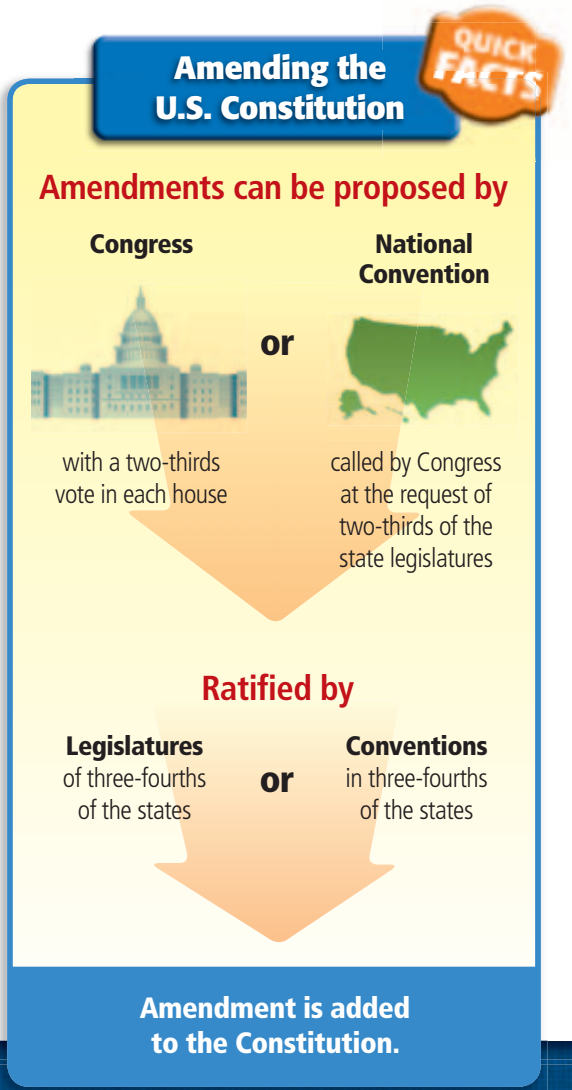
One of the biggest problems facing the delegates to the Constitutional Convention was the question of what would happen if a state law and a federal law conflicted. Which law would be followed? Who would decide? The second clause of Article VI answers those questions. When a federal law and a state law disagree, the federal law overrides the state law. The Constitution and other federal laws are the "supreme Law of the Land." This clause is often called the supremacy clause.

Article VI Supremacy of National Government

All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the Authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a Qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.



Article VII Ratification

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same.

Done in Convention by the Unanimous Consent of the States present the Seventeenth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and Eighty seven and of the Independence of the United States of America the Twelfth In witness whereof We have hereunto subscribed our Names,

George Washington—
President and deputy from Virginia

Delaware
George Read
Gunning Bedford Jr.
John Dickinson
Richard Bassett
Jacob Broom

Maryland
James McHenry
Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer
Daniel Carroll

Virginia
John Blair
James Madison Jr.

North Carolina
William Blount
Richard Dobbs Spaight
Hugh Williamson

South Carolina
John Rutledge
Charles Cotesworth Pinckney
Charles Pinckney
Pierce Butler

Georgia
William Few
Abraham Baldwin

New Hampshire
John Langdon
Nicholas Gilman

Massachusetts
Nathaniel Gorham
Rufus King

Connecticut
William Samuel Johnson
Roger Sherman

New York
Alexander Hamilton

New Jersey
William Livingston
David Brearley
William Paterson
Jonathan Dayton

Pennsylvania
Benjamin Franklin
Thomas Mifflin
Robert Morris
George Clymer
Thomas FitzSimons
Jared Ingersoll
James Wilson
Gouverneur Morris

Attest:
William Jackson, Secretary

Ratification

The Articles of Confederation called for all 13 states to approve any revision to the Articles. The Constitution required that 9 out of the 13 states would be needed to ratify the Constitution. The first state to ratify was Delaware, on December 7, 1787. Almost two-and-a-half years later, on May 29, 1790, Rhode Island became the last state to ratify the Constitution.

Constitutional Amendments

Note: The first 10 amendments to the Constitution were ratified on December 15, 1791, and form what is known as the Bill of Rights.

Amendments 1–10. The Bill of Rights

Amendment I

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

Amendment II

A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

Amendment III

No Soldier shall, in time of peace be **quartered**[24] in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

Amendment IV

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no **Warrants**[25] shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

Amendment V

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise **infamous**[26] crime, unless on a presentment or **indictment**[27] of a Grand Jury, except in

Bill of Rights

One of the conditions set by several states for ratifying the Constitution was the inclusion of a bill of rights. Many people feared that a stronger central government might take away basic rights of the people that had been guaranteed in state constitutions.

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT The First Amendment forbids Congress from making any "law respecting an establishment of religion" or restraining the freedom to practice religion as one chooses. **Why is freedom of religion an important right?**

Rights of the Accused

The Fifth, Sixth, and Seventh Amendments describe the procedures that courts must follow when trying people accused of crimes.

Vocabulary

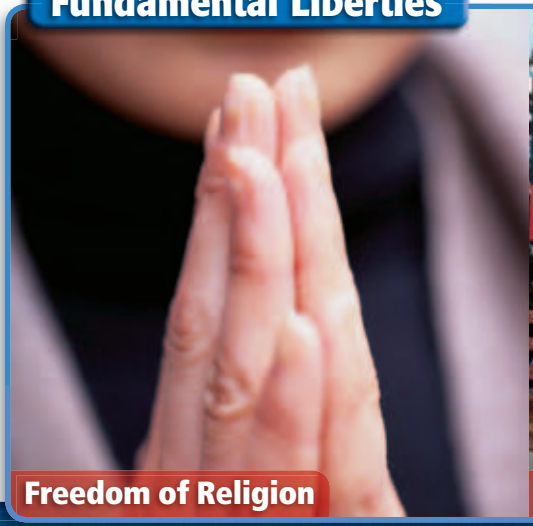
[24] **quartered** housed

[25] **Warrants** written orders authorizing a person to make an arrest, a seizure, or a search

[26] **infamous** disgraceful

[27] **indictment** the act of charging with a crime

Fundamental Liberties



Freedom of Religion



Freedom of Speech

cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

Amendment VI

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously **ascertained**[28] by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

Amendment VII

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury, shall be otherwise reexamined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

Amendment VIII

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

Amendment IX

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Amendment X

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

Trials

The Sixth Amendment makes several guarantees, including a prompt trial and a trial by a jury chosen from the state and district in which the crime was committed.

Vocabulary

[28] **ascertained** found out

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT

The Ninth and Tenth Amendments were added because not every right of the people or of the states could be listed in the Constitution. **How do the Ninth and Tenth Amendments limit the power of the federal government?**



Freedom of the Press


Freedom of Assembly



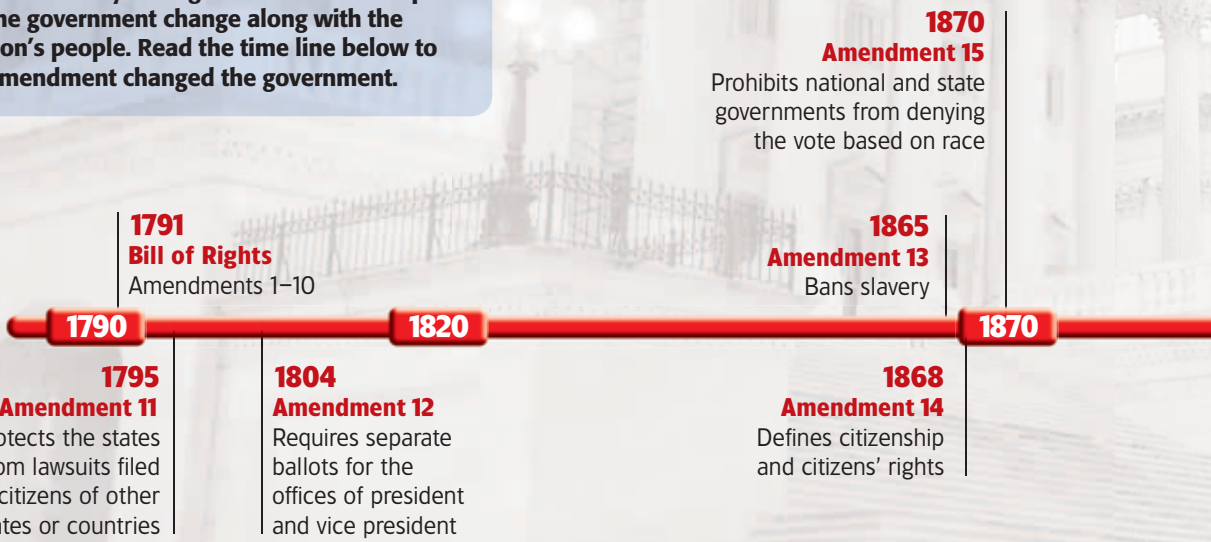
Freedom to Petition the Government

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

Which amendment guarantees these fundamental freedoms?

Amendments to the U.S. Constitution

The Constitution has been amended only 27 times since it was ratified more than 200 years ago. Amendments help the structure of the government change along with the values of the nation's people. Read the time line below to learn how each amendment changed the government.



Amendments 11–27

Amendment XI

Passed by Congress March 4, 1794. Ratified February 7, 1795.

The Judicial power of the United States shall not be **construed**[29] to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

Vocabulary

[29] **construed** explained or interpreted

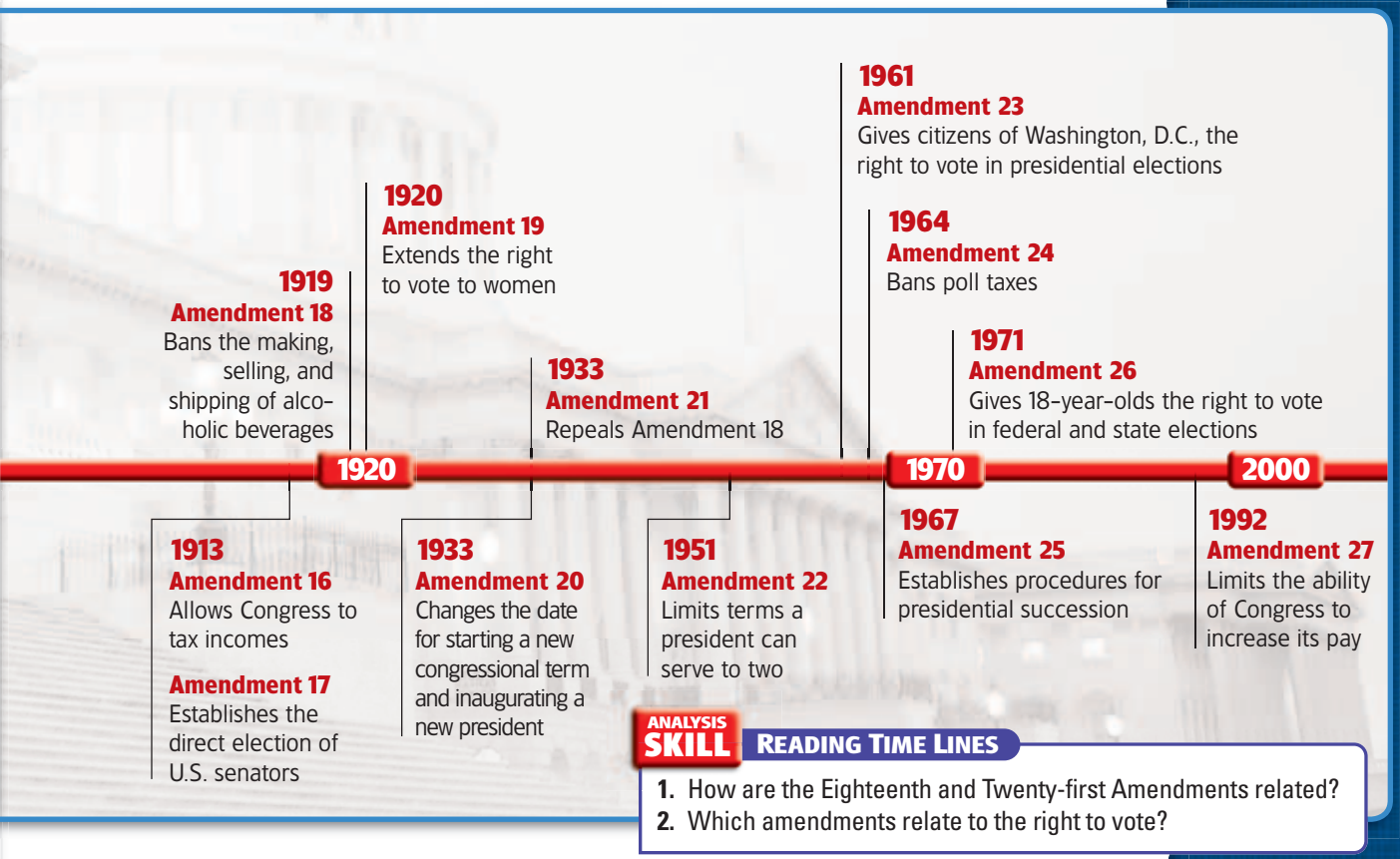
Amendment XII

Passed by Congress December 9, 1803. Ratified June 15, 1804.

The Electors shall meet in their respective states and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the

President and Vice President

The Twelfth Amendment changed the election procedure for president and vice president.



ANALYSIS SKILL **READING TIME LINES**

1. How are the Eighteenth and Twenty-first Amendments related?
2. Which amendments relate to the right to vote?

Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted;—The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. ~~And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.~~—The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

Abolishing Slavery

Although some slaves had been freed during the Civil War, slavery was not abolished until the Thirteenth Amendment took effect.

Protecting the Rights of Citizens

In 1833 the Supreme Court ruled that the Bill of Rights limited the federal government but not the state governments. This ruling was interpreted to mean that states were able to keep African Americans from becoming state citizens and keep the Bill of Rights from protecting them. The Fourteenth Amendment defines citizenship and prevents states from interfering in the rights of citizens of the United States.

Amendment XIII

Passed by Congress January 31, 1865. Ratified December 6, 1865.

1. Slavery Banned Neither slavery nor **involuntary servitude**,[30] except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2. Enforcement Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment XIV

Passed by Congress June 13, 1866. Ratified July 9, 1868.

1. Citizenship Defined All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2. Voting Rights Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, ~~excluding Indians not taxed~~. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the Executive and Judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the ~~male~~ inhabitants of such State, ~~being twenty-one years of age~~, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion, or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such ~~male~~ citizens shall bear to the whole number of ~~male~~ citizens ~~twenty-one years of age~~ in such State.

3. Rebels Banned from Government No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

4. Payment of Debts The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and

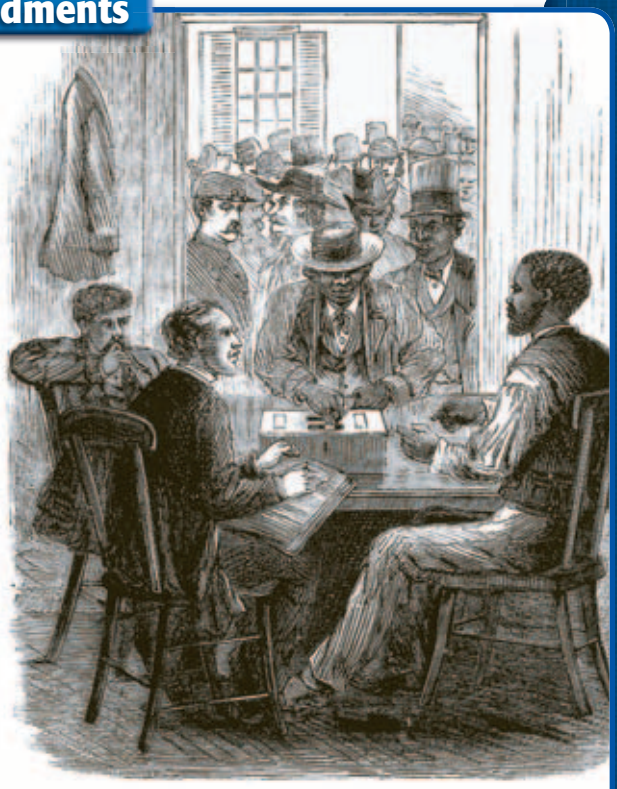
Vocabulary

[30] **involuntary servitude** being forced to work against one's will

The Reconstruction Amendments

The Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments are often called the Reconstruction Amendments. This is because they arose during Reconstruction, the period of American history following the Civil War. The country was reconstructing itself after that terrible conflict. A key aspect of Reconstruction was extending the rights of citizenship to former slaves.

The Thirteenth Amendment banned slavery. The Fourteenth Amendment required states to respect the freedoms listed in the Bill of Rights, thus preventing states from denying rights to African Americans. The Fifteenth Amendment gave African American men the right to vote.



African Americans participate in an election.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

Why was the Thirteenth Amendment needed?

bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, ~~or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave~~; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5. Enforcement The Congress shall have the power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

Amendment XV

Passed by Congress February 26, 1869. Ratified February 3, 1870.

1. Voting Rights The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

2. Enforcement The Congress shall have the power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment XVI

Passed by Congress July 2, 1909. Ratified February 3, 1913.

The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes on incomes, from whatever source derived, without apportionment among the several States, and without regard to any census or enumeration.

Amendment XVII

Passed by Congress May 13, 1912. Ratified April 8, 1913.

1. Senators Elected by Citizens The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, elected by the people thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote. The electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislatures.

2. Vacancies When vacancies happen in the representation of any State in the Senate, the executive authority of such State shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies: *Provided*, That the legislature of any State may empower the executive thereof to make temporary appointments until the people fill the vacancies by election as the legislature may direct.

3. Future Elections ~~This amendment shall not be so construed as to affect the election or term of any Senator chosen before it becomes valid as part of the Constitution.~~

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT The Seventeenth Amendment requires that senators be elected directly by the people instead of by the state legislatures. **What principle of our government does the Seventeenth Amendment protect?**

Amendment XVIII

Passed by Congress December 18, 1917. Ratified January 16, 1919. Repealed by Amendment XXI.

1. Liquor Banned ~~After one year from the ratification of this article the manufacture, sale, or transportation of intoxicating liquors within, the importation thereof into, or the exportation thereof from the United States and all territory subject to the jurisdiction thereof for beverage purposes is hereby prohibited.~~

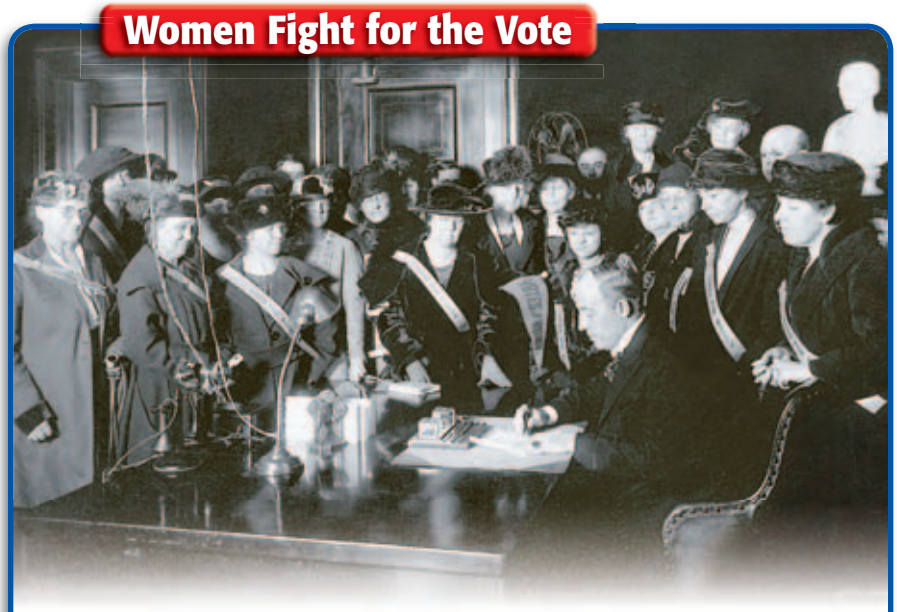
2. Enforcement ~~The Congress and the several States shall have concurrent power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.~~

3. Ratification ~~This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of the several States, as provided in the Constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the States by the Congress.~~

Prohibition

Although many people believed that the Eighteenth Amendment was good for the health and welfare of the American people, it was repealed 14 years later.

Women Fight for the Vote



To become part of the Constitution, a proposed amendment must be ratified by three-fourths of the states. Here, suffragists witness Kentucky governor Edwin P. Morrow signing the Nineteenth Amendment in January 1920. By June of that year, enough states had ratified the amendment to make it part of the Constitution. American women, after generations of struggle, had finally won the right to vote.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

What right did the Nineteenth Amendment grant?

Amendment XIX

Passed by Congress June 4, 1919. Ratified August 18, 1920.

1. Voting Rights The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of sex.

2. Enforcement Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment XX

Passed by Congress March 2, 1932. Ratified January 23, 1933.

1. Presidential Terms The terms of the President and the Vice President shall end at noon on the 20th day of January, and the terms of Senators and Representatives at noon on the 3d day of January, of the years in which such terms would have ended if this article had not been ratified; and the terms of their successors shall then begin.

Women's Suffrage

Abigail Adams and others were disappointed that the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution did not specifically include women. It took many years and much campaigning before suffrage for women was finally achieved.

Taking Office

In the original Constitution, a newly elected president and Congress did not take office until March 4, which was four months after the November election. The officials who were leaving office were called lame ducks because they had little influence during those four months. The Twentieth Amendment changed the date that the new president and Congress take office. Members of Congress now take office during the first week of January, and the president takes office on January 20.

2. Meeting of Congress The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall begin at noon on the 3d day of January, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

3. Succession of Vice President If, at the time fixed for the beginning of the term of the President, the President elect shall have died, the Vice President elect shall become President. If a President shall not have been chosen before the time fixed for the beginning of his term, or if the President elect shall have failed to qualify, then the Vice President elect shall act as President until a President shall have qualified; and the Congress may by law provide for the case wherein neither a President elect nor a Vice President shall have qualified, declaring who shall then act as President, or the manner in which one who is to act shall be selected, and such person shall act accordingly until a President or Vice President shall have qualified.

4. Succession by Vote of Congress The Congress may by law provide for the case of the death of any of the persons from whom the House of Representatives may choose a President whenever the right of choice shall have devolved upon them, and for the case of the death of any of the persons from whom the Senate may choose a Vice President whenever the right of choice shall have devolved upon them.

5. Ratification ~~Sections 1 and 2 shall take effect on the 15th day of October following the ratification of this article.~~

6. Ratification ~~This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission.~~

Amendment XXI

Passed by Congress February 20, 1933. Ratified December 5, 1933.

1. 18th Amendment Repealed The eighteenth article of amendment to the Constitution of the United States is hereby repealed.

2. Liquor Allowed by Law The transportation or importation into any State, Territory, or Possession of the United States for delivery or use therein of intoxicating liquors, in violation of the laws thereof, is hereby prohibited.

3. Ratification ~~This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by conventions in the several States, as provided in the Constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the States by the Congress.~~

Amendment XXII

Passed by Congress March 21, 1947. Ratified February 27, 1951.

1. Term Limits No person shall be elected to the office of the President more than twice, and no person who has held the office of President, or acted as President, for more than two years of a term to which some other person was elected President shall be elected to the office of President more than once. ~~But this Article shall not apply to any person holding the office of President when this Article was proposed by Congress, and shall not prevent any person who may be holding the office of President, or acting as President, during the term within which this Article becomes operative from holding the office of President or acting as President during the remainder of such term.~~

2. Ratification ~~This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States within seven years from the date of its submission to the States by the Congress.~~

EXPLORING THE DOCUMENT From the time of President George Washington's administration, it was a custom for presidents to serve no more than two terms in office. Franklin D. Roosevelt, however, was elected to four terms. The Twenty-second Amendment restricted presidents to no more than two terms in office. **Why do you think citizens chose to limit the power of the president in this way?**



After Franklin D. Roosevelt was elected to four consecutive terms, limits were placed on the number of terms a president could serve.

Amendment XXIII

Passed by Congress June 16, 1960. Ratified March 29, 1961.

1. District of Columbia Represented The District constituting the seat of Government of the United States shall appoint in such manner as Congress may direct:

A number of electors of President and Vice President equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives in Congress to which the District would be entitled if it were a State, but in no event more than the least populous State; they shall be in addition to those appointed by the States, but they shall be considered, for the purposes of the election of President and Vice President, to be electors appointed by a State; and they shall meet in the District and perform such duties as provided by the twelfth article of amendment.

2. Enforcement The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

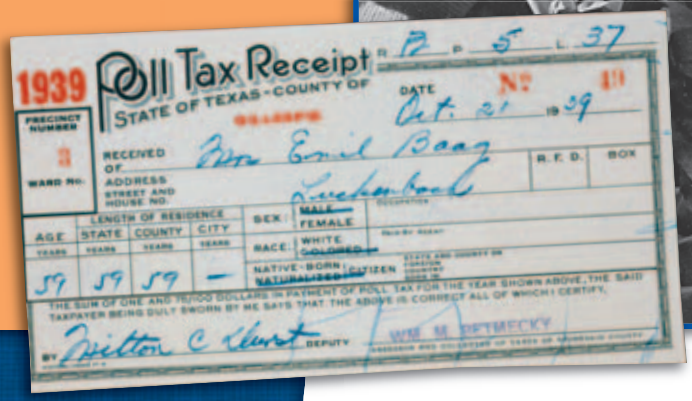
Voting Rights

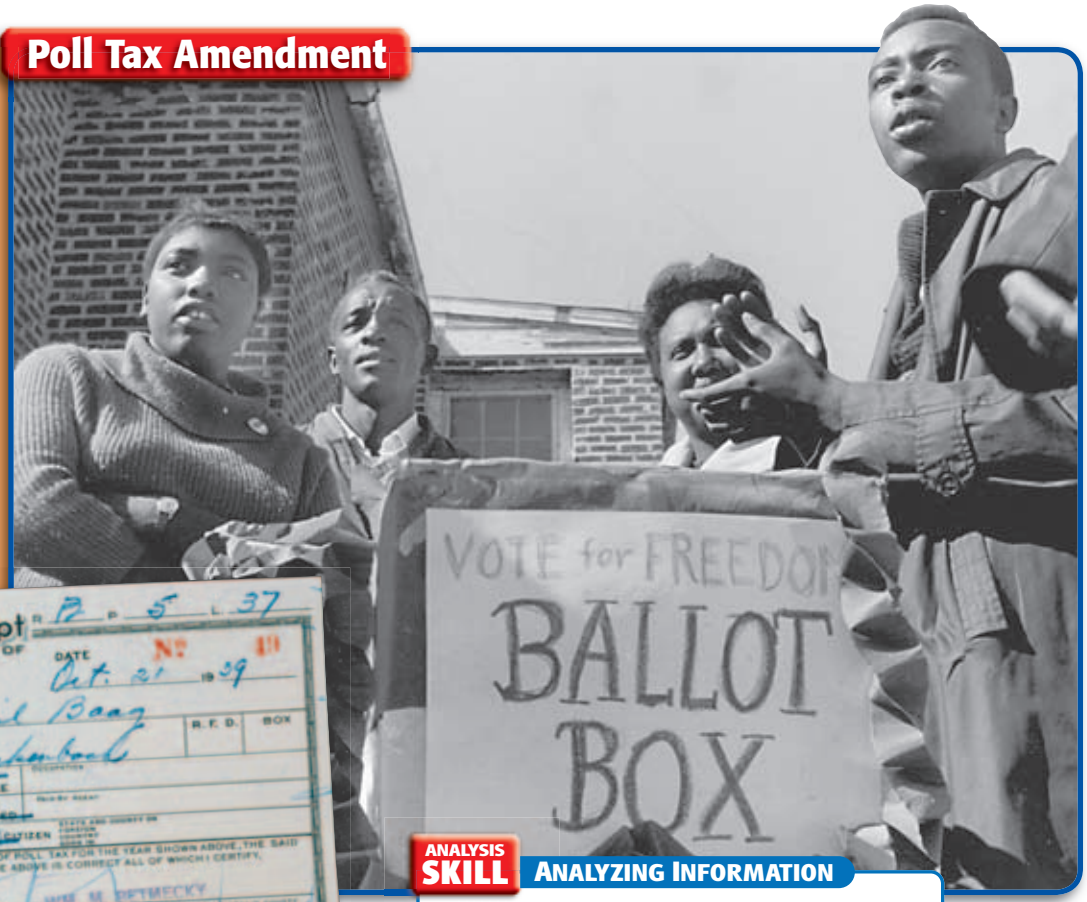
Until the ratification of the Twenty-third Amendment, the people of Washington, D.C., could not vote in presidential elections.

Poll Tax Amendment

Poll taxes were used to deny many poor Americans, including African Americans and Hispanic Americans, their right to vote. These taxes were made unconstitutional by the Twenty-fourth Amendment.







ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

How did poll taxes deny poor Americans the opportunity to vote?

Presidential Disability

The illness of President Eisenhower in the 1950s and the assassination of President Kennedy in 1963 were the events behind the Twenty-fifth Amendment. The Constitution did not provide a clear-cut method for a vice president to take over for a disabled president or upon the death of a president. This amendment provides for filling the office of the vice president if a vacancy occurs, and it provides a way for the vice president—or someone else in the line of succession—to take over if the president is unable to perform the duties of that office.

Amendment XXIV

Passed by Congress August 27, 1962. Ratified January 23, 1964.

1. Voting Rights The right of citizens of the United States to vote in any primary or other election for President or Vice President, for electors for President or Vice President, or for Senator or Representative in Congress, shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or any State by reason of failure to pay poll tax or other tax.

2. Enforcement The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment XXV

Passed by Congress July 6, 1965. Ratified February 10, 1967.

1. Sucession of Vice President In case of the removal of the President from office or of his death or resignation, the Vice President shall become President.

2. Vacancy of Vice President Whenever there is a vacancy in the office of the Vice President, the President shall nominate a Vice President who shall take office upon confirmation by a majority vote of both Houses of Congress.

3. Written Declaration Whenever the President transmits to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives his written declaration that he is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, and until he transmits to them a written declaration to the contrary, such powers and duties shall be discharged by the Vice President as Acting President.

4. Removing the President Whenever the Vice President and a majority of either the principal officers of the executive departments or of such other body as Congress may by law provide, transmit to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives their written declaration that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, the Vice President shall immediately assume the powers and duties of the office as Acting President.

Thereafter, when the President transmits to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives his written declaration that no inability exists, he shall resume the powers and duties of his office unless the Vice President and a majority of either the principal officers of the executive department or of such other body as Congress may by law provide, transmit within four days to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives their written declaration that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office. Thereupon Congress shall decide the issue, assembling within forty-eight hours for that purpose if not in session. If the Congress, within twenty-one days after receipt of the latter written declaration, or, if Congress is not in session, within twenty-one days after Congress is required to assemble, determines by two-thirds vote of both Houses that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, the Vice President shall continue to discharge the same as Acting President; otherwise, the President shall resume the powers and duties of his office.

Amendment XXVI

Passed by Congress March 23, 1971. Ratified July 1, 1971.

1. Voting Rights The right of citizens of the United States, who are eighteen years of age or older, to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of age.

2. Enforcement The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Expanded Suffrage

The Voting Rights Act of 1970 tried to set the voting age at 18. However, the Supreme Court ruled that the act set the voting age for national elections only, not for state or local elections. The Twenty-sixth Amendment gave 18-year-old citizens the right to vote in all elections.

Amendment XXVII

Originally proposed September 25, 1789. Ratified May 7, 1992.

No law, varying the compensation for the services of the Senators and Representatives, shall take effect, until an election of representatives shall have intervened.

SECTION 2

The Bill of Rights

If YOU were there...

Your father runs a bookshop in colonial Boston in 1770. Your family lives in a very small brick house. You and your sisters must share one small room. One day, a red-coated British officer knocks on your door and strides into the parlor. He says that your family will have to provide a room and meals for two British soldiers. "We're already crowded!" you protest, but he insists.

Would you support the British government's requirement that colonists provide food and shelter for troops? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND People in the American colonies resented the British soldiers stationed in their towns. They objected to sudden searches and to soldiers being housed in private homes. They disliked censorship of their newspapers. When the Constitution was written, Americans remembered those wrongs. They insisted on adding a bill of rights to the document.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The First Amendment guarantees basic freedoms to individuals.
2. Other amendments focus on protecting citizens from certain abuses.
3. The rights of the accused are an important part of the Bill of Rights.
4. The rights of states and citizens are protected by the Bill of Rights.

The Big Idea

The Bill of Rights was added to the Constitution to define clearly the rights and freedoms of citizens.

Key Terms and People

James Madison, *p. 216*
majority rule, *p. 216*
petition, *p. 217*
search warrant, *p. 218*
due process, *p. 218*
indict, *p. 218*
double jeopardy, *p. 218*
eminent domain, *p. 218*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the freedoms protected by the Bill of Rights and which amendment protects each. The first right has been filled in for you as an example.

Rights/Freedoms	Amendment
1. Freedom of religion	

First Amendment

Federalist **James Madison** promised that a bill of rights would be added to the Constitution. This promise allowed the Constitution to pass. In 1789 Madison began writing down a huge list of proposed amendments. He then presented a shorter list to the House of Representatives. Of those, the House approved 12. The states ratified 10, which took effect December 15, 1791. Those 10 amendments, called the Bill of Rights, protect U.S. citizens' individual liberties.

The protection of individual liberties is important in a representative democracy. Without safeguards, people's rights would not always be protected because of **majority rule**. This is the idea that the greatest number of people in society can make policies for everyone. While this means that most people agree on what the law should be, it also means that smaller groups, or minorities, might lose their rights. The Bill of Rights ensures that the rights of all citizens are protected.

The ideas spelled out in the First Amendment form the most basic rights of all U.S. citizens. These rights include freedom of religion,

freedom of the press, freedom of speech, freedom of assembly, and the right to petition.

In the spirit of Thomas Jefferson's Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom, the First Amendment begins, "Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof." In other words, the government cannot support or interfere with the practice of a religion. This amendment keeps the government from favoring one religion over any other or establishing an official religion.

The First Amendment also guarantees freedom of speech and of the press. This means that Americans have the right to express their own ideas and views. They also have the right to hear the ideas and views of others. Former senator Margaret Chase Smith discussed why these freedoms are important. "The key to security," she once said, "is public information."

Freedom of speech does not mean that people can say anything they want to, however. The Constitution does not protect slander—false statements meant to damage someone's reputation. Libel, or intentionally writing a lie that harms another person, is not protected, either. The Supreme Court has also ruled that speech that endangers public safety is not protected. For example, Justice Oliver Wendell Holmes declared in 1919 that falsely shouting "Fire" in a crowded theater is not protected as free speech.

Americans also have freedom of assembly, or of holding meetings. Any group may gather to discuss issues or conduct business. If people gather peacefully and do not engage in illegal activities, the government cannot interfere. The right to **petition**, or make a request of the government, is another right of the American people. Any American can present a petition to a government official. This right lets Americans show dissatisfaction with a law. They can also suggest new laws.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What rights does the First Amendment guarantee to Americans?

THE IMPACT TODAY

Free-speech protection has also been applied to "symbolic" speech—or nonverbal communication that expresses an idea, such as wearing a protest button.

Amendment I

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.



Workers use the right of assembly to protest a proposed budget in New York City.

Amendment II
A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

Amendment III
No Soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

Amendment IV
The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

Protecting Citizens

The Second, Third, and Fourth Amendments relate to colonial disputes with Britain and reflect many of the ideals outlined in the Declaration of Independence. The Second Amendment deals with state militias and the right to bear arms. Colonial militias played a big role in the Revolutionary War. The framers of the Constitution thought that the states needed their militias for emergencies. Today the National Guard has largely replaced organized state militias.

Supporters of gun-control laws have generally argued that the Second Amendment was intended to protect the collective right of states to maintain well-regulated militia units. Opponents hold that the amendment was meant to protect an individual's right of self-defense. The meaning of the amendment continues to be debated.

The Third Amendment prevents the military from forcing citizens to house soldiers. Before the Revolution, the British pressured colonists to shelter and feed British soldiers. British leaders also forced colonists to submit to having their property searched for illegal goods. Anger over such actions led to the Fourth Amendment rule against "unreasonable searches and seizures." Before a citizen's property can be searched, authorities must now get a **search warrant**. This order gives authorities permission to search someone's property. A judge issues this order only when it seems likely that a search might uncover evidence relating to a crime. In emergencies, however, police can make an emergency search. This may preserve evidence needed to prove possible illegal activity.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**
Why were the Third and Fourth Amendments matters of great importance to Americans when the Bill of Rights was written?

Rights of the Accused

The Fifth, Sixth, Seventh, and Eighth Amendments provide guidelines for protecting the rights of the accused. According to the Fifth Amendment, the government cannot punish anyone without **due process** of law. This means that the law must be fairly applied. A grand jury decides if there is enough evidence to **indict** (en-DYT), or formally accuse, a person. Without an indictment, the court cannot try anyone for a serious crime. The Fifth Amendment also protects people from having to testify at their own criminal trial. To keep from testifying, a person need only "take the Fifth." In addition, anyone found not guilty in a criminal trial cannot face **double jeopardy**. In other words, he or she cannot be tried again for the same crime.

The final clause of the Fifth Amendment states that no one can have property taken without due process of law. There is one exception: the government's power of **eminent domain**. This is the power to take personal property to benefit the public. One example would be taking private land to build a public road. However, the government must pay the owners a fair price for the property. If the property was gained illegally, then the owners are not paid.

The Sixth Amendment protects the rights of a person who has been indicted. It guarantees that person a speedy public trial. Public trials ensure that laws are being followed by allowing the public to witness the proceedings. Accused people have the right to know the charges against them and can hear and question witnesses testifying against them. Accused people have the right to an attorney. If they cannot pay for legal service, the government must provide it. Sometimes accused persons refuse their Sixth Amendment rights. For example, some defendants refuse the services of an attorney, while others choose to have a trial in front of a judge alone instead of before a jury. In many cases, defendants can forgo trial and agree to a plea bargain. This means that a defendant pleads guilty to a lesser charge and avoids risking conviction for a crime with a greater sentence.

The Seventh Amendment states that juries can decide civil cases. It is possible to harm another person without committing a crime. In such cases, the injured party may sue, or seek justice, in a civil court. Civil cases usually involve disputes over money or property. For example, someone might bring a civil suit against a person who refuses to repay a debt.

Amendment V

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

Amendment VI

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

Amendment VII

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury, shall be otherwise reexamined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.



A judge and jury listen to a witness in a courtroom in Orange County, California.

A Right to Bail

The Eighth Amendment allows for bail. Bail is a set amount of money that defendants promise to pay the court if they fail to appear in court at the proper time.

By posting, or paying, bail, a defendant can avoid staying in jail before and during a trial. If a defendant does not show up in court for trial, the court demands the bail money be paid and issues a warrant for arrest.

The Eighth Amendment keeps courts from setting unfairly high bail. However, in cases of very serious crimes, a judge may refuse to set bail altogether. This can be the case, for example, if the court regards a defendant as being potentially dangerous to the public by being left free. A judge can also deny bail if he or she thinks the defendant will not show up for trial. In such cases the defendant must remain in jail through the trial.

Amendment VIII
Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

"Cruel and Unusual Punishments"

The Eighth Amendment also bans "cruel and unusual punishments" against a person convicted of a crime. For many years, Americans have debated the question of what exactly constitutes cruel and unusual punishment. The debate has often centered on the issue of capital punishment. In 1972 the Supreme Court ruled that the way in which most states carried out the death penalty was cruel and unusual. The Court also found that the ways in which many states sentenced people to death were unfair. However, a few years later, the Court ruled that not all executions were in themselves cruel and unusual.

Most states still allow the death penalty. Those that do must follow the Supreme Court's rules. To do so, many states have changed the ways in which they carry out the death penalty.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What is the purpose of the Eighth Amendment?

Rights of States and Citizens

The final two amendments in the Bill of Rights give a general protection for other rights not addressed by the first eight amendments. These amendments also reserve some governmental powers for the states and the people.

Ninth Amendment

The Ninth Amendment says that the rights listed in the Constitution are not the only rights that citizens have. This amendment has allowed the courts and Congress to decide other basic rights of citizens.

The Constitution does not address the question of education. However, most Americans believe that it is a basic and essential right. This seems especially true in view of the fact that American citizens must be able to vote for the people who represent them in government. "Education is not just another

Amendment IX
The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Amendment X
The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.



consumer item. It is the bedrock [foundation] of our democracy," explained educational leader Mary Hatwood Futrell. Today state governments offer free education from elementary to high school—to all citizens.

Tenth Amendment

The Tenth Amendment recognizes that the states and the people have additional powers. These powers are any ones that the Constitution does not specifically give to Congress—the delegated powers. The Tenth Amendment makes it clear that any powers not either delegated to the federal government or prohibited to the states belong to the states and the people. Thus, the last amendment in the Bill of Rights protects citizens' rights and helps keep the balance of power between the federal and state governments.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How does the Tenth Amendment protect the rights of citizens?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned about the Bill of Rights. In the next section you will learn about the responsibilities of citizenship.



Students learn about the rights and responsibilities of being a U.S. citizen.

Section 2 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP6

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What basic rights are protected by the First Amendment?
   b. Explain What does the right to **petition** the government mean?
   c. Elaborate Why is freedom of the press an important right?
2. **a. Describe** How are citizens protected under the Third and Fourth Amendments?
   b. Draw Conclusions In what ways did British actions before the Revolution lead to the Second, Third, and Fourth Amendments?
3. **a. Identify** What protections does the Eighth Amendment provide for people accused of crimes?
   b. Elaborate Why is it important that the Bill of Rights protects people accused of crimes?
4. **a. Recall** What is the purpose of the final two amendments in the Bill of Rights?
   b. Analyze How does the Tenth Amendment balance power between national and state governments?

Critical Thinking

5. **Summarizing** Copy the chart below. Use it to summarize the rights guaranteed to citizens by each amendment in the Bill of Rights.

Amendment	Rights
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Gathering Information about the Bill of Rights** What freedoms are guaranteed by the Bill of Rights? Make a list of the most important freedoms. You'll list those freedoms on the third page of your pamphlet.

SECTION 3

Rights and Responsibilities of Citizenship

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Citizenship in the United States is determined in several ways.
2. Citizens are expected to fulfill a number of important duties.
3. Active citizen involvement in government and the community is encouraged.

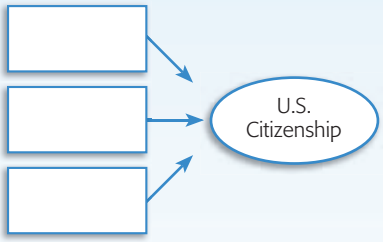
The Big Idea

American citizenship involves great privileges and serious responsibilities.

Key Terms

naturalized citizens, *p. 222*
deport, *p. 222*
draft, *p. 223*
political action committees, *p. 224*
interest groups, *p. 224*

TAKING NOTES As you read, look for information on three ways a person can become a U.S. citizen. Take notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.



If YOU were there...

Your older brother and his friends have just turned 18. That means they must register with selective service. But it also means that they are old enough to vote in national elections. You are interested in the upcoming elections and think it would be exciting to have a real voice in politics. But your brother and his friends don't even plan to register to vote.

How would you persuade your brother that voting is important?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Whether you are born an American citizen or become one later, citizenship brings many rights and privileges. But it also brings duties and responsibilities. Voting is both a right and a responsibility.

Gaining U.S. Citizenship

People become U.S. citizens in several ways. First, anyone born in the United States or a territory it controls is a citizen. People born in a foreign country are U.S. citizens if at least one parent is a U.S. citizen. Foreign-born people whose parents are not citizens must move to the United States to become **naturalized citizens**. Once in the United States, they go through a long process before applying for citizenship. If they succeed, they become naturalized citizens, giving them most of the rights and responsibilities of other citizens.

In the United States, legal immigrants have many of the rights and responsibilities of citizens but cannot vote or hold public office. The U.S. government can **deport**, or return to the country of origin, immigrants who break the law.

Legal immigrants over age 18 may request naturalization after living in the United States for five years. All legal immigrants have to

support themselves financially. If not, someone must assume financial responsibility for them. Immigrants must be law-abiding and support the U.S. Constitution. They must demonstrate understanding of written and spoken English. They also must show basic knowledge of U.S. history and government.

When this is done, candidates go before a naturalization court and take an oath of allegiance to the United States. They then get certificates of naturalization.

Only two differences between naturalized and native-born citizens exist. Naturalized citizens can lose their citizenship, and they cannot become president or vice president. Many famous Americans have been naturalized citizens, including scientist Albert Einstein and former secretary of state Madeleine Albright.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**
Why does U.S. law have such demanding requirements for people to become naturalized citizens?

Duties of Citizenship

For a representative democracy to work, Americans need to fulfill their civic duties. "The stakes … are too high for government to be a spectator sport," former Texas congresswoman Barbara Jordan once said.

Citizens elect officials to make laws for them. In turn, citizens must obey those laws and respect the authorities who enforce them. Obeying laws includes knowing what they are and staying informed about any changes to the law. Ignorance of a law will not prevent a person from being punished for breaking it.

Another duty is paying taxes for services such as public roads, police, and public schools. People pay sales taxes, property taxes, and tariffs. Many Americans also pay a tax on their income to the federal, and sometimes state, government.

Citizens have the duty to defend the nation. Men 18 years or older must register with selective service. In the event of a **draft**, or required military service, those able to fight are already registered. Although women do not register, many serve in the armed forces.



Becoming a Citizen

For many people around the world, becoming a citizen of the United States is a lifelong dream. The highlight of the naturalization process is the ceremony where candidates promise to "support and defend the Constitution and laws of the United States of America."

Americans have the right to a trial by jury under the Sixth Amendment. To protect this right, citizens should be willing to serve on a jury when they are called. Otherwise, fulfilling each person's Sixth Amendment rights would be difficult.

READING CHECK **Making Inferences** Why does citizenship carry with it certain responsibilities?

Responsibilities of Citizens

For representative democracy to work, citizens must do their part. Each activity pictured here serves an important role in the community.



Jury Duty



Military Service

Citizens and Government

Taking part in the elections process by voting may be a citizen's most vital duty. Through free elections, U.S. citizens choose who will lead their government.

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

In addition to the U.S. government and New York state government, residents of New York City are also subject to a city government. The city government is headed by the mayor and city council. The New York City government provides such services as education, libraries, water systems, parks, and crime prevention.

Function of Elections

It is essential for citizens to learn as much as they can about the issues and candidates before voting. Information is available from many sources: the Internet, newspapers, television, and other media. However, voters should also be aware that some material may be propaganda or material that is biased deliberately to help or harm a cause.

In addition to voting, many Americans choose to campaign for candidates or issues. Anyone can help campaign, even if he or she is not eligible to vote. Many people also help campaigns by giving money directly or through **political action committees** (PACs), groups that collect money for candidates who support certain issues.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

influence change or have an effect on

Influencing Government

Even after an election, people can influence officials. Political participation is part of our nation's identity and tradition. When colonists protested British rule in the 1700s, they formed committees and presented their views to political leaders.

As the new American nation grew, so did political participation. French diplomat Alexis de Tocqueville visited the United States in 1831 to study American democracy. He was amazed at the large number of political groups Americans participated in. He wrote about them:

> "What political power could ever carry on the vast multitude [large number] of lesser undertakings which the American citizens perform every day, with the assistance of the principle of association [joining a group]? Nothing, in my opinion, is more deserving of our attention than the intellectual and moral associations of America."
>
> —Alexis de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*

U.S. citizens sometimes work with **interest groups**. These groups of people share a common interest that motivates them to take political action. Interest groups organize speeches and rallies to support their cause. However, citizens need not join a group to influence government. They can write letters to leaders of government or attend city council meetings. Active political participation is an important duty for U.S. citizens and immigrants alike.

Helping the Community

Commitment to others moves many Americans to volunteer in community service groups. Some small communities rely on volunteers for services such as fire protection and law enforcement.

Volunteer groups also help government-sponsored agencies. For example, Citizens on



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

Which responsibilities can you fulfill now, without waiting until you turn 18 years old?

Patrol and Neighborhood Watch groups ask volunteers to walk their neighborhoods and tell police if they observe possible criminal activity in the area. The American Red Cross helps citizens in times of natural disasters or other emergencies. The Boy Scouts and Girl Scouts plan many projects such as planting trees to improve the environment. Even simple acts such as picking up trash in parks or serving food in shelters help a community.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** In what ways do volunteer groups benefit the community?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned about citizens' duties toward their nation and their communities. In the next chapter you will learn about the first government formed under the Constitution.

Section 3 Assessment

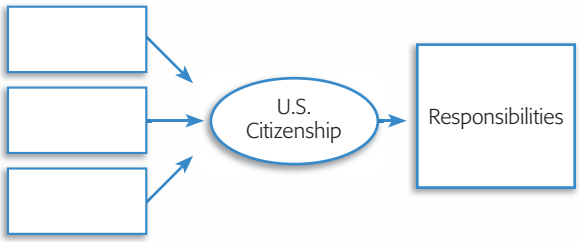
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP6

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What are the different ways in which a person can become a U.S. citizen?
   b. Make Inferences Why do you think the law requires an immigrant to live in the United States at least five years before he or she can apply to become a **naturalized citizen**?
2. **a. Describe** What are three duties expected of U.S. citizens?
   b. Evaluate In your opinion, which duty expected of citizens is the most important? Why?
3. **a. Identify** In what ways can citizens participate in the election process?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why do you think it is important that citizens participate in the political process?

Critical Thinking

4. **Categorizing** Review your notes on becoming a U.S. citizen. Then add the responsibilities of citizenship to your graphic organizer.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Thinking about Citizenship** The last page of your pamphlet will have two parts—one part on requirements for citizenship and one part on the responsibilities of citizens. Look back through this section and make two lists, one on requirements and one on responsibilities.

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Determining the Context of Statements

Define the Skill

A *context* is the circumstances under which something happens. *Historical context* includes values, beliefs, conditions, and practices that were common in the past. At times, some of these were quite different from what they are today. To truly understand a historical statement or event, you have to take its context into account. It is not right to judge what people in history did or said based on present-day values alone. To be fair, you must also consider the historical context of the statement or event.

Learn the Skill

To better understand something a historical figure said or wrote, use the following guidelines to determine the context of the statement.

1. Identify the speaker or writer, the date, and the topic and main idea of the statement.
2. Determine the speaker's or writer's attitude and point of view about the topic.
3. Review what you know about beliefs, conditions, or practices related to the topic that were common at the time. Find out more about the times in which the statement was made, if you need to.
4. Decide how well the statement reflects the values, attitudes, and practices of people living at that time. Then, determine how well it reflects values, attitudes, and practices related to the topic today.

Applying these guidelines will give you a better understanding of statements made by the Constitution's framers. You read in Chapter 6 that the Constitution created a representative democracy. However, the original Constitution gave most Americans little voice in choosing their leaders. Only the House of Representatives was elected by the voters. Alexander Hamilton, one of the Constitutional Convention's leaders, told the delegates:

> "The people are turbulent and changing; they seldom judge or determine right. Give therefore to the first [upper] class a distinct, permanent share in government. They will check the unsteadiness of the second [the masses]."

By modern standards, Hamilton's remark is undemocratic. But think about the times in which it was made. Shays's Rebellion had recently occurred. In addition, in those days most Americans had little or no education. Many could not even read or write. When its historical context is considered, the statement seems less harsh and extreme.

Practice the Skill

Read the following statement made by Patrick Henry in 1788. Then answer the questions to determine its context and better understand it.

> "The Constitution is said to have beautiful features, but … they appear to me horribly frightful … Your dearest rights may be sacrificed by what may be a small minority … [that] … may continue forever unchangeably this government, although horribly defective."

1. What was Henry's opinion of the Constitution?
2. How might Americans' recent experience in the Revolution have caused him to feel that way?

CHAPTER 6

Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
Why did James Madison think the Tenth Amendment was important for the Bill of Rights?

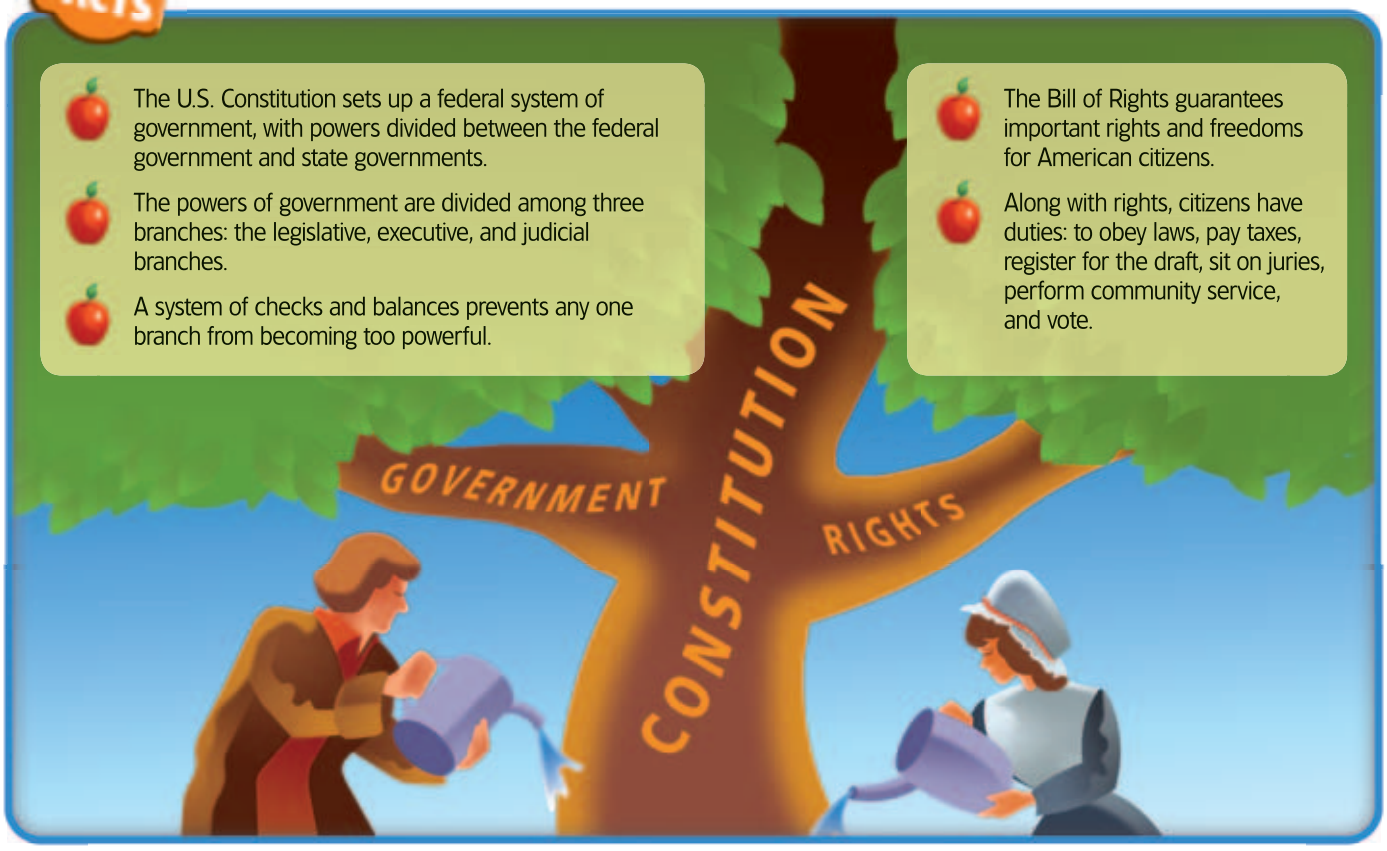
Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.

- The U.S. Constitution sets up a federal system of government, with powers divided between the federal government and state governments.
- The powers of government are divided among three branches: the legislative, executive, and judicial branches.
- A system of checks and balances prevents any one branch from becoming too powerful.

- The Bill of Rights guarantees important rights and freedoms for American citizens.
- Along with rights, citizens have duties: to obey laws, pay taxes, register for the draft, sit on juries, perform community service, and vote.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

1. Who promised to add a bill of rights to the U.S. Constitution?
a. Benjamin Franklin **c.** Alexander Hamilton
b. Thomas Jefferson **d.** James Madison

2. What is the term for a person born in another country who becomes a citizen of the United States?
a. immigrant **c.** naturalized citizen
b. partial citizen **d.** separatist

3. What are powers granted to the states called?
a. reserved powers **c.** stately powers
b. concurrent powers **d.** delegated powers

4. What is the permission to look for evidence of a crime in a particular location called?
a. petition **c.** indictment
b. impeachment **d.** search warrant

5. Who was the first female Supreme Court justice?
a. Abigail Adams **c.** Barbara Jordan
b. Susan B. Anthony **d.** Sandra Day O'Connor

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 182–186)*

6. a. Describe Name each branch of government and explain the duties of each.

b. Analyze What checks and balances exist between the branches of government?

c. Evaluate Do you think the three branches of government share their power equally? Explain your answer.

SECTION 2 *(Pages 216–221)*

7. a. Identify What is the Bill of Rights, and why was it added to the Constitution?

b. Analyze In what ways does the Bill of Rights protect individuals from the power of government?

c. Elaborate Which of the amendments in the Bill of Rights do you think is the most important? Why?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 222–225)*

8. a. Describe What are the ways in which a person can gain U.S. citizenship?

b. Analyze How are citizens able to influence their government?

c. Predict What might result if individuals failed to fulfill their duties as citizens?

Reading Skills

Summarizing Historical Texts *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

"The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ... establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and ... receive for their Services a Compensation..."

9. Which of the following is the best summary of the selection?

a. The U.S. judiciary consists of the Supreme Court and lower courts, and judges are paid.

b. Congress creates lower courts.

Reviewing Themes

10. Politics What important ideas has the U.S. Constitution contributed to government?

11. Politics Why is active political participation an important responsibility for people in the United States?

Social Studies Skills

Determining the Context of Statements *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the questions about the quotation below.*

"What political power could ever carry on the vast multitude [large number] of lesser undertakings which the American citizens perform every day, with the assistance of the principle of association [joining a group]? Nothing, in my opinion, is more deserving of our attention than the intellectual and moral associations of America."

—Alexis de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*

12. De Tocqueville wrote this about his trip to the United States in 1831. What is his main idea?

a. Governments can fill every need of citizens.

b. American organizations cannot accomplish much.

c. American organizations get too much attention.

d. American organizations fill important needs of citizens that government cannot.

13. Do you think that de Tocqueville's statement accurately describes modern America? Why or why not?

FOCUS ON WRITING

14. Creating a Pamphlet You have gathered information about the Constitution, Bill of Rights, and citizenship. Use that information to create your pamphlet. On the first page, write a title and a phrase that will get your audience's attention. On each of the following pages, you can use this format: (1) a heading and sentence at the top of the page identifying the topic of the page, and (2) the list of the most important points for that topic. Remember that page 2 is on the Constitution, page 3 is on the Bill of Rights, and page 4 is on citizenship.

CHAPTER 6

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Which of the following rights is a right protected in the First Amendment?**

A the right to bear arms
B the right to public education
C the right to jury trials
D the right to free speech

2 **The right of every American to be a member of a political party is an example of**

A the principle of dual sovereignty.
B the First Amendment right to freedom of assembly.
C the principle of majority rule.
D the Fifth Amendment right to due process of law.

3 **Obeying laws, paying taxes, and willingness to serve on a jury are all**

A methods of gaining U.S. citizenship.
B duties of U.S. citizens.
C ways in which citizens can influence their government.
D protected by the Second Amendment.

4 **The First Amendment would protect**

A a reporter that knowingly spreads lies about someone.
B an individual who peacefully protests a government policy.
C an individual who falsely shouts, "Fire" in a crowded theater.
D a hunter who keeps a rifle at home.

5 **Which of the following is an example of a check that the executive branch has on the legislative branch?**

A The president may declare laws unconstitutional.
B The vice president serves as president of the Senate.
C The president may veto bills passed by Congress.
D The president may appoint members of Congress.

6 **Which of the following protects the rights of the accused?**

A the guarantee of a speedy trial
B the right to vote cannot be denied because of sex
C the right to sign a petition
D the right to keep and bear arms

7 **Read the following quote from President Lyndon Johnson and use it to answer the question below.**

> "What a president says and thinks is not worth five cents unless he has the people and Congress behind him. Without Congress, I'm just a six-feet-four Texan. With Congress, I'm President of the United States in the fullest sense."
>
> — President Lyndon Johnson, quoted in *The Macmillan Dictionary of Political Quotations*

Document-Based Question **What point about government was President Johnson making in this remark?**

CHAPTER 7 1789–1800

Launching the Nation

Focus Question

What were the causes and effects of national growth?

SECTION 1
Washington Leads a New Nation 234
Focus on New York City Washington's Inauguration

SECTION 2
Hamilton and National Finances 238
Quick Facts Hamilton's Economic Plan
Biography Benjamin Banneker
Primary Source Role of a Citizen

SECTION 3
Challenges for the New Nation 243
Time Line The Struggle for Neutrality
Focus on New York City Hamilton in the City
Interactive Map Fighting in the Northwest Territory
Primary Source Washington's Farewell Address

SECTION 4
John Adams's Presidency 250
Primary Source The XYZ Affair

Focus on Writing

A Nobel Nomination Every year a few people are nominated for a Nobel Prize for their work to improve the world. In this chapter you will read about four great Americans—Washington, Hamilton, Jefferson, and Adams. Then you'll choose one of these great leaders and write a Nobel Prize nomination for him.





United States

1789 George Washington becomes the first president.

1785

World

1789 The French Revolution begins.

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of political parties on the new United States.

What You Will Learn...

In this chapter you will learn about the first presidency and how it affected the country. George Washington began many presidential as well as national traditions. He is honored with statues and memorials across the country, including the Washington Monument in Washington, D.C.



1790
The Supreme Court of the United States meets for the first time in New York City.

1793
French revolutionaries behead King Louis XVI.

1794
The Whiskey Rebellion begins in Pennsylvania.

1795
Native American leaders sign the Treaty of Greenville.

1796
John Adams is elected president on December 7.

1799
George Washington dies at Mount Vernon, Virginia, on December 14.

1799
The Rosetta Stone is discovered in Egypt. Inscriptions on the stone make it possible for researchers to read Egyptian hieroglyphics.

1790 — 1795 — 1800





Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes This chapter, titled "Launching the Nation," describes how the early leaders established this nation's **political** and **economic** systems. You will read about Washington's presidency, Hamilton's plan for financial security for the nation, the establishment of two parties to elect the president, and Jefferson's struggles with both Washington and Hamilton. Throughout the chapter, you will see that disagreement often defined these early days.

Inferences about History

Focus on Reading What's the difference between a good guess and a weak guess? A good guess is an *educated* guess. In other words, the guess is based on some knowledge or information. That's what an **inference** is, an educated guess.

Making Inferences About What You Read To make an inference, combine information from your reading with what you already know, and make an educated guess about what it all means. Once you have made several inferences, you may be able to draw a conclusion that ties them all together.

Question What kind of person was Alexander Hamilton?

Inside the Text

- Hamilton ran a company when he was just a teenager.
- He had a career as a lawyer.
- He became the secretary of the treasury under Washington.

Outside the Text

- Running a company takes intelligence and cleverness.
- Becoming a lawyer takes dedication.
- Washington probably wanted someone clever and capable.

Inference Alexander Hamilton was an intelligent, clever, and dedicated man.

Steps for Making Inferences

1. Ask a question.
2. Note information "Inside the Text."
3. Note information "Outside the Text."
4. **Use both sets of information to make an educated guess, or inference.**

You Try It!

Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow.

Economic Differences

From Chapter 7, p. 240–241

Hamilton wanted new forms of economic growth. He wanted to promote manufacturing and business. He even suggested that the government award a prize to companies that made excellent products.

In addition, Hamilton wanted to pass higher tariffs. Known as protective tariffs, these taxes would raise the prices of foreign products. Hamilton hoped this would cause Americans to buy U.S. goods. As a result, American manufacturing would be protected from foreign competition.

Jefferson worried about depending too much on business and manufacturing. He believed that farmers were the most independent voters . . . Jefferson wanted to help farmers by keeping the costs of the goods they bought low. Lower tariffs would help keep prices low.

After you read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. Which two questions can be answered directly from the text above and which one requires that you make an inference?

- **a.** Who wanted higher tariffs, Hamilton or Jefferson?
- **b.** Why do you think Hamilton and Jefferson had different views on the importance of manufacturing?
- **c.** Which man wanted to help the farmers?

2. To answer question b, it might help to know that Hamilton lived in New York City, and Jefferson was from the more rural area of Virginia. Use that information and information in the passage to explain why one man might have valued manufacturing more than the other.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 7

Section 1

George Washington *(p. 234)*
electoral college *(p. 234)*
Martha Washington *(p. 234)*
precedent *(p. 235)*
Judiciary Act of 1789 *(p. 236)*

Section 2

Alexander Hamilton *(p. 238)*
national debt *(p. 238)*
bonds *(p. 238)*
speculators *(p. 239)*
Thomas Jefferson *(p. 239)*
loose construction *(p. 242)*
strict construction *(p. 242)*
Bank of the United States *(p. 242)*

Section 3

French Revolution *(p. 243)*
Neutrality Proclamation *(p. 244)*
privateers *(p. 244)*
Jay's Treaty *(p. 245)*
Pinckney's Treaty *(p. 245)*
Little Turtle *(p. 246)*
Battle of Fallen Timbers *(p. 247)*
Treaty of Greenville *(p. 247)*
Whiskey Rebellion *(p. 247)*

Section 4

political parties *(p. 250)*
Federalist Party *(p. 250)*
Democratic-Republican Party *(p. 250)*
XYZ affair *(p. 252)*
Alien and Sedition Acts *(p. 253)*
Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions *(p. 253)*

Academic Vocabulary

In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

agreement *(p. 237)*
neutral *(p. 244)*

As you read Chapter 7, remember that you need to combine what you already know with the information in the chapter to make inferences.

SECTION 1

Washington Leads a New Nation

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. In 1789 George Washington became the first president of the United States.
2. Congress and the president organized the executive and judicial branches of government.
3. Americans had high expectations for their new nation.

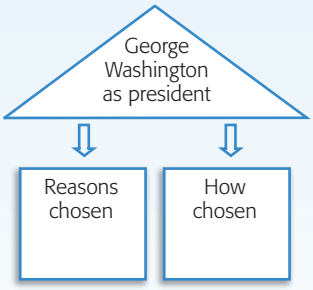
The Big Idea

President Washington and members of Congress established a new national government.

Key Terms and People

George Washington, *p. 234*
electoral college, *p. 234*
Martha Washington, *p. 234*
precedent, *p. 235*
Judiciary Act of 1789, *p. 236*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes in a graphic organizer like the one below on why and how George Washington was chosen as president.



If YOU were there...

You are a seamstress in New York City in 1789. You've joined the excited crowd in the streets for inauguration day. Church bells are ringing, and people are cheering. Even though you were just a young child during the Revolution, Washington is your hero. Now you watch as he takes the oath of office. You are proud to see that he is wearing a suit of American-made cloth.

What do you think America's future will be like under President Washington?

BUILDING BACKGROUND George Washington was more than just a popular war hero. People naturally looked to him as a national leader. He had taken part in the Continental Congresses and in creating the Constitution. He helped establish and strengthen the new national government.

The First President

Americans believed in **George Washington**. They saw him as an honest leader and a hero of the Revolution. Many believed he should be the first U.S. president. Washington had been looking forward to retirement and a quiet life on his Virginia farm. When he hesitated at becoming a candidate for the presidency, his friends convinced him to run. Fellow politician Gouverneur Morris told him, "Should the idea prevail [win] that you would not accept the presidency, it should prove fatal . . . to the new government." Morris concluded confidently, "Of all men, you are the best fitted to fill that office."

In January 1789 each of the 11 states that had passed the Constitution sent electors to choose the first president. These delegates formed a group called the **electoral college**—a body of electors who represent the people's vote in choosing the president. The electoral college selected Washington unanimously, and John Adams became his vice president.

Washington's wife, First Lady **Martha Washington**, entertained guests and attended social events with her husband. She described the

scene to her niece: "I have not had one half-hour to myself since the day of my arrival." She ran the presidential household with style.

Other women of the time period, such as author Judith Sargent Murray, believed that women needed to play a greater role in the new nation than Martha Washington did. Murray, Abigail Adams, and others believed in Republican Motherhood, the idea that women played an important role in teaching their children to be good citizens.

Some promoters of Republican Motherhood did not expect women to participate in politics or business. Other people, however, hoped that Republican Motherhood would lead to greater opportunities for women. They hoped more women would receive an education. Only a few families were willing to provide much education for their daughters, and adult women rarely had the time or money to get an education later in life. Most women in the early republic faced long days managing their households and working hard inside or outside the home to support their families.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why was Washington selected to be president?

Organizing the Government

Hard work also lay ahead for members of the new government. The new federal government had to create policies and procedures that would determine the future of the country. As President Washington noted in a letter to James Madison, "The first of everything in our situation will serve to establish a precedent." A **precedent** is an action or decision that later serves as an example.

The First Congress created departments in the executive branch for different areas of national policy. Washington met with the department heads, or cabinet members, who advised him.

Today we know that presidents have cabinet meetings with their top advisers. This practice started during Washington's presidency and was common by 1792.

For two of his most important cabinet positions, Washington chose carefully. He picked Alexander Hamilton as secretary of the treasury and Thomas Jefferson as secretary of state. Henry Knox served as secretary of war, and Samuel Osgood was chosen as postmaster general. Hamilton was a gifted



1. Henry Knox, secretary of war
2. Thomas Jefferson, secretary of state
3. Edmund Randolph, attorney general
4. Alexander Hamilton, secretary of the treasury
5. George Washington, president

The First Cabinet

Washington's cabinet members kept him informed on political matters and debated important issues with one another. Each of the men chosen had experience that made him a wise choice to advise the nation's first president. By 1792 cabinet meetings were a common practice.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

How do you think a modern cabinet meeting might look different from the one shown here?

A Rural Nation



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

On April 16, 1789, George Washington began his journey from Virginia to New York. Many towns and cities along the way honored him with celebrations. He arrived in New Jersey on April 23, where a ceremonial barge waited to take him to New York City. There, he was sworn in as the country's first president.

economic planner, and Jefferson had served as ambassador to France. Knox had helped Washington run the Continental Army, and Osgood had government experience.

To set up the federal court system and the courts' location, Congress passed the **Judiciary Act of 1789**. This act created three levels of federal courts and defined their powers and relationship to the state courts. It set up federal district courts and circuit courts of appeals. The president nominated candidates for federal judgeships. Those candidates then had to be approved or rejected by the Senate. Washington wrote about the importance of these duties:

> "I have always been persuaded that the stability and success of the national government . . . would depend in a considerable degree on the interpretation and execution of its laws. In my opinion, therefore, it is important that the judiciary system should not only be independent in its operations, but as perfect as possible in its formation."
>
> —George Washington, quoted in *The Real George Washington*, edited by Parry et al.

The basic parts of the federal government were now in place. Leaders began to face the challenges of the new nation. Hard work lay ahead.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**

What two important precedents were established for the federal government?

Americans' Expectations for the Nation

Most Americans had high expectations for the new country. They wanted improved trade, free from too many restrictions. But they also expected the government to protect them and to keep the economy stable. However, the idea of belonging to one united nation was new to them.

In 1790 the United States was home to almost 4 million people. Most Americans lived in the countryside and worked on farms. Farmers wanted fair tax laws and the right to settle western lands. They did not want the government to interfere with their daily lives.

Other Americans worked in towns as craftspeople, laborers, or merchants. Most urban centers were located along the Atlantic coast. These people looked to the government to help their businesses. Most merchants wanted simpler trade laws established. Manufacturers wanted laws to protect them from foreign competitors.



© Collection of The New-York Historical Society

Some Americans lived in growing cities like New York, shown above. However, the new republic was overwhelmingly rural. Most Americans lived and worked on farms.

Why might rural Americans and urban Americans want different things from their new government?

Most cities were small. Only New York City and Philadelphia had populations larger than 25,000. New York City was the first capital of the United States, and it represented the spirit of the new nation. Although badly damaged during the Revolution, the city had already begun to recover. Citizens got rid of many signs of British rule.

New York City had a bustling economy. International trade and business became more active. A French visitor to New York City noted the city's energy.

> "Everything in the city is in motion; everywhere the shops resound [ring out] with the noise of workers . . . one sees vessels arriving from every part of the world."
>
> —A French visitor to New York, quoted in *New York in the American Revolution* by Wilbur Abbott

In 1792 some 24 stockbrokers signed an **agreement** under a buttonwood tree on Wall Street. This agreement was the foundation for what later became the New York Stock Exchange. It cemented Wall Street's image as the economic hub of the United States.

By 1790 the city's population had topped 33,000 and was growing rapidly. To many officials, this vibrant city reflected the potential future of the new nation. It was thus a fitting place for the capital.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why was New York City chosen as the first capital of the United States?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Americans, led by President George Washington, set up their new government. In the next section you will read about Alexander Hamilton's economic plan.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

agreement a decision reached by two or more people or groups

THE IMPACT TODAY

Today the New York Stock Exchange is the largest market for securities, or stocks, in the world.

Section 1 Assessment

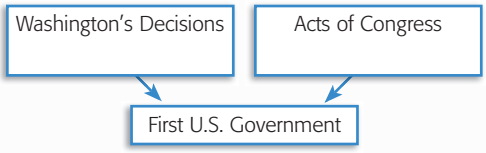
go.hrw.com Online Quiz KEYWORD: SC7 HP7

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What role did the electoral college play in **George Washington**'s election to the presidency?
   b. Summarize What were some of **Martha Washington**'s duties as First Lady?
2. **a. Describe** What **precedent** did President Washington and Congress establish regarding the executive branch?
   b. Explain What was the purpose of the **Judiciary Act of 1789**?
   c. Evaluate What do you think was the most important element of the Judiciary Act of 1789? Why?
3. **a. Recall** What city served as the first capital of the United States? Why?
   b. Draw Conclusions What expectations did most Americans have for the new nation?
   c. Make Judgments Do you think New York City should still be the capital city of the United States? Explain your answer.

Critical Thinking

4. **Comparing** Review your notes on George Washington. Then copy the chart below and use it to compare how Washington and Congress organized the new government.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Thinking about Washington's Contributions** In this section you learned some things about George Washington as president. Jot down one or two things you could use to support his nomination for a Nobel Prize.

SECTION 2

Hamilton and National Finances

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Hamilton tackled the problem of settling national and state debt.
2. Thomas Jefferson opposed Hamilton's views on government and the economy.
3. Hamilton created a national bank to strengthen the U.S. economy.

The Big Idea

Treasury secretary Alexander Hamilton developed a financial plan for the national government.

Key Terms and People

Alexander Hamilton, *p. 238*
national debt, *p. 238*
bonds, *p. 238*
speculators, *p. 239*
Thomas Jefferson, *p. 239*
loose construction, *p. 242*
strict construction, *p. 242*
Bank of the United States, *p. 242*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the economic problems facing the nation when Alexander Hamilton became secretary of the treasury, as well as Hamilton's solutions to the problems.

Economic Problems	Solutions
	1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.

If YOU were there...

You live on a plantation in North Carolina in the 1790s. You have just heard that the federal government plans to pay most of the northern states' debts from the war. Your neighbors are outraged about this idea. It means more taxes and tariffs! New York and Massachusetts are far away, they say. Why should North Carolina farmers have to pay northern debts?

Would you pay other states' war debts? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Some of the new nation's biggest problems were economic. The national and state governments had run up huge debts during the war. But the proposed solutions to these problems revealed differences in regional viewpoints. Southern planters and northern businesspeople had very different ideas about how the national economy should develop.

Settling the Debt

Alexander Hamilton seemed born with a head for economics. While still in his teens, he helped run a shipping company in his native British West Indies. Family friends then sent him to the American colonies for an education. Hamilton eventually married into a wealthy New York family and began practicing law. He served as Washington's aide and as a delegate to four Continental Congresses.

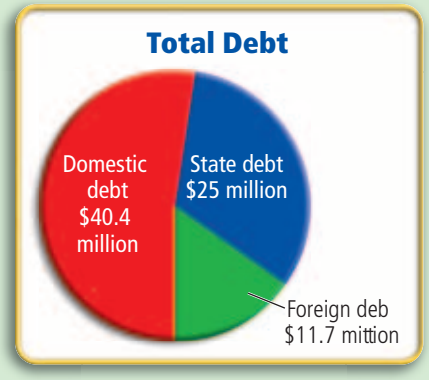
National Debt

As secretary of the treasury, Hamilton's biggest challenge was paying off the **national debt**—money owed by the United States—from the Revolutionary War. The United States owed about $11.7 million to foreign countries and about $40.4 million to U.S. citizens. During the war the government raised money with bonds. **Bonds** are certificates of debt that carry a promise to buy back the bonds at a higher price. The new government could not afford to keep this promise. Bondholders who needed money sold

Hamilton's Economic Plan

QUICK FACTS

Alexander Hamilton developed a three-point plan to solve the nation's financial problems.



1 Deal with the Debt

- Take on the foreign and domestic debt by replacing creditors' old, low-value bonds with new, interest-bearing bonds
- Take over most of the states' $25 million Revolutionary War debts

would build investor confidence in the stability of the new nation

2 Gain Revenue

- Pass a tariff to both bring in money and help American manufacturers

would free up state money for business and trade

3 Stabilize the Banking System

- Create a national bank
- Create a national mint

their bonds for less than the original value to **speculators**, or people who buy items at low prices in the hope that the value will rise and they can sell the items for a profit.

Hamilton wanted to pay the foreign debt immediately and gradually repay the total value of all bonds. The second part of his plan caused disagreements because paying full value would allow speculators to make a profit. Hamilton thought this was fair. He said, "He [the speculator] paid what the commodity [bond] was worth . . . and took the risks."

Thomas Jefferson disagreed. He thought the idea cheated bondholders who had sold their bonds at low prices. Jefferson wrote, "Immense sums were thus filched [stolen] from the poor and ignorant." But more politicians agreed with Hamilton. In 1790 the government exchanged old bonds for new, more reliable ones that were guaranteed.

States' Debts

The states owed $25 million for Revolutionary War expenses. Hamilton wanted the federal government to pay for $21.5 million of this debt. Hamilton believed that this action would help the federal government. He thought that paying the states' debts would help the national economy. Debtor states would not have to spend so much on repayment and would have money to develop business and trade. Increased business and trade would put more money back into the national economy.

The South, however, did not want to help the federal government pay the debts of other states. States such as Virginia and North Carolina did not have many war debts. They thought Hamilton's idea was unfair. Patrick Henry said he did not believe that the Constitution gave Congress the power to pay state debts. Hamilton knew that he needed the help of southern representatives to get his plan approved.

Moving the Capital

Hamilton also knew that he had something to bargain with. Southern officials wanted to change the location of the nation's capital. Many southerners thought that having the capital in New York gave the northern states too much influence over national policy. Hamilton, Jefferson, and James Madison met in June 1790. Hamilton

promised to convince northern members of Congress to move the capital. Jefferson and Madison then agreed to gather support in the South for Hamilton's debt plan.

The compromise worked. The national capital was moved to Philadelphia in 1791 for 10 years. For the capital's permanent location, Washington chose a place on the Potomac River that included part of both Maryland and Virginia. The land was made up of swamps and farms. This site would eventually become the city of Washington, D.C.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Washington, D.C., and the surrounding areas are home to more than 7 million people today. The city is not only the nation's capital but also a major tourist attraction.

READING CHECK **Identifying Points of View**

How did southerners feel about the federal government paying state war debts? How did Hamilton change their minds?



CASE STUDY **BIOGRAPHY**

Benjamin Banneker (1731–1806)

Benjamin Banneker was born to a free African American family in rural Maryland. He attended a Quaker school but was largely self-educated. He was a skilled mathematician and scientist. His mathematical skills prompted Thomas Jefferson to give him a job surveying the land for the new national capital.

Draw Conclusions How was Benjamin Banneker's life different from most African Americans' of the time?

Jefferson Opposes Hamilton

Hamilton and Jefferson did not cooperate for long. Instead, they began to disagree about how to define the authority of the central government. Hamilton believed in a strong federal government. Jefferson wanted to protect the powers of the states. Their conflict reflected basic differences in their opinions about democracy. Hamilton had little faith in the average individual. He once said that "the people . . . seldom judge or determine [decide] right."

Differing Views

Hamilton wanted a strong central government that balanced power between the "mass of the people" and wealthier citizens. He believed that his approach would protect everyone's liberties while keeping the people from having too much power.

Jefferson disagreed strongly with Hamilton's views of the average citizen's ability to make decisions for the country. He admitted that "the people can not be all, and always, well informed." However, Jefferson believed that it was the right of the people to rule the country.

Economic Differences

Hamilton and Jefferson also fought over how the country's economy should grow. Hamilton wanted new forms of economic growth. He wanted to promote manufacturing and business. He even suggested that the



U.S. Capitol in Washington, D.C.

Primary Source

POINTS OF VIEW

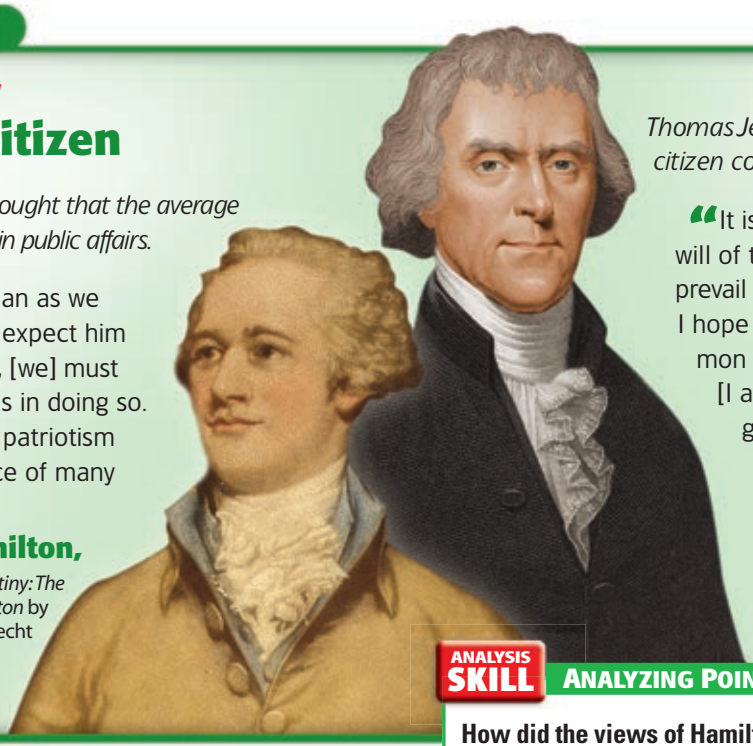
Role of a Citizen

Alexander Hamilton thought that the average citizen had no interest in public affairs.

"We must take man as we find him, and if we expect him to serve the public, [we] must interest his passions in doing so. A reliance on pure patriotism has been the source of many of our errors."

—Alexander Hamilton,

quoted in *Odd Destiny: The Life of Alexander Hamilton* by Marie B. Hecht



Thomas Jefferson believed that each citizen could work to better society.

"It is my principle that the will of the Majority should always prevail [win] . . . Above all things I hope the education of the common people will be attended to; [I am] convinced that on their good sense we may rely with the most security for the preservation of a due degree of liberty."

—Thomas Jefferson,

from *Thomas Jefferson: A Biography in His Own Words*

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING POINTS OF VIEW**

How did the views of Hamilton and Jefferson differ?

government award a prize to companies that made excellent products.

In addition, Hamilton wanted to pass higher tariffs. Known as protective tariffs, these taxes would raise the prices of foreign products. Hamilton hoped this would cause Americans to buy U.S. goods. As a result, American manufacturing would be protected from foreign competition.

Jefferson worried about depending too much on business and manufacturing. He believed that farmers were the most independent voters. They did not depend on other people's work to make a living.

Jefferson wrote, "Our governments will remain virtuous [pure] for many centuries; as long as they are chiefly agricultural." Jefferson wanted to help farmers by keeping the costs of the goods they bought low. Lower tariffs would help keep prices low.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were the main differences between Hamilton and Jefferson concerning the power of the nation's government?

A National Bank

Hamilton's and Jefferson's differences became more and more public in early 1791. The two men had very different opinions about how the government should approach its economic problems.

Hamilton's Plan for a National Bank

Hamilton wanted to start a national bank where the government could safely deposit its money. The bank would also make loans to the government and businesses. Hamilton also thought that the United States should build a national mint, a place to make coins. Then the country could begin issuing its own money.

Hamilton knew that people who wanted to protect states' rights might have a strong reaction to the idea of a national bank, so he suggested limiting it to a 20-year charter. After that time Congress could decide whether to extend the charter. Hamilton also asked each state to start its own bank so the national bank would not have a monopoly.

THE IMPACT TODAY

The U.S. Mint was established in 1792 and now produces more than 15 billion coins each year.

Jefferson Opposes the Bank

Both Jefferson and Madison believed that Hamilton's plans for the economy gave too much power to the federal government. They also thought the U.S. Constitution did not give Congress the power to create a bank. But Hamilton quoted the elastic clause, which states that Congress can "make all laws which shall be necessary and proper" to govern the nation.

Hamilton declared that the clause allowed the government to create a national bank. Hamilton believed in loose construction of the Constitution. **Loose construction** means that the federal government can take reasonable actions that the Constitution does not specifically forbid.

Jefferson thought that the elastic clause should be used only in special cases. He wrote to President Washington, "The Constitution allows only the means which are 'necessary,' not those which are merely 'convenient.'" Jefferson believed in strict construction of the Constitution. People who favor **strict construction** think that the federal government should do only what the Constitution specifically says it can do.

President Washington and Congress agreed with Hamilton. They hoped a bank would offer stability for the U.S. economy. In February 1791 Congress enacted the charter for the **Bank of the United States**—the country's first national bank. The bank played an important role in making the U.S. economy more stable.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**
Why did Congress and the president agree to create a national bank?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Washington and Hamilton developed plans for paying the national debt. In the next section you will read about the U.S. neutrality policy.

Section 2 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP7

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What economic problems did the new government face?
   b. Summarize What compromise did **Alexander Hamilton**, **Thomas Jefferson**, and James Madison reach regarding repayment of state debts?
2. **a. Identify** What disagreement did Jefferson and Hamilton have over the central government?
   b. Draw Conclusions Hamilton was a New Yorker, while Jefferson was from Virginia. How do you think that affected their views on the economy?
   c. Elaborate Do you agree with Hamilton or Jefferson regarding the average citizen's ability to make decisions for the country? Explain your answer.
3. **a. Recall** Why did Jefferson oppose the creation of the **Bank of the United States**?
   b. Contrast What is the difference between **loose construction** and **strict construction** of the Constitution?
   c. Elaborate Defend Alexander Hamilton's stance in favor of the creation of a national bank.

Critical Thinking

4. **Identifying Solutions** Review your notes on U.S. economic problems and Hamilton's solutions. Then copy the chart below and use it to show how Hamilton's views on the economy differed from those of Thomas Jefferson.

	Hamilton	Jefferson
Bonds		
Economy		
Tariffs		
National Bank		

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Gathering Information about Hamilton and Jefferson** Both Hamilton and Jefferson were strong leaders who helped shape the government of the young United States. What could you say about either of them to support a nomination for a Nobel Prize?

Challenges for the New Nation

SECTION 3

If YOU were there...

You are the captain of an American merchant ship in the 1790s. Your ship has just picked up cargo in the French West Indies. You are headed back to your home port of Philadelphia. Suddenly, a British warship pulls alongside your ship. Marines swarm aboard. They order you into the nearest harbor and seize your goods.

How would this incident affect your views of Great Britain?

BUILDING BACKGROUND As the new nation tried to get organized, it faced economic problems and internal divisions. Even more difficult challenges came from conflicts in Europe. The United States could not avoid being caught up in fighting between France and Great Britain.

Remaining Neutral

Tensions between France and Britain began to build after the French people rebelled against their king. On July 14, 1789, citizens of Paris attacked and captured the Bastille, a hated fortress and prison that stood as a mighty symbol of royal power.

The storming of the Bastille was one of the first acts of the **French Revolution**—a rebellion of French people against their king in 1789. The French people overthrew their king and created a republican government.

French revolutionaries storm the Bastille.



What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The United States tried to remain neutral regarding events in Europe.
2. The United States and Native Americans came into conflict in the Northwest Territory.
3. The Whiskey Rebellion tested Washington's administration.
4. In his Farewell Address, Washington advised the nation.

The Big Idea

The United States faced significant foreign and domestic challenges under Washington.

Key Terms and People

French Revolution, *p. 243*
Neutrality Proclamation, *p. 244*
privateers, *p. 244*
Jay's Treaty, *p. 245*
Pinckney's Treaty, *p. 245*
Little Turtle, *p. 246*
Battle of Fallen Timbers, *p. 247*
Treaty of Greenville, *p. 247*
Whiskey Rebellion, *p. 247*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the challenges faced by the new nation during Washington's administration.



Focus on Reading

What can you tell about France before 1793 using this paragraph and what you already know about democracies?

Many French citizens had been inspired to take action by the American Revolution. Many Americans, in turn, supported the French Revolution. They thought that France was creating the same kind of democracy as the United States.

Some Americans worried about the French Revolution's violent riots and attacks on traditional authority. Revolutionaries shocked many Americans by beheading King Louis XVI in January 1793 and Queen Marie-Antoinette later that year.

A few years after the French Revolution started, France and Great Britain went to war. Some Americans supported the French, while others backed the British. Some wanted to remain **neutral**.

Academic Vocabulary

neutral unbiased, not favoring either side in a conflict

The Neutrality Proclamation

The debate divided Congress and Washington's cabinet. Washington presented his opinion to Congress on April 22, 1793:

> "The duty and interest of the United States require that they should with sincerity and good faith adopt and pursue a conduct friendly and impartial [unbiased] towards the belligerent [fighting] powers."
>
> —George Washington, quoted in *The Real George Washington* by Parry et al.

This **Neutrality Proclamation** stated that the United States would not take sides with any European countries that were at war. Washington believed his plan was the safest for the long run, but not everyone agreed.

Some members of Congress criticized Washington's ideas. James Madison believed that the president had gone beyond his authority. He questioned Washington's right to issue the proclamation without the approval of Congress.

The French Question

France's new representative to the United States, Edmond Genet (zhuh-NAY), asked American sailors to help France fight England by commanding **privateers**. Privateers were private ships hired by a country to attack its enemies. Washington told Genet that using American privateers violated U.S. neutrality. Jefferson wanted the French revolutionaries to succeed, but even he agreed that allowing France to use American privateers against England was a bad idea.

Jefferson was still upset by U.S. policy toward France. He believed that the United States should back France because France had supported the United States during the Revolutionary War. Hamilton, on the other hand, was pro-British. He hoped to strengthen trading ties with Britain—the most powerful trading nation in the world at the time. Jefferson thought that Hamilton had too much influence on the president's foreign policy and that Hamilton consequently interfered with Jefferson's role as secretary of state. Jefferson decided to resign from Washington's cabinet in 1793.

Time Line

The Struggle for Neutrality

1789

April 1789 George Washington becomes president.

July 1789 French citizens storm the Bastille.



October 1790 British-backed Little Turtle defeats U.S. forces under General Josiah Harmar.

1793

April 1793 President Washington issues the Neutrality Proclamation.



November 1794 Jay's Treaty sparks protest throughout the United States.



Jay's Treaty

There were other threats to U.S. neutrality. In late 1793 the British seized ships carrying food to the French West Indies. Hundreds of the ships were neutral American merchant ships. Also, British officers were helping Native Americans fight settlers.

Washington wanted to prevent another war with the British. He sent Chief Justice John Jay to London to work out a compromise. The British knew the United States lacked a strong navy and that U.S. businesses relied heavily on British trade. However, the British did not want to fight another war in America.

In November 1794 the two sides signed Jay's Treaty. **Jay's Treaty** settled the disputes that had arisen between the United States and Great Britain in the early 1790s. The British would pay damages on seized American ships and abandon their forts on the northwestern frontier. The United States agreed to pay debts it owed the British.

The treaty was unpopular and sparked violent protests. Citizens and congressional leaders thought the treaty hurt trade and did not punish Britain enough for some of its actions. Southerners were especially angry that the treaty did not ask Britain to repay them for slaves that Britain had set free during the Revolutionary War. Washington did not like the treaty but believed it was the most that could be done. At his urging the Senate approved the treaty.

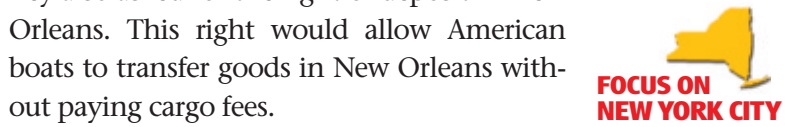
Pinckney's Treaty

American businesses faced problems as well. The Spanish disputed the border between the United States and Florida. Spain closed the port of New Orleans to U.S. trade in 1784. This hurt the American economy because all goods moving down the Mississippi to places in the East or overseas had to pass through New Orleans.

Washington asked Ambassador Thomas Pinckney to meet with Spanish officials to discuss the problem. He asked the Spaniards to reopen New Orleans to U.S. trade. Pinckney also asked for the right of deposit in New Orleans. This right would allow American boats to transfer goods in New Orleans without paying cargo fees.

Spanish minister Manuel de Godoy (goh-THOY) tried to delay reaching an agreement, hoping Pinckney would become desperate and sign a treaty that favored the Spanish. He was worried that the United States and Great Britain might join against Spain after signing Jay's Treaty. Pinckney was patient, however, and his patience was rewarded.

In October 1795, Godoy agreed to **Pinckney's Treaty**, which settled the border and trade disputes with Spain. Under the treaty Spain agreed to recognize the U.S. southern boundary as 31°N latitude. Spain's government also reopened the port at



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

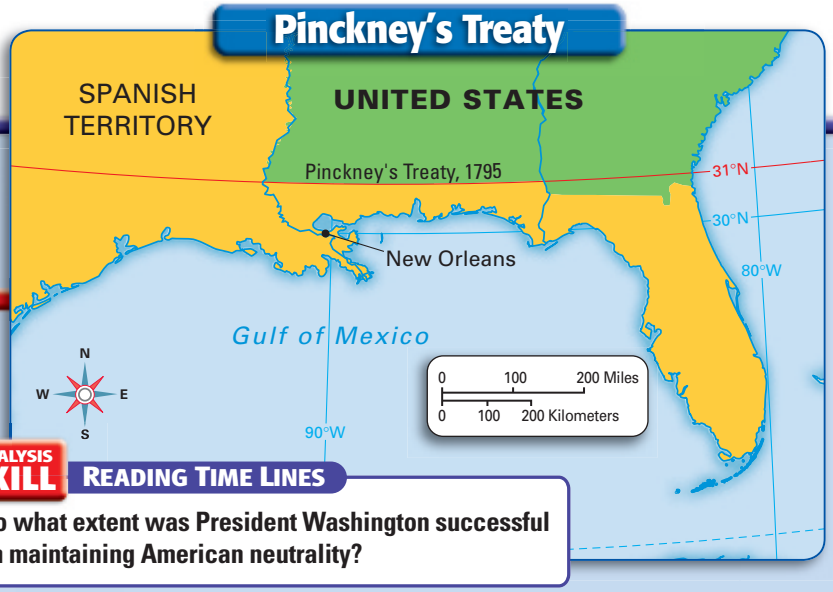
Crowds in New York City were so opposed to the terms of Jay's Treaty that they threw stones at Alexander Hamilton during his speech there in support of the treaty.



1795

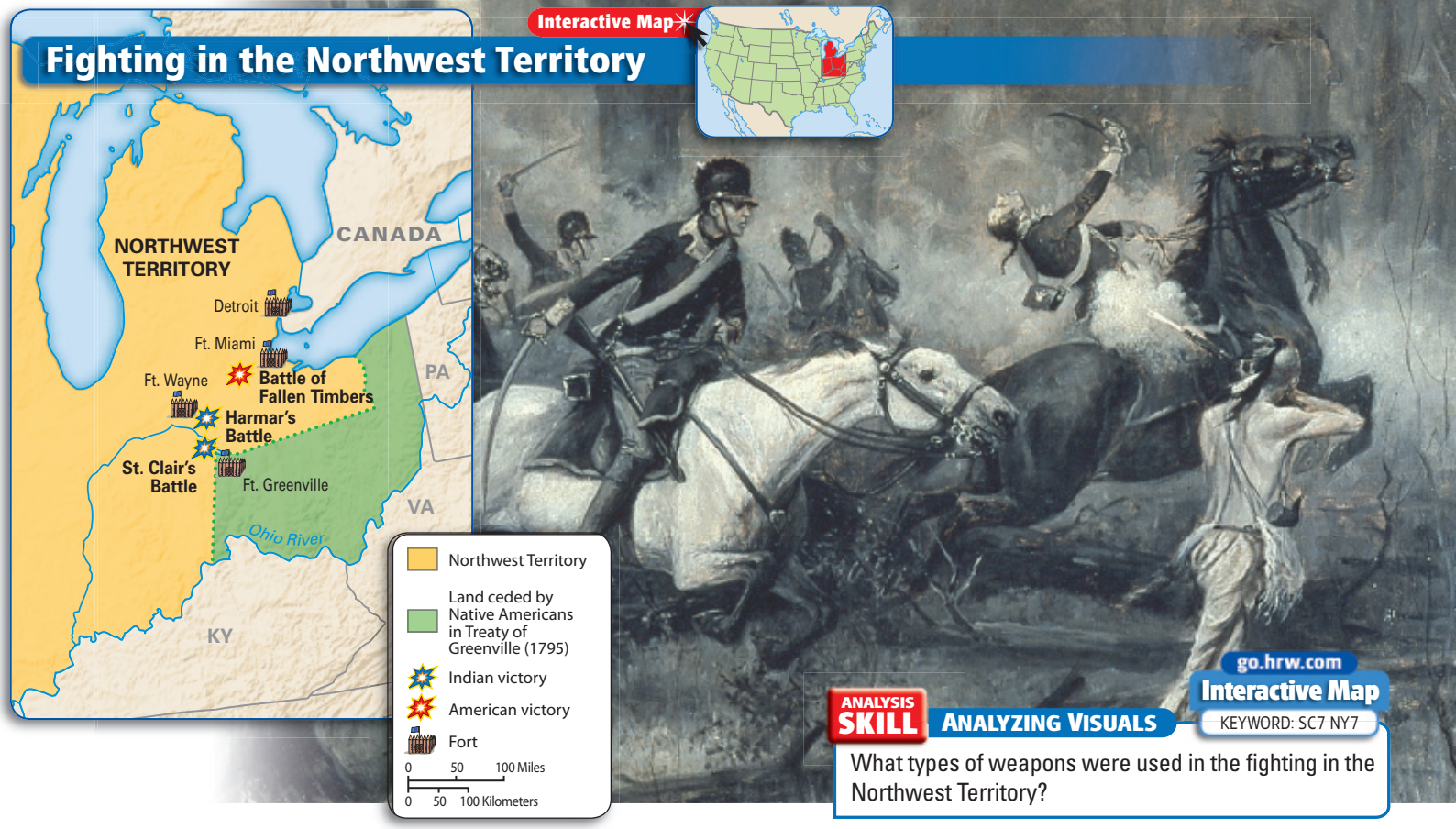
August 1795 The Treaty of Greenville ends fighting in the Northwest Territory.

October 1795 Pinckney's Treaty reopens the port of New Orleans.



ANALYSIS SKILL READING TIME LINES

To what extent was President Washington successful in maintaining American neutrality?



New Orleans to American ships and gave them the right of deposit. Because it opened the frontier to more expansion, Washington and most other Americans believed that Pinckney's Treaty was a successful compromise.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Why did President Washington want the United States to remain neutral?

Conflict in the Northwest Territory

As the United States dealt with international conflicts, trouble was also brewing at home. Americans continued to settle the Northwest Territory despite Native Americans' protests. Supplied by British traders with guns, Native Americans went to war. In 1790 a Native American alliance under the command of Miami chief **Little Turtle** defeated U.S. forces under General Josiah Harmar. Then in 1791, Native Americans defeated General Arthur St. Clair's troops.

General Wayne Takes Command

In 1792 President Washington gave command of the army in the West to General Anthony Wayne. Wayne's task was to bring troops to the frontier to fight against the Indians. In 1793 General Wayne arrived in Ohio. Many of his men were ill from smallpox and influenza, so they were unable to fight well.

Wayne's troops moved north and built Fort Greenville, where they remained during the winter. They built additional forts for protection and to have supplies at hand.

As the summer of 1794 neared, several Native American groups led by Little Turtle attacked a supply train near the fort. Wayne and his men responded. They attacked Native American towns and burned crops.

The British no longer aided the Native Americans after this defeat, and Little Turtle realized that he was outmatched. He urged his people to seek peace but was ignored.

"The trail has been long and bloody; it has no end. The [whites] . . . are many. They are like the leaves of the trees. When the frost comes they fall and are blown away. But when the sunshine comes again they come back more plentiful than ever before."

—Little Turtle, quoted in *The Ohio Frontier* by Douglas Hurt

The End of Conflict

On August 20, 1794, Native Americans fought Wayne's troops in the **Battle of Fallen Timbers** and were defeated. The battle was named for an area where many trees had been destroyed by a tornado. Wayne's forces burned Indians' villages and fields. The strength of Indian forces in the region was broken.

The frontier war soon ended. In August 1795, Native American leaders signed the **Treaty of Greenville**, which gave the United States claim to most Indian lands in the Northwest Territory. The treaty also guaranteed the safety of citizens there. In exchange, Native Americans received $20,000 worth of goods and an acknowledgment of their claim to the lands they still held.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What conflicts did the United States face in the late 1700s?

The Whiskey Rebellion

Other conflicts occurred on the frontier. Congress passed a tax on American-made whiskey in March 1791. The tax was part of Hamilton's plan to raise money to help pay the federal debt. He was also testing the power of the federal government to control the states' actions.

Reaction in the West

People in areas such as western Pennsylvania were bitter about the tax. They were already angry with the federal government, which they believed did not protect settlers from Native American attacks and did not allow settlers enough opportunities for trade. The farmers' corn crops were often made into whiskey, which was easier to transport than the corn. Because cash was rare, whiskey became like money in their region. The farmers believed that the tax was aimed specifically at them.

Farmers who produced small amounts of whiskey for trade argued that they could not afford the tax. They believed they should be able to keep the money they had made from a product they created themselves. Protests in 1792 led President Washington to issue a proclamation saying that people had to obey the law.

Westerners also disliked the fact that cases about the law were to be tried in a district court. These courts were usually far away from the people they affected and were a great inconvenience to them.

Whiskey Rebellion Is Crushed

The complaints of western Pennsylvanians were at first expressed peacefully. But by 1794 fighting had broken out. In what became known as the **Whiskey Rebellion**, farmers lashed out against the tax on whiskey. Protesters refused to pay the tax. They even tarred and feathered tax collectors. Some called themselves the new Sons of Liberty.

Incidents of violence spread to other states. President Washington feared that the rebels threatened the federal government's authority. He believed he needed to make people understand that the Constitution gave Congress the right to pass and enforce the tax.

Washington declared that he could "no longer remain a passive [inactive] spectator" in the event. He personally led the army in military action against the rebellion—the first and only time an American president has done so. The army of about 13,000 men approached western Pennsylvania in November 1794. By this time most of the rebels had fled. The Whiskey Rebellion ended without a battle.

READING CHECK **Supporting a Point of View** Defend the viewpoint of the Pennsylvania farmers who did not want to pay the whiskey tax.

Primary Source

HISTORICAL DOCUMENT

Washington's Farewell Address

On September 19,1796, President George Washington's Farewell Address first appeared in a Philadelphia newspaper. In it, Washington wrote about the nation's economy, political parties, and foreign policy.



While, then, every part of our country . . . feels an immediate and particular interest in union, all the parts combined cannot fail to find in the united mass . . . greater strength, greater resource, proportionally greater security from external danger, [and] a less frequent interruption of their peace by foreign nations; . . .

I have already **intimated**[1] to you the danger of [political] parties in the state, with particular reference to the founding of them on geographical **discriminations**[2]. Let me now take a more **comprehensive**[3] view, and warn you in the most solemn manner against the **baneful**[4] effects of the spirit of party, generally.

If, in the opinion of the people, the distribution or **modification**[5] of the constitutional powers be in any particular wrong, let it be corrected by an amendment . . .

Promote, then, as an object of primary importance, institutions for the general **diffusion**[6] of knowledge . . . As the structure of a government gives force to public opinion, it is essential that public opinion should be enlightened . . .

[Avoid] likewise the accumulation of debt, . . . not ungenerously throwing upon **posterity**[7] the burden, which we ourselves ought to bear . . .

Observe good faith and justice towards all nations; **cultivate**[8] peace and harmony with all . . .

The great rule of conduct for us, in regard to foreign nations, is . . . to have with them as little political connection as possible.

It is our true policy to steer clear of permanent alliances with any portion of the foreign world . . . There can be no greater error than to expect, or **calculate**[9] upon real favors from nation to nation. It is an illusion, which experience must cure, which a just pride ought to discard.

The duty of holding a neutral conduct may be inferred . . . from the obligation which justice and humanity impose on every nation . . . to maintain **inviolate**[10] the relations of peace and **amity**[11] towards other nations.

Washington lists the benefits of uniting the states under one government.

In this phrase, Washington emphasizes his warning against the dangers of political parties.

Washington points out the need for education.

This is Washington's advice to the new nation about foreign policy.

[1] **intimated**: told
[2] **discriminations**: differences
[3] **comprehensive**: complete
[4] **baneful**: destructive
[5] **modification**: change
[6] **diffusion**: spreading
[7] **posterity**: future generations
[8] **cultivate**: seek
[9] **calculate**: plan
[10] **inviolate**: unchanging
[11] **amity**: friendship

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

1. What events happened before Washington left office that might have led to his warning against political parties?
2. Why did Washington suggest neutrality as a foreign policy?

Washington Says Farewell

In 1796 Washington decided not to run for a third presidential term. He wrote that he was "tired of public life" and "devoutly [strongly] wished for retirement." He also wanted to remind Americans that the people were the country's true leaders.

With the help of Alexander Hamilton and James Madison, Washington wrote his Farewell Address. In it he spoke about what he believed were the greatest dangers to the American republic. Among these were the dangers of foreign ties and political conflicts at home. Washington warned against forming permanent ties with other countries because choosing sides could draw the United States into war.

He also worried about growing political conflicts within the nation. Washington believed that disagreements between political groups weakened government. Political unity, he said, was a key to national success. Washington left office warning the nation to work out its differences and protect its independence. Washington also warned against too much public debt. He thought the government should try not to borrow money. He wanted future generations to be protected from debt.

He concluded his speech by looking forward to his retirement and praising his country. "I anticipate . . . the sweet enjoyment . . . of good laws under a free government, the ever favorite object of my heart."

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**

What issues did Washington believe were most dangerous to the future of the new nation?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Americans responded to foreign and domestic conflict during Washington's presidency. In the next section you will read about the formation of political parties in the United States and the presidency of John Adams.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP7

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What did Washington's **Neutrality Proclamation** state?
   b. Compare and Contrast In what ways were **Jay's Treaty** and **Pinckney's Treaty** similar and different?
2. **a. Identify** Who were the leaders of American Indian and U.S. forces in the conflict in the Northwest Territory?
   b. Predict What are some possible consequences of the **Treaty of Greenville** for American Indians in the Northwest Territory?
3. **a. Recall** Why did Congress tax American-made whiskey?
   b. Explain How did the tax lead to the **Whiskey Rebellion**?
   c. Elaborate Why do you think that President Washington personally led the army against westerners in the Whiskey Rebellion?
4. **a. Describe** What warnings did Washington give the nation in his Farewell Address?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why did Washington not run for a third term as president?

Critical Thinking

5. **Categorizing** Review your notes on the challenges the young United States faced. Then categorize those challenges as either foreign or domestic in a graphic organizer like this one.

Challenges	
Foreign	
Domestic	

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Thinking about Washington, Hamilton, and Jefferson** In this section you read about the activities of these three men during a difficult time for our country. What did you learn that you could add to a Nobel Prize nomination for any of these leaders?

SECTION 4

John Adams's Presidency

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The rise of political parties created competition in the election of 1796.
2. The XYZ affair caused problems for President John Adams.
3. Controversy broke out over the Alien and Sedition Acts.

The Big Idea

The development of political parties in the United States contributed to differing ideas about the role of the federal government.

Key Terms

political parties, *p. 250*
Federalist Party, *p. 250*
Democratic-Republican Party, *p. 250*
XYZ affair, *p. 252*
Alien and Sedition Acts, *p. 253*
Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, *p. 253*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the two political parties that emerged during the election of 1796, their views on government, their candidates in the 1796 election, and the outcome of the election. Use a graphic organizer like the one below for your notes.

Election of 1796	
Political Parties	
Views on Government	
Candidates	
Outcome	

If YOU were there...

You are a newspaper editor in Virginia in 1798. You've joined Jefferson's political party, which opposes the new president. In fact, your paper has printed many articles that criticize him, calling him greedy and foolish. You believe that's your right in a free country. But now Congress has passed a law that makes it illegal to criticize the government. You could be arrested for your articles!

Would you stop criticizing the government? Why?

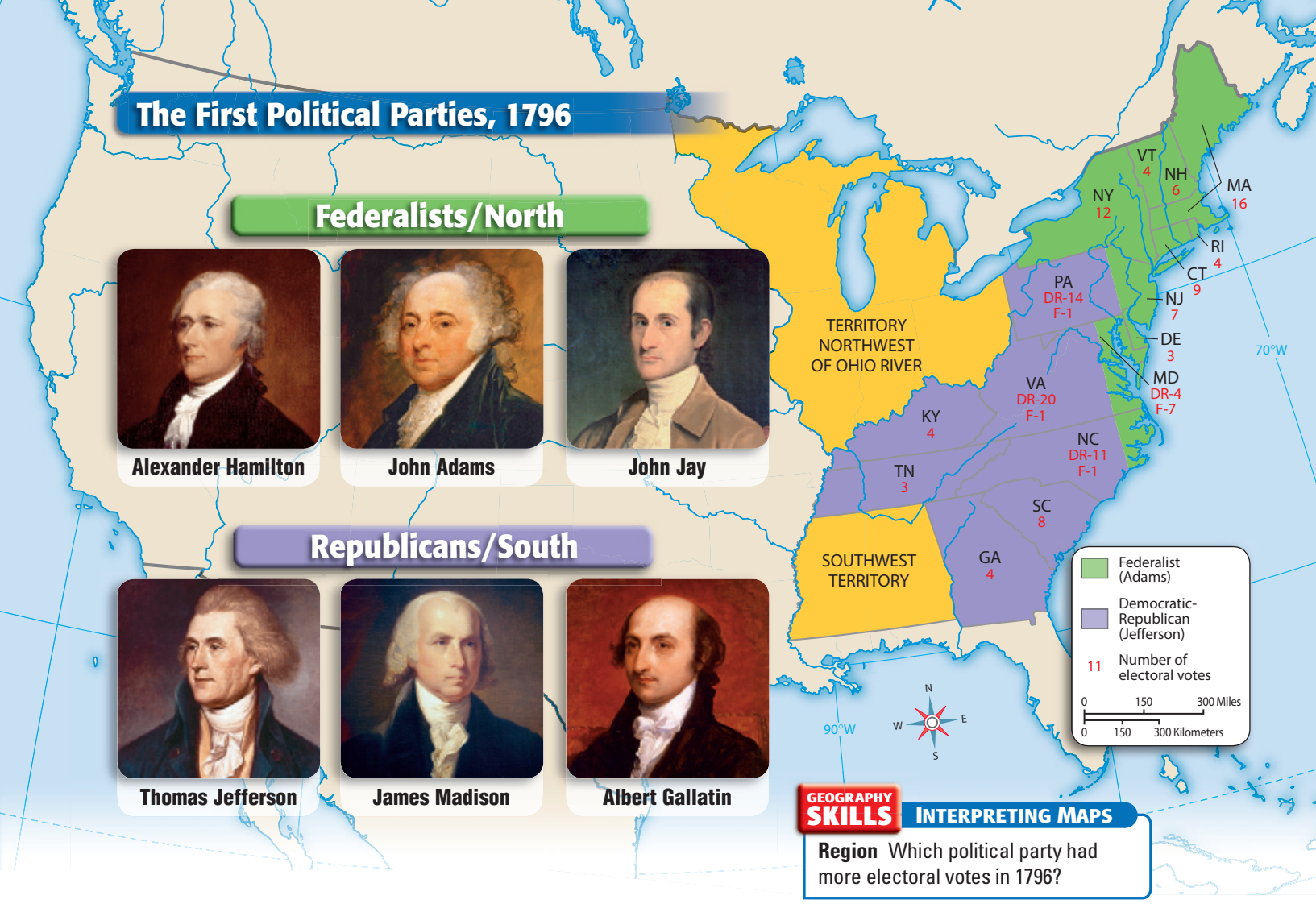
BUILDING BACKGROUND People within the new United States had differing viewpoints on many issues. Personal rivalries among political leaders also created divisions in the new nation. Trying to limit dissent in the country, the federal government passed several unpopular laws.

The Election of 1796

The election of 1796 began a new era in U.S. politics. For the first time, more than one candidate ran for president. **Political parties**, groups that help elect people and shape policies, had begun to form during Washington's presidency. Despite Washington's warnings about political parties, the rivalry between two parties dominated the 1796 election.

Alexander Hamilton helped found the **Federalist Party**, which wanted a strong federal government and supported industry and trade. The Federalists chose John Adams and Thomas Pinckney as candidates. Adams knew he was not well liked in the South or the West, but he hoped people would support him after they thought about his years of loyal public service.

Thomas Jefferson and James Madison founded the **Democratic-Republican Party**. Its members, called Republicans or Republican-Democrats, wanted to limit the federal government's power. (This party is not related to today's Republican Party.) They chose Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr as their candidates.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

Region Which political party had more electoral votes in 1796?

Party differences were based partly on where and how people lived. Businesspeople in the cities tended to support the Federalists. Farmers in more isolated areas generally favored the Democratic-Republicans. Both sides attacked each other. Republicans called Adams a royalist—an insult to a man so involved in the Revolution. The Federalists accused the Republicans of favoring the French.

In the end, Adams defeated Jefferson. At the time, the person who came in second in a presidential election became vice president. So, after months of campaigning against one another, Adams and Jefferson took office together.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**

How did the election of 1796 change the nature of politics in the United States?

President Adams and the XYZ Affair

John Adams had the challenging task of following Washington as president. The people had adored Washington. Adams would have to work hard to win the people's trust.

A New President

At first glance, John Adams did not appear well suited for the presidency. Although Adams had been a leading Patriot during the American Revolution and had later served as a foreign diplomat, he lacked Washington's dignity, and most people saw him as a cold and distant person. Still, many people—even those who opposed him—respected Adams. They recognized his hard work, honesty, and intelligence.

Primary Source

POLITICAL CARTOON

The XYZ Affair

After the XYZ affair, French ships continued to attack American merchant ships. In this cartoon, the United States is represented by the woman. The men, symbolizing the French, are taking valuables from her. The people in the distance are other European nations.



Why do you think this man is encouraging the woman to look away?

These people aren't helping the woman. What do you think the cartoon is suggesting by this?

ANALYSIS SKILL **INTERPRETING POLITICAL CARTOONS**

How does the cartoon show that America is being preyed upon by the French?

The United States and France

One of Adams's first goals as president was to improve the relationship between the United States and France. You may remember that the French had once tried to hire American privateers to help them fight Great Britain, a practice Washington frowned upon. Adams sent U.S. diplomats to Paris to smooth over the conflict and to negotiate a treaty to protect U.S. shipping.

When the diplomats arrived in France, they learned that French foreign minister Talleyrand would not speak to them. Instead, they had a strange and secret visit from three French agents. Shockingly, the agents said that Talleyrand would discuss a treaty only in exchange for a $250,000 bribe. The French government also wanted a loan of $12 million. The amazed diplomats refused these demands.

In March 1798 President Adams told Congress that the peace-seeking mission had failed. He described the French terms, substituting the letters X, Y, and Z for the names of the French agents. Upon hearing the disgraceful news, Federalists in Congress called for war with France.

The **XYZ affair**, as the French demand for a bribe came to be called, outraged the American public. "Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute!" became the rallying cry of the American people.

Preparations for War

Fearing war, Adams asked Congress to expand the navy to a fleet of more than 30 ships. He thought war with France might be unavoidable. He also decided the United States should keep a peacetime army. Congress approved both measures.

Although Adams had asked Congress for military support, he did not want to go to war with France. He was worried about its cost. So he did not ask Congress to declare war. Instead, he tried to reopen peace talks with France.

Peace Efforts

Adams's decision not to declare war stunned Federalists. Despite intense pressure from members of his own party, Adams refused to change his mind.

American and French ships, however, began fighting each other in the Caribbean. Adams sent a representative to France to engage in talks to try to end the fighting. The United States and France eventually signed a treaty. Adams then forced two members of his cabinet to resign for trying to block his peace efforts.

READING CHECK **Identifying Points of View**

What did Americans mean when they said "Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute"?

The Alien and Sedition Acts

Many Democratic-Republicans continued to sympathize with France. Federalists, angered by their stand, called them "democrats, mobocrats, and all other kinds of rats."

In 1798 the Federalist-controlled Congress passed four laws known together as the **Alien and Sedition Acts**. These laws were said to protect the United States, but the Federalists intended them to crush opposition to war. The most controversial was the Sedition Act, which forbade anyone from publishing or voicing criticism of the federal government. In effect, this cancelled basic protections of freedom of speech and freedom of the press.

The two main Democratic-Republican leaders, Thomas Jefferson and James Madison, viewed these acts as a misuse of the government's power. Attacking the problem at the state level, they wrote resolutions passed by the Kentucky legislature in 1798 and in Virginia in 1799. Known as the **Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions**, these documents argued that the Alien and Sedition Acts were unconstitutional. They stated that the federal government could not pass these acts because they interfered with state government. Madison and Jefferson pressured Congress to repeal the Alien and Sedition Acts. Congress did not, although it allowed the acts to expire within a few years.

The Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions did not have the force of national law, but they supported the idea that states could challenge the federal government. This idea would grow to have a tremendous impact on American history later in the 1800s.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did the Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions support the rights of states?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Political parties formed to reflect different viewpoints. In the next chapter you will read about Thomas Jefferson's presidency.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP7

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** What two **political parties** emerged before the election of 1796? Who were the founders of each party?
   b. Analyze What effect did political parties have on the election of 1796?
   c. Elaborate Do you think it was difficult for Adams and Jefferson to serve together as president and vice president? Explain your answer.
2. **a. Recall** What was one of Adams's first goals as president?
   b. Make Inferences Why were Federalists shocked by Adams's decision to resume peace talks with the French?
3. **a. Identify** What did the **Alien and Sedition Acts** state?
   b. Explain What idea regarding states' rights did the **Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions** support?
   c. Elaborate Would you have supported the Alien and Sedition Acts? Explain your answer.

Critical Thinking

4. **Contrasting** Review your notes on the election of 1796 and the formation of political parties. Then create a chart like this one identifying how each of the terms listed below reflected party disagreements.

XYZ Affair	
Alien and Sedition Acts	
Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions	

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Gathering Information about John Adams** Take some notes about John Adams's contributions that would support his nomination for the Nobel Prize. Then begin to compare and contrast all four leaders you have studied in this chapter. Which one will you nominate?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Making Group Decisions

Define the Skill

Democracy is one of the most valued principles of American society. It is based on the idea that the members of society, or representatives they choose, make the decisions that affect society. Decision-making would be much more efficient if just one person decided what to do and how to do it. However, that method is not at all democratic.

Making decisions as a group is a complicated and difficult skill. However, it is an important one at all levels of society—from governing the nation to making group decisions at school, in the community, and with your friends. At every level, the skill is based on the ability of the group's members to interact in effective and cooperative ways.

Learn the Skill

Think about the job the first Congress faced after the Constitution was ratified. The nation was still millions of dollars in debt from the Revolutionary War. Congress had to find a way to pay these debts as well as raise money to run the government.

Leaders like Jefferson and Hamilton had ideas about how to accomplish these goals. However, neither man could act alone. In a democracy the group—in this case Congress—must make the decisions and take action.

This task was complicated by the fact that Jefferson and Hamilton disagreed on what to do. Each man's supporters in Congress pushed his point of view. Fortunately, its members were able to overcome their differences, compromise on goals and actions, and accept group decisions they might not have agreed with personally. Had they not possessed this ability and skill, the nation's early years might have been even more difficult than they were.

Like that first Congress, being part of an effective group requires that you behave in certain ways.

1. **Be an active member.** Take part in setting the group's goals and in making its decisions. Participate in planning and taking group action.
2. **Take a position.** State your views and work to persuade other members to accept them. However, also be open to negotiating and compromising to settle differences within the group.
3. **Be willing to take charge if leadership is needed.** But also be willing to follow the leadership of other members.

Practice the Skill

Suppose that you are a member of the first Congress. With a group of classmates, you must decide what and who should be taxed to raise the money the government needs. Remember that you are an elected official. If you do something to upset the people, you could lose your job. When your group has finished, answer the following questions.

1. Did your group have a plan for completing its task? Did it discuss what taxes to pass? Compared to other members, how much did you take part in those activities?
2. How well did your group work together? What role did you play in that? Was it a positive contribution or a negative one? Explain.
3. Was your group able to make a decision? If not, why? If so, was compromise involved? Do you support the decision? Explain why or why not.

CHAPTER 7

Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
What are the advantages and disadvantages of being a member of a third party?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Complete each sentence by filling in the blank with the correct term or person.

1. The _____ established the structure of the federal court system and its relationship to state courts.
2. Federalists angered many Republicans when they passed the _____ to protect the United States from traitors.
3. As president, Washington was able to establish several _____, or decisions that serve as examples for later action.
4. Farmers in western Pennsylvania protested taxes in the _____.
5. The _____ was created in order to strengthen the U.S. economy.

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 234–237)*

6. **a. Recall** What precedents did President Washington and Congress establish for the executive and judicial branches?

   b. Draw Conclusions Why did Americans select George Washington as their first president?

   c. Evaluate Do you think the newly established government met the expectations of its citizens? Why or why not?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 238–242)*

7. **a. Identify** What changes did Alexander Hamilton make to the national economy?

   b. Contrast In what ways did Hamilton and Jefferson disagree on the economy?

   c. Evaluate Which of Hamilton's economic plans do you think was the most important to the new nation? Why?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 243–249)*

8. a. Describe What challenges did the nation face during Washington's presidency?

b. Make Inferences Why did Washington believe that it was important for the United States to remain neutral in foreign conflicts?

c. Evaluate Rate the success of Washington's presidency. Explain the reasons for your rating.

SECTION 4 *(Pages 250–253)*

9. a. Describe What role did political parties play in the election of 1796?

b. Analyze How did the Alien and Sedition Acts create division among some Americans?

c. Predict How might the political attacks between the Federalist and Democratic-Republican parties lead to problems in the future?

Reviewing Themes

10. Economics What economic problems troubled the nation at the beginning of Washington's presidency? How were they solved?

11. Politics How did the creation of political parties change politics in the United States?

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY7

12. Activity: Creating a Poster In 1798 war with France seemed on the horizon. The Federalist-controlled Congress passed a law that made it a crime to criticize the government in print. In 1971 war raged in Vietnam and the president used a court order to stop publication of information critical of the government's actions in Vietnam. What do these events have in common? Enter the activity keyword. Then research the Alien and Sedition Acts and the Pentagon Papers case during the Vietnam War. Create a poster to display your information and to illustrate the connection between a free press and a democratic society.

Reading Skills

Inferences about History *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> Party differences were based partly on where and how people lived. Businesspeople in the cities tended to support the Federalists. Farmers in more isolated areas generally favored the Democratic-Republicans. *(p. 251)*

13. Which of the following statements can be inferred from the selection?

a. Farmers wanted a large federal government.

b. Urban Americans were usually Republicans.

c. Merchants supported John Adams.

d. People in the cities had different concerns than did the rural population.

Social Studies Skills

Making Group Decisions *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the questions below.*

Get together with a group of three or four students and discuss the Alien and Sedition Acts. Answer the following questions individually and as a group.

14. Do you think that limits should have been put on Americans' speeches and printed articles?

15. What other ideas might Congress have considered to resolve the tensions over the issue?

Focus on Writing

16. Writing a Nobel Nomination Now that you've chosen your nominee for the Nobel Prize, you can start to write your nomination. Begin with a sentence that identifies the person you are nominating. Then give at least three reasons for your nomination. Each reason should include a specific achievement or contribution of this person. End your nomination with a sentence that sums up your reasons for nominating this person for the Nobel Prize. Be persuasive. You need to convince the Nobel Prize committee that this person deserves the prize more than anyone else in the world.

CHAPTER 7

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **In the 1790s, most Americans**

A lived in the countryside and worked on family farms.

B lived in small towns and worked as laborers or craftspeople.

C lived in cities and worked as laborers, craftspeople, or merchants.

D lived west of the Appalachian Mountains or wanted to move West.

2 **In his Farewell Address in 1796, President Washington advised Americans of**

A the nation's need for a national bank.

B his fear of a British invasion to end American independence.

C his wish that the office of president be given more power.

D the dangers of ties with foreign nations.

3 **President Washington demonstrated the government's power under the new Constitution to enforce federal law in the way he handled the**

A Whiskey Rebellion.

B Alien and Sedition Acts.

C XYZ affair.

D Judiciary Act of 1789.

4 **The two-party system that exists in American politics today first arose during the election of which president?**

A George Washington

B John Adams

C Thomas Jefferson

D James Madison

5 **Why did George Washington issue the Neutrality Proclamation?**

A He feared that involvement in the war between France and Britain was dangerous.

B He hoped to show the world that the United States was a peaceful nation.

C He wanted to concentrate on internal problems that faced the nation.

D Jefferson persuaded Washington to stay neutral toward France.

6 **Which of the following was an issue on which Alexander Hamilton and Thomas Jefferson had differing views?**

A protective tariffs

B national bank

C role of the central government

D all of the above

7 **Examine the following passage from a description of the Alien Act and then use it to answer the question below.**

> "The Alien Law has been bitterly criticized as a direct attack upon our liberties. In fact, it affects only foreigners who are plotting against us, and has nothing to do with American citizens. It gives authority to the President to order out of the country all aliens he judges dangerous to the peace and safety of the United States, or whom he suspects of treason or secret plots against the government."
>
> — Timothy Pickering, adapted from *Life of Timothy Pickering,* Vol. 3

Document-Based Question **What is the author's point of view toward the Alien Law?**



DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTION

Shaping a New Nation

Part A: Short-Answer Questions

Directions: Read and examine the following documents. Then, on a separate sheet of paper, answer the questions using complete sentences.

DOCUMENT 1

How much power should the federal government have? How much power should the states have? Alexander Hamilton, John Jay, and James Madison supported a strong federal government in the *Federalist Papers*. The series was published in New York newspapers under the name "Publius." *Federalist Paper* No. 10 was written by James Madison.

> A landed interest, a manufacturing interest, a mercantile [trading] interest, a moneyed interest, with many lesser interests, grow up of necessity in civilized nations, and divide them into different classes, actuated [moved] by different sentiments and views. The regulation of these various and interfering interests [opinions] forms the principal task of modern legislation, and involves the spirit of party and faction [group] in the necessary and ordinary operations of the government . . .
> The federal Constitution forms a happy combination . . . the great . . . interests being referred to the national [legislature]; the local and particular to the state legislatures . . . The influence of factious [competing] leaders may kindle [start] a flame within their particular states, but will be unable to spread a general conflagration [large fire] through the other states.
>
> —**James Madison,** quoted in *Living American Documents*, edited by Isidore Starr, et al.

1a. According to Madison, what different interests arise in a civilized nation?

1b. What does Madison mean when he says the federal Constitution "forms a happy combination"?

DOCUMENT 2

What role should citizens play in the new nation's government? Did people want a voice in the government, or were they content to let their leaders run the country as they saw fit? In letters to James Madison, Thomas Jefferson expressed his belief that "the common people" could—and should—actively participate in their government.

> It is my principle that the will of the Majority should always prevail [win] . . . Above all things I hope the education of the common people will be attended to; [I am] convinced that on their good sense we may rely with the most security for the preservation of a due degree of liberty.
>
> —**Thomas Jefferson**, from *Thomas Jefferson: A Biography in His Own Words*

2a. What did Jefferson believe was the key to involving the people in society and government?

2b. Do you agree with Jefferson that the "common people" could help make society better and preserve liberty? Why or why not?

3. Evaluate and Revise

Evaluating

Clear, straightforward language is important when explaining how things work. Use the following questions to discover ways to improve your paper.

Evaluation Questions for an Explanation of a Process or System

- Does your big-idea statement accurately reflect your explanation of the process or system?
- Do you discuss each part of the process or system in logical order?
- Do you include details and information to explain each part of the process or system?
- If you used bulleted or numbered lists, are the items parallel—that is, do they have the same grammatical forms or structures?
- Does your conclusion restate your big idea and explain the importance of your topic?

Revising

Sometimes a complex explanation sounds even more complex when you try to explain it in a paragraph. In those cases, a bulleted list of facts or examples may make it easier for your readers to understand the information you are presenting. As you revise your paper, consider whether you have any information you should put in a bulleted list.

4. Proofread and Publish

Proofreading

If you use special formatting in your paper, it is important to make sure that it is consistent. Here are some things to check:

- If you have used boldface or italic type, have you always used it in the same way—for important information, for a heading, for a technical term?
- If you have used a list of items, have you consistently used numbers or bullets?

Publishing

Since you are writing this paper for students, you might find a student in the sixth or seventh grade to read it. Find out whether your explanation seems clear and interesting.

5. Practice and Apply

Use the steps and strategies outlined in this workshop to write your explanation of a process or system.

TIP **Using Bulleted Lists** The items in a bulleted list should be in the **same** grammatical forms or structures.

Not the same:

Duties of the judicial branch include

- interpret laws
- overseeing lower courts

The same:

Duties of the judicial branch include

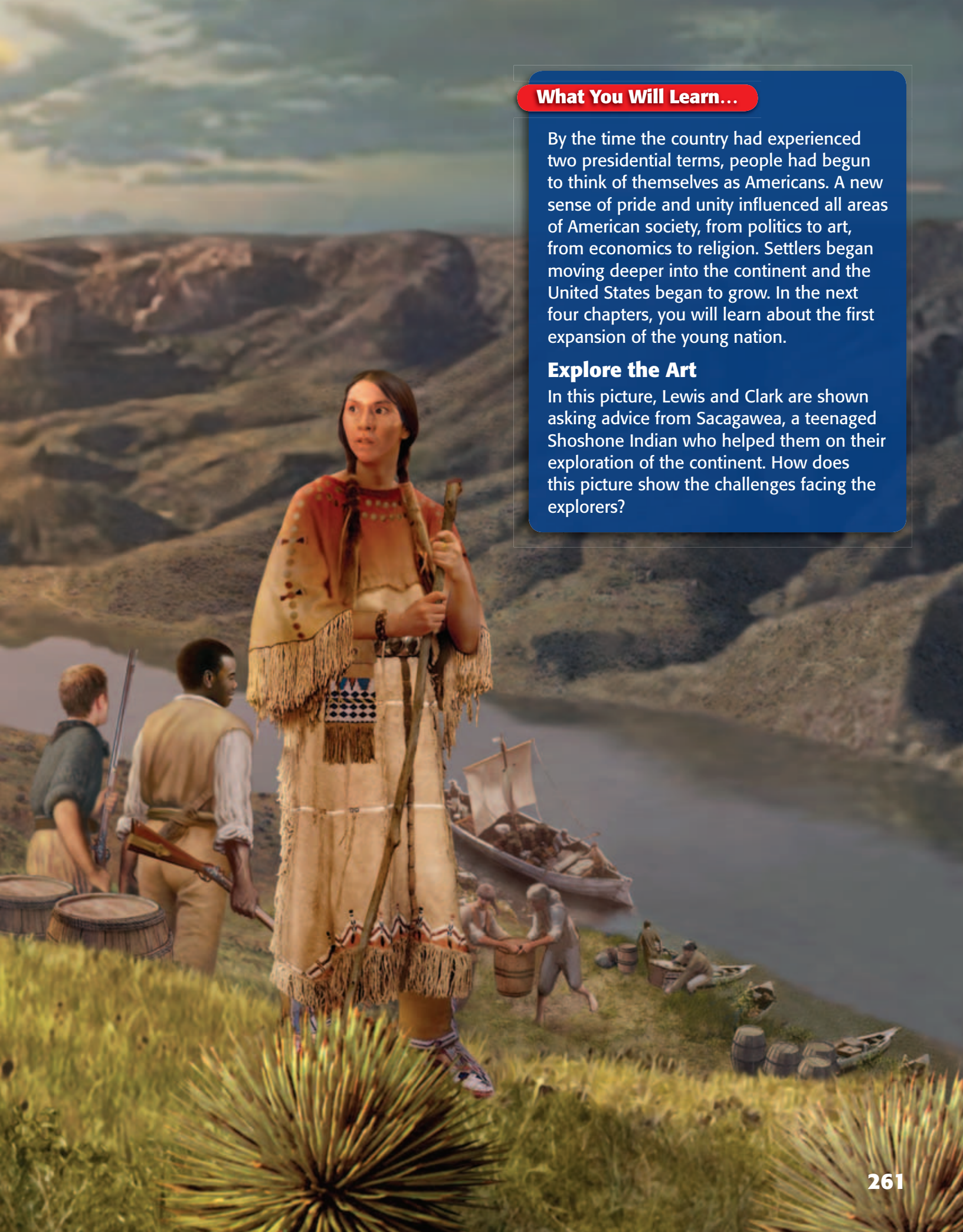
- interpreting laws
- overseeing lower courts

UNIT 3 1800–1855

The New Republic

Chapter 8 The Jefferson Era
Chapter 9 A New National Identity
Chapter 10 The Age of Jackson
Chapter 11 Expanding West





What You Will Learn…

By the time the country had experienced two presidential terms, people had begun to think of themselves as Americans. A new sense of pride and unity influenced all areas of American society, from politics to art, from economics to religion. Settlers began moving deeper into the continent and the United States began to grow. In the next four chapters, you will learn about the first expansion of the young nation.

Explore the Art

In this picture, Lewis and Clark are shown asking advice from Sacagawea, a teenaged Shoshone Indian who helped them on their exploration of the continent. How does this picture show the challenges facing the explorers?

CHAPTER 8 1800–1815

The Jefferson Era



Focus Question

What were the causes and effects of national growth?

SECTION 1

Jefferson Becomes President 266

Primary Source Jefferson's Inaugural Address

SECTION 2

The Louisiana Purchase 272

Interactive Map The Louisiana Purchase and Western Expeditions

Focus on New York City New York's Population

Focus on New York Robert Fulton and the *Clermont*

SECTION 3

The Coming of War 278

Connect to Science and Technology The USS *Constitution*

Time Line America's Road to War

Primary Source The Embargo Act

Primary Source Views of War

SECTION 4

The War of 1812 284

Quick Facts Analyzing the War of 1812

Focus on Writing

A Letter of Recommendation Americans love lists—the five best books of the year, the 10 best video games, the three best soccer players. As you read this chapter you will gather some information about Thomas Jefferson. Then you will write a letter to your newspaper telling why Jefferson should be on the newspaper's "Top Ten American Presidents" list.

United States

1801 Thomas Jefferson takes office.

1803 U.S. Senate approves the Louisiana Purchase.

1800

World

1802 An army of former slaves led by Toussaint-Louverture defeats a French army in Haiti.



HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**

Watch the video to understand the impact of expanding frontiers on the United States.

What You Will Learn...

In this chapter you will learn about the presidency of Thomas Jefferson. A man of many talents, Jefferson looked back to classical architecture to design his Virginia home, Monticello.



1804
Lewis and Clark begin their westward journey.

1807
Congress passes the Embargo Act.

1810
The first ocean-going steamboat, *The Phoenix*, leaves New York City for Philadelphia



1812
Congress declares war against Great Britain.



1815
The Battle of New Orleans is fought.

1805 — 1810 — 1815



1807
The slave trade is abolished in the British Empire.



1814
Kurozumi Munetada founds an influential Shinto religious sect that stresses patriotism in Japan.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes In this chapter you will learn about Thomas Jefferson's presidency. You will read what happened when Jefferson's first run to be president ended in a tie. After that, you will learn about his decision to buy Louisiana from the French, see how he encouraged the exploration of the West, and discover why, during his second term, America found itself at war with Great Britain. You will see how America's expanding **geography** and **politics** were intertwined.

Public Documents in History

Focus on Reading Historians use many types of documents to learn about the past. These documents can often be divided into two types—private and public. Private documents are those written for a person's own use, such as letters, journals, or notebooks. Public documents, on the other hand, are available for everyone to read and examine. They include such things as laws, tax codes, and treaties.

Studying Public Documents Studying public documents from the past can tell us a great deal about the politics and society of the time. However, public documents can often be confusing or difficult to understand. When you read such a document, you may want to use a list of questions like the one below to be sure you understand what you're reading.

You can often figure out the topic of a public document from the title and introduction.

Public documents often use unfamiliar words or use familiar words in unfamiliar ways. For example, the document on the next page uses the word *augmented.* Do you know what the word means in this context? If not, you should look it up.

Many public documents deal with several issues and will therefore have several main ideas.

Question Sheet for Public Documents

1. What is the topic of the document?
2. Do I understand what I'm reading?
3. Is there any vocabulary in the document that I do not understand?
4. What parts of the document should I re-read?
5. What are the main ideas and details of the document?
6. What have I learned from reading this document?

You Try It!

The passage below was taken from a Post Office notice from 1815. Read the passage and then answer the questions that follow.

Rates of Postage

Postmasters will take notice, that by an act of Congress, passed on the 23d instant, the several rates of postage are augmented fifty per cent; and that after the first of February next, the Rates of Postage for single Letters will be,

For any distance not exceeding 40 miles, 12 cents

Over 40 miles and not exceeding 90 miles, 15 cents

Over 90 miles and not exceeding 150 miles, 18 1/2 cents

Over 150 miles and not exceeding 300 miles, 25 1/2 cents

Over 300 miles and not exceeding 500 miles, 30 cents

Over 500 miles, 37 1/2 cents

Double letters, or those composed of two pieces of paper, double those rates.

Triple letters, or those composed of three pieces of paper, triple those rates.

Packets, or letters composed of four or more pieces of paper, and weighing one ounce or more, avoirdupois, are to be rated equal to one single letter for each quarter ounce.

After reading the document above, answer the following questions.

1. What is this document about?
2. What was the main idea or ideas of this document? What supporting details were included?
3. Look at the word *packets* in the last paragraph of the document. The word is not used here in the same way we usually use *packets* today. What does the word mean in this case? How can you tell?
4. Are there any other words in this passage with which you are unfamiliar? How might not knowing those words hinder your understanding of the passage?

Key Terms and People

Chapter 8

Section 1

John Adams *(p. 266)*
Thomas Jefferson *(p. 266)*
John Marshall *(p. 270)*
Marbury v. *Madison (p. 270)*
judicial review *(p. 270)*

Section 2

Louisiana Purchase *(p. 274)*
Meriwether Lewis *(p. 275)*
William Clark *(p. 275)*
Lewis and Clark expedition *(p. 275)*
Sacagawea *(p. 276)*
Zebulon Pike *(p. 276)*

Section 3

USS *Constitution (p. 278)*
impressment *(p. 279)*
embargo *(p. 279)*
Embargo Act *(p. 279)*
Non-Intercourse Act *(p. 280)*
Tecumseh *(p. 280)*
Battle of Tippecanoe *(p. 282)*
War Hawks *(p. 282)*
James Madison *(p. 283)*

Section 4

Oliver Hazard Perry *(p. 285)*
Battle of Lake Erie *(p. 285)*
Andrew Jackson *(p. 286)*
Treaty of Fort Jackson *(p. 286)*
Battle of New Orleans *(p. 286)*
Hartford Convention *(p. 287)*
Treaty of Ghent *(p. 287)*

Academic Vocabulary

In this chapter you will learn the following academic words:

functions *(p. 269)*
consequences *(p. 287)*

As you read Chapter 8, look for passages from other public documents. What can these documents teach you about the past?

SECTION 1

Jefferson Becomes President

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The election of 1800 marked the first peaceful transition in power from one political party to another.
2. President Jefferson's beliefs about the federal government were reflected in his policies.
3. *Marbury* v. *Madison* increased the power of the judicial branch of government.

The Big Idea

Thomas Jefferson's election began a new era in American government.

Key Terms and People

John Adams, *p. 266*
Thomas Jefferson, *p. 266*
John Marshall, *p. 270*
Marbury v. *Madison*, *p. 270*
judicial review, *p. 270*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes in a graphic organizer like this one. List the details of the election of 1800, Jefferson's beliefs and policies, and how the power of the judicial branch changed during his time in office.

Election of 1800	
Jefferson's Beliefs and Policies	
Power of the Judical Branch	

If YOU were there...

You are a Maryland voter from a frontier district—and you are tired! For days, you and your friends have been wrangling over the presidential election. Who shall it be—John Adams or Thomas Jefferson? Your vote depends on your personal judgment.

Which candidate would you choose for president?

BUILDING BACKGROUND John Adams had not been a popular president, but many still admired his ability and high principles. Both he and Thomas Jefferson had played major roles in winning independence and shaping the new government. Now, political differences sharply divided the two men and their supporters. In the election of 1800, voters were also divided.

The Election of 1800

In the presidential election of 1800, Federalists **John Adams** and Charles C. Pinckney ran against Democratic-Republicans **Thomas Jefferson** and Aaron Burr. Each party believed that the American republic's survival depended upon the success of their candidates. With so much at stake, the election was hotly contested.

Unlike today, candidates did not travel around giving speeches. Instead, the candidates' supporters made their arguments in letters and newspaper editorials. Adams's supporters claimed that Jefferson was a pro-French radical. Put Jefferson in office, they warned, and the violence and chaos of the French Revolution would surely follow in the United States. Plus, Federalists argued, Jefferson's interest in science and philosophy proved that he wanted to destroy organized religion.

Democratic-Republican newspapers responded that Adams wanted to crown himself king. What else, they asked, could be the purpose of the Alien and Sedition Acts? Republicans also hinted that Adams would use the newly created permanent army to limit Americans' rights.

The Election of 1800

QUICK FACTS



John Adams and the Federalists

- Rule by wealthy class
- Strong federal government
- Emphasis on manufacturing
- Loose interpretation of the Constitution
- British alliance

Thomas Jefferson and the Democratic-Republicans

- Rule by the people
- Strong state governments
- Emphasis on agriculture
- Strict interpretation of the Constitution
- French alliance

Election Results

Adams receives 65 votes, and Pinckney receives 64 votes.

Jefferson and running mate Burr receive 73 votes each.

- **Peaceful change of political power from one party to another**
- **The tied race led to the Twelfth Amendment (1804), which created a separate ballot for president and vice president.**

When the election results came in, Jefferson and Burr had tied for first place with 73 electoral votes each. Under the Constitution at that time, the candidate with the most votes became president and the one with the second most became vice president. Thus, even though Burr had run for vice president, either he or Jefferson could be president. In the case of such a tie, the House of Representatives needed to decide the election.

The House, like the electoral college, also deadlocked. Days went by as vote after vote was called, each ending in ties. Exhausted lawmakers put their heads on their desks and slept between votes. Some napped on the floor.

Jefferson finally won on the thirty-sixth vote. The election marked the first time that one party had replaced another in power in the United States.

The problems with the voting system led Congress to propose the Twelfth Amendment. This amendment created a separate ballot for president and vice president.

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**

What was significant about Jefferson's victory?

Primary Source

SPEECH

Jefferson's Inaugural Address

On March 4, 1801, Thomas Jefferson gave his first inaugural address. In the following excerpt, Jefferson describes his thoughts on the nation's future.

"Let us, then, fellow citizens, unite with one heart and one mind . . . [E]very difference of opinion is not a difference of principle. We have called by different names brethren[1] of the same principle. We are all republicans; we are all federalists."

By using phrases like these, Jefferson tries to reassure his political opponents.

"Still one thing more, fellow citizens, a wise and frugal[2] Government, which shall restrain men from injuring one another, shall leave them otherwise free to regulate their own pursuits of industry and improvement, and shall not take from the mouth of labor the bread it has earned. This is the sum of good government . . ."

Here Jefferson states his opinion of what is essential to good government.

This phrase shows Jefferson's determination to keep government small.

1. **brethren**: brothers 2. **frugal**: thrifty

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

What words and phrases indicate Jefferson's support for a small national government?

Jefferson's Policies

When Jefferson took office, he brought with him a style and political ideas different from those of Adams and Washington. Jefferson was less formal than his predecessors, and he wanted to limit the powers of government.

Jefferson Is Inaugurated

Americans looked forward with excitement to Jefferson's first speech as president. People from across the nation gathered in the new capital, Washington, D.C., to hear him. Curious travelers looked with pride at the partially completed Capitol building and at the executive mansion (not yet called the White House). The two buildings dominated the surrounding homes and forests.

Small businesses dotted the landscape. At one of these, a modest boardinghouse, the president-elect was putting the finishing touches on his speech. On the morning of March 4, 1801, he left the boardinghouse and walked to the Capitol. The leader of a republic, Jefferson believed, should not ride in fancy carriages.

Jefferson read his speech in a quiet voice. He wanted to make it clear that he supported the will of the majority. He also stressed the need for a limited government and the protection of civil liberties.

From these humble surroundings in which Jefferson delivered his speech, Washington eventually grew into a large and impressive city. Over the years, the Capitol and the executive mansion were joined by other state buildings and monuments. Jefferson, who had long dreamed of a new national capital that would be independent of the interests of any one state, was pleased to be a part of this process of building a federal city.

THE IMPACT TODAY

A monument to Thomas Jefferson was completed in 1943 and is one of the most frequently visited sites in Washington, D.C.

Jefferson in Office

President Jefferson faced the task of putting his republican ideas into practice. One of his first actions was to select the members of his cabinet. His choices included James Madison as secretary of state and Albert Gallatin as secretary of the treasury.

Jefferson would also benefit from the Democratic-Republican Party's newly won control of both houses of Congress. At Jefferson's urging, Congress allowed the hated Alien and Sedition Acts to expire. Jefferson

lowered military spending and reduced the size of the army. The navy was cut to seven active ships. Jefferson and Gallatin hoped that saving this money would allow the government to repay the national debt. Jefferson also asked Gallatin to find ways to get rid of domestic taxes, like the tax on whiskey. The Democratic-Republican–led Congress passed the laws needed to carry out these policies.

The entire national government in 1801 consisted only of several hundred people. Jefferson preferred to keep it that way. He believed that the primary **functions** of the federal government were to protect the nation from foreign threats, deliver the mail, and collect customs duties.

Jefferson did recognize that some of the Federalist policies—such as the creation of the Bank of the United States—should be kept. Although Jefferson had battled Hamilton over the Bank, as president he agreed to leave it in place.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What policy changes did Democratic-Republicans introduce, and which Federalist policies did Jefferson keep?

Marbury v. *Madison*

Although Republicans controlled the presidency and Congress, Federalists dominated the federal judiciary. In an effort to continue their control over the judiciary, Federalist legislators passed the Judiciary Act of 1801 shortly before their terms of office ended. This act created 16 new federal judgeships that President Adams filled with Federalists before leaving office. The Republican press called these people midnight judges, arguing that Adams had packed the judiciary with Federalists the night before he left office.

Some of these appointments were made so late that the documents that authorized them had not been delivered by the time Adams left office. This led to controversy once Jefferson took office. William Marbury, named as a justice of the peace by President Adams, did not receive his documents before Adams left office. When Jefferson took office, Marbury demanded the documents. On Jefferson's advice, however, the new secretary of state, James Madison, refused to deliver them. Jefferson argued that the appointment of the midnight judges was not valid.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
functions
uses or purposes



Marbury v. *Madison* (1803)

Background of the Case Shortly before Thomas Jefferson took office, John Adams had appointed William Marbury to be a justice of the peace. Adams had signed Marbury's commission, but it was never delivered. Marbury sued to force Madison to give him the commission.

The Court's Ruling
The Court ruled that the law Marbury based his claim on was unconstitutional.

The Court's Reasoning
The Judiciary Act of 1789 gave the Supreme Court the authority to hear a wide variety of cases, including those like Marbury's. But the Supreme Court ruled that Congress did not have the power to make such a law. Why? Because the Constitution limits the types of cases the Supreme Court can hear. Thus, the law was in conflict with the Constitution and had to be struck down.

Why It Matters
Marbury v. *Madison* was important for several reasons. It confirmed the Supreme Court's power to declare acts of Congress unconstitutional. By doing so, it established the Court as the final authority on the Constitution. This helped make the judicial branch of government equal to the other two branches. Chief Justice John Marshall and later federal judges would use this power of judicial review as a check on the legislative and executive branches.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

1. What do you think it means to be the final authority on the Constitution?
2. How did *Marbury* v. *Madison* affect the Constitution's system of checks and balances?

Marbury brought suit, asking the Supreme Court to order Madison to deliver the appointment papers. Marbury claimed that the Judiciary Act of 1789 gave the Supreme Court the power to do so.

John Marshall, a Federalist appointed by John Adams, was the chief justice of the United States. Chief Justice Marshall and President Jefferson disagreed about many political issues. When Marshall agreed to hear Marbury's case, Jefferson protested, saying that the Federalists "have retired into the judiciary as a stronghold." Marshall wrote the Court's opinion in ***Marbury* v. *Madison***, a case that helped establish the Supreme Court's power to check the power of the other branches of government. The Constitution, Chief Justice Marshall noted, gave the Supreme Court authority to hear only certain types of cases. A request like Marbury's was not one of them. The law that Marbury's case depended upon was, therefore, unconstitutional.



John Marshall
served as chief justice of the United States for 34 years.

In denying Marbury's request in this way, the Court avoided a direct confrontation with Jefferson's administration. But more importantly, it established the Court's power of **judicial review**, the power to declare an act of Congress unconstitutional. Marshall and later federal judges would use this power of judicial review to make the judiciary a much stronger part of the national government.

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**
Why was *Marbury* v. *Madison* an important ruling?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW A peaceful transfer of power took place in Washington after the election of 1800. In the next section you will read about the Louisiana Purchase.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP8

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What were the political parties in the election of 1800, and who were their candidates?
   b. Analyze Why was the election of 1800 significant?
2. **a. Describe** What ideas for government did **Thomas Jefferson** stress in his inaugural address?
   b. Compare and Contrast What similarities and differences did Jefferson's Republican government have with the previous Federalist one?
   c. Elaborate Defend Jefferson's preference for keeping the national government small.
3. **a. Identify** Who was **John Marshall**?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why is the power of **judicial review** important?
   c. Predict How might the ***Marbury* v. *Madison*** ruling affect future actions by Congress?

Critical Thinking

4. **Categorizing** Review your notes on Jefferson's beliefs and policies. Then copy the graphic organizer below and show how Jefferson brought change through his policies.

Jefferson as President

Federalist Policies	Republican Policies

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Gathering Ideas about a Person's Accomplishments** Look back through what you have just read to see what you have learned about Jefferson's decisions in office. Make a list of the traits you think each decision shows in Jefferson.

BIOGRAPHY

Thomas Jefferson

How would you inspire people to seek freedom?

When did he live? He was born on April 13, 1743. He died on July 4, 1826, within hours of the death of President John Adams, his rival and friend. The date was also the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence.

Where did he live? He was born in Albemarle County, Virginia, where he inherited a large estate from his father. At age 26 he began building his elegant lifetime home, Monticello, which he designed himself. He spent much of his life away from home, in Philadelphia; Washington, D.C.; and Europe. Yet he always longed to return to his peaceful home.

What did he do? Jefferson wanted only three of his accomplishments listed on his tomb: author of the Declaration of American Independence, author of the Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom, and Father of the University of Virginia. What did he *not* mention? Governor of Virginia, lawyer, Revolutionary leader, writer, philosopher, inventor, architect, plant scientist, book collector, musician, astronomer, ambassador, secretary of state—and, of course, president of the United States.

Why is he important? Jefferson's powerful words in the Declaration of Independence have inspired people throughout the world to seek freedom, equality, and self-rule. His most celebrated achievement as president (1801–1809) was the purchase of the Louisiana Territory from France. The Louisiana Purchase of 1803 nearly doubled the size of the United States. Jefferson then sponsored the Lewis and Clark expedition to explore this new territory.

Evaluating Why has Thomas Jefferson been a hero to generations of Americans?



Thomas Jefferson wrote the Declaration of Independence and later served as president of the United States.

KEY EVENTS

1767 Begins practicing law in Virginia

1769–1776 Serves in Virginia House of Burgesses

1776 Drafts the first version of the Declaration of Independence

1789 Appointed secretary of state by George Washington

1801 Inaugurated as president

1803 Authorizes the purchase of Louisiana from France

1809 Retires to Monticello

SECTION 2

The Louisiana Purchase

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. As American settlers moved West, control of the Mississippi River became more important to the United States.
2. The Louisiana Purchase almost doubled the size of the United States.
3. Expeditions led by Lewis, Clark, and Pike increased Americans' understanding of the West.

The Big Idea

Under President Jefferson's leadership, the United States added the Louisiana Territory.

Key Terms and People

Louisiana Purchase, *p. 274*
Meriwether Lewis, *p. 275*
William Clark, *p. 275*
Lewis and Clark expedition, *p. 275*
Sacagawea, *p. 276*
Zebulon Pike, *p. 276*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes in a graphic organizer like the one below on the events leading up to the Louisiana Purchase and the exploration that followed.

Events Leading to Louisiana Purchase	Exploration that Followed Louisiana Purchase

If YOU were there...

You and your family live on a small farm in Kentucky in about 1800. Raised on the frontier, you are a skillful hunter and trapper. One day at the trading post, you see a poster calling for volunteers to join the Corps of Discovery. This expedition will explore the vast region west of the Mississippi River. You think it would be exciting—but dangerous. You might never come home.

Would you volunteer to join the Corps of Discovery?

BUILDING BACKGROUND As the 1800s began, the United States was expanding steadily westward. More lands were opened, and settlers moved in to occupy them. Americans were also curious about the vast lands that lay farther West. Adventurous explorers organized expeditions to find out more about those lands.

American Settlers Move West

By the early 1800s, thousands of Americans settled in the area between the Appalachians and the Mississippi River. As the region's population grew, Kentucky, Tennessee, and Ohio were admitted to the Union. Settlers in these states depended upon the Mississippi and Ohio rivers to move their products to eastern markets.

New Orleans, located at the mouth of the Mississippi, was a very important port. Its busy docks were filled with settlers' farm products and valuable furs bought from American Indians. Many of these cargoes were then sent to Europe. At the same time, manufactured goods passed through the port on their way upriver. As American dependence on the river grew, Jefferson began to worry that a foreign power might shut down access to New Orleans.

"There is on the globe one single spot, the possessor of which is our natural and habitual enemy. It is New Orleans, through which the produce of three-eighths of our territory must pass to market."

—Thomas Jefferson, quoted in *Annals of America, Volume 4, 1797–1820*



Spain controlled both New Orleans and Louisiana. This region stretched west from the mighty Mississippi River to the great Rocky Mountains. Although Spain owned Louisiana, Spanish officials found it impossible to keep Americans out of the territory. "You can't put doors on open country," the foreign minister said in despair.

Years of effort failed to improve Spain's position. Under a secret treaty, Spain agreed to trade Louisiana to France, passing the problem on to someone else. One Spanish officer expressed his relief. "I can hardly wait to leave them [the Americans] behind me," he said.

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**

Why was New Orleans important to settlers in the western regions of the United States?

Louisiana

In 1802, just before handing over Louisiana to France, Spain closed New Orleans to American shipping. Angry farmers worried about what this would do to the economy. President Jefferson asked the U.S. ambassador to France, Robert R. Livingston, to try to buy New Orleans. Jefferson sent James Monroe to help Livingston.

Napoléon and Louisiana

France was led by Napoléon (nuh-POH-lee-uhn) Bonaparte, a powerful ruler who had conquered most of western Europe. He wished to rebuild France's empire in North America.

Napoléon's strategy was to use the French colony of Haiti, in the Caribbean, as a supply

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

The population of New York was also growing in the early 1800s. In 1810, it had the largest population of any state, and New York City was the largest city in the country. It remains the largest U.S. city today, with more than eight million residents.

base. From there he could send troops to Louisiana. However, enslaved Africans had revolted and freed themselves from French rule. Napoléon sent troops to try to regain control of the island, but they were defeated in 1802. This defeat ended his hopes of rebuilding a North American empire.

Jefferson Buys Louisiana

The American ambassador got a surprising offer during his negotiations with French foreign minister Charles Talleyrand. When the Americans tried to buy New Orleans, Talleyrand offered to sell all of Louisiana.

With his hopes for a North American empire dashed, Napoléon had turned his attention back to Europe. France was at war with Great Britain, and Napoléon needed money for military supplies. He also hoped that a larger United States would challenge British power.

Livingston and Monroe knew a bargain when they saw one. They quickly accepted the French offer to sell Louisiana for $15 million.

The news pleased Jefferson. But as a strict constructionist, he was troubled. The Constitution did not mention the purchase of foreign lands. He also did not like spending large amounts of public money. Nevertheless, Jefferson agreed to the purchase in the belief that doing so was best for the country.

On October 20, 1803, the Senate approved the **Louisiana Purchase** agreement, which roughly doubled the size of the United States. With the $15 million in the French treasury, Napoléon boasted, "I have given England a rival who, sooner or later, will humble her pride."

READING CHECK **Making Inferences**

Why was the Louisiana Purchase important to the future of the United States?

The Journey West

The time line and photographs you see here show some of the key events and places of the Lewis and Clark expedition. Read the journal entries to get an idea of what the explorers faced.





A large keelboat and two smaller boats were needed to get the supply-heavy expedition moving west.



Small boats helped the travelers move supplies across the Great Plains.

May 14, 1804

The expedition begins near St. Louis.

August 3, 1804

The first official council between representatives of the United States and Plains Indians is held.

October 1804 – April 1805

The expedition establishes Fort Mandan to spend the winter. There, the explorers meet a French fur trader and his wife, Sacagawea.

April 7, 1805 We are about to penetrate a country at least 2,000 miles in width, on which the foot of civilized man had never trodden (walked upon).

–Meriwether Lewis

Explorers Head West

Americans knew little about western Native Americans or the land they lived on. President Jefferson wanted to learn more about the people and land of the West. He also wanted to see if there was a river route that could be taken to the Pacific Ocean.

Lewis and Clark Expedition

In 1803 the president asked Congress to fund an expedition to explore the West. To lead it, he chose former army captain **Meriwether Lewis**. Lewis then chose his friend Lieutenant **William Clark** to be the co-leader of the expedition.

To prepare for the journey, Lewis spent weeks studying with experts about plants, surveying, and other subjects. This knowledge would allow him to take careful notes on what he saw. With Clark, Lewis carefully selected about 50 skilled frontiersmen to join the Corps of Discovery, as they called their group.

In May 1804 the **Lewis and Clark expedition** began its long journey to explore the Louisiana Purchase. The Corps of Discovery traveled up the Missouri River to the village of St. Charles. Once past this village the men would receive no more letters, fresh supplies, or reinforcements.

Lewis and Clark used the Missouri River as their highway through the unknown lands. As they moved upstream, a lookout on the boats kept a sharp eye out for sandbars and for tree stumps hidden underwater. When darkness fell, the weary explorers would pull their boats ashore. They cooked, wrote in their journals, and slept. Swarms of gnats, flies, and mosquitoes often interrupted their sleep.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

As Lewis and Clark were exploring new lands, engineer Robert Fulton was exploring new ways to use technology. He designed a steamboat called the *Clermont,* which made a historic journey from New York City to Albany in 1807. With this trip, Fulton established the first commercial steamboat service in the world.







The expedition relied on 24 horses to cross the Rocky Mountains.



The explorers paddled down the Columbia River toward the Pacific in five canoes.

August 12, 1805
Lewis climbs the first ridge to the Continental Divide.

September 1805
The expedition nearly starves. Local peoples help the explorers.

November 7, 1805
The expedition reaches a bay of the Pacific Ocean.

August 23, 1805 The hills or mountains were not like those I had seen, but like the side of a tree straight up.
–William Clark

ANALYSIS SKILL: READING TIME LINES

On what date did the explorers reach the westernmost point of their journey?

Primary Source

JOURNAL ENTRY

September 17, 1804, Great Plains

While traveling across the Great Plains, Meriwether Lewis marveled at the richness of the land.

"The shortness . . . of grass gave the plain the appearance throughout its whole extent of beautiful bowling-green in fine order . . . this scenery, already rich, pleasing, and beautiful was still farther heightened by immense herds of Buffaloe, deer Elk and Antelopes which we saw in every direction feeding on the hills and plains. I do not think I exaggerate when I estimate the number of Buffalo which could be compre[hend]ed at one view to amount to 3000."

—Meriwether Lewis, quoted in *Original Journals of the Lewis and Clark Expedition*, edited by Reuben Bold Theraites

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

What did Lewis find so impressive about the Great Plains?

Insects were not the only cause of sleeplessness for the Corps of Discovery. As weeks passed without seeing any Native Americans, the explorers wondered what their first encounter would be like.

Contact with Native Americans

During the summer of 1804 the Corps of Discovery had pushed more than 600 miles upriver without seeing any Native Americans. But when the men spotted huge buffalo herds in the distance, they guessed that Indian groups would be nearby. Many Indian groups depended on the buffalo for food, clothing, and tools.

Lewis used interpreters to talk to the leaders of each of the peoples they met. He told them that the United States now owned the land on which the Native Americans lived. Yet the explorers relied on the goodwill of the people they met. **Sacagawea** (sak-uh-juh-WEE-uh), a Shoshone from the Rocky Mountains, accompanied the group with her husband, a French fur trader who lived with the Mandan Indians and served as a guide and interpreter. Sacagawea helped the expedition by naming plants and by gathering edible fruits and vegetables for the group. At one point, the group met with Sacagawea's brother, who provided horses and a guide to lead the expedition across the mountains.

After crossing the Rocky Mountains, Lewis and Clark followed the Columbia River. Along the way they met the powerful Nez Percé. Like the Shoshone, the Nez Percé provided the expedition with food. At last, in November 1805, Lewis and Clark reached the Pacific Ocean. The explorers stayed in the Pacific Northwest during the rough winter. In March 1806 Lewis and Clark set out on the long trip home.

Lewis and Clark had not found a river route across the West to the Pacific Ocean. But they had learned much about western lands and paths across the Rockies. The explorers also established contact with many Native American groups and collected much valuable information about western plants and animals.

Pike's Exploration

In 1806 a young army officer named **Zebulon Pike** was sent on another mission to the West. He was ordered to find the starting point of the Red River. This was important because the United States considered the Red River to be a part of the Louisiana Territory's western border with New Spain.

Heading into the Rocky Mountains, in present-day Colorado, Pike tried to reach the summit of the mountain now known as Pikes Peak. In 1807 he traveled into Spanish-held lands until Spanish cavalry arrested him. They suspected Pike of being a spy. When he was finally released, he returned to the United States and reported on his trip. Despite his imprisonment, he praised the opportunities for doing business with the Spanish in the Southwest. Pike's

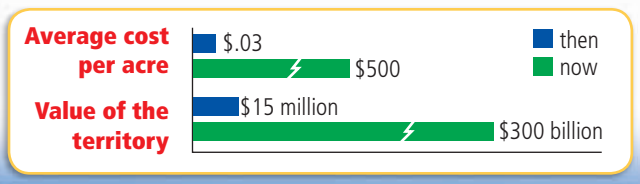
LINKING TO TODAY

The Louisiana Purchase

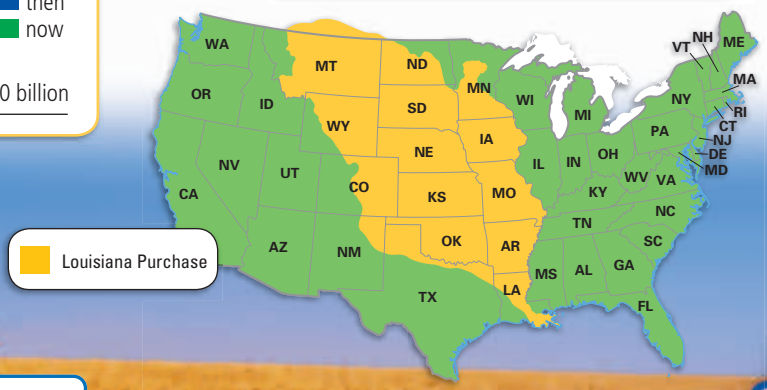
Lewis and Clark would be surprised to see what has become of the lands they explored. The lands of the Louisiana Purchase are rich with natural resources and support enormous agricultural production.

Natural Resources oil, natural gas, coal, gemstones, copper, iron ore, lead, zinc, silver, limestone, sulphur, diamonds, helium

Major Agricultural and Livestock Production rice, cattle, chicken, hogs, corn, wheat, sugarcane, cotton, dairy products, hay







ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

Other than agricultural goods, what types of valuable resources are found in the former Louisiana Purchase?

report offered many Americans their first description of the Southwest.

READING CHECK **Supporting a Point of View**

What would you do if you were Pike and found yourself in Spanish territory?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The Louisiana Purchase nearly doubled the size of the United States. In the next section you will learn about increasing tensions between the United States and Great Britain.

Section 2 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP8

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What new states were added to the Union by the early 1800s?
   b. Explain Why were New Orleans and the Mississippi River important to settlers in the West?
2. **a. Recall** What two reasons did Napoléon have for selling Louisiana to the United States?
   b. Summarize Why was the **Louisiana Purchase** important to the United States?
   c. Predict What are some possible results of expansion into the Louisiana Purchase?
3. **a. Describe** What areas did the **Lewis and Clark expedition** and the Pike expedition explore?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why were **Meriwether Lewis** and **William Clark** chosen to lead the exploration of the Louisiana Purchase?

Critical Thinking

4. **Sequencing** Review your notes on the Louisiana Purchase. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to rank the three most important effects of the Louisiana Purchase, from most important to least important, and explain why you chose that order.

Importance	Why
1. 2. 3.	

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Gathering Information about a Person's Actions** Make a list of Jefferson's actions—the ones that would put him on that top-ten list. Add any new character traits you have discovered.

SECTION 3

The Coming of War

If YOU were there...

You are a tea merchant in Boston in 1807, but right now your business is at a standstill. A new law forbids trading with European nations. Now, Boston Harbor is full of empty ships. It seems to you that the law is hurting American merchants more than European ones! You know that some merchants are breaking the law and smuggling goods, just to stay in business.

Would you obey the law or turn to smuggling?



BUILDING BACKGROUND The United States tried to stay neutral in the conflicts between France and Great Britain, but it was impossible to avoid getting involved. French and British ships interfered with American trade across the Atlantic. The British also caused trouble along the western frontier. Many Americans began to urge war with Great Britain.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Violations of U.S. neutrality led Congress to enact a ban on trade.
2. Native Americans, Great Britain, and the United States came into conflict in the West.
3. The War Hawks led a growing call for war with Great Britain.

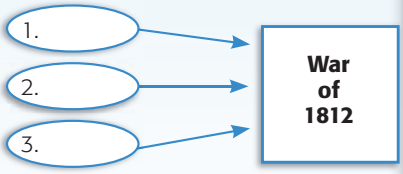
The Big Idea

Challenges at home and abroad led the United States to declare war on Great Britain.

Key Terms and People

USS *Constitution*, *p. 278*
impressment, *p. 279*
embargo, *p. 279*
Embargo Act, *p. 279*
Non-Intercourse Act, *p. 280*
Tecumseh, *p. 280*
Battle of Tippecanoe, *p. 282*
War Hawks, *p. 282*
James Madison, *p. 283*

TAKING NOTES Create a graphic organizer like the one below. As you read, take notes on the challenges that led the United States to declare war on Great Britain.



Violations of Neutrality

During the late 1700s and early 1800s, American merchant ships fanned out across the oceans. The overseas trade, while profitable, was also risky. Ships had to travel vast distances, often through violent storms. Merchant ships sailing in the Mediterranean risked capture by pirates from the Barbary States of North Africa, who would steal cargo and hold ships' crews for ransom. Attacks continued until the United States sent the **USS *Constitution***, a large warship, and other ships to end them.

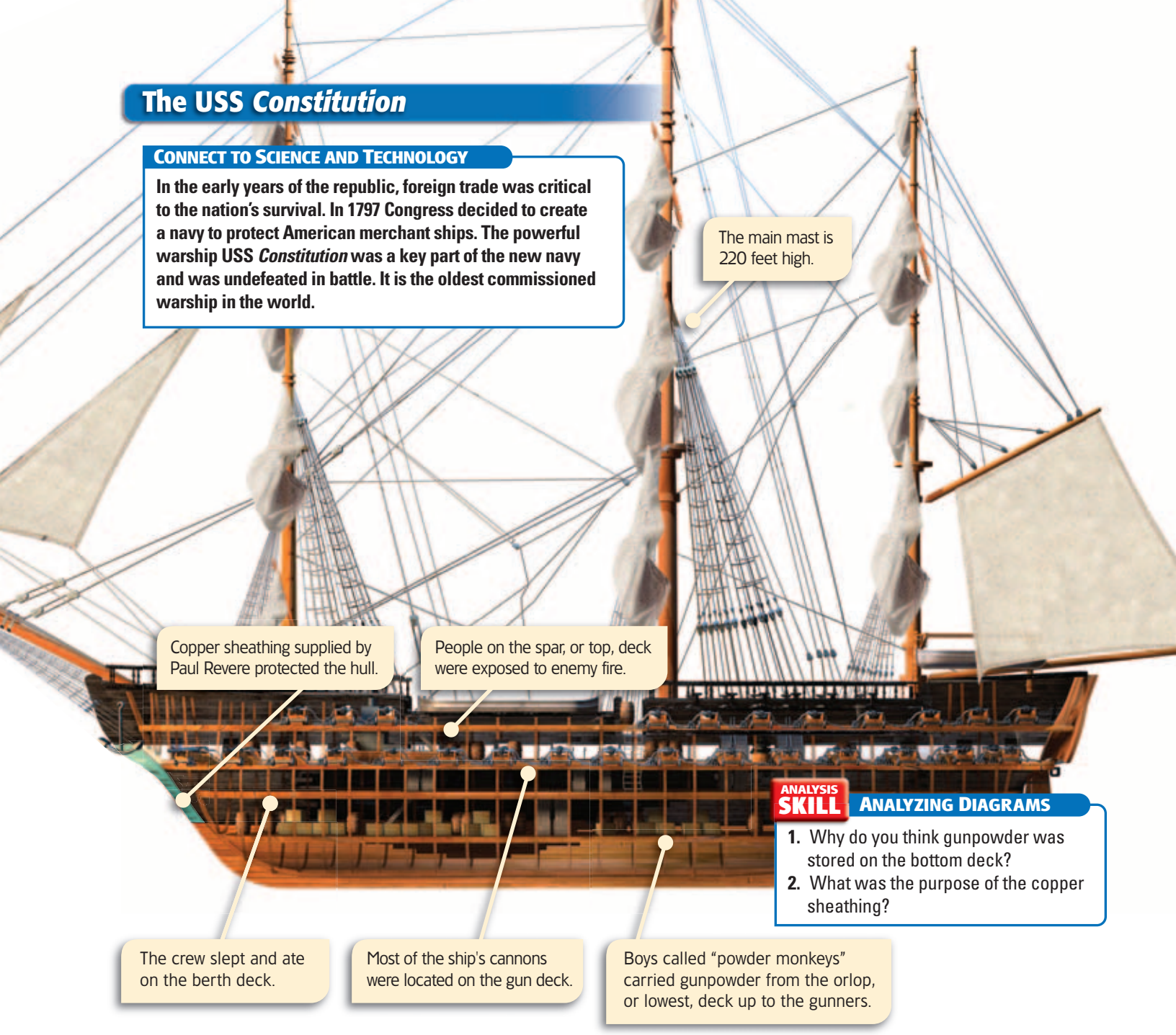
The Barbary pirates were a serious problem, but an even larger threat soon loomed. When Great Britain and France went to war in 1803, each country wanted to stop the United States from supplying goods to the other. Each government passed laws designed to prevent American merchants from trading with the other. In addition, the British and French navies captured many American merchant ships searching for war supplies.

The real trouble, however, started when Britain began stopping and searching American ships for sailors who had run away from the British navy, forcing the sailors to return to British ships.

The USS *Constitution*

CONNECT TO SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

In the early years of the republic, foreign trade was critical to the nation's survival. In 1797 Congress decided to create a navy to protect American merchant ships. The powerful warship USS *Constitution* was a key part of the new navy and was undefeated in battle. It is the oldest commissioned warship in the world.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING DIAGRAMS**

1. Why do you think gunpowder was stored on the bottom deck?
2. What was the purpose of the copper sheathing?

Sometimes U.S. citizens were captured by accident. This **impressment**, or the practice of forcing people to serve in the army or navy, continued despite American protests.

Soon Britain was even targeting American navy ships. In June 1807, for example, the British ship *Leopard* stopped the U.S. Navy ship *Chesapeake* and tried to remove sailors. When the captain of the *Chesapeake* refused, the British took the sailors by force. The brazen attack on the *Chesapeake* stunned Americans.

The Embargo Act

Great Britain's violations of U.S. neutrality sparked intense debate in America about how to respond. Some people wanted to go to war. Others favored an **embargo**, or the banning of trade, against Britain.

Jefferson, who had easily won re-election in 1804, supported an embargo. At his urging, in late 1807 Congress passed the **Embargo Act**. The law essentially banned trade with all foreign countries. American ships could not sail to foreign ports. American ports were also

closed to British ships. Congress hoped that the embargo would punish Britain and France and protect American merchant ships from capture.

The effect of the law was devastating to American merchants. Without foreign trade, they lost enormous amounts of money. Northern states that relied heavily on trade were especially hard hit by the embargo. Congressman Josiah Quincy of Massachusetts, in a speech before Congress, described the situation. "All the business of the nation is in disorder. All the nation's industry is at a standstill," he said.

The embargo damaged Jefferson's popularity and strengthened the Federalist Party. Angry merchants sent Jefferson hundreds of petitions demanding the Embargo Act's repeal. One New Englander said the embargo was like "cutting one's throat to stop the nosebleed." Even worse, the embargo had little effect on Britain and France.

Non-Intercourse Act

In 1809 Congress tried to revive the nation's trade by replacing the unpopular act with the **Non-Intercourse Act**. This new law banned trade only with Britain, France, and their colonies. It also stated that the United States would resume trading with the first side that stopped violating U.S. neutrality. In time, however, the law was no more successful than the Embargo Act.

READING CHECK **Comparing and Contrasting**
In what ways were the Embargo Act and the Non-Intercourse Act similar and different?

Conflict in the West

Disagreements between Great Britain and the United States went beyond the neutrality issue. In the West, the British and Native Americans again clashed with American settlers over land.

The Conflict over Land

In the early 1800s, Native Americans in the old Northwest Territory continued to lose land as thousands of settlers poured into the region. The United States had gained this land in the Treaty of Greenville, but Indian leaders who had not agreed to the treaty protested the settlers' arrival. Frustrated Indian groups considered what to do. In the meantime, Britain saw an opportunity to slow America's westward growth. British agents from Canada began to arm Native Americans who were living along the western frontier. Rumors of British activity in the old Northwest Territory quickly spread, filling American settlers with fear and anger.

Tecumseh Resists U.S. Settlers

Soon an Indian leader emerged who seemed more than capable of halting the American settlers. **Tecumseh** (tuh-KUHM-suh), a Shawnee chief, had watched angrily as Native Americans were pushed off their land. A brilliant speaker, he warned other Indians about the dangers they faced from settlers. He believed that the Native Americans had to do what white Americans had done: unite.

Time Line

America's Road to War



1807

June 22, 1807 The British navy takes sailors from the U.S. Navy ship *Chesapeake*.

December 22, 1807
The United States responds to impressment by passing the Embargo Act.

1809

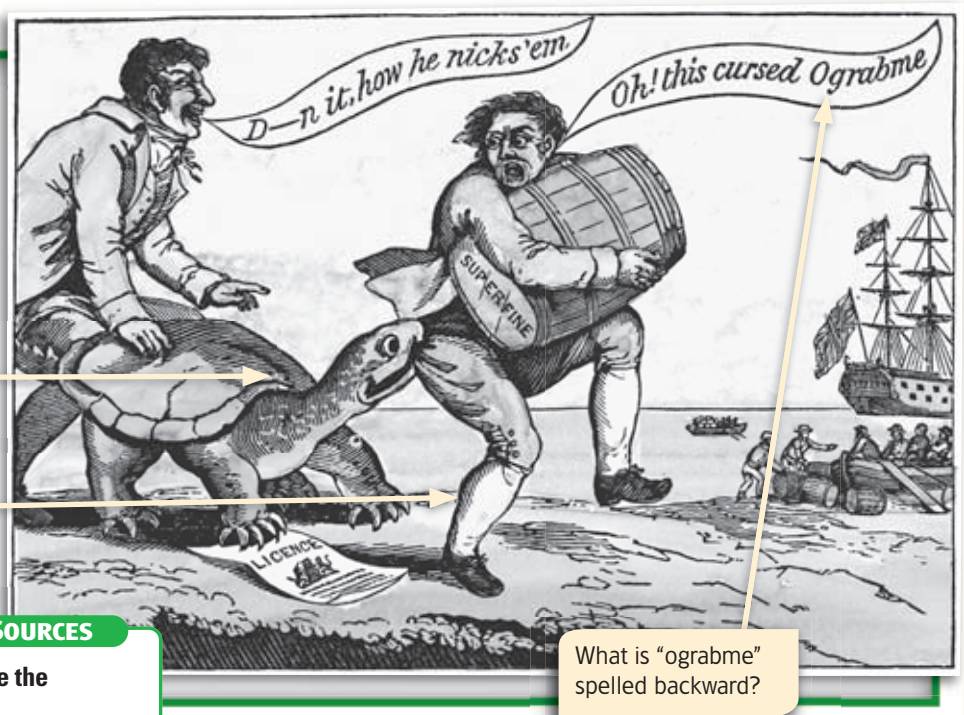
January 9, 1809
Congress passes the Non-Intercourse Act.

Primary Source

POLITICAL CARTOON

The Embargo Act

The unpopularity of the Embargo Act prompted political cartoonists to show visually how the act was hurting American trade.



What do you think the turtle represents?

What is the turtle preventing this man from doing?

What is "ograbme" spelled backward?

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

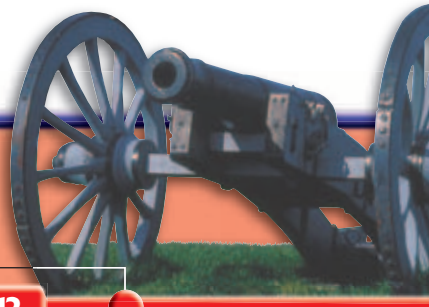
How does the cartoonist emphasize the unpopularity of the Embargo Act?

Tecumseh hoped to unite the Native Americans of the northwestern frontier, the South, and the eastern Mississippi Valley. He was helped by his brother, a religious leader called the Prophet. They founded a village called Prophetstown for their followers near the Wabash and Tippecanoe rivers.

The Battle of Tippecanoe

The governor of the Indiana Territory, William Henry Harrison, watched Tecumseh's activities with alarm. Harrison called him "one of those uncommon geniuses which spring up occasionally to . . . overturn the established order." The governor was convinced that Tecumseh had British backing. If true, Tecumseh could be a serious threat to American power in the West.

In 1810 Tecumseh met face to face with Harrison. The governor urged him to follow the Treaty of Greenville that had been signed in 1795. Tecumseh replied, "The white people have no right to take the land from the Indians, because the Indians had it first." No single chief, he insisted, could sell land belonging to all American Indians who used it. In response, Harrison warned Tecumseh not to resist the power of the United States.





1810 — 1812

November 4, 1811
When the twelfth Congress convenes, Kentucky representative Henry Clay leads the call for war against Britain.

June 18, 1812
The United States declares war against Britain.

ANALYSIS SKILL **READING TIME LINES**

What events led to war against Great Britain?

Primary Source

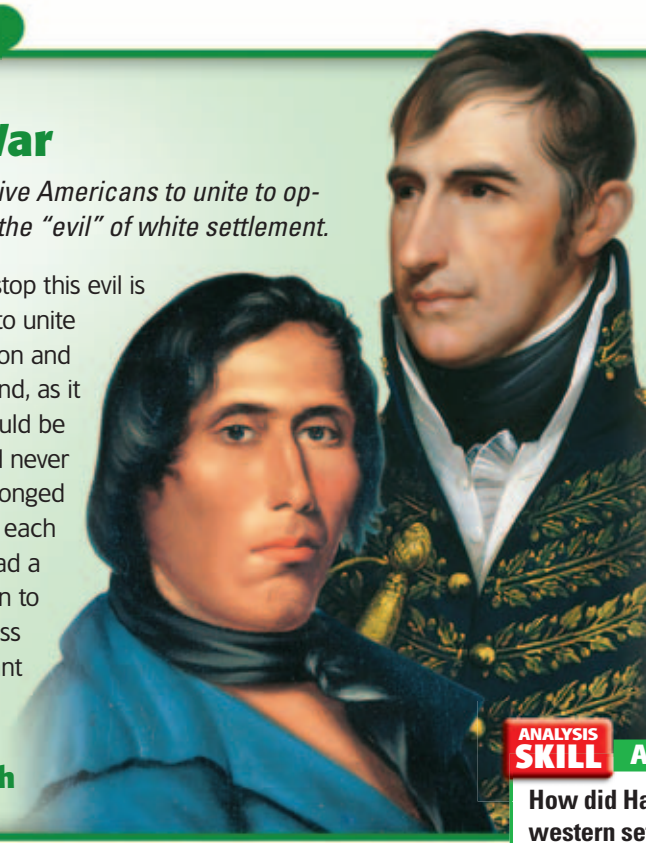
POINTS OF VIEW

Views of War

Tecumseh urged Native Americans to unite to oppose what he called the "evil" of white settlement.

"The only way to stop this evil is for all the red men to unite in claiming a common and equal right to the land, as it was at first, and should be yet. Before, the land never was divided, but belonged to all, for the use of each person. No group had a right to sell, not even to each other, much less to strangers who want all and will not do with less."

—Tecumseh



William Henry Harrison was proud of his efforts to obtain land for settlers.

"By my own exertions in securing the friendship of the chiefs . . . by admitting them at all times to my house and table, my propositions for the purchase of their lands were successful beyond my . . . hopes . . . In the course of seven years the Indian title was extinguished to the amount of fifty millions of acres."

—William Henry Harrison

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING POINTS OF VIEW**

How did Harrison's and Tecumseh's views on western settlement differ?

Tecumseh traveled south to ask the Creek nation to join his forces. In his absence, Harrison attacked. Harrison raised an army and marched his troops close to Prophetstown. Fighting broke out when the Prophet ordered an attack on Harrison's camp on November 7, 1811.

The Indians broke through army lines, but Harrison kept a "calm, cool, and collected" manner, according to one observer. During the all-day battle, Harrison's soldiers forced the Indian warriors to retreat and then destroyed Tecumseh's village. Said Chief Shabbona, "With the smoke of that town and loss of that battle, I lost all hope." Although Tecumseh was safe, U.S. forces defeated Tecumseh and his followers in the **Battle of Tippecanoe**. The defeat destroyed Tecumseh's dream of a great Indian confederation. He fled to Canada.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**

Why were U.S. officials worried about Tecumseh's actions?

FOCUS ON READING

What words did Calhoun use that had strong emotions tied to them for Americans? (See "The War Hawks" section.)

Call for War

The evidence of British support for Tecumseh further inflamed Americans. A Democratic-Republican newspaper declared, "The war on the Wabash [River] is purely BRITISH." Many Americans felt that Britain had encouraged Tecumseh to attack settlers in the West.

The War Hawks

Several young members of Congress—called **War Hawks** by their opponents—took the lead in calling for war against Britain. These legislators, most of whom were from the South and West, were led by Henry Clay of Kentucky, John C. Calhoun of South Carolina, and Felix Grundy of Tennessee. They saw war as the only answer to British insults. "If we submit," Calhoun warned, "the independence of this nation is lost." Calls for war grew. Leaders wanted to put a stop to British influence among Native Americans. They also wanted to invade

Canada and gain more land for settlement. Others were angered by British trade restrictions that hurt southern planters and western farmers. War Hawks gave emotional speeches urging Americans to stand up to Great Britain.

The Opposition

The strongest opponents of the War Hawks were New England Federalists. British trade restrictions and impressment had hurt New England's economy. People there wanted to renew friendly business ties with Britain instead of fighting another war.

Other politicians argued that war with Great Britain would be foolish. They feared that the United States was not yet ready to fight powerful Britain. America's army and navy were small and poorly equipped compared to Britain's military. In addition, Americans could produce only a fraction of the military supplies Britain could. Senator Obadiah German of New York pleaded with the War Hawks to be patient: "Prior to any declaration of war . . . my plan would be, and my first wish is, to prepare for it—to put the country in complete armor."

Declaring War

Republican **James Madison** was elected president in 1808. He faced the difficulty of continuing an unpopular trade war begun by Jefferson. He also felt growing pressure from the War Hawks. By 1812 he decided that Congress must vote on war. Speaking to Congress, Madison blasted Great Britain's conduct. He asked Congress to decide how the nation should respond.

When Congress voted a few days later, the War Hawks won. For the first time in the nation's brief history, Congress had declared war. Months later, Americans elected Madison to a second term. He would serve as commander in chief during the War of 1812.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Why did the United States declare war in 1812?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Conflicts on the frontier and with Great Britain dominated U.S. foreign policy under Jefferson and Madison. In the next section you will read about the War of 1812.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP8

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** In what ways did the war between France and Britain cause problems for the United States?
   b. Make Inferences What were the reasons for the failure of the **Embargo Act**?
   c. Elaborate Why do you think **embargoes** against Britain and France failed?
2. **a. Describe** What was **Tecumseh**'s goal?
   b. Explain What role did Great Britain play in the conflict between the United States and American Indians on the western frontier?
3. **a. Identify** Who were the **War Hawks**? Why did they support war with Britain?
   b. Elaborate Would you have supported going to war against Great Britain? Explain your answer.

Critical Thinking

4. **Categorizing** Review your notes on the challenges that led to the War of 1812. Were most challenges foreign or domestic? Categorize them in a chart like the one below.

Foreign	Domestic

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Taking Notes** Take notes about any of Jefferson's actions and character traits you can identify during the buildup to war with Britain. Save this information for the top-ten list you will create at the end of the chapter.

SECTION 4

The War of 1812

If YOU were there...

It's 1812, and the United States and Great Britain are at war. You are a sailor on an American merchant ship that has been licensed as a privateer. Your ship's mission will be to chase and capture ships of the mighty British navy. Even with the help of merchant ships like yours, the American navy is badly outnumbered. You know you face danger and may not survive.

Do you think your mission will succeed?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Anger against Great Britain's actions finally provoked the United States into the War of 1812. Britain's great navy gave it a clear advantage at sea, but the war was also fought on several other fronts. Victories in major battles along the frontier gave Americans a new sense of unity.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. American forces held their own against the British in the early battles of the war.
2. U.S. forces stopped British offensives in the East and South.
3. The effects of the war included prosperity and national pride.

The Big Idea

Great Britain and the United States went to battle in the War of 1812.

Key Terms and People

Oliver Hazard Perry, *p. 285*
Battle of Lake Erie, *p. 285*
Andrew Jackson, *p. 286*
Treaty of Fort Jackson, *p. 286*
Battle of New Orleans, *p. 286*
Hartford Convention, *p. 287*
Treaty of Ghent, *p. 287*

TAKING NOTES Create a graphic organizer like the one below. As you read, take notes on the sequence of events in the War of 1812, from beginning to end.

Sequence of Events
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

Early Battles

In the summer of 1812 the United States found itself in a war with one of the world's most powerful nations. Despite the claims by the War Hawks, the War of 1812 would not be a quick and easy fight.

War at Sea

When the war began, the British navy had hundreds of ships. In contrast, the U.S. Navy had fewer than 20 ships. None of them was as powerful as the greatest British warships.

Most of the British navy's ships, however, were scattered around the globe. Although small, the U.S. Navy had well-trained sailors and powerful new warships such as the USS *Constitution*. American vessels defeated British ships several times in one-on-one duels. Such victories embarrassed the British and raised American morale. Eventually, the British ships blockaded America's seaports.

Battles Along the Canadian Border

American leaders hoped to follow up victories at sea with an overland invasion of Canada. Three attacks were planned—from Detroit, from Niagara Falls, and from up the Hudson River valley toward Montreal.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Location** According to the map, what major southern port was affected by the British blockade?
2. **Region** Which battles took place in the Great Lakes region?

The attack from Detroit failed when British soldiers and Indians led by Tecumseh captured Fort Detroit. The other American attacks failed when state militia troops refused to cross the Canadian border, arguing that they did not have to fight in a foreign country.

In 1813 the United States went on the attack again. A key goal was to break Britain's control of Lake Erie. The navy gave the task to Commodore **Oliver Hazard Perry**. After building a small fleet, Perry sailed out to meet the British on September 10, beginning the **Battle of Lake Erie**. The battle ended when the British surrendered. Perry sent a message to General William Henry Harrison: "We have met the enemy and they are ours." Perry's brilliant victory forced the British to withdraw, giving the U.S. Army control of the lake and new hope.

With American control of Lake Erie established, General Harrison marched his army into Canada. At the Battle of the Thames River in October 1813, he defeated a combined force of British troops and Native Americans. Harrison's victory ended British power in the Northwest. Tecumseh's death

during the fighting also dealt a blow to the British alliance with Native Americans in the region.

The Creek War

Meanwhile, war with American Indians erupted in the South. Creek Indians, angry at American settlers for pushing into their lands, took up arms in 1813. A large force attacked Fort Mims on the Alabama River, destroying the fort and killing close to 250 of its defenders. In response, the commander of the Tennessee militia, **Andrew Jackson**, gathered about 2,000 volunteers to move against the Creek nation.

In the spring of 1814 Jackson attacked the Creek along the Tallapoosa River in Alabama. Jackson's troops won this battle, the Battle of Horseshoe Bend. The **Treaty of Fort Jackson**, signed late in 1814, ended the Creek War and forced the Creek to give up millions of acres of their land.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Inspired by the Americans' strength at Fort McHenry, Francis Scott Key wrote the national anthem, "The Star-Spangled Banner."

READING CHECK **Comparing** What advantages did Great Britain and the United States have at the start of the war?



First Lady Saves Washington's Portrait

Dolley Madison refused to leave Washington, D.C., until a famous portrait of the first president was saved from the executive mansion.

Great Britain on the Offensive

Despite U.S. success on the western and southern frontiers, the situation in the East grew worse. After defeating France in April 1814, the British sent more troops to America.

British Attacks in the East

Now reinforced, the British attacked Washington, D.C. President Madison was forced to flee when the British broke through U.S. defenses. The British set fire to the White House, the Capitol, and other government buildings.

The British sailed on to Baltimore, Maryland, which was guarded by Fort McHenry. They shelled the fort for 25 hours. The Americans refused to surrender Fort McHenry. The British chose to retreat instead of continuing to fight.

The Battle of New Orleans

After the attack on Washington, the British moved against New Orleans. British commanders hoped to capture the city and thus take control of the Mississippi River.

Andrew Jackson commanded the U.S. forces around New Orleans. His troops were a mix of regular soldiers, including two battalions of free African Americans, a group of Choctaw Indians, state militia, and pirates led by Jean Lafitte.

The battle began on the morning of January 8, 1815. Some 5,300 British troops attacked Jackson's force of about 4,500. The British began marching toward the U.S. defenses, but they were caught on an open field. The British were cut down with frightening speed. More than 2,000 British soldiers were killed or wounded. The Americans, for their part, had suffered about 70 casualties. The **Battle of New Orleans** made Andrew Jackson a hero and was the last major conflict of the War of 1812.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**
What happened at the Battle of New Orleans?



Effects of the War

Before the battle of New Orleans, a group of New England Federalists gathered secretly at Hartford, Connecticut. At the **Hartford Convention**, Federalists agreed to oppose the war and send delegates to meet with Congress. Before the delegates reached Washington, however, news arrived that the war had ended. Some critics now laughed at the Federalists, and the party lost much of its political power.

Slow communications at the time meant that neither the Federalists nor Jackson knew about the **Treaty of Ghent**. The treaty, which had been signed in Belgium on December 24, 1814, ended the War of 1812.

Though each nation returned the territory it had conquered, the fighting did have several consequences. The war produced feelings of patriotism in Americans for having stood up to the mighty British. Some even called it the second war for independence. The war also broke the power of many Native American groups. Finally, a lack of goods caused by the interruption in trade boosted American manufacturing.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
consequences the effects of a particular event or events

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**
What were the main effects of the War of 1812?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The War of 1812 showed Americans that the nation would survive. In the next chapter you will see how the United States continued to grow.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP8

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What losses did American forces face in the early battles of the War of 1812? What victories did they win?
   b. Make Generalizations What role did American Indians play in the war?
2. **a. Describe** What attacks did the British lead against American forces?
   b. Evaluate What do you think were the two most important battles of the war? Why?
3. **a. Identify** What was the purpose of the **Hartford Convention**?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did the United States benefit from the War of 1812?

Critical Thinking

4. **Comparing and Contrasting** Review your notes on the battle dates. Then compare and contrast the details of the major battles during the War of 1812 in a chart like this one.

Battle	Details (Winner, Location, Importance)

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Organizing Your Ideas** Reorder the items on your lists from least important to most important.

Interactive Map

History and Geography

America's Growth

1820

In 1803 the United States made the biggest land purchase in its history—the Louisiana Purchase. With this purchase, the country stretched west all the way to the Rocky Mountains. In 1819 the United States acquired Florida from Spain, gaining even more new territory. By 1820, the young American republic had roughly doubled in size, as you can see on the map. Explorers, traders, and settlers began to pour into the new lands in search of wealth, land, and a place to call home.

British Territory

Claimed by United States, ceded to Great Britain in 1818

49th Parallel

ROCKY MOUNTAINS

Oregon Country

42nd Parallel

The Oregon Country Both the United States and Great Britain claimed the Oregon Country.



PACIFIC OCEAN

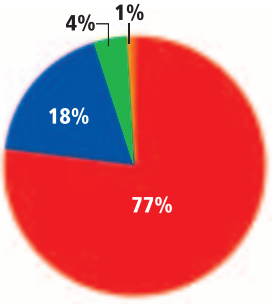
Spanish Territory

Louisiana Purchase, 1803
Claimed by United States and Great Britain, 1818
Convention of 1818
From Britain to United States, 1818
Adams-Onís Treaty of 1819
From Spain to United States, 1819

0 150 300 Miles
0 150 300 Kilometers

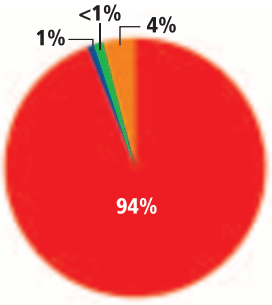
130° W 120° W 110° W

America's Population, 1820: 10.1 million



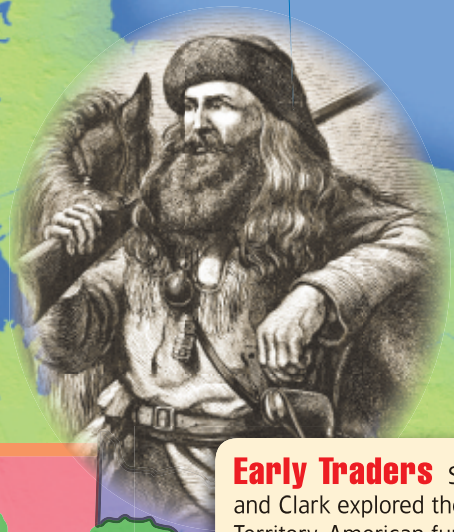
Ethnic Groups, 1820

- White/European
- African American
- Native American
- Other



Religions, 1820

- Protestant
- Catholic
- Jewish
- Other





Early Traders Soon after Lewis and Clark explored the Louisiana Territory, American fur trappers and traders began setting up trading posts there. Many of these posts became towns later as settlers arrived.

Through the Gaps Settlers crossed the Appalachians through valleys called gaps. In time, roads were built through the gaps, making it easier for Americans to head west.

Unorganized Territory

Missouri River

Missouri Territory

Arkansas Territory

Red River

Mississippi River

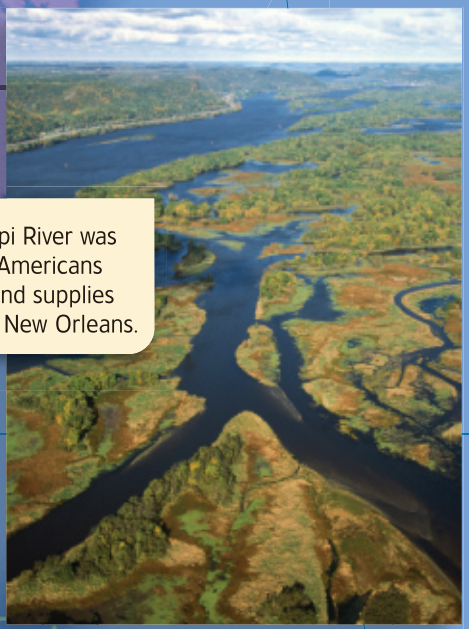
Delaware Gap

Cumberland Gap

APPALACHIAN MTS

ATLANTIC OCEAN

40° N



The Mighty Mississippi The Mississippi River was the great highway of the central United States. Americans west of the Appalachians shipped farm goods and supplies up and down the Mississippi and its major port, New Orleans.

Louisiana

New Orleans

Gulf of Mexico

Unorganized Territory (Florida)

go.hrw.com
Interactive Map
KEYWORD: SC7 NY8

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Movement** In which main directions did the United States expand before 1820?
2. **Region** Based on the map, why do you think the United States was interested in claiming the Oregon Country?

N W E S

70° W

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | **Civic Participation** | Study

Working in Groups to Solve Issues

Define the Skill

You already know that the decision-making process is more difficult in a group than it is if just one person makes the decisions. However, group decision-making becomes an even greater challenge when controversial issues are involved.

Group members must have additional skills for the group to function effectively when conflict exists within it. These include respect for differing views, the arts of persuasion and negotiation, and an ability to compromise. A group may not be able to find solutions to controversial problems unless its members have these skills.

Learn the Skill

Some of the biggest challenges Congress faced in the early 1800s were related to the war between Great Britain and France. Some Americans supported the British, while others favored the French. Both countries hoped for American help. When the United States would not take sides, they each began interfering with U.S. ships on the open seas.

As you read in this chapter, Congress tried to solve this problem by passing the Embargo Act. That solution was controversial, however. The northern states were hard hit by the law's ban on overseas trade. Their representatives in Congress demanded a less extreme action. The result was the Non-Intercourse Act. This law was a compromise between members who wanted to lift the trade ban and those who wanted to continue it. Congress was able to solve this problem because its members were able to work around their differences.

The skills Congress needed to reach its solution are valuable ones for any group that must make decisions involving controversial issues. They include the following attitudes and behaviors.

1. **Willingness to take a position.** If an issue is controversial, it is likely that group members will have differing opinions about it. You have a right to state your views and try to persuade others that you are correct.
2. **Willingness to listen to differing views.** Every other member has the same right you do. You have a duty to listen to their views, even if you do not agree. Disrespect for those whose views differ from yours makes it more difficult for the group to reach a solution.
3. **Willingness to debate.** Debate is a form of "healthy" argument because it defends and attacks ideas instead of the people who hold them. Debating the group's differences of opinion is an important step in reaching a solution.
4. **Willingness to negotiate and compromise.** If debate does not produce agreement, a compromise may be needed. Often it is better to have a solution that members may not like, but can accept, than to have no agreement at all.

Practice the Skill

Check your understanding of the skill by answering the following questions.

1. Why would refusing to listen to other members make group decision-making more difficult?
2. Why is compromise often a better solution than forcing a decision on members who disagree?

CHAPTER 8

Chapter Review

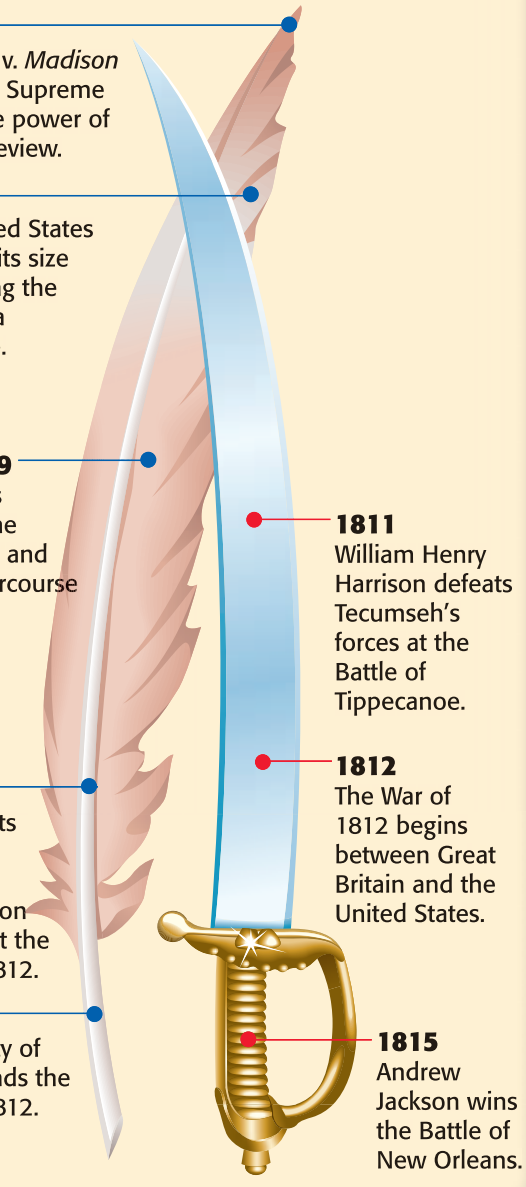
HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
How do the background, value system, and character of the United States reflect its spirit of exploration?

Visual Summary

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.

QUICK FACTS

The Nation at War and Peace



1803
Marbury v. *Madison* gives the Supreme Court the power of judicial review.

1803
The United States doubles its size by making the Louisiana Purchase.

1807–09
Congress passes the Embargo and Non-Intercourse Acts.

1811
William Henry Harrison defeats Tecumseh's forces at the Battle of Tippecanoe.

1812
The War of 1812 begins between Great Britain and the United States.

1814
Federalists hold the Hartford Convention to protest the War of 1812.

1814
The Treaty of Ghent ends the War of 1812.

1815
Andrew Jackson wins the Battle of New Orleans.

Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Complete each sentence by filling in the blank with the correct term or person.

1. The War of 1812 ended soon after the U.S. victory over the British at the _____.
2. After winning the election of 1800, _____ became the third president of the United States.
3. The power of the Supreme Court to declare acts of Congress unconstitutional is known as _____.
4. After U.S. neutrality was violated, the United States issued an _____ against trade with foreign nations.
5. In 1803 Congress approved the _____ , which added former French territory in the West to the United States.

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 266–270)*

6. **a. Recall** What were the key issues in the election of 1800?

   b. Analyze In what ways did *Marbury* v. *Madison* affect the power of the judicial branch?

   c. Evaluate Which of Jefferson's new policies do you think was most important? Why?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 272–277)*

7. **a. Describe** What was the purpose of the Lewis and Clark expedition?

   b. Draw Conclusions What are three ways in which the United States benefited from the Louisiana Purchase?

   c. Evaluate Do you think that Napoléon made a wise decision when he sold Louisiana to the United States? Explain your answer.

SECTION 3 *(Pages 278–283)*

8. a. Identify What group led the call for war with Great Britain?

b. Contrast What arguments were given in favor of war with Great Britain? What arguments were given against war with Britain?

c. Elaborate In your opinion, why were the Embargo Act and the Non-Intercourse Act unsuccessful?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 284–287)*

9. a. Identify What role did Andrew Jackson play in the War of 1812?

b. Make Inferences Why did the British want to capture the cities of Washington and New Orleans?

c. Predict In what ways might the U.S. victory over Great Britain in the war affect the status of the United States in the world?

Reviewing Themes

10. Geography Through what geographic regions did the Lewis and Clark expedition travel?

11. Politics What impact did the Hartford Convention have on American politics?

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY8

12. Activity: Journal Entry Prior to Lewis and Clark's expedition, some thought that woolly mammoths, unicorns, and seven-foot-tall beavers lived in the uncharted West. The Corps of Discovery set off to find out the truth about this uncharted land. Its members also wanted to search for a Northwest Passage that would speed commerce and bring wealth to the young nation. Enter the activity keyword. Research the Web sites and take the point of view of one of the explorers. Write a series of journal entries outlining the thoughts, feelings, discoveries, and events surrounding the journey. Include drawings of what you might have seen in the West in your journal entries.

Reading Skills

Public Documents in History *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question below.*

13. Which of the following is an example of a public document?

a. the Constitution

b. the current president's journal

c. a tax return

d. an ambassador's letter to the president

Social Studies Skills

Working in Groups to Solve Issues *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the questions below.*

14. Organize into groups of two or three students. Decide which of the following reasons for the War of 1812 you think might have been most important in Congress's decision to declare war.

a. impressment of American sailors

b. trade barriers with Britain and France

c. battles with Native Americans on the frontier

d. gaining land in Canada

Focus on Writing

15. Writing Your Letter of Recommendation You already have a main idea and an opinion statement for your letter: Thomas Jefferson deserves to be on the list of the top-ten American presidents. Now, look at all your information and pick out three or four points—actions or character traits—that you think are the most important. Write a sentence on each of those points to add to your letter. Put the sentences in order, from the least important to the most important. Finally, conclude with one or two sentences that sum up why you think Thomas Jefferson was such an important president.

CHAPTER 8

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **The Supreme Court's decision in the 1803 case *Marbury* v. *Madison* is an example of**

A checks and balances.
B reserved powers.
C delegated powers.
D dual sovereignty.

2 **Most of the fighting in the War of 1812 took place**

A in Europe.
B in Canada.
C in the United States.
D at sea.

3 **Why did President Jefferson agree to buy Louisiana from France?**

A He wanted to learn more about the lands and peoples east of the Mississippi River.
B He believed that the United States would benefit from the purchase.
C He wanted to end the French threat in North America.
D He hoped to increase the president's constitutional powers.

4 **The United States went to war with Britain in 1812 for which of the following reasons?**

A to strengthen the alliance between Britain and France
B to endanger the rights of U.S. ships on the high seas
C to allow British influence among Indian groups on the frontier
D to stop trade restrictions against American merchants

5 **The Lewis and Clark expedition was significant because it**

A introduced the United States to valuable raw materials such as coal.
B improved America's knowledge of the West.
C led to U.S. settlement of the Southwest.
D opened trade between the United States and Native Americans in the West.

6 **During the War of 1812, trade interruptions resulted in**

A the repeal of the Embargo Act.
B a rise in unemployment.
C an increase in the production of cotton in the South.
D a boost to U.S. manufacturing.

7 **Read the following passage from Thomas Jefferson's inaugural address and use it to answer the question below.**

> "Though the will of the majority is in all cases to prevail, that will, to be rightful, must be reasonable . . . [T]he minority possess their equal rights, which equal laws must protect . . . Let us then, fellow citizens, unite with one heart and one mind . . . We have been called by different names brethren of the same principle. We are all republicans; we are all federalists."
>
> —President Thomas Jefferson, Inaugural Address, 1801

Document-Based Question **What did Jefferson mean in making this statement?**

CHAPTER 9 1812–1830

A New National Identity

Focus Question

What were the causes and effects of national growth?

SECTION 1
American Foreign Policy 298
Primary Source The Monroe Doctrine

SECTION 2
Nationalism and Sectionalism 302
Focus on New York The Erie Canal
Biography Henry Clay
History and Geography The Erie Canal

SECTION 3
American Culture 308
Focus on New York New York Writers
Literature in History Literature of the American Frontier

Focus on Writing

A Character Sketch Nations, like people, have characters. For example, a nation might be described as peaceful or aggressive, prosperous or struggling. In this chapter you'll read about the United States as a new nation with a new identity, or character. Then you'll write a paragraph describing that character.





United States

1816 James Monroe is elected president.

1815

World

1815 Napoléon returns to power in France but is defeated at the Battle of Waterloo.

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of the United States on its neighbors.

What You Will Learn...

A modern mule team pulls a packet-boat full of passengers along the Erie Canal. Once the canal was completed, passengers and cargo could travel more easily between the Great Lakes region and the east coast. In this chapter you will learn how Americans built canals and roads to try to unite the rapidly growing young nation.





1820
The Missouri Compromise allows Maine and Missouri to become states.

1821
Mexico and Peru gain their independence from Spain.



The Granger Collection, New York

1823
The Monroe Doctrine is issued.

1824
John Quincy Adams is elected president.

1824
Liberia is founded by freed American slaves.



1829
The Ottoman Empire recognizes the independence of Greece.

1830
Joseph Smith begins selling The Book of Mormon in Palmyra, New York.

1820 1825 1830

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes This chapter is titled "A New National Identity" because it explains how the United States government established relations with European powers and how Americans developed a strong sense of national pride even as they struggled with important state issues. You will learn about the Monroe Doctrine, the Missouri Compromise, the Cumberland Road project, and the rise of American music, literature, and public schools—events that changed the country's **culture** and **politics**.

Bias and Historical Events

Focus on Reading As you read this chapter, you will find that some people supported the idea of using federal dollars to create new and better roads. Others, however, did not think federal dollars should be used that way. People who can only see one side of an issue or situation may become biased, or prejudiced against the opposite view.

Recognizing Bias To understand the events and people in history, you have to be able to recognize a speaker's or writer's bias. Here are some steps you can take to do that.

1. The word *wickedest* is full of emotion.

"The wickedest road, I do think, the hard-heartedest road, that ever [a] wheel rumbled upon."
Frances Anne (Kemble) Butler, Journal

4. Most of this statement is opinion. Where are the facts about the actual condition of the road?

2. She's a British actress—perhaps she didn't like the United States?

3. This information is based on her personal experience, and she is recording it in her own personal journal.

Steps to Recognize Bias

1. **Look at the words and images.** Are they emotionally charged? Do they present only one side or one point of view?
2. **Look at the writer.** What's the writer's background and what does that tell you about the writer's point of view?
3. **Look at the writer's sources.** Where does the writer get his or her information? Does the writer rely on sources who only support one point of view?
4. **Look at the information.** How much is fact and how much is opinion? Remember, facts can be proven. Opinions are personal beliefs—they can easily be biased.

You Try It!

The following passage is from the chapter you are getting ready to read. As you read the passage, think about living during the early to mid-1800s when there were no public schools.

Architecture and Education

From Chapter 9, p. 311

Americans also embraced educational progress. Several early American political leaders expressed a belief that democracy would only succeed in a country of educated and enlightened people. But there was no general agreement on who should provide that education.

Eventually, the idea of a state-funded public school gathered support. In 1837 Massachusetts lawmakers created a state board of education. Other states followed this example, and the number of public schools slowly grew.

After you read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. You are the editor of your town's newspaper in the year 1835. You think schools should be financed by the state government rather than the federal government. You decide to write an editorial to express your opinion. Which of the phrases below would reveal your personal bias to your readers? Why? What words in each statement create bias?
   - **a.** Overbearing federal government
   - **b.** Protecting state interests
   - **c.** Powerful federal government
   - **d.** Concerned state citizens
2. If you were going to write the editorial described in question 1, how could you avoid biased statements? How do you think this might affect people's reactions to your writing?

Key Terms and People

Chapter 9

Section 1

Rush-Bagot Agreement *(p. 298)*
Convention of 1818 *(p. 298)*
James Monroe *(p. 299)*
Adams-Onís Treaty *(p. 299)*
Simon Bolívar *(p. 300)*
Monroe Doctrine *(p. 300)*

Section 2

nationalism *(p. 302)*
Henry Clay *(p. 302)*
American System *(p. 302)*
Cumberland Road *(p. 303)*
Erie Canal *(p. 303)*
Era of Good Feelings *(p. 303)*
sectionalism *(p. 304)*
Missouri Compromise *(p. 305)*
John Quincy Adams *(p. 305)*

Section 3

Washington Irving *(p. 308)*
James Fenimore Cooper *(p. 309)*
Hudson River school *(p. 310)*
Thomas Cole *(p. 310)*
George Caleb Bingham *(p. 310)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

circumstances *(p. 300)*
incentive *(p. 303)*

As you read Chapter 9, study the primary source documents carefully. Do you see any examples of bias?

SECTION 1

American Foreign Policy

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The United States and Great Britain settled their disputes over boundaries and control of waterways.
2. The United States gained Florida in an agreement with Spain.
3. With the Monroe Doctrine, the United States strengthened its relationship with Latin America.

The Big Idea

The United States peacefully settled disputes with foreign powers.

Key Terms and People

Rush-Bagot Agreement, *p. 298*
Convention of 1818, *p. 298*
James Monroe, *p. 299*
Adams-Onís Treaty, *p. 299*
Simon Bolívar, *p. 300*
Monroe Doctrine, *p. 300*

TAKING NOTES Create a chart like the one below. As you read, take notes on the foreign policy issues the United States had to deal with between 1817 and 1823.

Foreign Policy Issues
•
•
•
•
•
•
•

If YOU were there...

You are a Spanish settler living in West Florida in 1820. Your family has lived in Florida for many years. Only a few years ago, people in Spanish Florida were furious when American soldiers occupied the town of Pensacola. Now you hear that Spain has signed a treaty with the United States—Florida is no longer Spanish territory but rather part of the United States.

How would you feel about living under a new government?

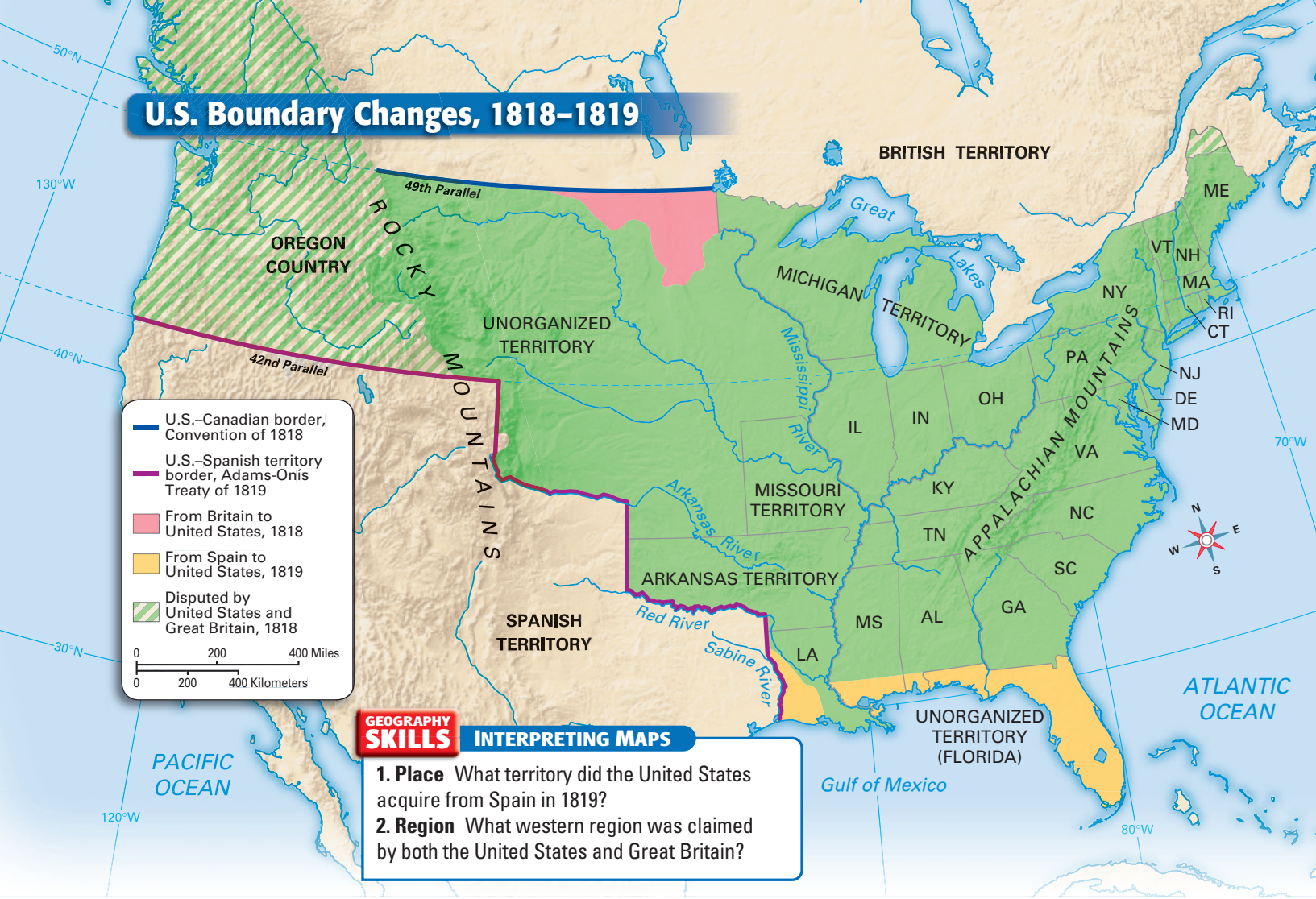
BUILDING BACKGROUND The War of 1812 left the United States stronger and more self-confident. The new nation had remained strong against a great European power. The United States then turned to diplomacy as a way to settle international issues.

Settling Disputes with Great Britain

The Treaty of Ghent had ended the War of 1812, yet there were issues left unresolved. The United States and British Canada both wanted to keep their navies and fishing rights on the Great Lakes. In the spring of 1817, the two sides compromised by establishing the **Rush-Bagot Agreement**, which limited naval power on the Great Lakes for both the United States and British Canada.

Another treaty with Britain gave the United States fishing rights off parts of the Newfoundland and Labrador coasts. This treaty, known as the **Convention of 1818**, also set the border between the United States and Canada at 49°N latitude as far west as the Rocky Mountains. Interest in the valuable fur trade in the Oregon Country was another issue resolved by this treaty. Both countries agreed to occupy the Pacific Northwest together, an agreement that would be tested in the years to come.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were the main disputes between the United States and Britain?



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. Place What territory did the United States acquire from Spain in 1819?

2. Region What western region was claimed by both the United States and Great Britain?

United States Gains Florida

The United States also had a dispute over its southern border with Spanish Florida. In 1818 Secretary of State John Quincy Adams, son of John and Abigail Adams, held talks with Spanish diplomat Luis de Onís about letting Americans settle in Florida. Meanwhile, President **James Monroe**, elected in 1816, had sent U.S. troops to secure the U.S.–Florida border. General Andrew Jackson led these soldiers.

At the same time, conflicts arose between the United States and the Seminole Indians of Florida. The Seminole often helped runaway slaves and sometimes raided U.S. settlements. In April 1818 Jackson's troops invaded Florida to capture Seminole raiders. This act began the First Seminole War. During the war Jackson took over most of Spain's important military posts. Then he overthrew the governor of Florida. He carried out these acts against Spain without receiving direct orders from President Monroe. Jackson's actions upset Spanish leaders. Most Americans, however, supported Jackson.

Jackson's presence in Florida convinced Spanish leaders to negotiate. In 1819 the two countries signed the **Adams-Onís Treaty**, which settled all border disputes between Spain and the United States. Under this treaty, Spain gave East Florida to the United States. In return, the United States gave up its claims to what is now Texas. U.S. leaders also agreed to pay up to $5 million of U.S. citizens' claims against Spain.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How were the disagreements between the United States and Spanish Florida settled?

THE IMPACT TODAY

Florida was admitted as a U.S. state in 1845 and is now home to about 16 million people.

Primary Source

HISTORIC DOCUMENT

The Monroe Doctrine

President James Monroe established the foundation for U.S. foreign policy in Latin America in the Monroe Doctrine of 1823.

In this phrase, Monroe warns European nations against trying to influence events in the Western Hemisphere.

Monroe notes here the difference between existing colonies and newly independent countries.

> The occasion has been judged proper for asserting . . . that the American continents . . . are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers . . .
>
> The political system of the allied powers is essentially different . . . from that of America. We . . . declare that we should consider any attempt on their part to extend their system to any portion of this hemisphere as dangerous to our peace and safety . . .
>
> With the existing colonies . . . we have not interfered and shall not interfere. But with the governments who have declared their independence and maintained it, and whose independence we have . . . acknowledged, we could not view any interposition[1] for the purpose of oppressing them . . . by any European power in any other light than as the manifestation[2] of an unfriendly disposition[3] toward the United States.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

1. What warning did President Monroe give to European powers in the Monroe Doctrine?
2. How does Monroe say the United States will treat existing European colonies?

[1] **interposition:** interference
[2] **manifestation:** evidence
[3] **disposition:** attitude

Monroe Doctrine

Meanwhile, Spain had other problems. By the early 1820s most of the Spanish colonies in the Americas had declared independence. Revolutionary fighter **Simon Bolívar**, called the Liberator, led many of these struggles for independence. Bolívar and other South American leaders were inspired by the American Revolution and American ideas about self-government. The political **circumstances** surrounding the revolutions reminded most American leaders of the American Revolution. As a result, they supported these struggles.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
circumstances surrounding situation

After Mexico broke free from Spain in 1821, President Monroe grew worried. He feared that rival European powers might try to take control of newly independent Latin American countries. He was also concerned about Russia's interest in the northwest coast of North America.

Secretary of State Adams shared President Monroe's concerns. In a Fourth of July speech before Congress, Adams said that the United States had always been friendly with European powers, and that the country did not want to be involved in wars with them. He implied that he supported the newly independent countries but said the United States would not fight their battles.

Great Britain was also interested in restraining the influence of other European nations in the Americas. This was because Britain had formed close trading ties with most of the independent Latin American countries. Britain wanted to issue a joint statement with the United States to warn the rest of Europe not to interfere in Latin America.

Instead, Secretary of State Adams and President Monroe decided to put together a document protecting American interests.

The doctrine was issued by the president on December 2, 1823, during his annual message to Congress.

The Monroe Doctrine had four basic points.

1. The United States would not interfere in the affairs of European nations.
2. The United States would recognize, and not interfere with, European colonies that already existed in North and South America.
3. The Western Hemisphere was to be off-limits to future colonization by any foreign power.
4. The United States would consider any European power's attempt to colonize or interfere with nations in the Western Hemisphere to be a hostile act.

Some Europeans strongly criticized the Monroe Doctrine, but few European countries challenged it. The doctrine has remained important to U.S. foreign policy. The United States has continued to consider Latin America within its sphere of influence—the area a nation claims some control over. At times, it has intervened in Latin American affairs when its own interests, such as national security, were at risk.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** What effect did the revolutions in Latin America have on U.S. foreign policy?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned that U.S. foreign policy was characterized by both compromise and strong leadership in the years following the War of 1812. In the next section you will learn about the rising sense of national pride that developed as the United States grew and expanded.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP9

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What issues were settled between the United States and Great Britain in 1817 and 1818?
   b. Make Inferences Why would the United States and Britain agree to occupy the Pacific Northwest together?
   c. Elaborate Why were the **Rush-Bagot Agreement** and the **Convention of 1818** compromises?
2. **a. Recall** What problems existed between Spain and the United States?
   b. Analyze Why was the **Adams-Onís Treaty** important?
   c. Evaluate Do you think that Andrew Jackson was right to act without orders? Explain your answer.
3. **a. Describe** What did the **Monroe Doctrine** state?
   b. Contrast How did the Monroe Doctrine differ from Adams's Fourth of July Address?
   c. Elaborate What do you think the newly independent Latin American countries thought of the Monroe Doctrine?

Critical Thinking

4. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes regarding U.S. foreign policy issues. Create a new chart and, for each issue, identify the nations involved, the agreement or doctrine, and the effects.

Nations	Agreement/Doctrine	Issue	Effects

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Determining Relationships** One of the main ways you can learn about someone's character is by how he or she treats others. As you read this section, start a list of words and phrases that describe how the United States acted in relationships with other nations. For example, lists might include words and phrases like "willing to compromise" and "firm."

SECTION 2

Nationalism and Sectionalism

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Growing nationalism led to improvements in the nation's transportation systems.
2. The Missouri Compromise settled an important regional conflict.
3. The outcome of the election of 1824 led to controversy.

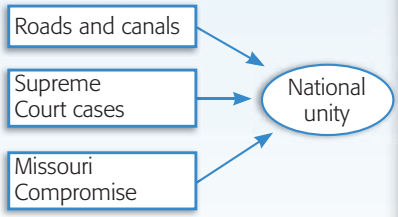
The Big Idea

A rising sense of national unity allowed some regional differences to be set aside and national interests to be served.

Key Terms and People

nationalism, *p. 302*
Henry Clay, *p. 302*
American System, *p. 302*
Cumberland Road, *p. 303*
Erie Canal, *p. 303*
Era of Good Feelings, *p. 303*
sectionalism, *p. 304*
Missouri Compromise, *p. 305*
John Quincy Adams, *p. 305*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on how each of the following contributed to national unity.



If YOU were there...

You live near the western end of the newly completed Erie Canal in New York State in 1831. In fact, your older brothers helped build the canal. Every day you watch as mules pull the canal boats along the still water of the canal. Sometimes the boats carry passengers traveling from city to city. You have never been far from your home, and you are curious about their journey.

What would you like to ask the travelers on the canal boat?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Peace, prosperity, and a growing country gave Americans a sense of national unity. In practical terms, building roads and canals also helped unify the nation. They made travel easier, linking people from different regions of the country. Nevertheless, some regional conflicts continued.

Growing Nationalism

Pleased by successful negotiations with foreign powers, Americans enjoyed a rising sense of nationalism. **Nationalism** is feelings of pride and loyalty to a nation. This new national unity found a strong supporter in U.S. representative **Henry Clay** from Kentucky.

Clay believed that a strong national economy would promote national feeling and reduce regional conflicts. He developed a plan eventually known as the **American System**—a series of measures intended to make the United States economically self-sufficient. To build the economy, he pushed for a national bank that would provide a single currency, making interstate trade easier. Clay wanted the money from a protective tariff to be used to improve roads and canals. These internal improvements would unite the country.

Some members of Congress believed that the Constitution did not permit the federal government to spend money on internal improvements. Clay argued that the possible gains for the country justified federal action.



Roads and Canals

In the early 1800s most roads in the United States were made of dirt, making travel and communication difficult. British actress Frances Kemble described one New York road she had struggled along during a visit in the 1830s.

> "The wickedest road, I do think, the cruellest, hard-heartedest road, that ever [a] wheel rumbled upon."
>
> —Frances Anne (Kemble) Butler, *Journal*

To improve the nation's roads, Congress agreed with Clay and invested in road building. The **Cumberland Road** was the first road built by the federal government. It ran from Cumberland, Maryland, to Wheeling, a town on the Ohio River in present-day West Virginia. Construction began in 1815. Workers had to cut a 66-foot-wide band, sometimes through forest, to make way for the road. Then they had to use shovels and pickaxes to dig a 12- to 18-inch roadbed, which they filled with crushed stone. All of the work had to be done without the benefit of today's bulldozers and steamrollers.

By 1818 the road reached Wheeling. By 1833 the National Road, as the expansion was called, stretched to Columbus, Ohio. By 1850 it reached all the way to Illinois.

Meanwhile, Americans tried to make water transportation easier by building canals. One of the largest projects was the **Erie Canal**, which ran from Albany to Buffalo, New York.

Construction of the canal began in 1817 and was completed in 1825. Using shovels, British, German, and Irish immigrants dug the entire canal by hand. The canal cost millions of dollars, but it proved to be worth the expense. The Erie Canal allowed goods and people to move between towns on Lake Erie and New York City and the east coast. Its success served as an **incentive** for a canal-building boom across the country.

FOCUS ON NEW YORK

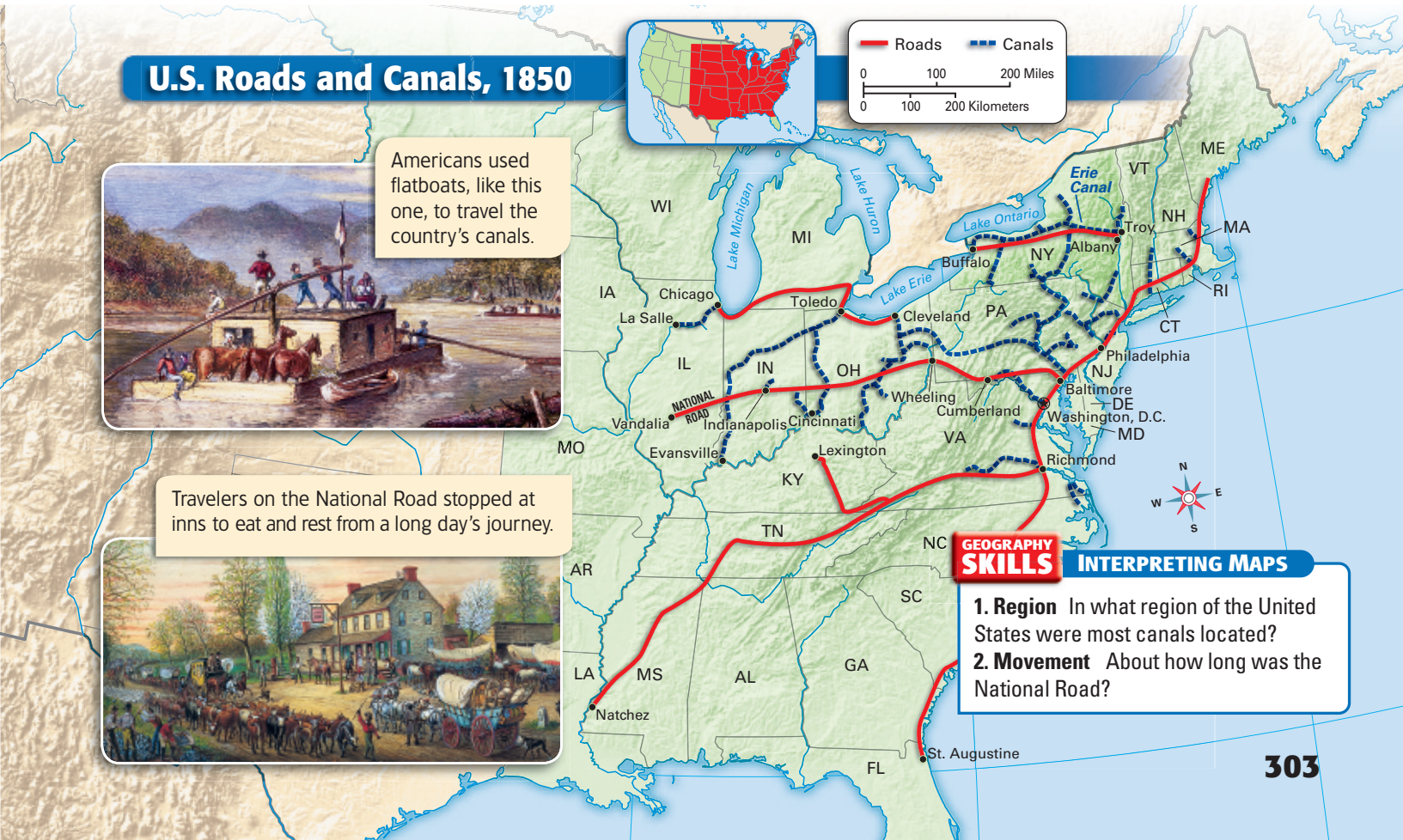
The Erie Canal drastically decreased shipping prices in New York. Before the canal was built, it cost $100 to ship a ton of goods by land from Buffalo to New York City. The same shipment could be moved on the canal for only $10.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

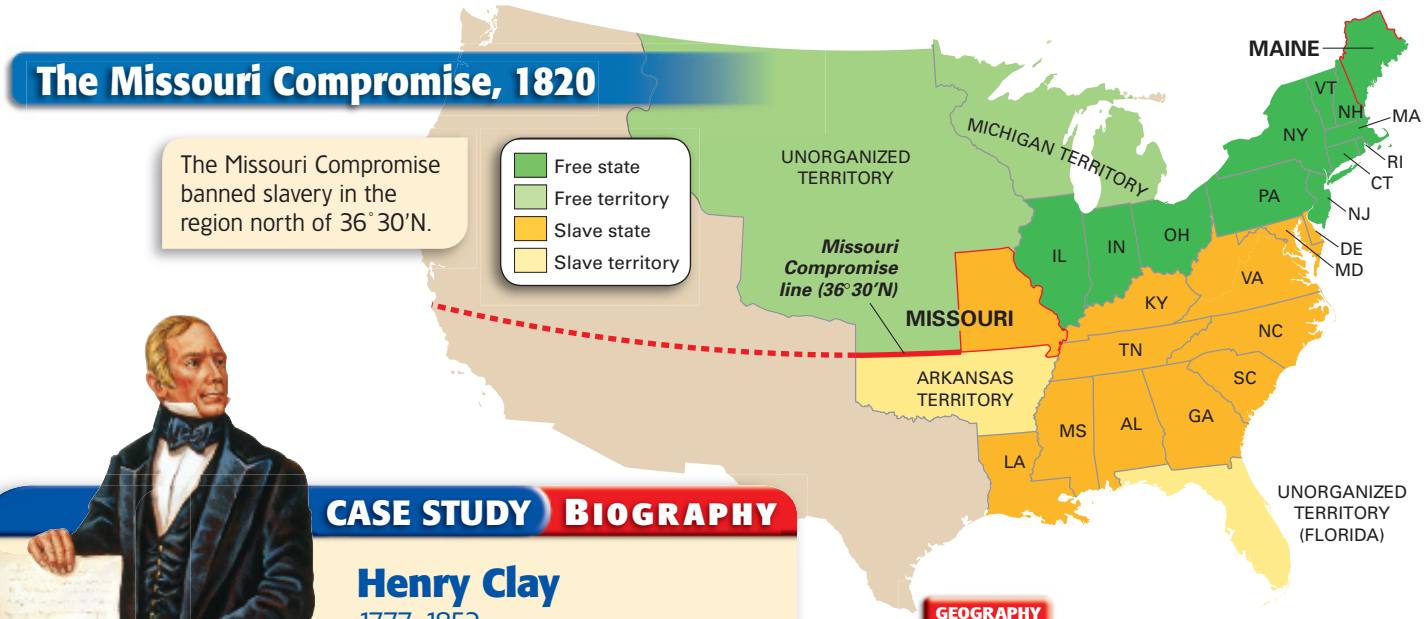
incentive something that leads people to follow a certain course of action

Era of Good Feelings

From 1815 to 1825 the United States enjoyed the **Era of Good Feelings**, a time of peace, pride, and progress. The phrase was coined

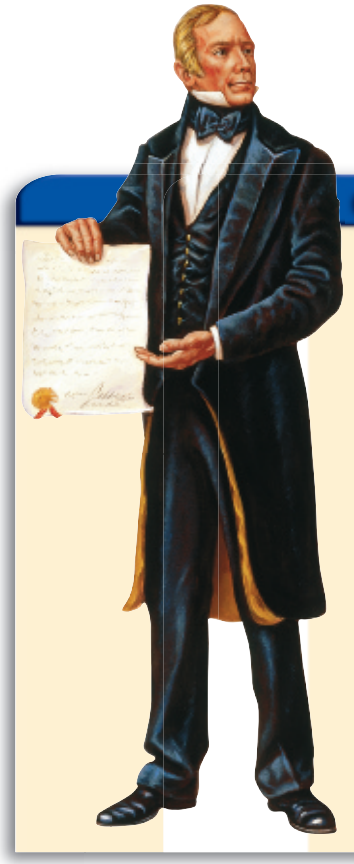


The Missouri Compromise, 1820



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Region** In which part of the country was slavery permitted?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** Why did leaders choose 36° 30′ as the compromise line?



CASE STUDY **BIOGRAPHY**

Henry Clay
1777–1852

Known as the silver-tongued Kentuckian, Henry Clay was a gifted speaker. He became involved in local politics early in his life, and by age 29 he was appointed to the U.S. Senate. Throughout his career in the Senate, he was dedicated to preserving the Union. The Missouri Compromise and a later agreement, the Compromise of 1850, helped to ease sectional tensions, at least temporarily.

Analyzing Why did Henry Clay work for compromises between regions?

by a Boston editor in 1817 during James Monroe's visit to New England early in his presidency.

The emphasis on national unity was strengthened by two Supreme Court case decisions that reinforced the power of the federal government. In the 1819 case *McCulloch* v. *Maryland*, the Court asserted the implied powers of Congress in allowing for the creation of a national bank. In the 1824 case *Gibbons* v. *Ogden*, the Court said that the states could not interfere with the power of Congress to regulate interstate commerce.

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences** How did new roads and canals affect the economy?

Missouri Compromise

Even during the Era of Good Feelings, disagreements between the different regions—known as **sectionalism**—threatened the Union. One such disagreement arose in 1819 when Congress considered Missouri's application to enter the Union as a slave state. At the time, the Union had 11 free states and 11 slave states. Adding a new slave state would have tipped the balance in the Senate in favor of the South.

To protect the power of the free states, the House passed a special amendment. It declared that the United States would accept Missouri as a slave state, but importing enslaved African Americans into Missouri would be illegal. The amendment also set free the children of Missouri slaves. Southern politicians angrily opposed this plan.

North Carolina senator Nathaniel Macon wanted to continue adding slave states. "Why depart from the good old way, which has kept us in quiet, peace, and harmony?" he asked. Eventually, the Senate rejected the amendment. Missouri was still not a state.

Henry Clay convinced Congress to agree to the **Missouri Compromise**, which settled the conflict that had arisen from Missouri's application for statehood. This compromise had three main conditions:

1. Missouri would enter the Union as a slave state.
2. Maine would join the Union as a free state, keeping the number of slave and free states equal.
3. Slavery would be prohibited in any new territories or states formed north of 36°30' latitude—Missouri's southern border.

Congress passed the Missouri Compromise in 1820. Despite the success of the compromise, there were still strong disagreements between the North and South over the expansion of slavery.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** Why did Henry Clay propose the Missouri Compromise to resolve the issue of Missouri statehood?

The Election of 1824

Soon, a presidential election also brought controversy. Andrew Jackson won the most popular votes in 1824. However, he did not have enough electoral votes to win office. Under the Constitution, the House of Representatives had to choose the winner. When the House chose **John Quincy Adams** as president, Jackson's supporters claimed that Adams had made a **corrupt bargain** with Henry Clay. These accusations grew after Adams chose Clay to be secretary of state. The controversy weakened Adams's support.

FOCUS ON READING
How is the term **corrupt bargain** an example of semantic slanting?

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences** Why did Adams have weak support during his presidency?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Strong nationalistic feeling contributed to the development of America's politics and economy. In the next section you will read about the development of a new national culture.

Section 2 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP9

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What was the **Era of Good Feelings?**
   b. Analyze Explain the impact the *McCulloch* v. *Maryland* and *Gibbons* v. *Ogden* decisions had on the federal government.
   c. Predict How would transportation improvements eventually aid the economy of the United States?
2. **a. Recall** What role did **Henry Clay** play in the debate over Missouri's statehood?
   b. Explain What problem did Missouri's request for statehood cause?
   c. Elaborate Was the **Missouri Compromise** a good solution to the debate between free states and slave states? Explain your answer.
3. **a. Identify** Who were the candidates in the presidential election of 1824? How was the winner determined?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why did **John Quincy Adams** lose popular support following the election of 1824?

Critical Thinking

4. **Evaluating** Review your notes on nationalism during the Era of Good Feelings. Then copy the following graphic organizer, and use it to identify how threats to nationalism were resolved by the Missouri Compromise.



FOCUS ON WRITING

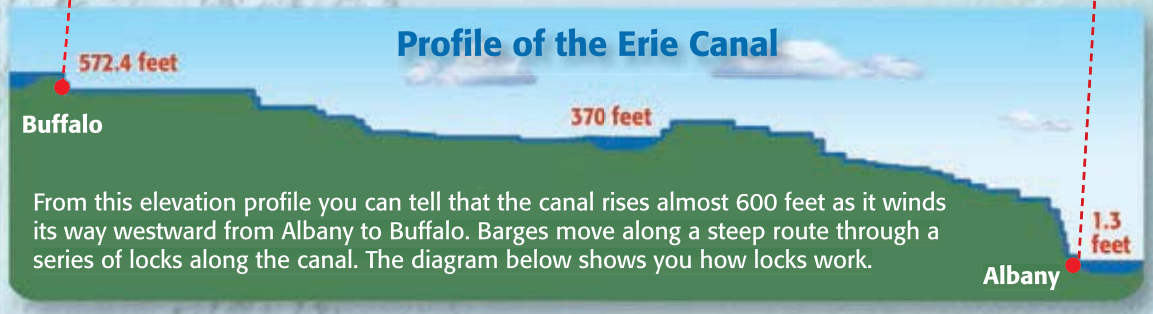
5. **Judging Self-Esteem** Another way you can tell about people's characters is by how they view themselves. Are they self-confident? Do they make healthy choices? As you read this section, think of the United States as a person and jot down notes about the view the United States had of itself. Is the new nation pleased with itself? Does it feel confident or confused?

The Erie Canal

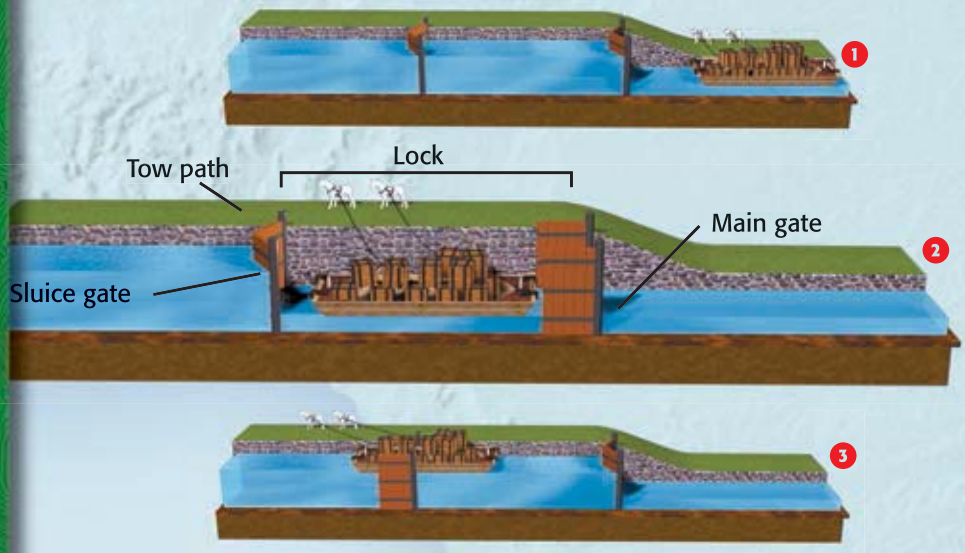
In 1825 New York opened the Erie Canal, which connected Buffalo on Lake Erie to Albany on the Hudson River. With the new canal, boats and barges could travel from New York Harbor in the east to the Great Lakes region in the west. Trade boomed, new cities formed, and settlers moved farther west as the Erie Canal helped open up the Midwest region to farming and settlement.



Profile of the Erie Canal



From this elevation profile you can tell that the canal rises almost 600 feet as it winds its way westward from Albany to Buffalo. Barges move along a steep route through a series of locks along the canal. The diagram below shows you how locks work.



HOW Canal Locks WORK

1. The barge enters the lock through the main gate.
2. Water flows into the lock through the sluice gate to raise the boat to the next level.
3. The barge leaves the lock as mules help pull it across the water.

Lake Superior
Lake Michigan
Lake Huron
Lake Ontario
Lake Erie
WI
MI
IL
IN
OH
KY
VA
NC
SC
GA
FL
PA
NJ
NY
ME
VT
NH
MA
RI
CT
The Erie Canal
Albany
Hudson River
Buffalo
New York
Toledo
Cleveland
Chicago
Later canals extended west into Ohio and Indiana.
Settlers and goods moved west.
Agricultural products moved east.
Trade through New York Harbor boomed as goods flowed along the Erie Canal to overseas markets and back to settlers and cities in the West.
ATLANTIC OCEAN
N
W
E
S

EFFECTS OF THE CANAL

Thanks to the canal, the cost of shipping dropped. Lower costs led to increases in shipping and in city populations.

Cost of Shipping

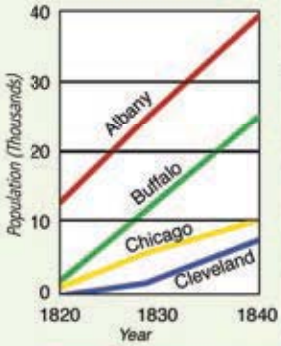


1824: $100 per ton by road



1825: $10 per ton by canal

Population Growth



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Region** How did the Erie Canal affect western lands?
2. **Location** What effect do you think the Erie Canal had on New York City?

SECTION 3

American Culture

If YOU were there...

You live in Philadelphia in 1830. Though you've lived in the city all your life, you dream about the West and the frontier. Now you've discovered a wonderful writer whose stories tell about frontier life and events in American history. You can't wait to read his next exciting adventure. You think that perhaps someday you could be a frontier hero, too.

Why would the frontier seem so exciting?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Until the early 1800s, Americans took most of their cultural ideas from Great Britain and Europe. But as American politics and the economy developed, so too did a new national culture. Writers and artists were inspired by American history and the American landscape.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. American writers created a new style of literature.
2. A new style of art showcased the beauty of America and its people.
3. American ideals influenced other aspects of culture, including religion and music.
4. Architecture and education were affected by cultural ideals.

The Big Idea

As the United States grew, developments in many cultural areas contributed to the creation of a new American identity.

Key Terms and People

Washington Irving, *p. 308*
James Fenimore Cooper, *p. 309*
Hudson River school, *p. 310*
Thomas Cole, *p. 310*
George Caleb Bingham, *p. 310*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the new developments in American culture in the 1820s and 1830s. Write your notes in a chart like the one below.

	Characteristics
Literature	
Visual arts	
Religious music	
Architecture	
Education	

American Writers

Like many people the world over, Americans expressed their thoughts and feelings in literature and art and sought spiritual comfort in religion and music. Developments in education and architecture also reflected the growing national identity.

One of the first American writers to gain international fame was **Washington Irving**. Born in 1783, he was named after George Washington. Irving's works often told about American

American Arts

Early to mid-1800s

American architects are inspired by ancient Greece and Rome.



history. Through a humorous form of writing called satire, Irving warned that Americans should learn from the past and be cautious about the future.

Irving shared this idea in one of his best-known short stories, "Rip Van Winkle." This story describes a man who falls asleep during the time of the American Revolution. He wakes up 20 years later to a society he does not recognize. Irving published this and another well-known tale, "The Legend of Sleepy Hollow," in an 1819–20 collection.

In some of his most popular works, Irving combined European influences with American settings and characters. His work served as a bridge between European literary traditions and a new type of writer who focused on authentically American characters and society.

Perhaps the best known of these new writers was **James Fenimore Cooper**. Cooper was born to a wealthy New Jersey family in 1789. Stories about the West and the Native Americans who lived on the frontier fascinated him. These subjects became the focus of his best-known works.

Cooper's first book was not very successful, but his next novel, *The Spy*, was a huge success. Published in 1821, it was an adventure story set during the American Revolution. It appealed to American readers' patriotism and desire for an exciting, action-filled story.

In 1823 Cooper published *The Pioneers*, the first of five novels featuring the heroic character Natty Bumppo. Cooper's novels told of settling the western frontier and included historical events. For example, his novel *The Last of the Mohicans* takes place during the French and Indian War. By placing fictional characters in a real historical setting, Cooper popularized a type of writing called historical fiction.

Some critics said that Cooper's characters were not interesting. They particularly criticized the women in his stories; one writer labeled them "flat as a prairie." Other authors of historical fiction, such as Catharine Maria Sedgwick, wrote about interesting heroines. Sedgwick's characters were inspired by the people of the Berkshire Hills region of Massachusetts, where she lived. Her works include *A New-England Tale* and *Hope Leslie*.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did American writers such as Irving and Cooper help create a new cultural identity in the United States?



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

Washington Irving is one of many famous writers born in New York. Others include Henry James, Edith Wharton, J. D. Salinger, E. L. Doctorow, and Madeleine L'Engle. Though James Fenimore Cooper was born in New Jersey, he lived much of his life in New York.

A New Style of Art

The writings of Irving and Cooper inspired painters. These artists began to paint landscapes that showed the history of America and the beauty of the land. Earlier American painters had mainly painted portraits. By the

1827

John Audubon begins publishing *The Birds of America*, which is highly admired in England.



1830s the Hudson River school had emerged. The artists of the **Hudson River school** created paintings that reflected national pride and an appreciation of the American landscape. They took their name from the subject of many of their paintings—the Hudson River valley.

Landscape painter **Thomas Cole** was a founder of the Hudson River school. He had moved to the United States from Britain in 1819. He soon recognized the unique qualities of the American landscape. As his work gained fame, he encouraged other American artists to show the beauty of nature. "To walk with nature as a poet is the necessary condition of a perfect artist," Cole once said.

By the 1840s the style of American painting was changing. More artists were trying to combine images of the American landscape with scenes from people's daily lives. Painters like **George Caleb Bingham** and Alfred Jacob Miller travelled west to paint scenes of the American frontier, including trappers, traders, settlers, and Native Americans.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** How did the style of American art change to reflect the American way of life in the early 1800s?

Religion and Music

Through the early and mid-1800s, several waves of religious revivalism swept the United States. During periods of revivalism, meetings were held for the purpose of reawakening religious faith. These meetings sometimes lasted for days and included large sing-alongs.

At many revival meetings people sang songs called spirituals. Spirituals are a type of folk hymn found in both white and African American folk-music traditions. This type of song developed from the practice of calling out text from the Bible. A leader would call out the text one line at a time, and the congregation would sing the words using a familiar tune. Each singer added his or her own style to the tune. The congregation of singers sang freely as inspiration led them.

While spirituals reflected the religious nature of some Americans, popular folk music of the period reflected the unique views of the growing nation in a different way. One of the most popular songs of the era was "Hunters of Kentucky," which celebrated the Battle of New Orleans. It became an anthem for the spirit of nationalism in the United States and was used successfully in Andrew Jackson's campaign for the presidency in 1828.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did music reflect American interests in the early to mid-1800s?

Architecture and Education

American creativity extended to the way in which people designed buildings. Before the American Revolution, most architects followed the style used in Great Britain. After the

American Arts (continued)


THE AMERICAN Spelling Book: CONTAINING AN EASY STANDARD of PRONUNCIATION. BEING THE FIRST PART OF A GRAMMATICAL INSTITUTE OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

1828
Noah Webster publishes his first dictionary of American—not British—English.

1830
George Catlin travels widely to paint images of Native American ways of life before they are lost.



1836
Painters of the Hudson River school prove American landscapes are worthy of art. (Thomas Cole's *The Oxbow*, 1836)

Revolution, leaders such as Thomas Jefferson called for Americans to model their architecture after the styles used in ancient Greece and Rome. Many Americans admired the ancient civilization of Greece and the Roman Republic because they contained some of the same democratic and republican ideals as the new American nation did.

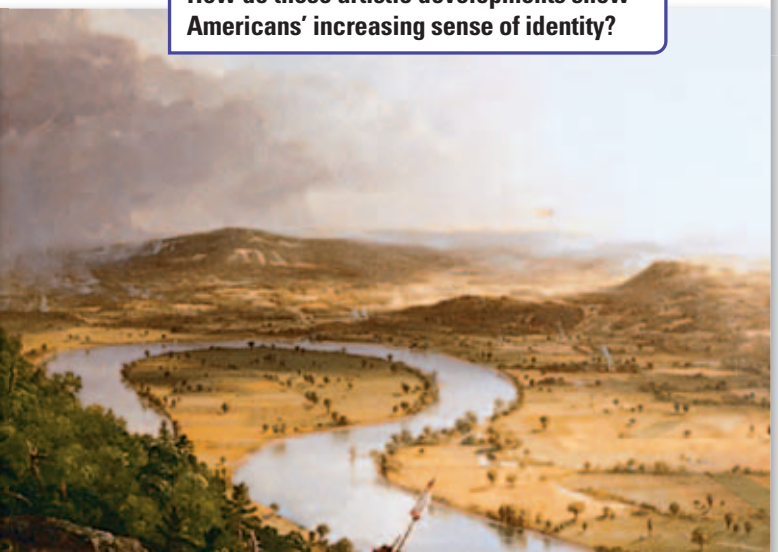
As time went by, more architects followed Jefferson's ideas. Growing American cities soon had distinctive new buildings designed in the Greek and Roman styles. These buildings were usually made of marble or other stone and featured large, stately columns.

Americans also embraced educational progress. Several early American political leaders expressed a belief that democracy would only succeed in a country of educated and enlightened people. But there was no general agreement on who should provide that education.

Eventually, the idea of a state-funded public school gathered support. In 1837 Massachusetts lawmakers created a state board of education. Other states followed this example, and the number of public schools slowly grew.

READING CHECK **Identifying Points of View**
Why did some Americans call for new architectural styles and more education after the American Revolution?

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**
How do these artistic developments show Americans' increasing sense of identity?



SUMMARY AND PREVIEW As the United States grew, so did a unique national identity. In Chapter 10 you will read about the changing face of American democracy.

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP9

Section 3 Assessment

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What topics interested American writers in the early 1800s?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why is **Washington Irving** considered an important American writer?
2. **a. Identify** What influence did **Thomas Cole** have on American painters?
   b. Describe How did American painting styles change from the early period to the mid-1800s?
3. **a. Describe** What effect did religious revivalism have on American music?
   b. Elaborate Why do you think folk songs like "Hunters of Kentucky" were popular?
4. **a. Identify** On what historical examples did many American architects model their buildings?
   b. Predict What might be some possible results of the growing interest in education in the United States?

Critical Thinking

5. **Categorizing** Review your notes about new developments in American culture. Copy the graphic organizer below and use it to show how these cultural developments reflected a new American identity.

Cultural Development	→	New Identity
Cultural Development	→	New Identity
Cultural Development	→	New Identity
Cultural Development	→	New Identity
Cultural Development	→	New Identity

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Identifying Values** You can tell much about someone's values by what that person makes. For instance, you could guess that a person who creates a collage of personal mementos for a friend's birthday is creative and values personal relationships. As you read this section, make note of what the United States created and what it valued.

Literature of the American Frontier

from *The Last of the Mohicans*

by James Fenimore Cooper (1789–1851)

About the Reading The Last of the Mohicans *is one of five novels known as the* Leatherstocking Tales. *These novels follow the life and adventures of American pioneer Natty Bumppo (also known as Leatherstocking, Hawkeye, and the Deerslayer). Bumppo is the perfect woodsman: resourceful, honest, kind to both his friends and his enemies, but always a loner at heart.*

AS YOU READ **Try to imagine what Natty Bumppo looks like.**

GUIDED READING

WORD HELP

accoutrements dress and gear
rude crude, rough
attenuated made thin
indurated hardened
unremitted ongoing
gartered fastened
ingenious clever

On that day, two men were lingering on the banks of a small but rapid stream . . . While one of these loiterers showed the red skin and wild accoutrements of a native of the woods, the other exhibited, through the mask of his rude and nearly savage equipments, the brighter though sunburnt and long-faded complexion of one who might claim descent from a European parentage. ❶

The frame of the white man, judging by such parts as were not concealed by his clothes, was like that of one who had known hardships and exertion from his earliest youth. His person, though muscular, was rather attenuated than full; but every nerve and muscle appeared strung and indurated by unremitted exposure and toil. He wore a hunting shirt of forest green, fringed with faded yellow, and a summer cap of skins which had been shorn of their fur. He also bore a knife in a girdle of wampum, ❷ like that which confined the scanty garments of the Indian, but no tomahawk. His moccasins were ornamented after the . . . fashion of the natives, while the only part of his underdress which appeared below the hunting frock was a pair of buckskin leggings that laced at the sides, and which were gartered above the knees with the sinews of a deer. A pouch and horn completed his personal accoutrements, though a rifle of great length, which the theory of the more ingenious whites had taught them was the most dangerous of all firearms, leaned against a neighboring sapling.

❶ ***What do you learn about Natty Bumppo in the first paragraph?***

❷ A "girdle of wampum" is a belt strung with beads. Wampum were used by Native Americans for both money and decoration.

Make a list of the items Bumppo wears and carries. What does each item suggest about him?

from *The Legend of Sleepy Hollow*

by Washington Irving (1783–1859)

About the Reading *"The Legend of Sleepy Hollow" has been called one of the first American short stories. Even though it is based on an old German folktale, its setting, a small village in the Hudson River valley, is American through and through. Irving's knack for capturing the look and the feel of the region made the story instantly popular—as did the tale's eerie central character, a horseman without a head.*

AS YOU READ **Try to picture both the ghost and the setting.**

The dominant spirit, however, that haunts this enchanted region, and seems to be commander in chief of all the powers of the air, is the apparition of a figure on horseback without a head. It is said by some to be the ghost of a Hessian trooper, ❶ whose head had been carried away by a cannon ball, in some nameless battle during the revolutionary war, and who is ever and anon seen by the country folk, hurrying along in the gloom of night, as if on the wings of the wind. His haunts are not confined to the valley, but extend at times to the adjacent roads, and especially to the vicinity of a church at no great distance. Indeed, certain of the most authentic historians of those parts, who have been careful in collecting and collating the floating facts concerning this spectre, allege, that the body of the trooper having been buried in the church yard, the ghost rides forth to the scene of battle in nightly quest of his head, ❷ and that the rushing speed with which he sometimes passes along the hollow, like a midnight blast, is owing to his being belated, and in a hurry to get back to the church yard before day break.

Such is the general purport of this legendary superstition, which has furnished materials for many a wild story in that region of shadows; and the spectre is known, at all the country firesides, by the name of The Headless Horseman of Sleepy Hollow. ❸

GUIDED READING

WORD HELP

dominant prevailing; ruling
apparition a ghostlike form that appears suddenly
collating comparing
spectre ghost
allege to firmly state
purport sense; gist

❶ A Hessian trooper is a German mercenary soldier from the American Revolution.

How and when is the horseman said to have died?

❷ ***Why does the horseman ride forth each night?***

❸ ***What is happening "at all the country firesides"? What does this suggest about how early Americans entertained themselves?***

CONNECTING LITERATURE TO HISTORY

1. **Drawing Inferences** The writing of the period reflects a new national culture and identity. What do these passages suggest about the thoughts, feelings, or lives of early Americans?
2. **Making Predictions** *The Last of the Mohicans* takes place during the French and Indian War. Whose side do you think Natty Bumppo would most likely take—that of the French and Indians, that of the English, or neither? Explain.
3. **Drawing Conclusions** Both of these stories were very popular in their time. Why do you think these stories were so popular? What is it about the stories that makes them entertaining?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Identifying Central Issues

Define the Skill

The reasons for historical events are often complex and difficult to determine. An accurate understanding of them requires the ability to identify the central issues involved. A *central issue* is the main topic of concern in a discussion or dispute. In history, these issues are usually matters of public debate or concern. They generally involve political, social, moral, economic, or territorial matters.

Being able to identify central issues lets you go beyond what the participants in an event said and gain a more accurate understanding of it. The skill is also useful for understanding issues today, and for evaluating the statements of those involved.

Learn the Skill

In this chapter you learned about the dispute that arose over Missouri's admission to the Union. Yet that was not what this controversy was really about. Recognizing the central issue in this dispute helps you understand why each side fought so hard over just one state.

Use the following steps to identify central issues when you read about historical events.

1. Identify the main subject of the information.
2. Determine the nature and purpose of what you are reading. Is it a primary source or a secondary one? Why has the information been provided?
3. Find the strongest or most forceful phrases or statements in the material. These are often clues to the issues or ideas the speaker or writer thinks most central or important.
4. Determine how the information might be connected to the major events or controversies that were concerning the nation at the time.

Practice the Skill

Soon after the Missouri Compromise passed, Secretary of State John Quincy Adams wrote:

> "The impression produced upon my mind by the progress of this discussion [the dispute over Missouri] is that the bargain between freedom and slavery contained in the Constitution …is morally and politically vicious,…cruel and oppressive.…I have favored this Missouri Compromise, believing it to be all that can be effected [accomplished] under the present Constitution, and from an extreme unwillingness to put the Union at hazard [risk]. But perhaps it would have been a …bolder course to have persisted in the restriction upon Missouri till it should have terminated [ended] in a convention of the states to …amend the Constitution. This would have produced a new Union of thirteen or fourteen states unpolluted with slavery …If the Union must be dissolved, slavery is precisely the question upon which it ought to break. For the present, however, this contest [issue] is laid to sleep."

Apply the steps to identifying central issues to analyze Adams's statement and answer the following questions:

1. About what subject was Adams writing? What was his reason for making these remarks?
2. What did Adams believe was the most important issue in the dispute? What strong language does he use to indicate this?
3. What evidence suggests Adams did not think the breakup of the Union the central issue?

CHAPTER 9

Chapter Review

Geography's Impact

▶ **video series**

Review the video to answer the closing question:

How did the Roosevelt Corollary change the Monroe Doctrine?

Visual Summary

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Match the word in the left column with the correct definition in the right column.

1. American System	**a.** an agreement that limited naval power on the Great Lakes for both the United States and British Canada
2. George Caleb Bingham	**b.** American artist known for his focus on the American landscape and people
3. Simon Bolívar	**c.** sense of pride and devotion to a nation
4. Henry Clay	**d.** a group of American artists in the mid-1800s who focused on the American landscape
5. Erie Canal	**e.** a leader of independence movements in Latin America, known as the Liberator
6. Hudson River school	**f.** the plan to raise tariffs in order to finance internal improvements such as roads and canals
7. James Monroe	**g.** president who promoted the acquisition of Florida, closer ties to Latin America, and presided during the Era of Good Feelings
8. Monroe Doctrine	**h.** project that connected the Hudson River to Lake Erie and improved trade and transportation
9. nationalism	**i.** representative from Kentucky who promoted improvements in transportation and the Missouri Compromise
10. Rush-Bagot Agreement	**j.** U.S. declaration that any attempt by a foreign nation to establish colonies in the Americas would be viewed as a hostile act

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 298–301)*

11. a. Identify What were the four main points of the Monroe Doctrine?

b. Draw Conclusions How did the United States compromise in its disputes with British Canada?

c. Evaluate Which of the issues that the United States faced with foreign nations do you think was most important? Why?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 302–305)*

12. a. Recall What developments helped strengthen national unity in this period?

b. Analyze How was the disagreement over Missouri's statehood an example of sectionalism? How was the disagreement resolved?

c. Predict What effect might the election of 1824 have on national unity? Why?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 308–311)*

13. a. Describe How did popular music show the interests of Americans in the early 1800s?

b. Make Inferences Why do you think new American styles of art and literature emerged?

c. Elaborate Which element of American culture of the early 1800s do you find most appealing? Why?

Reviewing Themes

14. Politics How did the relations of the United States with foreign nations lead to a rise in nationalism?

15. Society and Culture What led to the creation of a uniquely American culture?

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY9

16. Activity: Researching In this chapter, you learned about the development of a new, creative spirit in American arts. Artists created works that featured American scenes and characters. Enter the activity keyword and research the development of American culture in art and literature. Then create a visual display.

Reading Skills

Bias and Historical Events *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> When the House chose John Quincy Adams as president, Jackson's supporters claimed that Adams had made a corrupt bargain with Henry Clay. These accusations grew after Adams chose Clay to be secretary of state. *(p. 305)*

17. Which of the following used a biased definition, according to the above selection?

a. Andrew Jackson
b. supporters of Jackson
c. Henry Clay
d. John Quincy Adams

Social Studies Skills

Identifying Central Issues *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> [Henry Clay] developed a plan eventually known as the American System—a series of measures intended to make the United States economically self-sufficient. To build the economy, he pushed for a national bank that would provide a single currency, making interstate trade easier. Clay wanted the money from a protective tariff to be used to improve roads and canals. *(p. 302)*

18. Which of the following is the central issue addressed by the American System?

a. economic unity
b. protective tariff
c. national bank
d. improving roads and canals

FOCUS ON WRITING

19. Writing a Character Sketch Write a paragraph describing your overall impression of the nation's character. Write one sentence describing each of these aspects of the United States: its relationships with others, its feelings about itself, and its values.

CHAPTER 9

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Use the map below to answer the following question.**



The present-day state that became part of the United States in the Adams-Onís Treaty of 1819 is shown on the map by the letter

A W.
B X.
C Y.
D Z.

2 **The principle that European nations could establish no more colonies in North and South America was set forth in the**

A Missouri Compromise.
B Rush-Bagot Agreement.
C Monroe Doctrine.
D Convention of 1818.

3 **The Missouri Compromise had a significant effect on the United States because it**

A established the present border with Canada.
B prohibited slavery north of Missouri's southern border.
C led to the expansion of roads and canals.
D settled conflicts between Native Americans in the West and the federal government.

4 **Greek- and Roman-style architecture became common in the United States in the early 1800s because of**

A the popularity of President George Washington, who liked the building style.
B Americans' admiration for the ideals of Greek democracy and republicanism.
C the nation's desire to build as strong a military as the Greeks and Romans had.
D Americans' great feeling of nationalism after the War of 1812.

5 **Which painting would have been typical of an artist of the Hudson River school in the 1830s and 1840s?**

A a portrait of a famous American
B a Native American hunting game
C a portrait of an ancient Greek or Roman lawmaker
D a scene showing America's natural beauty

6 **Examine the following passage from a letter about American education and then use it to answer the question below.**

> "A lady asked me one day, 'What state is Virginia in?' Another asked, 'Is Canada in Kentucky?' Another supposed that 'Joe Graphy [geography] was very hard to learn.' Such is the cause of all our mistakes in religion, morals, and politics. When we are educated we can cast off prejudice and superstition. Education improves our judgments and restrains our passions. In short, it enables us to discover what is best for our welfare."
>
> — Anne Newport Royall, adapted from *Letters from Alabama, 1817-1822*

Document-Based Question **Why might Royall and others try to make education available to more Americans? Explain.**

CHAPTER 10 1828–1840

The Age of Jackson

Focus Question

What were the causes and effects of national growth?

SECTION 1

Jacksonian Democracy 322

Linking to Today Democracy in Action

Primary Source People's President

Focus on New York City Samuel Swartwout

Biography Andrew Jackson

SECTION 2

Jackson's Administration 326

Quick Facts Regions of the United States, Early 1800s

Primary Source States' Rights vs. the Union

Primary Source Jackson against the Bank

Connect to Economics The Supreme Court and Capitalism

SECTION 3

Indian Removal 332

Primary Source Trail of Tears

History and Geography The Indian Removal Treaties

Focus on Writing

An Interview You are a reporter for a large city newspaper in the year 1837. Andrew Jackson has just left office, and you have been given the assignment of interviewing him about his presidency and his role in American politics. As you read this chapter, you will write interview questions for your interview with Jackson.



1828

United States

Andrew Jackson is elected president.

Sequoya finishes a written language for the Cherokee.



1830

1829

World

Louis Braille publishes a reading system for the blind.



HOLT

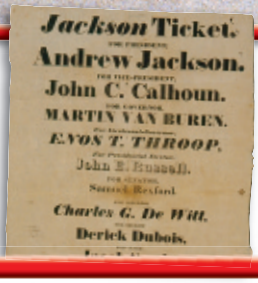
History's Impact

▶ **video series**

Watch the video to understand the impact of Native American reservations.

What You Will Learn...

In this chapter you will learn about how President Andrew Jackson helped shape the United States. He was so influential that historians refer to his presidency as the Age of Jackson. This statue of Jackson has stood in Washington, D.C., for more than 150 years and captures the drive and spirit of the seventh president of the United States.



1832
Andrew Jackson vetoes the charter renewal of the national Bank of the United States.

1834
Slavery supporters riot for eight days in New York City, killing several African Americans.

1836
Martin Van Buren is elected president.



1838
The Trail of Tears begins when U.S. troops remove the Cherokee from Georgia.

1832 A British reform bill doubles the number of British men who can vote.

1833
Slavery is abolished in the British Empire.

1835



1838
Dutch colonists known as Boers clash with the Zulu in southern Africa.

1839
The Opium War breaks out between Great Britain and China.



Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes In this chapter you will read about the events that shaped the United States from 1828 to 1838. You will see how **political** and **economic** decisions were intertwined. For instance, you will read about the tensions between southern and northern states over tariff regulations. You will also read about the forced relocation of many Native Americans to the West. Understanding how economic issues led to political decisions will help you understand this time.

Drawing Conclusions about the Past

Focus on Reading Writers don't always tell you everything you need to know about a subject. Sometimes you need to think critically about what they have said and make your own decisions about what you've read.

Drawing Conclusions Earlier in this book, you learned how to make inferences. Sometimes when you read, you will need to make several inferences and put them together. The result is a **conclusion**, an informed judgment that you make by combining information.

Election of 1828

The 1828 campaign focused a great deal on the candidates' personalities. Jackson's campaigners described him as a war hero who had been born poor and rose to success through his own hard work.

Adams was a Harvard graduate whose father had been the second U.S. president. Jackson's supporters described Adams as being out of touch with everyday people . . . When the ballots were counted, Jackson had defeated Adams, winning a record number of popular votes. *(pp. 323–324)*

Inference: Jackson shared many qualities with American voters.

+

Inference: Adams enjoyed many privileges that most Americans did not.

+

Inference: Jackson easily won the election by a huge majority.

Conclusion: In 1828, Americans chose a president to whom they could relate.

You Try It!

The following passage is from the chapter you are getting ready to read. As you read the passage, look for the facts of the situation.

The Election of 1834

In 1834 a new political party formed to oppose Jackson. Its members called themselves Whigs, after an English political party that opposed the monarchy, to make the point that Jackson was using his power like a king. The Whig Party favored the idea of a weak president and a strong Congress. Unable to agree on a presidential candidate, the Whigs nominated four men to run against Vice President Martin Van Buren. With strong backing from Jackson, Van Buren won the election.

From Chapter 10, p. 330

After you read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. From this passage, what can you infer about President Jackson's popularity with the Whig Party?
2. The Whigs could not choose a single presidential candidate, so they nominated four men. Based on what you know about elections from your studies and your past experiences, how do you think this affected the votes each man received?
3. Jackson's backing helped Van Buren win the presidency. From this, what can you infer about Jackson's popularity with the American people as a whole?
4. Using the inferences you made answering questions 1 through 3, draw a conclusion about why Van Buren won the election of 1834.

As you read Chapter 10, use your personal background knowledge and experience to draw conclusions about what you are reading.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 10

Section 1

nominating conventions *(p. 323)*
Jacksonian Democracy *(p. 323)*
Democratic Party *(p. 323)*
John C. Calhoun *(p. 323)*
spoils system *(p. 324)*
Martin Van Buren *(p. 324)*
Kitchen Cabinet *(p. 324)*

Section 2

Tariff of Abominations *(p. 327)*
states' rights doctrine *(p. 328)*
nullification crisis *(p. 328)*
Daniel Webster *(p. 328)*
McCulloch v. *Maryland* *(p. 330)*
Whig Party *(p. 330)*
Panic of 1837 *(p. 331)*
William Henry Harrison *(p. 331)*

Section 3

Indian Removal Act *(p. 332)*
Indian Territory *(p. 332)*
Bureau of Indian Affairs *(p. 332)*
Sequoya *(p. 333)*
Worcester v. *Georgia* *(p. 334)*
Trail of Tears *(p. 334)*
Black Hawk *(p. 335)*
Osceola *(p. 335)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

criteria *(p. 328)*
contemporary *(p. 333)*

SECTION 1

Jacksonian Democracy

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Democracy expanded in the 1820s as more Americans held the right to vote.
2. Jackson's victory in the election of 1828 marked a change in American politics.

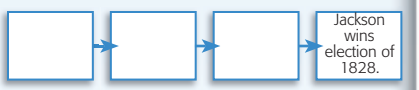
The Big Idea

The expansion of voting rights and the election of Andrew Jackson signaled the growing power of the American people.

Key Terms and People

nominating conventions, *p. 323*
Jacksonian Democracy, *p. 323*
Democratic Party, *p. 323*
John C. Calhoun, *p. 323*
spoils system, *p. 324*
Martin Van Buren, *p. 324*
Kitchen Cabinet, *p. 324*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on how an expansion of voting rights led to Andrew Jackson's election to the presidency. Write your notes in a flowchart like the one below.



If YOU were there...

It's 1829, and you live in Washington, D.C. You've come with a friend to the party for Andrew Jackson's inauguration as president. Your friend admires Jackson as a man of the people. You are less sure about his ability. Jackson's inauguration soon turns into a rowdy party, as mobs crowd into the White House. They break glasses and overturn the furniture.

How would you feel about having Jackson as your president?

BUILDING BACKGROUND In the early years of the United States, the right to vote belonged mainly to a few—free white men who owned property. As the country grew, more men were given the right to vote. This expansion of democracy led to the election of Andrew Jackson, a war hero. But not everyone approved of Jackson.

Expansion of Democracy

America in the early 1800s was changing fast. In the North, workshops run by the craftspeople who owned them were being replaced by large-scale factories owned by businesspeople and staffed by hired workers. In the South, small family farms began to give way to large cotton plantations, owned by wealthy white people and worked by enslaved African Americans. Wealth seemed to be concentrating into fewer hands. Many ordinary Americans felt left behind.

These same people also began to believe they were losing power in their government. In the late 1700s some Americans thought that government was best managed by wealthy, property-owning men. Government policies seemed targeted to help build the power of these people. The result was a growing belief that the wealthy were tightening their grip on power in the United States.

Hoping for change, small farmers, frontier settlers, and slaveholders rallied behind reform-minded Andrew Jackson, the popular hero of the War of 1812 and presidential candidate in the 1824 election. They believed Jackson would defend the rights of the common

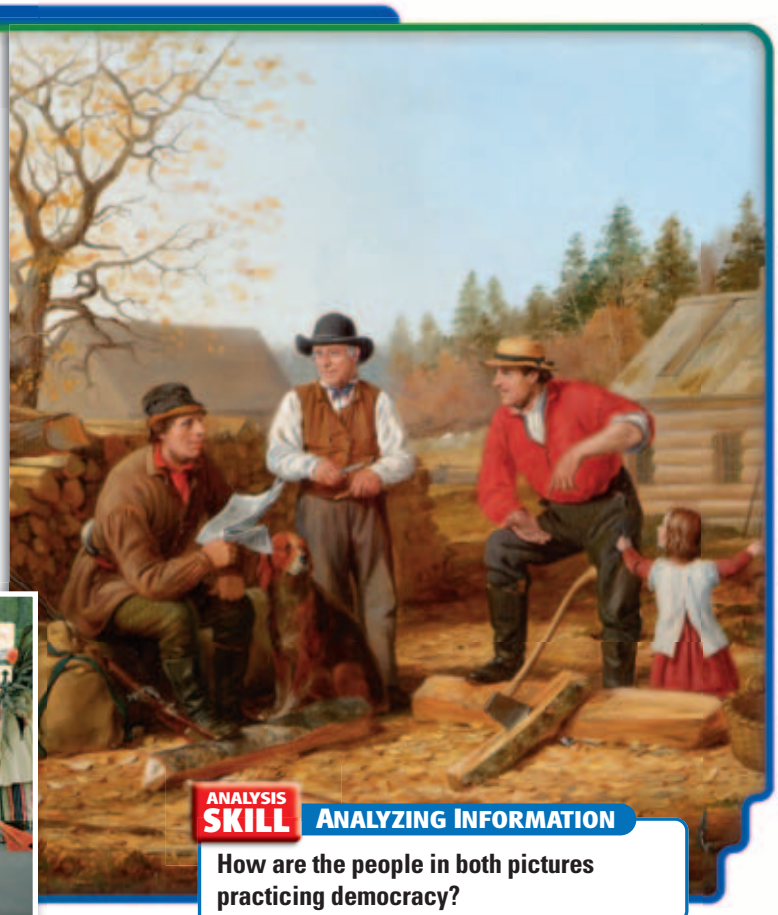
LINKING TO TODAY

Democracy in Action

Democracy spread in the early 1800s as more people became active in politics. Many of these people lived in the new western states. In these mostly rural areas, a political rally could be as simple as neighboring farmers meeting to talk about the issues of the day, as the farmers in the painting on the right are doing.

During the early 1800s democracy and demonstrations blossomed in the United States. The demonstrators of today owe much to the Americans of Andrew Jackson's time. Today, political rallies are a familiar sight in communities all over the country.





ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

How are the people in both pictures practicing democracy?

people and the slave states. And they had been bitterly disappointed in the way Jackson had lost the 1824 election because of the decision in the House of Representatives.

During the time of Jackson's popularity, many democratic reforms were made. Some states changed their qualifications for voters to grant more white males suffrage. The revised rules, however, usually excluded free blacks from voting as they had been allowed under original state constitutions. Political parties began holding public **nominating conventions**, where party members choose the party's candidates instead of the party leaders. This period of expanding democracy in the 1820s and 1830s later became known as **Jacksonian Democracy**.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**

How did voting rights change in the early 1800s?

Election of 1828

Jackson supporters were determined that their candidate would win the 1828 election. They formed the **Democratic Party** to support Jackson's candidacy. Many people who backed President Adams began calling themselves National Republicans.

The 1828 presidential contest was a rematch of the 1824 election. Once again, John Quincy Adams faced Andrew Jackson. Jackson chose **John C. Calhoun** as his vice presidential running mate.

The Campaign

The 1828 campaign focused a great deal on the candidates' personalities. Jackson's campaigners described him as a war hero who had been born poor and rose to success through his own hard work.

THE IMPACT TODAY

Just as they did in the 1820s, presidential campaigns today frequently focus on personal image—strong versus weak or government-insider versus newcomer, for example.

Primary Source

LETTER

People's President

Washington resident Margaret Bayard Smith was surprised by the chaos surrounding Jackson's inauguration.

"What a scene did we witness! . . . a rabble, a mob, of boys, . . . women, children, scrambling, fighting, romping . . . Cut glass and china to the amount of several thousand dollars had been broken . . . But it was the people's day, and the people's President, and the people would rule."

—Margaret Bayard Smith, quoted in *Eyewitness to America*, edited by David Colbert

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

How does the author view the people that support Jackson?

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

Andrew Jackson used the spoils system to reward a supporter, Samuel Swartwout, with the post of collector of customs for New York. Swartwout allegedly abused his post to embezzle $1 million from the government.

Adams was a Harvard graduate whose father had been the second U.S. president. Jackson's supporters described Adams as being out of touch with everyday people. Even a fan of Adams agreed that he was "as cold as a lump of ice." In turn, Adams's supporters said Jackson was hot tempered, crude, and ill-equipped to be president of the United States. When the ballots were counted, Jackson had defeated Adams, winning a record number of popular votes.

Jackson's Inauguration

Jackson's supporters saw his victory as a win for the common people. A crowd cheered outside the Capitol as he took his oath of office. The massive crowd followed Jackson to a huge party on the White House lawn. The few police officers on hand had difficulty controlling the partygoers.

As president, Jackson rewarded some of his supporters with government jobs. This **spoils system**—the practice of giving government jobs to political backers—comes from the saying "to the victor belong the spoils [valued goods] of the enemy."

Secretary of State **Martin Van Buren** was one of Jackson's strongest allies in his official cabinet. President Jackson also relied a great deal on his **Kitchen Cabinet**, an informal group of trusted advisers who sometimes met in the White House kitchen.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How might the spoils system cause disputes?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The expansion of democracy swept Andrew Jackson into office. In the next section you will read about the increasing regional tensions that occurred during Jackson's presidency.

Section 1 Assessment

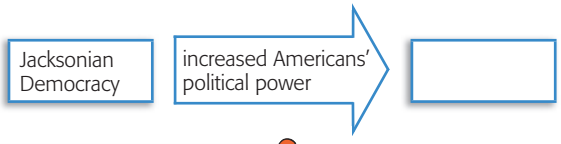
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP10

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** What changes did the new western states make that allowed more people to vote?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did **nominating conventions** allow the people more say in politics?
   c. Predict How might changes to the voting process brought about by **Jacksonian Democracy** affect politics in the future?
2. **a. Recall** What two new political parties faced off in the election of 1828? Which candidate did each party support?
   b. Make Inferences Why did **Andrew Jackson** have more popular support than did Adams?
   c. Evaluate Do you think the **spoils system** was an acceptable practice? Explain your answer.

Critical Thinking

3. **Identifying Effect** Review your notes on the election of Andrew Jackson to the presidency. Then use a cause-and-effect chart like this one to show the ways in which Jacksonian Democracy increased Americans' political power.



FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Noting Significance** As you read this section, note things that made Jackson's political campaign and election significant in the history of American politics.

BIOGRAPHY

Andrew Jackson

If you were president, how would you use your powers?

When did he live? 1767–1845

Where did he live? Jackson was born in Waxhaw, a region along the border of the North and South Carolina colonies. In 1788 he moved to Nashville, Tennessee, which was still a part of North Carolina. There he built a mansion called the Hermitage. He lived in Washington as president, then retired to the Hermitage, where he died.

What did he do? Jackson had no formal education, but he taught himself law and became a successful lawyer. He became Tennessee's first representative to the U.S. Congress and also served in the Senate. Jackson became a national hero when his forces defeated the Creek and Seminole Indians. He went on to battle the British in the Battle of New Orleans during the War of 1812. Jackson was elected as the nation's seventh president in 1828 and served until 1837.

Why is he so important? Jackson's belief in a strong presidency made him both loved and hated. He vetoed as many bills as the six previous presidents together. Jackson also believed in a strong Union. When South Carolina tried to nullify, or reject, a federal tariff, he threatened to send troops into the state to force it to obey.

Identifying Cause and Effect Why did Jackson gain loyal friends and fierce enemies?

KEY EVENTS

1796–1797
Served in the U.S. House of Representatives

1797–1798
Served in the U.S. Senate

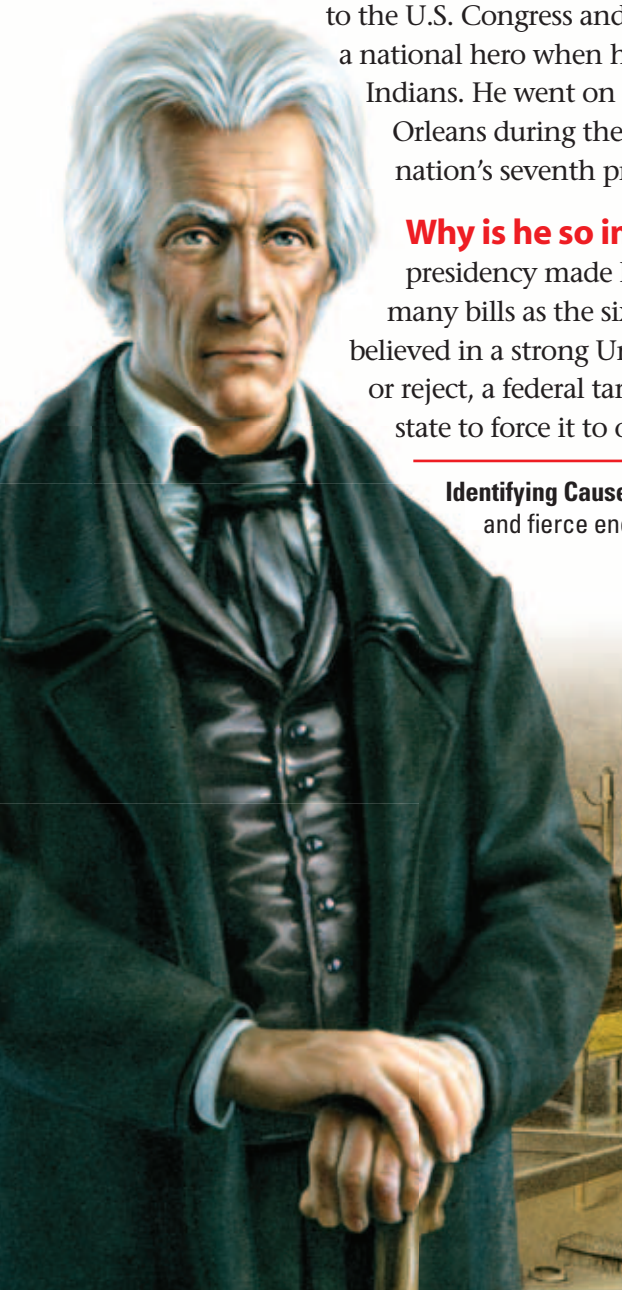
1798–1804
Served on the Tennessee Supreme Court

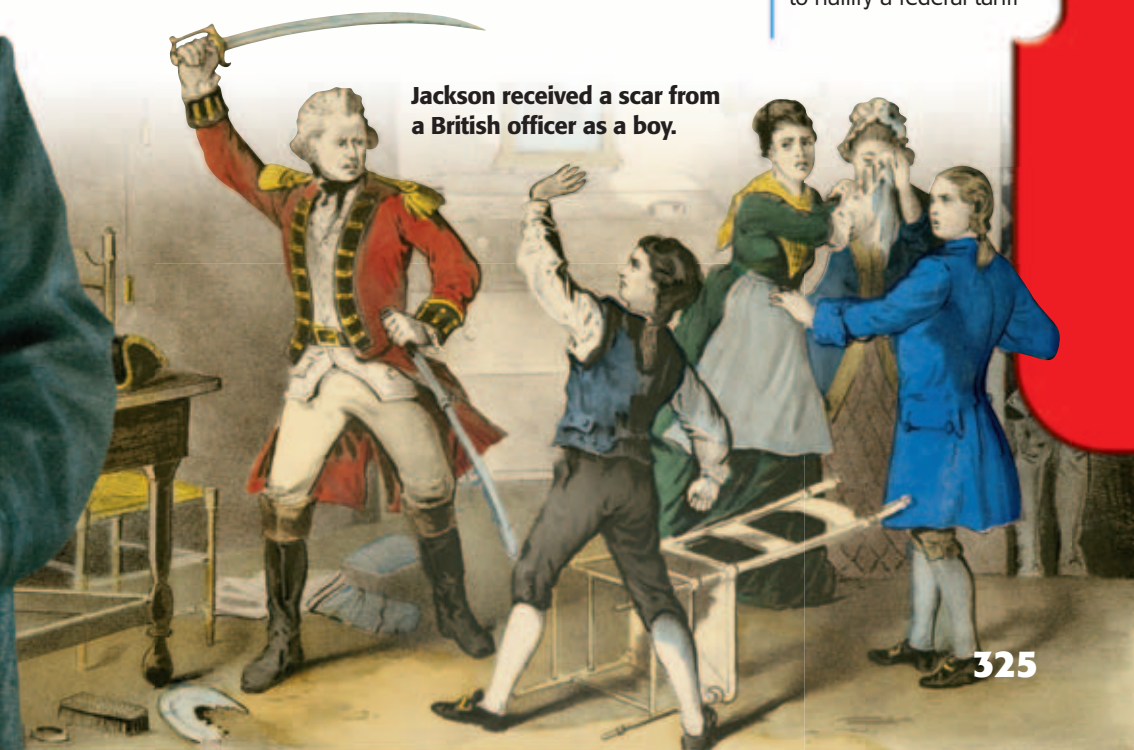
1821
Governor of Florida Territory

1823–1825
Served in the U.S. Senate

1829–1837
Served as president of the United States

1832
Vetoed rechartering the Second Bank of the United States. Threatened to send troops to South Carolina when it tried to nullify a federal tariff





Jackson received a scar from a British officer as a boy.

SECTION 2

Jackson's Administration

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Regional differences grew during Jackson's presidency.
2. The rights of the states were debated amid arguments about a national tariff.
3. Jackson's attack on the Bank sparked controversy.
4. Jackson's policies led to the Panic of 1837.

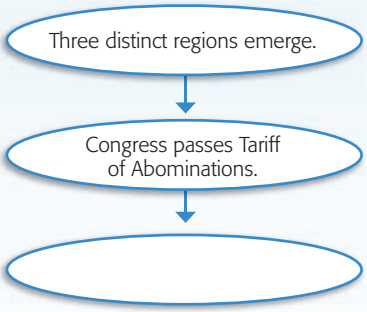
The Big Idea

Andrew Jackson's presidency was marked by political conflicts.

Key Terms and People

Tariff of Abominations, *p. 327*
states' rights doctrine, *p. 328*
nullification crisis, *p. 328*
Daniel Webster, *p. 328*
McCulloch v. *Maryland*, *p. 330*
Whig Party, *p. 330*
Panic of 1837, *p. 331*
William Henry Harrison, *p. 331*

TAKING NOTES As you read, use a diagram like the one below to show the conflicts facing Andrew Jackson during his administration. Add more ovals to your organizer as necessary.



If YOU were there...

You live on a small farm in South Carolina in 1829. Your family grows corn and cotton to sell, as well as vegetables for your own table. Although you grow your own food, you also depend on imported wool, flax, iron, and hemp to make ropes. But the government has just put new taxes on these products from Europe. Now they're too expensive for you to buy!

How would you feel about the new taxes on imports?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Even though Americans had a new feeling of national unity, different sections of the country still had very different interests. The industrial North competed with the agricultural South and the western frontier. As Congress favored one section over another, political differences grew.

Sectional Differences Increase

Regional differences had a major effect on Andrew Jackson's presidency. Americans' views of Jackson's policies were based on where they lived and the economy of those regions.

Three Regions Emerge

There were three main U.S. regions in the early 1800s. The North, first of all, had an economy based on trade and on manufacturing. Northerners supported tariffs because tariffs helped them compete with British factories. Northerners also opposed the federal government's sale of public land at cheap prices. Cheap land encouraged potential laborers to move from northern factory towns to the West.

The second region was the South. Its economy was based on farming. Southern farmers raised all types of crops, but the most popular were the cash crops of cotton and tobacco. Southerners sold a large portion of their crops to foreign nations.

Regions of the United States, Early 1800s

QUICK FACTS



NORTH
- Economy based on manufacturing
- Support for tariffs—American goods could be sold at lower prices than could British goods



SOUTH
- Economy based on agriculture
- Opposition to tariffs, which increased the cost of imported goods



WEST
- Emerging economy
- Support for internal improvements and the sale of public lands

Southerners imported their manufactured goods. Tariffs made imported goods more expensive for southern farmers. In addition, high tariffs angered some of the South's European trading partners. These trading partners would likely raise their own tariffs in retaliation. To avoid this situation, southerners called for low tariffs.

Southerners also relied on enslaved African Americans to work the plantations. The issue of slavery would become increasingly controversial between the North and South.

In the third region, the West, the frontier economy was just emerging. Settlers favored policies that boosted their farming economy and encouraged further settlement. Western farmers grew a wide variety of crops. Their biggest priority was cheap land and internal improvements such as better roads and water transportation.

Tariff of Abominations

Tariffs became one of the first issues that President Jackson faced. In 1827, the year before Jackson's election, northern manufacturers began to demand a tariff on imported woolen goods. Northerners wanted the tariff to protect their industries from foreign competition, especially from Great Britain.

British companies were driving American ones out of business with their inexpensive manufactured goods. The tariff northerners supported, however, was so high that importing wool would be impossible. Southerners opposed the tariff, sayng it would hurt their economy.

Before Andrew Jackson took office, Congress placed a high tariff on imports. Angry southerners called it the **Tariff of Abominations**. (An abomination is a hateful thing.) Southern voters were outraged.

President John Quincy Adams signed the tariff legislation, though he did not fully support it. In early U.S. history, presidents tended to reserve veto power for legislation that they believed violated the Constitution. Signing the tariff bill meant Adams would surely be defeated in his re-election bid. The new tariff added fuel to the growing sectional differences plaguing the young nation.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Describe the sectional economic differences in the United States during the early 1800s.

States' Rights Debate

When Andrew Jackson took office in 1829, he was forced to respond to the growing conflict over tariffs. At the core of the dispute was the question of an individual state's right to disregard a law that had been passed by the U.S. Congress.

Nullification Crisis

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
criteria basic requirements

Early in his political career, Vice President John C. Calhoun had supported the **criteria** of a strong central government. But in 1828 when Congress passed the Tariff of Abominations, Calhoun joined his fellow southerners in protest. Economic depression and previous tariffs had severely damaged the economy of his home state, South Carolina. It was only beginning to recover in 1828. Some leaders in the state even spoke of leaving the Union over the issue of tariffs.

FOCUS ON READING
What conclusions can you draw about the importance of the states' rights debate after reading this section?

In response to the tariff, Calhoun drafted the *South Carolina Exposition and Protest*. It said that Congress should not favor one state or region over another. Calhoun used the *Protest* to advance the **states' rights doctrine**, which said that since the states had formed the national government, state power should be greater than federal power. He believed states had the right to nullify, or reject, any federal law they judged to be unconstitutional.

Calhoun's theory was controversial, and it drew some fierce challengers. Many of them were from the northern states that had benefited from increased tariffs. These opponents believed that the American people, not the individual states, made up the Union. Conflict between the supporters and the opponents of nullification deepened. The dispute became known as the **nullification crisis**.

Although he chose not to put his name on his *Exposition and Protest*, Calhoun did resign from the vice presidency. He was then elected to the Senate, where he continued his arguments in favor of nullification. Martin Van Buren replaced Calhoun as vice president when Jackson was re-elected president.

The Hayne-Webster Debate

The debate about states' rights began early in our nation's history. Thomas Jefferson and James Madison supported the states' power to disagree with the federal government in the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions of 1798–99. Some of the delegates at the Hartford Convention supported states' rights. But Calhoun's theory went further. He believed that states could judge whether a law was or was not constitutional. This position put the power of the Supreme Court in question.

The issue of nullification was intensely debated on the floor of the Senate in 1830. Robert Y. Hayne, senator from South Carolina, defended states' rights. He argued that nullification gave states a way to lawfully protest federal legislation. **Daniel Webster** of Massachusetts argued that the United States was one nation, not a pact among independent states. He believed that the welfare of the nation should override that of individual states.

Jackson Responds

Although deeply opposed to nullification, Jackson was concerned about economic problems in the southern states. In 1832 he urged Congress to pass another tariff that lowered the previous rate. South Carolina thought the slight change was inadequate. The state legislature took a monumental step; it decided to test the doctrine of states' rights.

South Carolina's first action was to pass the Nullification Act, which declared the 1828 and 1832 tariffs "null, void … [and not] binding upon this State, its officers or citizens." South Carolina threatened to withdraw from the Union if federal troops were used to collect duties. The legislature also voted to form its own army. Jackson was enraged.

The president sternly condemned nullification. Jackson declared that he would enforce the law in South Carolina. At his request, Congress passed the Force Bill,

approving use of the army if necessary. In light of Jackson's determined position, no other state chose to support South Carolina.

Early in 1833, Henry Clay of Kentucky had proposed a compromise that would gradually lower the tariff over several years. As Jackson's intentions became clear, both the U.S. Congress and South Carolina moved quickly to approve the compromise. The Congress would decrease the tariff, and South Carolina's leaders would enforce the law.

Despite the compromise, neither side changed its beliefs about states' rights. The argument continued for years, ending in the huge conflict known as the Civil War.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What led to the nullification crisis, and why was it important?

Jackson Attacks the Bank

President Jackson upheld federal authority in the nullification crisis. He did not, however, always support greater federal power. For example, he opposed the Second Bank of the United States, founded by Congress in 1816.

The Second Bank of the United States was given a 20-year charter. This charter gave it the power to act exclusively as the federal government's financial agent. The Bank held federal deposits, made transfers of federal funds between states, and dealt with any payments or receipts involving the federal government. It also issued bank notes, or paper currency. Some 80 percent of the Bank was privately owned, but its operations were supervised by Congress and the president.

Many states, particularly in the South, had opposed the Bank. Small farmers believed that the Bank only helped wealthy businesspeople. Jackson also questioned the legality of the Bank. He believed it was an unconstitutional extension of the power of Congress. The states, he thought, should have the power to control the banking system.

Some states decided to take action. Maryland tried to pass a tax that would limit the

Primary Source

POINTS OF VIEW

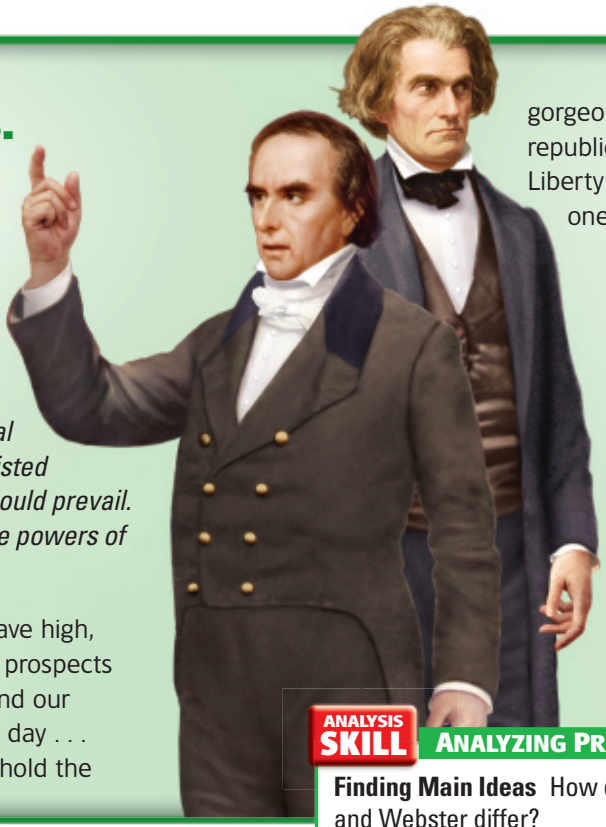
States' Rights vs. the Union

The framers of the Constitution created a document that was remarkable in its scope. But a few issues were unresolved. One of the most controversial was the matter of states' rights versus the authority of the federal government. Daniel Webster insisted that the interests of the Union should prevail. John C. Calhoun believed that the powers of the states were greater.

"While the Union lasts we have high, exciting, gratifying [rewarding] prospects spread out before us, for us and our children. God grant that in my day . . . my eyes shall be turned to behold the gorgeous ensign [flag] of the republic . . . bearing for its motto . . . Liberty and Union, now and forever one and inseparable."

—Daniel Webster

from the Hayne-Webster debate, 1830



"If there be no protective power in the reserved rights of the states, they must in the end be forced to rebel . . . "

—John C. Calhoun

from a letter to Virgil Maxcy, September 11, 1830

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Finding Main Ideas How did the views of Calhoun and Webster differ?

Primary Source

POLITICAL CARTOON

Jackson against the Bank

Andrew Jackson's fight with the Bank was the subject of many political cartoons, like this one.

In this scene, Jackson is shown fighting a hydra that represents the national bank. The hydra is a mythological monster whose heads grow back when cut off. The heads of the hydra are portraits of politicians who opposed Jackson's policies.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

How does this image show the difficulty Jackson had politically?

Bank's operations. James McCulloch, cashier of the Bank's branch in Maryland, refused to pay this tax. The state took him to court, and the resulting case went all the way to the U.S. Supreme Court. In ***McCulloch* v. *Maryland***, the Court ruled that the national bank was constitutional.

Nicholas Biddle, the Bank's director, decided to push for a bill to renew the Bank's charter in 1832. Jackson campaigned for the bill's defeat. "I will kill it," he promised. True to his word, Jackson vetoed the legislation when Congress sent it to him.

Congress could not get the two-thirds majority needed to override Jackson's veto. Jackson also weakened the Bank's power by moving most of its funds to state banks. In many cases, these banks used the funds to offer easy credit terms to people buying land. While this practice helped expansion in the West, it also led to inflation.

In the summer of 1836 Jackson tried to slow this inflation. He ordered Americans to use only gold or silver—instead of paper state-bank notes—to buy government-owned land. This policy did not help the national economy as Jackson had hoped. Jackson did improve the economy by lowering the national debt. However, his policies opened the door for approaching economic troubles.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why did critics of the Second Bank of the United States oppose it?

Panic of 1837

Jackson was still very popular with voters in 1836. He chose not to run in 1836, however, and the Democrats nominated Vice President Martin Van Buren.

In 1834 a new political party had formed to oppose Jackson. Its members called themselves Whigs, after an English political party that opposed the monarchy, to make the point that Jackson was using his power like a king. The **Whig Party** favored the idea of a weak president and a strong Congress. Unable to agree on a candidate, the Whigs chose four men to run against Van Buren. Because of this indecision, and with backing from Jackson, Van Buren won the election.

The Supreme Court and Capitalism

CONNECT TO ECONOMICS

During the early 1800s, the Supreme Court made several rulings that helped define federal power over contracts and commerce. These rulings reinforced capitalism as the ruling economic system in the United States.

What effect did the Supreme Court have on economic development?

1810

Fletcher* v. *Peck
State legislatures could not pass laws violating existing contracts.

1819

Dartmouth College* v. *Woodward
State legislatures could not pass laws to change the charters of institutions or businesses.

McCulloch* v. *Maryland
States do not have the power to tax federal institutions.

1824

Gibbons* v. *Ogden
Only the federal government has the power to regulate interstate and foreign commerce.

Shortly after Van Buren took office, the country experienced the **Panic of 1837**, a severe economic depression. Jackson's banking policies and his unsuccessful plan to curb inflation contributed to the panic. But people blamed Van Buren.

In 1840 the Whigs united against the weakened Van Buren to stand behind one candidate, **William Henry Harrison**, an army general. Harrison won in an electoral landslide. The Whigs had achieved their goal of winning the presidency.

READING CHECK **Identifying Cause and Effect**
What contributed to the Panic of 1837, and how did it affect the 1840 election?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The states' rights debate dominated much of Jackson's presidency. In the next section you will learn about the removal of American Indians from the southeastern United States.

Section 2 Assessment

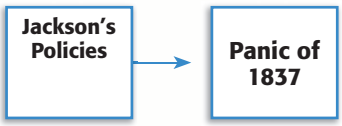
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP10

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** On what were the economies of the northern, southern, and western states based?
   b. Predict How might the sectional issues involved in the dispute over the **Tariff of Abominations** lead to future problems between North and South?
2. **a. Describe** What roles did **Daniel Webster** and John C. Calhoun play in the **nullification crisis**?
   b. Summarize What idea did supporters of the **states' rights doctrine** promote?
3. **a. Describe** What problems resulted from weakening the Bank?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why did Jackson veto the bill to renew the Second Bank of the United States?
4. **a. Recall** What caused the **Panic of 1837**?
   b. Summarize How did the **Whig Party** win the election of 1840?
   c. Elaborate Why do you think Jackson chose not to run for the presidency in 1836? Do you think he made the right decision? Why?

Critical Thinking

5. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on the political conflicts during Jackson's administration. Then use a graphic organizer like the one below to show how some of Jackson's policies dealing with conflicts led to the Panic of 1837.



FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Identifying Important Conflicts** Stories about conflict sell newspapers. As you read this section, list important conflicts that occurred during Jackson's presidency and note the role Jackson played in creating or resolving the conflicts.

SECTION 3

Indian Removal

If YOU were there...

You belong to the Cherokee nation. Your family has farmed rich lands in Georgia for as long as anyone can remember. You've learned some new ways from white settlers, too. At school you've learned to read both English and Cherokee. But now that doesn't seem important. The U.S. government is sending you and your people far away to unknown places in the West.

How would you feel about being taken away from your home?

BUILDING BACKGROUND President Andrew Jackson had become famous as an American Indian fighter. He had no sympathy with Native Americans' claim to the lands where they had always lived. With public support, he reversed the government's pledge to respect Indian land claims. The result was the brutal removal of the southeastern peoples to empty lands in the West.

Indian Removal Act

Native Americans had long lived in settlements stretching from Georgia to Mississippi. However, President Jackson and other political leaders wanted to open this land to settlement by American farmers. Under pressure from Jackson, Congress passed the **Indian Removal Act** in 1830, authorizing the removal of Native Americans who lived east of the Mississippi River to lands in the West.

Congress then established **Indian Territory**—U.S. land in what is now Oklahoma—and planned to move Native Americans there. Some supporters of this plan, like John C. Calhoun, argued that removal to Indian Territory would protect Indians from further conflicts with American settlers. "One of the greatest evils to which they are subject is that incessant [constant] pressure of our population," he noted. "To guard against this evil . . . there ought to be the strongest . . . assurance that the country given [to] them should be theirs." To manage Indian removal to western lands, Congress approved the creation of a new government agency, the **Bureau of Indian Affairs**.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The Indian Removal Act authorized the relocation of Native Americans to the West.
2. Cherokee resistance to removal led to disagreement between Jackson and the Supreme Court.
3. Other Native Americans resisted removal with force.

The Big Idea

President Jackson supported a policy of Indian removal.

Key Terms and People

Indian Removal Act, *p. 332*
Indian Territory, *p. 332*
Bureau of Indian Affairs, *p. 332*
Sequoya, *p. 333*
Worcester v. *Georgia*, *p. 334*
Trail of Tears, *p. 334*
Black Hawk, *p. 335*
Osceola, *p. 335*

TAKING NOTES As you read, use a graphic organizer like the one below to show the steps Andrew Jackson and the U.S. government took toward Indian removal.

Indian removal



Indian Removal

During the Trail of Tears, thousands of Cherokee died from disease, starvation, and harsh weather. They were forced to walk hundreds of miles to their new land in the West. Other Native Americans were also moved, with similar results.

What can you see in this painting that indicates this was a difficult journey?

The Choctaw were the first Indians sent to Indian Territory. The Mississippi legislature abolished the Choctaw government and then forced the Choctaw leaders to sign the Treaty of Dancing Rabbit Creek. This treaty gave more than 7.5 million acres of their land to the state. The Choctaw moved to Indian Territory during a disastrous winter trip. Federal officials in charge of the move did not provide enough food or supplies to the Choctaw, most of whom were on foot. About one-fourth of the Choctaw died of cold, disease, or starvation.

News of the Choctaw's hardships caused other Indians to resist removal. When the Creek resisted in 1836, federal troops moved in and captured some 14,500 of them. They led the Creek, many in chains, to Indian Territory. One Creek woman remembered the trip being filled with "the awful silence that showed the heartaches and sorrow at being taken from the homes and even separation from loved ones." The Chickasaw, who lived in upper Mississippi, negotiated a treaty for better supplies on their trip to Indian Territory. Nevertheless, many Chickasaw lives were also lost during removal.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What major changes did President Jackson make to U.S. policy regarding Native Americans?

Cherokee Resistance

Many Cherokee had believed that they could prevent conflicts and avoid removal by adopting the **contemporary** culture of white people. In the early 1800s they invited missionaries to set up schools where Cherokee children learned how to read and write in English. The Cherokee developed their own government modeled after the U.S. Constitution with an election system, a bicameral council, and a court system. All of these were headed by a principal chief.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
contemporary existing at the same time

A Cherokee named **Sequoya** used 86 characters to represent Cherokee syllables to create a writing system for their own complex language. In 1828 the Cherokee began publishing a newspaper printed in both English and Cherokee.

The adoption of white culture did not protect the Cherokee. After gold was discovered on their land in Georgia, their treaty rights

THE IMPACT TODAY

Today more than 150,000 Cherokee or Cherokee descendants live in present-day Oklahoma.

were ignored. Georgia leaders began preparing for the Cherokee's removal. When they refused to move, the Georgia militia began attacking Cherokee towns. In response, the Cherokee sued the state. They said that they were an independent nation and claimed that the government of Georgia had no legal power over their lands.

In 1832 the Supreme Court, under the leadership of Chief Justice John Marshall, agreed. In ***Worcester* v. *Georgia*** the Court ruled that the Cherokee nation was a distinct community in which the laws of Georgia had no force. The Court also stated that only the federal government, not the states, had authority over Native Americans.

Georgia, however, ignored the Court's ruling, and President Jackson took no action to make Georgia follow the ruling. "John Marshall has made his decision; now let him enforce it," Jackson supposedly said. By not enforcing the Court's decision, Jackson violated his presidential oath to uphold the laws of the land. However, most members of Congress and American citizens did not protest the ways Jackson removed Native Americans.

In the spring of 1838, U.S. troops began to remove all Cherokee to Indian Territory. A few were able to escape and hide in the mountains of North Carolina. After the Cherokee were removed, Georgia took their businesses, farms, and property.

The Cherokee's 800-mile forced march became known as the **Trail of Tears**. During the march, the Cherokee suffered from disease, hunger, and harsh weather. Almost one-fourth of the 18,000 Cherokee died on the march.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**

What was the *Worcester* v. *Georgia* ruling? What was Jackson's response?

Primary Source

PERSONAL ACCOUNTS

Trail of Tears

The Cherokee knew that they would be forced to march West, but they did not know that so many of their people would die on the way. Here are two accounts of the Trail of Tears, one written before it started and one written after, both by Cherokee who made the trip.

March 10, 1838
Beloved Martha, I have delayed writing to you so long . . . If we Cherokees are to be driven to the west by the cruel hand of oppression to seek a new home in the west, it will be impossible . . . It is thus all our rights are invaded."

—Letter from Jenny, a Cherokee girl, just before her removal

"Long time we travel on way to new land. People feel bad when they leave Old Nation. Women cry and make sad wails, Children cry and many men cry . . . but they say nothing and just put heads down and keep on go towards West. Many days pass and people die very much."

—Recollections of a survivor of the Trail of Tears

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING POINTS OF VIEW**

1. What is different about the concerns of the Cherokee before and after the Trail of Tears?
2. How do you think the survivors of the Trail of Tears felt when they reached Indian Territory?

Other Native Americans Resist

Other Native Americans decided to fight U.S. troops to avoid removal. Chief **Black Hawk**, a leader of Fox and Sauk Indians, led his people in a struggle to protect their lands in Illinois. By 1832, however, the Sauk forces were running out of food and supplies, and by 1850 they had been forced to leave.

In Florida, Seminole leaders were forced to sign a removal treaty that their followers decided to ignore. A leader named **Osceola** called upon his people to resist with force, and the Second Seminole War began. Osceola was captured and soon died in prison. His followers, however, continued to fight. Some 4,000 Seminole were removed and hundreds of others killed. Eventually, U.S. officials decided to give up the fight. Small groups of Seminole had resisted removal, and their descendants live in Florida today.

READING CHECK **Evaluating** How effective was Native American resistance to removal?



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Location** In what parts of Florida was the Second Seminole War fought?
2. **Place** Where was the last battle of the Second Seminole War fought?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW President Jackson supported the removal of thousands of Native Americans from their traditional lands to the federal territory in the West. In the next chapter you will learn about the westward growth of the nation as farmers, ranchers, and other settlers moved West.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP10

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What Native American groups were affected by the **Indian Removal Act**? Where were they relocated?
   b. Explain Why did government officials want to relocate Native Americans to the West?
   c. Predict What are some possible effects that the Indian Removal Act might have on Native Americans already living in the West?
2. **a. Identify** What was the **Trail of Tears**?
   b. Analyze Why did the state of Georgia want to relocate the Cherokee, and what did the Cherokee do in response?
   c. Elaborate What do you think of President Jackson's refusal to enforce the ***Worcester* v. *Georgia*** ruling?
3. **a. Describe** What led to the Second Seminole War?
   b. Compare and Contrast How were the Seminole and the Sauk resistance efforts similar and different?

Critical Thinking

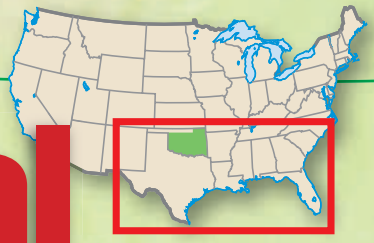
4. **Comparing and Contrasting** Review your notes on Indian removal. Then copy the chart below and use it to identify the Native American groups and their responses to removal.

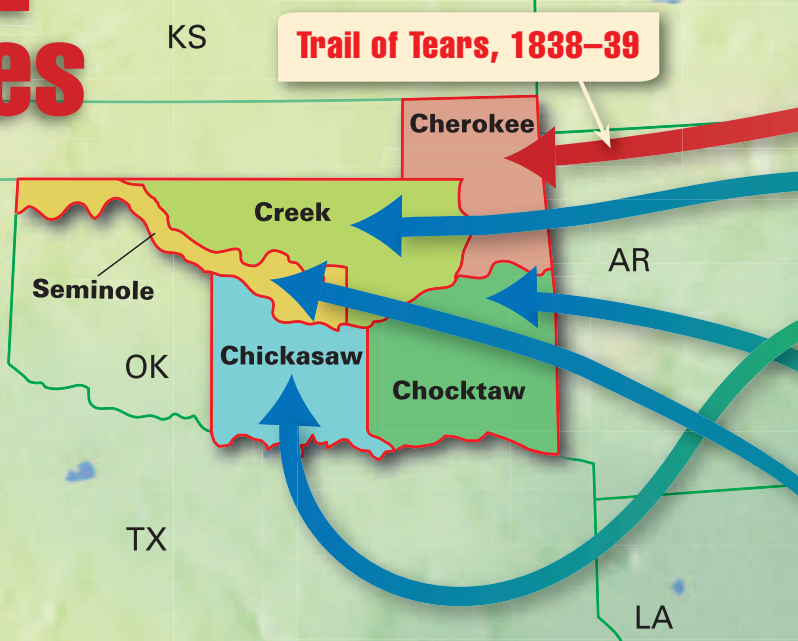
Native American Group	Response to Removal

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Understanding Causes and Effects** As you read, identify the causes and effects of the Jackson administration's policy of Indian relocation.

The Indian Removal Treaties





In 1830 President Andrew Jackson signed the Indian Removal Act into law. As its name implies, the purpose of the act was to remove Native Americans from land that white settlers wanted for themselves. Five tribes were forced to leave their traditional lands and walk to a territory west of the Mississippi River. The land in the new Indian Territory was land white settlers did not want. It was poor and not good for farming. The poor land made life very difficult for newly arrived Indians. Many died from malnutrition and disease. Within 10 years, about 60,000 Indians had been relocated.

Treaty	Date	Indian Group	Results for United States	Results for Indian Groups	Outcome
Treaty of Greenville	1795	12 Groups	Ended battles in Northwest Territory	Payment of $20,000; acknowledgment of lands	Indian land claims disregarded by American settlers
Treaty at Holston River	1798	Cherokee	Received land promised to Cherokee	Payment of $5,000, followed by annual payments	Cherokee lands reduced
Treaty at St. Louis	1804	Sauk and Fox	Received land from Sauk and Fox	Annual payment of $1,000	Indians claimed their leaders acted without permission; conflicts arose as settlers moved to Sauk and Fox land
Treaty at Ft. Jackson	1814	Creek	Ended battles with Red Eagle; received 23 million acres of land in Georgia	Received small amount of land in Alabama	Conflicts between settlers and Creek led to removal of Creek to Indian Territory
Treaty of Dancing Rabbit Creek	1830	Choctaw	Received all Choctaw lands east of Mississippi River	Received land in Indian Territory	Choctaw became first tribe moved from southeast to land in Indian Territory

THE CHEROKEE



For generations, the Cherokee had called the southern Appalachian Mountain region home. But when they were forced off their land in the Trail of Tears, thousands died.

THE CREEK



The Creek had to leave a land rich in variety. It stretched from the ridges and valleys of the Appalachian Mountains in the north, through a region of low hills and valleys, to a flat area of pine forest in the south.

THE SEMINOLE



Many Seminole Indians refused to leave Florida. They hid in the swamps, battling American soldiers. Many of their descendants still live in Florida today.

THE CHICKASAW

The Chickasaw lived in a land of rich, black prairie soil. They would find the soil west of the Mississippi much less suited for farming.

THE CHOCTAW



The Choctaw were forced to leave behind the low, rolling hills and plains of their homeland. For generations they had farmed the rich soil there.

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Place** How did land in the Indian Territory compare to the land in the Indians' homelands?
2. **Movement** How do you think being forced to leave their homelands affected the Indians' way of life?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | **Critical Thinking** | Civic Participation | Study

Solving Problems

Define the Skill

Problem solving is a process for finding workable solutions to difficult situations. The process involves asking questions, identifying and evaluating information, comparing and contrasting, and making judgments. Problem solving is useful in studying history because it helps you better understand problems people faced at certain points in time and how they dealt with those difficulties.

The ability to understand and evaluate how people solved problems in the past also can help in solving similar problems today. The skill can also be applied to many other kinds of difficulties besides historical ones. It is a method for thinking through almost any situation.

Learn the Skill

Using the following steps will enable you to better understand and solve problems.

1. **Identify the problem.** Ask questions of yourself and others to make sure you know exactly what the situation is and understand why it is a problem.
2. **Gather information.** Ask questions and conduct research to learn more about the problem, such as its history, what caused it, what contributes to it, and other factors.
3. **List options.** Based on the information you have gathered, identify possible options for solving the problem that you might consider. Be aware that your final solution will probably be better and easier to reach if you have as many options as possible to consider.
4. **Evaluate the options.** Weigh each option you are considering. Think of and list the advantages it has as a solution, as well as its potential disadvantages.
5. **Choose and implement a solution.** After comparing the advantages and disadvantages of each possible solution, choose the one that seems best and apply it.
6. **Evaluate the solution.** Once the solution has been tried, evaluate its effectiveness in solving the problem. This step will tell you if the solution was a good one, or if another of the possible solutions should be tried instead.

Practice the Skill

One of the most challenging situations that President Jackson faced was the nullification crisis. You can use the problem-solving skills to better understand this problem and to evaluate his solution for it. Review the information about the nullification crisis in this chapter. Then answer the questions below.

1. What was the specific problem that Jackson faced? Why was it a problem?
2. What event led to the problem? What earlier circumstances and conditions contributed to it?
3. List possible solutions to the problem that you would have considered if you had been president, along with advantages and disadvantages.
4. Jackson threatened to send troops to South Carolina to enforce federal law. Do you think his solution was the best one? Explain why, or if not, what solution would have been better.

CHAPTER 10

Chapter Review

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**

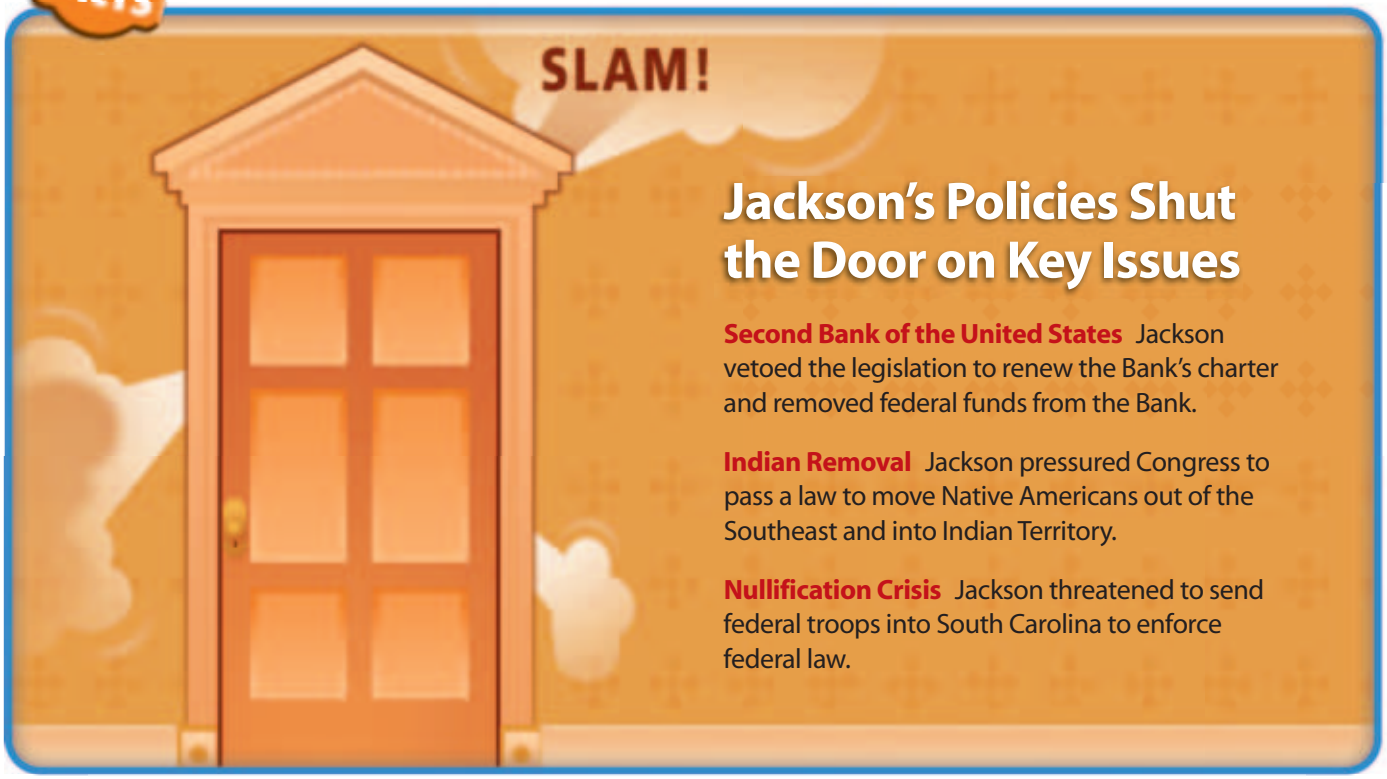
Review the video to answer the closing question:

How may the U.S. government's early treatment of Native Americans have contributed to the reservations' current situation?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Complete each sentence by filling in the blank with the correct term or person.

1. In the Supreme Court case of _____, the Court ruled that the federal government, not the states, had authority over the Cherokee.
2. President Jackson's group of advisers was known as the _____ because of where its members met in the White House.
3. _____ served as Andrew Jackson's vice president until he resigned due to the dispute over nullification.
4. The _____ supported the power of the states over the federal government.
5. The practice of rewarding supporters with positions in government is known as the _____.

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 322–324)*

6. **a. Identify** What changes took place in the early 1800s that broadened democracy in the United States?

   b. Analyze How was Jackson's victory in the election of 1828 a reflection of a change in American politics?

   c. Evaluate Do you think the changes brought about by Jacksonian Democracy went far enough in expanding democracy? Why or why not?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 326–331)*

7. **a. Describe** What conflicts troubled the Jackson administration?

b. Draw Conclusions What were the results of the conflict over the Second Bank of the United States?

c. Predict How might sectional differences and the debate over states' rights lead to future problems for the United States?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 332–335)*

8. a. Identify Who was Sequoya? What important contribution did he make?

b. Contrast In what different ways did the Cherokee and the Seminole attempt to resist removal to Indian Territory?

c. Elaborate Do you agree with Jackson's refusal to enforce the *Worcester* v. *Georgia* ruling? Why or why not?

Reviewing Themes

9. Politics What new political party rose in opposition to President Andrew Jackson? What was the party's attitude toward the power of the president?

10. Economics What economic factors influenced the policy of Indian removal?

Social Studies Skills

Solving Problems *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> Northerners wanted the tariff to protect their industries from foreign competition, especially from Great Britain.
>
> British companies were driving American ones out of business with their inexpensive manufactured goods. . . . Southerners opposed the tariff, saying it would hurt their economy. *(p. 327)*

11. Which of the following might be a reasonable solution to the problem discussed above?

a. passing a low tariff

b. passing a high tariff only in the South

c. Britain passing a tariff

d. selling northern and British goods for a higher price

Reading Skills

Drawing Conclusions about the Past *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> Native Americans had long lived in settlements stretching from Georgia to Mississippi. However, President Jackson and other political leaders wanted to open this land to settlement by American farmers. *(p. 332)*

12. Which statement below can you conclude from the passage above?

a. Farmers moved onto the Native Americans' land after removal.

b. Native Americans wanted to move from their lands.

c. Native Americans resisted removal.

d. Government officials had to use force to remove Native Americans from their land.

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY10

13. Activity: Writing a newspaper Enter the activity keyword and research Jackson's presidency. Then create a party newspaper, using the template provided, that supports or criticizes Jackson's policies. Use evidence to support your articles either in favor of or against his policies. Write from the point of view of a supporter or from the point of view of a political enemy.

Focus on Writing

14. Writing Interview Questions Review the notes you have taken about Jackson's political significance, the conflicts he was involved in, and the causes and effects of his policies toward Indians. Then, based on your notes, begin writing questions for your interview with Jackson. What will the readers of your newspaper want to learn more about? Write at least 10 interview questions that your readers will want answered.

CHAPTER 10

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **The era surrounding the presidency of Andrew Jackson is *best* known for an expansion in**

A freedom of speech.
B religious toleration.
C states' rights.
D voting rights.

2 **Which of the following was important to the South's economy in the 1830s?**

A manufacturing
B plantation agriculture
C shipbuilding
D weaving

3 **What action did the Cherokee take to resist their removal from Georgia and North Carolina to the West?**

A sued the state of Georgia in the courts
B destroyed neighbors' farms and businesses
C went to war against the U.S. government
D staged a protest called the Trail of Tears

4 **The debate between John C. Calhoun and Daniel Webster over states' rights was *most like* the debate between**

A the Patriots and the Loyalists.
B the Antifederalists and the Federalists.
C England and France during the French and Indian War.
D the large states and the small states during the Constitutional Convention.

5 **President Jackson's weakening of the Second Bank of the United States resulted in**

A inflation and other economic problems.
B the nullification crisis.
C the rise of the Democratic Party.
D increasing sectionalism.

6 **The ruling in the Supreme Court case of *Worcester* v. *Georgia***

A established the policy of Indian removal.
B determined that Georgia laws did not apply to the Cherokee.
C was enforced by President Andrew Jackson.
D established protective tariffs for imported goods.

7 **Read the following quote from Daniel Webster's "Seventh of March" speech and use it to answer the question below.**

> "The people have preserved . . . their . . . Constitution, for forty years, and have seen their happiness, prosperity, and renown grow with its growth, and strengthen with its strength . . . I have not coolly weighed the chances of preserving liberty when the bonds that unite us together shall be broken . . . [Let us not have] 'Liberty first and Union afterwards,' but . . . that other sentiment, dear to every true American heart,—Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable!"
>
> –Daniel Webster, Seventh of March Speech, 1830

Document-Based Question **How does Webster appeal to listeners to preserve the Union?**

CHAPTER 11 1800–1855

Expanding West

Focus Question

What were the causes and effects of national growth?

SECTION 1
Trails to the West 346
Focus on New York City John Jacob Astor

SECTION 2
The Texas Revolution 350

SECTION 3
The Mexican-American War 354
History Close-up Ranch Life
Biography Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo
Focus on New York John D. Sloat
Interactive Map Mexican-American War, 1846–1847
Linking to Today Mexican Americans Today

SECTION 4
The California Gold Rush 364
Quick Facts Westward Movement in the United States
History and Geography America's Growth 1850

Focus on Writing

Outline for a Documentary Film Many documentary films have been made about the history of the United States, but there is always room for one more. In this chapter you will read about the westward expansion of the United States, a period filled with excitement and challenge. Then you will create an outline for a documentary film to be used in middle-school history classes.



United States

1811
John Jacob Astor founds the fur-trading post Astoria on the Columbia River.

1810

World

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of the California gold rush on the West.

What You Will Learn...

In this chapter you will learn about how the United States expanded west. The country acquired vast amounts of territory in a short time. Lured by land and gold, hundreds of thousands of Americans followed trails west in search of a better life. However, many Californio families, like the one pictured here, had already lived in California for generations.









1820

1821 Mexico wins its independence from Spain.

1827 The United States and Great Britain agree to continue joint occupation of Oregon Country.

1830

1836 Narcissa and Marcus Whitman are married in Angelica, New York, before traveling to Washington state for missionary work.

1838 Californios revolt unsuccessfully against the Mexican government.

1840

1842 China gives Great Britain control of the island of Hong Kong.

1846 The United States declares war against Mexico.

1848 Gold is discovered in California on January 24.

1850

1854 Commodore Matthew Perry negotiates a trade treaty with Japan.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes In this chapter you will read about the American people as they continued to move west. You will find out about the famous Oregon and Santa Fe trails, Texas's fight for independence from Mexico, and Mexico's war with the United States. Finally, you will read about the California gold rush that brought thousands of people west. As you read each section, you will see how **economic** issues affected the growth of different **geographic** areas.

Vocabulary in Context

Focus on Reading In Chapter 3 you learned how writers sometimes give you clues to a word's meaning in the same or a nearby sentence. Those clues are usually definitions, restatements in different words, or comparisons or contrasts. But what do you do if you do not know the word and the writer doesn't think to give you a direct clue?

Using Broader Context Clues If the writer does not give you one of those direct clues, you have to try to figure out the meaning of the word for yourself.

1. Read the whole paragraph and look for information that will help you figure out the meaning.
2. Look up the word in the dictionary to be sure of its meaning.

Notice how a student used information from the whole paragraph to learn the meaning of two unknown words.

In 1844, the Whig Party passed up Tyler and chose Senator Henry Clay of Kentucky as its presidential candidate. At first opposing *annexation*, Clay changed his mind due to pressure from southern politicians. The Democratic Party chose former Tennessee governor James K. Polk to oppose Clay. Both candidates strongly favored *acquiring* Texas and Oregon. *(p. 355)*

I'm not sure about *annexation*. The southerners convinced Clay to be for it. Maybe I'll understand if I read some more.

Oh, both presidential candidates favored *acquiring* Texas and Oregon. Maybe *annexation* means almost the same thing as *acquiring*. I'll check the dictionary.

You Try It!

The following passage is from the chapter you are about to read. Read the passage and then answer the questions.

American Settlement in the Mexican Cession

From Chapter 11, p. 361

The war ended after Scott took Mexico City. In February 1848, the United States and Mexico signed the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, which officially ended the war and forced Mexico to turn over much of its northern territory to the United States. Known as the Mexican Cession, this land included the present-day states of California, Nevada, and Utah . . .

In exchange for this vast territory, the United States agreed to pay Mexico $15 million. In addition, the United States assumed claims of more than $3 million held by American citizens against the Mexican government.

Refer to the passage to answer the following questions.

1. Do you know what the word *cession* means? What clues in the first paragraph can help you figure out what the word might mean? Use those clues to write a definition of *cession*.
2. Look *cession* up in a dictionary. How does your definition compare to the dictionary definition?
3. In your experience, what does the word *assume* usually mean? Do you think that meaning is the one used in the second paragraph? If not, what do you think *assume* means in this case?
4. Look *assume* up in a dictionary. Does one of its meanings match the one you came up with?

As you read Chapter 11, use context clues to figure out the meanings of unfamiliar words. Check yourself by looking the words up in a dictionary.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 11

Section 1

John Jacob Astor *(p. 346)*
mountain men *(p. 346)*
Oregon Trail *(p. 348)*
Santa Fe Trail *(p. 349)*
Mormons *(p. 349)*
Brigham Young *(p. 349)*

Section 2

Father Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla *(p. 350)*
empresarios *(p. 350)*
Stephen F. Austin *(p. 351)*
Antonio López de Santa Anna *(p. 351)*
Alamo *(p. 352)*
Battle of San Jacinto *(p. 352)*

Section 3

manifest destiny *(p. 354)*
James K. Polk *(p. 355)*
vaqueros (p. 357)
Californios *(p. 357)*
Bear Flag Revolt *(p. 358)*
Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo *(p. 361)*
Gadsden Purchase *(p. 361)*

Section 4

John Sutter *(p. 365)*
Donner party *(p. 365)*
forty-niners *(p. 365)*
prospect *(p. 366)*
placer miners *(p. 366)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

explicit *(p. 351)*
element *(p. 357)*

SECTION 1

Trails to the West

If YOU were there...

You live in Ohio in 1840. A few months ago, you and your family heard stories about a wonderful land in the Northwest, with sparkling rivers and fertile valleys. You all decide to pull up stakes and head West. You travel to Independence, Missouri, planning to join a wagon train on the Oregon Trail. In Missouri, you're surprised to find hundreds of other people planning to make the trip.

What would you expect your journey West to be like?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Many Americans in the Jacksonian Era were restless, curious, and eager to be on the move. The American West drew a variety of settlers. Some looked for wealth and adventure. Others, like this family on its way to the Northwest, dreamed of rich farmland and new homes.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. During the early 1800s, Americans moved west of the Rocky Mountains to settle and trade.
2. The Mormons traveled west in search of religious freedom.

The Big Idea

The American West attracted a variety of settlers.

Key Terms and People

John Jacob Astor, *p. 346*
mountain men, *p. 346*
Oregon Trail, *p. 348*
Santa Fe Trail, *p. 349*
Mormons, *p. 349*
Brigham Young, *p. 349*

TAKING NOTES Create a diagram like the one below. As you read, take notes on the different groups that settled in the American West, the trails they took, and their motives for moving West.

Trails	Travelers	Motives

Americans Move West

In the early 1800s, Americans pushed steadily westward, moving even beyond the territory of the United States. They traveled by canoe and flatboat, on horseback, and by wagon train. Some even walked much of the way.

The rush to the West occurred, in part, because of a hat. The "high hat," made of water-repellent beaver fur, was popular in the United States and Europe. While acquiring fur for the hats, French, British, and American companies gradually killed off the beaver population in the East. Companies moved west in search of more beavers. Most of the first non-Native Americans who traveled to the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Northwest were fur traders and trappers.

American merchant **John Jacob Astor** created one of the largest fur businesses, the American Fur Company. His company bought skins from western fur traders and trappers who became known as **mountain men**. These adventurers were some of the first easterners to explore and map the Rocky Mountains and lands west of them. Mountain men lived lonely and often dangerous lives. They trapped animals on their own, far from towns and settlements. Mountain men such as Jedediah Smith, Manuel Lisa, Jim Bridger, and Jim

Trails Leading West



Jim Beckwourth was an African American fur trapper and explorer of the West in the early 1800s.

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Movement** Which trails took the longest to travel?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** What difficulties do you think travelers on the trails faced?

Beckwourth survived many hardships during their search for wealth and adventure. To survive on the frontier, mountain men adopted Native American customs and clothing. In addition, they often married Native American women. The Indian wives of trappers often worked hard to contribute to their success.

Pioneer William Ashley saw that frequently bringing furs out of the Rocky Mountains was expensive. He asked his traders to stay in the mountains and meet once a year to trade and socialize. This practice helped make the fur trade more profitable. The yearly meeting was known as the rendezvous. At the rendezvous, mountain men and Native American trappers sold their fur to fur-company agents. It was thus important to bring as many furs as possible. One trapper described the people at a typical rendezvous in 1837. He saw Americans, Canadian French, some Europeans, and "Indians, of nearly every tribe in the Rocky Mountains."

The rendezvous was filled with celebrating and storytelling. At the same time, the meeting was also about conducting business. Western artist Alfred Jacob Miller described how trade was begun in the rendezvous camp.

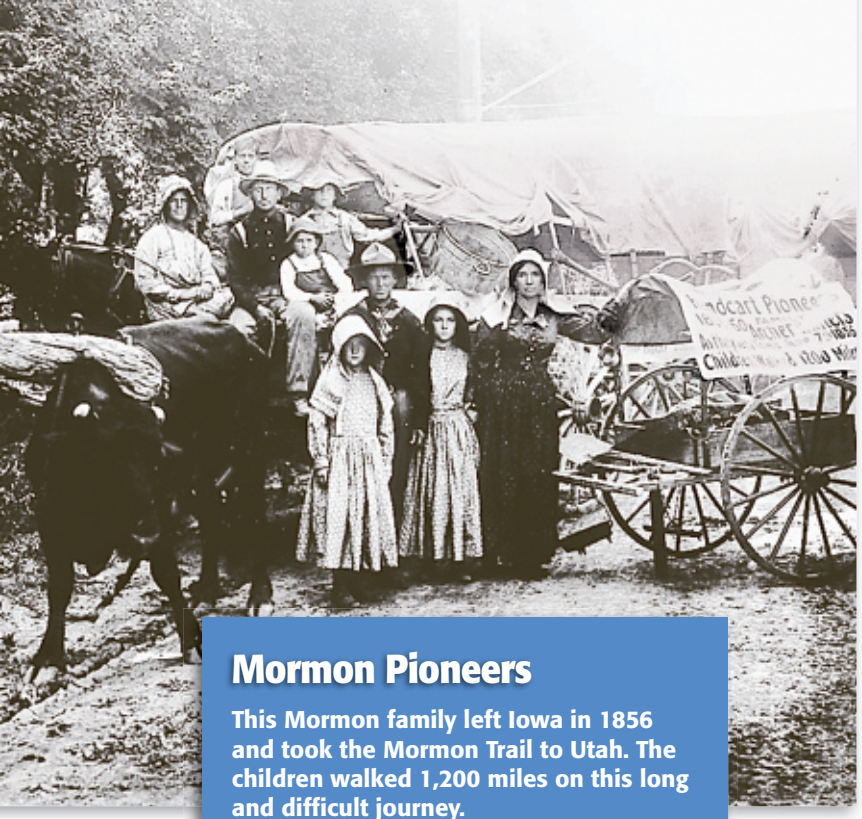
> "The Fur Company's great tent is raised; the Indians erect their picturesque [beautiful] white lodges; the accumulated [collected] furs of the hunting season are brought forth and the Company's tent is a … busy place."
>
> —Alfred Jacob Miller, quoted in *The Fur Trade of the American West*, by David J. Wishart

In 1811, John Jacob Astor founded a fur-trading post called Astoria at the mouth of the Columbia River. Astoria was one of the first American settlements in what became known as Oregon Country. American Indians occupied the region, which was rich in forests, rivers, and wildlife. However, Britain, Russia, Spain, and the United States all claimed the land. The United States based its claim on



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

John Jacob Astor made his first fortune in the fur trade, but he became involved in the lucrative New York City real estate business. He became the first American millionaire. Several New York City landmarks are named for him or members of his family, including Astoria Place and the Waldorf-Astoria hotel.



Mormon Pioneers

This Mormon family left Iowa in 1856 and took the Mormon Trail to Utah. The children walked 1,200 miles on this long and difficult journey.

What does the photo tell you about their trip?

the exploration of merchant captain Robert Gray, who had reached the mouth of the Columbia River in 1792.

Recognizing the huge economic value of the Pacific Northwest, the United States made treaties in which Spain and Russia gave up their claims to various areas. The United States also signed treaties with Britain allowing both countries to occupy Oregon Country, the Columbia River, and its surrounding lands.

By the 1840s, the era of American fur trading in the Pacific Northwest was drawing to a close. The demand for beaver furs had fallen because fashions changed. Too much trapping had also greatly reduced the number of beavers. Some mountain men gave up their work and moved back east. Their daring stories, however, along with the treaties made by the U.S. government, inspired other Americans to move West. Lured by rich resources and a mild climate, easterners poured into Oregon Country in the 1840s. These new settlers soon replaced the mountain men on the frontier.

The Oregon Trail

Many settlers moving to Oregon Country and other western areas followed the 2,000-mile-long **Oregon Trail**, which stretched from places such as Independence, Missouri, or Council Bluffs, Iowa, west into Oregon Country. The trail followed the Platte and Sweetwater Rivers over the Plains. After it crossed the Rocky Mountains, the trail forked. The northern branch led to the Willamette Valley in Oregon. The other branch went to California and became known as the California Trail.

Traveling the trail challenged the strength and determination of pioneer families. The journey usually began after the rainy season ended in late spring and lasted about six months. The cost, about $600 for a family of four, was high at a time when a typical worker usually made about $1.50 per day. Young families made up most groups of settlers. They gathered in wagon trains for the trip. There could be as few as 10 wagons or as many as several dozen in a wagon train.

The wagons were pulled by oxen, mules, or horses. Pioneers often walked to save their animals' strength. They kept up a tiring pace, traveling from dawn until dusk. Settler Jesse Applegate recalled the advice he received from one experienced Oregon pioneer: "Travel, *travel*, TRAVEL . . . Nothing is good that causes a moment's delay."

Some pioneers brought small herds of cattle with them on the trail. They faced severe hardships, including shortages of food, supplies, and water. Rough weather and geographic barriers, such as rivers and mountains, sometimes forced large numbers of pioneers to abandon their wagons. In the early days of the Oregon Trail, many Native Americans helped the pioneers, acting as guides and messengers. They also traded goods for food. Although newspapers sometimes reported Native American "massacres" of pioneers, few settlers died from Indian attacks.

The settlers who arrived safely in Oregon and California found generally healthy

and pleasant climates. By 1845 some 5,000 settlers occupied the Willamette Valley.

The Santa Fe Trail

The **Santa Fe Trail** was another important path west. It led from Independence, Missouri, to Santa Fe, New Mexico. It followed an ancient trading route first used by Native Americans. American traders loaded their wagon trains with cloth and other manufactured goods to exchange for horses, mules, and silver from Mexican traders in Santa Fe.

The long trip across blazing deserts and rough mountains was dangerous. But the lure of high profits encouraged traders to take to the trail. One trader reported a 2,000 percent profit on his cargo. The U.S. government helped protect traders by sending troops to ensure that Native Americans were not a threat.

READING CHECK **Contrasting** How were the Oregon and Santa Fe trails different?

Mormons Travel West

One large group of settlers traveled to the West in search of religious freedom. In 1830 a young man named Joseph Smith founded the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints in western New York. The members of Joseph Smith's church became known as **Mormons**. Smith told his followers that he had found and translated a set of golden tablets containing religious teachings. The writings were called the *Book of Mormon*.

Church membership grew rapidly, but certain beliefs and practices caused Mormons to be persecuted. For example, beginning in the 1850s some Mormon men practiced polygamy—a practice in which one man is married to several women at the same time. This practice was outlawed by the church in 1890.

In the early 1830s Smith and his growing number of converts left New York. They formed new communities, first in Ohio, then in Missouri, and finally in Illinois. All three communities eventually failed, and an anti-Mormon mob murdered Smith in 1844. Following Smith's murder, **Brigham Young** became head of the Mormon Church. Young chose what is now Utah as the group's new home, and thousands of Mormons took the Mormon Trail to the area near the Great Salt Lake, where they prospered. By 1860 there were about 40,000 Mormons in Utah.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** Why did Mormons move west?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Some of the first Americans to move West were fur traders and trappers. Settlers soon followed. In the next section you will learn about the Texas Revolution.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP11

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What was the **Oregon Trail**?
   b. Elaborate Would you have chosen to leave your home to travel west? Why?
2. **a. Identify** Who are the **Mormons**?
   b. Summarize What difficulties led Mormons to move to Utah?

Critical Thinking

3. **Drawing Conclusions** Review your notes on early American settlement in the West. Then copy the chart below and use it to identify challenges of the trip that western travelers faced.

Travelers	Challenges Faced

FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Describing Trails West** As you read this section, note important topics that you might want to cover in your documentary film. In addition, write down ideas about how you might present information about each topic. For example, will you use a narrator to tell the life story of Joseph Smith, or will you have actors present it dramatically?

SECTION 2

The Texas Revolution

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Many American settlers moved to Texas after Mexico achieved independence from Spain.
2. Texans revolted against Mexican rule and established an independent nation.

The Big Idea

In 1836, Texas gained its independence from Mexico.

Key Terms and People

Father Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla, *p. 350*
empresarios, *p. 350*
Stephen F. Austin, *p. 351*
Antonio López de Santa Anna, *p. 351*
Alamo, *p. 352*
Battle of San Jacinto, *p. 352*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the events that led to the independence of Texas. Write your notes in steps, as shown below.

1. Mexican government hires empresarios.
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

If YOU were there...

You are the father of a large farm family in Missouri. There is not enough land for everyone, so you're looking for another opportunity. One day, a Mexican government official comes to town. He is looking for people to settle in Texas. The Mexican government is offering generous tracts of land to colonists. However, you have to become a citizen of Mexico and follow Mexican laws.

Would you decide to move your family to Texas? Why?

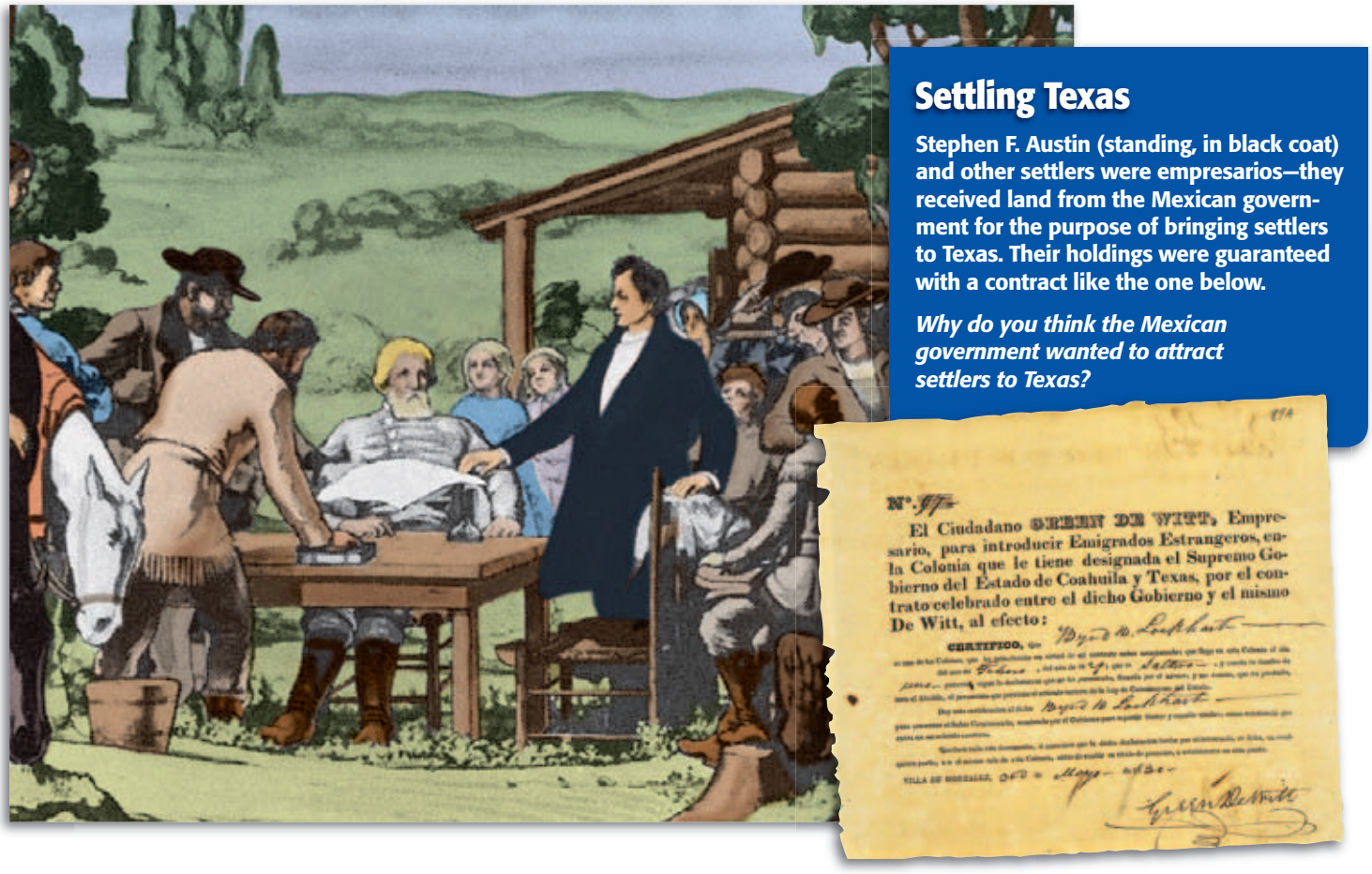
BUILDING BACKGROUND Spain controlled a vast amount of territory in what would later become the American Southwest. The Spanish built missions and forts in Texas to establish control of that region. But the settlements were far apart, and conflicts with Native Americans discouraged Spanish settlers from moving to Texas. When Mexico became an independent republic, it actively looked for more settlers.

American Settlers Move to Texas

Mexico had a long, unprotected border that stretched from Texas to California. Mexico's Spanish rulers worried constantly about attacks from neighbors. They also were concerned about threats from within Mexico.

Their fears were justified. Mexicans moved to overthrow Spanish rule in the early 1800s. In September 1810 **Father Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla**, a Mexican priest, led a rebellion of about 80,000 poor Indians and mestizos, or people of Indian and Spanish ancestry. They hoped that if Mexico became independent from the Spanish monarchy, their lives would improve.

Hidalgo's revolt failed, but the rebellion he started grew. In 1821 Mexico became independent. In 1824 it adopted a republican constitution that declared rights for all Mexicans. The new Mexican government hired **empresarios**, or agents, to bring settlers to Texas. They paid the agents in land.



Settling Texas

Stephen F. Austin (standing, in black coat) and other settlers were empresarios—they received land from the Mexican government for the purpose of bringing settlers to Texas. Their holdings were guaranteed with a contract like the one below.

Why do you think the Mexican government wanted to attract settlers to Texas?

N°. 77

El Ciudadano STEPHEN DE WITT, Empresario, para introducir Emigrados Estrangeros, en la Colonia que le tiene designada el Supremo Gobierno del Estado de Coahuila y Texas, por el contrato celebrado entre el dicho Gobierno y el mismo De Witt, al efecto:

CERTIFICO, &c.

In 1822 one young agent, **Stephen F. Austin**, started a Texas colony on the lower Colorado River. The first 300 families became known as the Old Three Hundred. Austin's successful colony attracted other agents, and American settlers flocked to the region.

In exchange for free land, settlers had to obey Mexican laws. But some settlers often **explicitly** ignored these laws. For example, despite the ban on slavery, many brought slaves. Concerned that it was losing control of the growing American population, Mexico responded. In 1830, it banned further settlement by Americans. Angry about the new law, many Texans began to think of gaining independence from Mexico.

Meanwhile, Mexico had come under the rule of General **Antonio López de Santa Anna**. He soon suspended Mexico's republican constitution and turned his attention to the growing unrest in Texas.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** Why did settlers move to Texas?

Texans Revolt against Mexico

In October 1835 the Mexican army tried to remove a cannon from the town of Gonzales, Texas. Rebels stood next to the cannon. Their flag read, "Come and take it." In the following battle, the rebels won. The Texas Revolution, also known as the Texas War for Independence, had begun.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

explicit fully revealed without vagueness

Texas Independence

On March 2, 1836, Texans declared their independence from Mexico. The new Republic of Texas was born. Both the declaration and the constitution that shortly followed were modeled after the U.S. documents. The Texas constitution, however, made slavery legal.

Delegates to the new Texas government chose politician David Burnet as president and Lorenzo de Zavala as vice president. Another revolutionary, Sam Houston, was named to head the Texas army. Austin went to the United States to seek money and troops.

Battle at the Alamo

FOCUS ON READING

Use this section to summarize the events of the battle at the Alamo.

The Texans' actions angered Santa Anna. He began assembling a force of thousands to stop the rebellion.

A hastily created army of Texas volunteers had been clashing with Mexican troops for months. Under Colonel William Travis, a small force took the town of San Antonio. It then occupied the **Alamo**, an abandoned mission near San Antonio that became an important battle site in the Texas Revolution. Volunteers from the United States, including frontiersman Davy Crockett and Colonel Jim Bowie, joined the Alamo's defense.

The rebels, numbering fewer than 200, hoped to stall the huge Mexican force while a larger Texas army assembled. For almost two weeks, from February 23 to March 6, 1836, the Texans held out. Travis managed to get a message to other Texans through enemy lines:

> "I call on you in the name of Liberty, of patriotism, and everything dear to the American character, to come to our aid with all dispatch [speed] …VICTORY OR DEATH."
>
> —William Travis, from a letter written at the Alamo, 1836

Before dawn on March 6, the Mexican army attacked. Despite heavy losses, the army overcame the Texans. All the defenders of the Alamo were killed, though some civilians survived. Following a later battle, at Goliad, Santa Anna ordered the execution of 350 prisoners who had surrendered. Texans were enraged by the massacres.

Battle of San Jacinto

Santa Anna now chased the untrained forces of Sam Houston. Outnumbered, the Texans fled east. Finally, they reorganized at the San Jacinto River, near Galveston Bay. There, the Texans took a stand.

Santa Anna was confident of victory, but he was careless in choosing the site for his camp. On the afternoon of April 21, 1836, while Mexican troops were resting, Houston's forces swarmed the camp, shouting, "Remember the Alamo! Remember Goliad!"

The fighting ended swiftly. Santa Anna's army was destroyed. In the **Battle of San Jacinto**, the Texans captured Santa Anna and forced him to sign a treaty giving Texas its independence.





An Independent Nation

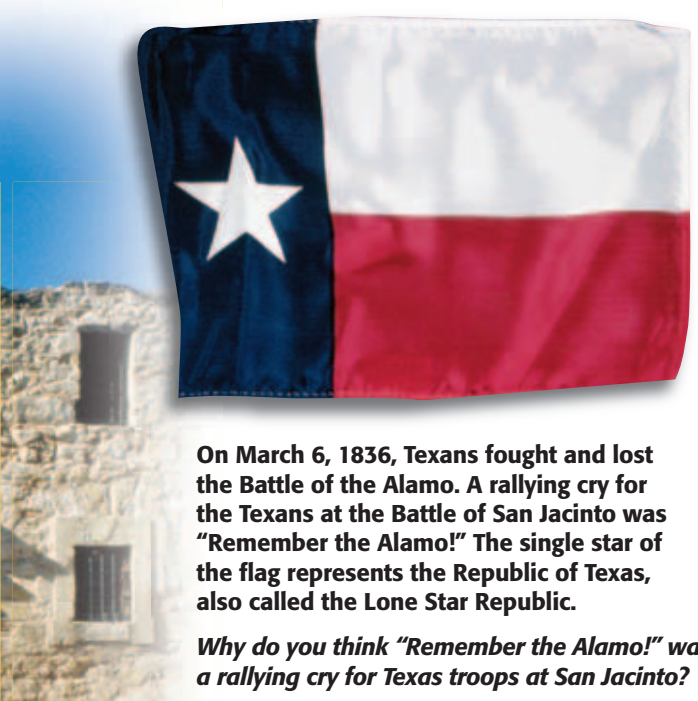
Sam Houston was the hero of the new independent nation of Texas. The republic created a new town named Houston and made it the capital. Voters elected Sam Houston as president. Stephen F. Austin became secretary of state.

To increase the population, Texas offered land grants. American settlers came from nearby southern states, often bringing slaves with them to help grow and harvest cotton.

Most Texans hoped that the United States would annex, or take control of, Texas, making it a state. The U.S. Congress also wanted to annex Texas. But President Andrew Jackson refused. He was concerned that admitting Texas as a slave state would upset the fragile balance of free and slave states. The president also did not want to have a war with Mexico over Texas.

Finally, Jackson did recognize Texas as an independent nation. France did so in 1839. Britain, which wanted to halt U.S. expansion, recognized Texas in 1840.

The Mexican government, however, did not recognize Santa Anna's forced handover of Texas. For this reason, in 1837 the republic organized the Texas Rangers to guard its long frontier from Mexican and Native American attacks. Finally, in 1844 Texas and Mexico signed a peace treaty.



On March 6, 1836, Texans fought and lost the Battle of the Alamo. A rallying cry for the Texans at the Battle of San Jacinto was "Remember the Alamo!" The single star of the flag represents the Republic of Texas, also called the Lone Star Republic.

Why do you think "Remember the Alamo!" was a rallying cry for Texas troops at San Jacinto?

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What issues did the new nation of Texas face?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW American settlers in Texas challenged the Mexican government and won their independence. In the next section you will learn about the war between Mexico and the United States.

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP11

Section 2 Assessment

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What role did **Stephen F. Austin** play in the settlement of Texas?
   b. Make Inferences Why did Mexican officials want to bring more settlers to Texas?
   c. Evaluate Do you think Mexico's requirements for foreign immigrants were reasonable or unreasonable? Explain.
2. **a. Describe** What were the important battles in the War for Texas Independence? Why was each important?
   b. Make Inferences Why did Texas offer land grants to settlers?
   c. Predict What problems might the Republic of Texas face?

Critical Thinking

3. **Sequencing** Review your notes on American settlement in Texas. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to show the significant events in the history of the Republic of Texas.

Significant Events
1. Houston is founded and made the capital.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Explaining the Texas Revolution** As you read this section, make note of the most important players and events in the story of how Texas gained independence from Mexico. Consider also how you will present information about these people and events to your film's audience. What words, images, and sounds will make the story of the revolution come alive for the audience?

SECTION 3

The Mexican-American War

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Many Americans believed that the nation had a manifest destiny to claim new lands in the West.
2. As a result of the Mexican-American War, the United States added territory in the Southwest.
3. American settlement in the Mexican Cession produced conflict and a blending of cultures.

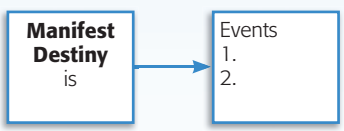
The Big Idea

The ideals of manifest destiny and the outcome of the Mexican-American War led to U.S. expansion to the Pacific Ocean.

Key Terms and People

manifest destiny, *p. 354*
James K. Polk, *p. 355*
vaqueros, *p. 357*
Californios, *p. 357*
Bear Flag Revolt, *p. 358*
Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, *p. 361*
Gadsden Purchase, *p. 361*

TAKING NOTES Create a graphic organizer like the one below. Use it to define *manifest destiny* and then list the events in the expansion of the United States.



If YOU were there...

Your family are Californios, Spanish settlers who have lived in California for many years. You raise horses on your ranch. So far, you have gotten along with American settlers. But it has become clear that the American government wants to take over California. You hear that fighting has already started between American and Mexican troops.

How might life change under American rule?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Mexican independence set the stage for conflict and change in the West and Southwest. At the same time, American settlers continued to move westward, settling in the Mexican territories of Texas and California. American ambitions led to clashes with Mexico and the people who already lived in Mexico's territories.

Manifest Destiny

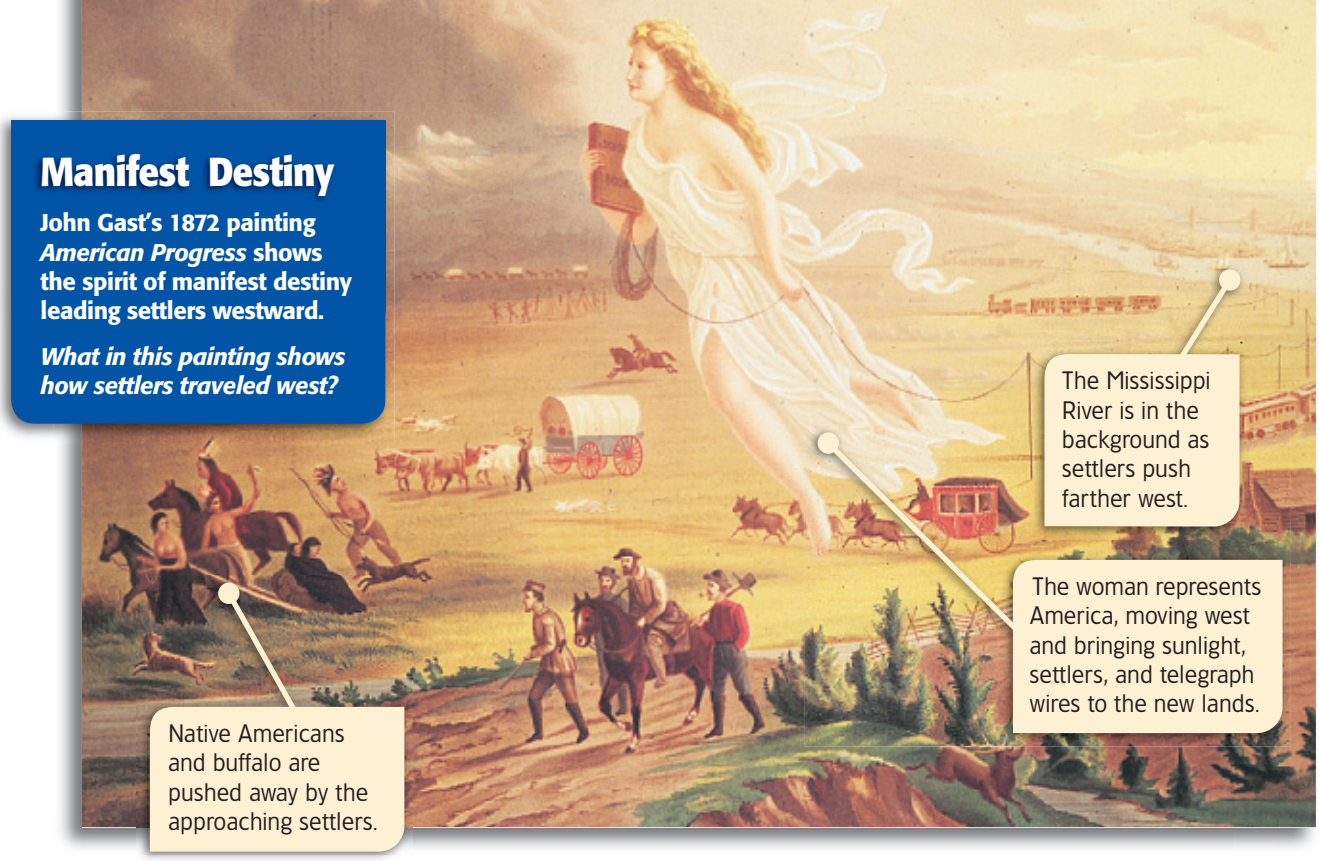
"We have it in our power to start the world over again."

—Thomas Paine, from his pamphlet *Common Sense*

Americans had always believed they could build a new, better society founded on democratic principles. In 1839 writer John O'Sullivan noted, "We are the nation of human progress, and who will, what can, set limits to our onward march?"

Actually, there was one limit: land. By the 1840s the United States had a booming economy and population. Barely 70 years old, the nation already needed more room for farms, ranches, businesses, and ever-growing families. Americans looked West to what they saw as a vast wilderness, ready to be taken.

Some people believed it was America's **manifest destiny**, or obvious fate, to settle land all the way to the Pacific Ocean in order to spread democracy. O'Sullivan coined the term in 1845. He wrote that it was America's "manifest destiny to overspread and to possess the whole continent which Providence [God] has given us for the development of the great experiment of liberty . . . "



In the 1840s and 1850s, manifest destiny was tied up with the slavery issue. If America expanded, would slavery be allowed in the new territories? Several presidents became involved in the difficult issue. Among them was President John Tyler. A pro-slavery Whig, Tyler wanted to increase the power of the southern slave states by annexing Texas. His fellow Whigs disagreed.

In 1844, the Whig Party passed up Tyler and chose Senator Henry Clay of Kentucky as its presidential candidate. At first opposing annexation, Clay changed his mind due to pressure from southern politicians. The Democratic Party chose former Tennessee governor **James K. Polk** to oppose Clay. Both candidates strongly favored acquiring Texas and Oregon.

Southerners feared the loss of Texas, a possible new slave state. Others worried that Texas might become an ally of Britain. These concerns helped Polk narrowly defeat Clay.

Acquiring New Territory

President Polk quickly set out to fulfill his campaign promise to annex Oregon and Texas. By the 1820s, Russia and Spain had given up their claims to Oregon Country. Britain and the United States had agreed to occupy the territory together.

As more Americans settled there, they began to ask that Oregon become part of the United States. Polk wanted to protect these settlers' interests. Some politicians noted that Oregon Country would provide a Pacific port for the growing U.S. trade with China.

Meanwhile, Britain and the United States disagreed over how to draw the United States–Canadian border. American expansionists cried, "Fifty-four forty or fight!" This slogan referred to 54°40' north latitude, the line to which Americans wanted their northern territory to extend.

Neither side really wanted a war, though. In 1846 Great Britain and the United States signed a treaty that gave the United States all Oregon land south of the forty-ninth parallel. This treaty drew the border that still exists today. Oregon became an organized U.S. territory in February 1848.

Texas came next. By March 1845, Congress had approved annexation and

needed only the support of the Republic of Texas. Americans continued to pour into Texas. Texas politicians hoped that joining the United States would help solve the republic's financial and military problems. The Texas Congress approved annexation in June 1845. Texas became part of the United States in December. This action angered the Mexican government, which considered Texas to be a "stolen province."

California under Mexico

Though it had lost Texas, Mexico still had settlements in other areas of the present-day Southwest to govern. New Mexico was the oldest settled area, with its capital at Santa Fe. Mexico also controlled present-day Arizona, Nevada, and California.

During early Spanish rule, the mission system had dominated much of the present-day Southwest. Over time, it had become less important there, especially in New Mexico, where settlers lived in small villages. In California, however, missions remained the focus of everyday life. Missions under later Spanish rule carried out huge farming and ranching operations using the labor of Native Americans. Some of the Indians came willingly to the missions. Others were brought by force. Usually, they were not allowed to leave the mission once they had arrived. They had to adopt the clothing, food, and religion of the Spanish priests.

Missions often sold their goods to local pueblos, or towns, that arose near the missions and presidios. One wealthy California settler, Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo, remembered the early days.

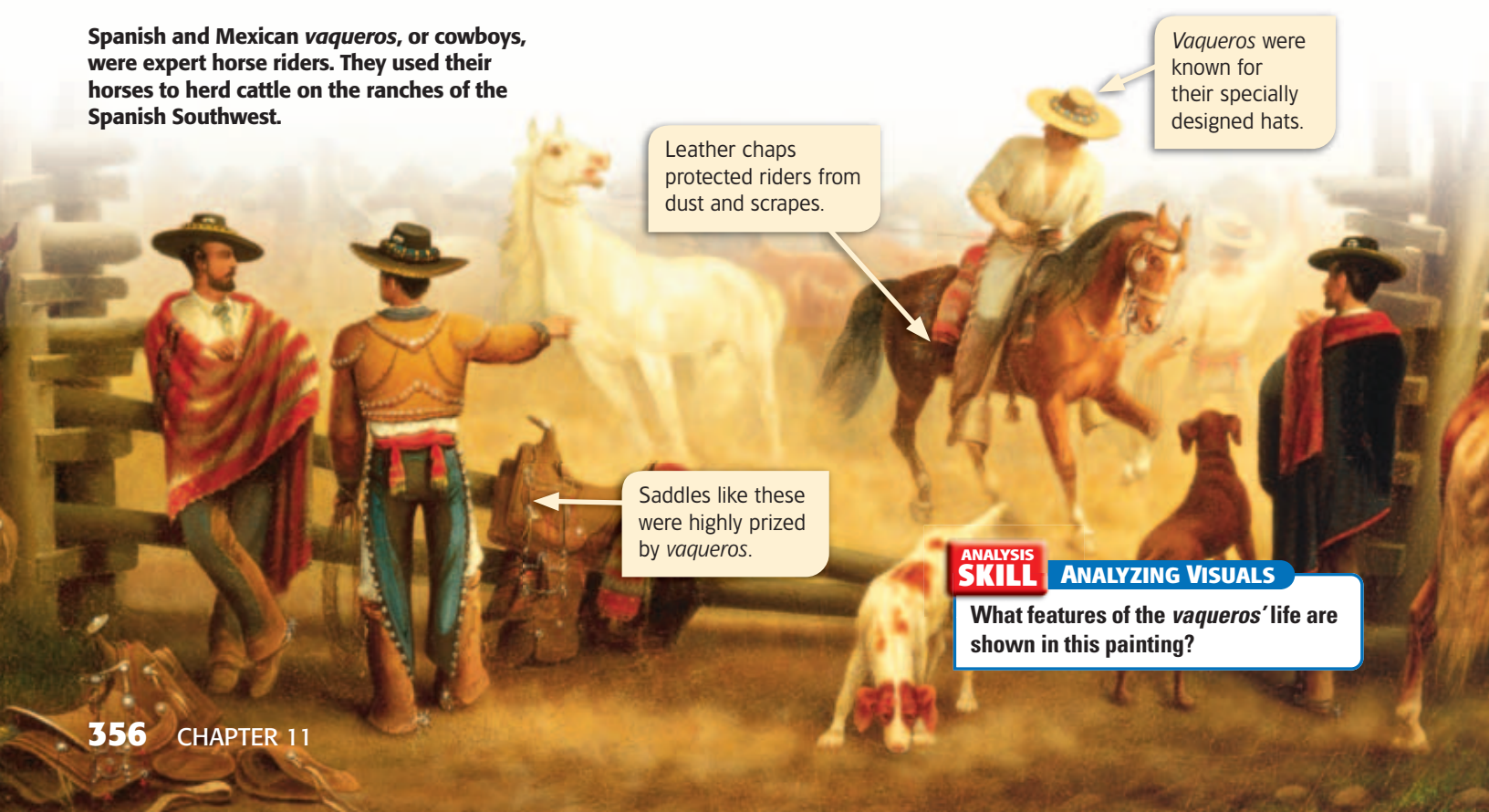
> "We were the pioneers of the Pacific coast, building towns and missions while General [George] Washington was carrying on the war of the Revolution."
>
> —Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo, quoted in *Eyewitnesses and Others*

After winning independence from Spain in 1821, Mexico began to change old Spanish

History Close-up

Ranch Life

Spanish and Mexican *vaqueros*, or cowboys, were expert horse riders. They used their horses to herd cattle on the ranches of the Spanish Southwest.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

What features of the *vaqueros'* life are shown in this painting?

policies toward California and Texas. In 1833, for example, Mexico ended the mission system in California. Mission lands were broken up, and huge grants were given to some of the wealthiest California settlers, including Vallejo. They created vast ranchos, or ranches, with tens of thousands of acres of land. ***Vaqueros***, or cowboys, managed the large herds of cattle and sheep. Cowhides were so valuable that they were called "California banknotes." Hides were traded for household items and luxury goods with ship captains from the eastern United States. Some settlers also made wine and grew citrus fruits.

Although they had been freed from the missions, for most California Indians the **elements** of life changed very little. They continued to herd animals and do much of the hard physical labor on ranches and farms. Some, however, ran away into the wilderness or to the nearby towns of San Diego and Los Angeles.

The Californios

Because of the great distance between California and the center of Mexico's government, by the early 1820s California had only around 3,200 colonists. These early California settlers, called **Californios**, felt little connection to their faraway government.

Californios developed a lasting reputation for hospitality and skilled horse riding. In *Two Years Before the Mast*, American novelist Richard Henry Dana Jr. wrote about his encounters with Californio culture. He described, for example, what happened after a Californio served a feast to Dana and a friend.

> "We took out some money and asked him how much we were to pay. He shook his head and crossed himself, saying that it was charity—that the Lord gave it to us."
>
> —Richard Henry Dana Jr., from *Two Years Before the Mast*

In addition to traders and travelers, a small number of settlers also arrived from the United States. They were called Anglos by the Californios. Although there were few Anglo settlers in California, their calls for independence increased tensions between Mexico and the United States.

BIOGRAPHY

Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo
1808–1890



Mariano Guadalupe Vallejo was born to an influential Californio family in Monterey. He joined the Mexican army shortly after Mexico's independence from Spain. He was soon put in charge of Mexico's efforts to increase settlement in northern California. Vallejo eventually became the richest man in California, owning enormous amounts of land and livestock. He welcomed American rule of California, believing it would result in self-government for Californios. Vallejo served at the state constitutional convention as well as in the first state senate.

Analyzing Why did Vallejo encourage American rule of California?

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences** How did manifest destiny affect Spanish and Mexican rule in California?

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

element a basic part of an individual's surroundings

Mexican-American War

Diplomatic relations between Mexico and the United States became increasingly strained. U.S. involvement in California and Texas contributed to this tension.

Conflict Breaks Out

Mexico had long insisted that its northern border lay along the Nueces River. The United States said the border was farther south, along the Rio Grande. In June 1845 President Polk ordered General Zachary Taylor to lead an army into the disputed region.

Polk sent diplomat John Slidell to Mexico City to try to settle the border dispute. Slidell

came with an offer to buy New Mexico and California for $30 million. Mexican officials refused to speak to him.

In March 1846, General Taylor led his troops to the Rio Grande. He camped across from Mexican forces stationed near the town of Matamoros, Mexico. In April, the Mexican commander told Taylor to withdraw from Mexican territory. Taylor refused. The two sides clashed, and several U.S. soldiers were killed.

In response, President Polk said to Congress:

> "Mexico has passed the boundary of the United States, has invaded our territory, and shed American blood upon the American soil …The two nations are now at war."
>
> —James K. Polk, from his address to Congress, May 11, 1846

Polk's war message was persuasive. Two days later, Congress declared war on Mexico.

War Begins

At the beginning of the war with Mexico, the U.S. Army had better weapons and equipment. Yet it was greatly outnumbered and poorly prepared. The government put out a call for 50,000 volunteers. About 200,000 responded. Many were young men who thought the war would be a grand adventure in a foreign land.

On the home front, many Americans supported the war. However, many Whigs thought the war was unjustified and avoidable. Northern abolitionists also opposed the conflict. They feared the spread of slavery into southwestern lands.

While Americans debated the war, fighting proceeded. General Taylor's soldiers won battles south of the Nueces River. Taylor then crossed the Rio Grande and occupied Matamoros, Mexico. While Taylor waited for more men, Polk ordered General Stephen Kearny to attack New Mexico. On August 18, 1846, Kearny took Santa Fe, the capital city, without a fight. He claimed the entire province of New Mexico for the United States and marched west to California, where another conflict with Mexico was already under way.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

Although Robert Stockton issued the official proclamation annexing California to the United States, a navy commander from New York, John D. Sloat, was the first to raise an American flag over California. Sloat was from Sloatsburg, New York, a town named for his family.

The Bear Flag Revolt

In 1846, only about 500 Americans lived in the huge province of California, in contrast to about 12,000 Californios. Yet, in the spirit of manifest destiny, a small group of American settlers seized the town of Sonoma, north of San Francisco, on June 14. Hostilities began between the two sides when the Americans took some horses that were intended for the Mexican militia. In what became known as the **Bear Flag Revolt**, the Americans declared California to be an independent nation. Above the town, the rebels hoisted a hastily made flag of a grizzly bear facing a red star. Californios laughed at the roughly-made bear, thinking it "looked more like a pig than a bear."

John C. Frémont, a U.S. Army captain, was leading a mapping expedition across the Sierra Nevada when he heard of the possible war with Mexico. Frémont went to Sonoma and quickly joined the American settlers in their revolt against the Californios. Because war had already broken out between the United States and Mexico, Frémont's actions were seen as beneficial to the American cause in the region. His stated goal, however, was Californian independence, not to annex California to the United States. During the revolt, several important Californios were taken prisoner, including Mariano Vallejo. Vallejo and his brother were held at an Anglo settlement for two months without any formal charges being brought against them. Long after his release, Vallejo wrote a history of California that included an account of his time as a bear flag prisoner.

But the bear flag was quick to fall. In July, U.S. naval forces came ashore in California and raised the stars and stripes. Kearny's army arrived from the East. The towns of San Diego, Los Angeles, and San Francisco fell rapidly. In August, U.S. Navy commodore Robert Stockton claimed California for the United States. Some Californios continued to resist until early 1847, when they surrendered.

Interactive Map

Mexican-American War, 1846–1847

The Bear Flag Revolt

American settlers took over Sonoma, the regional headquarters of the Mexican army. They captured Mexican general Mariano Vallejo and declared California a new country: the California Republic.



OREGON COUNTRY

Great Salt Lake

UNORGANIZED TERRITORY

Fort Leavenworth

Bent's Fort

KEARNY

UNITED STATES

Bear Flag Revolt, June 1846

Sutter's Fort

Sonoma

San Francisco

Monterey

SIERRA NEVADA

FREMONT

CA

Colorado River

NEW MEXICO

Santa Fe

KEARNY

San Gabriel, Jan. 1847

Los Angeles

San Pasqual, Dec. 1846

STOCKTON

San Diego

Gila River

KEARNY

DISPUTED TERRITORY

Arkansas River

Red River

Mississippi River

120°W

30°N

TEXAS

DONIPHAN

Rio Grande

Nueces River

San Antonio

New Orleans

Chihuahua

WOOL

TAYLOR

Corpus Christi

Palo Alto, May 1846

SCOTT

90°W

Resaca de la Palma, May 1846

Matamoros

Monterrey, Sept . 1846

Buena Vista, Feb. 1847

SANTA ANNA

Gulf of Mexico

Tropic of Cancer

PACIFIC OCEAN

SLOAT

Mazatlán

MEXICO

Tampico

SCOTT

110°W

Mexico City, Sept. 1847

SCOTT

20°N

Veracruz, Mar. 1847

SANTA ANNA

Cerro Gordo, April 1847

American forces
American victory
Mexican forces
Mexican victory
Fort
Modern-day state boundaries

0 100 200 Miles
0 100 200 Kilometers

N
W E
S

End of the War

General Winfield Scott landed at Veracruz and defeated troops in the Mexican fortress there. He then marched inland, toward Mexico City. Scott's capture of the Mexican capital led to the end of the war.

go.hrw.com
Interactive Map
KEYWORD: SC7 NY11

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Location** What Mexican city did Scott's forces attack in March 1847?
2. **Movement** Which U.S. commander led forces from Santa Fe to San Diego?



American soldier

War's End

In Mexico General Taylor finally got the reinforcements he needed. He drove his forces deep into enemy lands. Santa Anna, thrown from office after losing Texas, returned to power in Mexico in September 1846. He quickly came after Taylor.

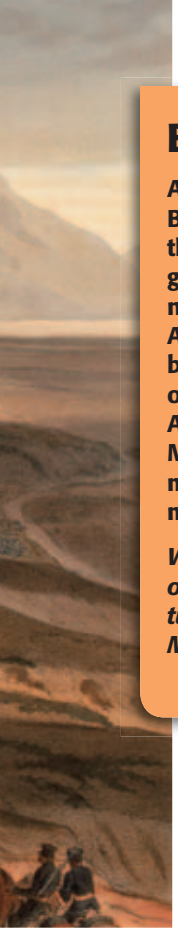
The two armies clashed at Buena Vista in February 1847. After a close battle with heavy casualties on both sides, the Mexican Army retreated. The next morning, the cry went up: "The enemy has fled! The field is ours!"

Taylor's success made him a war hero back home. The general's popularity troubled President Polk, and when Taylor's progress stalled, Polk gave the command to General Winfield Scott. A beloved leader, he was known by his troops as "Old Fuss and Feathers" because of his strict military discipline.

Scott sailed to the port of Veracruz, the strongest fortress in Mexico. On March 29, after an 88-hour artillery attack, Veracruz fell. Scott moved on to the final goal, Mexico City, the capital. Taking a route similar to one followed by Spanish conquistador Hernán Cortés in 1519, the Americans pushed 200 or so miles inland. Santa Anna tried to stop the U.S. forces at Cerro Gordo in mid-April, but failed. By August 1847, U.S. troops were at the edge of Mexico City.

After a truce failed, Scott ordered a massive attack on Mexico City. Mexican soldiers and civilians fought fierce battles in and around the capital. At a military school atop the steep, fortified hill of Chapultepec, young Mexican cadets bravely defended their hopeless position. At least one soldier jumped to his death rather than surrender to the invading forces. Finally, on September 14, 1847, Mexico City fell. Santa Anna soon fled the country.

READING CHECK **Sequencing** In chronological order, list the key battles of the Mexican-American War.



Battle of Buena Vista

After the two-day Battle of Buena Vista, the American army gained control of northern Mexico. At the beginning of the battle, Mexican forces outnumbered the Americans. But the Mexicans suffered more than twice as many casualties.

Why was the Battle of Buena Vista a turning point in the Mexican-American War?



Mexican soldier

American Settlement in the Mexican Cession

The war ended after Scott took Mexico City. In February 1848, the United States and Mexico signed the **Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo**, which officially ended the war and forced Mexico to turn over much of its northern territory to the United States. Known as the Mexican Cession, this land included the present-day states of California, Nevada, and Utah. In addition, it included most of Arizona and New Mexico and parts of Colorado and Wyoming. The United States also won the area claimed by Texas north of the Rio Grande. The Mexican Cession totaled more than 500,000 square miles and increased the size of the United States by almost 25 percent.

Agreements and Payments

In exchange for this vast territory, the United States agreed to pay Mexico $15 million. In addition, the United States assumed claims of more than $3 million held by American citizens against the Mexican government. The treaty also addressed the status of Mexicans in the Mexican Cession. The treaty provided that they would be "protected in the free enjoyment of their liberty and property, and secured in the free exercise of their religion." The Senate passed the treaty in March 1848.

After the war with Mexico, some Americans wanted to guarantee that any southern railroad to California would be built completely on American soil. James Gadsden, U.S. minister to Mexico, negotiated an important agreement with Mexico in December 1853. Under the terms of the **Gadsden Purchase**, the U.S. government paid Mexico $10 million. In exchange, the United States received the southern parts of what are now Arizona and New Mexico. With this purchase, the existing boundary with Mexico was finally fixed.

Surge of American Settlers

After the Mexican-American War, a flood of Americans moved to the Southwest. American newcomers struggled against longtime residents to control the land and other valuable resources, such as water and minerals. Most Mexicans, Mexican Americans, and Native Americans faced legal, economic, and social discrimination. As a result, they found it difficult to protect their rights.

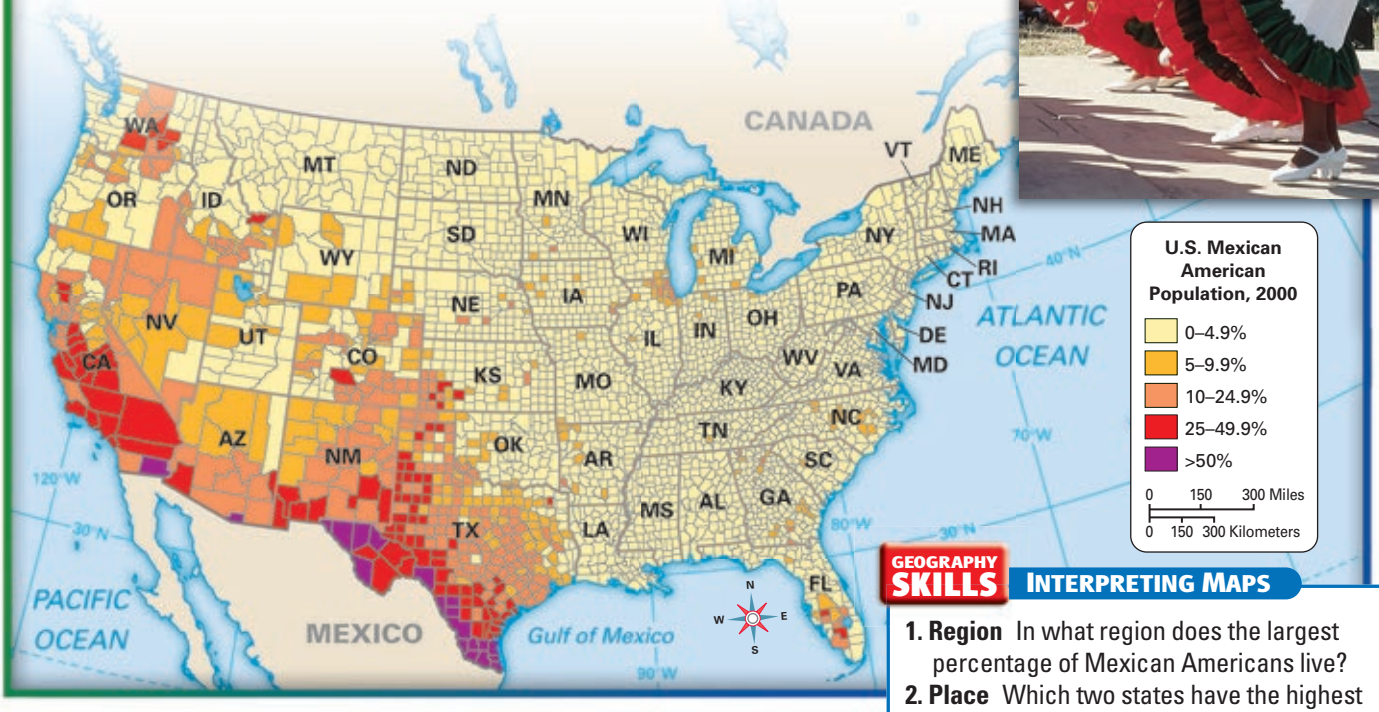
The Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo promised to protect Mexican American residents' property rights. Yet differences between Mexican and U.S. land laws led to great confusion. The U.S. government often made Mexican American landowners go to court to prove that they had titles to their land. Landowners had to pay their own travel costs as well as those of witnesses and interpreters. They also had to pay attorneys' and interpreters' fees. These legal battles often bankrupted landowners. New settlers also tended to ignore Mexican legal concepts, such as community property or community water rights.

LINKING TO TODAY

Mexican Americans Today

Today Mexican Americans are about 8 percent of the U.S. population. More than 20 million Mexican Americans live in all 50 states. Many who live in the West are descended from people who lived there long before the region became part of the United States.





GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Region** In what region does the largest percentage of Mexican Americans live?
2. **Place** Which two states have the highest concentrations of Mexican Americans?

THE IMPACT TODAY

Mexican holidays like Cinco de Mayo and Día de los Muertos are still popular holidays in the Southwest.

White settlers also battled with American Indians over property rights. In some areas, for example, new white settlers soon outnumbered southwestern Native Americans. The Anglo settlers often tried to take control of valuable water resources and grazing lands. In addition, settlers rarely respected Indian holy places. Native American peoples such as the Navajo and the Apache tried to protect their land and livestock from the settlers. Indians and settlers alike attacked one another to protect their interests.

Cultural Encounters

Despite conflicts, different cultures shaped one another in the Southwest. In settlements with large Mexican populations, laws were often printed in both English and Spanish. Names of places—such as San Antonio, San Diego, and Santa Barbara—show Hispanic heritage. Other place-names, such as Taos and Tesuque, are derived from Native American words. Communities throughout the Southwest regularly celebrated both Mexican and American holidays.

Mexican and Native American knowledge and traditions also shaped many local economies. Mexican Americans taught Anglo settlers about mining in the mountains. Many ranching communities were first started by Mexican settlers. In addition, Mexican Americans introduced new types of saddles and other equipment to American ranchers. Adobe, developed by the Anasazi Indians, was adopted from the Pueblo people by the Spanish. It is still commonly

used by American residents in New Mexico, Arizona, and California.

Trade also changed the Southwest. For example, the Navajo created handwoven woolen blankets to sell to Americans. Americans in turn brought manufactured goods and money to the Southwest. Due to exchanges like these, the economies of many Mexican American and Native American communities in the Southwest began to change.

Water Rights

Eastern water-use laws commonly required owners whose land bordered streams or rivers to maintain a free flow of water. These restrictions generally prevented landowners from constructing dams because doing so would infringe upon the water rights of neighbors downstream.

In the typically dry climate of the West, large-scale agriculture was not possible without irrigation. Dams and canals were required to direct scarce water to fields. This need conflicted with the accepted eastern tradition of equal access to water.

Brigham Young established a strict code regulating water rights for the Mormon community. In any dispute over water use, the good of the community would outweigh the interests of individuals. Young's approach stood as an example for modern water laws throughout the West.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were some of the early important agreements between the United States and Mexico, and why were they significant?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW America's westward expansion continued rapidly after the Mexican-American War. In the next section you will learn about the California gold rush.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP11

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Define** What was **manifest destiny**?
   b. Make Inferences Why was westward expansion such an important issue in the election of 1844?
   c. Evaluate Do you think California benefited from Mexican independence? Why or why not?
2. **a. Recall** Why did the United States declare war on Mexico?
   b. Summarize What was General Winfield Scott's strategy for winning the war with Mexico?
   c. Elaborate Would you have sided with those who opposed the war with Mexico or with those who supported it? Why?
3. **a. Describe** What conflicts did American settlers, Native Americans, and Mexican Americans in the Mexican Cession experience?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why were water rights so important in the American Southwest?
   c. Evaluate In your opinion, what was the most important effect of the annexation of the Mexican Cession?

Critical Thinking

4. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on manifest destiny and U.S. territorial expansion. Then use the graphic organizer below to show how Americans' expansion into California caused war, as well as the effects of the war.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Explaining the Mexican-American War** How will you convey ideas, such as manifest destiny, in a film? How will you explain to your audience the Mexican-American War's role in expansion of the United States? Consider these questions as you read this section.

SECTION 4

The California Gold Rush

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The discovery of gold brought settlers to California.
2. The gold rush had a lasting impact on California's population and economy.

The Big Idea

The California gold rush changed the future of the West.

Key Terms and People

John Sutter, *p. 365*
Donner party, *p. 365*
forty-niners, *p. 365*
prospect, *p. 366*
placer miners, *p. 366*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the California gold rush in a chart like the one below.

Gold Rush	
How was gold first discovered?	
How was a stake claimed?	
What was life like in camps?	
Who came to California for gold?	

If YOU were there...

You are a low-paid bank clerk in New England in early 1849. Local newspaper headlines are shouting exciting news: "Gold Is Discovered in California! Thousands Are on Their Way West." You enjoy having a steady job. However, some of your friends are planning to go west, and you are being influenced by their excitement. Your friends are even buying pickaxes and other mining equipment. They urge you to go west with them.

Would you go west to seek your fortune in California? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND At the end of the Mexican-American War, the United States gained control of Mexican territories in the West, including all of the present-day state of California. American settlements in California increased slowly at first. Then, the discovery of gold brought quick population growth and an economic boom.

Discovery of Gold Brings Settlers

In the 1830s and 1840s, Americans who wanted to move to California started up the Oregon Trail. At the Snake River in present-day Idaho, the trail split. People bound for California took the southern route, which became known as the California Trail. This path ran through the Sierra Nevada mountain range. American emigrants and traders on the California Trail tried to cross these mountains before the season's first snows.

Although many Americans traveled along the California Trail, few actually settled in California. American merchants were usually more interested in trading goods made in factories than in establishing settlements. They traded for gold and silver coins, hides, and tallow (animal fat used to make soap and candles) from Mexico. California became a meeting ground for traders from Mexico and the United States.

Before the Mexican-American War, California's population consisted mostly of Mexicans and Native Americans. When Mexico

controlled California, Mexican officials did not want many Americans to settle there. However, in 1839 they did give Swiss immigrant **John Sutter** permission to start a colony. Sutter's Fort, located near the Sacramento River, soon became a popular rest stop for many American emigrants. These new arrivals praised Sutter's hospitality and helpfulness. By the mid-1840s some Anglo Californians were publishing newspaper advertisements and guidebooks encouraging other settlers to move West.

The **Donner party** was a group of western travelers who went to California but were stranded in the Sierra Nevada Mountains during winter. The party began its journey West in the spring of 1846. Trying to find a shortcut, the group left the main trail and got lost. When the Donner party reached the Sierra Nevada Mountains, they became trapped by heavy snows. They were stuck and had almost no food.

A rescue party found the starving and freezing group in February 1847. Of the original 87 travelers, 42 had died.

Gold in California

In January 1848, Sutter sent a carpenter named James Marshall to build a sawmill beside a nearby river. While working near Sutter's Mill, Marshall glanced at the ground. "I reached my hand down and picked it up; it made my heart thump, for I was certain it was gold."

Sutter and Marshall agreed to keep the discovery a secret. However, when they examined the work site the next day, they met a Spanish-speaking Native American worker holding a nugget and shouting, "Oro [gold]! Oro! Oro!"

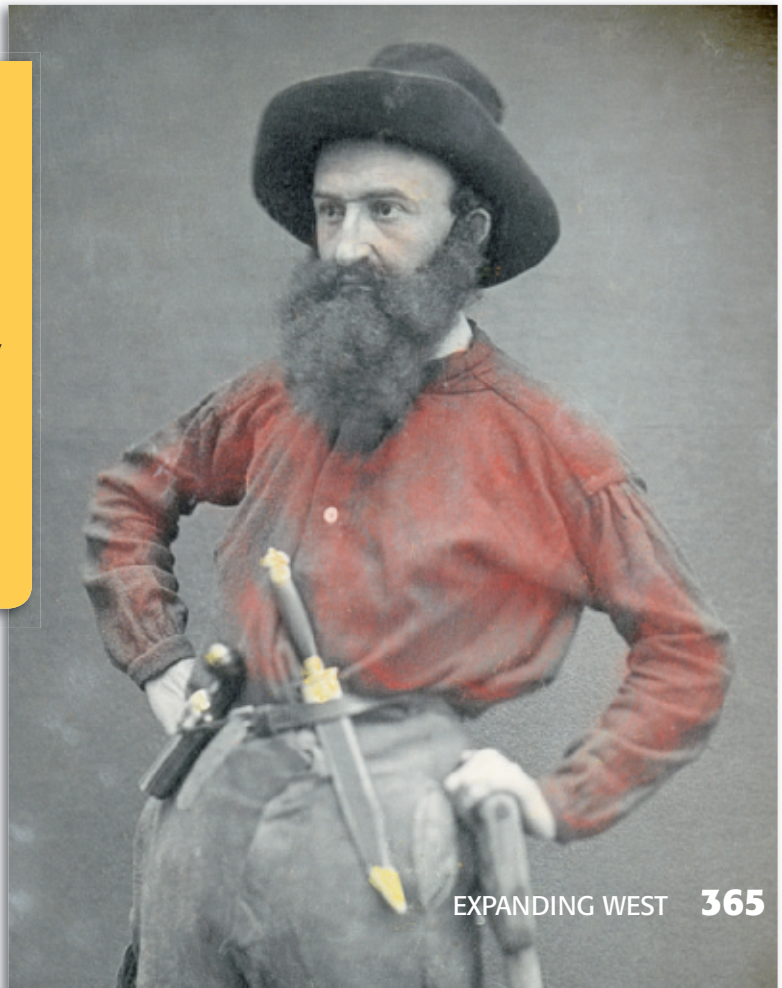
Sutter's workers soon quit to search for gold. Stories of the discovery rapidly spread across the country. President Polk added to the national excitement by confirming the California gold strike in his farewell message to Congress in December 1848. In 1849 about 80,000 gold-seekers came to California, hoping to strike it rich. These gold-seeking migrants to California were called **forty-niners**. As one Iowa woman who

"Gold Fever"

"Gold fever" brought 80,000 people, like this miner, to California in 1849 alone. One California newspaper captured the excitement: "The whole country, from San Francisco to Los Angeles, and from the sea shore to the base of the Sierra Nevadas, resounds with the cry of 'gold, GOLD, GOLD!' while the field is left half planted, the house half built, and everything neglected but the manufacture of shovels and pickaxes." Below is a piece of jewelry made from nuggets found in California.

Why was everything neglected except for "the manufacture of shovels and pickaxes"?







California State Library

left to find gold recalled, "At that time the 'gold fever' was contagious, and few, old or young, escaped the malady [sickness]." Nearly 80 percent of the forty-niners were Americans, while the rest came from all over the world.

Most forty-niners braved long and often dangerous journeys to reach California. Many easterners and Europeans arrived via sea routes. Midwestern gold-seekers usually traveled West in wagon trains. Most forty-niners first arrived in San Francisco. This port town became a convenient trade center and stopping point for travelers. As a result, its population increased from around 800 in March 1848 to more than 25,000 by 1850.

Staking a Claim

Few of the forty-niners had any previous gold-mining experience. The work was difficult and time-consuming. The forty-niners would **prospect**, or search for gold, along the banks of streams or in shallow surface mines. The early forty-niners worked an area that ran for 70 miles along rivers in northern California.

The first person to arrive at a site would "stake a claim." Early miners frequently banded together to prospect for gold. The miners agreed that each would keep a share of whatever gold was discovered. When one group abandoned a claim, more recent arrivals often took it over, hoping for success. Sometimes, two or more groups arrived in an area at the same time. In the early gold-rush days, before courts were established, this competition often led to conflict. Occasionally, violent disputes arose over competing claims.

Mining methods varied according to the location. The most popular method, placer (PLA-suhr) mining, was done along rivers and streams. **Placer miners** used pans or other devices to wash gold nuggets out of loose rock and gravel. To reach gold deposits buried in



Miners came to California from around the world to make their fortune. In the photo on the left, Anglo and Chinese miners work together in Auburn Ravine in 1852. Above, a woman joins men to look for gold. Fewer women than men moved west to search for gold, but the ones that did often found greater social and economic opportunity than they had in the east.

Why might people leave their homes and travel long distances in search of gold?

the hills, miners had to dig shafts and tunnels. These tasks were usually pursued by mining companies, rather than by individuals.

In 1853 California's yearly gold production peaked at more than $60 million. Individual success stories inspired many miners. One lucky man found two and a half pounds of gold after only 15 minutes of work. Two African American miners found a rich gold deposit that became known as Negro Hill in honor of their discovery. The vast majority of miners, however, did not become rich. Forty-niner Alonzo Delano commented that the "lean, meager [thin], worn-out and woe-begone [sorrowful] miner…might daily be seen at almost every point in the upper mines."

Life in the Mining Camps

Mining camps sprang up wherever enough people gathered to look for gold. These camps had colorful names, such as Hangtown or Poker Flat.

Miners in the camps came from many cultures and backgrounds. Most miners were young, unmarried men in search of adventure. Only around 5 percent of gold-rush immigrants were women or children. The hardworking women generally made good money by cooking meals, washing clothes, and operating boardinghouses. One such woman, Catherine Haun, recalled her first home in California.

> "We were glad to settle down and go housekeeping in a shed that was built in a day of lumber purchased with the first fee…For neighbors, we had a real live saloon. I never have received more respectful attention than I did from these neighbors."
>
> —Catherine Haun, quoted in *Ordinary Americans*, edited by Linda R. Monk

Haun's husband was a lawyer. He concluded that he could make more money practicing law than he could panning for gold. He was one of many people who made a good living supplying miners with food, clothing, equipment, and other services. Miners paid high prices for basic necessities because the large amounts of gold in circulation caused severe inflation in California. A loaf of bread, for example, might cost 5 cents in the East, but it would sell for 50 to 75 cents in San Francisco. Eggs sometimes sold for $1 apiece.

Some settlers took full advantage of these conditions for free enterprise. Biddy Mason and her family, for instance, had arrived in California as slaves. A Georgia slaveholder had brought them during the gold-rush years. Mason quickly discovered that most Californians opposed slavery, particularly in the gold mines. She and her family gained their freedom and moved to the small village of Los Angeles. There she saved money until she could purchase some land. Over time, Mason's property increased in value from $250 to $200,000. She became one of the wealthiest landowners in California, a community leader, and a well-known supporter of charities.

Westward Movement in the United States

QUICK FACTS

Causes

- Americans believe in the idea of manifest destiny.
- The United States acquires vast new lands in the West.
- Pathfinders open trails to new territories.
- Gold is discovered in California.

Effects

- Native Americans are forced off lands.
- Americans travel west to settle new areas.
- The United States stretches to the Pacific Ocean.
- California experiences a population boom.

Immigrants to California

THE IMPACT TODAY

Today California is the nation's most populous state.

The lure of gold in California attracted miners from around the world. Many were from countries that had seen few immigrants to the United States in the past. They were drawn to California by the lure of wealth. For example, famine and economic hardship in southeastern China caused many Chinese men to leave China for America. Most hoped to find great wealth, and then return home to China. These immigrants were known in Chinese as *gam saan haak*, or "travelers to Gold Mountain." Between 1849 and 1853 about 24,000 Chinese men moved to California. "From far and near we came and were pleased," wrote merchant Lai Chun-chuen in 1855.

Chinese immigrants soon discovered that many Americans did not welcome them, however. In 1852, California placed a high monthly tax on all foreign miners. Chinese miners had no choice but to pay this tax if they wanted to prospect for gold in California. Some Chinese workers were the targets of violent attacks. If the Chinese miners dared to protest the attacks, the legal system favored Americans over immigrants.

Despite such treatment, many Chinese immigrants still worked in the gold mines. Some looked for other jobs. Others opened their own businesses. A newspaper reported Chinese working as "ploughmen, laundrymen, placer miners, woolen spinners and weavers, domestic servants, cigar makers, [and] shoemakers."

In 1849 alone, about 20,000 immigrants arrived in California not only from China but also from Europe, Mexico, and South America. Like most Americans who sought gold, these new arrivals intended to return home after they had made their fortunes. However, many decided to stay. Some began businesses. For example, Levi Strauss, a German immigrant, earned a fortune by making tough denim pants for miners.

READING CHECK **Categorizing** What types of people came to California hoping to benefit from the gold rush?

Impact on California

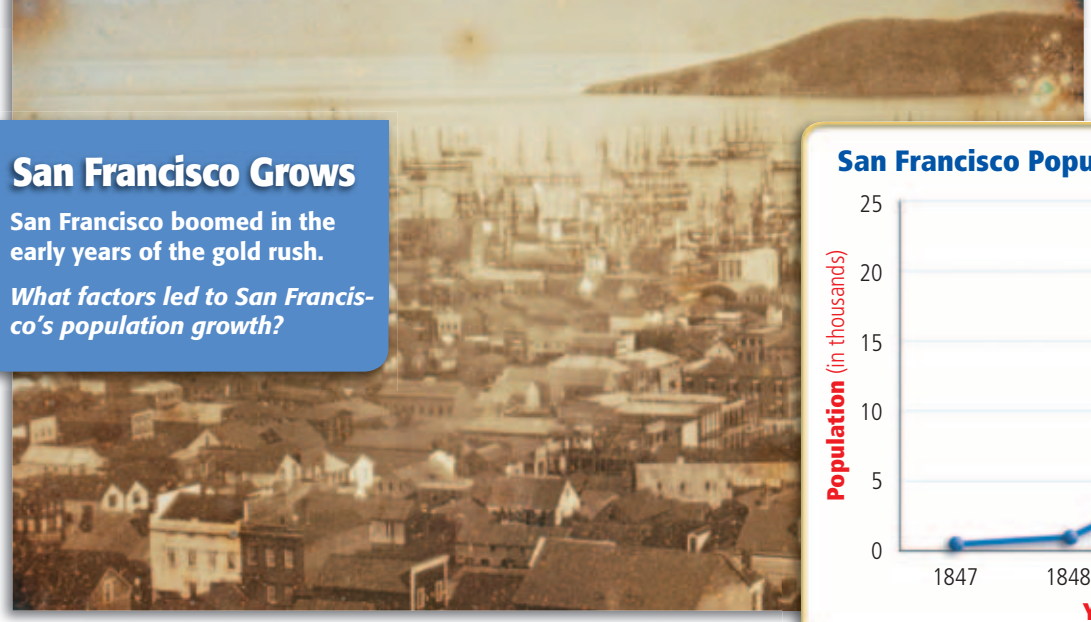
During the Spanish and Mexican periods of settlement, California's population grew slowly. The arrival of the forty-niners changed this dramatically.

Population Boom

California's population explosion made it eligible for statehood only two years after being acquired by the United States. In 1850 California became the 31st state.

However, fast population growth had negative consequences for many Californios and California Native Americans. One early observer of the gold rush described why.

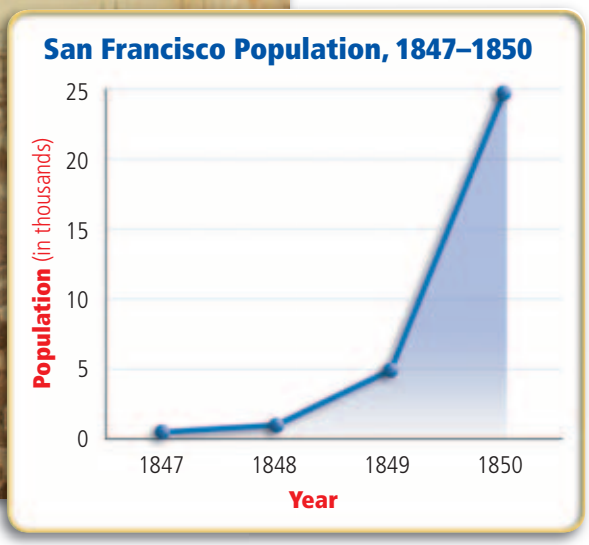
> "The Yankee regarded every man but [his own kind] as an interloper [trespasser], who had no right to come to California and pick up the gold of 'free and enlightened citizens.'"
>
> —W. Kelly, quoted in *The Other Californians*, by Robert F. Heizer and Alan F. Almquist



San Francisco Grows

San Francisco boomed in the early years of the gold rush.

What factors led to San Francisco's population growth?



Economic Growth

In addition to rapid population growth, a flood of new businesses and industries transformed California's economy. Gold mining remained an important part of the state's early economy. But Californians soon discovered other ways to make a living. Farming and ranching, for example, became industries for those willing to do the necessary hard labor.

California faced an obstacle to growth, though. The state was isolated from the rest of the country. It was difficult to bring in and ship out goods. The answer to the isolation problem was to bring the railroad all the way to California. Californians would have to wait almost 20 years for that. Completion of the transcontinental railroad in 1869 at last gave Californians the means to grow a stronger economy.

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**
What political effect resulted from California's rapid population growth?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Americans moved west to create new lives and seize new opportunities. In the next chapter you will learn about the Industrial Revolution in America.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP11

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** Why was Sutter's Mill important?
   b. Summarize What types of people participated in the California gold rush, and how did they take part in it?
   c. Elaborate What are some possible problems caused by the arrival of so many new settlers to California?
2. **a. Describe** How did some people hope to solve the problem of California's isolation from the rest of the country?
   b. Draw Inferences What effect did California's rapid population growth have on Californios and Native Americans?
   c. Evaluate Overall, do you think that the gold rush had a positive or negative effect on California? Explain.

Critical Thinking

3. **Evaluating** Review your notes on the gold rush. Then copy the graphic organizer below. Use it to show how the discovery of gold changed California.

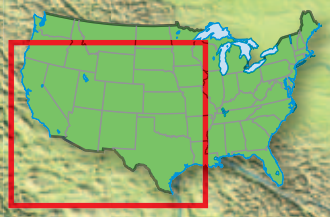


FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Describing the California Gold Rush** As you read this section, take note of significant events and effects of the gold rush. Consider also how your film can convey the excitement of that time in American history.

America's Growth 1850

In the 1830s, a new dream began to shape the American mind—manifest destiny. Manifest destiny was the belief that the United States should extend all the way to the Pacific Ocean. By 1850, that dream had become a reality. In 1845, the United States annexed Texas. In 1848, it acquired Oregon and the huge Mexican Cession. By 1853, with the Gadsden Purchase, the United States had taken the basic shape it still has today.



CANADA

Washington Territory

ROCKY MOUNTAINS

Oregon Territory

California

Utah Territory

San Francisco

New Mexico Territory

PACIFIC OCEAN

MEXICO

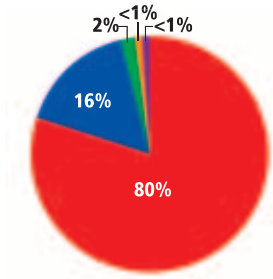
50° N

130° W

120° W

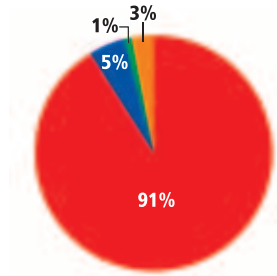
110° W

America's Population, 1850: 23.6 million



Ethnic Groups, 1850

- White/European
- African American
- Native American
- Asian
- Mexican American



Religions, 1850

- Protestant
- Catholic
- Jewish
- Other

Gold Fever

The discovery of gold in California in 1848 set off a massive migration. In 1849 some 80,000 forty-niners headed toward California. San Francisco, located on an excellent natural port, grew quickly as a result.

- Texas annexation, 1845
- Claim recognized in Oregon Treaty, 1848
- Mexican Cession, 1848
- Gadsden Purchase, 1853

0 150 300 Miles
0 150 300 Kilometers



Water Rights Water was critical in the dry West. Bitter disputes arose over who had the water rights to streams. Gold rush miners developed a simple system: whoever used the water first owned the rights to it. In other parts of the West, the community as a whole had a right to use the water source.

Manifest Destiny Supporters of manifest destiny believed it was God's will that the United States should expand and spread democracy across North America. Huge numbers of settlers headed West to tame new lands.



GREAT PLAINS

Oregon Trail

Missouri River

Mississippi River

Unorganized Territory

Indian Territory

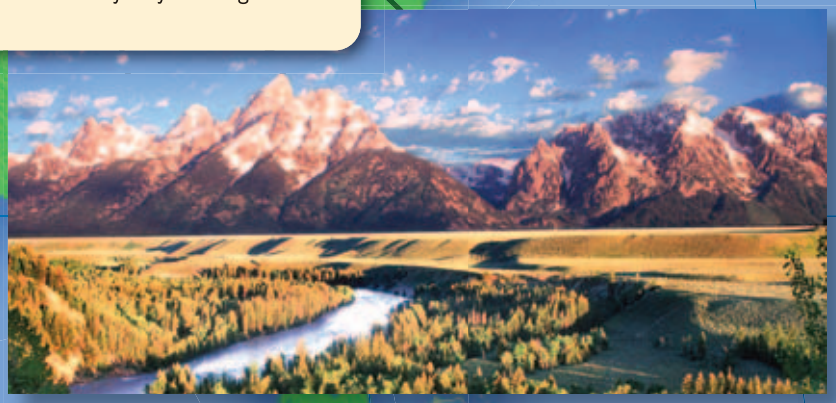
Claimed by Texas

Texas

Gulf of Mexico

ATLANTIC OCEAN

The Rocky Mountains The Rocky Mountains were a gigantic obstacle to settlers on their way West. Pathfinders like Lt. John C. Frémont traveled widely in the region, making maps and noting possible trails. The South Pass, through which the Oregon Trail ran, was one of the few easy ways through the great chain of mountains.



30° N

70° W

90° W

Tropic of Cancer

N W E S

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Movement** Why did San Francisco grow so rapidly?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** Why was water so important in the West?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Interpreting Maps: Expansion

Define the Skill

Maps show features on Earth's surface. These can be physical features, such as mountains and rivers, or human features, such as roads and settlements. Historical maps show an area as it was in the past. Some show how a nation's boundaries changed over time. Interpreting maps can answer questions about history as well as geography.

Learn the Skill

Follow these steps to gain information from a map.

1. Read the title to determine what the map is about and the time period it covers.
2. Study the legend or key to understand what the colors or symbols on the map mean. Note the map scale, which is used to measure distances.
3. Note the map's other features. Maps often contain labels and other information in addition to what is explained in the legend or key.

Practice the Skill

Interpret the map below to answer the following questions about the expansion of the United States.

1. The addition of which territory almost doubled the size of the United States?
2. What was the smallest expansion of U.S. borders, and when did it take place?
3. According to the map, when did California become part of the United States?
4. What choice of overland routes did a traveler have for getting to California?
5. What physical obstacles does the map show such a traveler would face?



CHAPTER 11

Chapter Review

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**

Review the video to answer the closing question:

What does the modern success of Silicon Valley have in common with the California gold rush? How is it different?

Visual Summary

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.

QUICK FACTS

U.S. Expansion

1839 Sutter's Fort established.



1840 Pioneers begin traveling West on the Oregon Trail.





1845 United States annexes Texas.



1846 Mexican War begins.

1848 United States wins the Mexican War and gains the Mexican Cession. Oregon becomes a U.S. territory.



1849 California gold rush begins.



1853 Gadsden Purchase establishes the southwestern U.S. border.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Identify the correct term or person from the chapter that best fits each of the following descriptions.

1. Mexican priest who led a rebellion for independence from Spain
2. Spanish cowboys in California
3. A group of pioneers who were stranded in the Sierra Nevada Mountains and struggled to survive the winter
4. Agents hired by the Mexican government to attract settlers to Texas
5. The belief that the United States was meant to expand across the continent to the Pacific Ocean
6. Members of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints
7. Fur traders and trappers who lived west of the Rocky Mountains and in the Pacific Northwest
8. Mexican ruler who fought to keep Texas from gaining independence
9. Swiss immigrant who received permission from Mexico to start a colony in California
10. Western trail from Missouri to New Mexico that was an important route for trade between American and Mexican merchants

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 346–349)*

11. a. Identify What different groups of people traveled West?

b. Draw Conclusions Why did Brigham Young move the Mormon community to Utah?

c. Predict What are some possible problems that might result from American settlement in the West?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 350–353)*

12. a. Identify Who were Stephen F. Austin and Antonio López de Santa Anna?

b. Draw Conclusions Why did settlers in Texas rebel against Mexican rule?

c. Elaborate In what ways was the Texas struggle for independence similar to that of the United States?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 354–363)*

13. a. Recall Why were some Americans opposed to the annexation of new territories?

b. Draw Conclusions What economic and cultural influences did Native Americans and Mexican Americans have on American settlers in the Mexican Cession?

c. Predict What are some possible problems the acquisition of so much territory might cause the United States?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 364–369)*

14. a. Identify What roles did women and immigrants play in the California gold rush?

b. Make Inferences Why were most gold-rush settlers young, unmarried men?

c. Predict What long-term effects might the gold rush have on California's future?

Reviewing Themes

15. Economics What role did economics play in the desire of Americans to go west?

16. Geography What were the main trails to the West, and what areas did they pass through?

Reading Skills

Vocabulary in Context *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> Texas politicians hoped that joining the United States would help solve the republic's financial and military problems. The Texas Congress approved annexation in June 1845. Texas became part of the United States in December. *(p. 356)*

17. Determine the definition of *annexation* using context clues.

Social Studies Skills

Interpreting Maps: Expansion *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the map below.*



18. Place the expansions in the order in which they were acquired by the United States, according to the map.

FOCUS ON WRITING

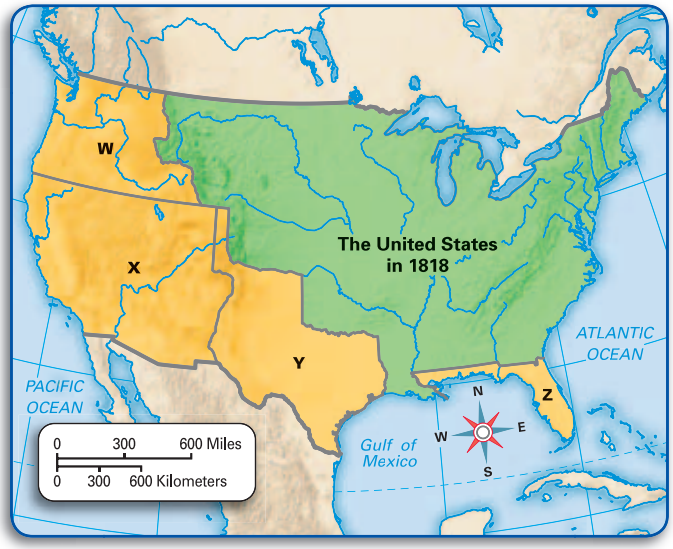
19. Writing an Outline for a Documentary Film Look back through all your notes, and choose one topic from this chapter that you think would make a good 10-minute documentary. Your outline should be organized by scene (no more than 3 scenes), in chronological order. For each scene, give the following information: main idea of scene, costumes and images to be used, audio to be used, and length of scene. As you plan, remember that the audience will be students your own age.

CHAPTER 11

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 ***Use the map below to answer the following question.***



The part of the present-day United States that was once claimed by Britain, Spain, and Russia is shown on the map by which letter?

A W
B X
C Y
D Z

2 **In general, what position did Californios take toward the Mexican-American War?**

A They supported the war because they wanted independence from Mexico.
B They supported the war because they wanted to become U.S. citizens.
C They opposed the war because they feared it might bring an end to slavery.
D They opposed the war because they did not want to lose control of California.

3 **What was the *main* reason John Jacob Astor founded Astoria at the mouth of the Columbia River in 1811?**

A Plenty of freshwater and salt-water fish were available for residents to eat.
B The soil there was rich and good for farming.
C Trappers could use the river to bring furs from the mountains to trade.
D The location offered easy protection from attacks by Native Americans or the French.

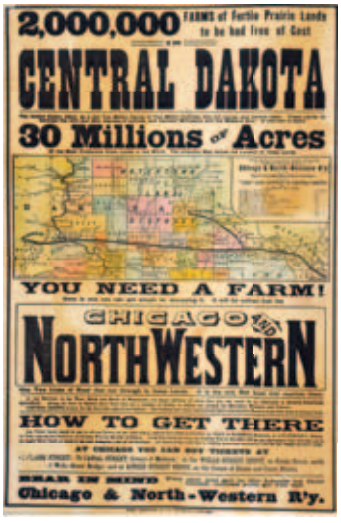
4 **The *main* attraction of Texas for many Americans in the 1820s and 1830s was the**

A freedom to practice the Catholic faith.
B availability of cheap or free land.
C desire to become citizens of Mexico.
D Mexican rebellion against Spain.

5 **Which of the following occurred after the Mexican-American War?**

A Mexican foods and festivals became more important to American culture.
B Prosperity of Mexican landowners in the Southwest increased under U.S. rule.
C Mexican Americans left the United States.
D The size of the United States was reduced.

6 **Examine the following flier about cheap land available in the Dakota Territory and then use it to answer the question below.**



Document-Based Question **Who might have been attracted by this description of Dakota? Why?**

The Young Republic

Part A: Short-Answer Questions

Directions: Read and examine the following documents. Then, on a separate sheet of paper, answer the questions using complete sentences.

DOCUMENT 1

As the nation spread west, there were new conflicts with Native Americans. Tecumseh met with William Henry Harrison, governor of the Indiana Territory, in 1810. Harrison asked him to honor the Greenville Treaty. Tecumseh refused; he believed that Native Americans should unite to oppose white settlement.

> The only way to stop this evil is for all the red men to unite in claiming a common and equal right to the land, as it was at first, and should be yet. Before, the land never was divided, but belonged to all, for the use of each person. No group had a right to sell, not even to each other, much less to strangers who want all and will not do with less.
>
> —Tecumseh

1a. What does Tecumseh say is the only way Native Americans will be able to stop white settlers from taking their land?

1b. What "before and after" differences does Tecumseh describe?

DOCUMENT 2

In 1807, Congress passed the Embargo Act, which outlawed American trade with foreign countries. The Embargo Act hurt American businesses and was widely protested. The protests included political cartoons.



2a. What are the men in the background doing?

2b. How does the use of the turtle add to the artist's message?

3. Evaluate and Revise

Evaluating

Drawing clear, logical connections is the key to writing about causes and effects. Use these questions to evaluate and revise your paper.

Evaluation Questions for an Explanation of Causes or Effects

- Does the introduction begin with an interesting quotation or fact?
- Does the introduction identify the event [the war] and the causes or events to be discussed?
- Is each cause or effect explained in its own paragraph?
- Do facts and examples help to explain each cause or effect and connect it to the event [the war]?
- Are the causes or effects organized clearly—by chronological order or order of importance?
- Does the conclusion summarize the causes or effects and their importance?

TIP **Recognizing False Cause-and-Effect** In planning your essay, be careful to avoid false cause-and-effect relationships. The fact that one thing happened before or after another doesn't mean one caused the other. For example, the fact that James Madison was elected in 1808, just four years before the War of 1812, does not mean his election caused the War of 1812.

Revising

Make sure the connections between the war and its causes or effects are clear by sharing your paper with a classmate. If your classmate is confused, add background information. If he or she disagrees with your conclusions, add evidence or rethink your reasoning.

TIP **Using Transitions** Here are some transitional words and phrases that show cause or effect relationships: *because, as a result, therefore, for, since, so, consequently, for this reason.*

4. Proofread and Publish

Proofreading

Some transitional words and phrases need to be set off from the sentence with commas. Here are two examples:

- The Louisiana Territory was a huge region of land. *As a result,* the size of the United States almost doubled when the land was purchased.
- Jefferson wanted to know more about the land he had purchased. *Therefore,* he asked Congress to fund an expedition.

Check your paper to see if you need to add commas after or around any transitional words or phrases.

Publishing

Get together with a classmate and share causes and/or effects. Compare your lists to see whether you have identified different causes or effects. Share your findings with your class.

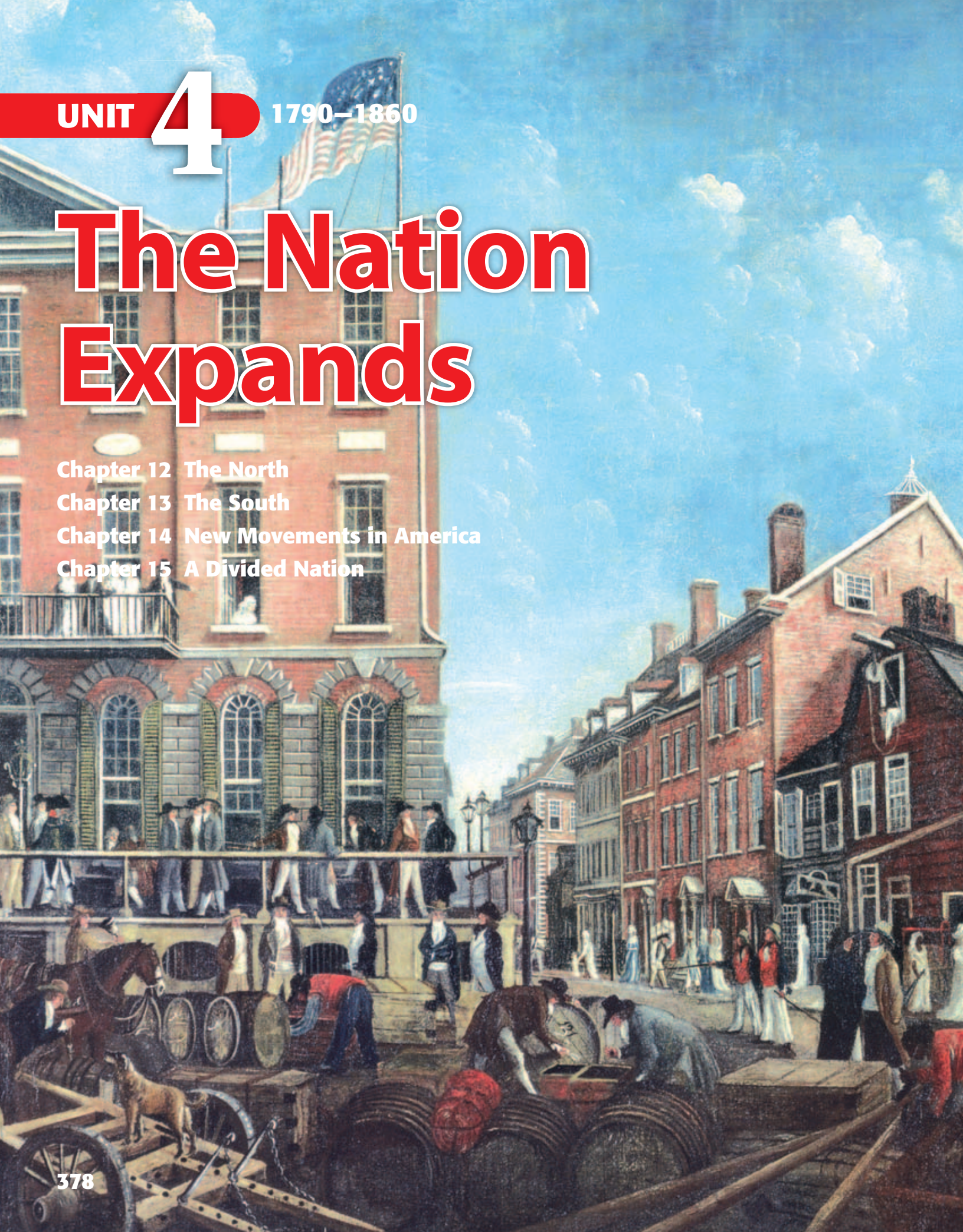
5. Practice and Apply

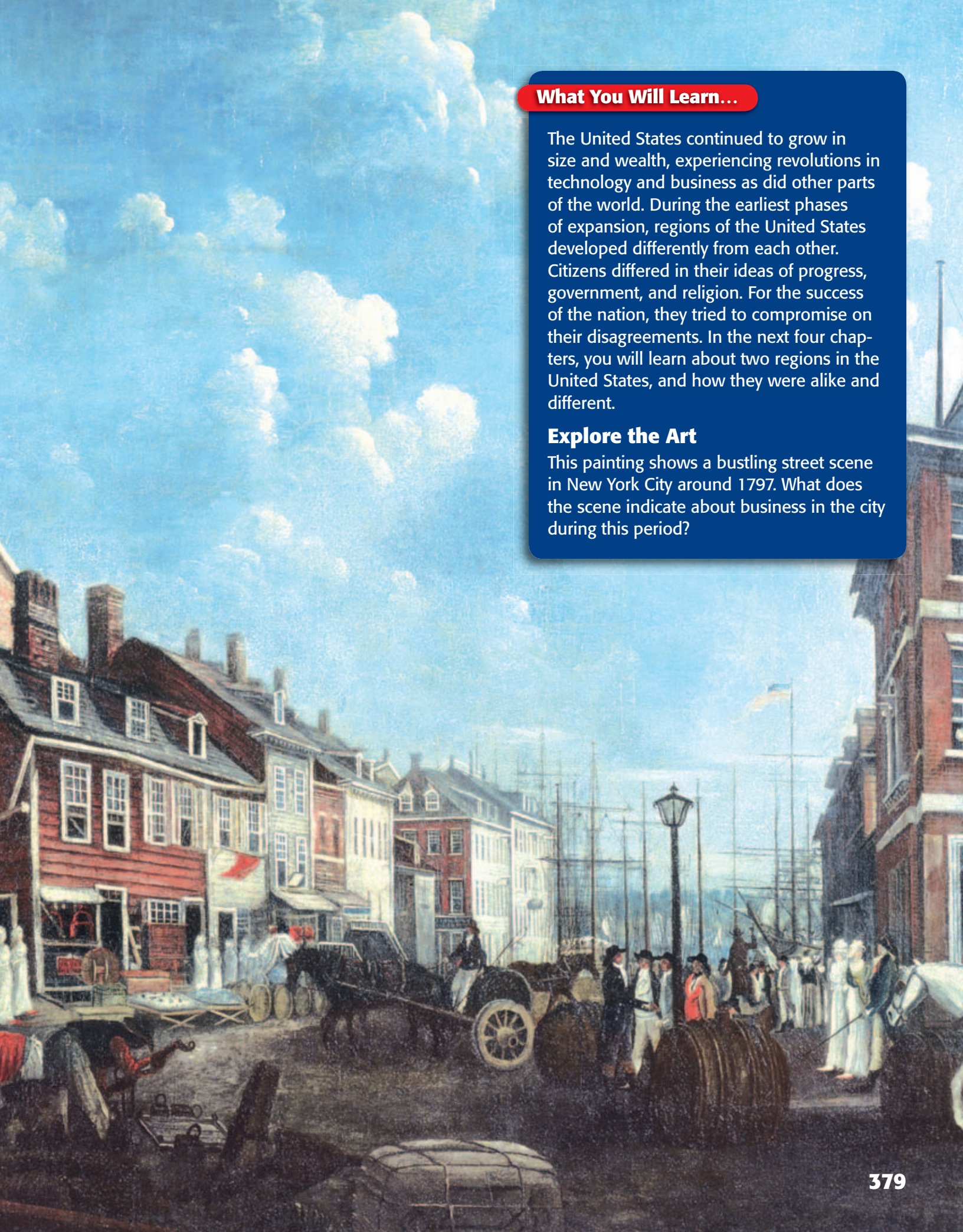
Use the steps and strategies outlined in this workshop to write your explanation of the causes or effects of the War of 1812.

UNIT 4 1790–1860

The Nation Expands

Chapter 12 The North
Chapter 13 The South
Chapter 14 New Movements in America
Chapter 15 A Divided Nation





What You Will Learn…

The United States continued to grow in size and wealth, experiencing revolutions in technology and business as did other parts of the world. During the earliest phases of expansion, regions of the United States developed differently from each other. Citizens differed in their ideas of progress, government, and religion. For the success of the nation, they tried to compromise on their disagreements. In the next four chapters, you will learn about two regions in the United States, and how they were alike and different.

Explore the Art

This painting shows a bustling street scene in New York City around 1797. What does the scene indicate about business in the city during this period?

CHAPTER 12 1790–1860

The North

Focus Question

What were the causes and effects of national growth?

SECTION 1
The Industrial Revolution in America 384

Connect to Science and Technology Textile Mill and Water Frame

Connect to Economics Elements of Mass Production

Linking to Today Modern Manufacturing

SECTION 2
Changes in Working Life 390

Primary Source Family Wanted

Primary Source Sarah G. Bagley and Workers' Rights

SECTION 3
The Transportation Revolution 396

Focus on New York Steamboat Monopoly

Focus on New York City Peter Cooper

SECTION 4
More Technological Advances 402

Focus on New York New Products

Biography Samuel F. B. Morse

Focus on Writing

Newspaper Advertisement The Industrial Revolution was a time when a great many new inventions were introduced. You work for an advertising agency, and your job is to design an advertisement for one of the inventions mentioned in this chapter. As you read, take notes on the inventions, their inventors, and how they changed life in the United States. Then choose one invention and design a newspaper advertisement to persuade readers to buy or use the invention.





United States

1807 Robert Fulton's *Clermont* becomes the first commercially successful steamboat.

1790

World

1790 The first steam-powered mill opens in Great Britain.



Textile mill workers were often women.

HOLT

History's Impact

video series

Watch the video to understand the impact of mass transportation.

1835

More than 600 buildings are destroyed by a fire in New York City's financial district.

NY

What You Will Learn...

New machinery led to the construction of new mills, often along rivers. In this chapter you will learn about changes in the lives of Americans in the North as a result of rapid industrialization.



1830

The *Tom Thumb* becomes the first locomotive in the United States to carry passengers.

1838

The *Sirius* becomes the first ship to cross the Atlantic Ocean entirely under steam power.

1840

Federal government employees receive a 10-hour workday.

1845

Sarah Bagley is appointed secretary of the New England Working Men's Association.

1846

German astronomer Johann Galle observes that Neptune is a planet.



1851

London's Great Exhibition displays inventions from around the world in the Crystal Palace.

1856

Gail Borden patents a method of condensing milk so that it can be safely stored in cans.



1830 1840 1850 1860

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes As you read this chapter, you will learn about how developments in **science and technology** brought about what is called the Industrial Revolution. As a result of the Industrial Revolution, you will see how American **economic** patterns changed. Next, you will read about how family life changed as more and more people went to work in factories. Finally, you will see how new methods of transportation changed where people lived and how new inventions affected daily life and work.

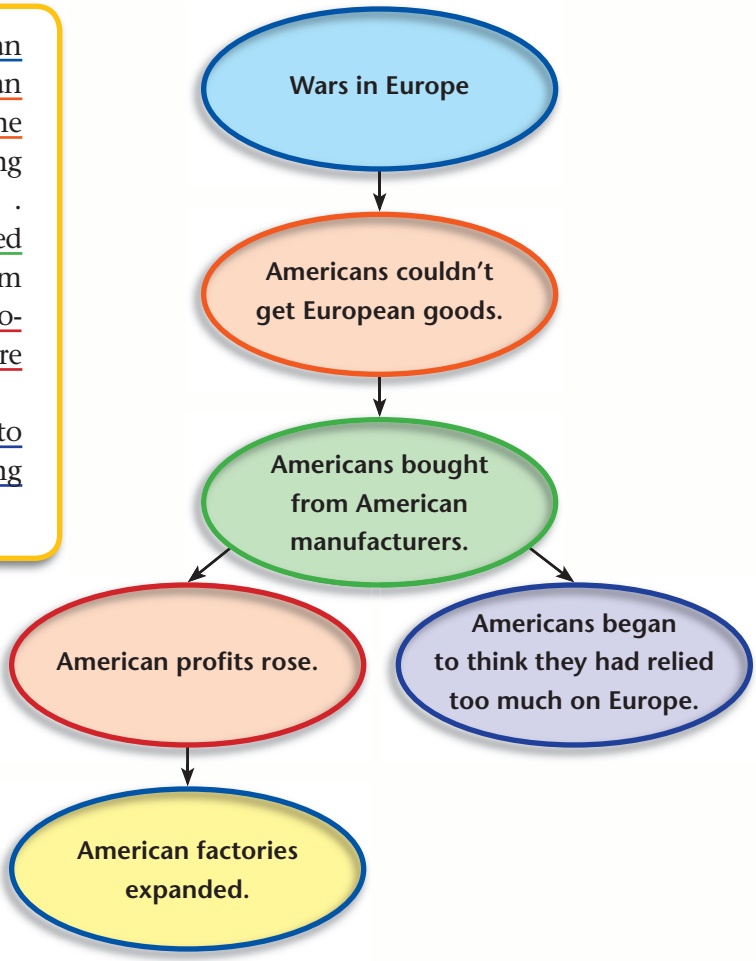
Causes and Effects in History

Focus on Reading Have you heard the saying, "We have to understand the past to avoid repeating it."? That is one reason we look for causes and effects in history.

Cause and Effect Chains You might say that all of history is one long chain of causes and effects. It may help you to understand the course of history better if you draw out such a chain as you read.

Since the 1790s, wars between European powers had interfered with U.S. trade. American customers were no longer able to get all the manufactured goods they were used to buying from British and European manufacturers . . . Americans began to buy the items they needed from American manufacturers instead of from foreign suppliers. As profits for American factories grew, manufacturers began to spend more money expanding their factories . . .

At the same time, many Americans began to realize that the United States had been relying too heavily on foreign goods. *(p. 389)*



You Try It!

The following passage is from the chapter you are about to read. As you read each paragraph, ask yourself what is the cause and what is the effect of what is being discussed.

Workers Organize

From Chapter 12, p. 394

Factories continued to spread in the 1800s. Craftspeople, who made goods by hand, felt threatened. Factories quickly produced low-priced goods. To compete with factories, shop owners had to hire more workers and pay them less . . .

The wages of factory workers also went down as people competed for jobs. A wave of immigration in the 1840s brought people from other, poorer countries. They were willing to work for low pay. More immigrants came to the Northeast, where the mills were located, than to the South. Competition for jobs also came from people unemployed during the financial Panic of 1837.

After you have read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. What cause is being discussed in the first paragraph? What were its effects?
2. Draw a cause and effect chain that shows the events described in the first paragraph.
3. What main effect is discussed in the second paragraph? How many causes are given for it?
4. Draw a cause and effect chain that shows the events described in the second paragraph.

As you read Chapter 12, look for words that signal causes or effects. Picture these causes and effects as the links in a cause and effect chain.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 12

Section 1

Industrial Revolution *(p. 385)*
textiles *(p. 385)*
Richard Arkwright *(p. 385)*
Samuel Slater *(p. 386)*
technology *(p. 387)*
Eli Whitney *(p. 387)*
interchangeable parts *(p. 387)*
mass production *(p. 387)*

Section 2

Rhode Island system *(p. 391)*
Francis Cabot Lowell *(p. 392)*
Lowell system *(p. 392)*
trade unions *(p. 394)*
strikes *(p. 394)*
Sarah G. Bagley *(p. 395)*

Section 3

Transportation Revolution *(p. 396)*
Robert Fulton *(p. 397)*
Clermont *(p. 397)*
Gibbons v. *Ogden* *(p. 397)*
Peter Cooper *(p. 398)*

Section 4

Samuel F. B. Morse *(p. 402)*
telegraph *(p. 402)*
Morse code *(p. 403)*
John Deere *(p. 404)*
Cyrus McCormick *(p. 404)*
Isaac Singer *(p. 405)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

efficient *(p. 385)*
concrete *(p. 395)*

SECTION 1

The Industrial Revolution in America

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The invention of new machines in Great Britain led to the beginning of the Industrial Revolution.
2. The development of new machines and processes brought the Industrial Revolution to the United States.
3. Despite a slow start in manufacturing, the United States made rapid improvements during the War of 1812.

The Big Idea

The Industrial Revolution transformed the way goods were produced in the United States.

Key Terms and People

Industrial Revolution, *p. 385*
textiles, *p. 385*
Richard Arkwright, *p. 385*
Samuel Slater, *p. 386*
technology, *p. 387*
Eli Whitney, *p. 387*
interchangeable parts, *p. 387*
mass production, *p. 387*

TAKING NOTES As you read, make a list of the key contributions of the Industrial Revolution and who initiated them. Write your notes in a chart like the one below.

Contributor	Invention/improvement

If YOU were there...

You live in a small Pennsylvania town in the 1780s. Your father is a blacksmith, but you earn money for the family, too. You raise sheep and spin their wool into yarn. Your sisters knit the yarn into warm wool gloves and mittens. You sell your products to merchants in the city. But now you hear that someone has invented machines that can spin thread and make cloth.

Would you still be able to earn the same amount of money for your family? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND In the early 1700s making goods depended on the hard work of humans and animals. It had been that way for hundreds of years. Then new technology brought a change so radical that it is called a revolution. It began in Great Britain and soon spread to the United States.

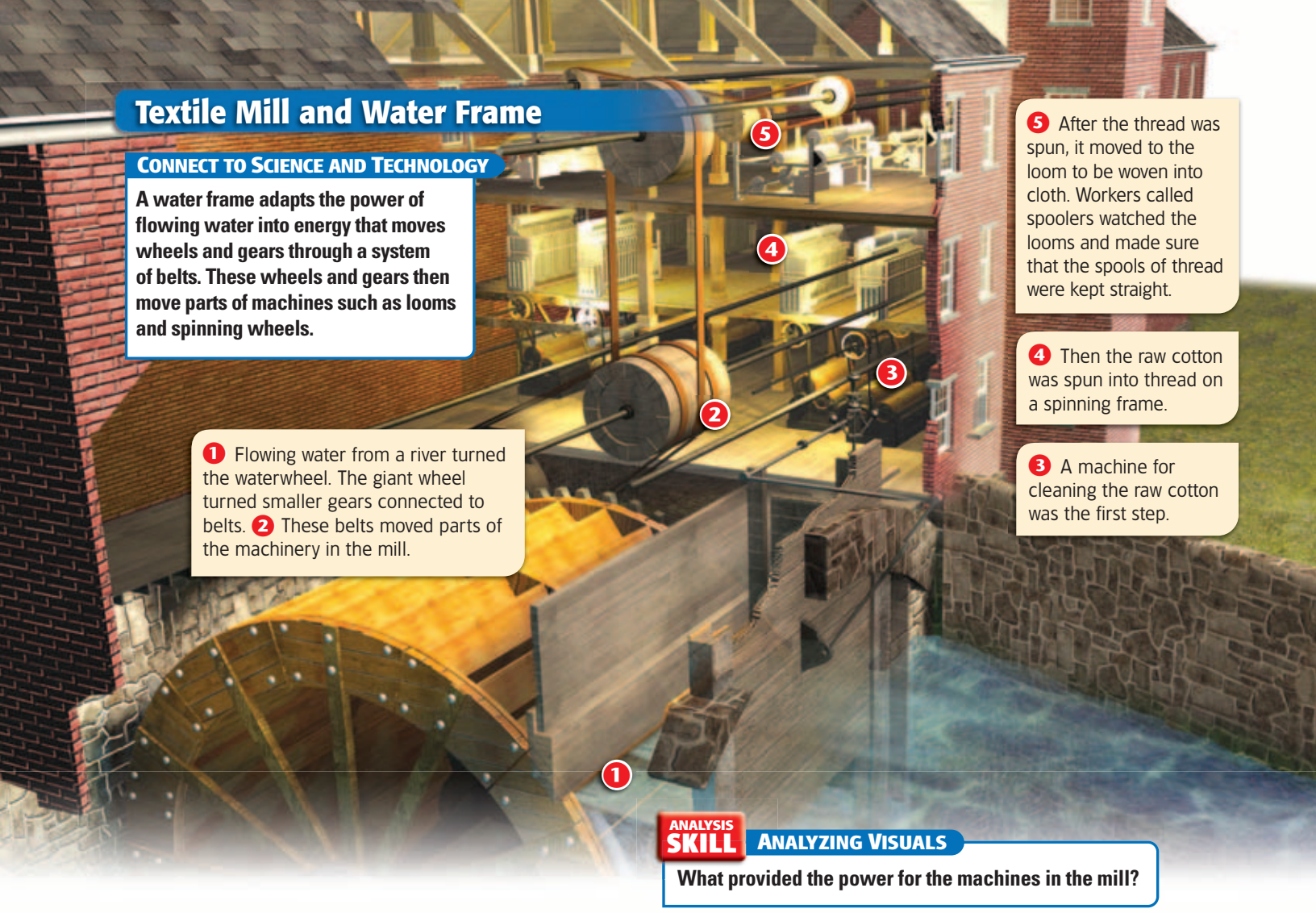
The Industrial Revolution

At the beginning of the 1700s, the majority of people in Europe and the United States were farmers. They made most of what they needed by hand. For example, female family members usually made clothing. First, they used a spinning wheel to spin raw materials, such as cotton or wool, into thread. Then they used a hand loom to weave the thread into cloth.

Some families produced extra cloth to sell to merchants, who sold it for a profit. In towns, a few skilled workers made goods by hand in their own shops. These workers included blacksmiths, carpenters, and shoemakers. Their ways of life had stayed the same for generations.

A Need for Change

By the mid-1700s, however, changes in Great Britain led to a greater demand for manufactured goods. As agriculture and roads



improved, cities and populations grew. Overseas trade also expanded. Traditional manufacturing methods did not produce enough goods to meet everyone's needs.

People began creating ways to use machines to make things more **efficient**. These developments led to the **Industrial Revolution**, a period of rapid growth in using machines for manufacturing and production that began in the mid-1700s.

Textile Industry

The first important breakthrough of the Industrial Revolution took place in how **textiles**, or cloth items, were made. Before the Industrial Revolution, spinning thread took much more time than making cloth. Several workers were needed to spin enough thread to supply a single weaver.

In 1769 Englishman **Richard Arkwright** invented a large spinning machine called a water frame. The water frame could produce dozens of cotton threads at the same time. It lowered the cost of cotton cloth and increased the speed of textile production.

The water frame used flowing water as its source of power. Merchants began to build large textile mills, or factories, near rivers and streams. The mills were filled with spinning machines. Merchants began hiring people to work in the mills.

Additional improvements also speeded up the spinning process. Britain soon had the world's most productive textile manufacturing industry.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** How did machines speed up textile manufacturing?

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
efficient productive and not wasteful

New Machines and Processes

New machines encouraged the rise of new processes in business and manufacturing. As the machines used to make products became more efficient, the processes involved changed dramatically.

Slater and His Secrets

The new textile machines allowed Great Britain to produce cloth more quickly and inexpensively than other countries could. To protect British industry, the British Parliament had made it illegal for skilled mechanics or machine plans to leave the country. Disguised as a farmer, **Samuel Slater**, a skilled British mechanic, immigrated to the United States after carefully memorizing the designs of textile mill machines. Soon after arriving, he sent a letter to Moses Brown, who owned a textile business in New England. Slater claimed he could improve the way textiles were manufactured in the United States.

Brown had one of his workers test Slater's knowledge of machinery. Slater passed. Brown's son, Smith Brown, and son-in-law, William Almy, formed a partnership with Slater. In 1793 they opened their first mill in Pawtucket, Rhode Island. The production of cotton thread by American machines had begun. Slater ran the mill and the machinery. He was confident that his new machines would work well.

> "If I do not make as good yarn as they do in England, I will have nothing for my services, but will throw the whole of what I have attempted over the bridge."
>
> —Samuel Slater, quoted in *The Ingenious Yankees*, by Joseph and Francis Gies

Slater's machines worked, and the Pawtucket mill became a success. Slater's wife also invented a new cotton thread for sewing. In 1798 Slater formed his own company to build a mill. By the time he died in 1835, he owned all or part of 13 textile mills.

Other Americans began building textile mills. Most were located in the Northeast. In New England in particular, merchants had the money to invest in new mills. More importantly, this region had many rivers and streams that provided a reliable supply of power. Fewer mills were built in the South, partly because investors in the South concentrated on expanding agriculture. There, agriculture was seen as an easier way to make money.

Elements of Mass Production

CONNECT TO ECONOMICS

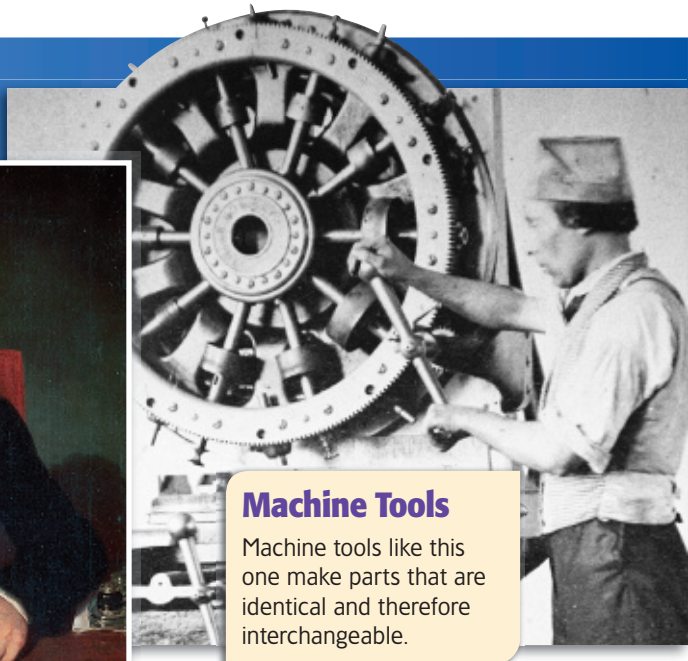
Mass-production techniques allow manufacturers to efficiently create more goods for the marketplace. Mass production requires the use of interchangeable parts, machine tools, and the division of labor.

Why are interchangeable parts important?



Interchangeable Parts

Eli Whitney developed the idea of using interchangeable parts. Interchangeable, or identical, parts are needed so each part does not have to be custom-made by hand.



Machine Tools

Machine tools like this one make parts that are identical and therefore interchangeable.

A Manufacturing Breakthrough

Despite these great changes, most manufacturing was still done by hand. In the late 1790s the U.S. government worried about a possible war with France, so it wanted more muskets for the army. Skilled workers made the parts for each weapon by hand. No two parts were exactly alike, and carefully fitting all the pieces together took much time and skill.

As a result, American gun makers could not produce the muskets quickly enough to satisfy the government's demand. Factories needed better **technology**, the tools used to produce items or to do work.

In 1798 inventor **Eli Whitney** tried to address some of these problems. Whitney gave officials a proposal for mass-producing guns for the U.S. government using water-powered machinery. Whitney explained the benefits of his ideas.

> "I am persuaded that machinery moved by water [and] adapted to this business would greatly reduce the labor and facilitate [ease] the manufacture of this article."
>
> —Eli Whitney, quoted in *Technology in America*, edited by Carroll W. Pursell

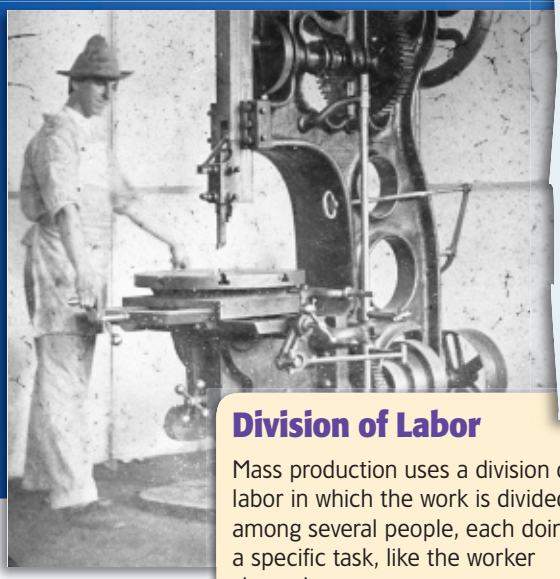
Whitney also came up with the idea of using **interchangeable parts**—parts of a machine that are identical. Using interchangeable parts made machines easier to assemble and broken parts easier to replace. Whitney promised to build 10,000 muskets in two years. The federal government gave him money to build his factory, and in 1801 Whitney was called to Washington, D.C., to give a demonstration.

Whitney stood before President John Adams and his secretary of war. He had an assortment of parts for 10 guns. He then randomly chose parts and quickly assembled them into muskets. To the audience's amazement, he repeated the process several times.

Whitney's Influence

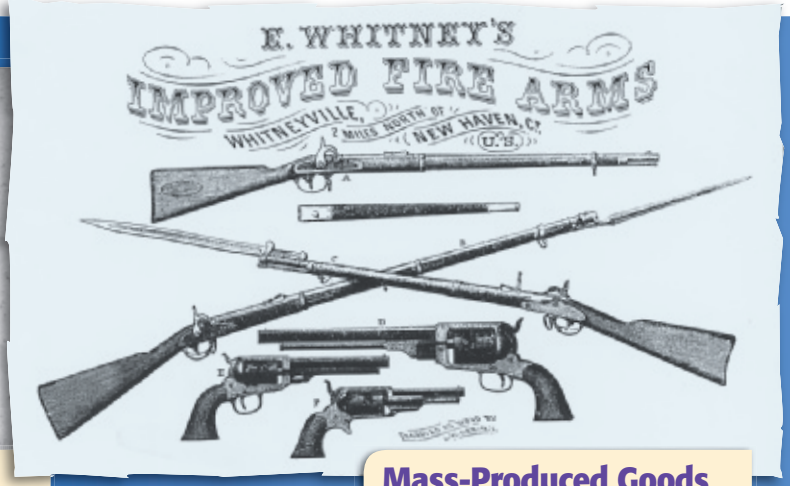
Whitney had proven that American inventors could improve upon the new British technology. Machines that produced matching parts soon became standard in industry. Interchangeable parts sped up **mass production**, the efficient production of large numbers of identical goods.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did Eli Whitney influence American manufacturing?



Division of Labor

Mass production uses a division of labor in which the work is divided among several people, each doing a specific task, like the worker shown here.



Mass-Produced Goods

The end result is goods that have been mass-produced. Eli Whitney used mass-production techniques to manufacture firearms.

LINKING TO TODAY

Modern Manufacturing

The word *manufacture* comes from Latin words that mean "to make by hand." Yet in modern manufacturing, machines—not human hands—do most of the work.

A key feature of modern manufacturing is the assembly line. An assembly line is a long conveyer belt. As the product moves along the belt, or "down the line," workers assemble it. Often, the workers use machines to help them. On a growing number of assembly lines, there are no workers at all: the product is assembled by computer-controlled robots.

Although a far cry from Eli Whitney's factory, modern factories use the same elements of mass production that Whitney did more than 200 years ago.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

How do interchangeable parts help the modern assembly line work?

Manufacturing Grows Slowly

Despite the hard work of people such as Samuel Slater and Eli Whitney, manufacturing in the United States grew slowly. In 1810 Secretary of the Treasury Albert Gallatin suggested some reasons why there were so few factories in the United States.

> "[The reasons include] . . . the superior attractions of agricultural pursuits [farming], . . . the abundance of land compared with the population, the high price of labor, and the want [lack] of sufficient capital [investment]."
>
> —Albert Gallatin, quoted in *Who Built America?* by Bruce Levine et al.

Gallatin and others believed that few people would choose to work in a factory if they could own their own farm instead. In Great Britain, on the other hand, land was more scarce and more expensive than in the United States. As a result, fewer people were able to own farms. British factory workers generally were willing to work for lower wages than factory workers in the United States were.

Because British manufacturers had plenty of factory workers with technical skills, they could produce large amounts of goods less expensively than most American businesses could. As a result, they could charge lower prices for the goods. Lower British prices made it difficult for many American manufacturers to compete with British companies. This situation in turn discouraged American investors from spending the money needed to build new factories and machinery. As a result, only a few industries had found a place in the American economy. These included cotton goods, flour milling, weapons, and iron production.

These circumstances began to change around the time of the War of 1812. Since the 1790s, wars between European powers had interfered with U.S. trade. American customers were no longer able to get all the manufactured goods they were used to buying from British and European manufacturers. Then, during the War of 1812, British ships blockaded eastern seaports, preventing foreign ships from delivering goods. Americans began to buy the items they needed from American manufacturers instead of from foreign suppliers. As profits for American factories grew, manufacturers began to spend more money expanding their factories. State banks and private investors began to lend money to manufacturers for their businesses.

At the same time, many Americans began to realize that the United States had been relying too heavily on foreign goods. If the United States could not meet its own needs, it might be weak and open to attack. Former president Thomas Jefferson, who had once opposed manufacturing, changed his mind. He, too, realized that the United States was too dependent on imports.

> "To be independent for the comforts of life we must fabricate [make] them ourselves. We must now place the manufacturer by the side of the agriculturalist [farmer]."
>
> —Thomas Jefferson, from *The Writings of Thomas Jefferson*, edited by P. L. Ford

In February 1815, New Yorkers celebrated the end of the War of 1812 and the return of free trade. The streets were decorated and filled with merchants whose ships were loaded with goods. "With Peace and Commerce, America Prospers," declared one display. Eager businesspeople prepared to lead the United States into a period of industrial growth. They urged northern politicians to pass higher tariffs on foreign goods to protect American companies.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did the War of 1812 aid the growth of American manufacturing?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The Industrial Revolution started with the textile industry in England but soon spread to the United States. In the next section you will learn about how the spread of factories changed the working lives of many Americans.

THE IMPACT TODAY

American dependence on some foreign goods, such as oil, is still being debated today.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP12

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What was the first industry to begin to use machines to manufacture goods?
   b. Predict In what ways might life for workers change as a result of the **Industrial Revolution**?
2. **a. Recall** In what part of the United States were most mills located? Why?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did the ideas of **Samuel Slater** and **Eli Whitney** affect manufacturing in the United States?
   c. Evaluate Whose contributions do you think were more important—Slater's textile machines or Whitney's **interchangeable parts**? Why?
3. **a. Identify** What event encouraged the growth of American manufacturing? Why?
   b. Contrast Why was manufacturing in Great Britain in the early years more successful than that in the United States?

Critical Thinking

4. **Drawing Conclusions** Review your notes on key inventions and improvements during the Industrial Revolution. Then copy the chart below and use it to show how each contribution affected manufacturing.

Invention/improvement	Effect on Manufacturing

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Noting Inventions** In your notebook, create a three-column chart. In the first column, list any inventions mentioned in this section. In the second column, identify the inventor. In the third column, describe the invention and its benefits.

SECTION 2

Changes in Working Life

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The spread of mills in the Northeast changed workers' lives.
2. The Lowell System revolutionized the textile industry in the Northeast.
3. Workers organized to reform working conditions.

The Big Idea

The introduction of factories changed working life for many Americans.

Key Terms and People

Rhode Island system, *p. 391*
Francis Cabot Lowell, *p. 392*
Lowell system, *p. 392*
trade unions, *p. 394*
strikes, *p. 394*
Sarah G. Bagley, *p. 395*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on how mills changed workers' lives, and how workers organized to fight many of these changes.

Changes to workers' lives	→	Workers' reaction

If YOU were there...

You live on a dairy farm in Massachusetts in about 1820. On the farm, you get up at dawn to milk the cows, and your work goes on until night. But now you have a chance at a different life. A nearby textile mill is hiring young people. You would leave the farm and live with other workers. You could go to classes. Most important, you could earn money of your own.

Would you go to work in the textile mill? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND As factories and mills were established, the way people worked changed drastically. One dramatic change was the opportunity that factory work gave to young women. For young women in farm families, it was almost the only chance they had to earn their own money and a measure of independence.

Mills Change Workers' Lives

Workers no longer needed the specific skills of craftspeople to run the machines of the new mills. The lives of workers changed along with their jobs. Resistance to these changes sometimes sparked protests.

Many mill owners in the United States could not find enough people to work in factories because other jobs were available. At first, Samuel Slater and his two partners used apprentices—young men who worked for several years to learn the trade. However, they often were given only simple work. For example, their jobs might include feeding cotton into the machines and cleaning the mill equipment. They grew tired of this work and frequently left. Apprentice James Horton, for example, ran away from Slater's mill. "Mr. Slater . . . keep me always at one thing . . . ," Horton complained. "I might have stayed there until this time and never knew nothing."

Eventually, Slater began to hire entire families who moved to Pawtucket to work in the mills. This practice allowed Slater to fill his labor needs at a low cost. Children as well as adults worked in the mills.

Primary Source

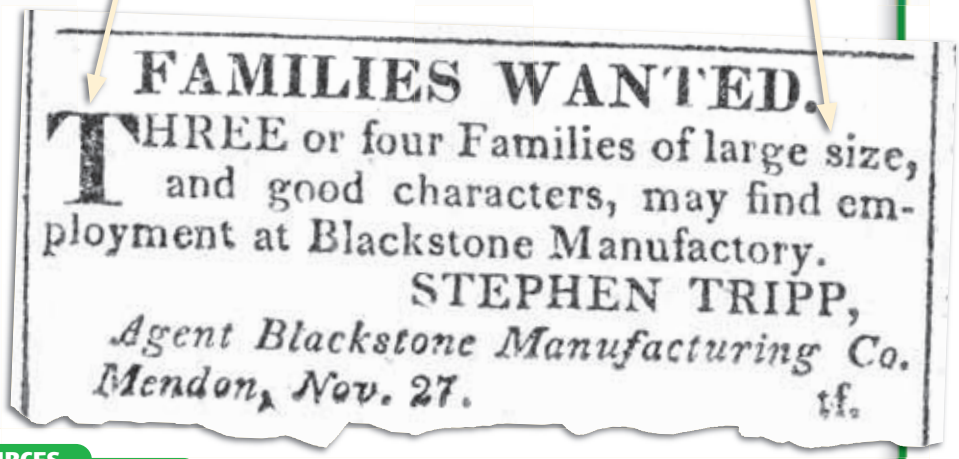
NEWSPAPER ADVERTISEMENT

Family Wanted

This advertisement appeared in a Massachusetts newspaper in 1823. In it, a company requests that families come to work at a factory. The practice of hiring entire families was common at the time, especially in Britain. In America, it became known as the Rhode Island system.

The advertisement requests more than one family.

Why do you think Blackstone wants large families?



FAMILIES WANTED.

THREE or four Families of large size, and good characters, may find employment at Blackstone Manufactory.

STEPHEN TRIPP,

Agent Blackstone Manufacturing Co.

Mendon, Nov. 27. tf.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Drawing Conclusions Do you think advertisements like this one had the effect the companies wanted?

On most farms children worked to help their families. Therefore, few people complained about the hiring of children to work in factories. H. Humphrey, an author of books on raising children, told parents that children needed to be useful. Humphrey wrote, "If he [a child] will not study, put him on to a farm, or send him into the shop, or in some other way provide regular employment for him." The machines made many tasks in the mill simple enough for children to do. Mill owners profited because they paid children low wages. Adults usually earned as much in a day as most children did in a week.

To attract families to his mill, Slater built housing for the workers. He also provided them with a company store where they could buy necessities. In addition, he started the practice of paying workers with credit at the company store. Instead of paying the full price for an item all at once, small payments could be made over a period of time. This practice allowed Slater to reinvest his money in his business.

Slater's strategy of hiring families and dividing factory work into simple tasks became known as the **Rhode Island system**. Mill owners throughout the Northeast copied Slater's methods. Owners advertised with "Men with growing families wanted." They also sent recruiters to poor communities to find new workers. For many people, the chance to work in a factory was a welcome opportunity to earn money and to learn a new skill.

One of the earliest of the mill towns, Slatersville, was named after Samuel Slater. The town was built by Slater and his brother John. It included two houses for workers and their families, the owner's house, the company store, and the Slatersville Mill. The mill was the largest and most modern industrial building of its time.

The mills employed not only the textile workers who operated the machinery but also machine part makers and dam builders. Although the company store sold food and necessary items to workers, mill towns supported the same variety of businesses any other town needed to thrive. These included tailors and dressmakers, butchers, and other small workshops.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What problem did Slater have in his mills, and how did he solve it?

The Lowell System

Not all mill owners followed this system. **Francis Cabot Lowell**, a businessman from New England, developed a very different approach. His ideas completely changed the textile industry in the Northeast.

The **Lowell system** was based on water-powered textile mills that employed young, unmarried women from local farms. The system included a loom that could both spin thread and weave cloth in the same mill. Lowell constructed boardinghouses for the women. Boardinghouse residents were given a room and meals along with their jobs.

With financial support from investors of the Boston Manufacturing Company, Lowell's first textile mill opened in Waltham, Massachusetts, in 1814. "From the first starting of the first power loom there was not . . . doubt about the success," wrote one investor. In 1822, the company built a larger mill in a Massachusetts town later named Lowell. Visitors to Lowell were amazed by the clean factories and neatly kept boardinghouses as well as the new machinery.

The young millworkers soon became known as Lowell girls. The mills paid them between $2 and $4 each week. The workers paid $1.25 for room and board. These wages were much better than those women could earn per week in other available jobs, such as domestic work.

Many young women came to Lowell from across New England. They wanted the chance to earn money instead of working on the family farm. "I must of course have something of my own before many more years have passed over my head," wrote one young woman. The typical Lowell girl worked at the mills for about four years.

Unlike other factory workers, the Lowell girls were encouraged to use their free time to take classes and form women's clubs. They even wrote their own magazine, the *Lowell Offering*. Lucy Larcom, who started working at Lowell at age 11, later praised her fellow workers.



No record exists today of the name of this girl, who worked in a mill around 1850. Judging from the photograph, if she were in school today, she would probably be in the seventh or eighth grade. Although hard to see in this photograph, her hands and arms are scratched and swollen—telltale signs of the hard labor required of young girls who worked up to 14 hours per day.

Time Table of the Lowell Mills

Morning Bells

First bell . . . . . 4:30 AM
Second bell . . . . . 5:30 AM
Third bell . . . . . 6:20 AM

Dinner (Lunch) Bells

Ring out . . . . . 12:00 PM
Ring in . . . . . 12:35 PM

Evening Bells

Ring out . . . . . 6:30 PM
Except on Saturday Evenings

—The Table of the Lowell Mills, October 21, 1851

History Close-up

Life of a Mill Girl



Girls had to keep their hair pulled back so it did not get caught in the machines, resulting in serious injury—or death.

Windows were rarely opened, to prevent air from blowing the threads. The result is a hot, stuffy room.

The air is dirty and causes breathing problems. One visitor remarked, "The atmosphere . . . is charged with cotton filaments and dust, which . . . are very injurious to the lungs."

This girl is straightening threads as they enter the power loom, a job that cut her hands.

Girls must shout to be heard above the noise of the power looms. Visitors to the mill routinely referred to the sound of the machines as "deafening."

ANALYSIS SKILL **Analyzing Visuals**

Judging from the photograph on page 392, what might be the condition of the girl's hands in this illustration? Why?

Primary Source

MAGAZINE ARTICLE

Sarah G. Bagley and Workers' Rights

Lowell girl Sarah G. Bagley wrote magazine articles and made speeches about working in the mills. She organized workers to help change conditions.

Bagley believes that most mill girls would leave their jobs if they could.

"Is anyone such a fool as to suppose that out of six thousand factory girls in Lowell, sixty would be there if they could help it? Whenever I raise the point that it is immoral to shut us up in a close room twelve hours a day in the most monotonous and tedious of employment I am told that we have come to the mills voluntarily and we can leave when we will. Voluntarily! . . . the whip which brings us to Lowell is necessity. We must have money; a father's debts are to be paid, an aged mother to be supported, a brother's ambition to be aided and so the factories are supplied. Is this to act from free will?. . . Is this freedom? To my mind it is slavery."

Bagley says that mill girls work to help their family members.

—Sarah G. Bagley, quoted in *The Belles of New England: The Women of the Textile Mills and the Families Whose Wealth They Wove, by* William Moran

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

How did Bagley view the idea that workers must endure poor conditions?

"I regard it as one of the privileges [advantages] of my youth that I . . . [grew] up among those active, interesting girls, whose lives . . . had principle [ideals] and purpose distinctly their own."

—Lucy Larcom, from *A New England Girlhood*

Mill life was hard, however. The workday was between 12 and 14 hours long, and daily life was carefully controlled. Ringing bells ordered workers to breakfast or lunch. Employees had to work harder and faster to keep up with new equipment. Cotton dust also began to cause health problems, such as chronic cough, for workers.

THE IMPACT TODAY

In the 1950s, labor union membership reached its peak; about 40 percent of the workforce belonged to unions. Today only about 12 percent of the working population belongs to a labor union.

READING CHECK **Contrasting** How was the Lowell system different from the Rhode Island system?

Workers Organize

Factories continued to spread in the 1800s. Craftspeople, who made goods by hand, felt threatened. Factories quickly produced low-priced goods. To compete with factories, shop owners had to hire more workers and pay them less. Shoemaker William Frazier complained about the situation in the mid-1840s. "We have to sit on our seats from twelve to sixteen hours per day, to earn one dollar."

The wages of factory workers also went down as people competed for jobs. A wave of immigration in the 1840s brought people from other, poorer countries. They were willing to work for low pay. More immigrants came to the Northeast, where the mills were located, than to the South. Competition for jobs also came from people unemployed during the financial Panic of 1837. For example, about 50,000 workers in New York City alone lost their jobs.

The Beginning of Trade Unions

Facing low wages and the fear of losing their jobs, skilled workers formed **trade unions**, groups that tried to improve pay and working conditions. Eventually, unskilled factory workers also formed trade unions. Most employers did not want to hire union workers. Employers believed that the higher cost of union employees prevented competition with other manufacturers.

Sometimes labor unions staged protests called **strikes**. Workers on strike refuse to work until employers meet their demands. Most early strikes were not successful, however. Courts and police usually supported companies, not striking union members.

Labor Reform Efforts

A strong voice in the union movement was that of millworker **Sarah G. Bagley**. She founded the Lowell Female Labor Reform Association in 1844 and publicized the struggles of factory laborers. The association's two main goals were to influence an investigation of working conditions by the Massachusetts state legislature and to obtain a 10-hour workday. Members of the association passed out pamphlets and circulated petitions.

President Martin Van Buren had granted a 10-hour workday in 1840 for many federal employees. Bagley wanted this rule to apply to employees of private businesses. These men and women often worked 12 to 14 hours per day, six days per week.

Many working men and women supported the 10-hour-workday campaign, despite the opposition of business owners. In 1845 Sarah Bagley was elected vice president of the New England Working Men's Association. She was the first woman to hold such a high-ranking position in the American labor movement.

Over time, the unions achieved some **concrete** legal victories. Connecticut, Maine, New Hampshire, Ohio, Pennsylvania, and a few other states passed 10-hour-workday laws.

For factory workers in other states, long hours remained common. One witness described how children were "summoned by the factory bell before daylight" and worked until eight o'clock at night "with nothing but [a] recess of forty-five minutes to get their dinner." Union supporters continued to fight for work reforms such as an end to child labor in factories during the 1800s.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
concrete specific, real

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** Why did workers form unions? What were the main goals of union reformers?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW With the growth of factories, workers faced new opportunities and challenges. In the next section you will learn about how the Transportation Revolution brought changes to commerce and the daily lives of Americans.

Section 2 Assessment

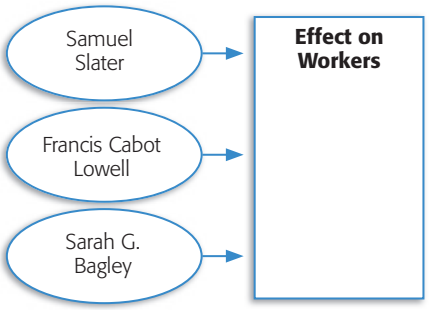
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP12

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What problems did many mill owners have in finding workers?
   b. Analyze How did Samuel Slater's **Rhode Island system** change employment practices in mills?
2. **a. Describe** What was life like for mill workers in the **Lowell system**?
   b. Make Inferences Why would young women have wanted to go to work in the Lowell mills?
3. **a. Recall** Why did workers form **trade unions**?
   b. Predict What are some possible problems that might arise between factory owners and trade unions?

Critical Thinking

4. **Drawing Conclusions** Review your notes on mills and workers' reactions to them. Then copy the graphic organizer to the right and use it to show how Slater, Lowell, and Sarah G. Bagley affected workers' lives.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Examining Working Conditions** This section tells about mill life and conditions for workers. In the chart you started for the first section, list the two labor systems used by mills, the person who developed each, and the benefits of each system.

SECTION 3

The Transportation Revolution

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The Transportation Revolution affected trade and daily life.
2. The steamboat was one of the first developments of the Transportation Revolution.
3. Railroads were a vital part of the Transportation Revolution.
4. The Transportation Revolution brought many changes to American life and industry.

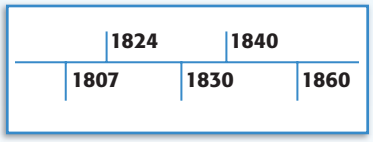
The Big Idea

New forms of transportation improved business, travel, and communication in the United States.

Key Terms and People

Transportation Revolution, *p. 396*
Robert Fulton, *p. 397*
Clermont, *p. 397*
Gibbons v. *Ogden*, *p. 397*
Peter Cooper, *p. 398*

TAKING NOTES Create a time line like the one below. As you read, fill in the time line with the key events in the development of the steamboat and the locomotive as vital forms of transportation.



If YOU were there...

You live in a small town in Iowa in the 1860s. You've never been more than 30 miles from home and have always traveled by wagon or on horseback. Now there are plans to build a railroad westward from Chicago, 200 miles to the east. The tracks will come through your town! Twice a week, trains will bring goods from the city and take people farther west.

How would the coming of the railroad change your life?



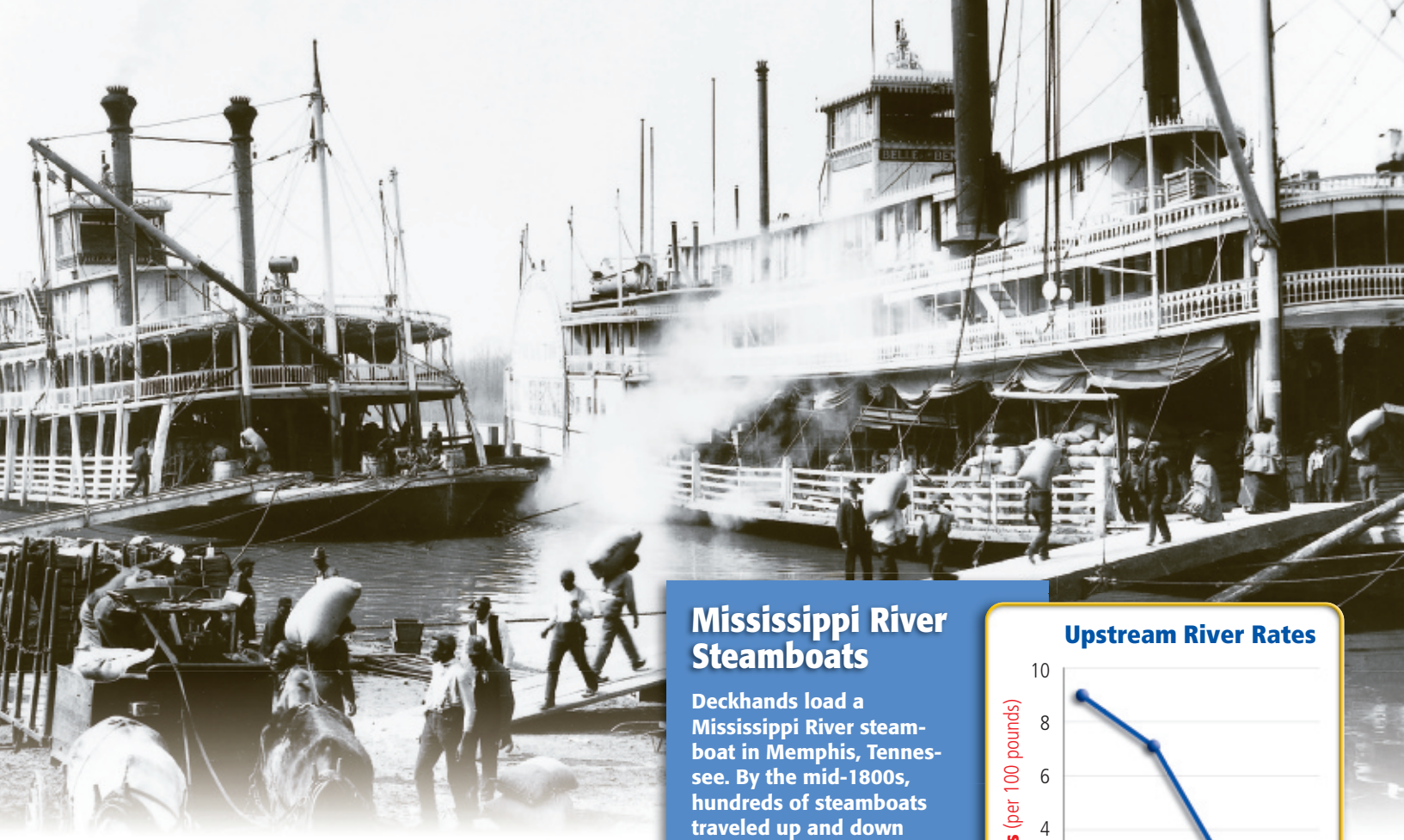
BUILDING BACKGROUND The Industrial Revolution changed how goods were made. It brought great changes in the ways that many Americans lived. But developments in technology led to major changes in other areas of life, too. New forms of transportation would bring remote parts of America closer together.

Trade and Daily Life

During the 1800s the United States was transformed by a **Transportation Revolution**—a period of rapid growth in the speed and convenience of travel because of new methods of transportation. The Transportation Revolution created a boom in business across the country, particularly by reducing shipping time and costs. As one foreign observer declared in 1835, "The Americans . . . have joined the Hudson to the Mississippi, and made the Atlantic Ocean communicate with the Gulf of Mexico."

These improvements were made possible largely by the invention of two new forms of transportation: the steamboat and steam-powered trains. They enabled goods, people, and information to travel rapidly and efficiently across the United States.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What benefits did the Transportation Revolution bring to trade and daily life?



Mississippi River Steamboats

Deckhands load a Mississippi River steamboat in Memphis, Tennessee. By the mid-1800s, hundreds of steamboats traveled up and down American rivers. Steamboats enabled Americans to ship more goods farther, faster, and for less money than ever before.

Steamboats

American and European inventors had developed steam-powered boats in the late 1700s. However, they were not in wide use until the early 1800s.

Steamboat Era

In 1803 American **Robert Fulton** tested his first steamboat design in France. Several years later, he tested the first full-sized commercial steamboat, called the ***Clermont***, in the United States. On August 9, 1807, the *Clermont* traveled against the current up the Hudson River without trouble. Demand for steamboat ferry service soon arose.

The steamboat was well suited for river travel. It could move upriver and did not rely on wind power. Steamboats increased trade and profits because goods could be moved quickly and thus more cheaply. More than 500 steamboats were in use in the United States by 1840. By the 1850s, steamboats were also being used to carry people and goods across the Atlantic Ocean.

Gibbons v. *Ogden*

Increased steamboat shipping led to conflict over waterway rights. In 1819 Aaron Ogden sued Thomas Gibbons for operating steamboats in New York waters that Ogden said he owned. Gibbons did not have a license to operate in New York, but argued that his federal license gave him the right to use New York waterways.

In the case of ***Gibbons* v. *Ogden***, which reached the Supreme Court in 1824, the Court reinforced the federal government's authority to regulate trade between the states by ending monopolistic control over waterways in several states. The ruling freed up waters to even greater trade and shipping.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Explain the effects of the *Gibbons* v. *Ogden* ruling.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

Robert Fulton and his business partner Robert Livingston convinced the New York state legislature to give them exclusive rights to operate steamboats on all New York rivers for 20 years. The most lucrative route was from New York City to Albany. The Supreme Court case *Gibbons* v. *Ogden* later broke this monopoly.

American Railroads

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

Peter Cooper was born in New York City and participated in the city government as an alderman. He was a successful businessperson and was active in several reform movements of the time, including the antislavery movement. Cooper's idea that the city could provide free higher education eventually resulted in The Cooper Union for the Advancement of Science and Art, which still offers free tuition to students who are accepted.

What the steamboat did for water travel, the train did for overland travel. Steam-powered trains had first been developed in Great Britain in the early 1800s. However, they did not become popular in the United States until the 1830s. In 1830 **Peter Cooper** built a small but powerful locomotive called the *Tom Thumb*. He raced the locomotive against a horse-drawn railcar. Eyewitness John Latrobe later described the race, in which *Tom Thumb* had a slow start and fell behind. Latrobe wrote, "The pace increased, the passengers shouted, the engine gained on the horse . . . then the engine passes the horse, and a great hurrah hailed the victory." Unfortunately for Cooper, victory was spoiled when *Tom Thumb* broke down and lost the race near the end.

Despite the defeat, the contest showed the power and speed of even a small locomotive. Railroad fever soon spread. By 1840 railroad companies had laid about 2,800 miles of track—more than existed in all of Europe. French economist Michel Chevalier described Americans as having "a perfect passion for railroads."

As more railroads were built, engineers and mechanics overcame many tough challenges. Most British railroads, for example, ran on straight tracks across flat ground. In the United States, however, many railroads had to run up and down steep mountains, around tight curves, and over swift rivers. Railroad companies also built the tracks quickly and often with the least expensive materials available. As time went on, engineers and mechanics built heavier, faster, and more powerful steam locomotives.

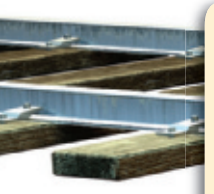
By 1860 about 30,000 miles of railroad linked almost every major city in the eastern United States. As a result, the economy surged forward. For example, American locomotives hauled more freight than those in any other country. The railroad companies quickly became some of the most powerful businesses in the nation. As the railroad

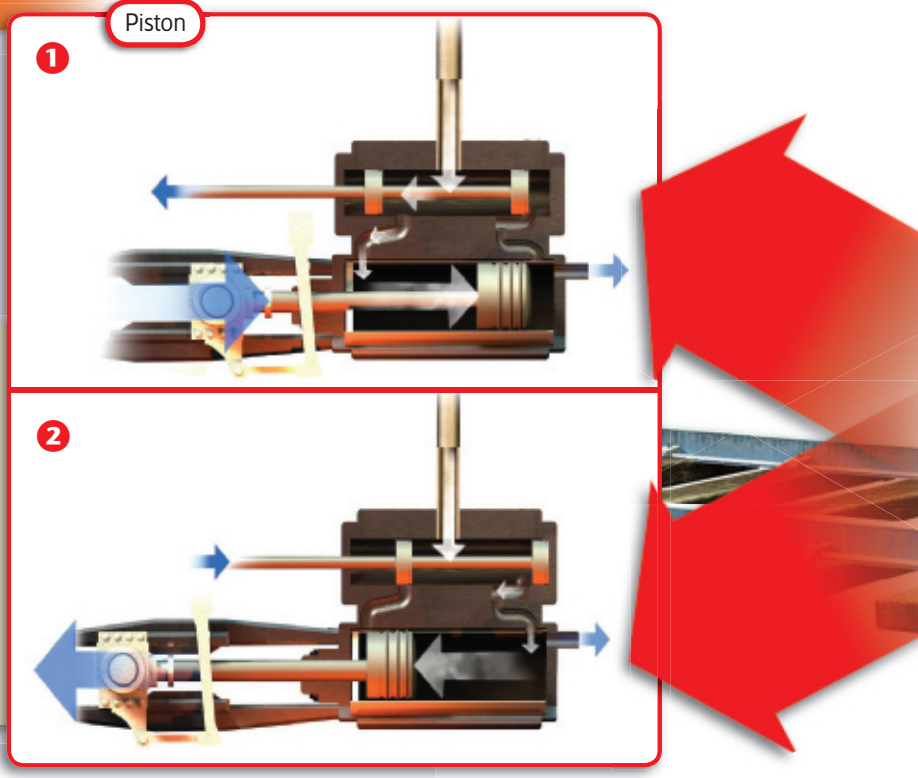
The Steam Train

CONNECT TO SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Boiling water produces steam, which pushes pistons back and forth in a steam engine. These pistons are connected to rods that rotate the wheels of the locomotive.

Why does the train have a firebox?





1 **As steam follows the path of the white arrows into the cylinder, the pressure pushes the piston in the direction of the large blue arrow. Connecting rods turn the wheel half a turn.**

2 **When the small valve rod moves, the other valve is blocked, pushing steam into the other side of the cylinder. The pressure moves the piston in the direction of the large blue arrow and the wheel completes a turn.**

system grew, manufacturers and farmers could send their goods to distant markets.

In addition to their tremendous economic impact, the railroads made a powerful impression on the senses of passengers and observers. Trains were the fastest form of transportation most people had ever experienced. While wagons often traveled less than 2 miles per hour, locomotives averaged about 20 miles per hour. Writer George Templeton Strong of New York City described the thrill of a steam train passing by in the night:

> "Whizzing and rattling and panting, with its fiery furnace gleaming in front, its chimney vomiting fiery smoke above, and its long train of cars rushing along behind like the body and tail of a gigantic dragon— . . . and all darting forward at the rate of twenty miles an hour. Whew!"
>
> —George Templeton Strong, quoted in *The Market Revolution* by Charles Sellers

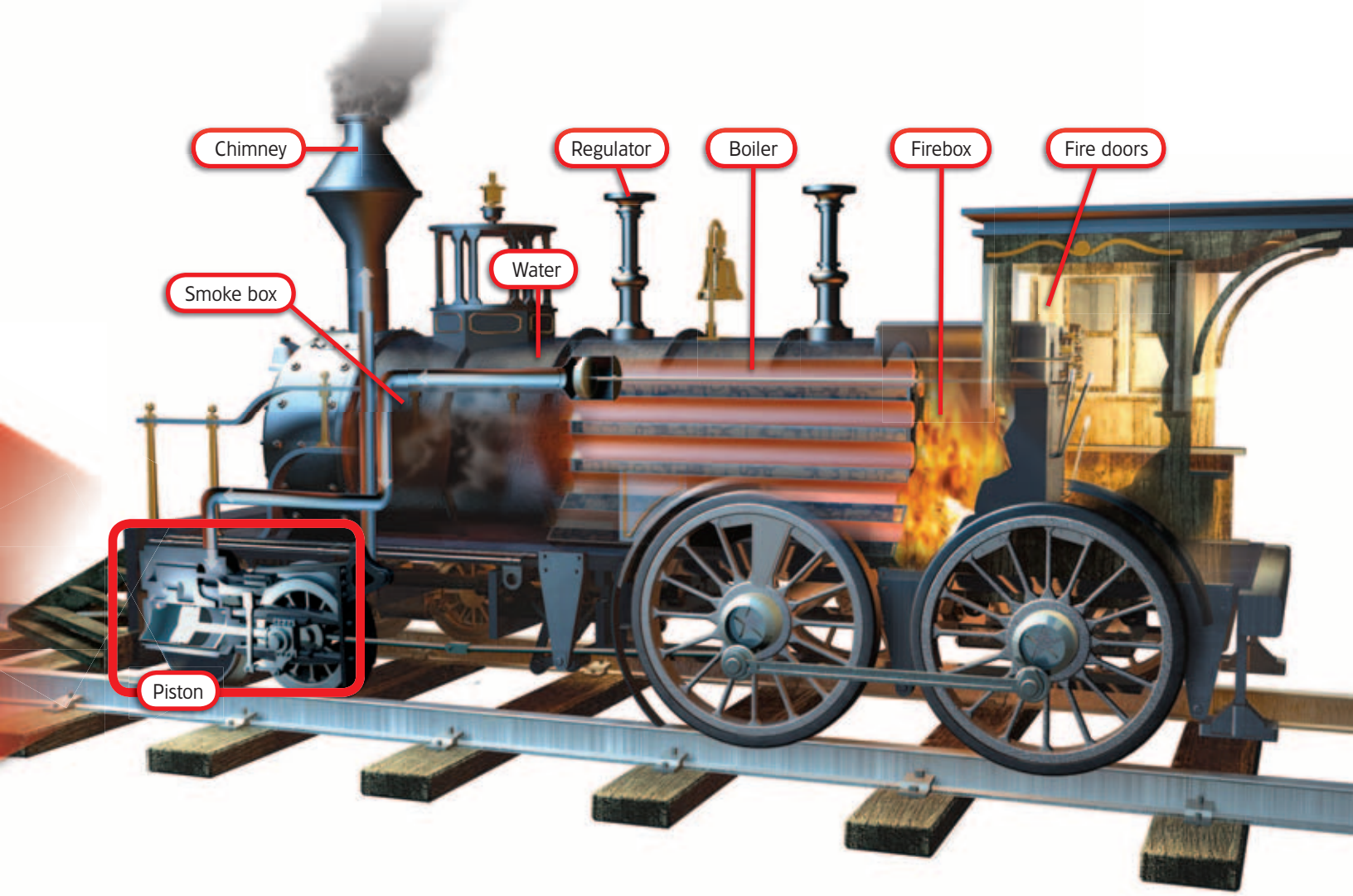
Riding on the early trains was often an adventure, but it could also be quite dangerous. Engineers trying to stay on time sometimes traveled too fast. English citizen Charles Richard Weld was on a railroad car that flew off the tracks. To his amazement, the other passengers did not complain about the accident. Instead, they praised the engineer for trying to keep on schedule!

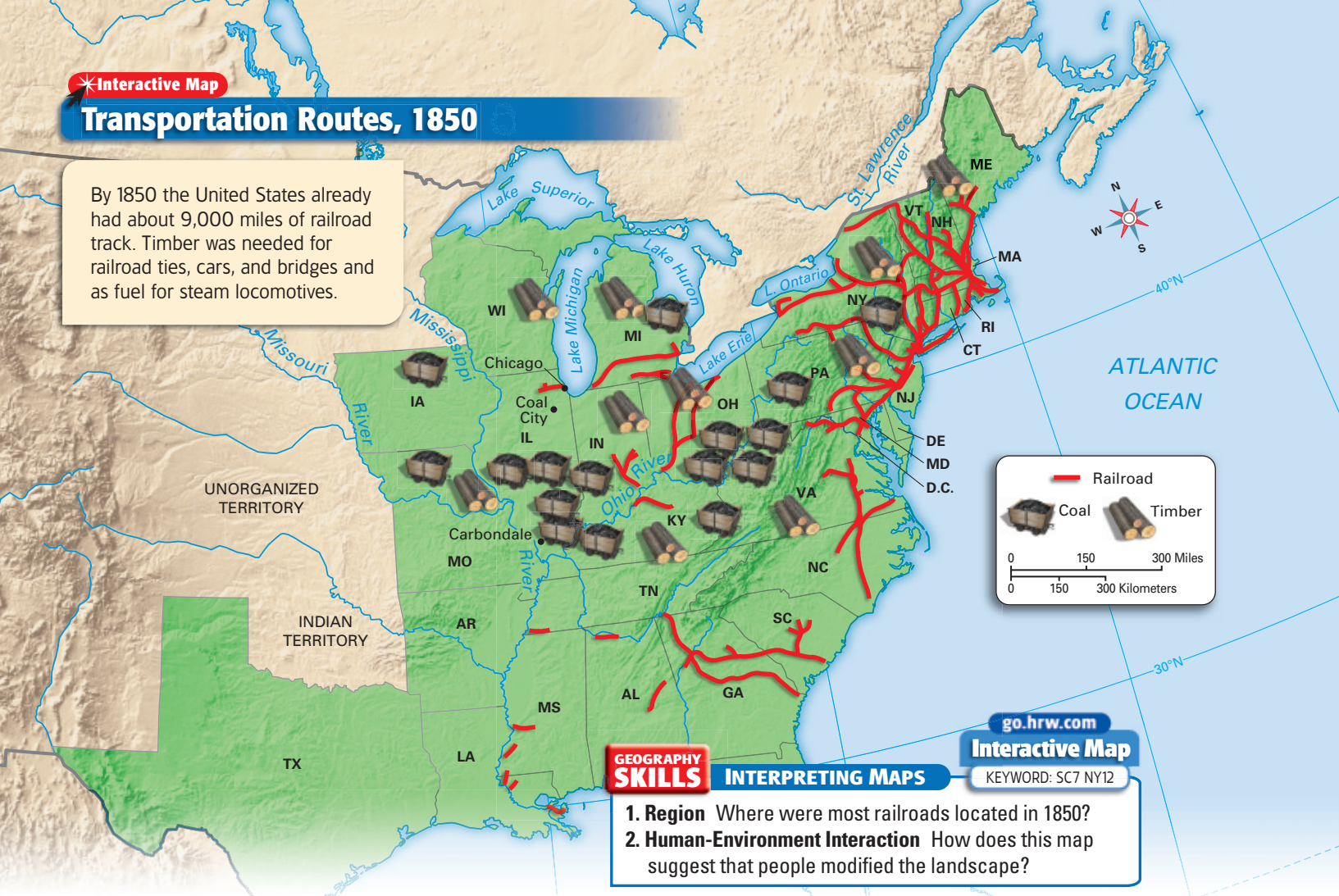
Passengers accepted such risks because the railroads reduced travel time dramatically. Railroads also helped tie communities together. In 1847 Senator Daniel Webster spoke for many people in the United States when he declared that the railroad "towers above all other inventions of this or the preceding age."

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences** In what ways did railroads affect the economy of the United States?

THE IMPACT TODAY

In 1883 four standard time zones were introduced in the United States to help railroads offer uniform train schedules. Today travelers might cross one or more time zones in a single airplane flight.





Transportation Revolution Brings Changes

The Transportation Revolution brought many changes to America. Steamboats and railroads made getting goods to distant markets much easier and less costly. People in all areas of the nation now had access to products made and grown far away. More than ever before, there was a national economy. The wealth, however, was centered in the North.

Railroads contributed to the expansion of the borders of the nation and guided population growth. Towns sprang up at railroad junctions. Those towns that did not have railroads nearby suffered. Cities grew as trains brought new residents and raw materials for industry and construction. The growing prosperity of the nation, especially in the North, encouraged Americans to take pride in their country.

A New Fuel

The Transportation Revolution also increased the use of certain natural resources that had not been important until then. Throughout the early Transportation Revolution, wood was the primary source of fuel for trains and steamboats, as well as for cooking, light, and heat. As faster locomotives were built, coal replaced wood as the main source of power. A half ton of coal produces as much energy as two tons of wood but at half the cost. Coal also became popular for heating homes. Railroads transported the coal from mines to towns and cities.

As the demand for coal increased, a coal-mining industry developed in many states, including Pennsylvania, western Virginia, and Illinois. Coal mining changed the landscape in a number of ways. New towns, such as Coal City and Carbondale in Illinois,

sprang up in places where coal deposits could be mined. Miners made deep gashes in the earth removing the coal.

Later, in the 1870s, the demand for coal increased as the demand for steel grew. Steel is made through a smelting process—heating iron ore to very high temperatures. Coal was used to fire the furnaces. Steel, which is much stronger than iron, was increasingly used to build factories and the machines they produced. Steel was also used to make the rails that trains ride on.

The growing market for steel helped fuel the need for more railroads. Railroads transported steel to places where new factories were being built. Railroads also brought new steel farming tools and machines to farmers in the Midwest. Using the new equipment, farmers produced more crops. Railroads then transported their harvests to markets.

Effects of Railroads

The railroads also played a role in the growth of other businesses. The logging industry expanded as people in the growing towns and cities needed wood for houses and furniture. As newspaper publishing increased, demand for paper grew. Lumber items became the primary product of New England. Settlers spreading out across the Midwest cut down trees and plowed up prairies to make farmland. Deforestation, or cutting down and removing trees, took place on a large scale.

Railroads also caused cities to grow. Some cities became transportation hubs. Chicago was one such city. Its location on Lake Michigan made it an ideal transportation hub, linking the Midwest to the East and South.

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**

What role did railroads play in the growth of the coal industry?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The Transportation Revolution changed the way business was done. In the next section you will learn about more technological advances.

FOCUS ON READING

What causes and effects do you see in this section?

Section 3 Assessment

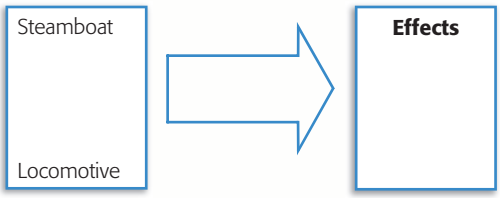
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP12

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What forms of transportation were improved or invented at this time?
   b. Explain What effect did the **Transportation Revolution** have on the United States?
2. **a. Describe** What were the benefits of steamboat travel?
   b. Analyze What effect did the ruling in the ***Gibbons* v. *Ogden*** case have on federal government?
3. **a. Describe** What event showed the power and speed of locomotives?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did railroads affect trade and business in the United States?
   c. Elaborate Why do you think Americans were fascinated by railroads?
4. **a. Describe** What physical obstacles did railroad construction in the United States face?
   b. Analyze What effects did the Transportation Revolution have on the U.S. economy?
   c. Elaborate Do you think the Transportation Revolution played a role in deforestation? Explain.

Critical Thinking

5. **Identifying Effects** Review your time line on the steamboat and the locomotive. Then copy the chart below and use it to show how they affected business, travel, and communication in the United States.



FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Describing Travel Inventions** Add the steamboat and locomotive to your list. Note the individuals involved in their development as well as how these new methods of travel changed life for people in the United States.

SECTION 4

More Technological Advances

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The telegraph made swift communication possible from coast to coast.
2. With the shift to steam power, businesses built new factories closer to cities and transportation centers.
3. Improved farm equipment and other labor-saving devices made life easier for many Americans.
4. New inventions changed lives in American homes.

The Big Idea

Advances in technology led to new inventions that continued to change daily life and work.

Key Terms and People

Samuel F. B. Morse, *p. 402*
telegraph, *p. 402*
Morse code, *p. 403*
John Deere, *p. 404*
Cyrus McCormick, *p. 404*
Isaac Singer, *p. 405*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the new advances in technology listed in the section. Create a graphic organizer like the one shown below that identifies the effects of each.

Inventions	Effects
Telegraph	
Steam Power	
Mass Production	
Home Inventions	

If YOU were there...

You own a small shop in Chicago, Illinois, in the 1850s. You sell ladies' hats and gowns. When you need more hats, you send a letter to the manufacturer in New York. Sometimes it takes weeks for the letter to get there. One day, the owner of the shop next door tells you about a wonderful new machine. It can send orders from Chicago to New York in just minutes!

How would a machine like this change your business?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The Industrial and Transportation Revolutions had far-reaching effects on Americans' lives. They led to still more innovations in technology. Some of the new machines and devices speeded up processes for business owners. Others made life easier for people at home.

Telegraph Speeds Communication

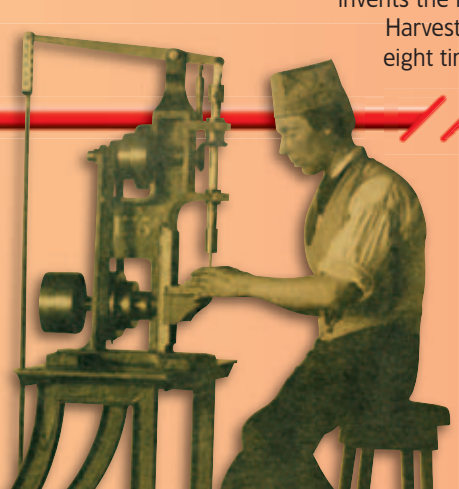
In 1832 **Samuel F. B. Morse** perfected the **telegraph**—a device that could send information over wires across great distances. To develop the telegraph, Morse studied electricity and magnetism. In

Time Line

American Inventions

1798 Eli Whitney proposed the idea of mass producing guns. Machines like this one made it possible for workers to make interchangeable parts efficiently.

1831 Cyrus McCormick invents the mechanical reaper. Harvesting grain becomes eight times more efficient.



time, Morse put the work of other scientists together in a practical machine.

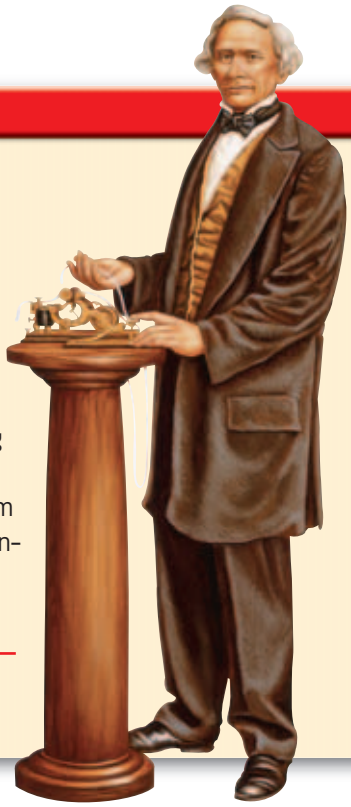
The telegraph sent pulses, or surges, of electric current through a wire. The telegraph operator tapped a bar, called a telegraph key, that controlled the length of each pulse. At the other end of the wire, these pulses were changed into clicking sounds. A short click was called a dot. A long click was called a dash. Morse's partner, Alfred Lewis Vail, developed a system known as **Morse code**—different combinations of dots and dashes that represent each letter of the alphabet. For example, *dot dot dot, dash dash dash, dot dot dot* is the distress signal called SOS. Skilled telegraph operators could send and receive many words per minute.

Several years passed before Morse was able to connect two locations with telegraph wires. Despite that achievement, people doubted his machine. Some people did not think that he was reading messages sent from miles away. They claimed that he was making lucky guesses.

Morse's break came during the 1844 Democratic National Convention in Baltimore, Maryland. A telegraph wired news of the presidential candidate's nomination to politicians in Washington. The waiting politicians responded, "Three cheers for the telegraph!" Telegraphs were soon sending and receiving information for businesses, the government, newspapers, and private citizens.

BIOGRAPHY

Samuel F. B. Morse
(1791–1872)

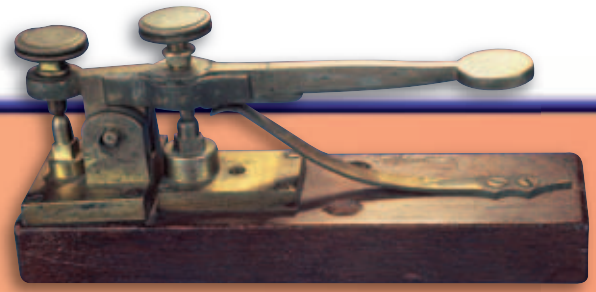


Like steamboat creator Robert Fulton, Samuel F. B. Morse began his career as a painter rather than as an inventor. In 1832 Morse was a widower struggling to raise his three children alone. He became interested in the idea of sending messages electrically. Morse hoped he could invent a device that would earn him enough money to support his family. Eventually, earnings from the telegraph made Morse extremely wealthy.

Drawing Conclusions What motivated Morse to invent the telegraph?

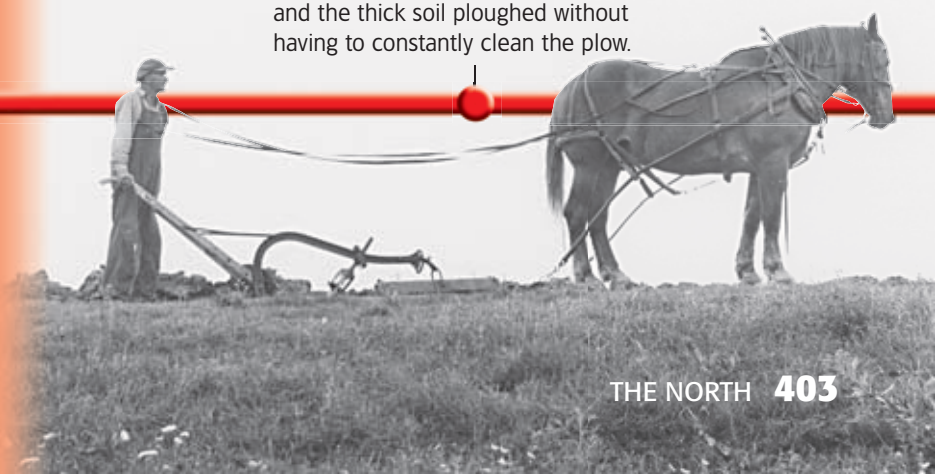
The telegraph grew with the railroad. Telegraph companies strung their wires on poles along railroads across the country. They established telegraph offices in many train stations. Thousands of miles of telegraph line were added every year in the 1850s. The first transcontinental line was finished in 1861. By the time he died in 1872, Morse was famous across the United States.

READING CHECK **Identifying Cause and Effect** What event led to the widespread use of the telegraph, and what effect did the telegraph have on cross-country communications?



1832 Samuel F. B. Morse invents the telegraph. Long-distance communication becomes almost instantaneous.

1837 John Deere invents the steel plow. The tough prairie sod can be cut and the thick soil ploughed without having to constantly clean the plow.



Steam Power and New Factories

At the start of the Industrial Revolution, most factories ran on waterpower. In time, however, factory owners began using steam power. This shift brought major changes to the nation's industries. Water-powered factories had to be built near streams or waterfalls. In contrast, steam power allowed business owners to build factories almost anywhere. Yet the Northeast was still home to most of the nation's industry. By 1860 New England alone had as many factories as the entire South did.

Some companies decided to build their factories closer to cities and transportation centers. This provided easier access to workers, allowing businesses to lower wages. Being closer to cities also reduced shipping costs. Cities soon became the center of industrial growth. People from rural areas as well as foreign countries flocked to the cities for factory jobs.

Factory workers improved the designs of many kinds of machines. Mechanics invented tools that could cut and shape metal, stone, and wood with great precision. By the 1840s this new machinery was able to produce interchangeable parts. Within a short period of time, the growing machine-tool industry was even making customized equipment.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What changes resulted from the shift to steam power?



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

The Industrial Revolution helped New Yorkers buy more products that they had previously produced at home, such as clothing.

Improved Farm Equipment

During the 1830s, technology began transforming the farm as well as the factory. In 1837 blacksmith **John Deere** saw that friends in Illinois had difficulty plowing thick soil with iron plows. He thought a steel blade might work better. His design for a steel plow was a success. By 1846 Deere was selling 1,000 plows per year.

In 1831 **Cyrus McCormick** developed a new harvesting machine, the mechanical reaper, which quickly and efficiently cut down wheat. He began mass producing his reapers in a Chicago factory. McCormick used new methods to encourage sales. His company advertised, gave demonstrations, and provided a repair and spare parts department. He also let customers buy on credit.

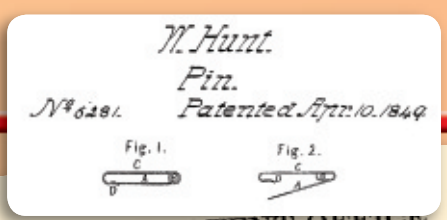
The combination of Deere's plow and McCormick's reaper allowed Midwestern farmers to plant and harvest huge crop fields. By 1860, U.S. farmers were producing more than 170 million bushels of wheat and more than 800 million bushels of corn per year.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What marketing methods did McCormick use to help sell his farm equipment?



American Inventions (continued)

1849 Walter Hunt invents the safety pin.



W. Hunt.
Pin.
No. 6,281. Patented Apr. 10, 1849.
Fig. 1. Fig. 2.

UNITED STATES PATENT OFFICE.

WALTER HUNT, OF NEW YORK, N. Y., ASSIGNOR TO WM. RICHARDSON AND JNO. RICHARDSON.

DRESS-PIN.

Specification of Letters Patent No. 6,281, dated April 10, 1849.

To all whom it may concern:

Be it known that I, WALTER HUNT, of the city, county, and State of New York, have invented a new and useful Improvement in the Make or Form of Dress-Pins, of which the following is a faithful and accurate description.

to the bar C, (see Figs. 6, 7 and 8,) which combined with the advantages of the spring and catch, renders it equally ornamental, and at the same time more secure and durable than any other plan of a clasp pin, heretofore in use, there being no joint to break or pivot to wear or get loose as in other plans. Another great advantage unknown in other

1851 Isaac Singer improves the sewing machine. The production and repair of clothing becomes much easier.

Changing Life at Home

Many inventions of the Industrial Revolution simply made life easier. When Alexis de Tocqueville of France visited the United States in the early 1830s, he identified what he called a very American quality.

> "[Americans want] to be always making life more comfortable and convenient, to avoid trouble, and to satisfy the smallest wants [desires] without effort and almost without cost."
>
> —Alexis de Tocqueville, from *Democracy in America*

The sewing machine, first invented by Elias Howe, a factory apprentice in Lowell, Massachusetts, was one of these conveniences. **Isaac Singer** then made improvements to Howe's design. Like McCormick, Singer allowed customers to buy his machines on credit and provided service. By 1860 Singer's company was the world's largest maker of sewing machines.

Other advances improved on everyday items. In the 1830s, iceboxes cooled by large blocks of ice became available. Iceboxes stored fresh food safely for longer periods. Iron cookstoves began replacing cooking fires and stone hearths.

Companies also began to mass produce earlier inventions. This allowed many families to buy household items, such as clocks, that they could not afford in the past. For example, a clock that cost $50 in 1800 was selling for only $1.50 by the 1850s. Additional useful items created during this period include matches, introduced in the 1830s, and the safety pin, invented in 1849. All of these inventions helped make life at home more convenient for an increasing number of Americans.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did labor-saving inventions affect daily life?

THE IMPACT TODAY

New inventions, such as cell phones, laptop computers, and microwave ovens, continue to make life easier and more convenient for people today.

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW New machines and inventions changed the way Americans lived and did business in the early 1800s. In the next section you will learn how agricultural changes affected the South.

1859 Manufactured goods become more valuable than agricultural goods in the country's economy for the first time. The United States is becoming a modern industrial nation.

ANALYSIS SKILL **READING TIME LINES**

Which two inventions improved American agriculture?

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP12

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** How did the **telegraph** work?
   b. Predict What impact might the telegraph have on the future of the United States?
2. **a. Describe** How did waterpowered factories differ from steam-powered factories?
   b. Explain How did the shift to steam power lead to the growth of cities?
3. **a. Identify** What contributions did **Cyrus McCormick** and **John Deere** make to farming?
   b. Analyze What effect did new inventions have on agriculture in the United States?
4. **a. Identify** What inventions improved life at home?
   b. Evaluate Which invention do you think had the greatest effect on the daily lives of Americans? Why?

Critical Thinking

5. **Supporting a Point of View** Review your notes on technological advances and their effects. Then create a graphic organizer like the one below that shows the top three advances you think are most important and why.

Most Important	Why

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Describing Technological Advances** Add notes about the inventions mentioned in this section to your chart. Think about which invention you will use for your newspaper advertisement.

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | **Civic Participation** | Study

Personal Conviction and Bias

Define the Skill

Everyone has *convictions,* or firmly held beliefs. However, when we let our beliefs automatically slant or shape our point of view on topics, we may be showing bias. *Bias* is a fixed idea or opinion about someone or something. Some bias is based on a set of ideas about a group to which the person or thing belongs. This type of bias is called a *stereotype*. If the group is defined by race, religion, age, gender, or similar characteristics, the bias is known as *prejudice*.

Bias, stereotypes, and prejudice are not always negative in nature. They include favorable opinions too. For example, the belief that a student is good at math because that person is male is a bias that shows both stereotyping and prejudice.

We should always be on guard for the presence of personal bias. Eliminating stereotyping and prejudice is particularly important. However, even "good" biases can slant how we view, judge, and communicate information. Honest and accurate communication requires that the information and ideas we express be as free of bias as possible.

Learn the Skill

Not all beliefs are biases, even if those beliefs are strongly held. Biases are beliefs that have little or no evidence to support them. The more unreasonable a person's view is in light of facts and evidence, the more likely it is that the belief is a bias.

Another characteristic of bias is the person's reluctance to question his or her belief if it is challenged by evidence. Sometimes people stubbornly cling to views that overwhelming evidence proves wrong. This is why bias is defined as a "fixed" idea or opinion. One of the most damaging effects of bias, and a good reason for trying to avoid it, is that it can prevent us from learning new things.

The following precautions can help you to reduce the amount of bias you hold and express.

1. When discussing a topic, keep in mind beliefs and experiences in your own background that might affect how you feel about the topic.
2. Try to not mix statements of fact with statements of opinion. Clearly separate and indicate what you *know* to be true from what you *believe* to be true.
3. Avoid using emotional, positive, or negative words when communicating factual information.

Practice the Skill

In 1834 Tennessee congressman Davy Crockett visited the textile mills at Lowell, Massachusetts. Read his account of the "Lowell girls" who worked in the factory and complete the activity below.

> "Here are thousands [of young women], useful to others, . . . with the prospect before them of future comfort and respectability . . . There are more than five thousand females employed in Lowell; and when you come to see the amount of labour performed by them, in superintending [operating] the different machinery, you will be astonished."

Suppose that you were a "Lowell girl" who has just read this account of Crockett's visit. Write a letter to the editor of the *Lowell Offering* reacting to the biases and stereotypes about women that Crockett shows in his account.

CHAPTER 12

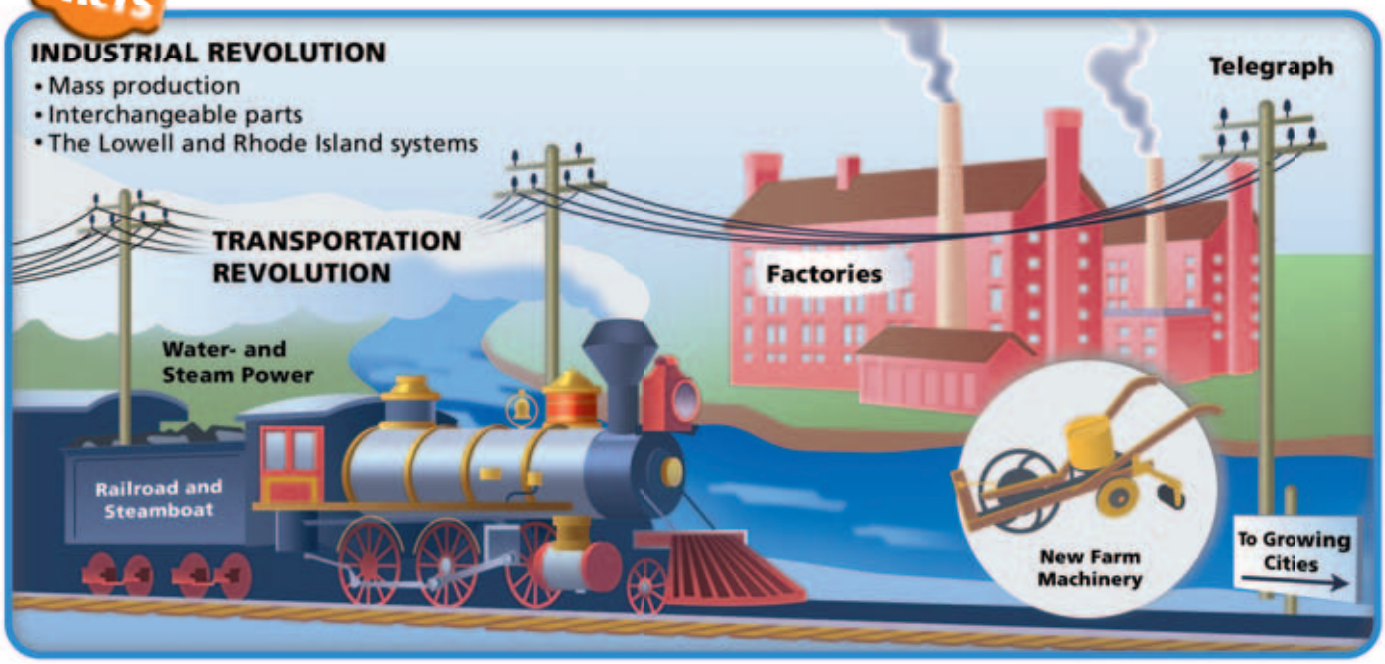
Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
How do you think ease of travel has affected U.S. population centers?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Complete each sentence below by filling in the blank with the correct term or person from the chapter.

1. The system of _____ was developed to represent letters of the alphabet when sending telegraph messages.
2. The first American woman to hold a high-ranking position in the labor movement was _____.
3. The _____ was a period of rapid growth in the use of machines and manufacturing.
4. The first locomotive in the United States was built by _____.
5. Workers would sometimes go on _____ to force factory owners to meet their demands for better pay and working conditions.
6. The _____ industry, which produced cloth items, was the first to use machines for manufacturing.

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 384–389)*

7. a. Identify What ideas did Eli Whitney want to apply to the manufacture of guns?

b. Analyze How did the War of 1812 lead to a boom in manufacturing in the United States?

c. Elaborate Why do you think the Industrial Revolution began in Great Britain rather than in the United States?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 390–395)*

8. a. Describe What was mill life like?

b. Draw Conclusions How did the Rhode Island system and the Lowell system change the lives of American workers?

c. Evaluate Were reformers such as Sarah G. Bagley effective in improving labor conditions? Why?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 396–401)*

9. a. Describe How were Americans affected by the introduction of steamboats?

b. Make Inferences How did railroad companies become some of the most powerful businesses in the country?

c. Elaborate What was the most important result of the Transportation Revolution? Why?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 402–405)*

10. a. Recall What important change took place in how factories were powered?

b. Draw Conclusions How did the telegraph affect communication in the United States?

c. Evaluate Do you think moving factories close to cities helped or hurt working life? Explain.

Reviewing Themes

11. Science and Technology What are the three most important inventions of the Industrial Revolution? Why?

12. Economics What was the overall effect of the Industrial Revolution on the U.S. economy?

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY12

13. Activity: Marketing Plan The Industrial Revolution changed the way goods were produced. New inventions created easier, faster, or completely new ways of doing things. Enter the activity keyword and research inventions made between 1790 and 1860. Then create a plan for how to sell one of the inventions. In your plan, identify the problems the invention will fix, your target audience, and how the invention should be advertised and sold.



Reading Skills

Causes and Effects in History *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> Many young women came to Lowell from across New England. They wanted the chance to earn money instead of working on the family farm. *(p. 392)*

14. According to the passage above, what was a cause for moving to Lowell?

a. working long hours

b. earning money

c. meeting people

d. working on a farm

Social Studies Skills

Personal Conviction and Bias *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> "Is anyone such a fool as to suppose that out of six thousand factory girls in Lowell, sixty would be there if they could help it?"
>
> —Sarah G. Bagley, quoted in *The Belles of New England* by William Moran

15. Do you think that Bagley's opposition to the Lowell system was unfairly biased? Why or why not?

FOCUS ON WRITING

16. Writing Your Newspaper Advertisement Look over your chart, and choose one invention for your advertisement. Then answer these questions to help you plan your advertisement: Who is your audience? Who will buy this invention? How will the invention benefit this audience? What words or phrases will best persuade this audience? Once you have answered these questions, design your advertisement. To draw readers' attention to your ad, include an illustration, a catchy heading, and a few lines of text.

CHAPTER 12

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **The first machines of the Industrial Revolution were powered by**

A electricity.
B water.
C animals.
D coal.

2 **The earliest important evidence of the Industrial Revolution in America was found in**

A the way cotton was processed for market.
B the production of tobacco products.
C the manufacture of cloth and thread.
D the construction of the first steam railroads.

3 **Which of the following was a development of the Transportation Revolution of the mid-1800s?**

A automobiles
B wind-powered boats
C diesel freighters
D steam-powered trains

4 **What change in technology allowed business owners to sell their goods in markets across the country?**

A the Lowell system
B the growth of railroads
C the invention of the telegraph
D the Arkwright system

5 **Eli Whitney's idea of interchangeable parts resulted in**

A the dominance of American manufacturing.
B the beginning of the Industrial Revolution.
C a rapid expansion of railroads.
D the mass production of goods.

6 **The inventions of John Deere and Cyrus McCormick**

A improved communication.
B introduced two new factory labor systems.
C helped increase agricultural production in the United States.
D led to manufacturing breakthroughs in the textile industry.

7 **Read the following passage written by a textile worker and use it to answer the question below.**

> "The little money I could earn—one dollar a week, besides the price of my board—was needed in the family, and I must return [from home] to the mill . . . I began to reflect on life rather seriously for a girl of twelve or thirteen. What was I here for? What would I make of myself? . . . We did not forget that we were working girls . . . clearing away a few weeds from the overgrown track of independent labor for other women . . . [so that] no real odium [disrespect] could be attached to any honest toil that any self-respecting woman might undertake."
>
> —from *A New England Girlhood* by Lucy Larcom (1824–1893)

Document-Based Question **How did Larcom see the role of women changing in the workforce?**

CHAPTER 13 1790–1860

The South

Focus Question

What were the causes and effects of national growth?

SECTION 1
Growth of the Cotton Industry 414
Connect to Science and Technology Cotton Gin

SECTION 2
Southern Society 420
History Close-up A Southern Plantation
Focus on New York City Slavery in New York City

SECTION 3
The Slave System 424
Primary Source Nat Turner's Rebellion

Focus on Writing

Biographical Sketch In this chapter you will learn about life in the South during the first half of the nineteenth century. Read the chapter, and then write a two-paragraph biographical sketch about a day in the life of a person living on a large cotton farm in the South. You might choose to write about a wealthy male landowner, his wife, or an enslaved man or woman working on the farm. As you read, think about what life would have been like for the different people who lived and worked on the farm. Take notes about farm life in your notebook.





UNITED STATES

1793 Eli Whitney invents the cotton gin.

1800

WORLD

1794 France ends slavery in its colonies.



HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of regional economies on the nation.

What You Will Learn...

These enslaved people were photographed on a South Carolina plantation in the year 1861. The issue of slavery would have a serious and dramatic impact on the history of the entire United States. In this chapter you will learn how the South developed an agricultural economy, and how that economy was dependent on the labor of enslaved people.

1836 Ohio surpasses New York in grain production for the first time, indicating a change from an agricultural economy to an industrial one.

1808 A congressional ban on importing slaves into the United States takes effect.

1831 Nat Turner's Rebellion leads to fears of further slave revolts in the South.

1848 Joseph R. Anderson becomes the owner of the Tredegar Iron Works, the South's only large iron factory.



1820 | **1840** | **1860**

1807 Parliament bans the slave trade in the British Empire.

1835 Alexis de Tocqueville publishes *Democracy in America*.

1837 Victoria is crowned queen of Great Britain.



1858 A treaty at Tianjin, China, gives Hong Kong to the United Kingdom.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes This chapter takes you into the heart of the South from 1800 through the mid-1800s. As you read, you will discover that the South depended on cotton as its **economic** backbone, especially after the invention of the cotton gin. You will also read about the slave system in the South during this time and about the harsh living conditions slaves endured. As you will see, the South was home to a variety of **societies and cultures**.

Online Research

Focus on Reading Researching history topics on the Web can give you access to valuable information. However, just because the information is on the Web doesn't mean it is automatically valuable.

Evaluating Web Sites Before you use information you find online, you need to evaluate the site it comes from. The checklist below can help you determine if the site is worth your time.

Evaluating Web Sites

Site: _____ **URL:** _____ **Date of access:** _____

Rate each item on this 1–3 scale. Then add up the total score.

	No	Some	Yes
I. Authority			
a. Authors are clearly identified by name.	1	2	3
b. Contact information is provided for authors.	1	2	3
c. Authors' qualifications are clearly stated.	1	2	3
d. Site has been updated recently.	1	2	3
II. Content			
a. Site's information is useful to your project.	1	2	3
b. Information is clear and well-organized.	1	2	3
c. Information appears to be at the right level.	1	2	3
d. Links to additional important information are provided.	1	2	3
e. Information can be verified in other sources.	1	2	3
f. Graphics are helpful, not just decorative.	1	2	3
III. Design and Technical Elements			
a. Pages are readable and easy to navigate.	1	2	3
b. Links to other sites work.	1	2	3

Total Score _____

36–28 = very good site **27–20 = average site** **below 20 = poor site**

You Try It!

The passage below is from the chapter you are about to read.

Cotton Becomes Profitable

From Chapter 13, pp. 414–415

Cotton had been grown in the New World for centuries, but it had not been a very profitable crop. Before cotton could be spun into thread for weaving into cloth, the seeds had to be removed from the cotton fibers.

Long-staple cotton, also called black-seed cotton, was fairly easy to process. Workers could pick the seeds from the cotton with relative ease. But long-staple cotton grew well in only a few places in the South. More common was short-staple cotton, which was also known as green-seed cotton. Removing the seeds from this cotton was difficult and time consuming. A worker could spend an entire day picking the seeds from a single pound of short-staple cotton.

After you read the passage, complete the following activity.

Suppose that after reading this passage you decide to do some research on cotton growing. You use a search engine that directs you to a site. At that site, you find the information described below. Using the evaluation criteria listed on the previous page, decide if this is a site you would recommend to others.

a. The authors of the site are listed as "Bob and Mack, good friends who enjoy working together."

b. The site was last updated on "the last time we got together."

c. The title of the site is "Cotton Pickin'." There are few headings.

d. This ten-page site includes nine pages about the authors' childhood on a cotton farm. No illustrations are included.

e. Pages are very long, but they load quickly, as there are no graphics. There is one link to a site selling cotton clothing.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 13

Section 1

cotton gin *(p. 415)*
planters *(p. 416)*
cotton belt *(p. 416)*
factors *(p. 417)*
Tredegar Iron Works *(p. 419)*

Section 2

yeomen *(p. 422)*

Section 3

folktales *(p. 427)*
spirituals *(p. 427)*
Nat Turner's Rebellion *(p. 428)*
Nat Turner *(p. 428)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

primary *(p. 418)*
aspect *(p. 426)*

As you read Chapter 13, think about what topics would be interesting to research on the Web. If you do some research on the Web, remember to use the evaluation list to analyze the Web site.

SECTION 1

Growth of the Cotton Industry

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The invention of the cotton gin revived the economy of the South.
2. The cotton gin created a cotton boom in which farmers grew little else.
3. Some people encouraged southerners to focus on other crops and industries.

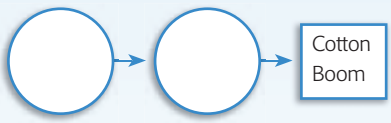
The Big Idea

The invention of the cotton gin made the South a one-crop economy and increased the need for slave labor.

Key Terms and People

cotton gin, *p. 415*
planters, *p. 416*
cotton belt, *p. 416*
factors, *p. 417*
Tredegar Iron Works, *p. 419*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the causes of the cotton boom in the South. Record your notes in a graphic organizer like the one shown below.



If YOU were there...

You are a field-worker on a cotton farm in the South in about 1800. Your job is to separate the seeds from the cotton fibers. It is dull, tiring work because the tiny seeds are tangled in the fibers. Sometimes it takes you a whole day just to clean one pound of cotton! Now you hear that someone has invented a machine that can clean cotton 50 times faster than by hand.

How might this machine change your life?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Sectional differences had always existed between different regions of the United States. The revolutionary changes in industry and transportation deepened the differences between North and South. The South remained mainly agricultural. New technology helped the region become the Cotton Kingdom.

Reviving the South's Economy

Before the American Revolution, three crops dominated southern agriculture—tobacco, rice, and indigo. These crops, produced mostly by enslaved African Americans, played a central role in the southern economy and culture.

After the American Revolution, however, prices for tobacco, rice, and indigo dropped. When crop prices fell, the demand for and the price of slaves also went down. In an effort to protect their incomes, many farmers tried, with little success, to grow other crops that needed less labor. Soon, however, cotton would transform the southern economy and greatly increase the demand for slave labor.

Cotton Becomes Profitable

Cotton had been grown in the New World for centuries, but it had not been a very profitable crop. Before cotton could be spun into thread for weaving into cloth, the seeds had to be removed from the cotton fibers.

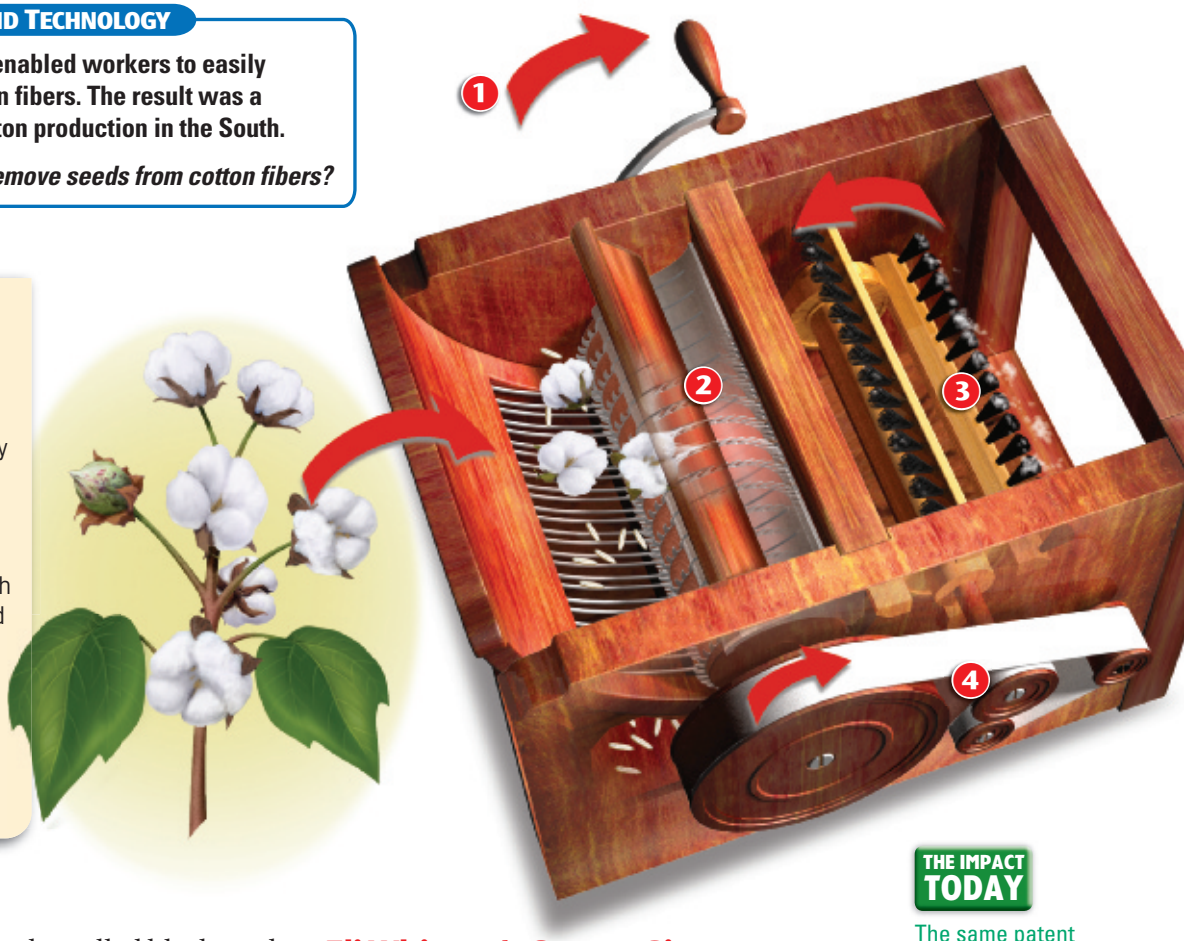
Cotton Gin

CONNECT TO SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Eli Whitney's cotton gin enabled workers to easily remove seeds from cotton fibers. The result was a dramatic increase in cotton production in the South.

How did the cotton gin remove seeds from cotton fibers?

1. The operator turned the crank.
2. The crank turned a roller with teeth that stripped the seeds away from the cotton fiber.
3. Brushes on a second roller lifted the seedless cotton off the teeth of the first cylinder and dropped it out of the machine.
4. A belt connected the rollers so that they would both turn when the crank was turned.



Long-staple cotton, also called black-seed cotton, was fairly easy to process. Workers could pick the seeds from the cotton with relative ease. But long-staple cotton grew well in only a few places in the South. More common was short-staple cotton, which was also known as green-seed cotton. Removing the seeds from this cotton was difficult and time consuming. A worker could spend an entire day picking the seeds from a single pound of short-staple cotton.

By the early 1790s the demand for American cotton began increasing rapidly. For instance, in Great Britain, new textile factories needed raw cotton that could be used for making cloth, and American cotton producers could not keep up with the high demand for their cotton. These producers of cotton needed a machine that could remove the seeds from the cotton more rapidly.

Eli Whitney's Cotton Gin

Northerner Eli Whitney finally patented such a machine in 1793. The year before, Whitney had visited a Georgia plantation owned by Catherine Greene where workers were using a machine that removed seeds from long-staple cotton. This machine did not work well on short-staple cotton, and Greene asked Whitney if he could improve it. By the next spring, Whitney had perfected his design for the **cotton gin**, a machine that removes seeds from short-staple cotton. ("Gin" is short for engine.) The cotton gin used a hand-cranked cylinder with wire teeth to pull cotton fibers from the seeds.

Whitney hoped to keep the design of the gin a secret, but the machine was so useful that his patent was often ignored by other manufacturers. Whitney described how his invention would improve the cotton business.

THE IMPACT TODAY

The same patent law that protected Whitney's invention of the cotton gin protects the rights of inventors today.

"One man will clean ten times as much cotton as he can in any other way before known and also clean it much better than in the usual mode [method]. This machine may be turned by water or with a horse, with the greatest ease, and one man and a horse will do more than fifty men with the old machines."

—Eli Whitney, quoted in *Eli Whitney and the Birth of American Technology* by Constance McLaughlin Green

Whitney's gin revolutionized the cotton industry. **Planters**—large-scale farmers who held more than 20 slaves—built cotton gins that could process tons of cotton much faster than hand processing. A healthy crop almost guaranteed financial success because of high demand from the textile industry.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**
What effects did the cotton gin have on the southern economy?

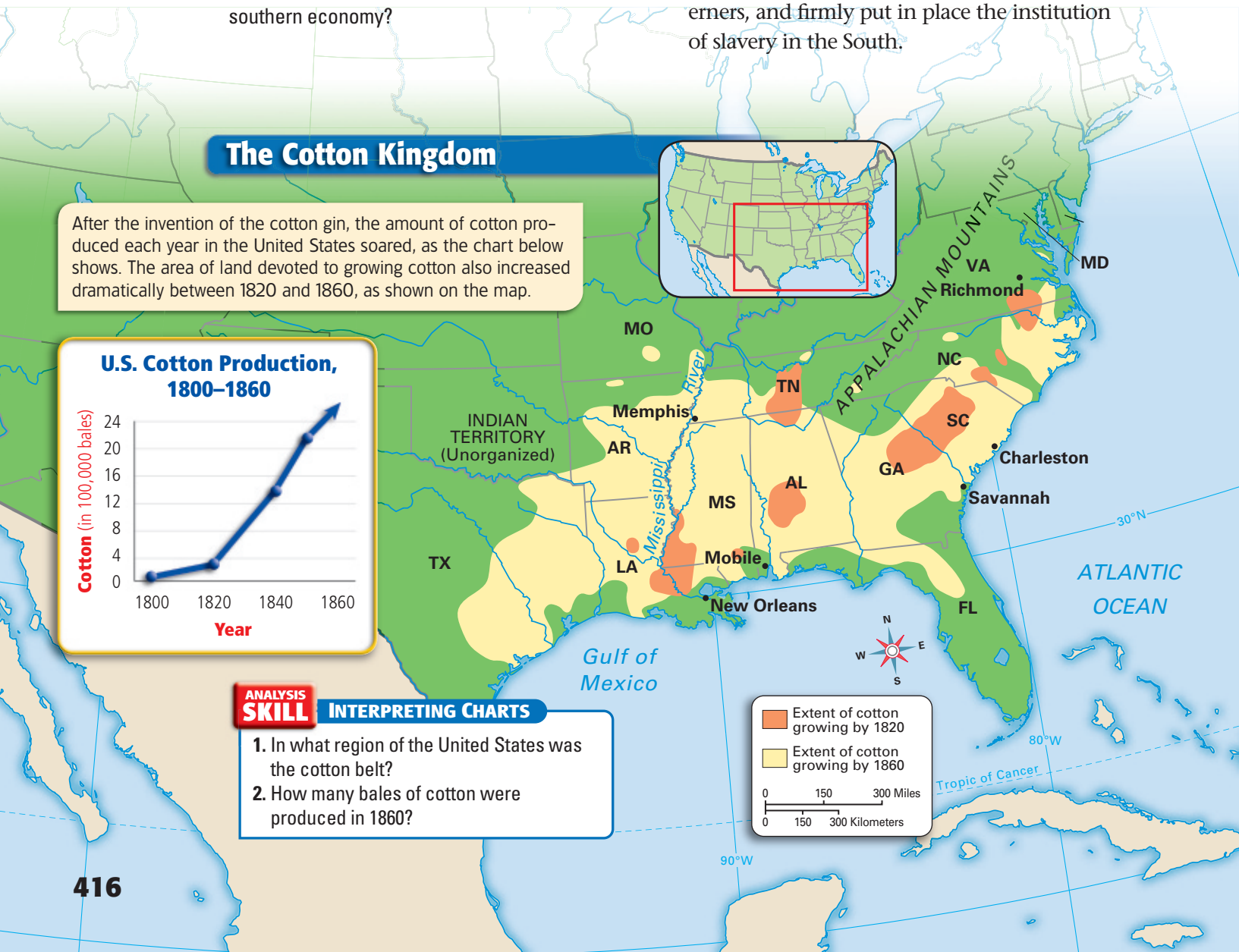
The Cotton Boom

Whitney's invention of the cotton gin made cotton so profitable that southern farmers abandoned other crops in favor of growing cotton. The removal of Native Americans opened up more land, while the development of new types of cotton plants helped spread cotton production throughout the South as far west as Texas. This area of high cotton production became known as the **cotton belt**.

Production increased rapidly—from about 2 million pounds in 1791 to roughly a billion pounds by 1860. As early as 1840, the United States was producing more than half of the cotton grown in the entire world. The economic boom attracted new settlers, built up wealth among wealthy white southerners, and firmly put in place the institution of slavery in the South.

The Cotton Kingdom

After the invention of the cotton gin, the amount of cotton produced each year in the United States soared, as the chart below shows. The area of land devoted to growing cotton also increased dramatically between 1820 and 1860, as shown on the map.



ANALYSIS SKILL **INTERPRETING CHARTS**

1. In what region of the United States was the cotton belt?
2. How many bales of cotton were produced in 1860?

Cotton Belt

Cotton had many advantages as a cash crop. It cost little to market. Unlike food staples, harvested cotton could be stored for a long time. Because cotton was lighter than other staple crops, it also cost less to transport long distances.

Farmers eager to profit from growing cotton headed west to find land. Farmers also began to apply scientific methods to improve crop production. Cotton had one disadvantage as a crop—it rapidly used up the nutrients in the soil. After a few years, cotton could make the land useless for growing anything. Some agricultural scientists recommended crop rotation—changing the crop grown on a particular plot of land every few years. Different crops needed different nutrients, so crop rotation would keep the land fertile longer. Other agricultural scientists began to study soil chemistry, in an effort to keep the land rich and productive.

As the cotton belt grew, farmers continued trying to improve the crop. Agricultural scientists worked at crossbreeding short-staple cotton with other varieties. As a result, new, stronger types of cotton were soon growing throughout the cotton belt. This led to expansion of the cotton industry through the 1860s.

The cotton boom involved much more than growing and harvesting cotton. Harvested cotton had to be ginned, pressed into bales, and then shipped to market or to warehouses. Special agents helped do everything from marketing cotton to customers to insuring crops against loss or damage. Factories were built to produce items needed by cotton farmers, such as ropes to bale cotton.

Growing and harvesting cotton required many field hands. Rather than pay wages to free workers, planters began to use more slave labor. Congress had made bringing slaves into the United States illegal in 1808. However, the growing demand for slaves led to an increase in the slave trade within the United States.

Cotton Trade

In an 1858 speech before the U.S. Senate, South Carolina politician James Henry Hammond declared, "Cotton is King!" Without cotton, Hammond claimed, the global economy would fail. He believed that southern cotton was one of the most valuable resources in the world. Southern cotton was used to make cloth in England and the North. Many southerners shared Hammond's viewpoints about cotton. Southerner David Christy declared, "King cotton is a profound [learned] statesman, and knows what measures will best sustain [protect] his throne."

The cotton boom made the South a major player in world trade. Great Britain became the South's most valued foreign trading partner. Southerners also sold tons of cotton to the growing textile industry in the northeastern United States. This increased trade led to the growth of major port cities in the South, including Charleston, South Carolina; Savannah, Georgia; and New Orleans, Louisiana.

In these cities, crop brokers called **factors** managed the cotton trade. Farmers sold their cotton to merchants, who then made deals with the factors. Merchants and factors also arranged loans for farmers who needed to buy supplies. They often advised farmers on how to invest profits. Once farmers got their cotton to the port cities, factors arranged for transportation aboard trading ships.

However, shipping cotton by land to port cities was very difficult in the South. The few major road projects at the time were limited to the Southeast. Most southern farmers had to ship their goods on the region's rivers. On the Ohio and Mississippi rivers, flatboats and steamboats carried cotton and other products to port. Eventually, hundreds of steamboats traveled up and down the mighty Mississippi River each day.

READING CHECK **Identifying Cause and Effect**
What effect did the cotton boom have on the slave trade within the United States?

THE IMPACT TODAY
The Port of New Orleans remains a major seaport. It handles about 85 million tons of cargo annually.

The South's Cotton Economy

Eli Whitney's cotton gin began the cotton boom. Soon, the Cotton Kingdom stretched across the South. For the cotton planters to succeed, they had to get their cotton to market.



Enslaved African Americans did most of the planting, harvesting, and processing of cotton.



Cotton was shipped on river steamboats to major ports such as Charleston.



From southern ports, sailing ships carried the cotton to distant textile mills.

Other Crops and Industries

Some leaders worried that the South was depending too much on cotton. They wanted southerners to try a variety of cash crops and investments.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
primary
main, most important

Food and Cash Crops

One such crop was corn, the **primary** southern food crop. By the late 1830s the top three corn-growing states in the nation were all in the South. The South's other successful food crops included rice, sweet potatoes, wheat, and sugarcane.

Production of tobacco, the South's first major cash crop, was very time consuming because tobacco leaves had to be cured, or dried, before they could be shipped to market. In 1839 a slave discovered a way to improve the drying process by using heat from burning charcoal. This new, faster curing process increased tobacco production.

Partly as a result of the cotton boom, hemp and flax also became major cash crops. Their fibers were used to make rope and sackcloth. Farmers used the rope and sackcloth to bundle cotton into bales.

Industry

Many of the first factories in the South were built to serve farmers' needs by processing crops such as sugarcane. In 1803 the nation's first steam-powered sawmill was built in Donaldsonville, Louisiana. This new technology enabled lumber companies to cut, sort, and clean wood quickly.

By the 1840s, entrepreneurs in Georgia began investing in cotton mills. In 1840, there were 14 cotton mills; by the mid-1850s, there were more than 50. A few mill owners followed the model established by Francis Cabot Lowell. However, most built small-scale factories on the falls of a river for waterpower. A few steam-powered mills were built in towns without enough waterpower.

Southerners such as Hinton Rowan Helper encouraged industrial growth in the South.

> "We should . . . keep pace with the progress of the age. We must expand our energies, and acquire habits of enterprise and industry; we should rouse ourselves from the couch of lassitude [laziness] and inure [set] our minds to thought and our bodies to action."
>
> — Hinton Rowan Helper, *The Impending Crisis of the South: How to Meet It*



A large amount of cotton was sold to textile mills in the northeastern United States.



Textile mills in Great Britain were the largest foreign buyers of southern cotton.

ANALYSIS SKILL **DRAWING CONCLUSIONS**

Why do you think cotton was so important to the South's economy?

Joseph R. Anderson followed Helper's advice. In 1848 Anderson became the owner of the **Tredegar Iron Works** in Richmond, Virginia—one of the most productive iron works in the nation. It was the only factory to produce bridge materials, cannons, steam engines, and other products.

Industry, however, remained a small part of the southern economy. Southern industry faced stiff competition from the North and from England, both of which could produce many goods more cheaply. And as long as agricultural profits remained high, southern investors preferred to invest in land.

READING CHECK **Making Inferences** Why were there fewer industries in the South?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW You have read about how southern farmers worked to improve farming methods. In the next section you will read about the structure of southern society.

FOCUS ON READING

What kind of Web site would you look for to learn more about the Tredegar Iron Works?

Section 1 Assessment

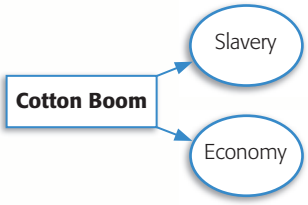
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP13

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** How did the **cotton gin** make processing cotton easier?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why had slavery been on the decline before the invention of the cotton gin? How did slavery change as a result of the cotton gin?
   c. Predict How might the rise of cotton production and slavery affect Southern society?
2. **a. Identify** What areas of the United States made up the **cotton belt**?
   b. Evaluate Do you think the South should have paid more attention to its industrial growth? Why?
3. **a. Describe** What other crops and industries were encouraged in the South?
   b. Make Inferences Why were some southern leaders worried about the South's reliance on cotton?

Critical Thinking

4. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on the causes of the cotton boom. Then add to your graphic organizer by identifying the effects of the cotton boom on the South.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Noting Life on the Cotton Farm** In your notebook, note how Whitney's gin changed life on the farm. Also note other details about cotton farming you could include in your sketch.

SECTION 2

Southern Society

If YOU were there...

Your family owns a small farm in Georgia in the 1840s. Sometimes you work in the fields, but more often you tend the vegetable garden and peach orchard. Since you have no close neighbors, you look forward to Sundays. Going to church gives you a chance to socialize with other young people. Sometimes you wonder what it would be like to live in a city like Savannah.

How would life be different if you left the farm for the city?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Although the South had some industry, agriculture was the heart of the southern economy. Cotton was king. As a result, wealthy plantation families were the most prominent social class in southern society. Small farmers, however, made up the largest part of the population.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Southern society and culture consisted of four main groups.
2. Free African Americans in the South faced a great deal of discrimination.

The Big Idea

Southern society centered around agriculture.

Key Term

yeomen, *p. 422*

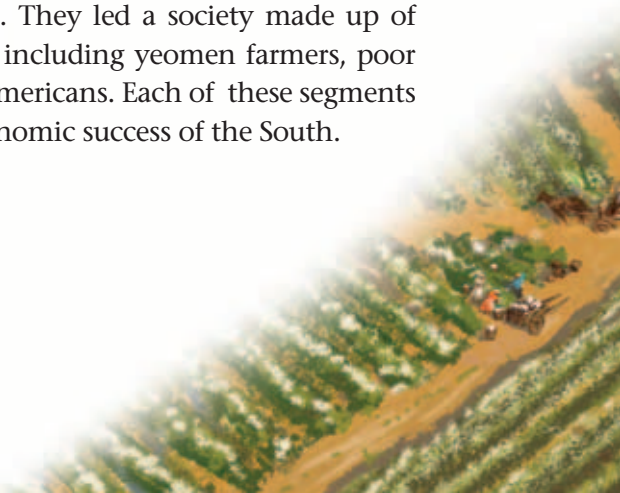
TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the different segments of southern society. Record the information you find in a graphic organizer like the one below.

Group	Life
Planters	
Yeomen	
Poor Whites	
Free African Americans	

Southern Society and Culture

Popular fiction often made it seem that all white southerners had many slaves and lived on large plantations. Many fiction writers wrote about wealthy southern families who had frequent, grand parties. The ideal image of the Antebellum (before the war) South included hospitality and well-treated slaves on beautiful plantations that almost ran themselves.

This romantic view was far from the reality. During the first half of the 1800s, only about one-third of white southern families had slaves. Fewer families had plantations. Despite their small numbers, these planters had a powerful influence over the South. Many served as political leaders. They led a society made up of many different kinds of people, including yeomen farmers, poor whites, slaves, and free African Americans. Each of these segments of society contributed to the economic success of the South.



Planters

As the wealthiest members of southern society, planters also greatly influenced the economy. Some showed off their wealth by living in beautiful mansions. Many others chose to live more simply. A visitor described wealthy planter Alexander Stephens's estate as "an old wooden house" surrounded by weeds. Some planters saved all of their money to buy more land and slaves.

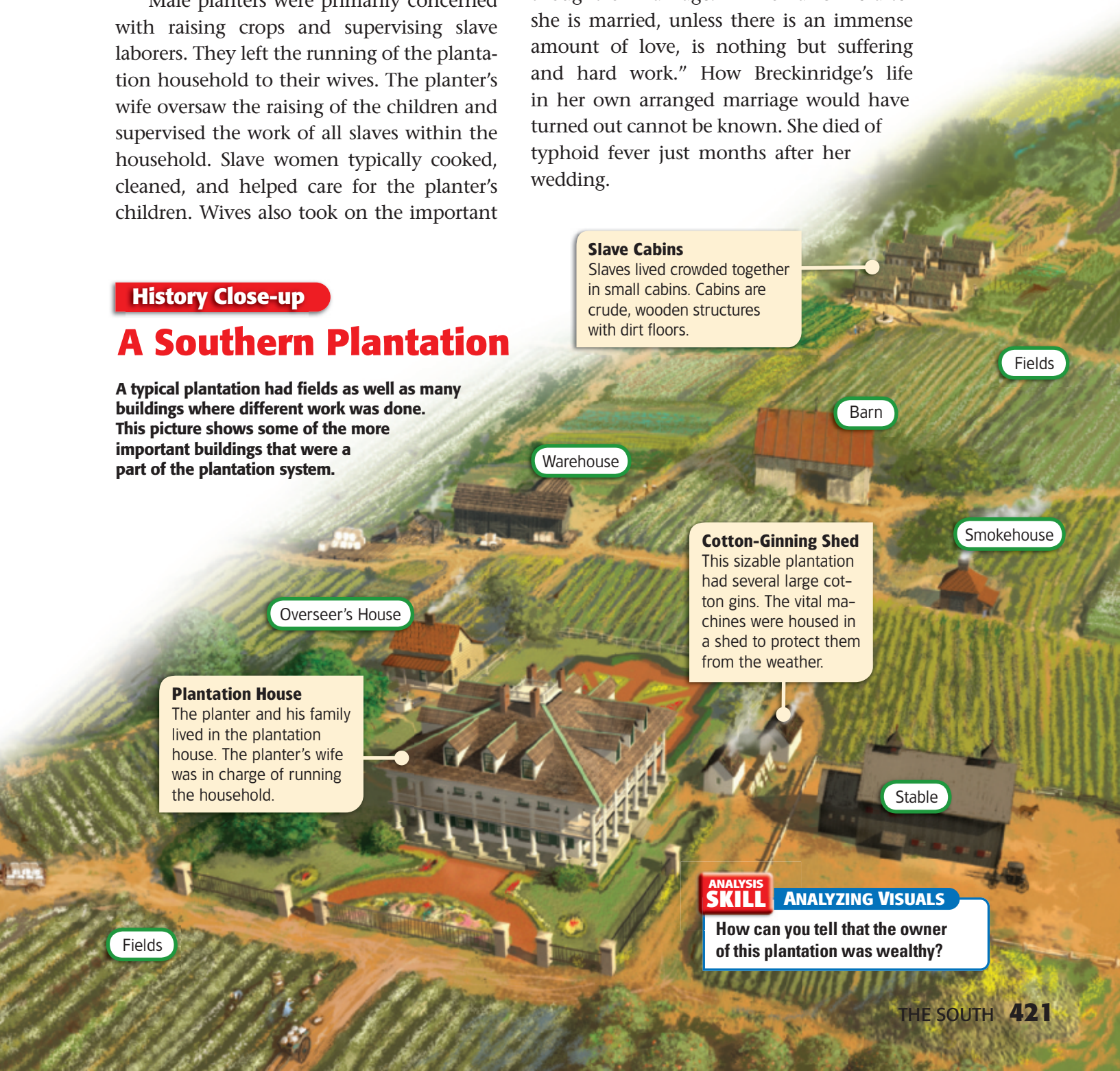
Male planters were primarily concerned with raising crops and supervising slave laborers. They left the running of the plantation household to their wives. The planter's wife oversaw the raising of the children and supervised the work of all slaves within the household. Slave women typically cooked, cleaned, and helped care for the planter's children. Wives also took on the important social duties of the family. For example, many southern leaders discussed political issues at the dances and dinners hosted by their wives.

Planters often arranged their children's marriages based on business interests. Lucy Breckinridge, the daughter of a wealthy Virginia planter, was married by arrangement in 1865. Three years earlier, she had described in her journal how she dreaded the very thought of marriage. "A woman's life after she is married, unless there is an immense amount of love, is nothing but suffering and hard work." How Breckinridge's life in her own arranged marriage would have turned out cannot be known. She died of typhoid fever just months after her wedding.

History Close-up

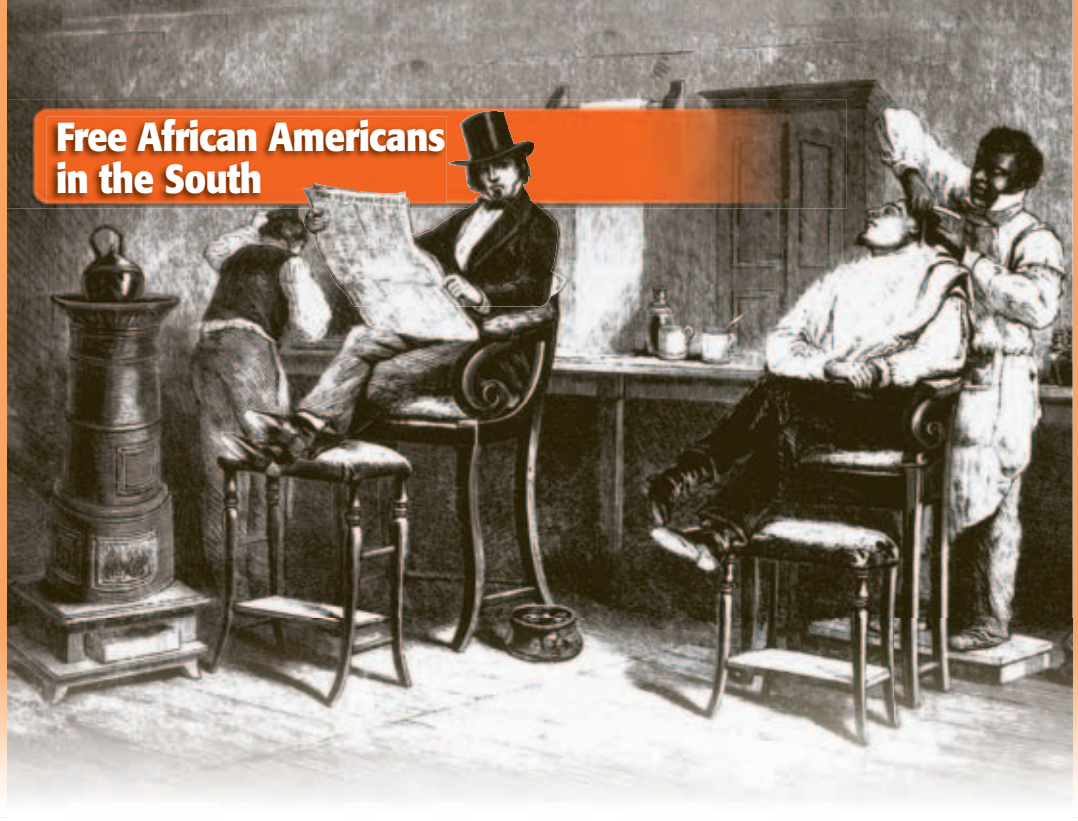
A Southern Plantation

A typical plantation had fields as well as many buildings where different work was done. This picture shows some of the more important buildings that were a part of the plantation system.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

How can you tell that the owner of this plantation was wealthy?



Free African Americans in the South



Collection of The American Numismatic Society, New York

In 1860 about 1 out of 50 African Americans in the South was free. Many worked in skilled trades, like this barber in Richmond, Virginia. In Charleston, South Carolina, a system of badges was set up to distinguish between free African Americans and slaves.

How would the work of the free African American in this picture be different from that of slaves in the South?

Yeomen and Poor Whites

Most white southerners were **yeomen**, owners of small farms. Yeomen owned few slaves or none at all. The typical farm averaged 100 acres. Yeomen took great pride in their work. In 1849 a young Georgia man wrote, "I desire above all things to be a 'Farmer.' It is the most honest, upright, and sure way of securing all the comforts of life."

Yeoman families, including women and children, typically worked long days at a variety of tasks. Some yeomen held a few slaves but worked alongside them.

The poorest of white southerners lived on land that could not grow cash crops. They survived by hunting, fishing, raising small gardens, and doing odd jobs for money.

Religion and Society

Most white southerners shared similar religious beliefs. Because of the long distances between farms, families often saw their neighbors only at church events, such as revivals or socials. Rural women often played volunteer roles in their churches. Wealthy white southerners thought that their religion justified their position in society and the institution of slavery. They argued that God created some people, like themselves, to rule others. This belief opposed many northern Christians' belief that God was against slavery.

Urban Life

Many of the largest and most important cities in the South were strung along the Atlantic coast and had begun as shipping centers. Although fewer in number, the southern cities were similar to northern cities. City governments built public water systems and provided well-maintained streets. Public education was available in a few places. Wealthy residents occasionally gave large sums of money to charities, such as orphanages and public libraries. Southern urban leaders wanted their cities to appear as modern as possible.

As on plantations, slaves did much of the work in southern cities. Slaves worked as domestic servants, in mills, in shipyards, and at skilled jobs. Many business leaders held slaves or hired them from nearby plantations.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What different groups made up southern society?

Free African Americans and Discrimination

Although the vast majority of African Americans in the South were enslaved, more than 250,000 free African Americans lived in the region by 1860. Some were descendants of slaves who were freed after the American Revolution. Others were descendants of refugees from Toussaint L'Ouverture's Haitian Revolution in the late 1790s. Still others were former slaves who had run away, been freed by their slaveholder, or earned enough money to buy their freedom.

Free African Americans lived in both rural and urban areas. Most lived in the countryside and worked as paid laborers on plantations or farms. Free African Americans in cities often worked a variety of jobs, mostly as skilled artisans. Some, like barber William Johnson of Natchez, Mississippi, became quite successful in their businesses. Frequently, free African Americans, especially those in the cities, formed social and economic ties with one another. Churches often served as the center of their social lives.

Free African Americans faced constant discrimination from white southerners. Many governments passed laws limiting the rights of free African Americans. Most free African Americans could not vote, travel freely, or hold certain jobs. In some places, free African Americans had to have a white person represent them in any business transaction. In others, laws restricted where they were allowed to live or conduct business.

Many white southerners argued that free African Americans did not have the ability to take care of themselves, and they used this belief to justify the institution of slavery. "The status of slavery is the only one for which the African is adapted," wrote one white Mississippian. To many white southerners, the very existence of free African Americans threatened the institution of slavery.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What challenges did free African Americans face in the South?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Southern society was led by rich planters but included groups of small farmers, slaves, and free African Americans as well. These groups each had their own culture. In the next section you will read about life under slavery.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

Slavery was legal in New York City from its beginnings as a Dutch colony. About 40 percent of households in colonial New York City owned slaves, and the practice was not completely banned until 1841, 65 years after the Declaration of Independence was signed. Most enslaved African Americans in cities were either household help or skilled craftspeople.

Section 2 Assessment

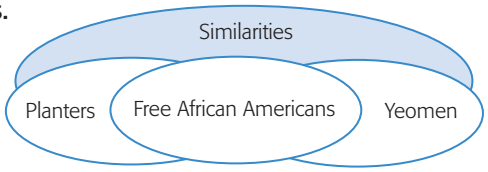
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP13

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What was the largest social group in the South? How did its members make a living?
   b. Compare In what ways were southern cities similar to northern cities?
   c. Elaborate Which southern social class do you think had the most difficult life? Why?
2. **a. Describe** What jobs were available to free African Americans in the South? Why were these jobs the only ones available?
   b. Analyze Why did many white southerners fear free African Americans?
   c. Elaborate Why do you think that discrimination against free African Americans was harsher in the South than in the North?

Critical Thinking

3. **Comparing and Contrasting** Review your notes on the different kinds of people who lived in the South. Then use a graphic organizer like the one below to identify the similarities and differences of the lives of planters, yeomen, and free African Americans.



FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Describing the Life of Cotton Farmers** In your notebook, describe the different roles played by male planters and their wives. What challenges would female planters have faced? When would the planters have had a chance to socialize?

SECTION 3

The Slave System

If YOU were there...

You are a reporter for a newspaper in Philadelphia in the 1850s. You are writing a series of articles about the slave system in the South. To get background for your stories, you are planning to interview some former slaves who now live in Philadelphia. Some have bought their freedom, while others have successfully escaped from slavery.

What questions will you ask in your interviews?

BUILDING BACKGROUND While most white southern families were not slaveholders, the southern economy depended on the work of slaves. This was true not only on large plantations but also on smaller farms and in the cities. Few chances existed for enslaved African Americans to escape their hard lives.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Slaves worked at a variety of jobs on plantations.
2. Life under slavery was difficult and dehumanizing.
3. Slave culture centered around family, community, and religion.
4. Slave uprisings led to stricter slave codes in many states.

The Big Idea

The slave system in the South produced harsh living conditions and occasional rebellions.

Key Terms and People

folktales, *p. 427*
spirituals, *p. 427*
Nat Turner's Rebellion, *p. 428*
Nat Turner, *p. 428*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the slavery system in a graphic organizer like the one shown below.

	Life as an Enslaved Person
Work	
Life	
Culture	

Slaves and Work

Most enslaved African Americans lived in rural areas where they worked on farms and plantations. Enslaved people on small farms usually did a variety of jobs. On large plantations, most slaves were assigned to specific jobs, and most worked in the fields. Most slaveholders demanded that slaves work as much as possible. Supervisors known as drivers, who were sometimes slaves themselves, made sure that slaves followed orders and carried out punishments.

Working in the Field

Most plantation owners used the gang-labor system. In this system, all field hands worked on the same task at the same time. They usually worked from sunup to sundown. Former slave Harry McMillan had worked on a plantation in South Carolina. He recalled that the field hands usually did not even get a break to eat lunch. "You had to get your victuals [food] standing at your hoe," he remembered.

Men, women, and even children older than about 10 usually did the same tasks. Sickness and poor weather rarely stopped the work. "The times I hated most was picking cotton when the frost was on the bolls [seed pods]," recalled former Louisiana slave Mary Reynolds. "My hands git sore and crack open and bleed."

Working in the Planter's Home

Some slaves worked as butlers, cooks, or nurses in the planter's home. These slaves often had better food, clothing, and shelter than field hands did, but they often worked longer hours. They had to serve the planter's family 24 hours a day.

Working at Skilled Jobs

On larger plantations, some enslaved African Americans worked at skilled jobs, such as blacksmithing or carpentry. Sometimes planters let these slaves sell their services to other people. Often planters collected a portion of what was earned but allowed slaves to keep the rest. In this way, some skilled slaves earned enough money to buy their freedom from their slaveholders. For example, William Ellison earned his freedom in South Carolina by working for wages as a cotton gin maker. For years, he worked late at night and on Sundays. He bought his freedom with the money he earned. Eventually, he was also able to buy the freedom of his wife and daughter.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were some types of work done by enslaved people on plantations?

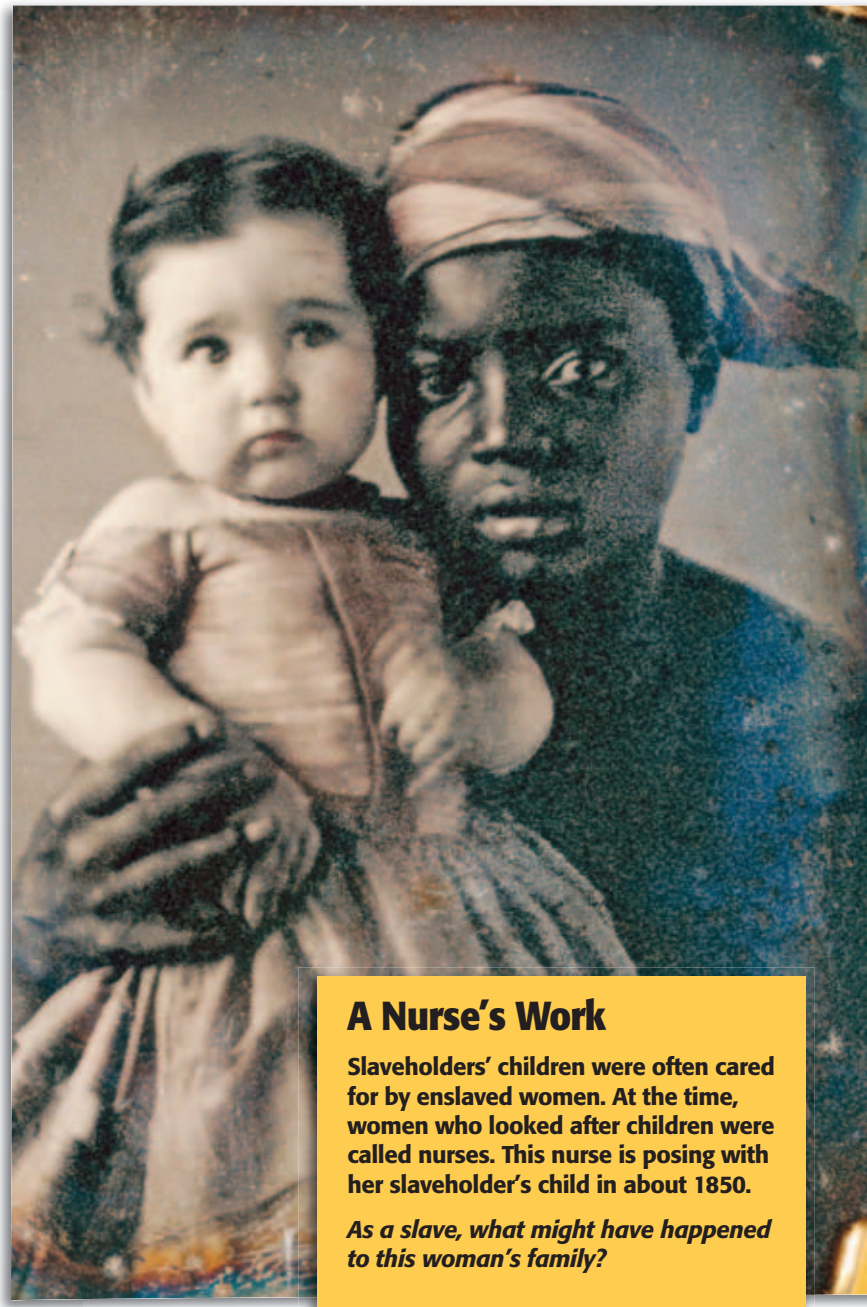
Life Under Slavery

Generally, slaveholders viewed slaves as property, not as people. Slaveholders bought and sold slaves to make a profit. The most common method of sale was at an auction. The auction itself determined whether families would be kept together or separated. Sometimes a buyer wanted a slave to fill a specific job, such as heavy laborer, carpenter, or blacksmith. The buyer might be willing to pay for the slave who could do the work, but not for that slave's family. Families would then be separated with little hope of ever getting back together.

Slave traders sometimes even kidnapped free African Americans and then sold them into slavery. For example, Solomon Northup, a free African American, was kidnapped in Washington, D.C. He spent 12 years as a slave until he finally proved his identity and gained his release.

Living Conditions

Enslaved people often endured poor living conditions. Planters housed them in dirt-floor cabins with few furnishings and often leaky roofs. The clothing given to them was usually simple and made of cheap, coarse fabric. Some slaves tried to brighten up their



A Nurse's Work

Slaveholders' children were often cared for by enslaved women. At the time, women who looked after children were called nurses. This nurse is posing with her slaveholder's child in about 1850.

As a slave, what might have happened to this woman's family?

clothing by sewing on designs from discarded scraps of material. In this way, they expressed their individuality and personalized the clothing assigned to them by the planters.

Likewise, many slaves did what they could to improve their small food rations. Some planters allowed slaves to keep their own gardens for vegetables, and chickens for eggs. Other slaves were able to add a little variety to their diet by fishing or picking wild berries.

Punishment and Slave Codes

Some planters offered more food or better living conditions to encourage slaves' obedience. However, most slaveholders used punishment instead. Some would punish one slave in front of others as a warning to them all. Harry McMillan recalled some of the punishments he had witnessed.

> "The punishments were whipping, putting you in the stocks [wooden frames to lock people in] and making you wear irons and a chain at work. Then they had a collar to put round your neck with two horns, like cows' horns, so that you could not lie down . . . Sometimes they dug a hole like a well with a door on top. This they called a dungeon keeping you in it two or three weeks or a month, or sometimes till you died in there."

—Harry McMillan, quoted in *Major Problems in the History of the American South, Volume I*, edited by Paul D. Escott and David R. Goldfield

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
aspect part

To further control slaves' actions, many states passed strict laws called slave codes. Some laws prohibited slaves from traveling far from their homes. Literacy laws in most southern states prohibited the education of slaves. Alabama, Virginia, and Georgia had laws that allowed the fining and whipping of anyone caught teaching enslaved people to read and write.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did slaveholders control slaves?



Slave Culture

Many enslaved Africans found comfort in their community and culture. They made time for social activity, even after exhausting workdays, in order to relieve the hardship of their lives.

Family and Community

Family was the most important **aspect** of slave communities, and many slaves feared separation more than they feared punishment. Josiah Henson never forgot the day that he and his family were auctioned. His mother begged the slaveholder who bought her to buy Josiah, too. The slaveholder refused, and Henson's entire family was separated. "I must have been then between five or six years old," he recalled years later. "I seem to see and hear my poor weeping mother now."



Hauling the Whole Week's Pickings by William Henry Brown, The Historic New Orleans Collection



The lives of slaves revolved around the work that was required of them. For many, this meant doing the backbreaking work of harvesting and loading tons of cotton. Most slaves found hope and a short escape from their daily misery in Sunday church services. Others sought to escape permanently and ran away, hoping to reach the freedom of the North. A failed escape attempt, however, could result in a cruel whipping—or worse.

What different aspects of slavery are shown in these pictures?

Enslaved parents kept their heritage alive by passing down family histories as well as African customs and traditions. They also told **folktales**, or stories with a moral, to teach lessons about how to survive under slavery. Folktales often included a clever animal character called a trickster. The trickster—which often represented slaves—defeated a stronger animal by outwitting it. Folktales reassured slaves that they could survive by outsmarting more powerful slaveholders.

Religion

Religion also played an important part in slave culture. By the early 1800s many slaves were Christians. They came to see themselves, like the slaves in the Old Testament, as God's chosen people, much like the Hebrew slaves in ancient Egypt who had faith that they would someday live in freedom.

Some slaves sang **spirituals**, emotional Christian songs that blended African and European music, to express their religious beliefs. For example, "The Heavenly Road" reflected slaves' belief in their equality in the eyes of God.

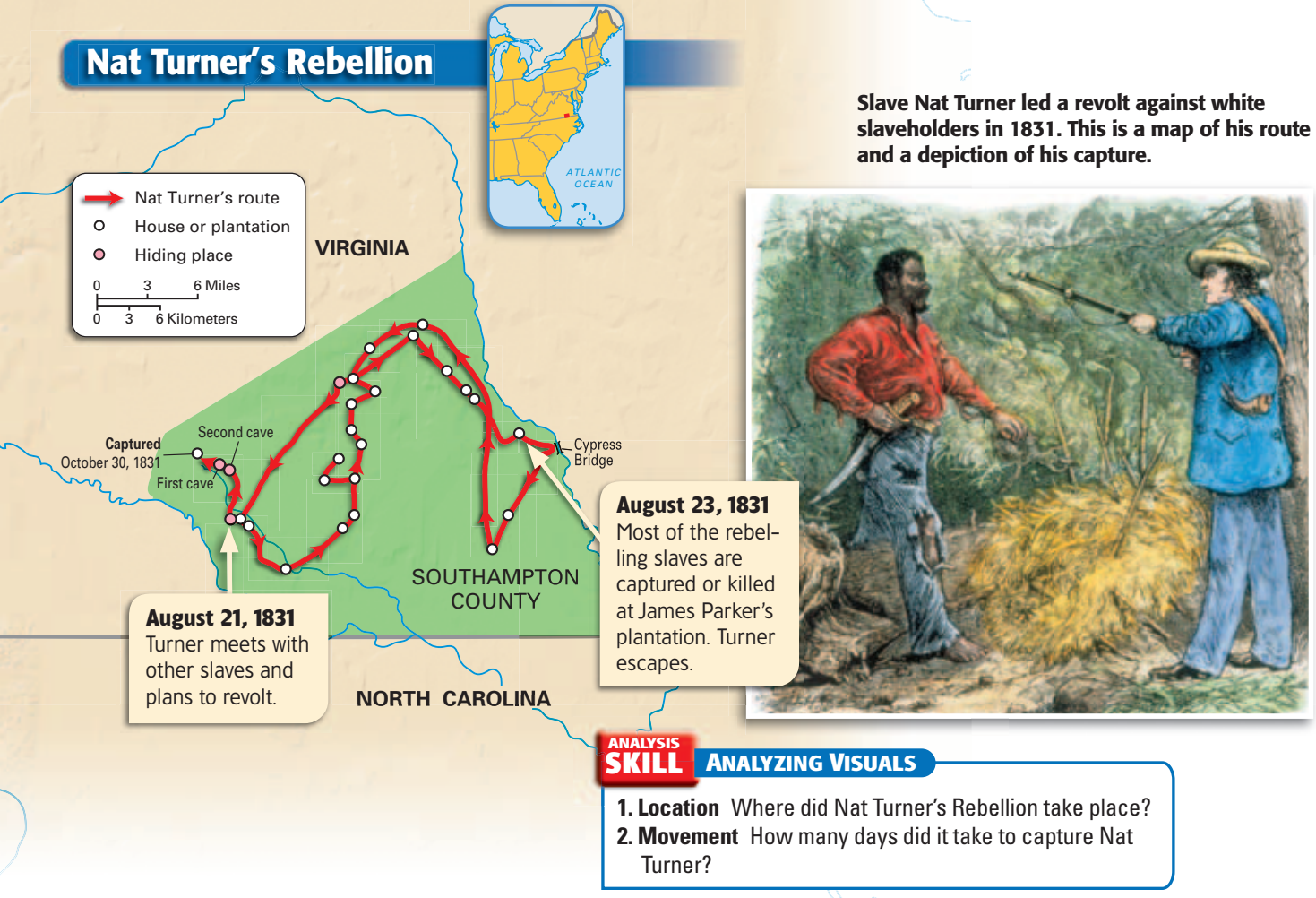
> "Come, my brother, if you never did pray,
> I hope you pray tonight;
> For I really believe I am a child of God
> As I walk on the heavenly road."

—Anonymous, quoted in *Afro-American Religious History*, edited by Milton C. Sernett

Slaves blended some aspects of their traditional African religions with those of the Christianity that the slaveholders followed. They worshipped in secret, out of sight of slaveholders. Some historians have called slave religion the invisible institution.

THE IMPACT TODAY

The musical influence of these inspirational slave songs can be heard today in gospel music.



Slave Nat Turner led a revolt against white slaveholders in 1831. This is a map of his route and a depiction of his capture.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

1. **Location** Where did Nat Turner's Rebellion take place?
2. **Movement** How many days did it take to capture Nat Turner?

Seeds of Rebellion

Maintaining their own religious beliefs and practices was only one way in which enslaved people resisted slaveholders' attempts to control them completely. In small ways, slaves rebelled against the system daily. Sometimes they worked slower to protest long hours in the fields. Other times they ran away for a few days to avoid an angry slaveholder. Some slaves tried to escape permanently, but most left only for short periods, often to go and visit relatives.

Gaining freedom by escaping to the North was hard. If discovered, slaves were captured and sent back to their slaveholders, where they faced certain punishment or death. However, thousands of enslaved people succeeded in escaping.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did slaves' religious beliefs affect their attitudes toward slavery?

Slave Uprisings

Although violent slave revolts were relatively rare, white southerners lived in fear of them. Two planned rebellions were stopped before they began. Gabriel Prosser planned a rebellion near Richmond, Virginia, in 1800. Denmark Vesey planned one in Charleston, South Carolina, in 1822. Local authorities executed most of those involved in planning these rebellions. Though Vesey was executed as the leader of the Charleston conspiracy, several accounts written after his death by anti-slavery writers claimed he was a hero.

The most violent slave revolt in the country occurred in 1831 and is known as **Nat Turner's Rebellion**. **Nat Turner**, a slave from Southampton County, Virginia, believed that God had told him to end slavery. On an August night in 1831, Turner led a group of slaves in a plan to kill all of the slaveholders and their families in the county. First, they

attacked the family that held Turner as a slave. Soon they had killed about 60 white people in the community.

More than 100 innocent slaves who were not part of Turner's group were killed in an attempt to stop the rebellion. Turner himself led authorities on a chase around the countryside for six weeks. He hid in caves and in the woods before he was caught and brought to trial. Before his trial, Turner made a confession. He expressed his belief that the revolt was justified and worth his death: "I am willing to suffer the fate that awaits me." Turner was executed on November 11, 1831. After the rebellion, many states strengthened their slave codes. The new codes placed stricter control on enslaved people. Despite resistance, slavery continued to spread.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas**

What was Nat Turner's Rebellion, and what happened as a result?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Several groups of African Americans attempted to end slavery by rebellion. All of the attempts failed. In the next chapter you will read about efforts to reform American society.

Primary Source

LETTER

Nat Turner's Rebellion

In 1831 a white southerner who had escaped the rebellion wrote a letter describing the mood of the area where Nat Turner had killed slaveholders.

"The oldest inhabitants of our county have never experienced such a distressing [terrible] time, as we have had since Sunday night last. The [slaves], about fifteen miles from this place, have massacred from 50 to 75 women and children, and some 8 or 10 men. Every house, room and corner in this place is full of women and children, driven from home, who had to take to the woods, until they could get to this place. We are worn out with fatigue [tiredness]."

—*Richmond Enquirer*, quoted in *The Southampton Slave Revolt of 1831* by Henry I. Tragle

The author believes no one in the county has been through a worse event.

The author says that many people went into hiding when the rebellion began.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

What emotions do you think the author of this letter was feeling?

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP13

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What different types of work were done by slaves on plantations?
   b. Elaborate Do you think that skilled slaves had advantages over other slaves? Why or why not?
2. **a. Describe** What were living conditions like for most slaves?
   b. Summarize In what different ways did slaveholders encourage obedience from their slaves?
3. **a. Recall** What was the purpose of African American **folktales**?
   b. Explain How did slaves try to maintain a sense of community?
4. **a. Describe** What was the outcome of **Nat Turner's Rebellion**?
   b. Elaborate What do you think were some reasons why slaves rebelled?

Critical Thinking

5. **Evaluating** Review your notes on the slavery system. Then use a graphic organizer like the one shown below to identify the two most important reasons enslaved people challenged the system as well as how they did so.

Reasons for Challenging Slavery	→	Ways of Challenging Slavery

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Describing the Life of Slaves** Add notes about the life of slaves to your notebook. What would it have been like to be a slave? How would it have felt to have been separated from your family?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Interpreting Graphs

Define the Skill

Graphs are drawings that classify and display data in a clear, visual format. There are three basic types of graphs. *Line graphs* and *bar graphs* plot changes in quantities over time. Bar graphs are also used to compare quantities within a category at a particular time. *Circle graphs,* also called *pie graphs,* have a similar use. The circle represents the whole of something, and the slices show what proportion of the whole is made by each part.

Being able to interpret graphs accurately lets you see and understand relationships more easily than in tables or in written explanations. This is especially true if the information is detailed or the relationships are complicated.

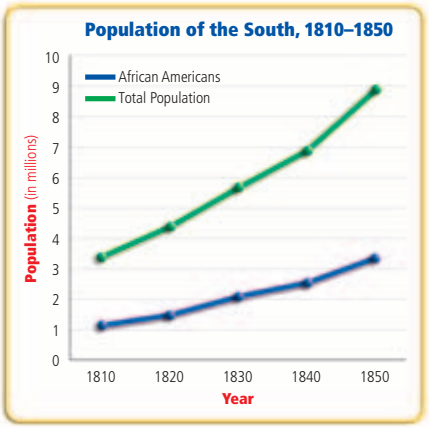
Learn the Skill

The following guidelines will help you interpret data that is presented as a graph.

1. Read the title to identify the subject and purpose of the graph. Note the kind of graph, remembering what each type is designed to indicate. Also note how the graph's subject relates to any printed material that accompanies it.
2. Study the graph's parts. Place close attention to the labels that define each axis. Note the units of measure. Identify the categories used. If there are different colors on bars or lines in the graph, determine what those differences mean.
3. Analyze the data in the graph. Note any increases or decreases in quantities. Look for trends, changes, and other relationships in the data.
4. Apply the information in the graph. Use the results of your analysis to draw conclusions. Ask yourself what generalizations can be made about the trends, changes, or relationships shown in the graph.

Practice the Skill

The graph below is a double-line graph. It shows both changes and relationships over time. This type of graph allows you to see how changes in one thing compare with changes in something else. Apply the guidelines to interpret the graph and answer the questions that follow.



1. What is shown on each axis of this graph? What are the units of measure on each axis?
2. What do each of the lines represent?
3. What was the total population of the South in 1810? in 1850? By how much did the African American population grow during that period?
4. Was the white population or the African American population growing faster? Explain how you know.

CHAPTER 13

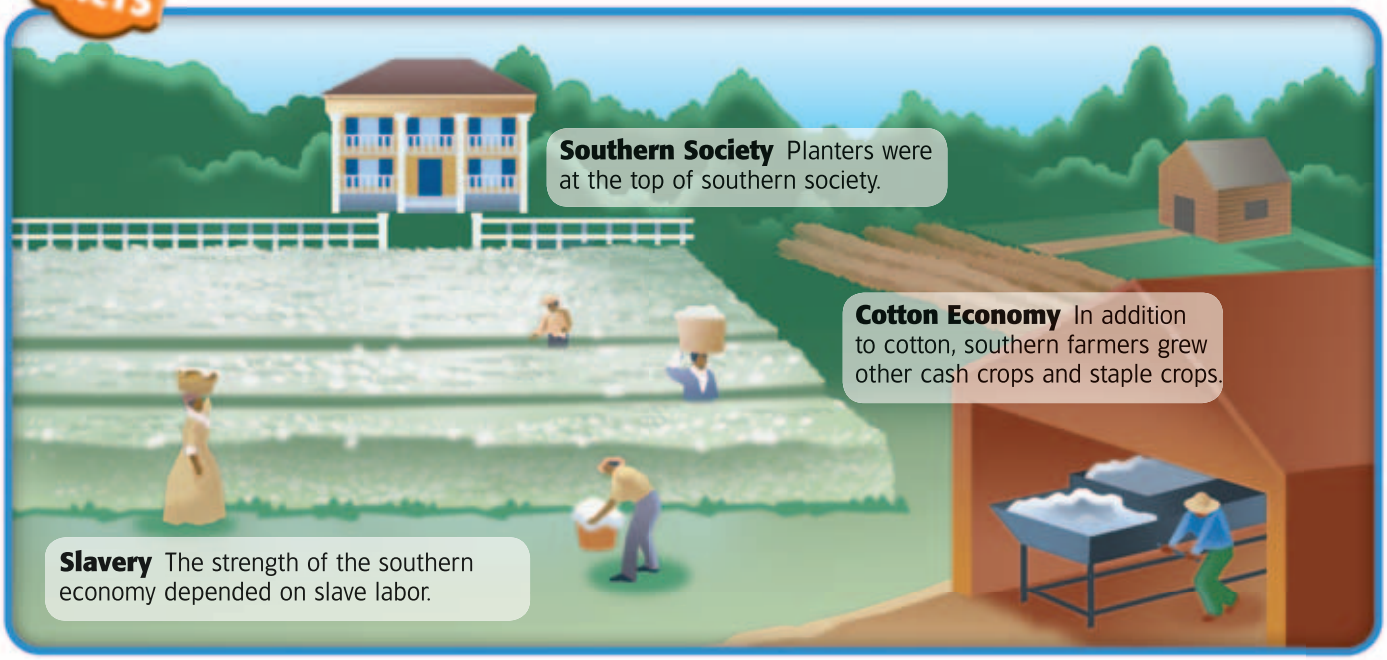
Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
What could Silicon Valley learn from the economic and industrial past (and present) of the South?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Match the definition on the left with the correct term on the right.

1. A region of cotton-producing areas that stretched from South Carolina to Texas
2. Emotional songs that mixed African and European music and expressed religious beliefs
3. Owners of small farms who made up the largest social class in the South
4. Crop brokers who often managed the cotton trade in the South
5. Wealthy farmers and plantation owners

a. cotton belt
b. factors
c. planters
d. spirituals
e. yeomen

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 414–419)*

6. **a. Describe** How did the cotton gin lead to a cotton boom in the South?

b. Analyze What were the positive and negative results of the cotton boom?

c. Evaluate Do you think that the South suffered as a result of its reliance on cotton? Why or why not?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 420–423)*

7. **a. Describe** What three groups made up white southern society?

b. Compare and Contrast In what ways were the lives of free African Americans and white southerners similar and different?

c. Predict What might have been the attitude of yeomen and poor white southerners toward slavery? Why?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 424–429)*

8. a. Identify What are some small ways in which slaves tried to challenge the slave system?

b. Make Inferences How did religion and family help slaves cope with their lives?

c. Predict What could be some possible results of stronger strengthening of slave codes in the South?

Reading Skills

Online Research *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question below.*

9. Which of the following would be the best Web site to find information about life in the South before the Civil War?

a. a Civil War historian's homepage

b. a collection of autobiographies written by slaves

c. a site with information about how to grow cotton

d. a collection of biographies of inventors

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY13

10. Activity: Writing Diary Entries Enslaved African Americans faced harsh working and living conditions. Many tried to escape the slave system. Enter the activity keyword and research the attempts by enslaved African Americans to reach the North and the people who assisted them. Imagine you were trying to help slaves travel to freedom. Write four entries into a diary. In each entry, describe your experiences. Include thumbnail maps to trace their trip.



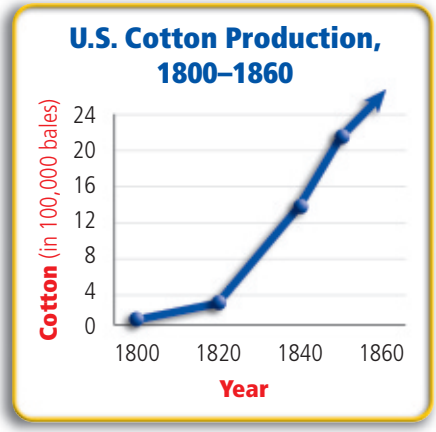
Reviewing Themes

11. Society and Culture How were the different social classes in the South affected by the cotton boom?

12. Economics How did the cotton boom affect the economy of the South?

Social Studies Skills

Interpreting Graphs *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the questions about the graph below.*



13. What span of time saw the largest increase in cotton production?

a. 1800 to 1820 **c.** 1840 to 1860

b. 1820 to 1840 **d.** after 1860

14. About what year did cotton production reach 1.2 million bales per year?

a. 1800 **c.** 1840

b. 1820 **d.** 1860

FOCUS ON WRITING

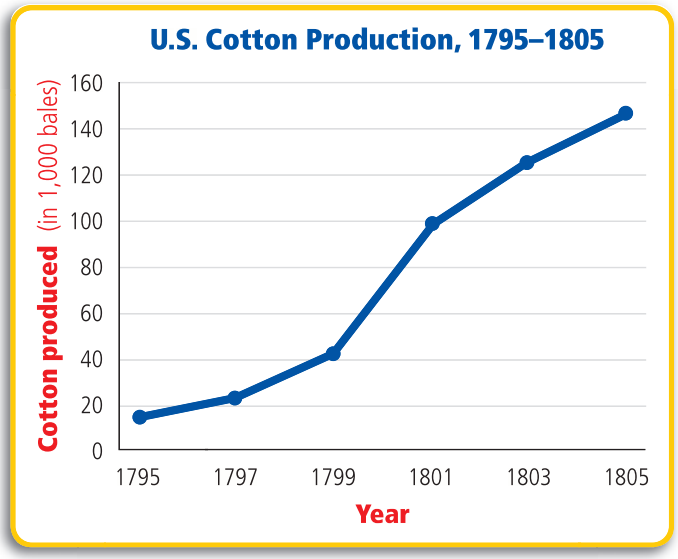
15. Writing Your Biographical Sketch Look over your notes about life on a cotton farm. Then choose an imaginary person to write about. Think about what life would have been like for this person. What might he or she have looked like? How might he or she have spoken? What might a typical day have been like? Once you have answered these questions, write two paragraphs about a day in the life of this person.

CHAPTER 13

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1



The *main* reason for the changes shown in the graph was

A the invention and use of the cotton gin.
B a decline in the number of slaves.
C the end of the international slave trade.
D a switch from food crops to cash crops.

2 **Which of the following helped enslaved African Americans to endure and survive slavery?**

A their work
B spirituals
C slave codes
D rebellions

3 **Because some southerners feared farmers had become too reliant on cotton, they encouraged farmers to**

A stop using the cotton gin.
B try growing a variety of cash crops.
C demand higher tariffs.
D introduce cotton and slavery to the West.

4 **Which statement accurately describes southern society in the mid-1800s?**

A Very few white southerners owned slaves.
B Few white southerners owned the land they farmed.
C Many African Americans in the South owned land.
D Most white southerners were small farmers.

5 **Free African Americans in the South in the early and mid-1800s**

A had the same rights and freedoms as white southerners.
B had few rights and freedoms.
C usually had escaped from slavery.
D could travel freely in their home states.

6 **Examine the following passage from a northern woman's journal of her stay in Georgia and then use it to answer the question below.**

> "On my return from the river I had a long and painful talk with Mr. Butler on the subject of the whipping of Teresa [a slave worn out from childbearing and field work, who asked the author to try to get her workload reduced]. Those discussions are terrible. They throw me into great distress [worry] for the slaves, whose position is completely hopeless; for myself, whose efforts on their behalf sometimes seem to me worse than useless; and for Mr. Butler, whose part in this horrible system fills me by turns with anger and pity."
>
> –Frances Anne Kemble, adapted from *Journal of a Residence on a Georgian Plantation in 1838–1839*

Document-Based Question **What might be the differences between Kemble and Butler on the question of slavery?**

CHAPTER 14 1815–1850

New Movements in America

Focus Question

What were the causes and effects of national growth?

SECTION 1
Immigrants and Urban Challenges 438
Quick Facts Push-Pull Factors of Immigration
History Close-up New York City, Mid-1800s

SECTION 2
American Arts 443
Connect to the Arts Art of the Romantic Movement

SECTION 3
Reforming Society 448
Focus on New York City The NYPD
Focus on New York City Children's Aid Society

SECTION 4
The Movement to End Slavery 454
Focus on New York Sojourner Truth
Focus on New York The *Amistad*

SECTION 5
Women's Rights 461
Time Line Women's Rights

Focus on Writing

Persuasive Letter Your local newspaper is running a competition for students to answer the question, "What event or movement in history had the greatest impact on life in the United States?" This chapter tells about many important events and movements in the United States. As you read, take notes on each. Then decide which you believe has most affected life for people in the United States. Write a letter to the newspaper arguing your position.



United States

1817
Thomas Gallaudet founds a school for people who have hearing impairments.

1820

World

1824
British laws making trade unions illegal are repealed.



HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of individual rights and beliefs on society.

What You Will Learn...

In this chapter you will learn about dramatic changes in the United States in the early to mid-1800s. Ships filled with goods sailed back and forth across the Atlantic Ocean between Europe and the United States, as this painting of a busy port city shows. Many of these ships also brought people. The United States experienced a dramatic increase in immigration during this time period, particularly from Europe. Irish immigrants, forced from their homes by the potato famine, moved to the United States and built thriving communities. The photograph above shows a modern parade on Saint Patrick's Day, an Irish celebration day.

1827
New York officially abolishes slavery within the state.

1831
William Lloyd Garrison begins publishing the abolitionist newspaper the *Liberator.*



1848
A major meeting for women's rights—the Seneca Falls Convention—is held in New York.

1850 Nathaniel Hawthorne publishes *The Scarlet Letter.*

1830 | 1840 | 1850

1829 French educator Louis Braille creates a writing system of raised dots for people who are blind.



1845 A potato famine in Ireland increases Irish immigration to the United States.



1848
Revolutionaries attempt to unify German-speaking peoples in central Europe.

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | **Society and Culture** | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes The mid-1800s was a time of change in America. **Society and culture** changed for several reasons: thousands of immigrants arrived in America; women began to work hard for equal rights; and the North and South debated more and more over the slavery issue. Religious beliefs helped shape people's views toward abolition—the move to end slavery—and women's suffrage—the move to give women the right to vote. This chapter discusses these issues.

Information and Propaganda

Focus on Reading Where do you get information about historical events and people? One source is this textbook and others like it. You can expect the authors of your textbook to do their best to present the facts objectively and fairly. But some sources of historical information may have a totally different purpose in mind. For example, advertisements in political campaigns may contain information, but their main purpose is to persuade people to act or think in a certain way.

Recognizing Propaganda Techniques Propaganda is created to change people's opinions or get them to act in a certain way. Learn to recognize propaganda techniques, and you will be able to separate propaganda from the facts.

"People who don't support public education are greedy monsters who don't care about children!" → **Name Calling** Using loaded words, words that create strong positive or negative emotions, to make someone else's ideas seem inappropriate or wrong

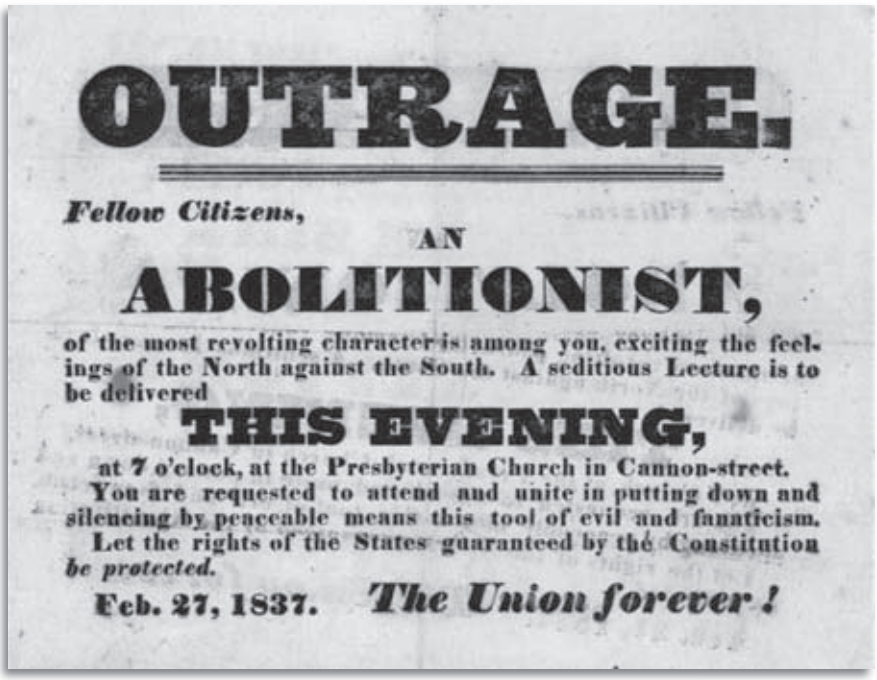
"People all around the country are opening free public schools. It's obviously the right thing to do." → **Bandwagon** Encouraging people to do something because "everyone else is doing it"

"If we provide free education for all children, everyone will be able to get jobs. Poverty and unemployment will disappear." → **Oversimplification** Making a complex situation seem simple, a complex problem seem easy to solve

You Try It!

The flyer below was published in 1837. Read it and then answer the questions that follow.

Flyer from 1837



OUTRAGE.

Fellow Citizens,

AN

ABOLITIONIST,

of the most revolting character is among you, exciting the feelings of the North against the South. A seditious Lecture is to be delivered

THIS EVENING,

at 7 o'clock, at the Presbyterian Church in Cannon-street. You are requested to attend and unite in putting down and silencing by peaceable means this tool of evil and fanaticism. Let the rights of the States guaranteed by the Constitution *be protected.*

Feb. 27, 1837. *The Union forever!*

After studying the flyer, answer the following questions.

1. What is the purpose of this flyer?
2. Who do you think distributed this flyer?
3. Do you think this flyer is an example of propaganda? Why or why not? If you think it is propaganda, what kind is it?
4. If you were the subject of this flyer, how would you feel? How might you respond to it?

As you read Chapter 14, look carefully at all the primary sources. Do any of them include examples of propaganda?

Key Terms and People

Chapter 14

Section 1

nativists *(p. 440)*
Know-Nothing Party *(p. 440)*
middle class *(p. 440)*
tenements *(p. 442)*

Section 2

transcendentalism *(p. 443)*
Ralph Waldo Emerson *(p. 443)*
Margaret Fuller *(p. 443)*
Henry David Thoreau *(p. 443)*
utopian communities *(p. 444)*
Nathaniel Hawthorne *(p. 444)*
Edgar Allan Poe *(p. 445)*
Emily Dickinson *(p. 445)*
Henry Wadsworth Longfellow *(p. 445)*
Walt Whitman *(p. 445)*

Section 3

Second Great Awakening *(p. 448)*
Charles Grandison Finney *(p. 448)*
Lyman Beecher *(p. 448)*
temperance movement *(p. 449)*
Dorothea Dix *(p. 450)*
common-school movement *(p. 450)*
Horace Mann *(p. 450)*
Catharine Beecher *(p. 451)*
Thomas Gallaudet *(p. 451)*

Section 4

abolition *(p. 454)*
William Lloyd Garrison *(p. 455)*
American Anti-Slavery Society *(p. 455)*
Angelina and Sarah Grimké *(p. 455)*
Frederick Douglass *(p. 456)*
Sojourner Truth *(p. 456)*
Underground Railroad *(p. 456)*
Harriet Tubman *(p. 458)*

Section 5

Elizabeth Cady Stanton *(p. 464)*
Lucretia Mott *(p. 464)*
Seneca Falls Convention *(p. 464)*
Declaration of Sentiments *(p. 464)*
Lucy Stone *(p. 465)*
Susan B. Anthony *(p. 465)*

Academic Vocabulary

implicit *(p. 440)*
abstract *(p. 444)*

SECTION 1

Immigrants and Urban Challenges

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Millions of immigrants, mostly German and Irish, arrived in the United States despite anti-immigrant movements.
2. Industrialization led to the growth of cities.
3. American cities experienced urban problems due to rapid growth.

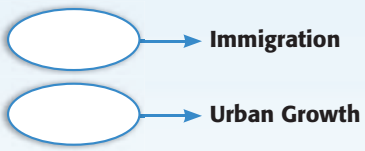
The Big Idea

The population of the United States grew rapidly in the early 1800s with the arrival of millions of immigrants.

Key Terms

nativists, *p. 440*
Know-Nothing Party, *p. 440*
middle class, *p. 440*
tenements, *p. 442*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the causes of immigration and urban growth. Record your notes in a graphic organizer like the one shown below.



If YOU were there...

It is 1850, and you are a German immigrant standing on the deck of a steamboat, crossing Lake Erie. Other immigrants are on board, but they are strangers to you. Soon, you will arrive at your new home in Cleveland, Ohio. You've been told that other Germans have settled there. You hope to find friends and work as a baker. Right now, America seems very big and very strange.

What would you expect from your new life in America?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The revolutions in industry, transportation, and technology were not the only major changes in the United States in the mid-1800s. Millions of immigrants, mostly from Europe, swelled the population. Some settled in the rich farmland of the Midwest, while others moved to cities.

Millions of Immigrants Arrive

In the mid-1800s, large numbers of immigrants crossed the Atlantic Ocean to begin new lives in the United States. More than 4 million of them settled in the United States between 1840 and 1860, most from Europe. More than 3 million of these immigrants arrived from Ireland and Germany. Many of them were fleeing economic or political troubles in their native countries.

Fleeing the Irish Potato Famine

Most immigrants from the British Isles during that period were Irish. In the mid-1840s, potato blight, a disease that causes rot in potatoes, left many families in Ireland with little food. More than a million Irish people died of starvation and disease. Even more fled to the United States.

Most Irish immigrants were very poor. Many settled in cities in Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York, and Pennsylvania. They worked at unskilled jobs in the cities or on building canals and

Push-Pull Factors of Immigration

QUICK FACTS

Pull Factors

- Jobs
- Greater freedom and equality
- Abundant land



Push Factors

- Starvation
- Poverty
- Lack of political freedom



Starvation and poverty pushed many Irish families such as this one from their homes, while economic opportunities pulled them toward the United States.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

How was freedom a push factor and a pull factor?

railroads. Irish women often worked as domestic servants for wealthy families, laboring 16 or more hours per day. In 1849 a Boston health committee reported that low wages forced most Irish immigrants to live in poor housing.

Still, many immigrants enjoyed a new feeling of equality. Patrick Dunny wrote home to his family about this situation.

> "People that cuts a great dash [style] at home … think it strange [in the United States] for the humble class of people to get as much respect as themselves."
>
> —Patrick Dunny, quoted in *Who Built America?* by Bruce Levine et al.

A Failed German Revolution

Many Germans also came to the United States during this time. In 1848 some Germans had staged a revolution against harsh rule. Some educated Germans fled to the United States to escape persecution caused by their political activities. Most German immigrants, however, were working class, and they came for economic reasons. The United States seemed to offer both greater economic opportunity and more freedom from government control. While most Irish immigrants were Catholics, German immigrant groups included Catholics, Jews, and Protestants.

German immigrants were more likely than the Irish to become farmers and live in rural areas. They moved to midwestern states where more land was available. Unlike the Irish, a high percentage of German immigrants arrived in the United States with money. Despite their funds and skills, German immigrants often were forced to take low-paying jobs. Many German immigrants worked as tailors, seamstresses, bricklayers,

THE IMPACT TODAY

Many immigrants still come to the United States today. More than 13 million entered the United States between 1990 and 2000.

servants, clerks, cabinetmakers, bakers, and food merchants.

Anti-Immigration Movements

Industrialization and the waves of people from Europe greatly changed the American labor force. While many immigrants went to the Midwest to get farmland, other immigrants filled the need for cheap labor in towns and cities. Industrial jobs in the Northeast attracted many people.

Many native-born Americans feared losing their jobs to immigrants who might work for lower wages. Some felt **implicitly** threatened by the new immigrants' cultures and religions. For example, before Catholic immigrants arrived, most Americans were Protestants. Conflicts between Catholics and Protestants in Europe caused some American Protestants to mistrust Catholic immigrants. Americans who opposed immigration were called **nativists**.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

implicit understood though not clearly put into words

In the 1840s and 1850s some nativists became politically active. An 1844 election flyer gave Americans this warning.

FOCUS ON READING

Look carefully at the quotation to the right from an election flyer. Does it include any examples of propaganda?

> "Look at the . . . thieves and vagabonds [tramps] roaming our streets . . . monopolizing [taking] the business which properly belongs to our own native and true-born citizens."
>
> —Election flyer, quoted in *Who Built America?* by Bruce Levine et al.

In 1849 nativists founded a political organization, the **Know-Nothing Party**, that supported measures making it difficult for foreigners to become citizens or hold office. Its members wanted to keep Catholics and immigrants out of public office. They also wanted to require immigrants to live in the United States for 21 years before becoming citizens. Know-Nothing politicians had some success getting elected during the 1850s. Later, disagreements over the issue of slavery caused the party to fall apart.

READING CHECK **Understanding Cause and Effect** Why did the Know-Nothing Party try to limit the rights of immigrants?

Rapid Growth of Cities

The Industrial Revolution led to the creation of many new jobs in American cities. These city jobs drew immigrants from many nations as well as migrants from rural parts of the United States. The Transportation Revolution helped connect cities and made it easier for people to move to them. As a result of these two trends, American cities grew rapidly during the mid-1800s. Cities in the northeastern and Middle Atlantic states grew the most. By the mid-1800s, three-quarters of the country's manufacturing jobs were in these areas.

The rise of industry and the growth of cities changed American life. Those who owned their own businesses or worked in skilled jobs benefited most from those changes. The families of these merchants, manufacturers, professionals, and master craftspeople made up a growing social class. This new **middle class** was a social and economic level between the wealthy and the poor. Those in the new middle class built large, dignified homes that demonstrated their place in society.

In the growing cities, people found entertainment and an enriched cultural life. Many enjoyed visiting clubs or attending concerts and lectures. In the mid-1800s people also attended urban theaters. Favorite pastimes included bowling, boxing, and playing cards. The rules of baseball were formalized in 1845, and the game became increasingly popular.

Cities during this time were compact and crowded. Many people lived close enough to their jobs that they could walk to work. Wagons carried goods down streets paved with stones, making a noisy, busy scene. One observer noted that the professionals in New York City always had a "hurried walk."

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did the Industrial Revolution affect life in American cities?

History Close-up

New York City, Mid-1800s

In the mid-1800s, cities such as New York City lured thousands of people in search of jobs and a better life. Many city dwellers found life difficult in the crowded urban conditions.



ANALYSIS SKILL **Analyzing Visuals**

How is this scene similar to one you might see in a large American city today? How is it different?

Urban Problems

American cities in the mid-1800s faced many challenges due to rapid growth. Because public and private transportation was limited, city residents had to live near their workplaces. In addition, there was a lack of safe housing. Many city dwellers, particularly immigrants, could afford to live only in **tenements**—poorly designed apartment buildings that housed large numbers of people. These structures were often dirty, overcrowded, and unsafe.

Public services were also poor. The majority of cities did not have clean water, public health regulations, or healthful ways to get rid of garbage and human and animal waste. Under these conditions, diseases spread easily, and epidemics were common. In 1832 and 1849, for example, New York City suffered cholera epidemics that killed thousands.

City life held other dangers. As urban areas grew, they became centers of criminal activity. Most cities—including New York, Boston, and Philadelphia—had no permanent or organized force to fight crime. Instead, they relied on volunteer night watches, which offered little protection.

Fire was another constant and serious danger in crowded cities. There was little organized fire protection. Most cities were served by volunteer fire companies. Firefighters used hand pumps and buckets to put out fires. In addition, there were not enough sanitation workers and road maintenance crews. These shortages and flaws caused health and safety problems for many city residents.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why did so many American cities have problems in the mid-1800s?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Immigrants expected a better life in America, but not all Americans welcomed newcomers. The rapid growth of cities caused many problems. In the next section you will read about how America developed its own style of art and literature.

Section 1 Assessment

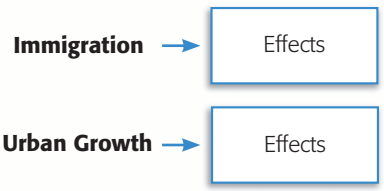
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP14

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** Who were the **nativists**?
   b. Compare and Contrast In what ways were Irish and German immigrants to the United States similar and different?
   c. Predict How might the rise of anti-immigrant groups lead to problems in the United States?
2. **a. Describe** What led to the growth of cities?
   b. Analyze How did the rise of industrialization and the growth of cities change American society?
3. **a. Describe** What were **tenements**?
   b. Summarize What problems affected American cities in the mid-1800s?
   c. Evaluate What do you think was the biggest problem facing cities in the United States? Why?

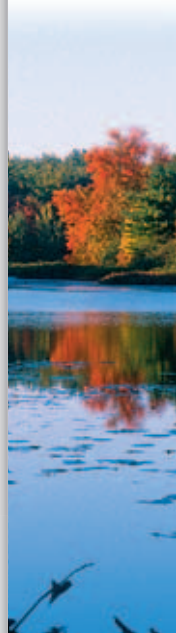
Critical Thinking

4. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on the causes of immigration and urban growth. Then add the effects of each to your graphic organizer.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Identifying Important Events** In your notebook, create a two-column chart. In the first column, list events described in this section. In the second column, write a description of each event and a note about how it changed life in the United States.



American Arts

SECTION 2

If YOU were there...

You are a teacher living in Massachusetts in the 1840s. Some of your neighbors have started an experimental community. They want to live more simply than present-day society allows. They hope to have time to write and think, while still sharing the work. Some people will teach, others will raise food. You think this might be an interesting place to live.

What would you ask the leaders of the community?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Great changes were taking place in American culture. The early 1800s brought a revolution in American thought. Artists, writers, and philosophers pursued their ideals and developed truly American styles.

Transcendentalists

Some New England writers and philosophers found spiritual wisdom in **transcendentalism**, the belief that people could transcend, or rise above, material things in life. Transcendentalists also believed that people should depend on themselves and their own insights, rather than on outside authorities. Important transcendentalists included **Ralph Waldo Emerson**, **Margaret Fuller**, and **Henry David Thoreau**.



Walden Pond, where Thoreau lived for two years

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Transcendentalists and utopian communities withdrew from American society.
2. American Romantic painters and writers made important contributions to art and literature.

The Big Idea

New movements in art and literature influenced many Americans in the early 1800s.

Key Terms and People

transcendentalism, *p. 443*
Ralph Waldo Emerson, *p. 443*
Margaret Fuller, *p. 443*
Henry David Thoreau, *p. 443*
utopian communities, *p. 444*
Nathaniel Hawthorne, *p. 444*
Edgar Allan Poe, *p. 445*
Emily Dickinson, *p. 445*
Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, *p. 445*
Walt Whitman, *p. 445*

TAKING NOTES Create a graphic organizer like the one shown below. Use it to take notes on the new movements in art and literature.

Transcendentalism		Romanticism
What		
Who		



Emerson was a popular writer and thinker who argued that Americans should disregard institutions and follow their own beliefs. "What I must do is all that concerns me, not what the people think," he wrote in an essay called "Self-Reliance." Fuller edited the famous transcendentalist publication *The Dial*. Thoreau advised even stronger self-reliance and simple living away from society in natural settings. He wrote his book *Walden* after living for two years at Walden Pond.

Some transcendentalists formed a community at Brook Farm, Massachusetts, in the 1840s. It was one of many experiments with **utopian communities**, groups of people who tried to form a perfect society. People in utopian communities pursued **abstract** spirituality and cooperative lifestyles. Communities sprang up in New Harmony, Oneida, and many other places. However, few communities lasted for long.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
abstract expressing a quality or idea without reference to an actual thing

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences**
Why did utopian communities last a short time?

American Romanticism

Ideas about the simple life and nature also inspired painters and writers in the early and mid-1800s. Some joined the Romantic movement that had begun in Europe. Romanticism involved a great interest in nature, an emphasis on individual expression, and a rejection of many established rules. These painters and writers felt that each person brings a unique view to the world. They believed in using emotion to guide their creative output. Some Romantic artists, like Thomas Cole, painted the American landscape. Their works showed the beauty and wonder of nature in the United States. Their images contrasted with the huge cities and corruption of nature that many Americans saw as typical of Europe.

Many female writers, like Ann Sophia Stephens, wrote historical fiction that was popular in the mid-1800s. New England writer **Nathaniel Hawthorne** wrote *The Scarlet Letter* during that period. One of the greatest classics of Romantic literature, it explored Puritan



CONNECT TO THE ARTS

Artists of the Romantic movement celebrated nature in their dramatic paintings. Their work was made popular by their leader, Thomas Cole. Other important painters of the era were Frederick Church and Asher Durand.

What words would you use to describe this painting?

1 The light in the painting has a delicate, glowing quality. Artists of the Romantic movement pioneered this technique.

2 The human presence in this scene is dwarfed by nature but is in harmony with it.

Asher Durand's *The First Harvest in the Wilderness*

life in the 1600s. Hawthorne's friend Herman Melville, a writer and former sailor, wrote novels about the sea, such as *Moby-Dick* and *Billy Budd*. Many people believe that *Moby-Dick* is one of the finest American novels ever written.

American Romantic authors also wrote a great deal of poetry. The poet **Edgar Allan Poe**, also a short story writer, became famous for a haunting poem called "The Raven." Other gifted American poets included **Emily Dickinson**, **Henry Wadsworth Longfellow**, and **Walt Whitman**. Most of Dickinson's short, thoughtful poems were not published until after her death. Longfellow, the best-known poet of the mid-1800s, wrote popular story-poems, like *The Song of Hiawatha*. Whitman praised American individualism and democracy in his simple, unrhymed poetry. In his poetry collection *Leaves of Grass,* he wrote, "The United States themselves are essentially the greatest poem."

READING CHECK **Summarizing** Who were some American Romantic authors, and why were they important?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW American Romantic artists and authors were inspired by ideas about the simple life, nature, and spirituality. In the next section you will learn about ideas that changed American society.

Section 2 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP14

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What were the main teachings of **transcendentalism**?
   b. Summarize What was one **utopian community** established in the United States, and what was its goal?
   c. Elaborate Do you agree with transcendentalists that Americans put too much emphasis on institutions and traditions? Explain your answer.
2. **a. Recall** Who were some important American authors and poets at this time?
   b. Explain What ideas did artists in the Romantic movement express?
   c. Evaluate Do you think the Romantic movement was important to American culture? Explain.

Critical Thinking

3. **Comparing and Contrasting** Review your notes on art and literature. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to show the similarities and differences between the two movements.



FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Describing Artistic Movements** Two artistic movements are described in this section, transcendentalism and romanticism. Write these two movements in the first column of your chart. Then in the second column, write a brief description of each and explain how writings from each either described or influenced life in the United States.

Literature of the Young Nation: Romanticism and Realism

from "The Midnight Ride of Paul Revere"

by Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (1807–1882)

About the Reading *"The Midnight Ride of Paul Revere" was published in a book called* Tales of a Wayside Inn. *The book is a collection of poems that tell well-known stories from history and mythology. By including the story of Paul Revere with other famous stories, Longfellow helped increase the importance of Paul Revere's ride.*

AS YOU READ **Notice how Longfellow describes Revere as a hero.**

GUIDED READING

WORD HELP

belfry bell tower
muster gathering
barrack building where soldiers meet
grenadiers a soldier that throws grenades

Listen my children and you shall hear
Of the midnight ride of Paul Revere,
On the eighteenth of April, in Seventy-five;
Hardly a man is now alive
Who remembers that famous day and year. ❶

He said to his friend, "If the British march
By land or sea from the town to-night,
Hang a lantern aloft in the belfry arch
Of the North Church tower as a signal light,—
One if by land, and two if by sea;
And I on the opposite shore will be,
Ready to ride and spread the alarm
Through every . . . village and farm,
For the country folk to be up and to arm." ❷

. . . . . .

Meanwhile, his friend, through alley and street
Wanders and watches with eager ears,
Till in the silence around him he hears
The muster of men at the barrack door,
The sound of arms, and the tramp of feet,
And the measured tread of the grenadiers,
Marching down to their boats on the shore. ❸

❶ When the poem was written, there were still a few people alive who had lived during the Revolution.

❷ Longfellow uses poetic language to make Revere's story more dramatic.

❸ The sounds of the night are described to help the reader feel the excitement.

from *Little Women*

by Louisa May Alcott (1832–1888)

About the Reading Little Women *is a novel about four sisters living in a small New England town before the Civil War. Still popular with young people today,* Little Women *describes a family much like the one Louisa May Alcott grew up in. Alcott based the main character, Jo March, on herself. Like Alcott, Jo was different from most women of her time. She was outspoken, eager for adventure, and in conflict with the role her society expected her to play.*

AS YOU READ **Try to understand how Jo is different from Aunt March.**

Jo happened to suit Aunt March, who was lame and needed an active person to wait upon her. The childless old lady had offered to adopt one of the girls when the troubles came, and was much offended because her offer was declined . . .

The old lady wouldn't speak to them for a time, but happening to meet Jo at a friend's, . . . she proposed to take her for a companion.❶ This did not suit Jo at all, but she accepted the place since nothing better appeared, and to everyone's surprise, got on remarkably well with her irascible relative . . .

I suspect that the real attraction was a large library of fine books, which was left to dust and spiders since Uncle March died . . . The dim, dusty room, with the busts staring down from the tall bookcases, the cozy chairs, the globes, and, best of all, the wilderness of books, in which she could wander where she liked, made the library a region of bliss to her . . .❷

Jo's ambition was to do something very splendid. What it was she had no idea, as yet, but left it for time to tell her, and, meanwhile, found her greatest affliction in the fact that she couldn't read, run, and ride as much as she liked.❸ A quick temper, sharp tongue, and restless spirit were always getting her into scrapes, and her life was a series of ups and downs, which were both comic and pathetic. But the training she received at Aunt March's was just what she needed, and the thought that she was doing something to support herself made her happy in spite of the perpetual "Josy-phine!"

GUIDED READING

WORD HELP

lame disabled
irascible difficult
bliss happiness
ambition hope for the future
affliction problem
pathetic very sad
perpetual constant

❶ ***Some women kept companions to help entertain them and perform small chores. Why might Jo not want to be a companion?***

❷ ***How does Jo differ from ideas about women in the 1880s?***

❸ ***What might Jo be able to do for work in the 1800s?***

CONNECTING LITERATURE TO HISTORY

1. **Drawing Conclusions** Henry Wadsworth Longfellow was the most popular American poet of his time. How does his version of Paul Revere's ride increase the importance of the story?

2. **Comparing and Contrasting** The lives of women in the 1800s were very different from the lives of women today. How does this excerpt of *Little Women* show some similarities and differences between now and then?

SECTION 3

Reforming Society

If YOU were there...

You live in New York State in the 1850s. You are the oldest daughter in your family. Since childhood you have loved mathematics, which puzzles your family. Your sisters are happy learning to sew and cook and run a household. You want more. You know that there is a female seminary nearby, where you could study and learn much more. But your parents are undecided.

How might you persuade your parents to send you to the school?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Along with changes in American culture, changes were also taking place in American society. A religious revival swept the country. Reform-minded men and women tried to improve all aspects of society, from schools to taverns. Reforms in education opened up new opportunities for young women.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The Second Great Awakening sparked interest in religion.
2. Social reformers began to speak out about temperance and prison reform.
3. Improvements in education reform affected many segments of the population.
4. Northern African American communities became involved in reform efforts.

The Big Idea

Reform movements in the early 1800s affected religion, education, and society.

Key Terms and People

Second Great Awakening, *p. 448*
Charles Grandison Finney, *p. 448*
Lyman Beecher, *p. 448*
temperance movement, *p. 449*
Dorothea Dix, *p. 450*
common-school movement, *p. 450*
Horace Mann, *p. 450*
Catharine Beecher, *p. 451*
Thomas Gallaudet, *p. 451*

TAKING NOTES Create a time line like the one shown below. As you read, list the important events of the reform movements next to the appropriate date on the time line. Some dates might have more than one event.



Second Great Awakening

During the 1790s and early 1800s, some Americans took part in a Christian renewal movement called the **Second Great Awakening**. It swept through towns across upstate New York and through the frontier regions of Kentucky, Ohio, Tennessee, and South Carolina. By the 1820s and 1830s, this new interest in religion had spread to New England and the South.

Charles Grandison Finney was one of the most important leaders of the Second Great Awakening. After experiencing a dramatic religious conversion in 1821, Finney left his career as a lawyer and began preaching. He challenged some traditional Protestant beliefs, telling congregations that each individual was responsible for his or her own salvation. He also believed that sin was avoidable. Finney held revivals, emotional prayer meetings that lasted for days. Many people converted to Christianity during these revivals. Finney told new converts to prove their faith by doing good deeds.

Finney's style of preaching and his ideas angered some traditional ministers, like Boston's **Lyman Beecher**. Beecher wanted to prevent Finney from holding revivals in his city. "You mean to

carry a streak of fire to Boston. If you attempt it, as the Lord liveth, I'll meet you . . . and fight every inch of the way." Despite the opposition of Beecher and other traditional ministers, Finney's appeal remained powerful. Also, the First Amendment guarantee of freedom of religion prevented the government from passing laws banning the new religious practices. Ministers were therefore free to spread their message of faith and salvation to whomever wished to listen.

Due to the efforts of Finney and his followers, church membership across the country grew a great deal during the Second Great Awakening. Many new church members were women and African Americans. The African Methodist Episcopal Church spread across the Middle Atlantic states. Although the movement had begun in the Northeast and on the frontier, the Second Great Awakening renewed some people's religious faith throughout America.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**
What impact did the Second Great Awakening have on religion in America?

Social Reformers Speak Out

Renewed religious faith often led to involvement in movements to fix the problems created by urban growth. One solution was political action. For example, in 1844 New York City created the first city police force.

Members of the growing middle class, especially women, often led the efforts. Reformers drew not only on their religious faith, but also on the American tradition of civic volunteerism that had existed since the beginnings of the nation.

Temperance Movement

Many social reformers worked to prevent alcohol abuse. They believed that Americans drank too much. In the 1830s, on average, an American consumed seven gallons of alcohol per year. Countless Americans thought that alcohol abuse caused social problems, such as family violence, poverty, and criminal behavior.

Americans' worries about the effects of alcohol led to the growth of a **temperance movement**. This reform effort urged people to use self-discipline to stop drinking hard liquor.

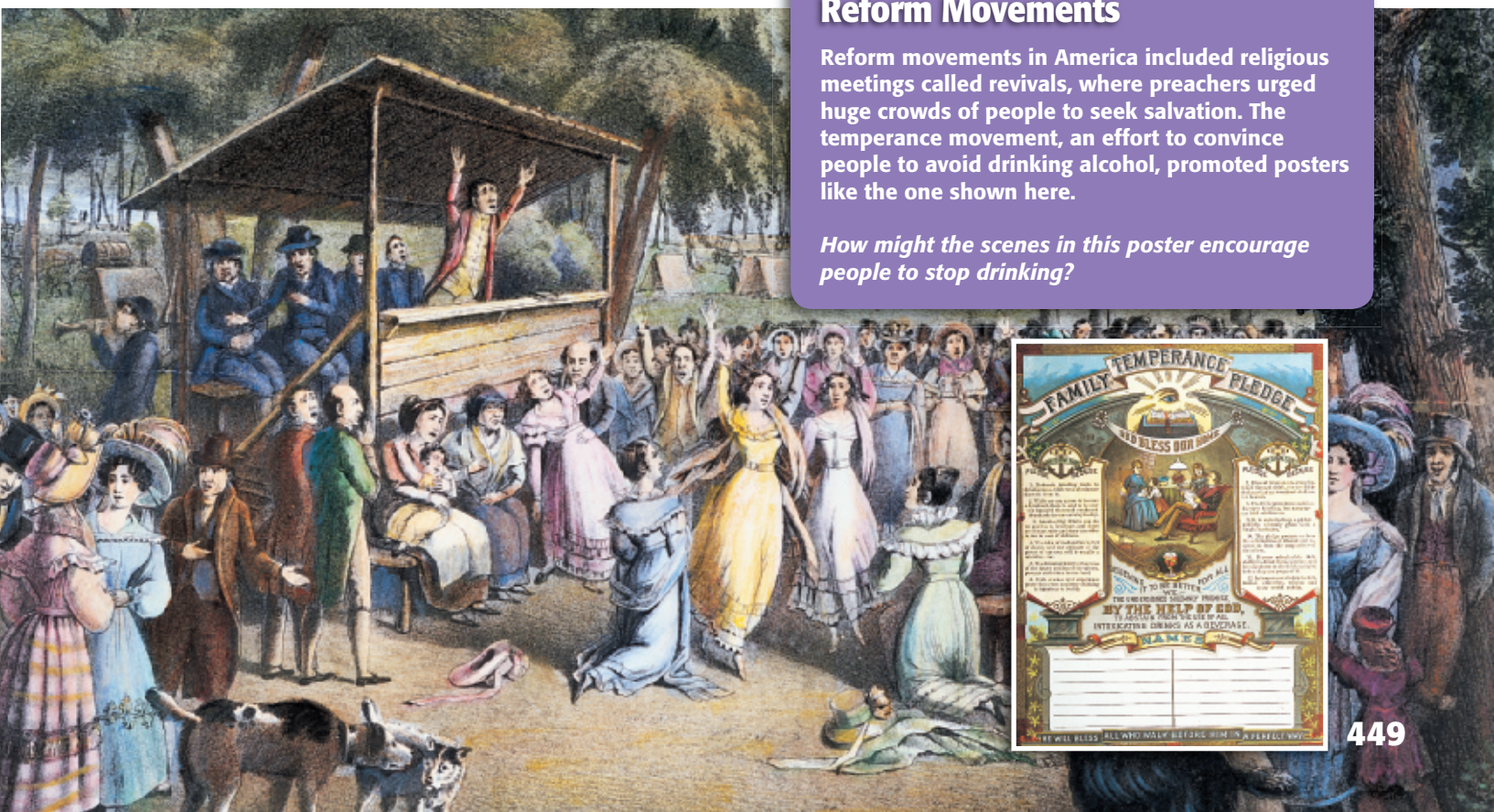
FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

Police departments like the NYPD are just one part of the state's system to deal with the social problem of crime. New York's police, courts, and department of corrections have a long history of working together to enforce the state's laws.

Reform Movements

Reform movements in America included religious meetings called revivals, where preachers urged huge crowds of people to seek salvation. The temperance movement, an effort to convince people to avoid drinking alcohol, promoted posters like the one shown here.

How might the scenes in this poster encourage people to stop drinking?



FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

Private agencies and charities play a major role in addressing social problems. A New York City organization called The Children's Aid Society has been providing essential health, education, and social services to the city's underprivileged children and families since 1853.

Reformers asked people to limit themselves to beer and wine in small amounts. Groups like the American Temperance Society and the American Temperance Union helped to spread the message. Minister Lyman Beecher spoke widely about the evils of alcohol. He claimed that people who drank alcohol were "neglecting the education of their families—and corrupting their morals."

Prison Reform

Another target of reform was the prison system. **Dorothea Dix** was a middle-class reformer who visited prisons throughout Massachusetts beginning in 1841. Dix reported that mentally ill people frequently were jailed with criminals. They were sometimes left in dark cells without clothes or heat and were chained to the walls and beaten. Dix spoke of what she saw to the state legislature.

In response, the Massachusetts government built facilities for the mentally ill. Dix's work had a nationwide effect. Eventually, more than 100 state hospitals were built to give mentally ill people professional care.

Prisons also held runaway children and orphans. Some had survived only by begging or stealing, and they got the same punishment as adult criminals. Boston mayor Josiah Quincy asked that young offenders receive different punishments than adults. In the 1820s, several state and local governments founded reform schools for children who had been housed in prisons. There, children lived under strict rules and learned useful skills.

Some reformers also tried to end the overcrowding and cruel conditions in prisons. Their efforts led to the creation of houses of correction. These institutions did not use punishment alone to change behavior. They also offered prisoners education.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did reformers change the punishment of criminals?

THE IMPACT TODAY

McGuffey's Readers were among the first "graded" textbooks. Organizing classes by grades was a new idea that is standard practice today.

Improvements in Education

Another challenge facing America in the early 1800s was poor public education. During this era, childhood was beginning to be viewed as a separate stage of life in which education was of the utmost importance in creating responsible citizens. However, many children worked in factories or on farms to help support their families. If children could read the Bible, write, and do simple math, that was often considered to be enough.

Education in the Early 1800s

The availability of education varied widely. New England had the most schools, while the South and West had the fewest. Few teachers were trained. Schoolhouses were small, and students of all ages and levels worked in one room.

McGuffey's Readers were the most popular textbooks. William Holmes McGuffey, an educator and minister, put selections from British and American literature in them as well as instruction in moral and social values.

Social background and wealth affected the quality of education. Rich families sent children to private schools or hired tutors. However, most children attended public schools. Girls could go to school, but parents usually thought that girls needed little education and kept them home. Therefore, few girls learned to read.

Common-School Movement

People in the **common-school movement** wanted all children taught in a common place, regardless of background. **Horace Mann** was a leader of this movement.

In 1837 Mann became Massachusetts's first secretary of education. He convinced the state to double its school budget and raise teachers' salaries. He lengthened the school year and began the first school for teacher training. Mann's success set a standard for education reform throughout the country.

Women's Education

Education reform created greater opportunities for women. **Catharine Beecher** started an all-female academy in Hartford, Connecticut. The first college-level educational institution available to women was the Troy Female Seminary, opened by Emma Willard in 1821. Several other women's colleges opened during the 1830s, including Mount Holyoke College. The first medical college for women, who were barred from men's medical schools, opened in Boston in 1848.

Teaching People with Special Needs

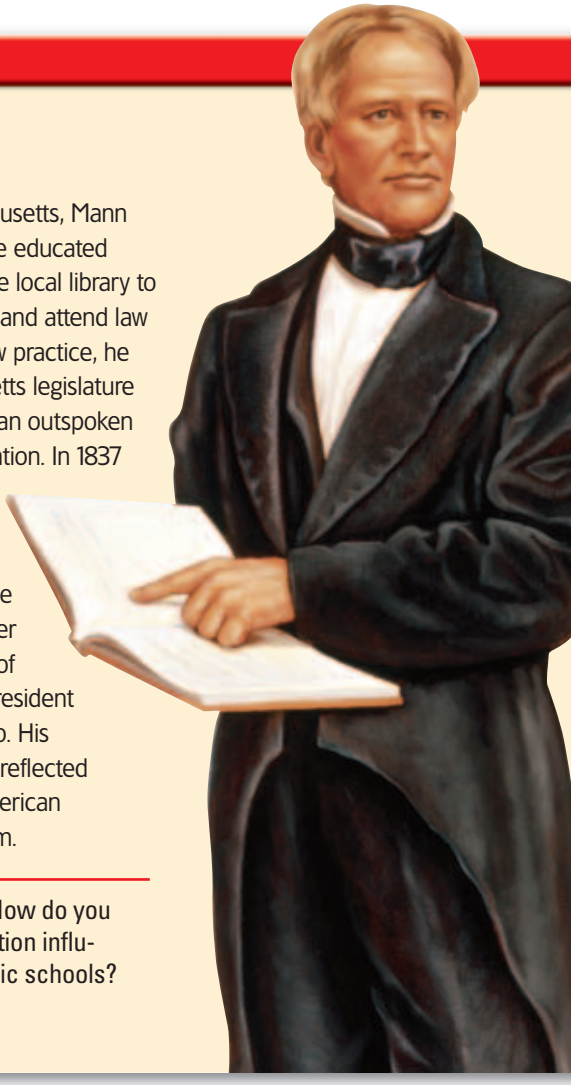
Efforts to improve education also helped people with special needs. In 1831 Samuel Gridley Howe opened the Perkins School for the Blind in Massachusetts. Howe traveled widely, talking about teaching people with visual impairment. **Thomas Gallaudet** improved the education and lives of people with hearing impairments. He founded the first free American school for hearing-impaired people in 1817.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were Horace Mann's achievements?

BIOGRAPHY

Horace Mann

1796–1859



Born in Franklin, Massachusetts, Mann had little schooling, but he educated himself well enough at the local library to get into Brown University and attend law school. Despite a busy law practice, he served in the Massachusetts legislature for 10 years. He was also an outspoken advocate for public education. In 1837 the state created the post of secretary of education for him. His achievements in that office made him famous. He later served in the U.S. House of Representatives and as president of Antioch College in Ohio. His influence on education is reflected by the fact that many American schools are named for him.

Analyzing Information How do you think Mann's own education influenced his desire for public schools?

Primary Source

SPEECH

Horace Mann to the Board of Education

In a speech to the newly created Massachusetts Board of Education, Horace Mann, the board's first secretary, described the purpose of the public school system.

"[T]here should be a free district school, sufficiently safe, and sufficiently good, for all of the children . . . where they may be well instructed in the rudiments [basics] of knowledge, formed to propriety of demeanor [good behavior], and imbued [filled] with the principles of duty . . . It is on this common platform, that a general acquaintanceship [friendship] should be formed between the children of the same neighborhood. It is here, that the affinities [qualities] of a common nature should unite them together."

—Horace Mann, quoted in *The Republic and the School*, edited by Lawrence A. Cremin

Mann believed all students should receive free education.

Neighborhood children should attend school together to form a common bond.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Besides knowledge, what purpose did Mann believe the public schools had?



African American Communities

Free African Americans usually lived in segregated, or separate, communities in the North. Most of them lived in cities such as New York, Boston, and Philadelphia. Community leaders were often influenced by the Second Great Awakening and its spirit of reform.

Founded by former slave Richard Allen, the Free African Religious Society became a model for other groups that pressed for racial equality and the education of blacks. In 1816 Allen became the first bishop of the African Methodist Episcopal Church, or AME Church. This church broke away from white Methodist churches after African Americans were treated poorly in some white congregations.

Other influential African Americans of the time, such as Alexander Crummel, pushed for the creation of schools for black Americans. The New York African Free School in New York City educated hundreds of children, many of whom became brilliant scholars and important African American leaders. Philadelphia also had a long history of educating African Americans. This was largely because Philadelphia was a center of Quaker influence, and the Quakers believed strongly in equality. The city ran seven schools for African American students by the year 1800. In 1820 Boston followed Philadelphia's lead and opened a separate elementary school for African American children. The city began allowing them to attend school with whites in 1855.

African Americans rarely attended college because few colleges would accept them. In 1835 Oberlin College became the first to do so. Harvard University soon admitted African Americans, too. Several African American colleges were founded beginning in the 1840s. In 1842 the Institute for Colored Youth opened in Philadelphia. Avery College, also in Pennsylvania, was founded in 1849.



This photograph (left) of the 1855 class at Oberlin College shows the slow integration of African Americans into previously white colleges. Some churches also became more integrated, and preachers like the one pictured above began calling for equality between races.

Why might preachers have been particularly influential in calls for greater integration?

While free African Americans had some opportunities to attend school in the North and Midwest, few had this chance in the South. Laws in the South barred most enslaved people from getting any education, even at the primary school level. While some slaves learned to read on their own, they almost always did so in secret. Slaveholders were fearful that education and knowledge in general might encourage a spirit of revolt among enslaved African Americans.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**

Why was it difficult for African Americans to get an education in the South in the early 1800s?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The efforts of reformers led to improvements in many aspects of American life in the early to mid-1800s. In the next section you will learn about reform-minded people who opposed the practice of slavery.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP14

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What was the **Second Great Awakening**, and who was one of its leaders?
   b. Summarize What effects did the Second Great Awakening have on religion in the United States?
2. **a. Identify** What role did **Dorothea Dix** play in social reforms of the early 1800s?
   b. Summarize What different reforms helped improve the U.S. prison system?
   c. Elaborate How might the Second Great Awakening have led to the growth of social reform movements?
3. **a. Identify** What was the **common-school movement**, and who was one of its leaders?
   b. Analyze Why did reformers set out to improve education in the United States?
   c. Evaluate Do you think **Horace Mann**'s ideas for educational reform were good ones? Explain.
4. **a. Recall** In what cities were the first public schools for African Americans located?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did free African Americans benefit from educational reforms?

Critical Thinking

5. **Categorizing** Review the reform-movement events on the time line in your notes. Then use a chart like the one below to identify the leaders and accomplishments of each reform movement.

Movement	Leaders	Accomplishments
Prison and Mental Health Reform		
Temperance		
Education		

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Choosing Important Events** This section covers the reform of social issues such as religion, prisons, and education. Write the reforms described in your chart. Then write a note about each reform and about the important people involved in it. Think about how each one influenced life in the United States.

SECTION 4

The Movement to End Slavery

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Americans from a variety of backgrounds actively opposed slavery.
2. Abolitionists organized the Underground Railroad to help enslaved Africans escape.
3. Despite efforts of abolitionists, many Americans remained opposed to ending slavery.

The Big Idea

In the mid-1800s, debate over slavery increased as abolitionists organized to challenge slavery in the United States.

Key Terms and People

abolition, *p. 454*
William Lloyd Garrison, *p. 455*
American Anti-Slavery Society, *p. 455*
Angelina and Sarah Grimké, *p. 455*
Frederick Douglass, *p. 456*
Sojourner Truth, *p. 456*
Underground Railroad, *p. 456*
Harriet Tubman, *p. 458*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the different abolitionist movements that existed, the leaders of each movement, and the methods used by each group to oppose slavery. Write your notes in a chart like the one below.

Movement	Members	Methods

If YOU were there...

You live in southern Ohio in the 1850s. A friend who lives across the river in Kentucky has asked you to join a network that helps escaping slaves. She reminds you that your house has a secret cellar where you could easily hide fugitives for a few days. You are opposed to slavery. But you know this might get you in trouble with your neighbors—and with the law.

Would you become an agent for the Underground Railroad? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The early 1800s brought many movements for social reform in the United States. Perhaps the most important and far-reaching was the movement for the abolition of slavery. While reformers worked to end slavery, many also took risks to help slaves to escape.

Americans Oppose Slavery

Some Americans had opposed slavery since before the country was founded. Benjamin Franklin was the president of the first anti-slavery society in America, the Pennsylvania Society for Promoting the Abolition of Slavery. In the 1830s, Americans took more organized action supporting **abolition**, or a complete end to slavery.

Differences among Abolitionists

Abolitionists came from many different backgrounds and opposed slavery for various reasons. The Quakers were among the first groups to challenge slavery on religious grounds. Other religious leaders gave speeches and published pamphlets that moved many Americans to support abolition. In one of these, abolitionist Theodore Weld wrote that "everyman knows that slavery is a curse." Other abolitionists referred to the Declaration of Independence. They reminded people that the American Revolution had been fought in the name of liberty.

Antislavery reformers did not always agree on the details, however. They differed over how much equality they thought African Americans should have. Some believed that African Americans should receive the same treatment as white Americans. In contrast, other abolitionists were against full political and social equality.

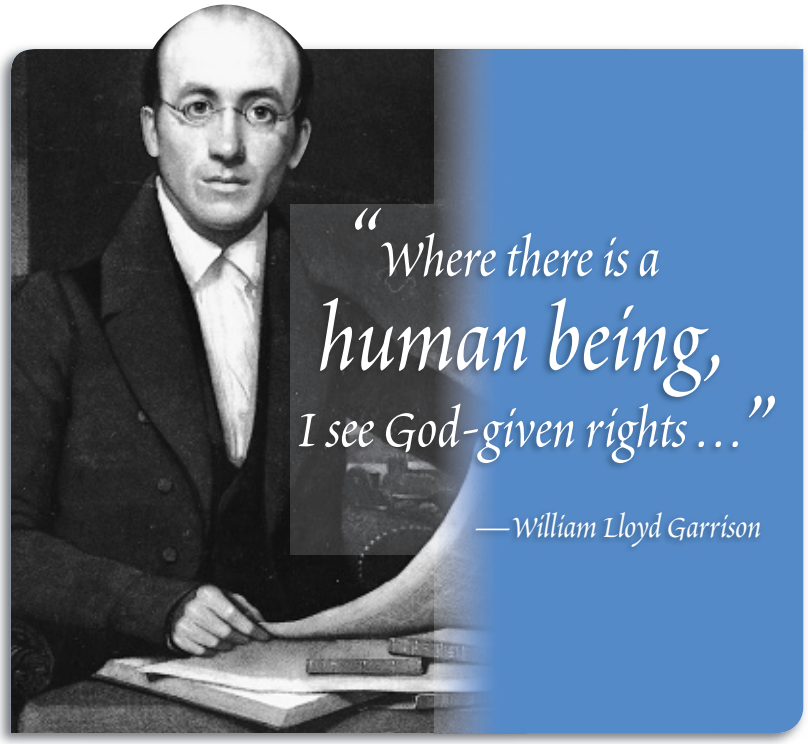
Some abolitionists wanted to send freed African Americans to Africa to start new colonies. They thought that this would prevent conflicts between the races in the United States. In 1817 a minister named Robert Finley started the American Colonization Society, an organization dedicated to establishing colonies of freed slaves in Africa. Five years later, the society founded the colony of Liberia on the west coast of Africa. About 12,000 African Americans eventually settled in Liberia. However, many abolitionists who once favored colonization later opposed it. Some African Americans also opposed it. David Walker was one such person. In his 1829 essay, *Appeal to the Colored Citizens of the World*, Walker explained his opposition to colonization.

> "The greatest riches in all America have arisen from our blood and tears: and they [whites] will drive us from our property and homes, which we have earned with our blood."
>
> —David Walker, quoted in *From Slavery to Freedom* by John Hope Franklin and Alfred A. Moss Jr.

Spreading the Abolitionist Message

Abolitionists found many ways to further their cause. Some went on speaking tours or wrote pamphlets and newspaper articles. John Greenleaf Whittier wrote abolitionist poetry and literature. **William Lloyd Garrison** published an abolitionist newspaper, the *Liberator*, beginning in 1831. In 1833 he also helped found the **American Anti-Slavery Society**. Its members wanted immediate emancipation and racial equality for African Americans. Garrison later became its president.

Both the *Liberator* and the Anti-Slavery Society relied on support from free African Americans as well as white reformers.



Society members spread antislavery literature and petitioned Congress to end federal support of slavery. In 1840 the American Anti-Slavery Society split. One group wanted immediate freedom for enslaved African Americans and a bigger role for women. The others wanted gradual emancipation and for women to play only minor roles in the movement.

Angelina and Sarah Grimké, two white southern women, were antislavery activists of the 1830s. They came from a South Carolina slaveholding family but disagreed with their parents' support of slavery. Angelina Grimké tried to recruit other white southern women in a pamphlet called *Appeal to the Christian Women of the South* in 1836.

> "I know you do not make the laws, but . . . if you really suppose you can do nothing to overthrow slavery you are greatly mistaken . . . Try to persuade your husband, father, brothers, and sons that slavery is a crime against God and man."
>
> —Angelina Grimké, quoted in *The Grimké Sisters from South Carolina*, edited by Gerda Lerner

This essay was very popular in the North. In 1839 the Grimké sisters wrote *American Slavery As It Is*. The book was one of the most important antislavery works of its time.

African American Abolitionists

Many former slaves were active in the antislavery cause. **Frederick Douglass** escaped from slavery when he was 20 and went on to become one of the most important African American leaders of the 1800s. Douglass secretly learned to read and write as a boy, despite a law against it. His public-speaking skills impressed members of the Anti-Slavery Society. In 1841 they asked him to give regular lectures.

At a Fourth of July celebration in 1852, he captured the audience's attention with his powerful voice.

> "The blessings in which you, this day, rejoice, are not enjoyed in common …This Fourth of July is *yours*, not *mine*. You may rejoice, I must mourn."
>
> —Frederick Douglass, quoted in *From Slavery to Freedom* by John Hope Franklin and Alfred A. Moss Jr.

In addition to his many speaking tours in the United States and Europe, Douglass published a newspaper called the *North Star* and wrote several autobiographies. His autobiographies were intended to show the injustices of slavery.

Another former slave, **Sojourner Truth**, also contributed to the abolitionist cause. She claimed God had called her to travel through the United States and preach the truth about slavery and women's rights. With her deep voice and quick wit, Truth became legendary in the antislavery movement for her fiery and dramatic speeches.

Other African Americans wrote narratives about their experiences as slaves to expose the cruelties that many slaves faced. In 1861 Harriet Jacobs published *Incidents in the Life of a Slave Girl*, one of the few slave narratives by a woman. William Wells Brown wrote an antislavery play as well as a personal narrative in the form of a novel called *Clotel*.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** In what ways did African Americans participate in the abolition movement?



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

Sojourner Truth was enslaved in New York until 1827, when she escaped to Canada. Her work as an abolitionist speaker earned her a place in the National Women's Hall of Fame in Seneca Falls, New York.

The Underground Railroad

By the 1830s, a loosely organized group had begun helping slaves escape from the South. Free African Americans, former slaves, and a few white abolitionists worked together. They created what became known as the **Underground Railroad**. The organization was not an actual railroad but was a network of people who arranged transportation and hiding places for fugitives, or escaped slaves.

Fugitives would travel along "freedom trails" that led them to northern states or sometimes into Canada. At no time did the Railroad have a central leadership. No one person, or group of people, was ever officially in charge. Despite the lack of any real structure, the Underground Railroad managed to achieve dramatic results.

Often wearing disguises, fugitives moved along the "railroad" at night, led by people known as conductors. Many times, the fugitives had no other guideposts but the stars. They stopped to rest during the day at "stations," often barns, attics, or other places on property owned by abolitionists known as station masters. The station masters hid and fed the fugitives.



Harriet Tubman was a courageous conductor on the Underground Railroad.

The Underground Railroad

Enslaved African Americans followed many routes to escape from southern slavery. Once in the free states, however, fugitive slaves could not be certain of their freedom. U.S. law still considered them as property, and bounty hunters were paid to capture and return any fugitive slaves they found.



Fugitive slaves hid behind a secret door in this Indiana house on the Underground Railroad.



This painting, *A Ride for Liberty—The Fugitive Slaves* by Eastman Johnson, shows an African American family riding toward freedom.

Free states
Slave states
Routes of the Underground Railroad
0 75 150 Miles
0 75 150 Kilometers

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS: INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Place** Which northern cities were destinations for escaped slaves?
2. **Movement** Which rivers were routes for the Underground Railroad?

Primary Source

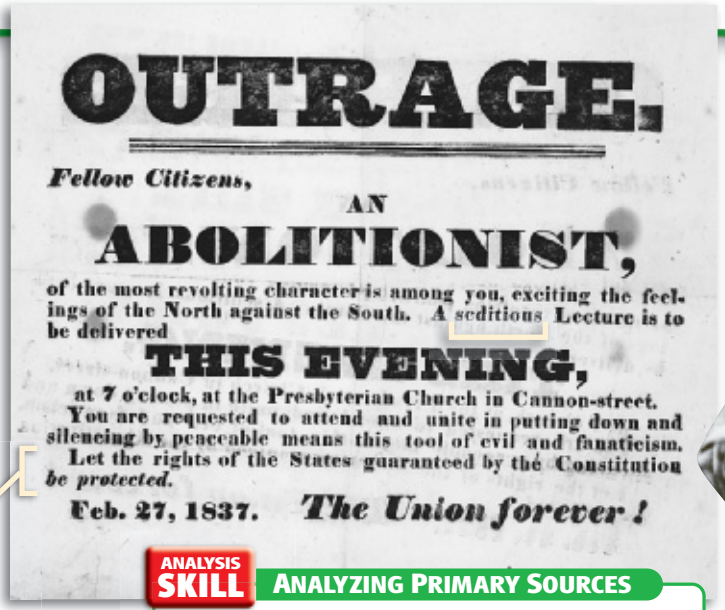
HANDBILL

Anti-Abolitionist Rally

Members of an anti-abolitionist group used this flyer to call people together in order to disrupt a meeting of abolitionists in 1837.

Seditious means "guilty of rebelling against lawful authority."

The group believes abolition violates the Constitution.



OUTRAGE.

Fellow Citizens,

AN

ABOLITIONIST,

of the most revolting character is among you, exciting the feelings of the North against the South. A seditious Lecture is to be delivered

THIS EVENING,

at 7 o'clock, at the Presbyterian Church in Cannon-street. You are requested to attend and unite in putting down and silencing by peaceable means this tool of evil and fanaticism. Let the rights of the States guaranteed by the Constitution *be protected.*

Feb. 27, 1837. *The Union forever!*

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

What emotional language does this handbill use to get its message across?

FOCUS ON NEW YORK

In 1839 a group of slaves being transported from Africa to Cuba rebelled against their Spanish captors and took control of the ship *Amistad*. They sailed the ship to Connecticut, where New York abolitionists took up their cause. Eventually, former president John Quincy Adams argued for their freedom before the U.S. Supreme Court. The Africans were granted freedom and returned to Africa.

The most famous and daring conductor on the Underground Railroad was **Harriet Tubman**. When Tubman escaped slavery in 1849, she left behind her family. She swore that she would return and lead her whole family to freedom in the North. Tubman returned to the South 19 times, successfully leading her family and more than 300 other slaves to freedom. At one time the reward for Tubman's capture reportedly climbed to $40,000, a huge amount of money at that time.

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences**

Why were the operations of the Underground Railroad kept secret?

Opposition to Ending Slavery

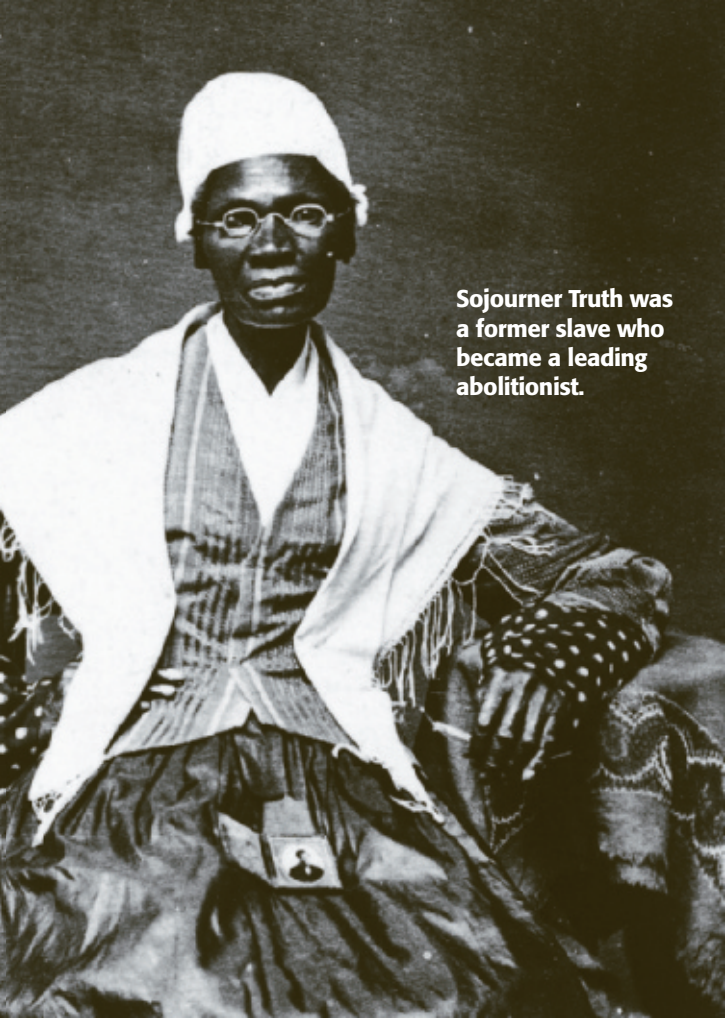
Although the North was the center of the abolitionist movement, many white northerners agreed with the South and supported slavery. Others disliked slavery but opposed equality for African Americans.

Newspaper editors and politicians warned that freed slaves would move north and take jobs from white workers. Some workers feared losing jobs to newly freed African Americans, whom they believed would accept lower wages. Abolitionist leaders were threatened with violence as some northerners joined mobs. Such a mob killed abolitionist Elijah Lovejoy in 1837 in Alton, Illinois.

The federal government also obstructed abolitionists. Between 1836 and 1844, the U.S. House of Representatives used what was called a gag rule. Congress had received thousands of antislavery petitions. Yet the gag rule forbade members of Congress from discussing them. This rule violated the First Amendment right of citizens to petition the government. But southern members of Congress did not want to debate slavery. Many northern members of Congress preferred to avoid the issue.

Eventually, representative and former president John Quincy Adams was able to get the gag rule overturned. His resolution to enact a constitutional amendment halting the expansion of slavery never passed, however.

Many white southerners saw slavery as vital to the South's economy and culture. They also felt that outsiders should not



Sojourner Truth was a former slave who became a leading abolitionist.

interfere with their way of life. After Nat Turner's Rebellion in 1831, when Turner led some slaves to kill slaveholders, open talk about slavery disappeared in the South. It became dangerous to voice antislavery sentiments in southern states. Abolitionists like the Grimké sisters left rather than air unpopular views to hostile neighbors. Racism, fear, and economic dependence on slavery made emancipation all but impossible in the South.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**

Why did many northern workers oppose the abolition movement?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The issue of slavery grew more controversial in the United States during the first half of the nineteenth century. In the next section you will learn about women's rights.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP14

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What contributions did **William Lloyd Garrison** make to the **abolition** movement?
   b. Draw Conclusions In what ways did contributions from African Americans aid the struggle for abolition?
   c. Elaborate What do you think about the American Colonization Society's plan to return free African Americans to Liberia?
2. **a. Describe** How did the **Underground Railroad** work?
   b. Explain Why did **Harriet Tubman** first become involved with the Underground Railroad?
   c. Evaluate Do you think the Underground Railroad was a success? Why or why not?
3. **a. Describe** What action did Congress take to block abolitionists?
   b. Analyze Why did some Americans oppose equality for African Americans?
   c. Predict How might the debate over slavery lead to conflict in the future?

Critical Thinking

4. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on the abolitionist movement. Then use a graphic organizer like the one below to show the reasons for opposition to the movement and the effects of that opposition.

Reasons for Opposing the End of Slavery	→	Effects of Opposition to the Movement

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Describing Abolition** Add notes about the abolitionist movement and its leaders to your chart. Be sure to note how abolitionists influenced life in the United States. What were they fighting for? Who opposed them, and why?

BIOGRAPHY

Frederick Douglass

As a freed slave, how would you help people still enslaved?

When did he live? 1817–1895

Where did he live? Frederick Douglass was born in rural Maryland. At age six he was sent to live in Baltimore, and at age 20 he escaped to New York City. For most of his life, Douglass lived in Rochester, New York, making his home into a stop along the Underground Railroad. He traveled often, giving powerful antislavery speeches to audiences throughout the North and in Europe.

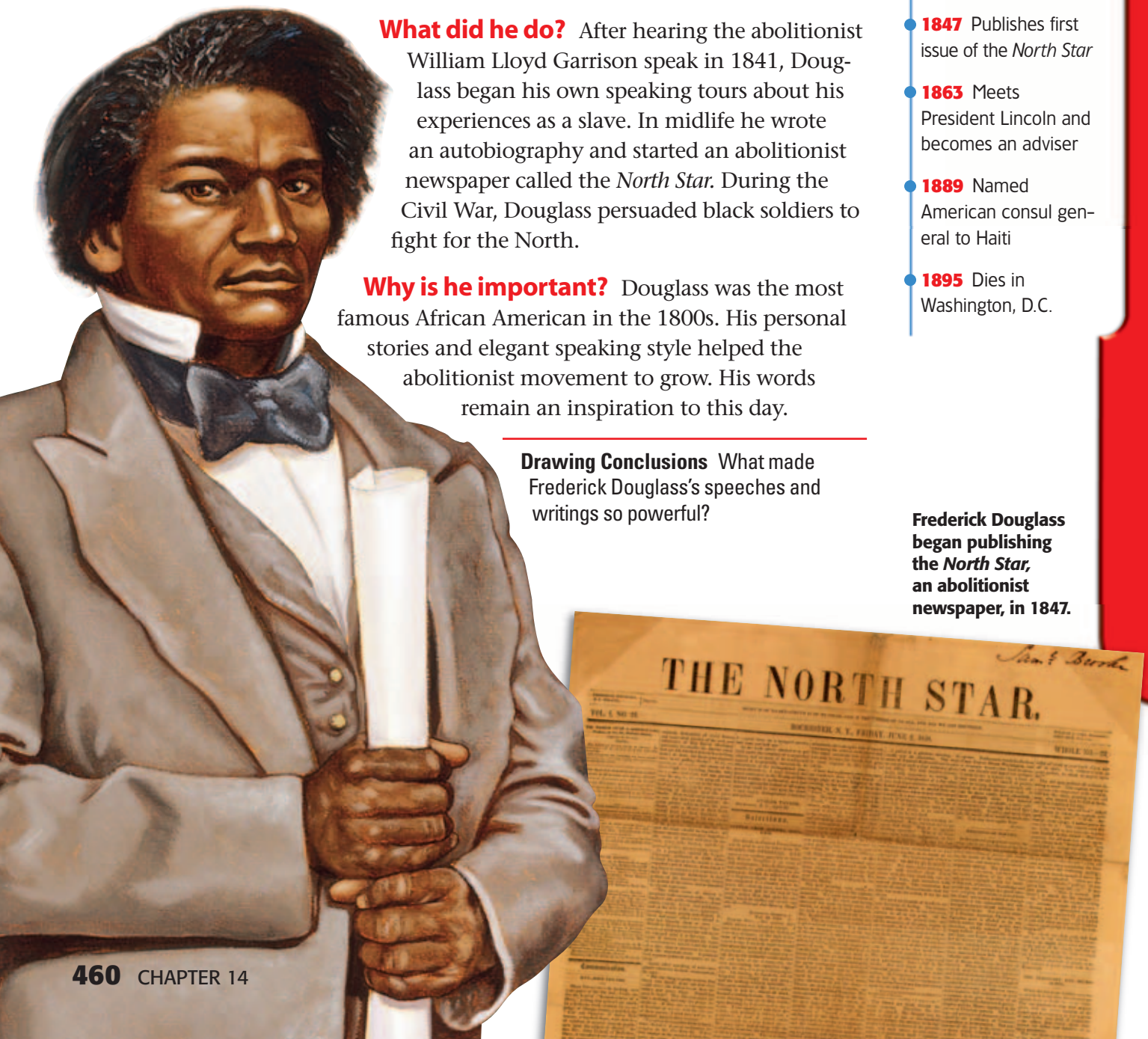
What did he do? After hearing the abolitionist William Lloyd Garrison speak in 1841, Douglass began his own speaking tours about his experiences as a slave. In midlife he wrote an autobiography and started an abolitionist newspaper called the *North Star*. During the Civil War, Douglass persuaded black soldiers to fight for the North.

Why is he important? Douglass was the most famous African American in the 1800s. His personal stories and elegant speaking style helped the abolitionist movement to grow. His words remain an inspiration to this day.

Drawing Conclusions What made Frederick Douglass's speeches and writings so powerful?

KEY EVENTS

- **1817** Born a slave in Maryland
- **1837** Escapes slavery disguised as a sailor
- **1841** Begins his career as a speaker on abolition
- **1845** Writes *Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass*, his first autobiography
- **1847** Publishes first issue of the *North Star*
- **1863** Meets President Lincoln and becomes an adviser
- **1889** Named American consul general to Haiti
- **1895** Dies in Washington, D.C.



Frederick Douglass began publishing the *North Star*, an abolitionist newspaper, in 1847.

Women's Rights

SECTION 5

If YOU were there...

You are a schoolteacher in New York State in 1848. Although you earn a small salary, you still live at home. Your father does not believe that unmarried women should live alone or look after their own money. One day in a shop, you see a poster about a public meeting to discuss women's rights. You know your father will be angry if you go to the meeting. But you are very curious.

Would you attend the meeting? Why?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Women were active in the movements to reform prisons and schools. They fought for temperance and worked for abolition. But with all their work for social change, women still lacked many rights and opportunities of their own. Throughout the 1800s, the women's rights movement gradually became stronger and more organized.

Women's Struggle for Equal Rights

Fighting for the rights of African Americans led many female abolitionists to fight for women's rights. In the mid-1800s, these women found that they had to defend their right to speak in public, particularly when a woman addressed both men and women. For example, members of the press, the clergy, and even some male abolitionists criticized the Grimké sisters. These critics thought that the sisters should not give public speeches. They did not want women to leave their traditional female roles. The Grimkés protested that women had a moral duty to lead the antislavery movement.

Early Writings for Women's Rights

In 1838 Sarah Grimké published a pamphlet arguing for equal rights for women. She titled it *Letters on the Equality of the Sexes and the Condition of Women.*

"I ask no favors for my sex . . . All I ask our brethren [brothers] is that they will take their feet from off our necks, and permit us to stand upright on that ground which God designed us to occupy."

—Sarah Grimké, quoted in *The Grimké Sisters from South Carolina,* edited by Gerda Lerner

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Influenced by the abolition movement, many women struggled to gain equal rights for themselves.
2. Calls for women's rights met opposition from men and women.
3. The Seneca Falls Convention launched the first organized women's rights movement in the United States.

The Big Idea

Reformers sought to improve women's rights in American society.

Key Terms and People

Elizabeth Cady Stanton, *p. 464*
Lucretia Mott, *p. 464*
Seneca Falls Convention, *p. 464*
Declaration of Sentiments, *p. 464*
Lucy Stone, *p. 465*
Susan B. Anthony, *p. 465*

TAKING NOTES Create a graphic organizer like the one shown below. Use it to show some of the significant events in the struggle for women's rights.

Date	Events
1838	
1848	
1851	
1860	

Sarah Grimké also argued for equal educational opportunities. She pointed out laws that negatively affected women. In addition, she demanded equal pay for equal work.

Sarah Grimké never married. She explained that the laws of the day gave a husband complete control of his wife's property. Therefore, she feared that by marrying, she would become more like a slave than a wife. Her sister, Angelina, did marry, but she refused to promise to obey her husband during their marriage ceremony. She married Theodore Weld, an abolitionist. Weld agreed to give up his legal right to control her property after they married. For the Grimkés, the abolitionist principles and women's rights principles were identical.

In 1845 the famous transcendentalist Margaret Fuller published *Woman in the Nineteenth Century*. This book used well-known sayings to explain the role of women in American society. Fuller used democratic and transcendentalist principles to stress the importance of individualism to all people, especially women. The book influenced many leaders of the women's rights movement.

Sojourner Truth

Sojourner Truth was another powerful supporter of both abolition and women's rights. She had been born into slavery in about 1797. Her birth name was Isabella Baumfree. She took the name Sojourner Truth because she felt that her mission was to be a sojourner, or traveler, and spread the truth. Though she never learned to read or write, she impressed many well-educated people. One person who thought highly of her was the author Harriet Beecher Stowe. Stowe said that she had never spoken "with anyone who had more . . . personal presence than this woman." Truth stood six feet tall and was a confident speaker.

In 1851 Truth gave a speech that is often quoted to this day.

> "That man over here says that women need to be helped into carriages and lifted over ditches, and to have the best place everywhere. Nobody ever helps me into carriages or over mud puddles, or gives me any best place . . . Look at me! I have ploughed and planted and . . . no man could head [outwork] me. And ain't I a woman?"
>
> —Sojourner Truth, quoted in *A History of Women in America* by Carol Hymowitz and Michaele Weissman

Truth, the Grimké sisters, and other supporters of the women's movement were determined to be heard.

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences**

Why would reformers link the issues of abolition and women's rights?

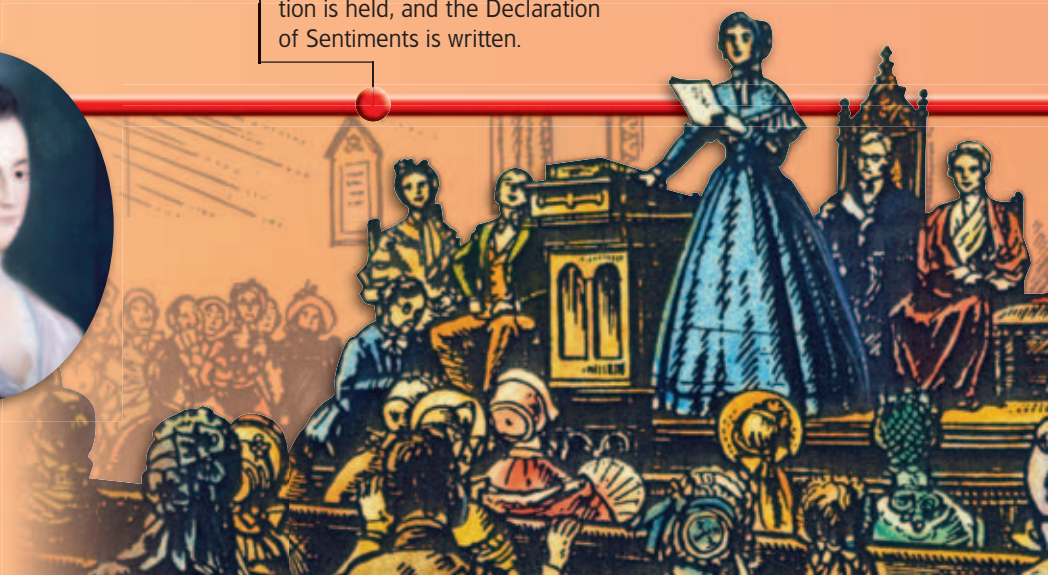
Time Line

Women's Rights

1776 Abigail Adams asks her husband, John Adams, to "remember the ladies" and their rights in the Declaration of Independence.



1848 The Seneca Falls Convention is held, and the Declaration of Sentiments is written.



Opposing the Call for Women's Rights

Publications about women's rights first appeared in the United States shortly after the American Revolution. However, women's concerns did not become a national issue with strong opposition for many more years.

The Movement Grows

The change took place when women took a more active and leading role in reform and abolition. Other social changes also led to the rise of the women's movement. Women took advantage of better educational opportunities in the early 1800s. Their efforts on behalf of reform groups helped them learn how to organize more effectively and to work together.

Another benefit of reform-group work was that some men began to fight for women's rights. Many activists, both men and women, found it unacceptable that women were not allowed to vote or sit on juries. They were also upset that married women in many states had little or no control over their own property.

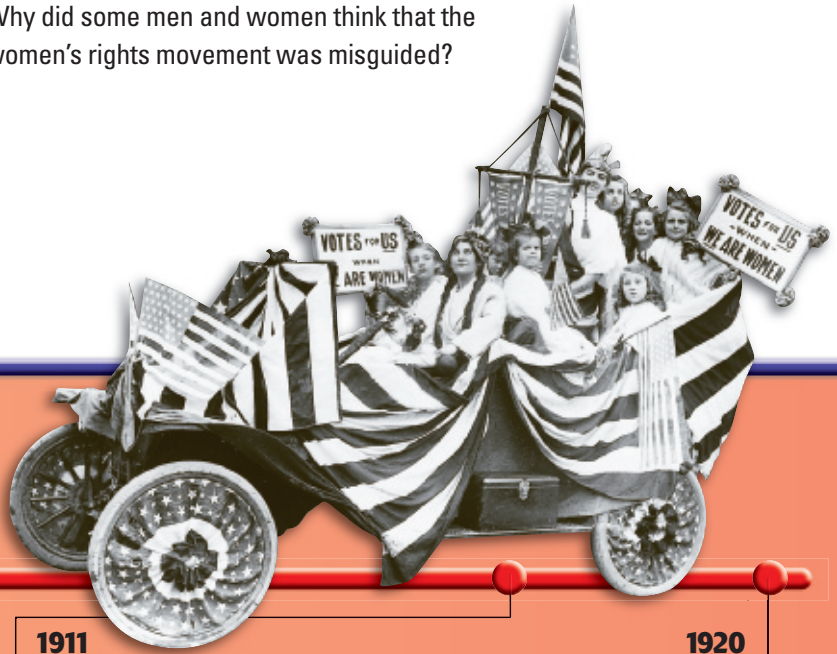
Opposition to Women's Rights

Like the abolitionist movement, the struggle for women's rights faced opposition. Many people did not agree with some of the goals of the women's rights movement. Some women believed that they did not need new rights. They said that women were not unequal to men, only different. Some critics believed that women should not try to work in public for social changes. Women were welcome to work for social change, but only from within their homes. "Let her not look away from her own little family circle for the means of producing moral and social reforms," wrote T. S. Arthur. His advice appeared in a popular women's magazine called *The Lady at Home*.

Some people also thought that women lacked the physical or mental strength to survive without men's protection. They believed that a woman should go from the protection of her father's home to that of her husband's. They also thought that women could not cope with the outside world; therefore, a husband should control his wife's property. Despite opposition, women continued to pursue their goal of greater rights.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**

Why did some men and women think that the women's rights movement was misguided?



1872 Susan B. Anthony is arrested while trying to vote in New York.

1890 Wyoming's new state constitution includes women's suffrage.

1911 The National Association Opposed to Woman Suffrage is formed.

1920 On August 26, the Nineteenth Amendment is declared ratified by Congress, giving women the right to vote.



"There never will be complete equality until women themselves help to make laws and elect lawmakers."

Susan B. Anthony

ANALYSIS SKILL **READING TIME LINES**

Women in Wyoming could vote how many years before women in the rest of the country could?

Primary Source

HISTORIC DOCUMENT

Declaration of Sentiments

At the 1848 Seneca Falls Convention, 100 people signed the Declaration of Sentiments, a document declaring the rights of women. The wording of the document purposely echoed the Declaration of Independence.

The authors use the same words that are in the Declaration of Independence, but include women.

Here the women demand that they become a part of government.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men and women are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable[1] rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that to secure these rights governments are instituted, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed. Whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of those who suffer from it to refuse allegiance[2] to it, and to insist upon the institution of a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness.

1. **inalienable** not able to be taken away 2. **allegiance** loyalty

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why would women want to use the Declaration of Independence as a source for their own declaration?

Seneca Falls Convention

In 1840 **Elizabeth Cady Stanton** attended the World's Anti-Slavery Convention in London, England, while on her honeymoon. She discovered that, unlike her husband, she was not allowed to participate. All women in attendance had to sit behind a curtain in a separate gallery of the convention hall. William Lloyd Garrison, who had helped found the American Anti-Slavery Society, sat with them in protest.

The treatment of women abolitionists at the convention angered Stanton and her new friend, **Lucretia Mott**. Apparently, even many abolitionists did not think that women were equal to men. Stanton and Mott wanted to change this, so they planned to "form a society to advance the rights of women." Eight years passed before Stanton and Mott finally announced the **Seneca Falls Convention**, the first public meeting about women's rights held in the United States. It opened on July 19, 1848, in Seneca Falls, New York.

Declaration of Sentiments

The convention organizers wrote a **Declaration of Sentiments**. This document detailed beliefs about social injustice toward women. They used the Declaration of Independence as the basis for the language for their Declaration of Sentiments. The authors included 18 charges against men—the same number that had been charged against King George III. The Declaration of Sentiments was signed by some 100 people.

About 240 people attended the Seneca Falls Convention, including men such as abolitionist Frederick Douglass. Many other reformers who also worked in the temperance and abolitionist movements were present. Several women who participated in the convention worked in nearby factories. One of them, 19-year-old Charlotte Woodward, signed the Declaration of Sentiments. She worked long hours in a factory, making gloves. Her wages were very low, and she could not even keep her earnings. She had to turn her wages over to her father.

Women's Rights Leaders

After the convention, the struggle continued. Women's rights activists battled many difficulties and much opposition. Still, they kept working to obtain greater equality for women. Among the many women working for women's rights, three became important leaders: Lucy Stone, Susan B. Anthony, and Elizabeth Cady Stanton. Each brought different strengths to the fight for women's rights.

Lucy Stone was a well-known spokesperson for the Anti-Slavery Society. In the early years of the women's rights movement, Stone became known as a gifted speaker. Elizabeth Cady Stanton called her "the first who really stirred the nation's heart on the subject of women's wrongs."

Susan B. Anthony brought strong organizational skills to the women's rights movement. She did much to turn the fight for women's rights into a political movement. Anthony argued that women and men should receive equal pay for equal work. She also believed that women should be allowed to enter traditionally male professions, such as religion and law. Anthony was especially concerned with laws that affected women's control of money and property.

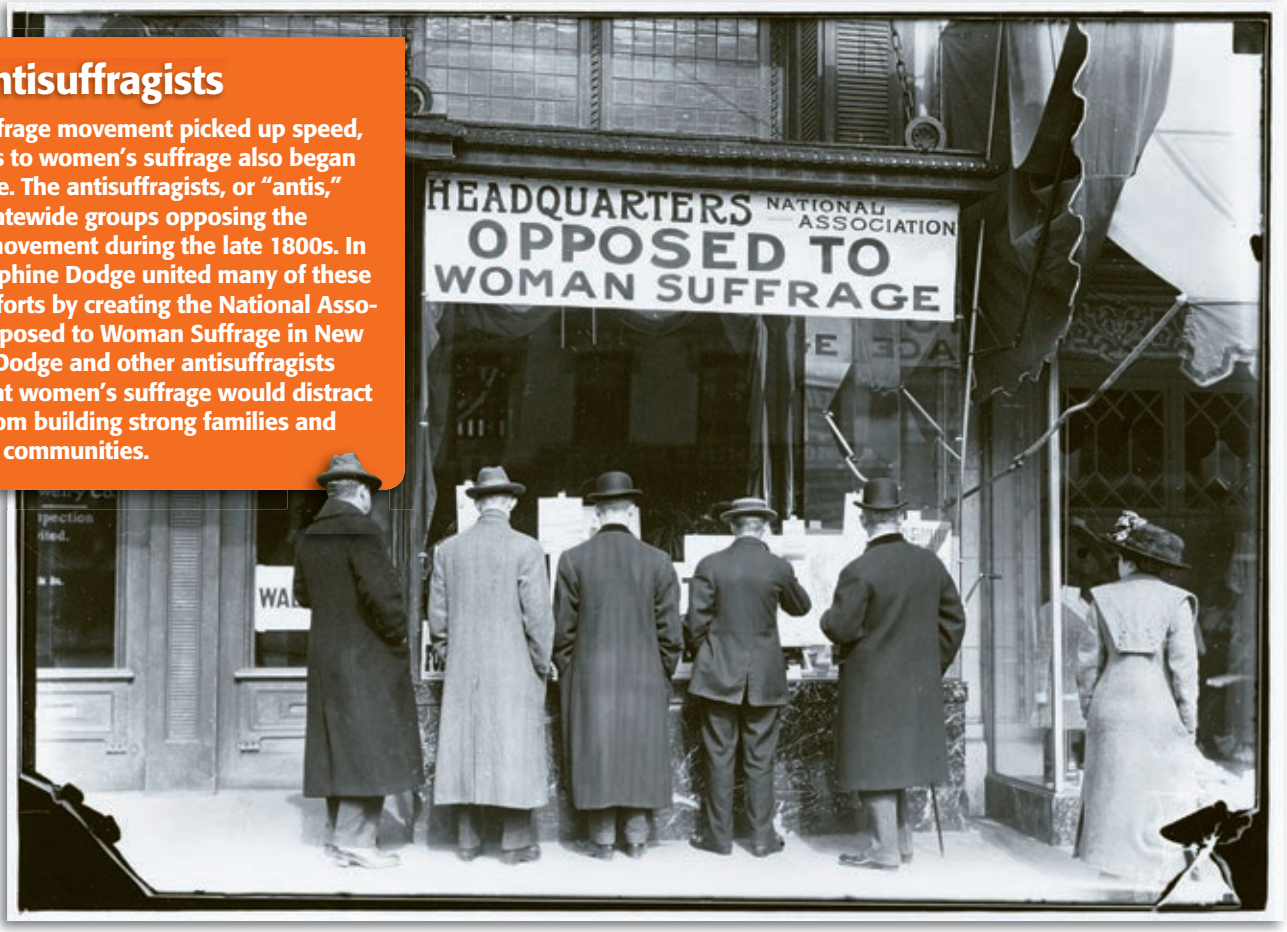
Anthony led a campaign to change laws regarding the property rights of women. She wrote in her diary that no woman could ever be free without "a purse of her own." After forming a network to cover the entire state of New York, she collected more than 6,000 signatures to petition for a new property-rights law. In 1860, due largely to the efforts of Anthony, New York finally gave married women ownership of their wages and property. Other states in the Northeast and Midwest soon created similar laws.

THE IMPACT TODAY

In the United States, as of the year 2007, women earned about 80 percent as much as men did.

The Antisuffragists

As the suffrage movement picked up speed, opponents to women's suffrage also began to organize. The antisuffragists, or "antis," formed statewide groups opposing the suffrage movement during the late 1800s. In 1911, Josephine Dodge united many of these groups' efforts by creating the National Association Opposed to Woman Suffrage in New York City. Dodge and other antisuffragists argued that women's suffrage would distract women from building strong families and improving communities.



Elizabeth Cady Stanton wrote many of the documents and speeches of the movement, which were often delivered by Anthony. Stanton was a founder and important leader of the National Woman Suffrage Association. This organization was considered one of the more radical groups because of its position that abolition was not a more important cause than women's rights.

Not every battle was won. Other major reforms, such as women's right to vote, were not achieved at this time. Still, more women than ever before became actively involved in women's rights issues. This increased activity was one of the movement's greatest accomplishments.

READING CHECK **Identifying Points of View**
What did Susan B. Anthony mean when she said that no woman could be free without "a purse of her own"?



Lucy Stone worked for equal rights for women and African Americans.

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Women's rights became a major issue in the mid-1800s, as women began to demand a greater degree of equality. In the next chapter you will read about western expansion.

Section 5 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP14

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What role did Sojourner Truth play in both the abolition and women's rights movements?
   b. Analyze How did the abolition movement influence women to demand equal rights?
2. **a. Identify** What limitations on women's rights did many activists find unacceptable?
   b. Summarize Why did many Americans oppose equal rights for women?
   c. Elaborate What arguments might you use to counter the arguments of men and women who opposed equal rights for women?
3. **a. Recall** Who were the three main leaders of the women's rights movement, and how did they each contribute to the movement?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why might working-class women like Charlotte Woodward have supported the **Seneca Falls Convention** and the **Declaration of Sentiments**?
   c. Evaluate Do you agree with **Susan B. Anthony** that women should receive equal pay for equal work? Explain your answer.

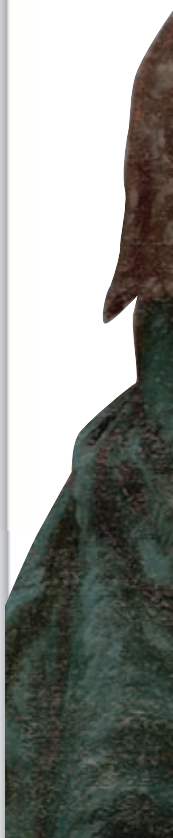
Critical Thinking

4. **Analyzing** Review your notes on events in the women's rights movement. Then copy the graphic organizer shown below and use it to show the goals of the movement, as well as the arguments against it.

Goals	Opponents' Arguments

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Describing Women's Suffrage** Add notes about the women's suffrage movement to your chart. Note important leaders and describe what they were fighting for. Ask yourself, "How did the women's suffrage movement change life in the United States?"



BIOGRAPHY

Elizabeth Cady Stanton

What steps would you take to bring about nationwide change?

When did she live? 1815–1902

Where did she live? Elizabeth Cady Stanton was born in Johnstown, New York. She married a prominent abolitionist and settled in Seneca Falls, New York, where she had seven children. Later in life she traveled widely, giving lectures and speeches across the country.

What did she do? Stanton and fellow activist Lucretia Mott organized the nation's first women's rights convention, at Seneca Falls in 1848. She and Susan B. Anthony founded the National Woman Suffrage Association in 1869. For nearly six decades, she spoke and wrote passionately about women's rights.

Why is she important? Stanton helped author the Declaration of Sentiments, which demanded equal rights for women, including the right to vote. A brilliant speaker and debater, Stanton spoke out against laws that kept married women from owning property, earning wages, and keeping custody of their children.

Finding Main Ideas What problems did Stanton try to correct? What problems did she face in accomplishing her goals?

KEY EVENTS

- **1815** Born in Johnstown, New York
- **1840** Meets Lucretia Mott at the World's Anti-Slavery Convention, where they are barred from participating
- **1848** Helps organize the first national meeting of women's suffrage reformers at Seneca Falls, New York
- **1851** Meets Susan B. Anthony, with whom she will later lead the National Woman Suffrage Association
- **1895** Publishes the Woman's Bible
- **1902** Dies in New York City




A WOMAN'S DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE 1848

Elizabeth Cady Stanton helped author the Declaration of Sentiments at the Seneca Falls Convention.

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Accepting Social Responsibility

Define the Skill

A *society* is an organized group of people who share a common set of activities, traditions, and goals. You are part of many societies—your school, community, and nation are just three. Every society's strength depends on the support and contributions of its members. *Social responsibility* is the obligation that every person has to the societies in which he or she is a member.

Learn the Skill

As a part of your school, community, and nation, you have obligations to the people around you. The most obvious is to do nothing to harm your society. You also have a duty to be part of it. At the very least, this means exercising the rights and responsibilities of membership. These include being informed about issues in your society.

Another level of social responsibility is support of change to benefit society. This level of involvement goes beyond being informed about issues to trying to do something about them. If you take this important step, here are some points to consider.

1. Few efforts to change society have everyone's support. Some people will want things to stay the same. They may treat you badly if you work for change. You must be prepared for this possibility if you decide to take action.
2. Sometimes efforts to improve things involve opposing laws or rules that need to be changed. No matter how just your cause is, if you break law or rules, you must be willing to accept the consequences of your behavior.
3. Remember that violence is *never* an acceptable method for change. People who use force in seeking change are not behaving in a socially responsible manner, even if their cause is good.

This chapter was filled with the stories of socially responsible people. Many of them devoted their lives to changing society for the better. Some did so at great personal risk. Boston abolitionist William Lloyd Garrison barely escaped with his life from a local mob that tried to lynch him because of his views.

Garrison and the other reformers you read about demonstrated the highest level of social responsibility. They saw an issue they believed to be a problem in society, and they worked tirelessly to change it and make society better.

Practice the Skill

Review the "If you were there" scene on page 454. Imagine yourself as that Ohioan. You believe slavery to be wrong. However, you also respect the law, and it is illegal to help an escaped slave. In addition, you know that most of your neighbors do not feel as you do about slavery. They might harm you or your property if you take this stand against it.

1. Would agreeing to your friend's request help benefit society? Explain why or why not.
2. Are you willing to risk the anger of your neighbors? Why or why not?
3. Is the idea of breaking the law or possibly going to jail a factor in your decision? Explain.
4. Would agreeing to your friend's request be a socially responsible thing to do? Explain why or why not.

CHAPTER 14

Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
Why does it make sense that the women's suffrage movement originated from the abolitionist movement?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

1. Which of the following authors wrote about Puritan life in *The Scarlet Letter*?

a. Emily Dickinson
b. Herman Melville
c. Thomas Gallaudet
d. Nathaniel Hawthorne

2. Which document expressed the complaints of supporters of women's rights?

a. Declaration of the Rights of Women
b. Declaration of Sentiments
c. Letters on Women's Rights
d. Seneca Falls Convention

3. As leader of the common-school movement, who worked to improve free public education?

a. Walt Whitman
b. Horace Mann
c. Lyman Beecher
d. Sojourner Truth

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 438–442)*

4. a. Identify What political party was founded by nativists, and what policies did it support?

b. Analyze What factors caused U.S. cities to grow so fast?

c. Evaluate Do you think that the benefits of city life outweighed its drawbacks? Explain.

SECTION 2 *(Pages 443–445)*

5. a. Describe Who were some important transcendentalists, and what ideas did they promote?

b. Compare and Contrast In what ways were transcendentalists and Romantics similar and different?

c. Elaborate Which movement appeals to you more—American transcendentalism or Romanticism? Why?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 448–453)*

6. a. Identify What important reform movements became popular in the early 1800s?

b. Analyze Why did education become an important topic for reformers in the 1800s?

c. Evaluate Which reform movement do you think had the greatest effect on the United States? Why?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 454–459)*

7. a. Recall What are the different reasons why people supported abolition?

b. Make Inferences How did northerners and southerners differ in their opposition to abolition?

c. Evaluate Which of the methods used by abolitionists to oppose slavery do you think was most successful? Why?

SECTION 5 *(Pages 461–466)*

8. a. Recall What led many women to question their place in American society?

b. Make Inferences Why did female factory workers like Charlotte Woodward support the women's rights movement?

c. Evaluate By 1860 do you think the women's movement had been successful? Explain your answer.

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY14

9. Activity: Creating Visuals The *Liberator* and *North Star* were two newspapers that encouraged the end of slavery. Enter the activity keyword and research the influence of abolitionist newspapers, such as those written by William Lloyd Garrison and Frederick Douglass. Then create a visual display that illustrates how each newspaper represented the abolitionist point of view.



Reading Skills

Information and Propaganda *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question below.*

10. Which of the following is *not* an example of propaganda?

a. a flyer protesting new tax laws

b. an ad about a political candidate

c. a radio announcement sponsored by an interest group

d. a list of camping rules from a park

Reviewing Themes

11. Society and Culture What social and cultural changes took place from 1800 to the mid-1800s?

Social Studies Skills

Accepting Social Responsibility *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to fill in the chart below.*

12.

Action	Is it socially responsible?	Why or why not?
Removing litter from a park		
Voting		
Reading a political magazine		
Running a red light		

Focus on Writing

13. Writing Your Persuasive Letter You've described a number of important events and political, religious, and artistic movements in your notebook. Now, it's time to choose the one you consider most important. Think about how it changed life for people in the United States. Then write a two-paragraph persuasive letter to the newspaper, arguing for the event or movement you chose. In the first paragraph, identify the event or movement you chose as well as a thesis explaining why it is important. In the second paragraph, include details about the event or movement that support your thesis. Close with one or two sentences that sum up your points.

CHAPTER 14

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **A potato blight in Europe brought a large number of immigrants to the United States who were**

A Jewish.
B German.
C Irish.
D Protestant.

2 **The author of *The Raven* was**

A James Fenimore Cooper.
B Edgar Allan Poe.
C Walt Whitman.
D Emily Dickinson.

3 **The most famous leader of the Underground Railroad was**

A Frederick Douglass.
B Harriet Tubman.
C William Lloyd Garrison.
D Harriet Beecher Stowe.

4 **African American students in the North**

A had less opportunity for education than those in the South.
B did not benefit from educational reforms.
C had opportunities to attend black colleges formed in the 1840s.
D usually attended the same schools as white students.

5 **The temperance movement, efforts at prison reform, and the abolition movement were all elements of**

A social reforms of the mid-1800s.
B the Second Great Awakening.
C transcendentalism.
D the women's rights movement.

6 **Which of the following people would *most likely* have supported a law prohibiting foreigners from holding public office?**

A an antisuffragist
B a nativist
C an abolitionist
D a transcendentalist

7 **Examine the following cartoon about women breaking kegs of liquor and then use it to answer the question below.**



Document-Based Question **What does the shield of the woman on horseback represent? How can you tell?**

CHAPTER 15 1848–1860

A Divided Nation

Focus Question

How do issues of power, wealth, and morality influence war?

SECTION 1
The Debate over Slavery 476
Quick Facts Upsetting the Balance
Literature in History Antislavery Literature

SECTION 2
Trouble in Kansas 483
Focus on New York Homestead Act

SECTION 3
Political Divisions 488
Supreme Court Decisions *Dred Scott* v. *Sandford*
Quick Facts A Growing Conflict
Primary Source A House Divided

SECTION 4
The Nation Divides 493
Primary Source John Brown's Last Speech
Focus on New York City Lincoln at Cooper Union

Focus on Writing

Writing an Autobiographical Sketch When you read about history, it can be difficult to imagine how the events you read about affected ordinary people. In this chapter you will read about slavery in the United States. Then you will write an autobiography of a fictional character, telling how these events affected him or her. Your fictional character can live in any part of the United States. He or she might be an enslaved African, a southern plantation owner, a northern abolitionist, or a settler in one of the new territories. Your classmates are your audience.



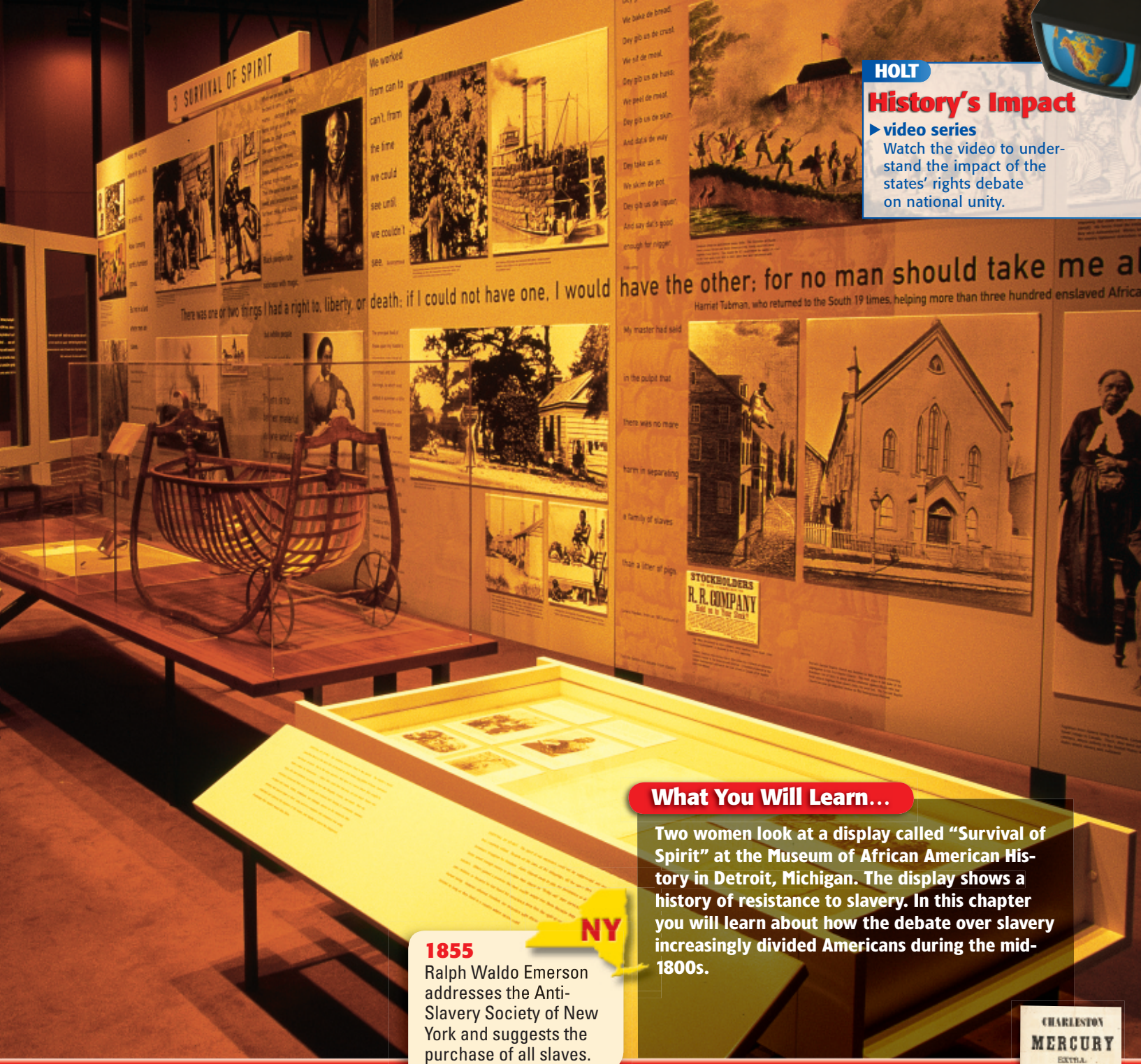
United States

1848
The Free-Soil Party is formed on August 9.

1848

World

1848
Revolutionary movements sweep across Europe.



HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**

Watch the video to understand the impact of the states' rights debate on national unity.

What You Will Learn...

Two women look at a display called "Survival of Spirit" at the Museum of African American History in Detroit, Michigan. The display shows a history of resistance to slavery. In this chapter you will learn about how the debate over slavery increasingly divided Americans during the mid-1800s.

1855 Ralph Waldo Emerson addresses the Anti-Slavery Society of New York and suggests the purchase of all slaves.

1850 Congress passes the Fugitive Slave Act on September 18.

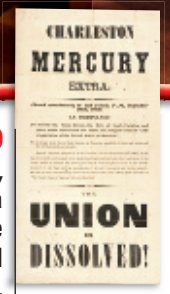
1852 *Uncle Tom's Cabin* is published by Harriet Beecher Stowe.



1856 In the Sack of Lawrence, pro-slavery forces attack the town of Lawrence, Kansas, on May 21.

1859 John Brown takes control of the federal arsenal at Harpers Ferry, Virginia.

1860 On December 20, South Carolina votes to secede from the United States.



1850 | 1855 | 1860



1852 Louis-Napoléon declares himself Emperor Napoléon III of France.

1856 British and French forces defeat Russia in the Crimean War.

1857 Indian soldiers in the British army begin the Sepoy Mutiny against British control of India.



Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | **Politics** | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

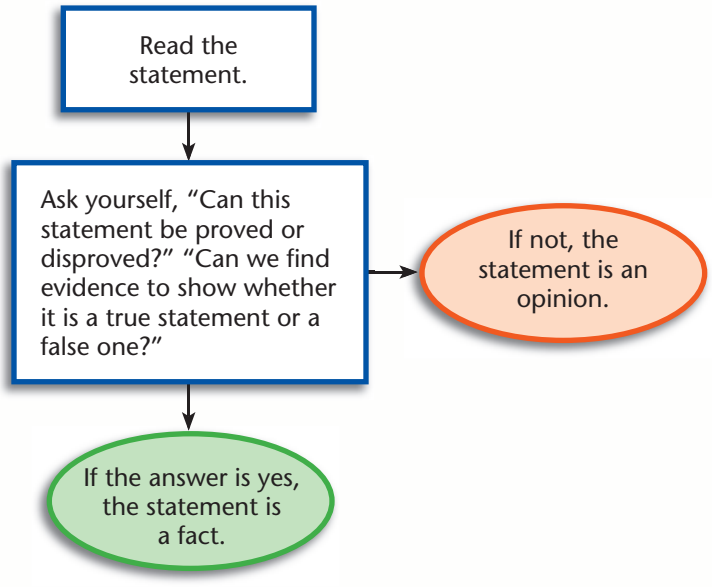
Focus on Themes This chapter describes the growing tension between the North and the South over the slavery issue. You will read what happened as more states were admitted to the Union and people argued if they should be slave states or not. You will read about events that widened the division between the North and South so that the South finally chose to secede from the Union. Throughout the chapter you will see that **cultural** differences influenced **political** decisions.

Facts, Opinions, and the Past

Focus on Reading When you are trying to learn about history, separating facts from opinions helps you know what really happened.

Identifying Facts and Opinions Something is a **fact** if there is a way to prove it. For example, research can prove or disprove the following statement: "Abraham Lincoln belonged to the Republican Party." But research can't prove the following statement because it is just an **opinion**, or someone's belief: "Lincoln was the greatest president in American history."

Use the process below to decide whether a statement is fact or opinion.



You Try It!

The following passage tells about the debates that Abraham Lincoln had with Stephen Douglas. All the statements in this passage are facts. What makes them facts and not opinions?

The Lincoln-Douglas Debates

From Chapter 15, p. 491

In 1858 Illinois Republicans nominated Abraham Lincoln for the U.S. Senate. His opponent was Democrat Stephen Douglas, who had represented Illinois in the Senate since 1847. Lincoln challenged Douglas in what became the historic Lincoln-Douglas debates.

In each debate, Lincoln stressed that the central issue of the campaign was the spread of slavery in the West. He said that the Democrats were trying to spread slavery across the nation.

Lincoln talked about the *Dred Scott* decision. He said that African Americans were "entitled to all the natural rights" listed in the Declaration of Independence, specifically mentioning "the right to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness."

Identify each of the following as a fact or an opinion and then explain your choice.

1. Lincoln accused the Democrats of trying to spread slavery across the nation.
2. The Lincoln-Douglas debates were the most important debates in the history of the nation.
3. Stephen Douglas was a U.S. senator from Illinois.
4. Abraham Lincoln ran against Douglas in the 1858 Senate election.
5. Most Americans believed that the *Dred Scott* decision was a good one.
6. Lincoln was the best debater people from Illinois had ever heard.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 15

Section 1

popular sovereignty *(p. 476)*
Wilmot Proviso *(p. 476)*
sectionalism *(p. 477)*
Free-Soil Party *(p. 477)*
secede *(p. 478)*
Compromise of 1850 *(p. 479)*
Fugitive Slave Act *(p. 479)*
Anthony Burns *(p. 480)*
Uncle Tom's Cabin (p. 481)
Harriet Beecher Stowe *(p. 481)*

Section 2

Franklin Pierce *(p. 483)*
Stephen Douglas *(p. 484)*
Kansas-Nebraska Act *(p. 485)*
Pottawatomie Massacre *(p. 487)*
Charles Sumner *(p. 487)*
Preston Brooks *(p. 487)*

Section 3

Republican Party *(p. 488)*
James Buchanan *(p. 488)*
John C. Frémont *(p. 489)*
Dred Scott *(p. 489)*
Roger B. Taney *(p. 490)*
Abraham Lincoln *(p. 490)*
Lincoln-Douglas debates *(p. 491)*
Freeport Doctrine *(p. 492)*

Section 4

John Brown's raid *(p. 493)*
John C. Breckinridge *(p. 495)*
Constitutional Union Party *(p. 495)*
John Bell *(p. 495)*
John J. Crittenden *(p. 496)*
Confederate States of America *(p. 497)*
Jefferson Davis *(p. 497)*

Academic Vocabulary

In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

implications *(p. 485)*
complex *(p. 489)*

As you read Chapter 15, look closely at quotes from historical figures. Are these quotes showing you facts or opinions?

SECTION 1

The Debate over Slavery

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The addition of new land in the West renewed disputes over the expansion of slavery.
2. The Compromise of 1850 tried to solve the disputes over slavery.
3. The Fugitive Slave Act caused more controversy.
4. Abolitionists used antislavery literature to promote opposition.

The Big Idea

Antislavery literature and the annexation of new lands intensified the debate over slavery.

Key Terms and People

popular sovereignty, *p. 476*
Wilmot Proviso, *p. 476*
sectionalism, *p. 477*
Free-Soil Party, *p. 477*
secede, *p. 478*
Compromise of 1850, *p. 479*
Fugitive Slave Act, *p. 479*
Anthony Burns, *p. 480*
Uncle Tom's Cabin, *p. 481*
Harriet Beecher Stowe, *p. 481*

TAKING NOTES Copy the graphic organizer below. As you read, take notes on the sequence of events in the debate over slavery. Be sure to describe the effects of each event.

Significant Events in the Slavery Debate	
Event	Effect
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.	

If YOU were there...

You live in a crowded neighborhood in New York City in 1854. Your apartment building is home to a variety of people—long-time residents, Irish immigrants, free African Americans. One day federal marshals knock on your door. They claim that one of your neighbors is a fugitive slave. The marshals say you must help them find her. If you don't, you will be fined or even sent to jail.

What would you tell the federal marshals?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Some reform movements of the 1800s drew stubborn and often violent opposition. This was especially true of the abolitionist movement. Pro-slavery supporters fought for laws to protect slavery and extend the slave system. These laws were a threat to African Americans in the North.

New Land Renews Slavery Disputes

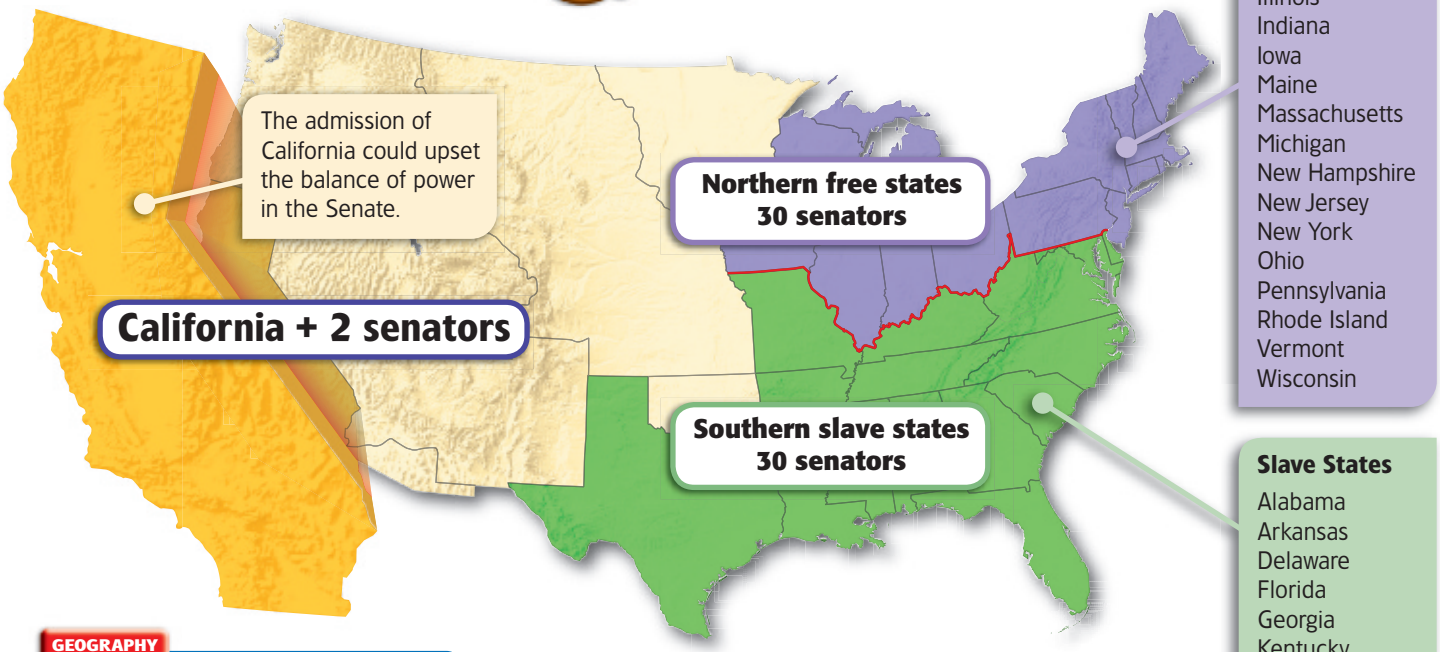
The United States added more than 500,000 square miles of land as a result of winning the Mexican-American War in 1848. The additional land caused bitter debate about slavery. The Missouri Compromise of 1820 had divided the Louisiana Purchase into either free or slave regions. It prohibited slavery north of latitude 36°30′ but let Missouri become a slave state. In the 1840s President James K. Polk wanted to extend the 36°30′ line to the West coast, dividing the Mexican Cession into two parts—one free and one enslaved. Some leaders, including Senator Lewis Cass of Michigan, encouraged **popular sovereignty**, the idea that political power belongs to the people, who should decide on banning or allowing slavery.

Regional Differences about Slavery

Some northerners wanted to outlaw slavery in all parts of the Mexican Cession. During the war, Representative David Wilmot offered the **Wilmot Proviso**, a document stating that "neither slavery nor involuntary servitude shall ever exist in any part of [the] territory."

Upsetting the Balance

QUICK FACTS



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

Region How could the admission of California as a slave state or a free state upset the balance between North and South?

The northern-controlled House passed the document, but in the Senate, the South had more power. The Wilmot Proviso did not pass. Before this time, politicians had usually supported the ideas of their political parties. However, the Wilmot Proviso spurred a debate that showed growing **sectionalism**, or favoring the interests of one section or region over the interests of the entire country.

To attract voters, the Democrats and the Whigs did not take a clear position on slavery in the presidential campaign of 1848. In response, antislavery northerners formed a new party, the **Free-Soil Party**, which supported the Wilmot Proviso. They worried that slave labor would mean fewer jobs for white workers. Party members chose former president Martin Van Buren as their candidate. The new party won 10 percent of the popular vote, drawing away votes from Democrat Lewis Cass. Whig candidate Zachary Taylor won a narrow victory.

The California Question

The California gold rush caused such rapid population growth that California applied to join the Union as a state instead of as a territory. But would California enter the Union as a free state or a slave state?

Most Californians opposed slavery, which had been illegal when the state was part of Mexico. Also, many forty-niners had come from free states. But if California became a free state, the balance between free and slave states would change, favoring the free states.

In the South, an imbalance was unacceptable. "We are about permanently to destroy the balance of power between the sections," said Senator Jefferson Davis of Mississippi. He and many other southerners did not want California to enter the Union as a free state.

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences**

Why did sectionalism in the United States increase in the late 1840s?

THE IMPACT TODAY

Small parties still affect presidential elections in a similar way today.

Compromise of 1850

Senator Henry Clay of Kentucky had helped to settle the Missouri crisis of 1819–20 and the nullification crisis of 1832–33 by proposing compromises. He now had another plan to help the nation maintain peace. His ideas were designed to give both sides things that they wanted:

1. California would enter the Union as a free state.
2. The rest of the Mexican Cession would be federal land. In this territory, popular sovereignty would decide on slavery.
3. Texas would give up land east of the upper Rio Grande. In return, the government would pay Texas's debts from when it was an independent republic.
4. The slave trade—but not slavery—would end in the nation's capital.
5. A more effective fugitive slave law would be passed.

Clay's plan drew attack, especially regarding California. Senator William Seward of New York defended antislavery views and wanted California admitted "directly, without conditions, without qualifications, and without compromise." However, Senator John C. Calhoun of South Carolina argued that letting California enter as a free state would destroy the nation's balance. He warned people of issues that would later start the Civil War. Calhoun asked that the slave states be allowed to **secede**—formally withdraw—from the Union.

Primary Source

SPEECH

The Seventh of March Speech

On March 7, 1850, Daniel Webster spoke on the floor of the Senate in favor of the Compromise of 1850.

I hear with distress and anguish the word "secession." Secession! Peaceable secession! Sir, your eyes and mine are never destined to see the miracle. The dismemberment [taking apart] of this vast country without convulsion! The breaking up of the fountains of the great deep without ruffing the surface! Who is so foolish, I beg everybody's pardon, as to expect to see any such thing? . . . There can be no such thing as peaceable secession.

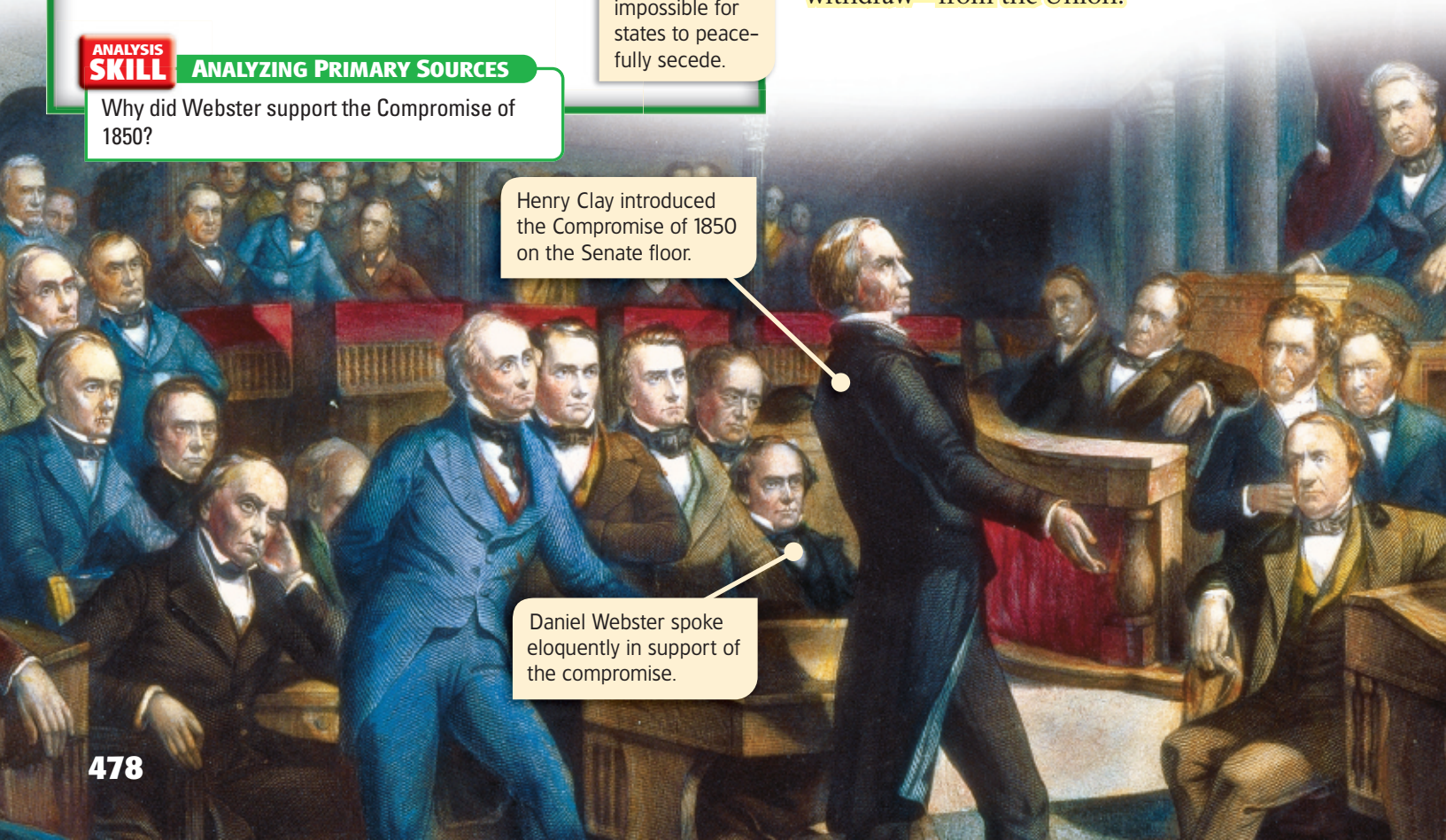
—quoted in *Daniel Webster: The Completest Man,* edited by Kenneth Shewmaker

Webster is upset by talk of secession.

Webster is saying that just as it is impossible to move water in the ocean without making waves, it is impossible for states to peacefully secede.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why did Webster support the Compromise of 1850?



Henry Clay introduced the Compromise of 1850 on the Senate floor.

Daniel Webster spoke eloquently in support of the compromise.

In contrast, Senator Daniel Webster of Massachusetts favored Clay's plan:

> "I wish to speak today, not as a Massachusetts man, nor as a Northern man, but as an American … I speak today for the preservation of the Union. Hear me for my cause."
>
> —Daniel Webster, quoted in *Battle Cry of Freedom* by James M. McPherson

Webster criticized northern abolitionists and southerners who talked of secession.

A compromise was enacted that year and seemed to settle most disputes between free and slave states. It achieved the majority of Clay's proposals. With the **Compromise of 1850**, California was able to enter the Union as a free state. The rest of the Mexican Cession was divided into two territories—Utah and New Mexico—where the question of whether to allow slavery would be decided by popular sovereignty.

Texas agreed to give up its land claims in New Mexico in exchange for financial aid from the federal government. The compromise outlawed the slave trade in the District of Columbia and established a new fugitive slave law.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How was Texas affected by the Compromise of 1850?

Fugitive Slave Act

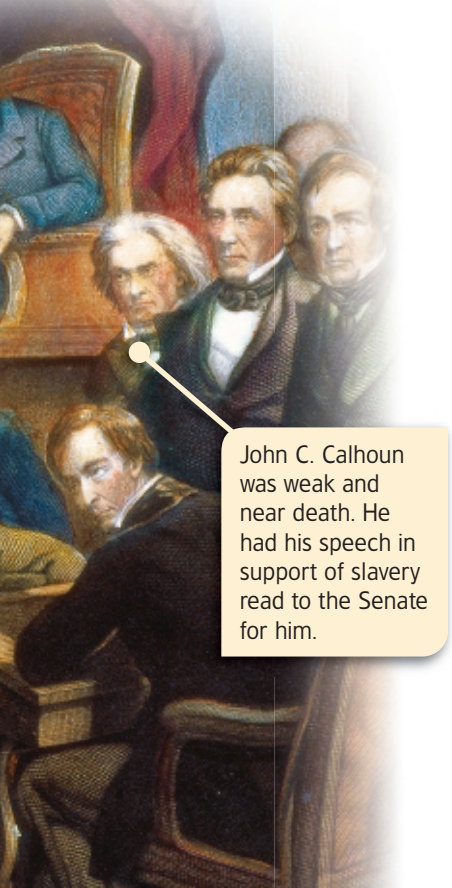
The newly passed **Fugitive Slave Act** made it a crime to help runaway slaves and allowed officials to arrest those slaves in free areas. Slaveholders were permitted to take suspected fugitives to U.S. commissioners, who decided their fate.

Details of the Fugitive Slave Act

Slaveholders could use testimony from white witnesses, but enslaved African Americans accused of being fugitives could not testify. Nor could people who hid or helped a runaway slave—they faced six months in jail and a $1,000 fine. Commissioners who rejected a slaveholder's claim earned $5 while those who returned suspected fugitives to slaveholders earned $10. Clearly, the commissioners benefited from helping slaveholders.

Reactions to the Fugitive Slave Act

Enforcement of the Fugitive Slave Act began immediately. In September 1850—the same month the law was passed—federal marshals arrested African American James Hamlet. They returned him to a slaveholder in



John C. Calhoun was weak and near death. He had his speech in support of slavery read to the Senate for him.

Primary Source

SPEECH

Southern View of the Compromise of 1850

John C. Calhoun from South Carolina wrote a speech saying that the proposed compromise did not go far enough to satisfy the South.

> "I have, senators, believed from the first that the agitation of the subject of slavery would, if not prevented by some timely and effective measure, end in disunion . . . The South asks for justice, simple justice, and less she ought not to take. She has no compromise to offer but the Constitution, and no concession or surrender to make."

Agitation means "unrest."

Calhoun believes the South's position was supported by the Constitution.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why did Calhoun urge southern senators to vote against the compromise?

Primary Source

PHOTOGRAPH

A Fugitive Slave Convention

The Fugitive Slave Act enraged abolitionists. To protest the new law, they held many meetings to publicly denounce it. One such meeting was held in 1850 in the small town of Cazenovia in central New York, a center for abolitionist activity. About 2,000 people—including many former slaves—attended the convention. They listened to speeches, made plans, and raised their voices for freedom. This photo was a point of pride for the delegates, but it also was used by opponents of the movement as a symbol of the poor morals of abolitionists: Not only were whites allowed to mix with African Americans, women and men were allowed to mix as well. This angered many people.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why would the abolitionists want a photograph of their convention?

Maryland, although he had lived in New York City for three years.

Thousands of northern African Americans fled to Canada in fear. In the 10 years after Congress passed the Fugitive Slave Act, some 343 fugitive slave cases were reviewed. The accused fugitives were declared free in only 11 cases.

The Fugitive Slave Act upset northerners, who were uncomfortable with the commissioners' power. Northerners disliked the idea of a trial without a jury. They also disapproved of commissioners' higher fees for returning slaves. Most were horrified that some free African Americans had been captured and sent to the South.

Most northerners opposed to the Act peacefully resisted, but violence did erupt. In 1854 **Anthony Burns**, a fugitive slave from Virginia, was arrested in Boston. Abolitionists used force while trying to rescue him from jail, killing a deputy marshal. A federal ship was ordered to return Burns to Virginia after his trial. Many people in the North, particularly in Massachusetts, were outraged. The event persuaded many to join the abolitionist cause.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**

What concerns did northerners have about the Fugitive Slave Act?

Antislavery Literature

Abolitionists in the North used the stories of fugitive slaves like James Hamlet and Anthony Burns to gain sympathy for their cause. Slave narratives also educated people about their hardships.

Fiction also informed people about the evils of slavery. ***Uncle Tom's Cabin***, the antislavery novel written by **Harriet Beecher Stowe**, spoke out powerfully against slavery. Stowe, the daughter of Connecticut minister Lyman Beecher, moved to Ohio when she was 21. There she met fugitive slaves and learned about the cruelties of slavery. The Fugitive Slave Act greatly angered Stowe. She decided to write a book that would educate northerners about the realities of slavery.

Uncle Tom's Cabin was published in 1852. The main character, a kindly enslaved African American named Tom, is taken from his wife and sold "down the river" in Louisiana. Tom becomes the slave of cruel Simon Legree. In a rage, Legree has Tom beaten to death.

The novel electrified the nation and sparked outrage in the South. Louisa McCord, a famous southern writer, questioned the "foul imagination which could invent such scenes."

Within a decade, more than 2 million copies of *Uncle Tom's Cabin* had been sold in the United States. The book's popularity caused one northerner to remark that Stowe and her book had created "two millions of abolitionists." Stowe later wrote *A Key to Uncle Tom's Cabin* to answer those who had criticized her book.

The impact of Stowe's book is suggested by her reported meeting with Abraham Lincoln in 1862, a year after the start of the Civil War. Lincoln supposedly said to Stowe that she was "the little lady who made this big war." Her book is still widely read today as a source of information about the harsh realities of slavery.

READING CHECK **Identifying Cause and Effect** Why did abolitionists use antislavery literature to promote their cause? What effect did it have on the slavery debate?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The United States experienced increasing disagreement over the issue of slavery. The Compromise of 1850 and the Fugitive Slave Act tried to address these disagreements with legislation. In the next section you will read about another disputed law concerning slavery, the Kansas-Nebraska Act, and the violence it sparked.

Section 1 Assessment

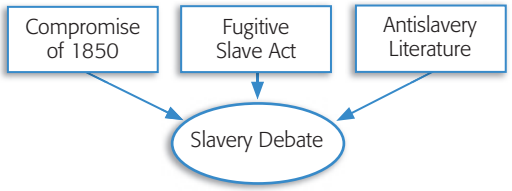
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP15

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What ideas did the **Free-Soil Party** promote?
   b. Predict What are some possible results of the growing sectional debate over slavery?
2. **a. Describe** What were the major points of the **Compromise of 1850**?
   b. Contrast What differing opinions emerged toward Henry Clay's proposed compromise?
3. **a. Identify** What were the effects of the **Fugitive Slave Act**?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why did some Americans believe the Fugitive Slave Act was unfair?
4. **a. Identify** What are three examples of antislavery literature?
   b. Elaborate Do you think literature was an effective tool against slavery? Why or why not?

Critical Thinking

5. **Evaluating** Review your notes on the debate over slavery. Then evaluate how the Compromise of 1850, the Fugitive Slave Act, and antislavery literature affected the slavery debate. Use a graphic organizer like the one below.



FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Taking Notes on the Debate over Slavery** Make some notes on the Wilmot Proviso, the Free-Soil Party, the Compromise of 1850, and the Fugitive Slave Act. Decide how your character feels about each of these. How do the Compromise of 1850 and the Fugitive Slave Act affect your character?

Antislavery Literature

from Uncle Tom's Cabin

by Harriet Beecher Stowe (1811–1896)

About the Reading *Published nine years before the outbreak of the Civil War,* Uncle Tom's Cabin *focused the nation's attention on the cruelties of slavery. In the following section, Stowe describes how a slave named Eliza is trying to escape to save her son from being sold.*

AS YOU READ **Look for details that appeal to your feelings.**

GUIDED READING

WORD HELP

conceive imagine
desolate alone
forlorn unhappy
slacking slowing down
thither there

❶ ***What detail tells you how long Eliza has walked up to this point?***

❷ ***Why do you think she chooses that escape route?***

It is impossible to conceive of a human creature more wholly desolate and forlorn than Eliza when she turned her footsteps from Uncle Tom's cabin . . .

The boundaries of the farm, the grove, the wood lot passed by her dizzily as she walked on; and still she went, leaving one familiar object after another, slacking not, pausing not, till reddening daylight found her many a long mile from all traces of any familiar objects upon the open highway. ❶

She had often been, with her mistress, to visit some connections in the little town of T—, not far from the Ohio River, and knew the road well. ❷ To go thither, to escape across the Ohio River, were the first hurried outlines of her plan of escape; beyond that she could only hope in God . . .

CONNECTING LITERATURE TO HISTORY

1. **Slaves had no legal rights. They were considered to be property, not human beings.** How do the actions and description in this passage contradict these ideas about slaves?

2. **Frederick Douglass, Sojourner Truth, and other former slaves wrote narratives about their experiences. Yet these true stories did not have as much impact as Stowe's novel.** Why do you think this fictional story about slavery had more impact than true slave narratives?

Trouble in Kansas

SECTION 2

If YOU were there...

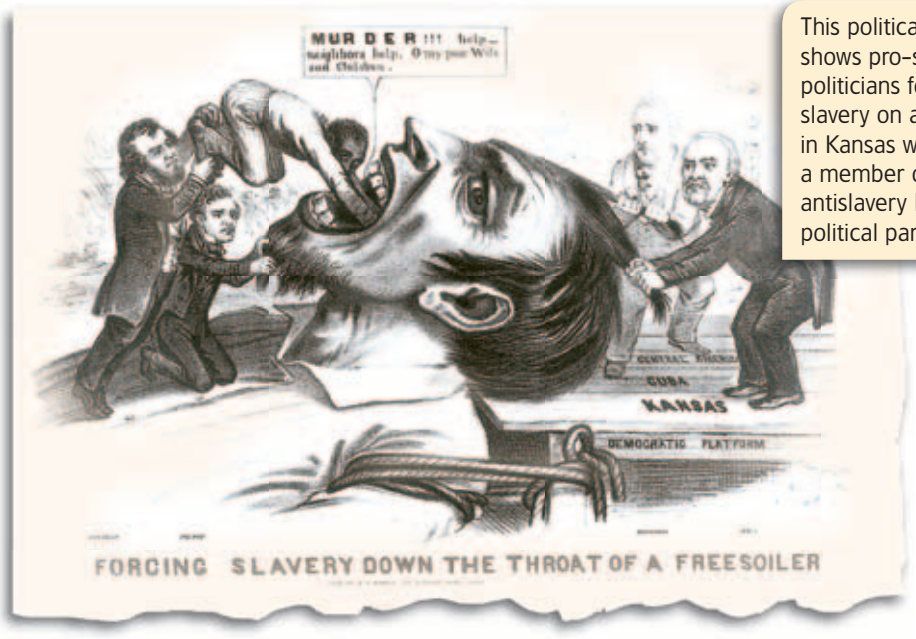
You live on a New England farm in 1855. You often think about moving West. But the last few harvests have been bad, and you can't afford it. Now the Emigrant Aid Society offers to help you get to Kansas. To bring in antislavery voters like you, they'll give you a wagon, livestock, and farm machines. Still, you know that Kansas might be dangerous.

Would you decide to risk settling in Kansas?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The argument over the extension of slavery grew stronger and more bitter. It dominated American politics in the mid-1800s. Laws that tried to find compromises ended by causing more violence. The bloodiest battleground of this period was in Kansas.

Election of 1852

Four leading candidates for the Democratic presidential nomination emerged in 1852. It became clear that none of them would win a majority of votes. Frustrated delegates at the Democratic National Convention turned to **Franklin Pierce**, a little-known politician from New Hampshire. Pierce promised to honor the Compromise



This political cartoon shows pro-slavery politicians forcing slavery on a settler in Kansas who is a member of the antislavery Free-Soil political party.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The debate over the expansion of slavery influenced the election of 1852.
2. The Kansas-Nebraska Act allowed voters to allow or prohibit slavery.
3. Pro-slavery and antislavery groups clashed violently in what became known as "Bleeding Kansas."

The Big Idea

The Kansas-Nebraska Act heightened tensions in the conflict over slavery.

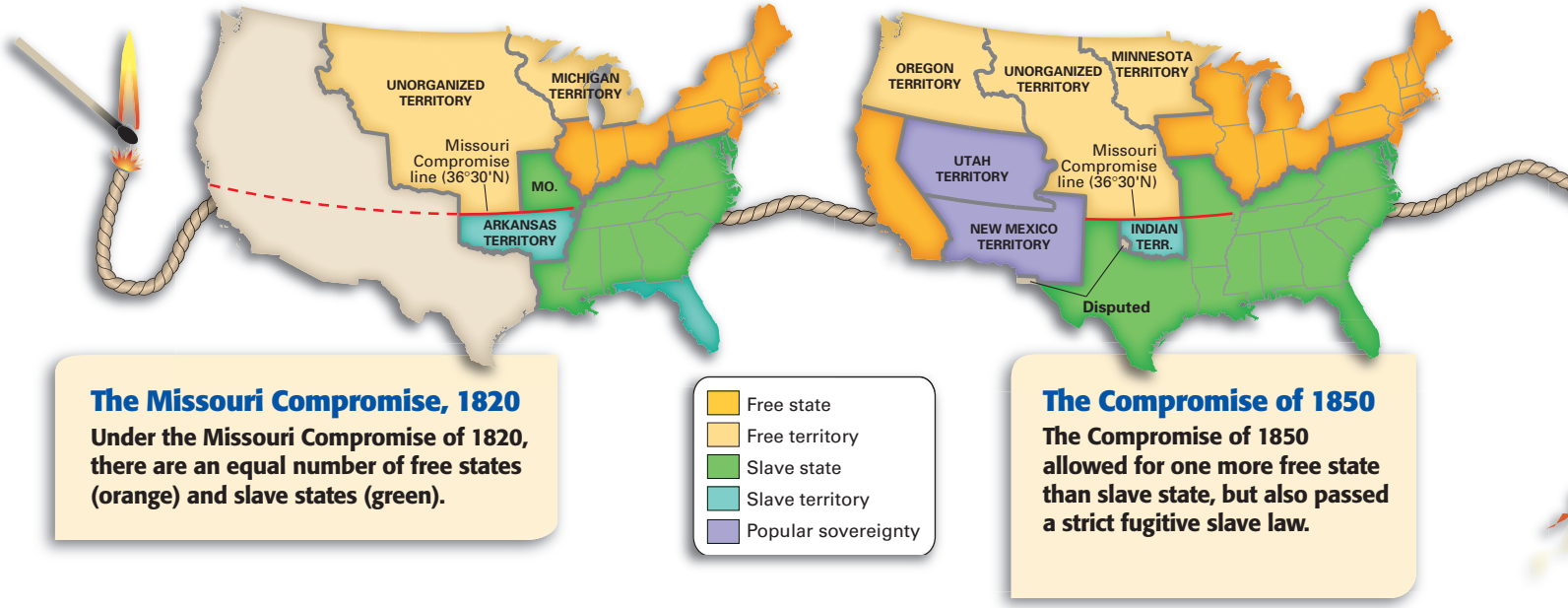
Key Terms and People

Franklin Pierce, *p. 483*
Stephen Douglas, *p. 484*
Kansas-Nebraska Act, *p. 485*
Pottawatomie Massacre, *p. 487*
Charles Sumner, *p. 487*
Preston Brooks, *p. 487*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on Stephen Douglas's plan for a railroad to the Pacific Ocean, southern congressmembers' views of his plan, and the resulting Kansas-Nebraska Act. Write details about each in a graphic organizer like the one shown below.

Douglas's plan		Kansas-Nebraska Act
Southern Congress members' reaction		

From Compromise to Conflict



The Missouri Compromise, 1820
Under the Missouri Compromise of 1820, there are an equal number of free states (orange) and slave states (green).

The Compromise of 1850
The Compromise of 1850 allowed for one more free state than slave state, but also passed a strict fugitive slave law.

of 1850 and the Fugitive Slave Act. Therefore, southerners trusted Pierce on the issue of slavery.

FOCUS ON READING
What facts and what opinions are mentioned in this paragraph?

The opposing Whigs also held their convention in 1852. In other presidential elections, they had nominated well-known former generals such as William Henry Harrison and Zachary Taylor. This had been a good strategy, as both men had won. The Whigs decided to choose another war hero. They passed over the current president, Millard Fillmore, because they believed that his strict enforcement of the Fugitive Slave Act would cost votes. Instead, they chose Winfield Scott, a Mexican War hero. Southerners did not trust Scott, however, because he had not fully supported the Compromise of 1850.

Pierce won the election of 1852 by a large margin. Many Whigs viewed the election as a painful defeat, not just for their candidate, but for their party.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**
What issues determined the outcome of the presidential election of 1852?

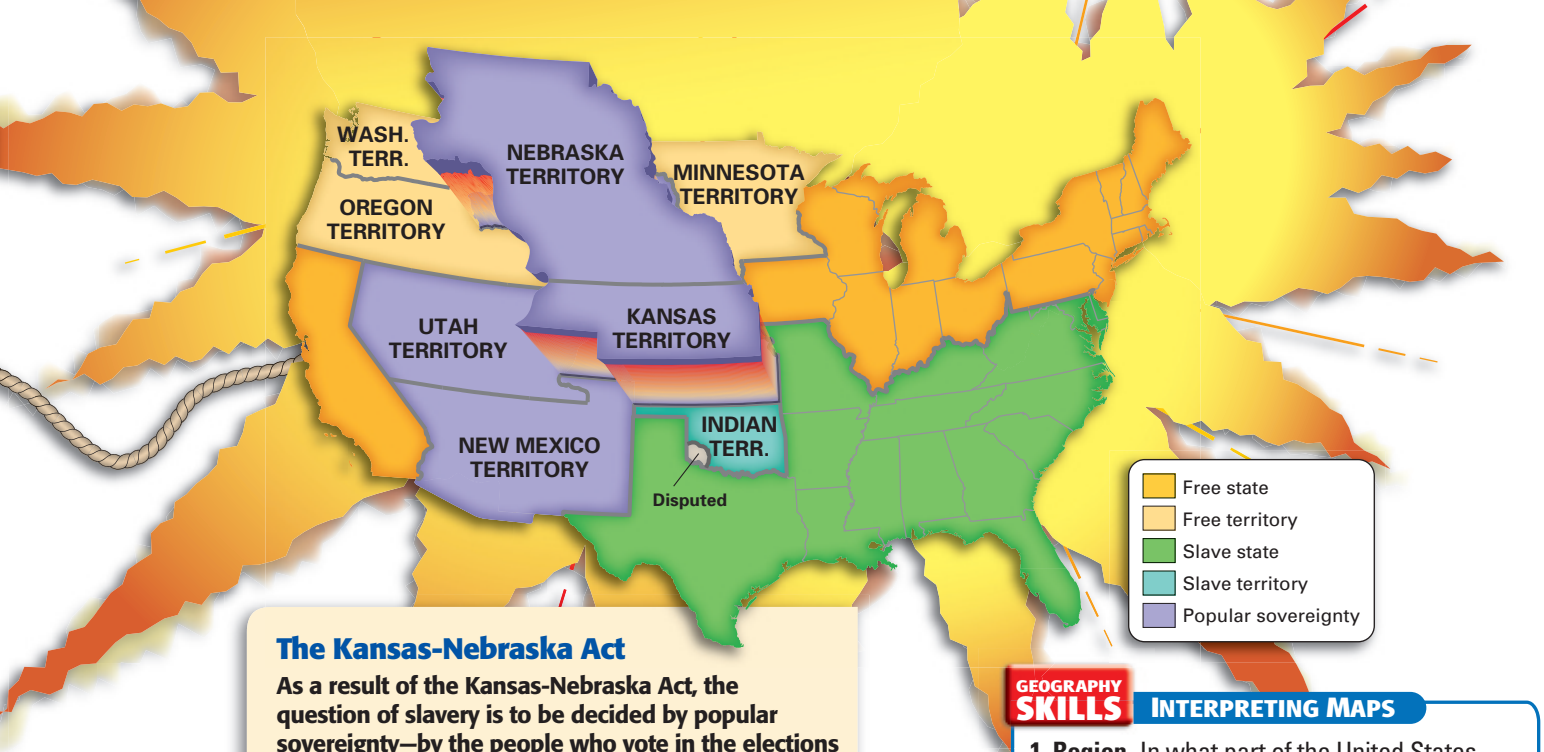
The Kansas-Nebraska Act

In his inaugural address, President Pierce expressed his hope that the slavery issue had been put to rest "and that no sectional . . . excitement may again threaten the durability [stability] of our institutions." Less than a year later, however, a proposal to build a railroad to the West coast helped revive the slavery controversy and opened a new period of sectional conflict.

Douglas and the Railroad

Ever since entering Congress in the mid-1840s, **Stephen Douglas** had supported the idea of building a railroad to the Pacific Ocean. Douglas favored a line running from Chicago. The first step toward building such a railroad would be organizing what remained of the Louisiana Purchase into a federal territory. The Missouri Compromise required that this land be free territory and eventually free states.

Southerners in Congress did not support Douglas's plan, recommending a southern route for the railroad. Their preferred line



The Kansas-Nebraska Act

As a result of the Kansas-Nebraska Act, the question of slavery is to be decided by popular sovereignty—by the people who vote in the elections there—in the newly organized territories of Kansas and Nebraska. The act sparked violent conflict between pro-slavery and antislavery groups.

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Region** In what part of the United States were the slave states located?
2. **Place** What free state was added with the Compromise of 1850?

ran from New Orleans, across Texas and New Mexico Territory, to southern California. Determined to have the railroad start in Chicago, Douglas asked a few key southern senators to support his plan. They agreed to do so if the new territory west of Missouri was opened to slavery.

Two New Territories

In January 1854, Douglas introduced what became the **Kansas-Nebraska Act**, a plan that would divide the remainder of the Louisiana Purchase into two territories—Kansas and Nebraska—and allow the people in each territory to decide on the question of slavery. The act would eliminate the Missouri Compromise's restriction on slavery north of the 36° 30′ line.

Antislavery northerners were outraged by the **implications**. Some believed the proposal was part of a terrible plot to turn free territory into a "dreary region . . . inhabited by masters and slaves." All across the North, citizens attended protest meetings and sent anti-Nebraska petitions to Congress.

Even so, with strong southern support—and with Douglas and President Pierce pressuring their fellow Democrats to vote for it—the measure passed both houses of Congress and was signed into law on May 30, 1854. Lost amid all the controversy over the territorial bill was Douglas's proposed railroad to the Pacific Ocean. Congress would not approve the construction of such a railroad until 1862.

Kansas Divided

Antislavery and pro-slavery groups rushed their supporters to Kansas. One of the people who spoke out strongly against slavery in Kansas was Senator Seward.

> "Gentlemen of the Slave States . . . I accept [your challenge] in . . . the cause of freedom. We will engage in competition for . . . Kansas, and God give the victory to the side which is stronger in numbers as it is in right."
>
> —William Henry Seward, quoted in *The Impending Crisis, 1848–1861* by David M. Potter

Elections for the Kansas territorial legislature were held in March 1855. Almost 5,000



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

Members of the Free Soil Party attempted to ban slavery in new territories through federal legislation. Southern states worked to allow slavery, but when the states seceded, Republicans and Free Soilers passed the Homestead Act of 1862. This act allowed almost any American to claim parcels of land.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

implications things that are inferred or deduced

pro-slavery voters crossed the border from Missouri, voted in Kansas, and then returned home. As a result, the new legislature had a huge pro-slavery majority. The members of the legislature passed strict laws that made it a crime to question slaveholders' rights and said that those who helped fugitive slaves could be put to death. In protest, anti-slavery Kansans formed their own legislature 25 miles away in Topeka. President Pierce, however, only recognized the pro-slavery legislature.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why did northerners dislike the Kansas-Nebraska Act?

Bleeding Kansas

By early 1856 Kansas had two opposing governments, and the population was angry. Settlers had moved to Kansas to homestead in peace, but the controversy over slavery began to affect everyone.

In April 1856, a congressional committee arrived in Kansas to decide which government was legitimate. Although committee members declared the election of the pro-slavery legislature to be unfair, the federal government did not agree.

Attack on Lawrence

The new pro-slavery settlers owned guns, and antislavery settlers received weapons shipments from friends in the East. Then, violence broke out. In May 1856 a pro-slavery grand jury in Kansas charged leaders of the antislavery government with treason. About 800 men rode to the city of Lawrence to arrest the antislavery leaders, but they had fled. The posse took its anger out on Lawrence by setting fires, looting buildings, and destroying presses used to print antislavery newspapers. One man was killed in the pro-slavery attack that became known as the Sack of Lawrence.

John Brown's Response

Abolitionist John Brown was from New England, but he and some of his sons had moved to Kansas in 1855. The Sack of Lawrence made him determined to "fight fire with fire" and to "strike terror in the hearts of the pro-slavery people." On the night of May 24, 1856, along Pottawatomie Creek,

"Bleeding Kansas"

Abolitionists and pro-slavery forces clashed in Kansas, killing many people. Shown here is a group of abolitionists who took the law into their own hands to free one of their group from prison.

Why might these men have fought against slavery?



John Doy was imprisoned for his abolitionist activities but was freed by other abolitionists.

Brown and his men killed five pro-slavery men in Kansas in what became known as the **Pottawatomie Massacre**. Brown and his men dragged the pro-slavery men out of their cabins and killed them with swords. The abolitionist band managed to escape capture. Brown declared that his actions had been ordered by God.

Kansas collapsed into civil war, and about 200 people were killed. The events in "Bleeding Kansas" became national front-page stories. In September 1856, a new territorial governor arrived and began to restore order.

Brooks Attacks Sumner

Congress also reacted to the violence of the Sack of Lawrence. Senator **Charles Sumner** of Massachusetts criticized pro-slavery people in Kansas and personally insulted Andrew Pickens Butler, a pro-slavery senator from South Carolina. Representative **Preston Brooks**, a relative of Butler's, responded strongly.

On May 22, 1856, Brooks used a walking cane to beat Sumner unconscious in the Senate chambers. Dozens of southerners sent Brooks new canes, but northerners were outraged and called the attacker "Bully Brooks." Brooks only had to pay a $300 fine to the federal court. It took Sumner three years before he was well enough to return to the Senate.



The cartoon above shows Preston Brooks beating Charles Sumner with his cane. Sumner's only protection is a quill pen symbolically representing the law.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were some of the results of the intense division in Kansas?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The Kansas-Nebraska Act produced a national uproar. In the next section you will read about divisions in political parties.

Section 2 Assessment

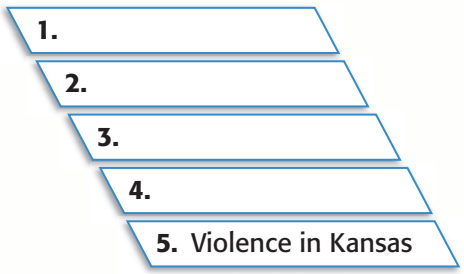
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP15

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What issues influenced the outcome of the election of 1852?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why did northern and southern Democrats support **Franklin Pierce**?
2. **a. Recall** What did the **Kansas-Nebraska Act** do?
   b. Explain Why did antislavery and pro-slavery groups encourage people to move to Kansas?
   c. Evaluate Would you have supported or opposed the Kansas-Nebraska Act? Why?
3. **a. Describe** What was the **Pottawatomie Massacre**?
   b. Analyze How did **Charles Sumner**'s views on "Bleeding Kansas" create conflict?
   c. Elaborate Do you think **Preston Brooks**'s punishment was reasonable? Why or why not?

Critical Thinking

4. **Sequencing** Review your notes on the Kansas-Nebraska Act. Then copy the graphic organizer shown below and use it to show how the act and later events led to violence in Kansas.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Taking Notes on the Trouble in Kansas** Make some notes on the election of 1852, the Kansas-Nebraska Act, and the events in Kansas. Decide how your character feels about each of these. How do these events affect your character?

SECTION 3

Political Divisions

If YOU were there...

You are traveling through Michigan in July 1854. As you pass through the town of Jackson, you see a crowd of several hundred people gathered under the trees. You join them and find that it is a political rally. Antislavery supporters from different parties are meeting to form a new political party. Speakers promise to fight slavery "until the contest be terminated."

How do you think this new party will affect American politics?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The slavery question continued to divide the country and lead to violence. The issue not only dominated American politics in the mid-1800s but also brought changes in the makeup of American political parties.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Political parties in the United States underwent change due to the movement to expand slavery.
2. The *Dred Scott* decision created further division over the issue of slavery.
3. The Lincoln-Douglas debates brought much attention to the conflict over slavery.

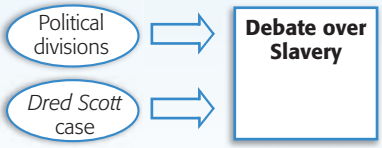
The Big Idea

The split over the issue of slavery intensified due to political division and judicial decisions.

Key Terms and People

Republican Party, *p. 488*
James Buchanan, *p. 488*
John C. Frémont, *p. 489*
Dred Scott, *p. 489*
Roger B. Taney, *p. 490*
Abraham Lincoln, *p. 490*
Lincoln-Douglas debates, *p. 491*
Freeport Doctrine, *p. 492*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the effects of political divisions and the *Dred Scott* case on the debate over slavery. Write your notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.



Political Parties Undergo Change

Democrat Stephen Douglas had predicted that the Kansas-Nebraska Act would "raise a . . . storm." He was right. The Kansas-Nebraska Act brought the slavery issue back into the national spotlight. Some Whigs, Democrats, Free-Soilers, and abolitionists joined in 1854 to form the **Republican Party**, a political party united against the spread of slavery in the West.

Democrats were in trouble. Those who supported the Kansas-Nebraska Act were not re-elected. The Whig Party also fell apart when northern and southern Whigs refused to work together. A senator from Connecticut complained, "The Whig Party has been killed off . . . by that miserable Nebraska business." Some Whigs and Democrats joined the American Party, also known as the Know-Nothing Party. At the party's convention, delegates argued over slavery, then chose former president Millard Fillmore as their candidate for the election of 1856.

The Democrats knew they could not choose a strong supporter of the Kansas-Nebraska Act, such as President Pierce or Senator Douglas. They nominated **James Buchanan** of Pennsylvania. Buchanan had a great deal of political experience as Polk's secretary of state. Most

importantly, he had been in Great Britain as ambassador during the Kansas-Nebraska Act dispute and had not been involved in the debate.

At their first nominating convention, the Republicans chose explorer **John C. Frémont** as their candidate. He had little political experience, but he stood against the spread of slavery. The public saw Republicans as a single-issue party. They had almost no supporters outside of the free states.

On election day, Buchanan won 14 of the 15 slave states and became the new president. Frémont won 11 of the 16 free states. Fillmore won only one state—Maryland. Buchanan had won the election.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were the major political parties in the election of 1856? Who was the candidate for each party?

Dred Scott Decision

Just two days after Buchanan became president, the Supreme Court issued a historic ruling about slavery. News of the decision threw the country back into crisis. The Court reviewed and decided the complex case involving an enslaved man named **Dred Scott**.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
complex difficult, not simple

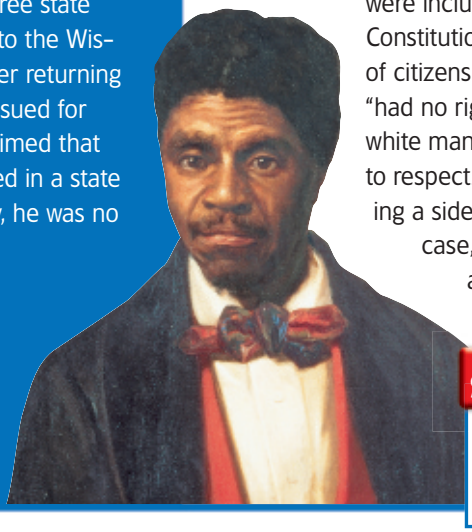
Dred Scott Sues for Freedom

Dred Scott was the slave of Dr. John Emerson, an army surgeon who lived in St. Louis, Missouri. In the 1830s, Emerson had taken Scott on tours of duty in Illinois and the Wisconsin Territory. After they returned to Missouri, the doctor died, and Scott became the slave of Emerson's widow. In 1846 Scott sued for his freedom in the Missouri state courts, arguing that he had become free when he lived in free territory. Though a lower court ruled in



Dred Scott v. *Sandford* (1857)

Background of the Case Born a slave in Virginia, Dred Scott moved with his slaveholder to the free state of Illinois and then to the Wisconsin Territory. After returning to the South, Scott sued for his freedom. He claimed that because he had lived in a state that banned slavery, he was no longer a slave.



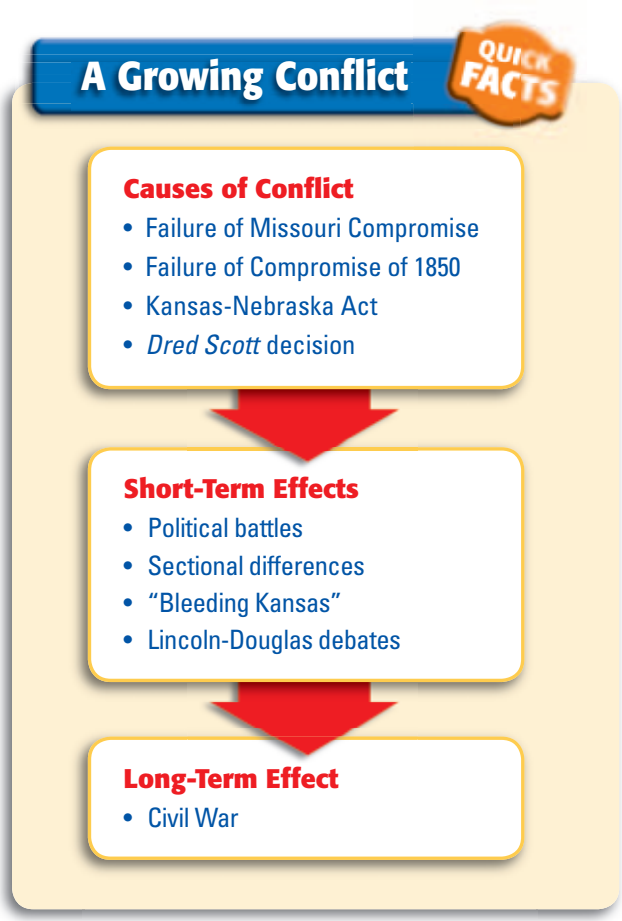
The Court's Ruling
The Court ruled that African Americans, whether free or slave, were not considered citizens of the United States, and therefore had no right to sue in federal court. It also decided that the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional.

The Court's Reasoning
Chief Justice Roger B. Taney wrote in the majority opinion that the Court did not believe that African Americans were included in the Constitution's definition of citizens and that they "had no rights which the white man was bound to respect." Addressing a side issue in the case, the opinion also stated that Congress could not outlaw slavery in the territories. This struck down the Missouri Compromise, which had made slavery illegal in territories north of the 36°30′ dividing line.

Why It Matters
The *Dred Scot*t case was seen as a setback to abolitionist ideas against slavery. It reduced the status of free African Americans and upheld the view of slaves as property without rights or protection under the Constitution. It also took from Congress the power to ban slavery in its territories, which would aid the spread of slavery in new states. Because of its pro-slavery decision, the reputation of the Court suffered greatly in parts of the North.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

1. **Why do you think the Court ruled that African Americans had no access to federal courts?**
2. **How did this case affect abolitionist efforts?**



his favor, the Missouri Supreme Court overturned this ruling.

Scott's case reached the U.S. Supreme Court 11 years later, in 1857. The justices—a majority of whom were from the South—had three key issues before them. First, the Court had to rule on whether Scott was a citizen. Only citizens could sue in federal court. Second, the Court had to decide if his time living on free soil made him free. Third, the Court had to determine the constitutionality of prohibiting slavery in parts of the Louisiana Purchase.

The Supreme Court's Ruling

Chief Justice **Roger B. Taney** (TAW-nee), himself from a slaveholding family in Maryland, wrote the majority opinion in the *Dred Scott* decision in March 1857. First, he addressed the issue of Dred Scott's citizenship. Taney said the nation's founders believed that African Americans "had no rights which a white man was bound to respect." He therefore concluded that all African Americans, whether slave or free, were not citizens under the U.S. Constitution. Thus, Dred Scott did not have the right to file suit in federal court.

Taney also ruled on the other issues before the Court. As to whether Scott's residence on free soil made him free, Taney flatly said it did not. Because Scott had returned to the slave state of Missouri, the chief justice said, "his *status,* as free or slave, depended on the laws of Missouri."

Finally, Taney declared the Missouri Compromise restriction on slavery north of 36°30′ to be unconstitutional. He pointed out that the Fifth Amendment said no one could "be deprived of life, liberty, or property without due process of law." Because slaves were considered property, Congress could not prohibit someone from taking slaves into a federal territory. Under this ruling, Congress had no right to ban slavery in any federal territory.

Most white southerners cheered this decision. It "covers every question regarding slavery and settles it in favor of the South," reported a Georgia newspaper. Another newspaper, the New Orleans *Picayune,* assured its readers that the ruling put "the whole basis of the . . . Republican organization under the ban of law."

The ruling stunned many northerners. The Republicans were particularly upset because their platform in 1856 had argued that Congress held the right to ban slavery in the federal territories. Now the nation's highest court had ruled that Congress did not have this right.

Indeed, some northerners feared that the spread of slavery would not stop with the federal territories. Illinois lawyer **Abraham Lincoln** warned that a future Court ruling, or what he called "the next *Dred Scott* decision," would prohibit states from banning slavery.

Primary Source

SPEECH

A House Divided

In 1858 Abraham Lincoln gave a passionate speech to Illinois Republicans about the dangers of the disagreement over slavery. Some considered it a call for war.

"In my opinion, it [disagreement over slavery] will not cease [stop], until a crisis shall have been reached and passed. 'A house divided against itself cannot stand.' I believe this government cannot endure permanently half slave and half free. I do not expect the Union to be dissolved—I do not expect the house to fall—but I do expect it will cease to be divided."

This line is a paraphrase of a line in the Bible.

Lincoln expresses confidence that the Union will survive.

—Abraham Lincoln,

quoted in *Abraham Lincoln: Speeches and Writings 1832–1858* edited by Don E. Fehrenbacher



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

What do you think Lincoln meant by "crisis"?

"We shall *lie down* pleasantly dreaming that the people of *Missouri* are on the verge of [close to] making their state *free*; and we shall *awake* to the *reality*, instead, that the 90 Supreme Court has made *Illinois* a *slave state*."

—Abraham Lincoln, quoted in *The Collected Works of Abraham Lincoln*, edited by Roy P. Basler

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What were the major rulings of the *Dred Scott* decision?

Lincoln-Douglas Debates

In 1858 Illinois Republicans nominated Abraham Lincoln for the U.S. Senate. His opponent was Democrat Stephen Douglas, who had represented Illinois in the Senate since 1847. Lincoln challenged Douglas in what became the historic **Lincoln-Douglas debates**.

In each debate, Lincoln stressed that the central issue of the campaign was the spread of slavery in the West. He said that the Democrats were trying to spread slavery across the nation.

Lincoln talked about the *Dred Scott* decision. He said that African Americans were "entitled to all the natural rights" listed in the Declaration of Independence, specifically mentioning "the right to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness." However, Lincoln believed that African Americans were not necessarily the social or political equals of whites. Hoping to cost Lincoln votes, Douglas charged that Lincoln "thinks that the Negro is his brother . . ."

Douglas also criticized Lincoln for saying that the nation could not remain "half slave and half free." Douglas said that the statement revealed a Republican desire to make every state a free state. This, he warned, would only lead to "a dissolution [destruction] of the Union" and "warfare between the North and the South."

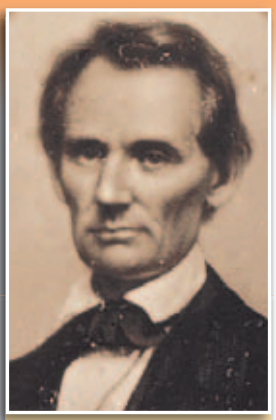
At the second debate, in the northern Illinois town of Freeport, Illinois, Lincoln pressed Douglas on the apparent contradiction between the Democrats' belief in popu-

THE IMPACT TODAY

Today political debates are televised and can be seen around the world.

Lincoln-Douglas Debates

Lincoln ran for the U.S. Senate in Illinois against Douglas in 1858. The two men debated seven times at various locations around the state. Lincoln lost the election but gained national recognition.



Abraham Lincoln



Stephen Douglas

lar sovereignty and the *Dred Scott* decision. Lincoln asked Douglas to explain how, if Congress could not ban slavery from a federal territory, Congress could allow the citizens of that territory to ban it.

Douglas responded that it did not matter what the Supreme Court decided about slavery. He argued that "the people have the lawful means to introduce it or exclude it as they please, for the reason that slavery cannot exist a day or an hour anywhere, unless it is supported by local police regulations."

This notion that the police would enforce the voters' decision if it contradicted the Supreme Court's decision in the Dred Scott case became known as the **Freeport Doctrine**.

The Freeport Doctrine put the slavery question back in the hands of American citizens. It helped Douglas win the Senate seat. Lincoln, while not victorious, made a strong, important leader of the Republican Party.

READING CHECK **Drawing Inferences** Why did Abraham Lincoln make slavery's expansion the central issue of the Lincoln-Douglas debates?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The *Dred Scott* decision and the Lincoln-Douglas debates dealt with the conflict over slavery in the western territories. In the next section you will read about how the conflict broke apart the Union.

Section 3 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP15

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What was the major issue of the newly formed **Republican Party**?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did the Kansas-Nebraska Act affect political parties?
   c. Elaborate Why do you think **James Buchanan** won the election of 1856?
2. **a. Identify** Who was **Roger B. Taney**, and why was he important?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did the *Dred Scott* decision affect the Missouri Compromise and the expansion of slavery?
   c. Predict What problems might result from the Supreme Court's ruling in the *Dred Scott* case?
3. **a. Recall** What was the major issue of the **Lincoln-Douglas debates**?
   b. Make Inferences Despite his loss in the election, how did Lincoln become the leader of the Republican Party?

Critical Thinking

4. **Identifying Points of View** Review your notes on political divisions and the Dred Scott decision. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to identify the views of Abraham Lincoln and Stephen Douglas on slavery.

Lincoln	vs.	Douglas

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Taking Notes on the Political Divisions** Make some notes on the Republican Party, the *Dred Scott* decision, and the Lincoln-Douglas debates. Decide how your character feels about each of these. How do these events affect your character?

The Nation Divides

SECTION 4

If YOU were there...

You work for the weekly newspaper in Harpers Ferry, Virginia. You strongly oppose slavery, but you think the question ought to be resolved by laws, not bloodshed. Now your paper has sent you to interview the famous abolitionist John Brown in prison. His raids in "Bleeding Kansas" killed several people. Now he is in jail for attacking a federal arsenal and taking weapons.

What questions would you ask John Brown?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Unpopular compromises and court decisions deepened the divisions between pro-slavery and antislavery advocates. The Lincoln-Douglas debates attracted more attention to the issue. As the disagreements grew, violence increased, though many Americans hoped to avoid it. But it was too late to keep the nation unified.

Raid on Harpers Ferry

In 1858 John Brown tried to start an uprising. He wanted to attack the federal arsenal in Virginia and seize weapons there. He planned to arm local slaves. Brown expected to kill or take hostage white southerners who stood in his way. He urged abolitionists to give him money so that he could support a small army. But after nearly two years, Brown's army had only about 20 men.

On the night of October 16, 1859, **John Brown's raid** began when he and his men took over the arsenal in Harpers Ferry, Virginia, in hopes of starting a slave rebellion. He sent several of his men into the countryside to get slaves to join him. However, enslaved African Americans did not come to Harpers Ferry, fearing punishment if they took part. Instead, local white southerners attacked Brown. Eight of his men and three local men were killed. Brown and some followers retreated to a firehouse.

Federal troops arrived in Harpers Ferry the following night. The next morning, Colonel Robert E. Lee ordered a squad of marines to storm the firehouse. In a matter of seconds, the marines killed two more of Brown's men and captured the rest—including Brown.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. John Brown's raid on Harpers Ferry intensified the disagreement between free states and slave states.
2. The outcome of the election of 1860 divided the United States.
3. The dispute over slavery led the South to secede.

The Big Idea

The United States broke apart due to the growing conflict over slavery.

Key Terms and People

John Brown's raid, *p. 493*
John C. Breckinridge, *p. 495*
Constitutional Union Party, *p. 495*
John Bell, *p. 495*
John J. Crittenden, *p. 496*
Confederate States of America, *p. 497*
Jefferson Davis, *p. 497*

TAKING NOTES Create a chart like the one below. As you read, take notes on the significance of each of the people listed in the chart and his relationship to the events of the section.

Person	Significance
John Brown	
John C. Breckinridge	
John Bell	
Abraham Lincoln	
Jefferson Davis	
John J. Crittenden	

Primary Source

SPEECH

John Brown's Last Speech

At his trial, after being pronounced guilty, John Brown spoke in his own defense about his plan to free slaves.

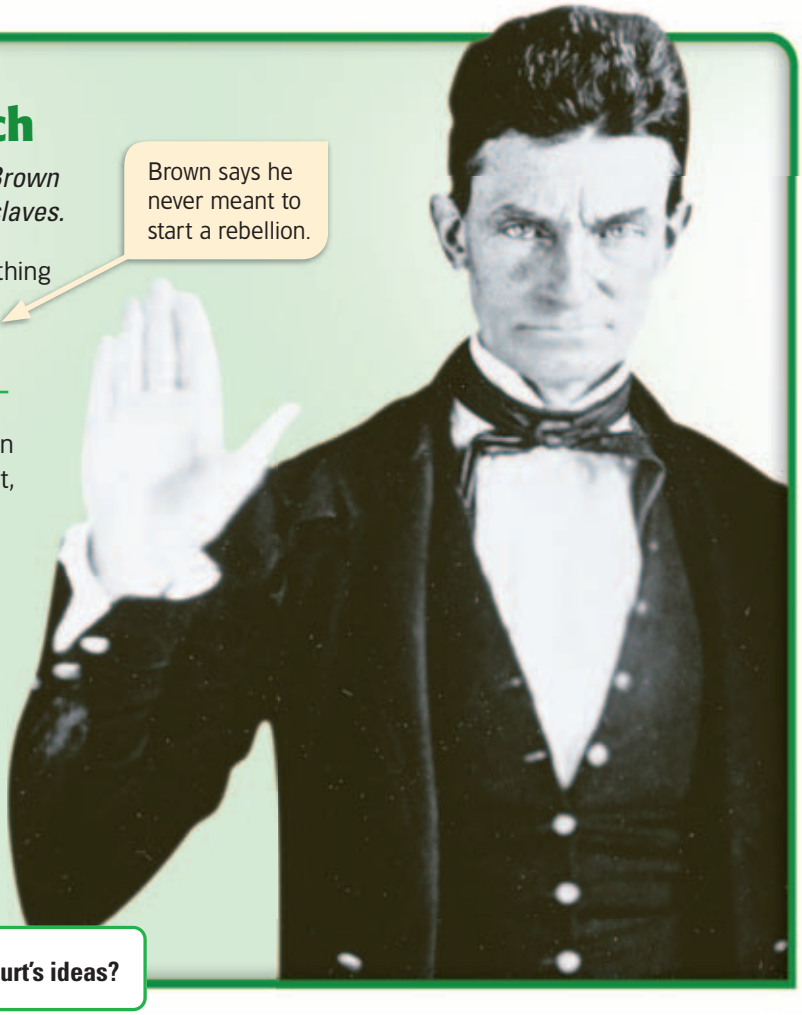
"I intended certainly to have made a clean thing of that matter [freeing slaves] . . . I never did intend murder or treason, or the destruction of property, or to excite or incite the slaves to rebellion, or to make insurrection [revolt] . . . Had I interfered in the manner which I admit . . . in behalf of the rich, the powerful, the intelligent, the so-called great . . . it would have been all right, and every man in this Court would have deemed it an act worthy of reward rather than punishment . . . I believe that to have interfered as I have done . . . in behalf of His despised poor, is no wrong, but right."

—John Brown,

quoted in *The Life, Trial and Execution of Captain John Brown*

Brown says he never meant to start a rebellion.

By *His*, Brown means God's.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

How does Brown contrast his ideas with the Court's ideas?

Brown was quickly convicted of treason, murder, and conspiracy. Some of his men received death sentences. John A. Copeland, a fugitive slave, defended his actions. "If I am dying for freedom, I could not die for a better cause." Convinced that he also would be sentenced to death, Brown delivered a memorable speech.

"Now, if it is deemed [thought] necessary that I should forfeit [give up] my life for the furtherance of the ends of justice, and mingle [mix] my blood . . . with the blood of millions in this slave country whose rights are disregarded by wicked, cruel, and unjust enactments, I say, let it be done."

—John Brown, quoted in *John Brown, 1800–1859* by Oswald Garrison Villard

As expected, the judge ordered Brown to be hanged. The sentence was carried out one month later on December 2, 1859.

Many northerners mourned John Brown's death, but some abolitionists criticized his extreme actions. Abraham Lincoln said Brown "agreed with us in thinking slavery wrong." However, Lincoln continued, "That cannot excuse violence, bloodshed, and treason."

Most southern whites—both slaveholders and non-slaveholders—felt threatened by the actions of John Brown. They worried that a "John Brown the Second" might attack. One South Carolina newspaper voiced these fears: "We are convinced the safety of the South lies only outside the present Union." Another newspaper stated that "the sooner we get out of the Union, the better."

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**

Why did John Brown's raid lead some southerners to talk about leaving the Union?

Election of 1860

In this climate of distrust, Americans prepared for another presidential election in 1860. The northern and southern Democrats could not agree on a candidate. Northern Democrats chose Senator Stephen Douglas. Southern Democrats backed the current vice president, **John C. Breckinridge** of Kentucky, who supported slavery in the territories.

Meanwhile, a new political party emerged. The **Constitutional Union Party** recognized "no political principles other than the Constitution of the country, the Union of the states, and the enforcement of the laws." Members of this new party met in Baltimore, Maryland, and selected **John Bell** of Tennessee as their candidate. Bell was a slaveholder, but he had opposed the Kansas-Nebraska Act in 1854.

Senator William Seward of New York was the Republicans' leading candidate at the start of their convention. But it turned out that Lincoln appealed to more party members. A moderate who was against the spread of slavery, Lincoln promised not to abolish slavery where it already existed.

Douglas, Breckinridge, and Bell each knew he might not win the election. They hoped to win enough electoral votes to prevent Lincoln from winning in the electoral college. But with a unified Republican Party behind him, Lincoln won. Although he received the highest number of votes, he won only about 40 percent of the overall popular vote.

Lincoln won 180 of 183 electoral votes in free states. Douglas had the second-highest number of popular votes, but he won only one state. He earned just 12 electoral votes. Breckinridge and Bell split electoral votes in other slave states.

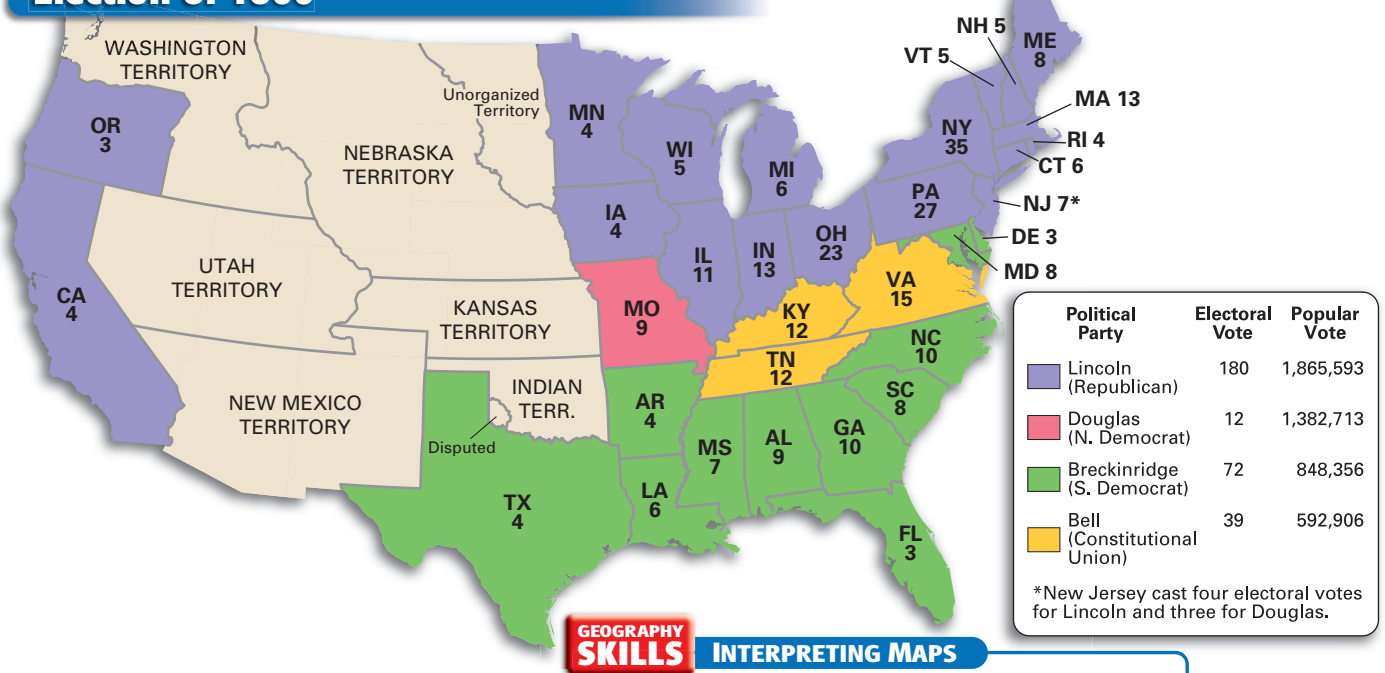
The election results angered southerners. Lincoln did not campaign in their region and did not carry any southern states, but he became the next president. The election signaled that the South was losing its national political power.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why was Lincoln viewed by many as a moderate candidate during his campaign for the presidency?

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

In 1859 Abraham Lincoln was not widely regarded as a candidate for the next year's Republican nomination for president. His 1860 speech at the Cooper Union in New York City changed that. The speech, now known as The Cooper Union Address, was originally presented to an audience of 1,500, and it was reprinted in newspapers across the nation. The antislavery views in the speech propelled Lincoln toward the nomination.

Election of 1860



Political Party	Electoral Vote	Popular Vote
Lincoln (Republican)	180	1,865,593
Douglas (N. Democrat)	12	1,382,713
Breckinridge (S. Democrat)	72	848,356
Bell (Constitutional Union)	39	592,906

*New Jersey cast four electoral votes for Lincoln and three for Douglas.

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

Region In which part of the country were most of the states that Lincoln won?

Source: Historical Statistics of the United States

The South Secedes

Lincoln insisted that he would not change slavery in the South. However, he said that slavery could not expand and thus would eventually die out completely. That idea angered many southerners.

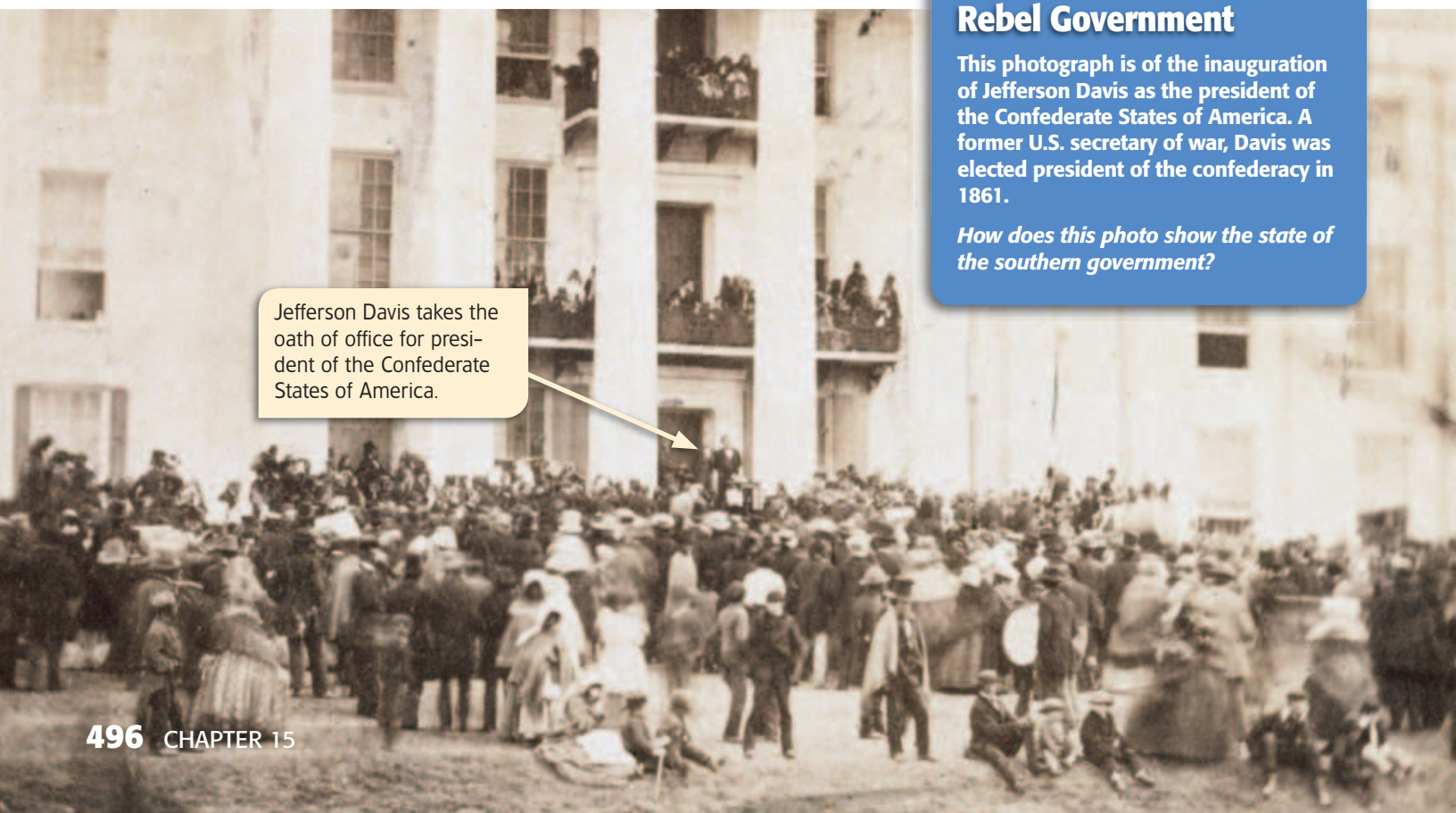
Southerners' Reactions

People in the South believed their economy and way of life would be destroyed without slave labor. They reacted immediately. Within a week of Lincoln's election, South Carolina's legislature called for a special convention. The delegates considered seccession. Southern secessionists believed that they had a right to leave the Union. They pointed out that each of the original states had voluntarily joined the Union by holding a special convention that had ratified the Constitution. Surely, they reasoned, states could leave the Union by the same process.

Critics of secession thought this argument was ridiculous. President Buchanan said the Union was not "a mere voluntary association of States, to be dissolved at pleasure by any one of the contracting parties." President-elect Abraham Lincoln agreed, saying, "No State, upon its own mere motion, can lawfully get out of the Union." Lincoln added, "They can only do so against [the] law, and by revolution."

While the South Carolina representatives were meeting in Charleston to discuss secession, Congress examined a plan to save the Union. Senator **John J. Crittenden** of Kentucky proposed a series of constitutional amendments that he believed would satisfy the South by protecting slavery. Crittenden hoped the country could avoid secession and a civil war.

Lincoln disagreed with Crittenden's plan. He believed there could be no compromise about the extension of slavery. Lincoln wrote, "The tug has to come and better now than later." A Senate committee voted on Crittenden's plan, and every Republican rejected it, as Lincoln had requested.



Rebel Government

This photograph is of the inauguration of Jefferson Davis as the president of the Confederate States of America. A former U.S. secretary of war, Davis was elected president of the confederacy in 1861.

How does this photo show the state of the southern government?

The Confederate States of America

South Carolina elected to dissolve "the union now subsisting [existing] between South Carolina and other States" on December 20, 1860. Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas also seceded to form the **Confederate States of America**, also called the Confederacy. Its new constitution guaranteed citizens the right to own slaves.

Delegates from seceded states elected **Jefferson Davis** of Mississippi as president of the Confederacy. Davis had hoped to be the commanding general of Mississippi's troops. He responded to the news of his election with reluctance.

When the southern states seceded, the question of who owned federal property in the South arose. For instance, the forts in the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina, were federal property. However, Confederate president Davis and the Confederacy were ready to prevent the federal army from controlling the property.

Lincoln Takes Office

President Lincoln was inaugurated on March 4, 1861. In writing his inaugural address, Lincoln looked to many of the nation's founding documents. Referring to the idea that governments receive "their just powers from the consent of the governed," a line from the Declaration of Independence, Lincoln stated, "This country, with its institutions, belongs to the people who inhabit it. Whenever they grow weary of the existing Government, they can exercise their *constitutional* right of amending it or their *revolutionary* right to dismember [take apart] or overthrow it. I can not be ignorant of the fact that many worthy and patriotic citizens are desirous [wanting] of having the National Constitution amended . . ."

While he believed that U.S. citizens had the power to change their government through majority consent, he opposed the idea that southern states could leave the Union because they were unhappy with the government's position on slavery.

He announced in his inaugural address that he would keep all government property in the seceding states. However, he also tried to convince southerners that his government would not provoke a war. He hoped that, given time, southern states would return to the Union.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** Why did some southern states secede from the Union?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The secession of the southern states hinted at the violence to come. In the next chapter you will read about the Civil War.

Section 4 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP15

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** Why did John Brown want to seize the federal arsenal at Harpers Ferry?
   b. Explain Why did some abolitionists disagree with Brown's actions?
2. **a. Identify** List the candidates in the presidential election of 1860, and what party each supported.
   b. Predict How might Abraham Lincoln's victory in the election of 1860 lead to future problems?
3. **a. Identify** What states made up the **Confederate States of America**?
   b. Explain Why did Lincoln disagree with **John J. Crittenden**'s plan to keep the Union together?
   c. Elaborate Do you believe that the southern states had the right to secede? Why or why not?

Critical Thinking

4. **Summarizing** Review your notes on the significant people in the section. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to summarize the causes of secession.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Taking Notes on Secession** Make some notes on the raid on Harpers Ferry, the election of 1860, and the secession of the South. Decide how your character feels about each of these. How do these events affect your character?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Assessing Primary and Secondary Sources

Define the Skill

All historical information comes from primary and secondary sources. *Primary sources* are documents written by someone who witnessed or took part in an event. They include diaries, letters, autobiographies, and newspaper reports. *Secondary sources* are accounts of events written after the events have occurred by someone who did not witness or take part in them. They retell, interpret, and summarize information from primary sources. History books and biographies are examples of secondary sources.

Historical sources often disagree. One writer's version of an event may be different from another writer's version. You must assess the reliability of a primary or secondary source in order to weigh its value to you as a source of accurate information.

Learn the Skill

Use these guidelines to analyze and evaluate primary and secondary sources.

1. Identify the nature of the material. Is it a first-hand, eyewitness account or is it based on information provided by others?
2. Evaluate the author. If the material is a secondary source, what qualifications does the author have to interpret the sources from which it came? If the material is a primary source, what was the author's connection to the event he or she is writing about?
3. Determine the audience. Was the source meant to be seen by the public? Was it meant for a friend, or for the writer alone? The intended audience can influence a source's content.
4. Determine the purpose. Even authors of primary sources can have reasons to distort the truth to suit their own purposes. Look for evidence of emotion, exaggeration, opinion, or bias that may have influenced the account.
5. Look for documentation. Look for other information or evidence that supports the source's account. Compare sources whenever possible.

Practice the Skill

The passage below concerns the attack on Lawrence, Kansas, that you read about in this chapter. The passage contains both a primary and a secondary source. The secondary account was written by John A. Garraty, a well-known historian. Review the information on page 486, analyze the passage, and answer the questions that follow.

"Sheriff Jones, at the head of an army of Missourians, marched into Lawrence. In broad daylight they threw the printing presses of two newspapers into a river. They burned down the Free State Hotel and other buildings. Antislavery Kansans seethed with rage. Here is how one eyewitness described the attack:

"Sheriff Jones, after looking at the flames rising from the hotel and saying that it was 'the happiest day of his life,' dismissed the troops and they began their lawless destruction."

1. Did the author of the primary source likely support the attackers or the people of Lawrence? What clues in the passage suggest this?
2. For whom was the primary source likely written?
3. Which source is more reliable for information about this incident? Explain why.

CHAPTER 15

Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
What do the Tenth Amendment and the Civil Rights Act indicate about the powers of the federal and state governments?

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Differing views on slavery in the North and South gradually tore the nation apart.

Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Identify the correct term or person from the chapter that best fits each of the following descriptions.

1. belief that voters should be given the right to decide if slavery would be permitted or banned
2. chief justice of the Supreme Court who wrote the majority opinion for the *Dred Scott* decision
3. Democratic candidate for president in 1852 who promised to enforce the Compromise of 1850 and the Fugitive Slave Act
4. a fugitive slave whose arrest led to violence between government officials and abolitionists
5. Republican candidate for the presidency in 1856 who opposed the spread of slavery in the West
6. slave who sued for freedom, claiming that by living in free territory, he had earned his freedom
7. Stephen Douglas's claim that states and territories should determine the issue of slavery through popular sovereignty

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 476–481)*

8. a. Describe How did literature aid the antislavery movement?

b. Draw Conclusions How did the issue of slavery promote sectionalism?

c. Evaluate Do you think the Compromise of 1850 was a good solution? Explain your answer.

SECTION 2 *(Pages 483–487)*

9. a. Identify Who were the candidates in the presidential election of 1852, and what issues did each support?

b. Analyze How did the Kansas-Nebraska Act lead to growing hostility between pro-slavery and antislavery supporters?

c. Elaborate Why do you think "Bleeding Kansas" produced intense controversy between many Americans?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 488–492)*

10. a. Identify Who was Dred Scott, and why was his case important?

b. Analyze How were political parties affected by the debate over slavery?

c. Elaborate Why do you think Republicans challenged Stephen Douglas's run for the Senate?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 493–497)*

11. a. Recall Why did the southern states secede, and what was the North's response?

b. Draw Conclusions Why did the results of the election of 1860 anger southerners?

c. Evaluate Do you think John Brown was right to use violence to protest slavery? Explain.

Reviewing Themes

12. Politics How did sectionalism affect American politics?

13. Society and Culture What effect did Harriet Beecher Stowe's book *Uncle Tom's Cabin* have on the debate over slavery?

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY15

14. Activity: Creating a Newspaper Harriet Beecher Stowe's novel and John Brown's raids were two important events that created more debate over slavery and heightened tension between sides. Enter the activity keyword and learn more about antislavery actions. Then create a newspaper with which to display your research. Remember to write from the point of view of someone from the mid-1800s.

Reading Skills

Facts, Opinions, and the Past *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> In 1858 John Brown tried to start an uprising. He wanted to attack the federal arsenal in Virginia and seize weapons there. He planned to arm local slaves. Brown expected to kill or take hostage white southerners who stood in his way. *(p. 493)*

15. Based on the reading selection above, which of the following statements is an opinion?

a. John Brown's raid was in 1858.

b. John Brown hated all slaveholders.

c. John Brown's raid took place in Virginia.

d. Local slaves helped John Brown.

Social Studies Skills

Assessing Primary and Secondary Sources *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question below.*

16. Which of the following is *not* an example of a primary source used in this chapter?

a. *A People's History of the United States* by Howard Zinn

b. The Seventh of March speech by Daniel Webster

c. Abraham Lincoln's A House Divided speech

d. John Brown's last speech

Focus on Writing

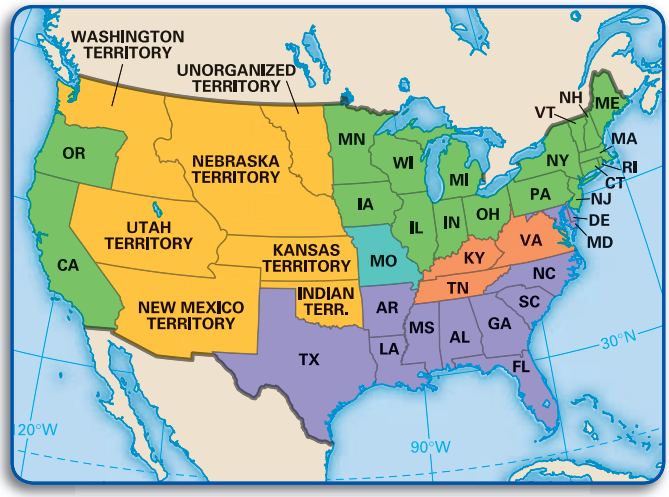
17. Writing Your Autobiography Review your notes. Then write your autobiography, being sure to mention each of the events from your notes. Tell how your character heard about each event, what he or she was doing at the time, how he or she felt about the event, and how it affected him or her. What are your character's hopes and fears for the future?

CHAPTER 15

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Use the map below to answer the following question.**



From the information in this map, you can conclude that it shows

A the provisions of the Compromise of 1850.
B the results of the election of 1860.
C the formation of the Confederacy.
D the results of the *Dred Scott* decision.

2 **Which leader was responsible for settling the dispute over the expansion of slavery that arose after the Mexican War?**

A David Wilmot
B Henry Clay
C Abraham Lincoln
D Jefferson Davis

3 **California's admission as a free state after the Mexican War aroused controversy because**

A many Californians already held slaves.
B it would upset the balance between free states and slave states.
C Mexico still claimed that California was part of Mexico's territory.
D most Californians wanted independence.

4 **Widespread violence erupted in Kansas over slavery in the mid-1850s *mainly* due to**

A the practice of popular sovereignty.
B the Pottawatomie Massacre.
C the Missouri Compromise.
D the threat of secession.

5 **The election of 1852 led directly to which of the following?**

A the Compromise of 1850
B the collapse of the Whig Party
C the collapse of the Republican Party
D the Missouri Compromise.

6 **The Compromise of 1850 was *most* similar to what earlier compromise between free states and slave states?**

A the Great Compromise
B the Rush-Bagot Agreement
C the Northwest Ordinance
D the Missouri Compromise

7 **Examine the following passage written by a southerner before secession and then use it to answer the question below.**

> "As we sat around the long table today the talk turned to the [secession] convention, so soon to meet in Tallahassee [Florida]. Father said he considered this the most important year in the history of the South. He is for secession, and he does not think that war will necessarily [certainly] follow. Brother Junius is a strong Union man, and he thinks we will certainly have war. If the South secedes, the North will fight to keep us. If we do not secede, all property rights will be taken from us and we will be forced to fight to hold our own."
>
> –Susan Bradford, adapted from *Heroines of Dixie,* edited by Katharine Jones

Document-Based Question **What might be the outcome of this convention? Why?**

A Divided Nation

Part A: Short-Answer Questions

Directions: Read and examine the following documents. Then, on a separate sheet of paper, answer the questions using complete sentences.

DOCUMENT 1

Sarah G. Bagley fought for the better treatment of workers. She focused her efforts on winning a 10-hour workday and getting better working conditions. She had worked in a cotton mill herself, and used her experiences to make her writings about conditions in the mills more powerful.

> Is anyone such a fool as to suppose that out of six thousand factory girls in Lowell, sixty would be there if they could help it? Whenever I raise the point that it is immoral to shut us up in a close room twelve hours a day in the most monotonous and tedious of employment I am told that we have come to the mills voluntarily and we can leave when we will. Voluntarily! . . . the whip which brings us to Lowell is necessity. We must have money; a father's debts are to be paid, an aged mother to be supported, a brother's ambition to be aided and so the factories are supplied. Is this to act from free will?. . . Is this freedom? To my mind it is slavery.
>
> —**Sarah G. Bagley,** quoted in *The Belles of New England: The Women of the Textile Mills and the Families Whose Wealth They Wove*, by William Moran

1a. How long was the work day at the mills?

1b. Bagley compares the lives of Lowell factory girls to slavery. How were their lives like slavery? How were they different?

DOCUMENT 2

The Declaration of Sentiments was signed at the 1848 Seneca Falls Convention. It was written by one of the meeting's organizers, Elizabeth Cady Stanton. In addition to working for women's rights, Stanton also fought for the abolition of slavery.

> We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men and women are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable [cannot be taken away] rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that to secure these rights governments are instituted, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed. Whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of those who suffer from it to refuse allegiance [loyalty] to it, and to insist upon the institution of a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness.
>
> —**Declaration of Sentiments**

2a. In addition to equal rights for women, what does the Declaration want a "new government" to provide?

2b. In the Declaration of Independence, the founding fathers declared themselves free from British rule. What does the Declaration of Sentiments say "those who suffer" have the right to do?

3. Evaluate and Revise

Evaluating

Use these questions to discover ways to improve your paper.

Evaluation Questions for a Comparison/Contrast Paper

- Do you introduce both subjects in the first paragraph?
- Do you provide relevant background information in a clear and concise manner?
- Do you state your big idea in the introduction?
- Do you include three points of comparison between the subjects?
- Do you use either the block style or point-by-point style to organize your points of comparison?
- Do you support your points of comparison with appropriate historical facts, details, and examples?
- Do you restate your big idea and summarize your points?

Revising

As you reread your paper, look for sentences that start with *There was* or *There were*. Sentences beginning with *There was/There were* tend to be weak: The verbs *was* and *were* do not convey any action.

Weak

There was a decline in southern agriculture after the American Revolution.

Stronger

Southern agriculture declined after the American Revolution.

TIP **Making Meaning Clear**

One way to make relationships between ideas clear is to repeat key or similar words and phrases in your writing. For example, you can use similar wording when comparing two historical figures on the same point of comparison.

EXAMPLE

Samuel Slater filled his labor needs by hiring entire families to work in the mills. Francis Lowell filled his labor needs by hiring young, unmarried women to work in the mills.

4. Proofread and Publish

Proofreading

In a research report, you may be referring to the titles of your sources of information. Check to see whether you have punctuated any titles according to these guidelines.

- Underlining (if you are writing) or italics (if you are using a computer) for books, movies, TV programs, Internet sites, and magazines or newspapers
- Quotation marks for magazine articles, newspaper articles, chapters in a book

Publishing

Share your paper with one or more classmates. After reading each other's papers, you can compare and contrast them.

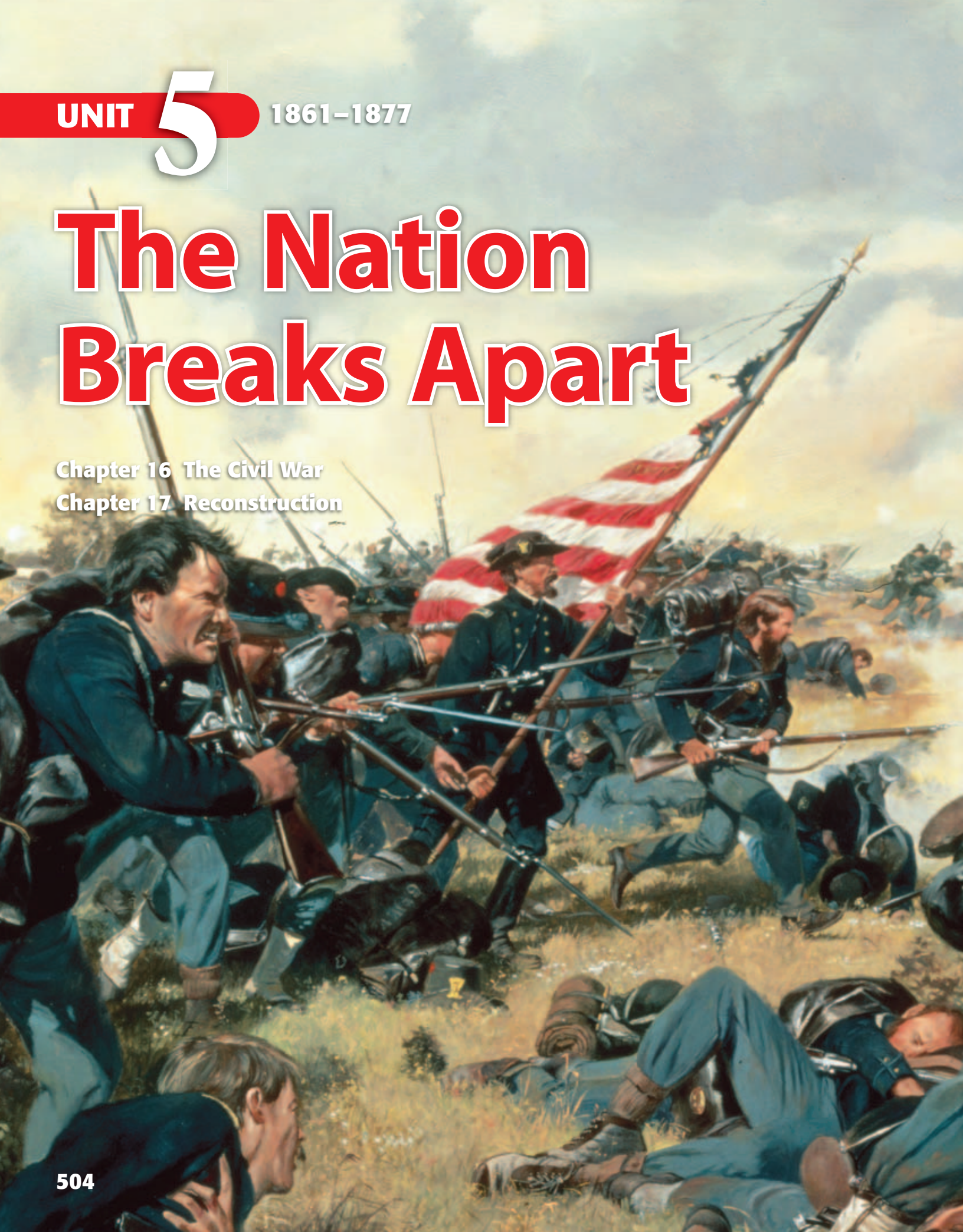
5. Practice and Apply

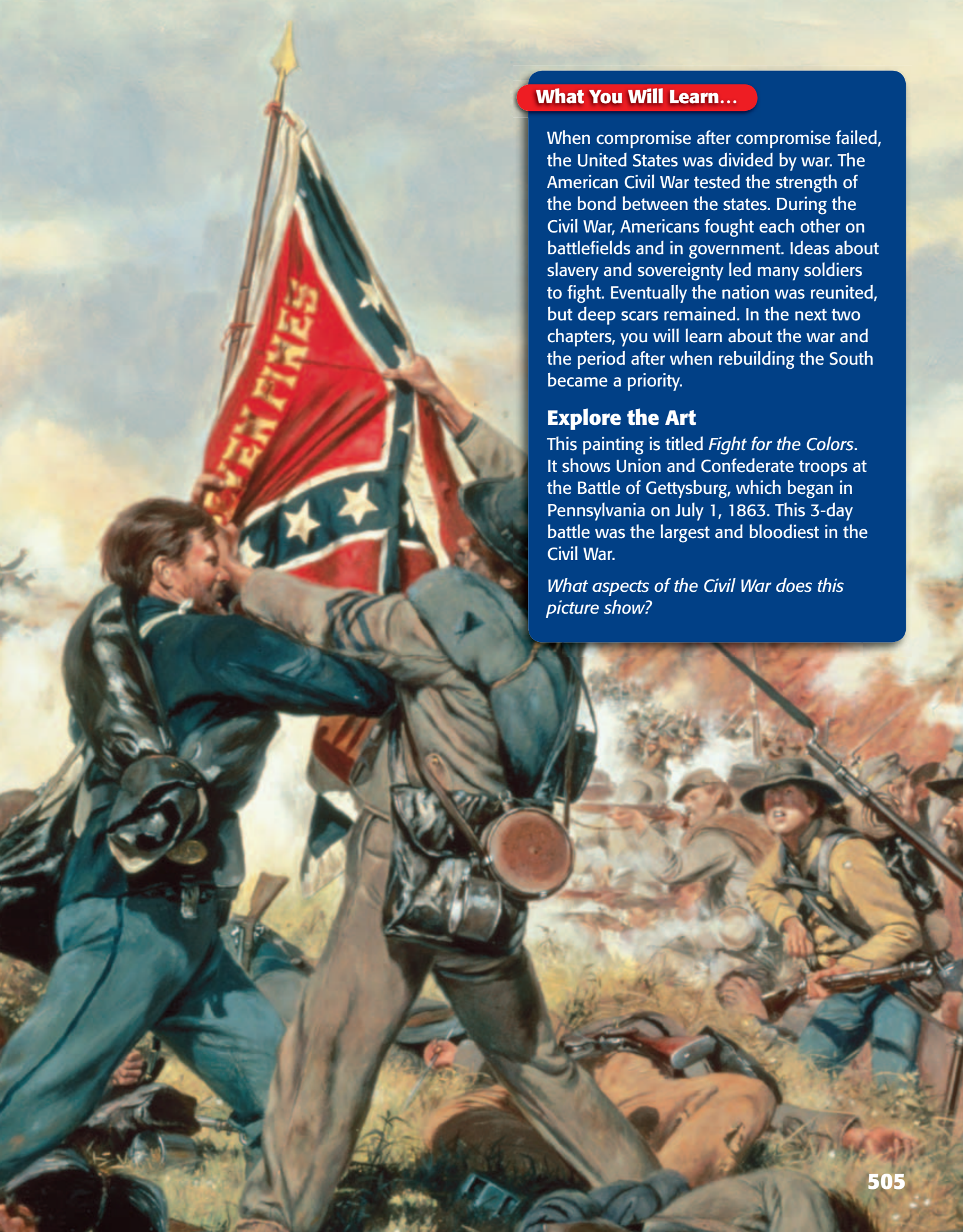
Use the steps and strategies outlined in this workshop to write your paper comparing and contrasting two people or events.

UNIT 5 1861–1877

The Nation Breaks Apart

Chapter 16 The Civil War
Chapter 17 Reconstruction





What You Will Learn…

When compromise after compromise failed, the United States was divided by war. The American Civil War tested the strength of the bond between the states. During the Civil War, Americans fought each other on battlefields and in government. Ideas about slavery and sovereignty led many soldiers to fight. Eventually the nation was reunited, but deep scars remained. In the next two chapters, you will learn about the war and the period after when rebuilding the South became a priority.

Explore the Art

This painting is titled *Fight for the Colors*. It shows Union and Confederate troops at the Battle of Gettysburg, which began in Pennsylvania on July 1, 1863. This 3-day battle was the largest and bloodiest in the Civil War.

What aspects of the Civil War does this picture show?

CHAPTER 16 1861–1865

The Civil War

Focus Question

How do issues of power, wealth, and morality influence war?

SECTION 1
The War Begins 510
History Close-up Fort Sumter
Quick Facts North Versus South
Quick Facts Resources of the North and South
Focus on New York New York Troops

SECTION 2
The War in the East 516
Interactive Map Battles in the East
Primary Source Anaconda Plan

SECTION 3
The War in the West 522
Interactive Map The War in the West
Biography David Farragut
Primary Source Response to Farragut
History and Geography The Vicksburg Strategy

SECTION 4
Daily Life during the War 528
Primary Source Letter from an African American Soldier
Focus on New York City The Draft Riots

SECTION 5
The Tide of War Turns 536
Time Line Three Days at Gettysburg

Focus on Writing

Writing a Newspaper Article Newspapers have been an important way for citizens to learn about what is happening in the United States. In this chapter you will read about the main events of the Civil War. Then you will choose one of these events and write a newspaper article about it.



United States

1861 Confederate guns open fire on Fort Sumter on April 12. Confederates win the first battle of the Civil War on July 21 at Bull Run in Virginia.

1861

World

1861 Great Britain and France decide to buy cotton from Egypt instead of from the Confederacy.



HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of the Civil War.

What You Will Learn...

In this chapter you will learn how the resources of the North enabled it to defeat the South in the Civil War. Among those who marched off to war were these drummer boys of the Union army.

1862 The *Monitor* fights the *Virginia* on March 9.

1862 An imperial decree expels foreigners from Japan.

1863 The Emancipation Proclamation is issued on January 1.



1864 With the support of French troops, Archduke Maximilian of Austria becomes emperor of Mexico.



1864 The Taiping Rebellion in China ends after the capture of Nanjing in July.

NY

1865 Four days of riots in New York City occur in protest of the Union draft.

1865 General Robert E. Lee surrenders to General Ulysses S. Grant on April 9.



1862 1863 1864 1865

Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes As you read this chapter about the Civil War, you will see that this was a time in our history dominated by two major concerns: **politics** and **society and culture**. You will not only read about the political decisions made during this war, but also you will see how the war affected all of American society. You will read about the causes and the key events during the war and the many consequences of this war. This chapter tells of one of the most important events in our history.

Supporting Facts and Details

Focus on Reading Main ideas and big ideas are just that, ideas. How do we know what those ideas really mean?

Understanding Ideas and Their Support A main idea or big idea may be a kind of summary statement, or it may be a statement of the author's opinion. Either way, a good reader looks to see what support—facts and various kinds of details—the writer provides. If the writer doesn't provide good support, the ideas may not be trustworthy.

Notice how the passage below uses facts and details to support the main idea.

Civil War armies fought in the ancient battlefield formation that produced massive casualties. Endless rows of troops fired directly at one another, with cannonballs landing amid them. When the order was given, soldiers would attach bayonets to their guns and rush toward their enemy. Men died to gain every inch of ground. . .

Despite the huge battlefield losses, the biggest killer in the Civil War was not the fighting. It was diseases such as typhoid, pneumonia, and tuberculosis. Nearly twice as many soldiers died of illnesses as died in combat.

From Chapter 16, p. 533

The main idea is stated first.

These sentences provide details about the challenges soldiers faced.

The writer concludes with some facts as support.

Writers support propositions with . . .

1. **Facts and statistics**—statements that can be proved; facts in number form
2. **Examples**—specific instances that illustrate the facts
3. **Anecdotes**—brief stories that help explain the facts
4. **Definitions**—explanation of unusual terms or words
5. **Comments from the experts or eyewitnesses**—statements from reliable sources

You Try It!

The following passage is from the chapter you are about to read. As you read it, look for the writer's main idea and support.

In February 1862, Grant led an assault force into Tennessee. With help from navy gunboats, Grant's Army of the Tennessee took two outposts on key rivers in the west. On February 6, he captured Fort Henry on the Tennessee River. Several days later he took Fort Donelson on the Cumberland River.

Fort Donelson's commander asked for the terms of surrender. Grant replied, "No terms except an unconditional and immediate surrender can be accepted." The fort surrendered. The North gave a new name to Grant's initials: "Unconditional Surrender" Grant.

From Chapter 16, pp. 522–523

After you read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. Which sentence best states the writer's main idea?
   - **a.** The fort surrendered.
   - **b.** In February 1862, Grant led an assault force into Tennessee.
   - **c.** Fort Donelson's commander asked for the terms of surrender.
2. Which method of support is not used to support the main idea?
   - **a.** facts
   - **b.** comments from experts or eyewitnesses
   - **c.** anecdotes
3. Which sentence in this passage provides a comment from an expert or eyewitness?

As you read Chapter 16, pay attention to the details that the writers have chosen to support their main ideas.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 16

Section 1

Fort Sumter *(p. 511)*
border states *(p. 512)*
Winfield Scott *(p. 513)*
cotton diplomacy *(p. 513)*

Section 2

Thomas "Stonewall" Jackson *(p. 517)*
First Battle of Bull Run *(p. 517)*
George B. McClellan *(p. 517)*
Robert E. Lee *(p. 518)*
Seven Days' Battles *(p. 518)*
Second Battle of Bull Run *(p. 518)*
Battle of Antietam *(p. 519)*
ironclads *(p. 520)*

Section 3

Ulysses S. Grant *(p. 522)*
Battle of Shiloh *(p. 523)*
David Farragut *(p. 524)*
Siege of Vicksburg *(p. 524)*

Section 4

emancipation *(p. 529)*
Emancipation Proclamation *(p. 529)*
contrabands *(p. 531)*
54th Massachusetts Infantry *(p. 531)*
Copperheads *(p. 532)*
habeas corpus *(p. 532)*
Clara Barton *(p. 534)*

Section 5

Battle of Gettysburg *(p. 537)*
George Pickett *(p. 539)*
Pickett's Charge *(p. 539)*
Gettysburg Address *(p. 540)*
Wilderness Campaign *(p. 540)*
William Tecumseh Sherman *(p. 541)*
total war *(p. 542)*
Appomattox Courthouse *(p. 542)*

Academic Vocabulary

In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

innovation *(p. 520)*
execute *(p. 540)*

SECTION 1

The War Begins



If YOU were there...

You are a college student in Charleston in early 1861. Seven southern states have left the Union and formed their own government. All-out war seems unavoidable. Your friends have begun to volunteer for either the Union or the Confederate forces. You are torn between loyalty to your home state and to the United States.

Would you join the Union or the Confederate army?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The divisions within the United States reached a breaking point with the election of Abraham Lincoln in 1860. Several southern states angrily left the Union to form a new confederation. In border states such as Virginia and Kentucky, people were divided. The question now was whether the United States could survive as a disunified country.

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Following the outbreak of war at Fort Sumter, Americans chose sides.
2. The Union and the Confederacy prepared for war.

The Big Idea

Civil war broke out between the North and the South in 1861.

Key Terms and People

Fort Sumter, *p. 511*
border states, *p. 512*
Winfield Scott, *p. 513*
cotton diplomacy, *p. 513*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the Civil War and how Americans chose sides and how each side prepared for the war.

	Choosing Sides	Preparing for War
North		
South		

Americans Choose Sides

Furious at Lincoln's election and fearing a federal invasion, seven southern states had seceded. The new commander in chief tried desperately to save the Union.

In his inaugural address, Lincoln promised not to end slavery where it existed. The federal government "will not assail [attack] you. You can have no conflict without being yourselves the aggressors," he said, trying to calm southerners' fears. However, Lincoln also stated his intention to preserve the Union. He believed that saving the Union would help to save democracy. If the Union and its government failed, then monarchs could say that people were unable to rule themselves. As a result, Lincoln refused to recognize secession, declaring the Union to be "unbroken."

In fact, after decades of painful compromises, the Union was badly broken. From the lower South, a battle cry was arising, born out of fear, rage—and excitement. Confederate officials began seizing branches of the federal mint, arsenals, and military outposts. In a last ditch effort to avoid war between the states, Secretary of State Seward suggested a united effort of threatening war against Spain and France for interfering in Mexico and the Caribbean. In the highly charged atmosphere, it would take only a spark to unleash the heat of war.



The first shots of the Civil War were fired at Fort Sumter, South Carolina. Although no one was killed there, the bloodiest war in the country's history had begun.

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Human-Environment Interaction** Why would the Union Army need to resupply Fort Sumter?
2. **Place** What advantages would a floating battery have?

In 1861, that spark occurred at **Fort Sumter**, a federal outpost in Charleston, South Carolina, that was attacked by Confederate troops, beginning the Civil War. Determined to seize the fortress—which controlled the entrance to Charleston harbor—the Confederates ringed the harbor with heavy guns. Instead of surrendering the fort, Lincoln decided to send in ships to provide badly needed supplies to defend the fort. Confederate officials demanded that the federal troops evacuate. The fort's commander, Major Robert Anderson, refused.

Before sunrise on April 12, 1861, Confederate guns opened fire on Fort Sumter. A witness wrote that the first shots brought "every soldier in the harbor to his feet, and every man, woman, and child in the city of Charleston from their beds." The Civil War had begun.

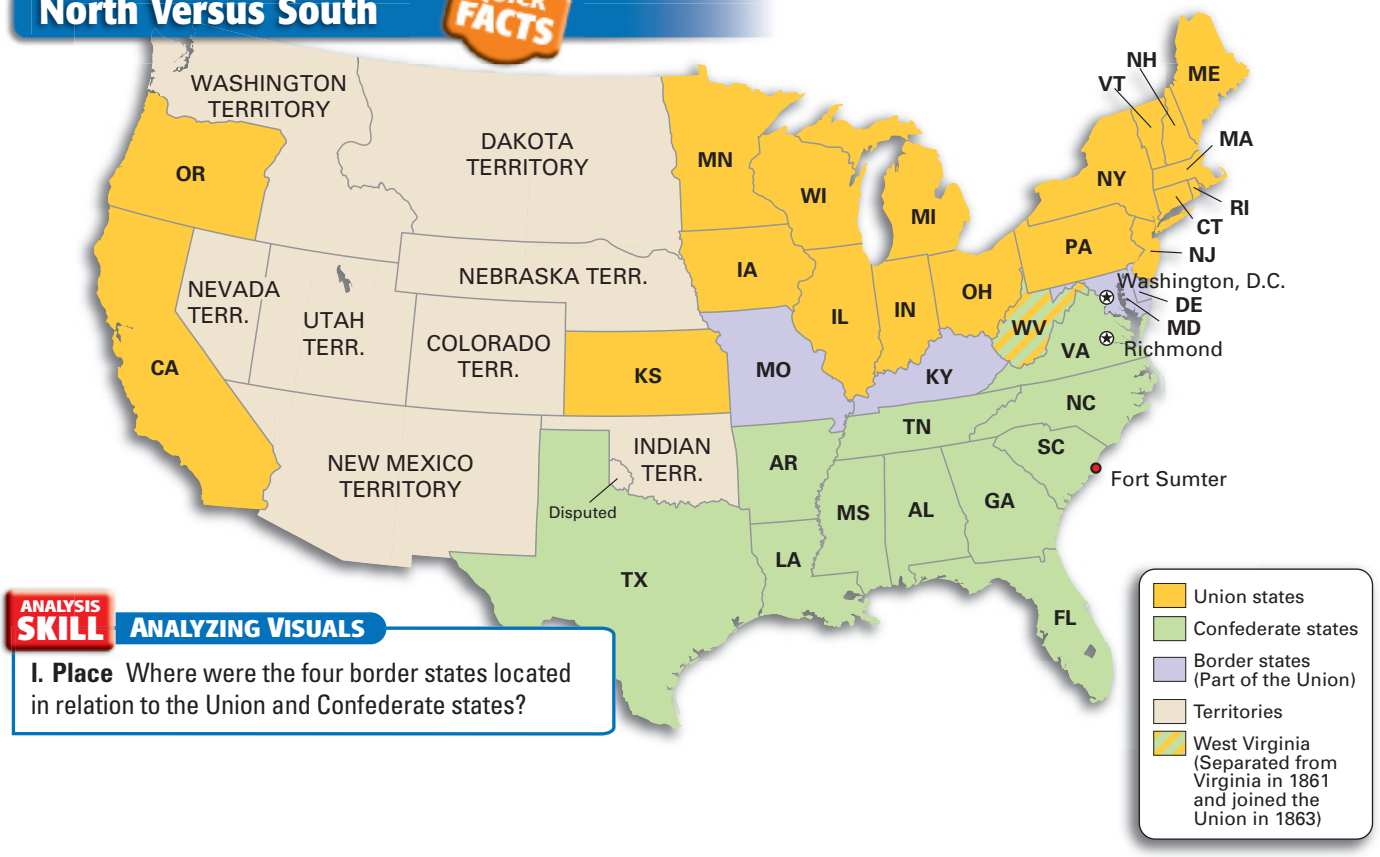
The fort, although massive, stood little chance. Its heavy guns faced the Atlantic Ocean, not the shore. After 34 hours of cannon blasts, Fort Sumter surrendered. "The last ray of hope for preserving the Union has expired at the assault upon Fort Sumter . . ." Lincoln wrote.

Reaction to Lincoln's Call

The fall of Fort Sumter stunned the North. Lincoln declared the South to be in a state of rebellion and asked state governors for 75,000 militiamen to put down the rebellion. States now had to choose: Would they secede, or would they stay in the Union? Democratic Senator Stephen Douglas, speaking in support of Lincoln's call for troops, declared, "There can be no neutrals in this war, *only patriots*—or *traitors*."

North Versus South

QUICK FACTS



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

I. Place Where were the four border states located in relation to the Union and Confederate states?

Pennsylvania, New Jersey, and the states north of them rallied to the president's call. The crucial slave states of the Upper South—North Carolina, Tennessee, Virginia, and Arkansas—seceded. They provided soldiers and supplies to the South. Mary Boykin Chesnut, whose husband became a Confederate congressman, wrote in her diary:

> "I did not know that one could live in such days of excitement…Everybody tells you half of something, and then rushes off…to hear the last news."
>
> —Mary Boykin Chesnut, quoted in *Mary Chesnut's Civil War,* edited by C. Vann Woodward

Wedged between the North and the South were the key **border states** of Delaware, Kentucky, Maryland, and Missouri—slave states that did not join the Confederacy. Kentucky and Missouri controlled parts of important rivers. Maryland separated the Union capital, Washington, D.C., from the North.

People in the border states were deeply divided on the war. The president's own wife, Mary Todd Lincoln, had four brothers from Kentucky who fought for the Confederacy. Lincoln sent federal troops into the border states to help keep them in the Union. He also sent soldiers into western Virginia, where Union loyalties were strong. West Virginia set up its own state government in 1863.

Northern Resources

Numbers tell an important story about the Civil War. Consider the North's advantages. It could draw soldiers and workers from a population of 22 million. The South had only 5.5 million people to draw from. One of the greatest advantages in the North was the region's network of roads, canals, and railroads. Some 22,000 miles of railroad track could move soldiers and supplies throughout the North. The South had only about 9,000 miles of track.

In the North, the Civil War stimulated economic growth. To supply the military, the production of coal, iron, wheat, and wool in-

creased. Also, the export of corn, wheat, beef, and pork to Europe doubled. In the South, the export of resources decreased because of the Union blockade.

Finally, the Union had money. It had a more developed economy, banking system, and a currency called greenbacks. The South had to start printing its own Confederate dollars. Some states printed their own money, too. This led to financial chaos.

Taking advantage of the Union's strengths, General **Winfield Scott** developed a two-part strategy: (1) destroy the South's economy with a naval blockade of southern ports; (2) gain control of the Mississippi River to divide the South. Other leaders urged an attack on Richmond, Virginia, the Confederate capital.

Southern Resources

The Confederacy had advantages as well. With its strong military tradition, the South put many brilliant officers into battle. Southern farms provided food for its armies. The South's best advantage, however, was strategic. It needed only to defend itself until the North grew tired of fighting.

The North had to invade and control the South. To accomplish this, the Union army had to travel huge distances. For example, the distance from northern Virginia to central Georgia is about the length of Scotland and England combined. Because of distances such as this, the North had to maintain long supply lines.

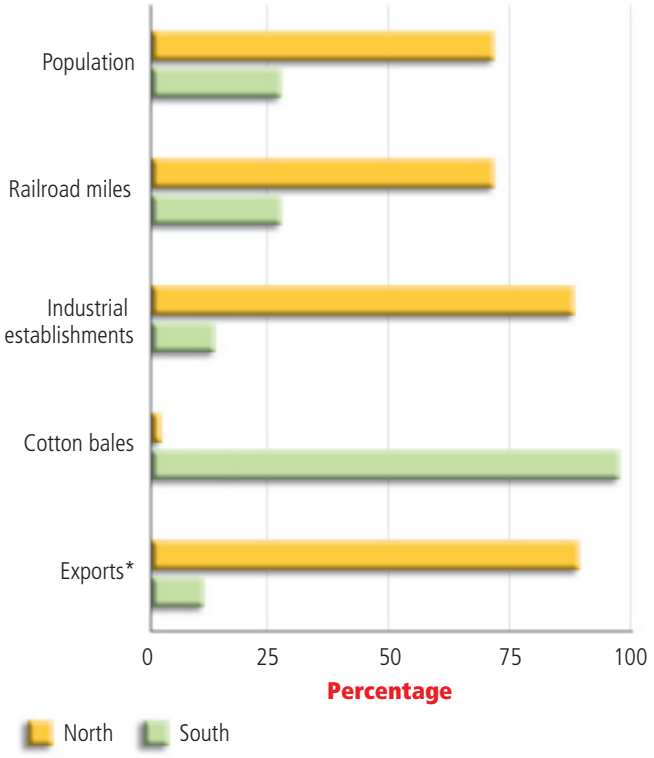
In addition, wilderness covered much of the South. Armies found this land difficult to cross. Also, in Virginia, many of the rivers ran from east to west. Because of this, they formed a natural defense against an army that attacked from the north to the south. As a result, Northern generals were often forced to attack Confederate troops from the side rather than from the front. Furthermore, because southerners fought mostly on their home soil, they were often familiar with the area.

The South hoped to wear down the North and to capture Washington, D.C. Confederate president Jefferson Davis also tried to win foreign allies through **cotton diplomacy**. This was the idea that Great Britain would support the Confederacy because it needed the South's raw cotton to supply its booming textile industry. Cotton diplomacy did not work as the South had hoped. Britain had large supplies of cotton, and it got more from India and Egypt.

READING CHECK **Comparing** What advantages did the North and South have leading up to the war?

Resources of the North and South

QUICK FACTS



*Southern exports do not include Tennessee, Arkansas, and Mississippi.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

1. Do you think the North or the South could maintain better supply lines for their troops? Explain.
2. Do you think the North or the South could provide more weapons for their troops? Explain.

Union and Confederate Soldiers

Early in the war, uniforms differed greatly, especially in the Confederate army. Uniforms became simpler and more standard as the war dragged on.



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

How are the Union and Confederate uniforms and equipment similar and different?

Preparing for War

The North and the South now rushed to war. Neither side was prepared for the tragedy to come.

Volunteer Armies

Volunteer militias had sparked the revolution that created the United States. Now they would battle for its future. At the start of the war, the Union army had only 16,000 soldiers. Within months that number had swelled to a half million. Southern men rose up to defend their land and their ways of life. Virginian Thomas Webber came to fight "against the invading foe [enemy] who now pollute the sacred soil of my beloved native state." When Union soldiers asked one captured rebel why he was fighting, he replied, "I'm fighting because you're down here."

Helping the Troops

Civilians on both sides helped those in uniform. They raised money, provided aid for soldiers and their families, and ran emergency hospitals. Dr. Elizabeth Blackwell, the first woman to receive a license to practice medicine, organized a group that pressured President Lincoln to form the U.S. Sanitary Commission in June 1861. The Sanitary, as it was called, was run by clergyman Henry Bellows. Tens of thousands of volunteers worked with the U.S. Sanitary Commission to send bandages, medicines, and food to Union army camps and hospitals. Some 3,000 women served as nurses in the Union army.

Training the Soldiers

Both the Union and Confederate armies faced shortages of clothing, food, and even rifles. Most troops lacked standard uniforms and simply wore their own clothes. Eventually, each side chose a color for their uniforms. The Union chose blue. The Confederates wore gray.

The problem with volunteers was that many of them had no idea how to fight. Schoolteachers, farmers, and laborers all had to learn the combat basics of marching, shooting, and using bayonets.

In a letter to a friend, a Union soldier described life in the training camp.

> "We have been wading through mud knee deep all winter … For the last two weeks we have been drilled almost to death. Squad drill from 6 to 7 A.M. Company drill from 9 to 11 A.M. Batallion Drill from 2 to 4 1/2 P.M. Dress Parade from 5 to 5 1/2 P.M. and non-commissioned officers' school from 7 to 8 in the evening. If we don't soon become a well drilled Regiment, we ought to."
>
> —David R. P. Shoemaker, 1862

With visions of glory and action, many young soldiers were eager to fight. They would not have to wait long.

Discipline and drill were used to turn raw volunteers into an efficient fighting machine. During a battle, the success or failure of a regiment often depended on its discipline—how well it responded to orders.

Volunteers also learned how to use rifles. Eventually, soldiers were expected to be able to load, aim, and fire their rifles three times in one minute. The quality of the weapons provided varied greatly. Most soldiers favored the Springfield and Enfield rifles for their accuracy. On the other hand, soldiers often complained about their Austrian and Belgian rifles. A soldier remarked, "I don't believe one could hit the broadside of a barn with them."

The Union army provided the infantry with two-person tents. However, soldiers often discarded these tents in favor of more portable ones. The Confederate army did not usually issue tents. Instead, Confederates often used tents that were captured from the Union army.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

New York, like the rest of the country, was deeply affected by the Civil War. More than 500,000 soldiers from New York served in the Union army.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did soldiers and civilians prepare for war?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW As citizens chose sides in the Civil War, civilians and soldiers alike became involved in the war effort. In the next section you will learn about some early battles in the war, both on land and at sea.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP16

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What event triggered the war between the Union and the Confederacy?
   b. Contrast How did the Union's strategy differ from that of the Confederacy?
   c. Evaluate Which side do you believe was best prepared for war? Explain your answer.
2. **a. Describe** How did women take part in the war?
   b. Summarize In what ways were the armies of the North and South unprepared for war?
   c. Elaborate Why did men volunteer to fight in the war?

Critical Thinking

3. **Comparing and Contrasting** Review your notes on the preparations for war by the North and the South. Then copy the graphic organizer shown below and use it to show the strengths and weaknesses of each side in the war.

	Union	Confederacy
Strengths		
Weaknesses		

FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Taking Notes on the War's Beginning** As you read this section, take notes on the crisis at Fort Sumter and on the recruiting and training of the armies. Be sure to answer the following questions: Who? Where? When? Why? and How?

SECTION 2

The War in the East

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Union and Confederate forces fought for control of the war in Virginia.
2. The Battle of Antietam gave the North a slight advantage.
3. The Confederacy attempted to break the Union naval blockade.

The Big Idea

Confederate and Union forces faced off in Virginia and at sea.

Key Terms and People

Thomas "Stonewall" Jackson, *p. 517*
First Battle of Bull Run, *p. 517*
George B. McClellan, *p. 517*
Robert E. Lee, *p. 518*
Seven Days' Battles, *p. 518*
Second Battle of Bull Run, *p. 518*
Battle of Antietam, *p. 519*
ironclads, *p. 520*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the battles in the east and at sea and the winners of each. Write your notes in a chart like the one below.

Battle	Winner

If YOU were there...

You live in Washington, D.C., in July 1861. You and your friends are on your way to Manassas, near Washington, to watch the battle there. Everyone expects a quick Union victory. Your wagon is loaded with food for a picnic, and people are in a holiday mood. You see some members of Congress riding toward Manassas, too. Maybe this battle will end the war!

Why would you want to watch this battle?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The shots fired at Fort Sumter made the war a reality. Neither the North nor the South was really prepared. Each side had some advantages—more industry and railroads in the North, a military tradition in the South. The war in the East centered in the region around the two capitals: Washington, D.C., and Richmond, Virginia.

War in Virginia

The troops that met in the first major battle of the Civil War found that it was no picnic. In July 1861, Lincoln ordered General Irvin McDowell to lead his 35,000-man army from the Union capital, Washington, to the Confederate capital, Richmond. The soldiers were barely trained. McDowell complained that they "stopped every moment to pick blackberries or get water; they would not keep in the ranks." The first day's march covered only five miles.

Bull Run/Manassas

McDowell's army was headed to Manassas, Virginia, an important railroad junction. If McDowell could seize Manassas, he would control the best route to the Confederate capital. Some 22,000 Confederate troops under the command of General Pierre G. T. Beauregard were waiting for McDowell and his troops along a creek called Bull Run. For two days, Union troops tried to find a way around the Confederates. During that time, Beauregard requested assistance, and

General Joseph E. Johnston headed toward Manassas with another 10,000 Confederate troops. By July 21, 1861, they had all arrived.

That morning, Union troops managed to cross the creek and drive back the left side of the Confederate line. Yet one unit held firmly in place.

"There is Jackson standing like a stone wall!" cried one southern officer. "Rally behind the Virginians!" At that moment, General **Thomas "Stonewall" Jackson** earned his famous nickname.

A steady stream of Virginia volunteers arrived to counter the attack. The Confederates surged forward, letting out their terrifying "rebel yell." One eyewitness described the awful scene.

> "There is smoke, dust, wild talking, shouting; hissings, howlings, explosions. It is a new, strange, unanticipated experience to the soldiers of both armies, far different from what they thought it would be."
>
> —Charles Coffin, quoted in *Voices of the Civil War* by Richard Wheeler

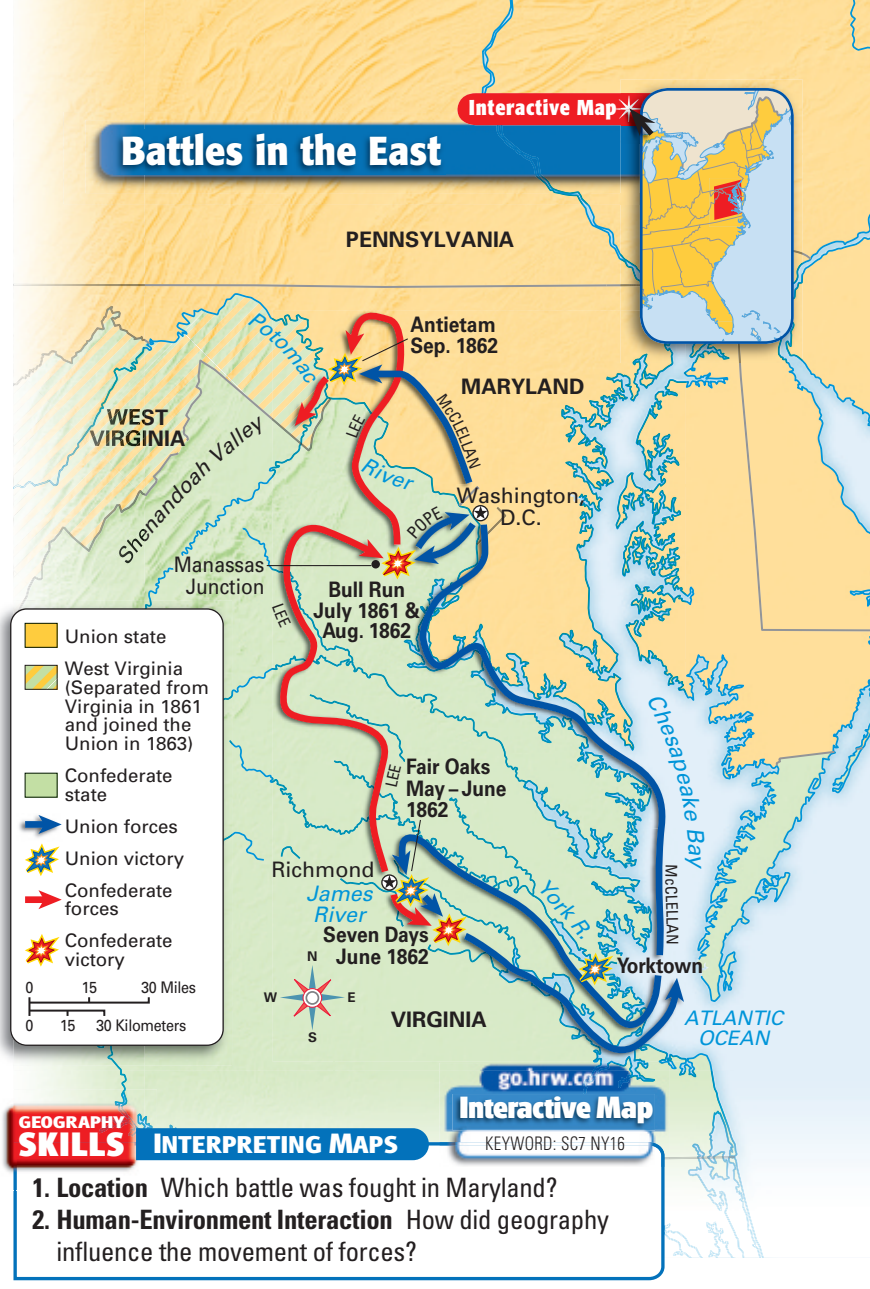
The battle raged through the day, with rebel soldiers still arriving. Finally, the weary Union troops gave out. They tried to make an orderly retreat back across the creek, but the roads were clogged with the fancy carriages of panicked spectators. The Union army scattered in the chaos.

The Confederates lacked the strength to push north and capture Washington, D.C. But clearly, the rebels had won the day. The **First Battle of Bull Run** was the first major battle of the Civil War, and the Confederates' victory. The battle is also known as the First Battle of Manassas. It shattered the North's hopes of winning the war quickly.

More Battles in Virginia

The shock at Bull Run persuaded Lincoln of the need for a better trained army. He put his hopes in General **George B. McClellan**. The general assembled a highly disciplined force of 100,000 soldiers called the Army of the Potomac. The careful McClellan spent months training. However, because he overestimated the size of the Confederate army, McClellan hesitated to attack. Lincoln grew impatient. Finally, in the spring of 1862, McClellan launched an effort to capture Richmond called the "Peninsular Campaign." Instead of marching south for a direct assault, McClellan slowly brought his force through the peninsula between the James and York rivers. More time slipped away.

The South feared that McClellan would receive reinforcements from Washington. To prevent this, Stonewall Jackson launched an attack toward Washington. Although the attack was pushed back, it prevented the Union from sending reinforcements to McClellan.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

1. **Location** Which battle was fought in Maryland?
2. **Human-Environment Interaction** How did geography influence the movement of forces?

THE IMPACT TODAY

Many Americans continue to be fascinated by the Civil War. Some history buffs regularly stage re-enactments of famous battles, complete with uniforms, guns, and bayonets.

In June 1862, with McClellan's force poised outside Richmond, the Confederate army in Virginia came under the command of General **Robert E. Lee**. A graduate of the U.S. Military Academy at West Point, Lee had served in the Mexican War and had led federal troops at Harpers Ferry. Lee was willing to take risks and make unpredictable moves to throw Union forces off balance.

During the summer of 1862, Lee strengthened his positions. On June 26, he attacked, launching a series of clashes known as the **Seven Days' Battles** that forced the Union army to retreat from near Richmond. Confederate General D. H. Hill described one failed attack. "It was not war—it was murder," he said. Lee saved Richmond and forced McClellan to retreat.

A frustrated Lincoln ordered General John Pope to march directly on Richmond from Washington. Pope told his soldiers, "Let us look before us and not behind. Success and glory are in the advance."

Jackson wanted to defeat Pope's army before it could join up with McClellan's larger Army of the Potomac. Jackson's troops met Pope's Union forces on the battlefield in August in 1862. The three-day battle became known as the **Second Battle of Bull Run**, or the Second Battle of Manassas.

The first day's fighting was savage. Captain George Fairfield of the 7th Wisconsin regiment later recalled, "What a slaughter! No one appeared to know the object of the fight, and there we stood for one hour, the men falling all around." The fighting ended in a stalemate.

On the second day, Pope found Jackson's troops along an unfinished railroad grade. Pope hurled his men against the Confederates. But the attacks were pushed back with heavy casualties on both sides.

On the third day, the Confederates crushed the Union army's assault and forced it to retreat in defeat. The Confederates had won a major victory, and General Robert E. Lee decided it was time to take the war to the North.

READING CHECK **Sequencing** List in order the events that forced Union troops out of Virginia.

Eyewitness at Antietam



Battle of Antietam

Confederate leaders hoped to follow up Lee's successes in Virginia with a major victory on northern soil. On September 4, 1862, some 40,000 Confederate soldiers began crossing into Maryland. General Robert E. Lee decided to divide his army. He sent about half of his troops, under the command of Stonewall Jackson, to Harpers Ferry. There they defeated a Union force and captured the town. Meanwhile, Lee arrived in the town of Frederick and issued a Proclamation to the People of Maryland, urging them to join the Confederates. However, his words would not be enough to convince Marylanders to abandon the Union. Union soldiers, however, found a copy of Lee's battle plan, which had been left at an abandoned Confederate camp. General McClellan learned that Lee had divided his army in order to attack Harpers Ferry. However, McClellan hesitated to attack. As a result, the Confederates had time to reunite.

BIOGRAPHY

Robert E. Lee
(1807–1870)

Robert E. Lee was born into a wealthy Virginia family in 1807. Lee fought in the Mexican-American War, helping to capture Veracruz. When the Civil War began, President Lincoln asked Lee to lead the Union army. Lee declined and resigned from the U.S. Army to become a general in the Confederate army.

Drawing Conclusions How did Lee's choice reflect the division of the states?



The two armies met along Antietam Creek in Maryland on September 17, 1862. The battle lasted for hours. By the end of the day, the Union had suffered more than 12,000 casualties. The Confederates endured more than 13,000 casualties. Union officer A. H. Nickerson later recalled, "It seemed that everybody near me was killed." The **Battle of Antietam,** also known as the Battle of Sharpsburg, was the bloodiest single-day battle of the Civil War—and of U.S. history. More soldiers were killed and wounded at the Battle of Antietam than the deaths of all Americans in the American Revolution, War of 1812, and Mexican-American War combined.

During the battle, McClellan kept four divisions of soldiers in reserve and refused to use them to attack Lee's devastated army. McClellan was convinced that Lee was massing reserves for a counterattack. Those reserves did not exist. Despite this blunder, Antietam was an important victory. Lee's northward advance had been stopped.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why was the Battle of Antietam significant?



James Hope was a professional artist who joined the Union army. Too sick to fight at Antietam, Hope was reassigned to work as a scout and a mapmaker. He sketched scenes from the battle as it happened and later used his sketches to make paintings like this one. This scene is of early morning on the battlefield. This painting doesn't represent a particular moment, but is meant to show a series of events.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING VISUALS**

How is this painting different from modern war reporting?

Primary Source

POLITICAL CARTOON

Anaconda Plan

This cartoon shows visually the North's plan to cut off supplies to the South through naval blockades, a strategy called the Anaconda Plan.



Why is the snake's head red, white, and blue?

How does the cartoonist show what the snake represents?

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why do you think the plan was called the Anaconda Plan?

Breaking the Union's Blockade

While the two armies fought for control of the land, the Union navy controlled the sea. The North had most of the U.S. Navy's small fleet, and many experienced naval officers had remained loyal to the Union. The North also had enough industry to build more ships. The Confederacy turned to British companies for new ships.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

innovation a new idea or way of doing something

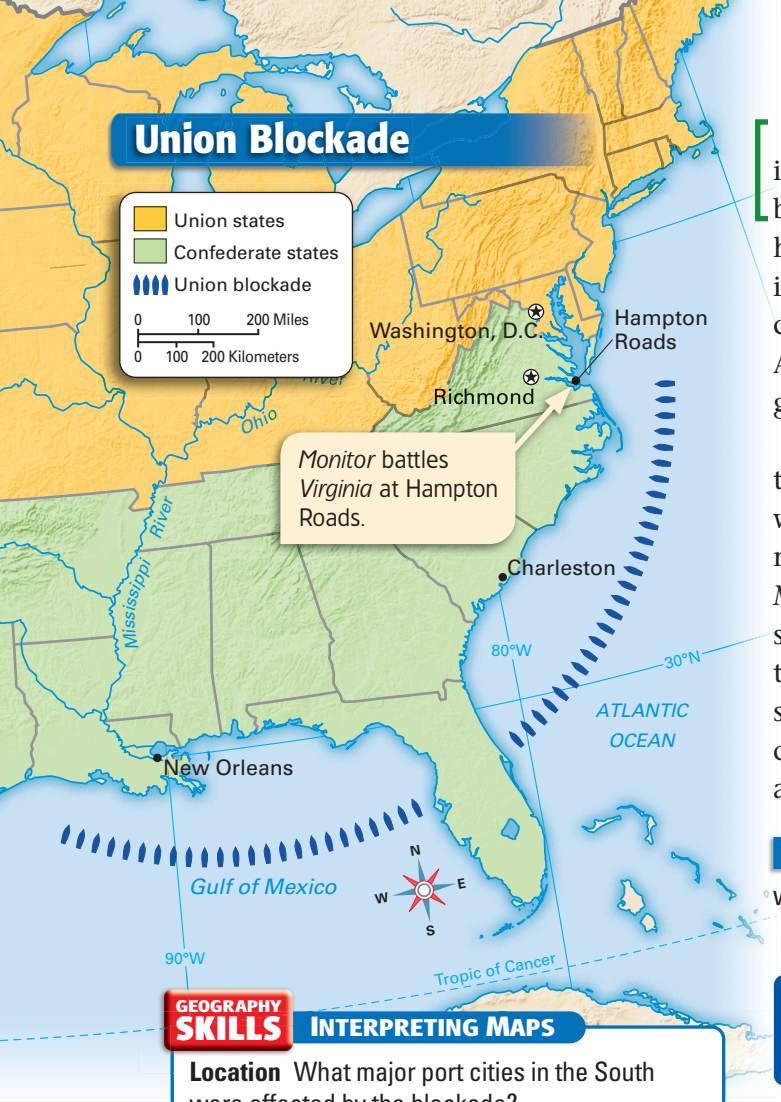
The Union's Naval Strategy

The Union navy quickly mobilized to set up a blockade of southern ports. The blockade largely prevented the South from selling or receiving goods, and it seriously damaged the southern economy.

The blockade was hard to maintain because the Union navy had to patrol thousands of miles of coastline from Virginia to Texas. The South used small, fast ships to outrun the larger Union warships. Most of these blockade runners traveled to the Bahamas or Nassau to buy supplies for the Confederacy. These ships, however, could not make up for the South's loss of trade. The Union blockade reduced the number of ships entering southern ports from 6,000 to 800 per year.

Clash of the Ironclads

Hoping to take away the Union's advantage at sea, the Confederacy turned to a new type of warship—**ironclads**, or ships heavily armored with iron. The British government neglected to stop these ships from being delivered, in violation of its pledge of neutrality. The Confederates had captured a Union steamship, the *Merrimack*, and turned it into an ironclad, renamed the *Virginia*. One Union sailor described the **innovation** as "a huge half-submerged crocodile." In early March 1862, the ironclad sailed into Hampton Roads, Virginia, an important waterway guarded by Union ships. Before nightfall, the *Virginia* easily sank two of the Union's wooden warships, while it received minor damage.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS **INTERPRETING MAPS**

Location What major port cities in the South were affected by the blockade?

The Union navy had already built its own ironclad, the *Monitor*, designed by Swedish-born engineer John Ericsson. Ericsson's ship had unusual new features, such as a revolving gun tower. One Confederate soldier called the *Monitor* "a tin can on a shingle!" Although small, the *Monitor* carried powerful guns and had thick plating.

When the *Virginia* returned to Hampton Roads later that month, the *Monitor* was waiting. After several hours of fighting, neither ship was seriously damaged, but the *Monitor* forced the *Virginia* to withdraw. This success saved the Union fleet and continued the blockade. The clash of the ironclads also signaled a revolution in naval warfare. The days of wooden warships powered by wind and sails were drawing to a close.

READING CHECK **Evaluating** How effective was the Union blockade?

THE IMPACT TODAY

The *Monitor* sank in North Carolina in the winter of 1862. The shipwreck was located by scientists in 1973, and the remains of the ship are part of the exhibit at the USS *Monitor* Center, which opened in 2007.

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The early battles of the Civil War were centered in the East. In the next section you will read about battles in the West.

Section 2 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP16

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** List the early battles in the East and the outcome of each battle.
   b. Elaborate Why do you think the Union lost the **First Battle of Bull Run**?
2. **a. Describe** What costly mistake did the Confederacy make before the **Battle of Antietam**?
   b. Analyze What was the outcome of the Battle of Antietam? What effect did it have on both the North and the South?
   c. Elaborate Why do you think General **George B. McClellan** did not finish off General **Robert E. Lee**'s troops when he had the chance?
3. **a. Describe** What was the Union's strategy in the war at sea?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why were **ironclads** more successful than older, wooden ships?

Critical Thinking

4. **Supporting a Point of View** Review your notes on the battles in the east and at sea. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to show which three conflicts you think were the most significant and why.

Most Significant	Why

FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Taking Notes on the War in the East** As you read this section, take notes on the First Battle of Bull Run, the Seven Days' Battles, the Second Battle of Bull Run, and the Battle of Antietam. Be sure to answer the following questions: Who? Where? When? Why? and How?

SECTION 3

The War in the West

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Union strategy in the West centered on control of the Mississippi River.
2. Confederate and Union troops struggled for dominance in the Far West.

The Big Idea

Fighting in the Civil War spread to the western United States.

Key Terms and People

Ulysses S. Grant, *p. 522*
Battle of Shiloh, *p. 523*
David Farragut, *p. 524*
Siege of Vicksburg, *p. 524*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on Civil War battles in the West. Write your notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.

Battles in the West

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

If YOU were there...

You live in the city of Vicksburg, set on high bluffs above the Mississippi River. Vicksburg is vital to the control of the river, and Confederate defenses are strong. But the Union general is determined to take the town. For weeks, you have been surrounded and besieged. Cannon shells burst overhead, day and night. Some have fallen on nearby homes. Supplies of food are running low.

How would you survive this siege?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The Civil War was fought on many fronts, all across the continent and even at sea. In the East, fighting was at first concentrated in Virginia. In the West, cities and forts along the Mississippi River were the main target of Union forces. Northern control of the river would cut off the western states of the Confederacy.

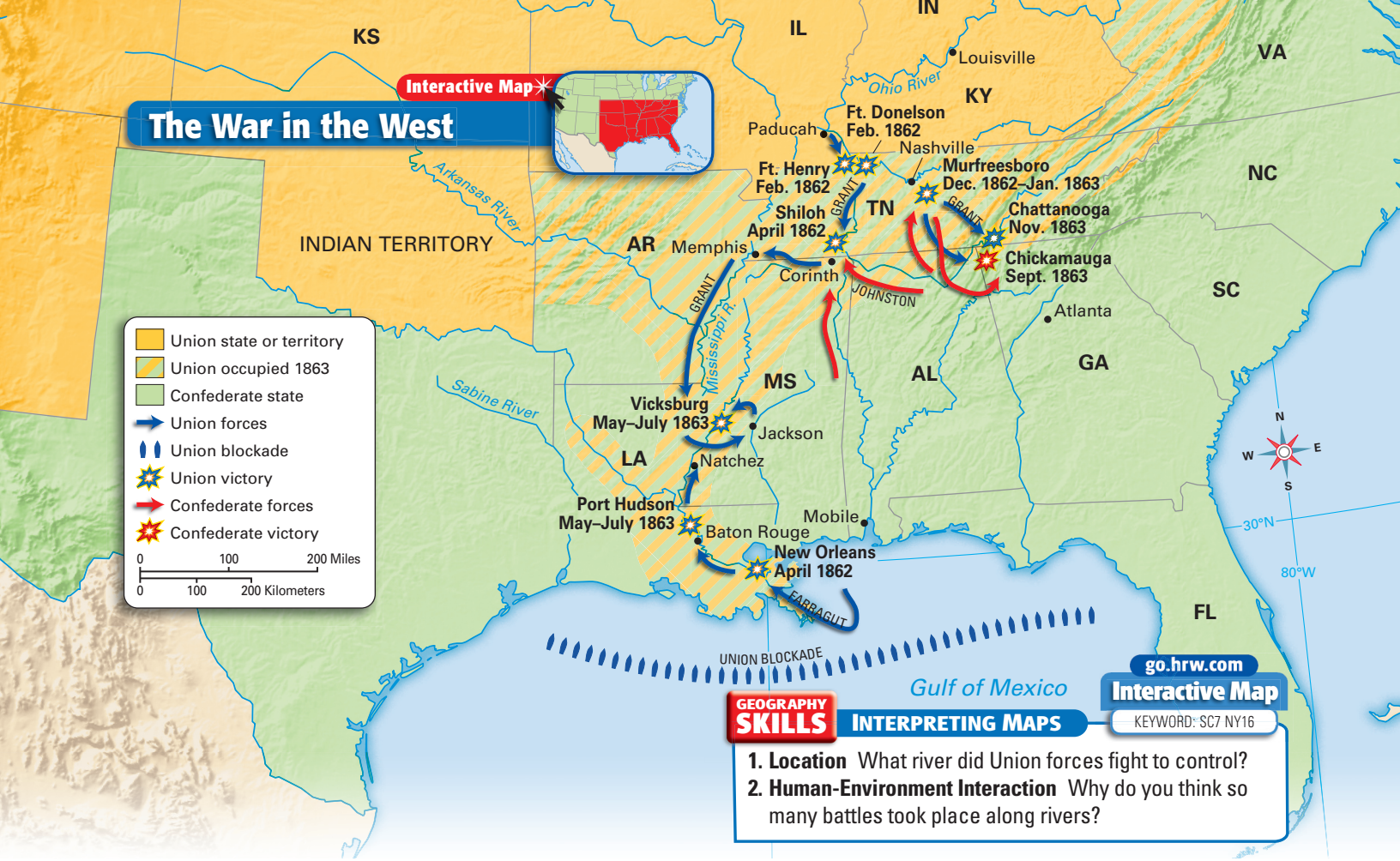
Union Strategy in the West

While Lincoln fumed over the cautious, hesitant General McClellan, he had no such problems with **Ulysses S. Grant**. Bold and restless, Grant grew impatient when he was asked to lead defensive maneuvers. He wanted to be on the attack. As a commander of forces in the Union's western campaign, he would get his wish.

The western campaign focused on taking control of the Mississippi River. This strategy would cut off the eastern part of the Confederacy from sources of food production in Arkansas, Louisiana, and Texas. From bases on the Mississippi, the Union army could attack southern communication and transportation networks.

In February 1862, Grant led an assault force into Tennessee. With help from navy gunboats, Grant's Army of the Tennessee took two outposts on key rivers in the west. On February 6, he captured Fort Henry on the Tennessee River. Several days later he took Fort Donelson on the Cumberland River.

Fort Donelson's commander asked for the terms of surrender. Grant replied, "No terms except an unconditional and immediate



surrender can be accepted." The fort surrendered. The North gave a new name to Grant's initials: "Unconditional Surrender" Grant.

Advancing south in Tennessee, General Grant paused near Shiloh Church to await the arrival of the Army of the Ohio. Grant knew that the large rebel army of General A. S. Johnston was nearby in Corinth, Mississippi, but he did not expect an attack. Instead of setting up defenses, he worked on drilling his new recruits.

In the early morning of April 6, 1862, the rebels sprang on Grant's sleepy camp. This began the **Battle of Shiloh**, in which the Union army gained greater control of the Mississippi River valley.

During the bloody two-day battle, each side gained and lost ground. Johnston was killed on the first day. The arrival of the Ohio force helped Grant regain territory and push the enemy back into Mississippi. The armies finally gave out, each with about 10,000 casualties. Both sides claimed victory, but, in fact, the victor was Grant.

The Fall of New Orleans

As Grant battled his way down the Mississippi, the Union navy prepared to blast its way upriver to meet him. The first obstacle was the port of New Orleans, the largest city in the Confederacy and the gateway to the Mississippi River.

CASE STUDY **BIOGRAPHY**

David Farragut
(1801–1870)

David Farragut was born in Tennessee to a Spanish father and an American mother. At age seven Farragut was adopted by a family friend who agreed to train the young boy for the navy. Farragut received his first navy position—midshipman at large—at age nine and commanded his first vessel at 12. He spent the rest of his life in the U.S. Navy. Farragut led key attacks on the southern ports of Vicksburg and New Orleans.

Drawing Inferences How did Farragut help the war effort of the North?



With 18 ships and 700 men, Admiral **David Farragut** approached the two forts that guarded the entrance to New Orleans from the Gulf of Mexico. Unable to destroy the forts, Farragut decided to race past them.

The risky operation would take place at night. Farragut had his wooden ships wrapped in heavy chains to protect them like ironclads. Sailors slapped Mississippi mud on the ships' hulls to make them hard to see. Trees were tied to the masts to make the ships look like the forested shore.

Before dawn on April 24, 1862, the warships made their daring dash. The Confederates fired at Farragut's ships from the shore and from gunboats. They launched burning rafts, one of which scorched Farragut's own ship. But his fleet slipped by the twin forts and made it to New Orleans. The city fell on April 29.

Farragut sailed up the Mississippi River, taking Baton Rouge, Louisiana, and Natchez, Mississippi. He then approached the city of Vicksburg, Mississippi.

The Siege of Vicksburg

Vicksburg's geography made invasion all but impossible. Perched on 200-foot-high cliffs above the Mississippi River, the city could rain down firepower on enemy ships or on soldiers trying to scale the cliffs. Deep gorges surrounded the city, turning back land assaults. Nevertheless, Farragut ordered Vicksburg to surrender.

> "Mississippians don't know, and refuse to learn, how to surrender … If Commodore Farragut … can teach them, let [him] come and try."
>
> —Colonel James L. Autry, military commander of Vicksburg

Farragut's guns had trouble reaching the city above. It was up to General Grant. His solution was to starve the city into surrender.

General Grant's troops began the **Siege of Vicksburg** in mid-May 1863, cutting off the city and shelling it repeatedly. As food ran out, residents and soldiers survived by eating horses, dogs, and rats. "We are utterly cut off from the world, surrounded by a circle of fire," wrote one woman. "People do nothing

Primary Source

SPEECH

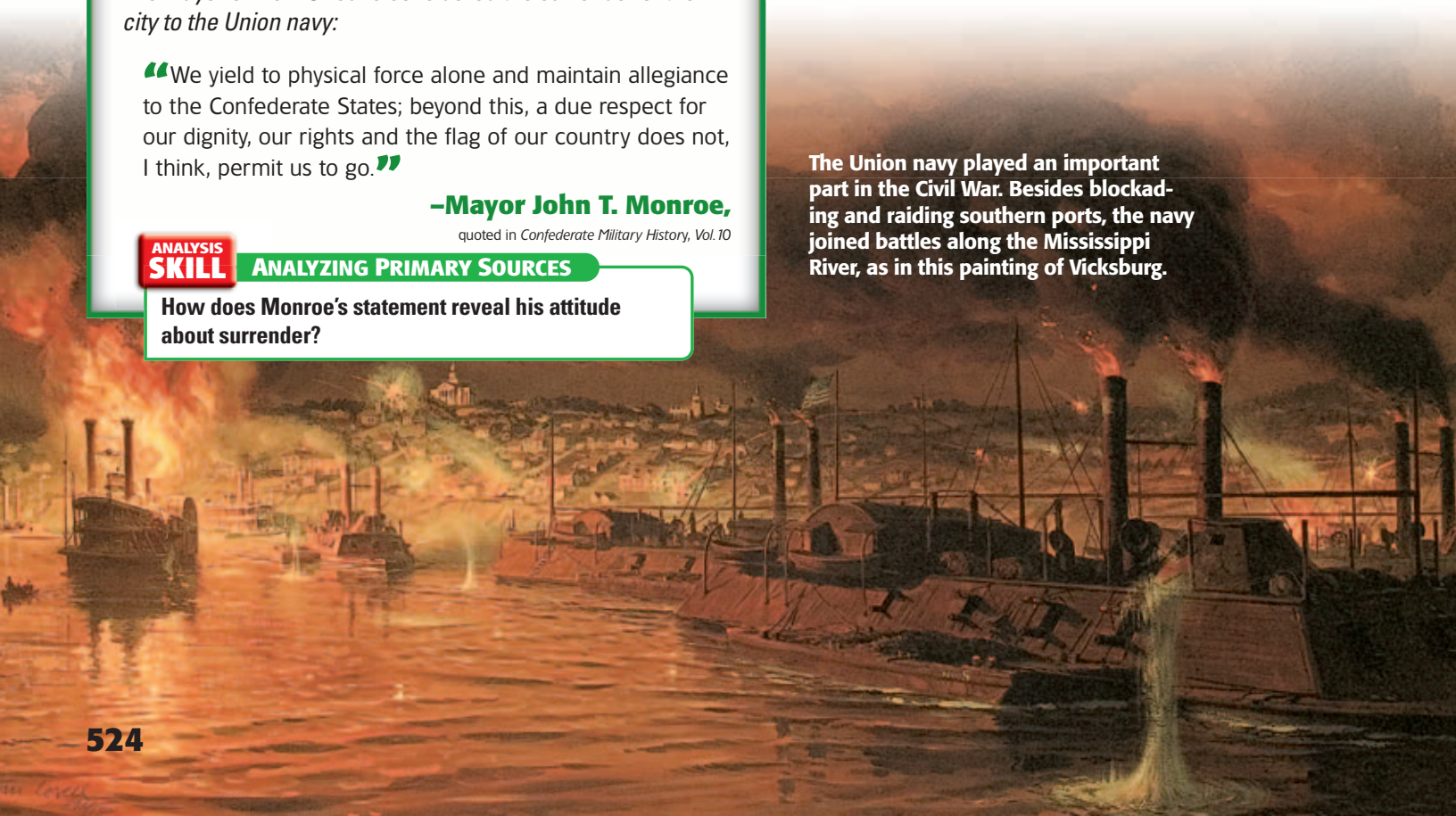
Response to Farragut

The mayor of New Orleans considered the surrender of the city to the Union navy:

> "We yield to physical force alone and maintain allegiance to the Confederate States; beyond this, a due respect for our dignity, our rights and the flag of our country does not, I think, permit us to go."
>
> **–Mayor John T. Monroe,**
>
> quoted in *Confederate Military History, Vol. 10*

ANALYSIS SKILL **Analyzing Primary Sources**

How does Monroe's statement reveal his attitude about surrender?



The Union navy played an important part in the Civil War. Besides blockading and raiding southern ports, the navy joined battles along the Mississippi River, as in this painting of Vicksburg.

but eat what they can get, sleep when they can, and dodge the shells."

The Confederate soldiers were also sick and hungry. In late June a group of soldiers sent their commander a warning.

> "The army is now ripe for mutiny [rebellion], unless it can be fed. If you can't feed us, you'd better surrender us, horrible as the idea is."
>
> —Confederate soldiers at Vicksburg to General John C. Pemberton, 1863

On July 4, Pemberton surrendered. Grant immediately sent food to the soldiers and civilians. He later claimed that "the fate of the Confederacy was sealed when Vicksburg fell."

READING CHECK **Summarizing** How did the Union gain control of the Mississippi River?

Struggle for the Far West

Early on in the war, the Union halted several attempts by Confederate armies to control lands west of the Mississippi. In August 1861, a Union detachment from Colorado turned back a Confederate force at Glorieta Pass. Union volunteers also defeated rebel forces at Arizona's Pichaco Pass.

Confederate attempts to take the border state of Missouri also collapsed. Failing to seize the federal arsenal at St. Louis in mid-1861, the rebels fell back to Pea Ridge in northwest Arkansas. There, in March 1862, they attacked again, aided by some 800 Cherokee. The Indians hoped the Confederates would give them greater freedom. In addition, slavery was legal in Indian Territory, and some Native Americans who were slaveholders supported the Confederacy. Despite being outnumbered, Union forces won the Battle of Pea Ridge. The Union defense of Missouri held.

Pro-Confederate forces remained active in the region throughout the war. They attacked Union forts and raided towns in Missouri and Kansas, forcing Union commanders to keep valuable troops stationed in the area.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** What was the importance of the fighting in the Far West?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW The North and the South continued their struggle with battles in the West. A number of key battles took place in the Western theater, and several important Union leaders emerged from these battles. One, Ulysses S. Grant, would soon become even more important to the Union army. In the next section you will learn about the lives of civilians, enslaved Africans, and soldiers during the war.

Section 3 Assessment

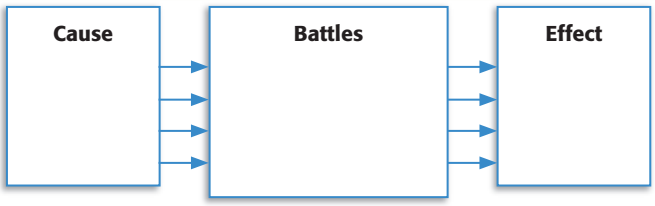
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP16

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What role did **Ulysses S. Grant** play in the war in the West?
   b. Explain Why was the **Battle of Shiloh** important?
   c. Elaborate Do you think President Lincoln would have approved of Grant's actions in the West? Why or why not?
2. **a. Describe** How did the Union take New Orleans, and why was it an important victory?
   b. Draw Conclusions How were civilians affected by the **Siege of Vicksburg**?
   c. Predict What might be some possible results of the Union victory at Vicksburg?

Critical Thinking

3. **Identifying Cause and Effect** Review your notes on Union strategy in the West. Then copy this graphic organizer and use it to show the causes and effects of each battle.



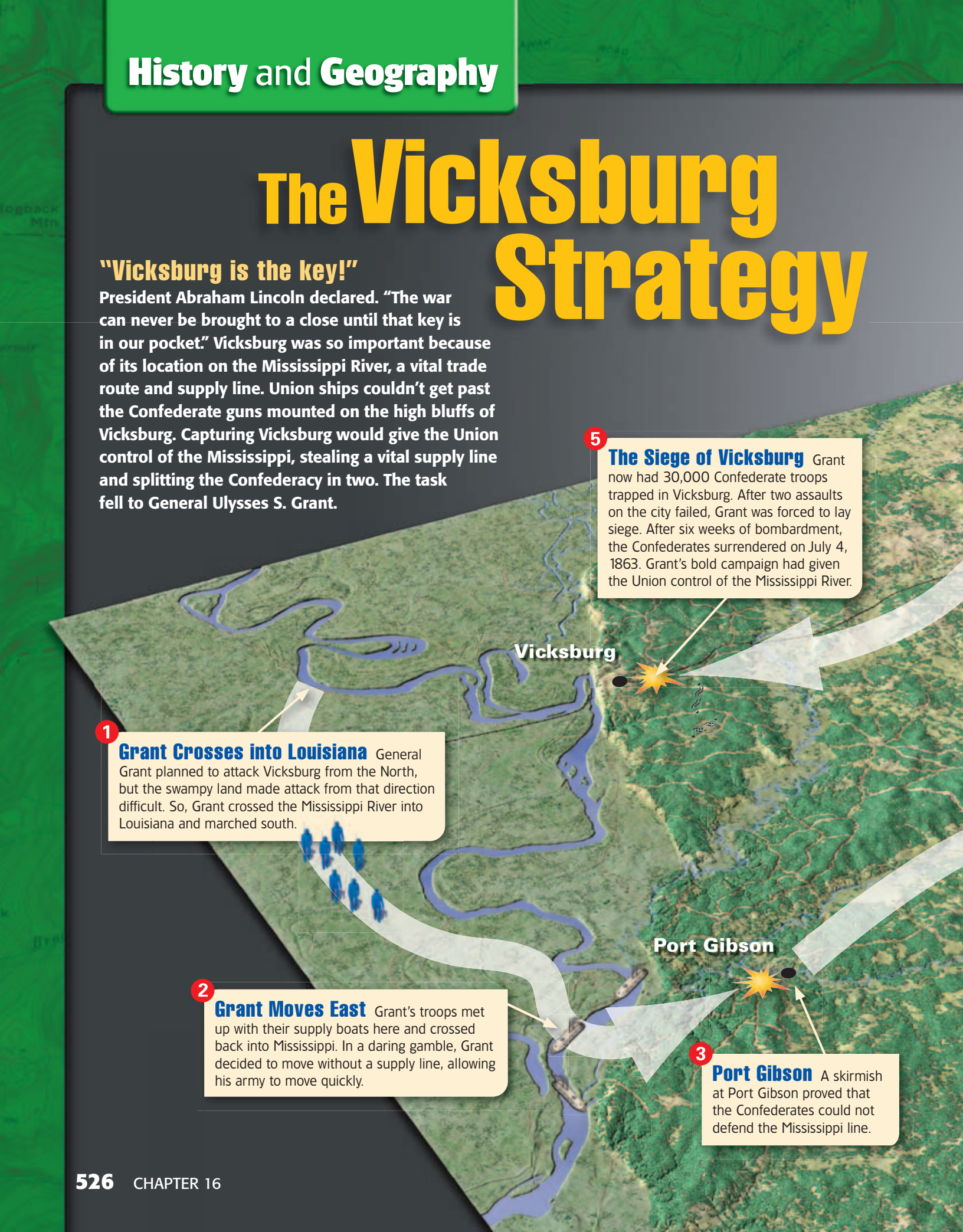
FOCUS ON WRITING

4. **Taking Notes on the War in the West** As you read this section, take notes on the fight for the Mississippi River and the Siege of Vicksburg. Be sure to answer the following questions: Who? Where? When? Why? and How?

The Vicksburg Strategy

"Vicksburg is the key!"

President Abraham Lincoln declared. "The war can never be brought to a close until that key is in our pocket." Vicksburg was so important because of its location on the Mississippi River, a vital trade route and supply line. Union ships couldn't get past the Confederate guns mounted on the high bluffs of Vicksburg. Capturing Vicksburg would give the Union control of the Mississippi, stealing a vital supply line and splitting the Confederacy in two. The task fell to General Ulysses S. Grant.







Ironclads

Union ironclads were vital to the Vicksburg campaign. These gunboats protected Grant's troops when they crossed the Mississippi. Later, they bombarded Vicksburg during the siege of the city.

Jackson

4

The Battle of Jackson Grant defeated a Confederate army at Jackson and then moved on to Vicksburg. This prevented Confederate forces from reinforcing Vicksburg.



Biography

Ulysses S. Grant
(1822–1885)

Ulysses S. Grant was born in April 1822 in New York. Grant attended West Point and fought in the Mexican-American War. He resigned in 1854 and worked at various jobs in farming, real estate, and retail. When the Civil War started, he joined the Union army and was quickly promoted to general. After the Civil War, Grant rode a wave of popularity to become president of the United States.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS Interpreting Maps

1. **Location** Why was Vicksburg's location so important?
2. **Place** What natural features made Vicksburg difficult to attack?

SECTION 4

Daily Life during the War

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The Emancipation Proclamation freed slaves in Confederate states.
2. African Americans participated in the war in a variety of ways.
3. President Lincoln faced opposition to the war.
4. Life was difficult for soldiers and civilians alike.

The Big Idea

The lives of many Americans were affected by the Civil War.

Key Terms and People

emancipation, *p. 529*
Emancipation Proclamation, *p. 529*
contrabands, *p. 531*
54th Massachusetts Infantry, *p. 531*
Copperheads, *p. 532*
habeas corpus, *p. 532*
Clara Barton, *p. 534*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the effects of the Civil War on the lives of African Americans, soldiers, and women and children. Write your notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.

How the Civil War affected	
African Americans	
Soldiers	
Women and children	

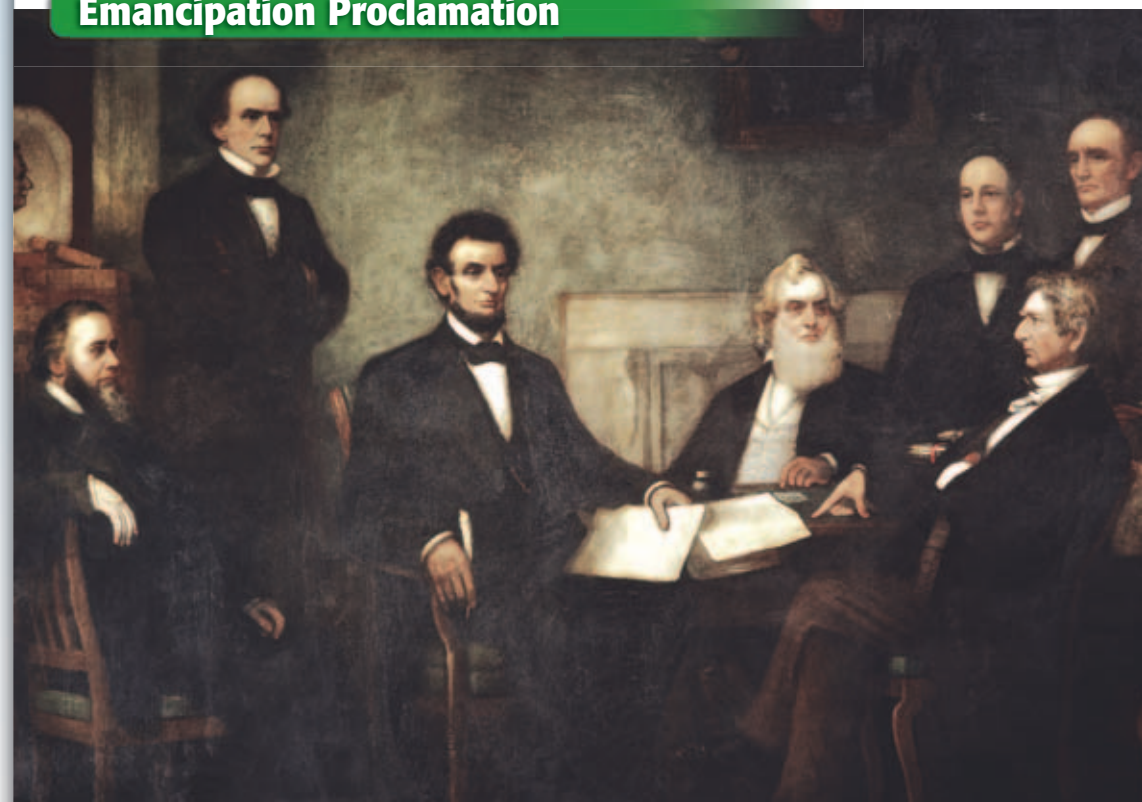
If YOU were there...

You live in Maryland in 1864. Your father and brothers are in the Union army, and you want to do your part in the war. You hear that a woman in Washington, D.C., is supplying medicines and caring for wounded soldiers on the battlefield. She is looking for volunteers. You know the work will be dangerous, for you'll be in the line of fire. You might be shot or even killed.

Would you join the nurses on the battlefield?

BUILDING BACKGROUND The Civil War touched almost all Americans. Some 3 million men fought in the two armies. Thousands of other men and women worked behind the lines, providing food, supplies, medical care, and other necessary services. Civilians could not escape the effects of war, as the fighting destroyed farms, homes, and cities.

Emancipation Proclamation



Emancipation Proclamation

At the heart of the nation's bloody struggle were millions of enslaved African Americans. Abolitionists urged President Lincoln to free them.

In an 1858 speech, Lincoln declared, "There is no reason in the world why the negro is not entitled to all the natural rights numerated in the Declaration of Independence—the right to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness." Yet as president, Lincoln found **emancipation**, or the freeing of slaves, to be a difficult issue. He did not believe he had the constitutional power. He also worried about the effects of emancipation.

Lincoln Issues the Proclamation

Northerners had a range of opinions about abolishing slavery.

- The Democratic Party, which included many laborers, opposed emancipation. Laborers feared that freed slaves would come north and take their jobs at lower wages.
- Abolitionists argued that the war was pointless if it did not win freedom for African Americans. They warned that the Union would remain divided until the problem was resolved.



The painting at left shows Lincoln and his cabinet after the signing of the Emancipation Proclamation. Above is a photo of former slaves who were freed by the proclamation.

How do you think the Emancipation Proclamation would affect the Civil War?

Emancipation Proclamation



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

Place In which places was slavery still legal after the Emancipation Proclamation?

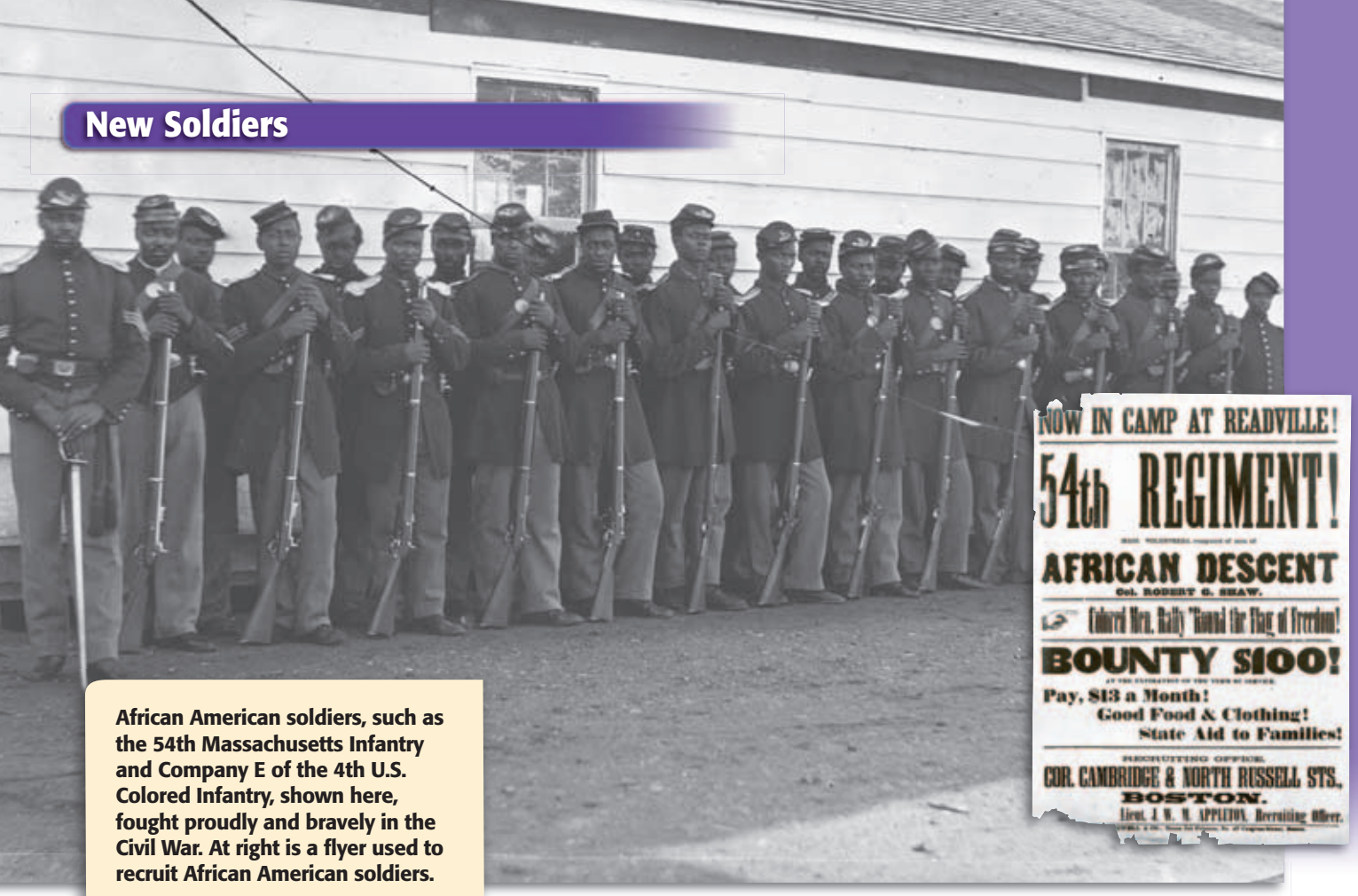
- Lincoln worried about losing support for the war. Previous wartime Confiscation Acts that had attempted to free the slaves had been unpopular in the border states.
- Others, including Secretary of War Edwin Stanton, agreed with Lincoln that the use of slave labor was helping the Confederacy make war. Therefore, as commander in chief, the president could free the slaves in all rebellious states. Freed African Americans could then be recruited into the Union army.

For several weeks in 1862, Lincoln worked intensely, thinking, writing, and rewriting. He finally wrote the **Emancipation Proclamation**, the order to free the Confederate slaves. The proclamation declared that:

> "…all persons held as slaves within any State or designated part of a State the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States shall be then, thenceforward, and forever free."
>
> —Emancipation Proclamation, 1862

The Emancipation Proclamation was a military order that freed slaves only in areas

New Soldiers



African American soldiers, such as the 54th Massachusetts Infantry and Company E of the 4th U.S. Colored Infantry, shown here, fought proudly and bravely in the Civil War. At right is a flyer used to recruit African American soldiers.

controlled by the Confederacy. In fact, the proclamation had little immediate effect. It was impossible for the federal government to enforce the proclamation in the areas where it actually applied—the states in rebellion that were not under federal control. The proclamation did not stop slavery in the border states, where the federal government would have had the power to enforce it. The words written in the Emancipation Proclamation were powerful, but the impact of the document was more symbolic than real. It defined what the Union was fighting against, and discouraged Britain from aiding the Confederacy.

Lincoln wanted to be in a strong position in the war before announcing his plan. The Battle of Antietam gave him the victory he needed. He issued the Emancipation Proclamation on September 22, 1862. The proclamation went into effect on January 1, 1863.

Reaction to the Proclamation

New Year's Eve, December 31, 1862: In "night watch" meetings at many African American churches, worshippers prayed, sang, and gave thanks. When the clocks struck midnight, millions were free. Abolitionists rejoiced. Frederick Douglass called January 1, 1863, "the great day which is to determine the destiny not only of the American Republic, but that of the American Continent."

William Lloyd Garrison was quick to note, however, that "slavery, as a system" continued to exist in the loyal slave states. Yet where slavery remained, the proclamation encouraged many enslaved Africans to escape when the Union troops came near. They flocked to the Union camps and followed them for protection. The loss of slaves crippled the South's ability to wage war.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** How did northerners view the Emancipation Proclamation?

Primary Source

LETTER

June 23, 1863

Joseph E. Williams, an African American soldier and recruiter from Pennsylvania, wrote this letter describing why African Americans fought for the Union.

"We are now determined to hold every step which has been offered to us as citizens of the United States for our elevation [benefit], which represent justice, the purity, the truth, and aspiration [hope] of heaven. We must learn deeply to realize the duty, the moral and political necessity for the benefit of our race...Every consideration of honor, of interest, and of duty to God and man, requires that we should be true to our trust."

—quoted in *A Grand Army of Black Men*, edited by Edwin S. Redkey

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why did Williams think being soldiers was so important for African Americans?

African Americans Participate in the War

As the war casualties climbed, the Union needed even more troops. African Americans were ready to volunteer. Not all white northerners were ready to accept them, but eventually they had to. Frederick Douglass believed that military service would help African Americans gain rights.

"Once let the black man get upon his person the brass letters, U.S.; … and a musket on his shoulder and bullets in his pocket, and there is no power on earth which can deny that he has earned the right to citizenship."

—Frederick Douglass, quoted in *The Life and Writings of Frederick Douglass, Vol. 3*

Congress began allowing the army to sign up African American volunteers as laborers in July 1862. The War Department also gave **contrabands**, or escaped slaves, the right to join the Union army in South Carolina. Free African Americans in Louisiana and Kansas also formed their own units in the Union army. By the spring of 1863, African American army units were proving themselves in combat. They took part in a Union attack on Port Hudson, Louisiana, in May.

One unit stood out above the others. The **54th Massachusetts Infantry** consisted mostly of free African Americans. In July 1863 this regiment led a heroic charge on South Carolina's Fort Wagner. The 54th took heavy fire and suffered huge casualties in the failed operation. About half the regiment was killed, wounded, or captured. Edward L. Pierce, a correspondent for the *New York Tribune,* wrote, "The Fifty-fourth did well and nobly…They moved up as gallantly as any troops could, and with their enthusiasm they deserved a better fate." The bravery of the 54th regiment made it the most celebrated African American unit of the war.

About 180,000 African Americans served with the Union army. They received $10 a month, while white soldiers got $13. They were usually led by white officers, some from abolitionist families.

African Americans faced special horrors on the battlefield. Confederates often killed their black captives or sold them into slavery. In the 1864 election, Lincoln suggested rewarding African American soldiers by giving them the right to vote.

READING CHECK **Analyzing Information**

How did African Americans support the Union?

Growing Opposition

The deepening shadows in Lincoln's face reflected the huge responsibilities he carried. Besides running the war, he had to deal with growing tensions in the North.

Copperheads

As the months rolled on and the number of dead continued to increase, a group of northern Democrats began speaking out against the war. Led by U.S. Representative Clement L. Vallandigham of Ohio, they called themselves Peace Democrats. Their enemies called them Copperheads, comparing them to a poisonous snake. The name stuck.

Many **Copperheads** were midwesterners that sympathized with the South and opposed abolition. They believed the war was not necessary and called for its end. Vallandigham asked what the war had gained, and then said, "Let the dead at Fredericksburg and Vicksburg answer."

Lincoln saw the Copperheads as a threat to support of the war effort. To silence them, he suspended the right of habeas corpus. **Habeas corpus** is a constitutional protection against unlawful imprisonment. Ignoring this protection, Union officials jailed their enemies, including some Copperheads, without evidence or trial. Lincoln's action greatly angered Democrats and some Republicans.

Northern Draft

In March 1863, war critics erupted again when Congress approved a draft, or forced military service. For $300, men were allowed to buy their way out of military service. For an unskilled laborer, however, that was nearly a year's wages. Critics of the draft called the Civil War a "rich man's war and a poor man's fight."

In July 1863, riots broke out when African Americans were brought into New York City to replace striking Irish dock workers. The city happened to be holding a war draft at the same time. The two events enraged rioters, who attacked African Americans and draft offices. More than 100 people died.

In this tense situation, the northern Democrats nominated former General George McClellan for president in 1864. They called

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

The Union draft law of 1863 sparked protest throughout the North, but the New York City draft riots were the most violent. Although many people opposed the draft and the war itself, many Irish immigrants in New York City were especially opposed to fighting for the cause of African American freedom. Many immigrants viewed African Americans as economic competition. Additionally, the exemption clause of the draft allowed the wealthy to buy their way out of service. Angry mobs in New York City burned an African American church and orphanage to the ground, looted black-owned businesses, and killed more than 100 people.



Infantry Family

While wealthy civilians could avoid military service, poorer men were drafted to serve in the Union army. This member of the 31st Pennsylvania Infantry brought his family along with him. His wife probably helped the soldier with many daily chores such as cooking and laundry.

Why would soldiers bring their families to live with them in camp?

for an immediate end to the war. Lincoln defeated McClellan in the popular vote, winning by about 400,000 votes out of 4 million cast. The electoral vote was not even close. Lincoln won 212 to 21.

READING CHECK **Identifying Cause and Effect**
Who opposed the war, and how did Lincoln respond to the conflict?

Life for Soldiers and Civilians

Young, fresh recruits in both armies were generally eager to fight. Experienced troops, however, knew better.

On the Battlefield

Civil War armies fought in the ancient battlefield formation that produced massive casualties. Endless rows of troops fired directly at one another, with cannonballs landing amid them. When the order was given, soldiers would attach bayonets to their guns and rush toward their enemy. Men died to gain every inch of ground.

Doctors and nurses in the field saved many lives. Yet they had no medicines to stop infections that developed after soldiers were wounded. Many soldiers endured the horror of having infected legs and arms amputated without painkillers. Infections from minor injuries caused many deaths.

Despite the huge battlefield losses, the biggest killer in the Civil War was not the fighting. It was diseases such as typhoid, pneumonia, and tuberculosis. Nearly twice as many soldiers died of illnesses as died in combat.

Prisoners of War

Military prisoners on both sides lived in unimaginable misery. In prison camps, such as Andersonville, Georgia, and Elmira, New York, soldiers were packed into camps designed to hold only a fraction of their number. Soldiers had little shelter, food, or clothing. Starvation and disease killed thousands of prisoners.

LINKING TO TODAY

Battlefield Communications

The drummer was an essential member of every Civil War unit. Drummers served army commanders by drumming specific beats that directed troop movements during battle. Different beats were used to order troops to prepare to attack, to fire, to cease fire, and to signal a truce. Drummers had to stay near their commanders to hear orders. This meant that the drummers—some as young as nine years old—often saw deadly combat conditions.

The Civil War gave birth to the Signal Corps, the army unit devoted to communications. Today battlefield communications are primarily electronic. Radio, e-mail, facsimile, and telephone messages, often relayed by satellites, enable orders and other information to be transmitted nearly instantaneously all over the globe.

Union Signal Corps



Modern battlefield communications



ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**
Why is communication so important on the battlefield?

Life as a Civilian

The war effort involved all levels of society. Women as well as people too young or too old for military service worked in factories and on farms. Economy in the North boomed as production and prices soared. The lack of workers caused wages to rise by 43 percent between 1860 and 1865.

THE IMPACT TODAY

The American Red Cross today supplies victims of natural disasters with relief aid.

Women were the backbone of civilian life. On the farms, women and children performed the daily chores usually done by men. One visitor to Iowa in 1862 reported that he "met more women . . . at work in the fields than men." Southern women also managed farms and plantations.

One woman brought strength and comfort to countless wounded Union soldiers. Volunteer **Clara Barton** organized the collection of medicine and supplies for delivery to the battlefield. At the field hospitals, the "angel of the battlefield" soothed the wounded and dying and assisted doctors as bullets flew around her. Barton's work formed the basis for the future American Red Cross.



Clara Barton
founded the American Red Cross.

In the South, Sally Louisa Tompkins established a small hospital in Richmond, Virginia. By the end of the war, it had grown into a major army hospital. Jefferson Davis recognized her value to the war effort by making her a captain in the Confederate army.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did women help the war effort on both sides?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW Many lives were changed by the war. In the next section you will learn about the end of the war.

Section 4 Assessment

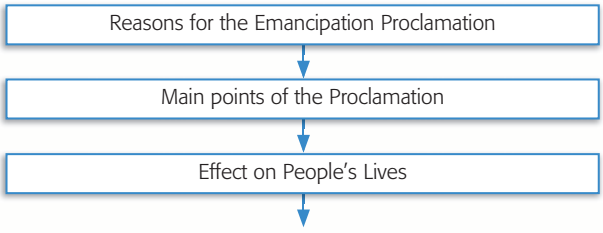
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP16

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Recall** Why did some Americans want to end slavery?
   b. Contrast How did reactions to the **Emancipation Proclamation** differ?
   c. Elaborate Do you think that the **emancipation** of slaves should have extended to the border states? Explain your answer.
2. **a. Recall** Why did some northerners want to recruit African Americans into the Union army?
   b. Contrast In what ways did African American soldiers face more difficulties than white soldiers did?
3. **a. Identify** Who were **Copperheads**, and why did they oppose the war?
   b. Evaluate Should President Lincoln have suspended the right to **habeas corpus**? Why?
4. **a. Describe** What were conditions like in military camps?
   b. Draw Conclusions How did the war change life on the home front?

Critical Thinking

5. **Identifying Effects** Review your notes. Then copy the graphic organizer below. Use it to summarize the reasons for the Emancipation Proclamation, its main points, and its effects on different people.



FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Taking Notes on Life During the War** As you read this section, take notes on the emancipation of the slaves, African American soldiers, and women who provided medical care for soldiers. Answer the following questions: Who? Where? When? Why? and How?

BIOGRAPHY

Abraham Lincoln

What would you do to save the struggling Union?

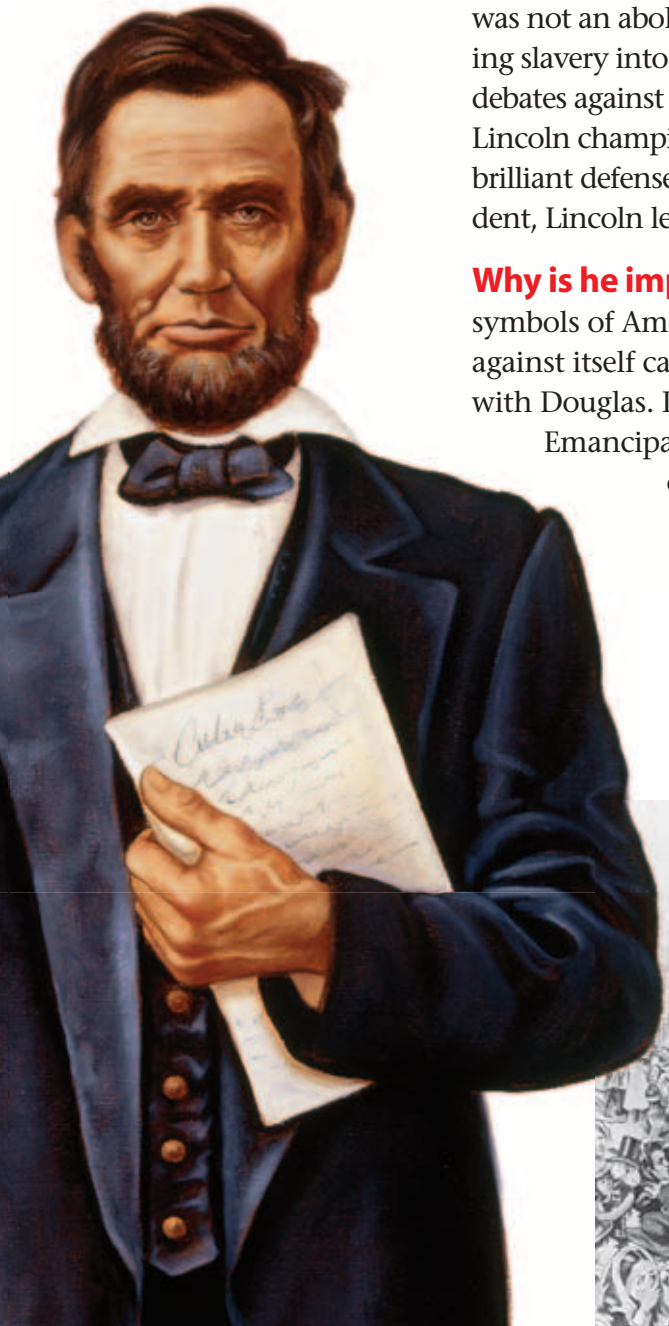
When did he live? 1809–1865

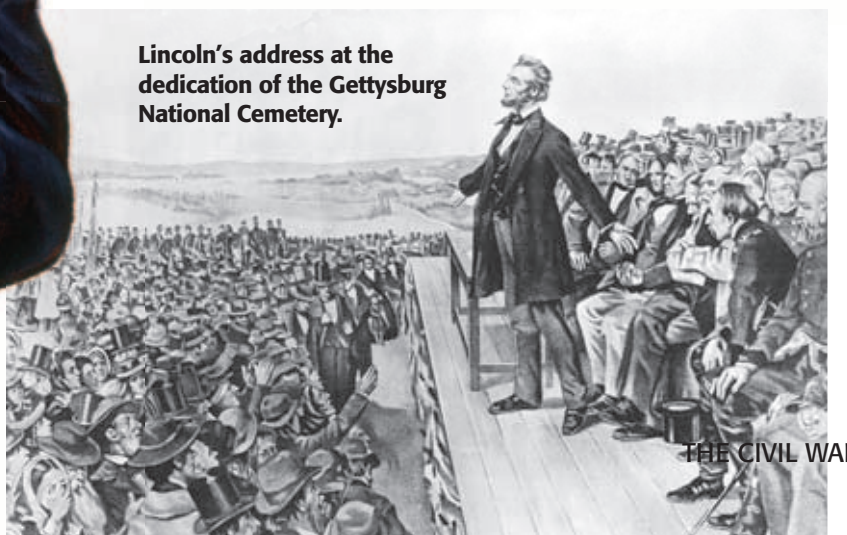
Where did he live? Abraham Lincoln was born in a log cabin to a poor family in Kentucky. Growing up in Kentucky and Illinois, Lincoln went to school for less than a year. He taught himself law and settled in Springfield, where he practiced law and politics. As president he lived in Washington, D.C. There, at age 56, his life was cut short by an assassin, John Wilkes Booth.

What did he do? The issue of slavery defined Lincoln's political career. He was not an abolitionist, but he strongly opposed extending slavery into the territories. In a series of famous debates against Senator Stephen Douglas of Illinois, Lincoln championed his views on slavery and made a brilliant defense of democracy and the Union. As president, Lincoln led the nation through the Civil War.

Why is he important? Lincoln is one of the great symbols of American democracy. "A house divided against itself cannot stand," he declared in a debate with Douglas. In 1863 Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation. His address to commemorate the bloody battlefield at Gettysburg is widely considered to be one of the best political speeches in American history.

Summarizing Why is Lincoln such an important figure in American history?





Lincoln's address at the dedication of the Gettysburg National Cemetery.

KEY EVENTS

- **1834** Elected to the Illinois legislature
- **1842** Marries Mary Todd
- **1858** Holds series of famous debates with U.S. Senator Stephen Douglas
- **1860** Elected president on November 6
- **1863** Issues the Emancipation Proclamation on January 1
- **1863** Gives the Gettysburg Address on November 19
- **1865** Gives second inaugural address on March 4
- **1865** Shot on April 14; dies the next day

SECTION 5

The Tide of War Turns

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. The Union tried to divide the Confederate Army at Fredericksburg, but the attempt failed.
2. The Battle of Gettysburg in 1863 was a major turning point in the war.
3. During 1864, Union campaigns in the East and South dealt crippling blows to the Confederacy.
4. Union troops forced the South to surrender in 1865, ending the Civil War.

The Big Idea

Union victories in 1863, 1864, and 1865 ended the Civil War.

Key Terms and People

Battle of Gettysburg, *p. 537*
George Pickett, *p. 539*
Pickett's Charge, *p. 539*
Gettysburg Address, *p. 540*
Wilderness Campaign, *p. 540*
William Tecumseh Sherman, *p. 541*
total war, *p. 542*
Appomattox Courthouse, *p. 542*

TAKING NOTES Copy the graphic organizer. Use it to recall the events that led to the end of the Civil War.

- July 1–3, 1863
- May–June, 1864
- September 2, 1864
- December 10, 1864
- April 2, 1865
- April 9, 1865

If YOU were there...

You live in southern Pennsylvania in 1863, near a battlefield where thousands died. Now people have come from miles around to dedicate a cemetery here. You are near the front of the crowd. The first speaker impresses everyone with two hours of dramatic words and gestures. Then President Lincoln speaks—just a few minutes of simple words. Many people are disappointed.

Why do you think the president's speech was so short?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Many people, especially in the North, had expected a quick victory, but the war dragged on for years. The balance of victories seemed to seesaw between North and South, and both sides suffered terrible casualties. The last Confederate push into the North ended at Gettysburg in one of the bloodiest battles of the war.

Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville

Frustrated by McClellan's lack of aggression, Lincoln replaced him with General Ambrose E. Burnside as leader of the Army of the Potomac. Burnside favored a swift, decisive attack on Richmond by way of Fredericksburg. In November 1862, he set out with 120,000 troops.

Burnside's tactics surprised General Lee. The Confederate commander had divided his force of 78,000 men. Neither section of the Confederate army was in a good position to defend Fredericksburg. However, Burnside's army experienced delays in crossing the Rappahannock River. These delays allowed Lee's army to reunite and entrench themselves around Fredericksburg. Finally, the Union army crossed the Rappahannock and launched a series of charges. These attacks had heavy casualties and failed to break the Confederate line. Eventually, after suffering about 12,600 casualties, Burnside ordered a retreat. The Confederates had about 5,300 casualties.

Soon Burnside stepped down from his position. Lincoln made General Joseph Hooker the commander of the Army of the Potomac. At the end of April 1863, Hooker and his army of about 138,000 men launched a frontal attack on Fredericksburg. Then Hooker

ordered about 115,000 of his troops to split off and approach the Confederate's flank, or side. Hooker's strategy seemed about to work. But for some reason he hesitated and had his flanking troops take a defensive position at Chancellorsville. This town was located a few miles west of Fredericksburg.

The following day, Lee used most of his army (about 60,000 men) to attack Hooker's troops at Chancellorsville. Stonewall Jackson led an attack on Hooker's flank while Lee commanded an assault on the Union front. The Union army was almost cut in two. They managed to form a defensive line, which they held for three days. Then Hooker ordered a retreat.

Lee's army won a major victory. But this victory had severe casualties. During the battle, Lee's trusted general, Stonewall Jackson, was accidentally shot by his own troops. He died a few days later.

READING CHECK **Comparing** What did generals McClellan, Burnside, and Hooker have in common?

Battle of Gettysburg

General Lee launched more attacks within Union territory. As before, his goal was to break the North's will to fight. He also hoped that a victory would convince other nations to recognize the Confederacy.

First Day

In early June 1863, Lee cut across northern Maryland into southern Pennsylvania. His forces gathered west of a small town called Gettysburg. Lee was unaware that Union soldiers were encamped closer to town. He had been suffering from lack of enemy information for three days because his cavalry chief "Jeb" Stuart was not performing his duties. Stuart and his cavalry had gone off on their own raiding party, disobeying Lee's orders.

Another Confederate raiding party went to Gettysburg for boots and other supplies. There, Lee's troops ran right into Union general George G. Meade's cavalry, triggering the **Battle of Gettysburg**, a key battle that finally turned the tide against the Confederates. The battle began on July 1, 1863, when the

Three Days at Gettysburg

Gettysburg was the largest and bloodiest battle of the Civil War. In three days, more than 51,000 soldiers were killed, wounded, captured, or went missing. It was an important victory for the Union, and it stopped Lee's plan of invading the North.



Artillery played a key role in the Battle of Gettysburg on July 1, 1863.

Day One: July 1, 1863

Confederate raiding party and the Union forces began exchanging fire. The larger Confederate forces began to push the Union troops back through Gettysburg.

The Union soldiers regrouped along the high ground of Cemetery Ridge and Culp's Hill. General Lee wanted to prevent the Union forces from entrenching themselves. He therefore ordered General Ewell to attack immediately. However, Ewell hesitated and thereby gave the Federals time to establish an excellent defensive position.

In fact, Confederate General James Longstreet thought that the Union position was almost impossible to overrun. Instead of attacking, he felt that the Confederate army should move east, take a strong defensive position themselves, and wait for the Union forces to attack them. However, General Lee was not convinced. He believed that his troops were invincible.

The Confederates camped at Seminary Ridge, which ran parallel to the Union forces. Both camps called for their main forces to reinforce them and prepare for combat the next day.

Second Day

On July 2, Lee ordered an attack on the left side of the Union line. Lee knew that he could win the battle if his troops captured Little Round Top from the Union forces. From this hill, Lee's troops could easily fire down on the line of Union forces. Union forces and Confederate troops fought viciously for control of Little Round Top. The fighting was particularly fierce on the south side of the hill. There the 20th Maine led by Colonel Joshua Chamberlain battled the 15th Alabama led by Colonel William Oates. Later, when describing the conflict, Oates said, "The blood stood in puddles in some places in the rocks." Eventually, the Union forced the Confederates to pull back from Little Round Top.

Then the Confederates attacked Cemetery Hill and Culp's Hill. The fighting lasted until nightfall. The assault on Cemetery Hill was unsuccessful. The Confederates did manage to take a few trenches on Culp's Hill. Even so, the Union forces still held a strong defensive position by the day's end.

Three Days at Gettysburg (continued)



Union soldiers desperately defended Little Round Top from a fierce Confederate charge.

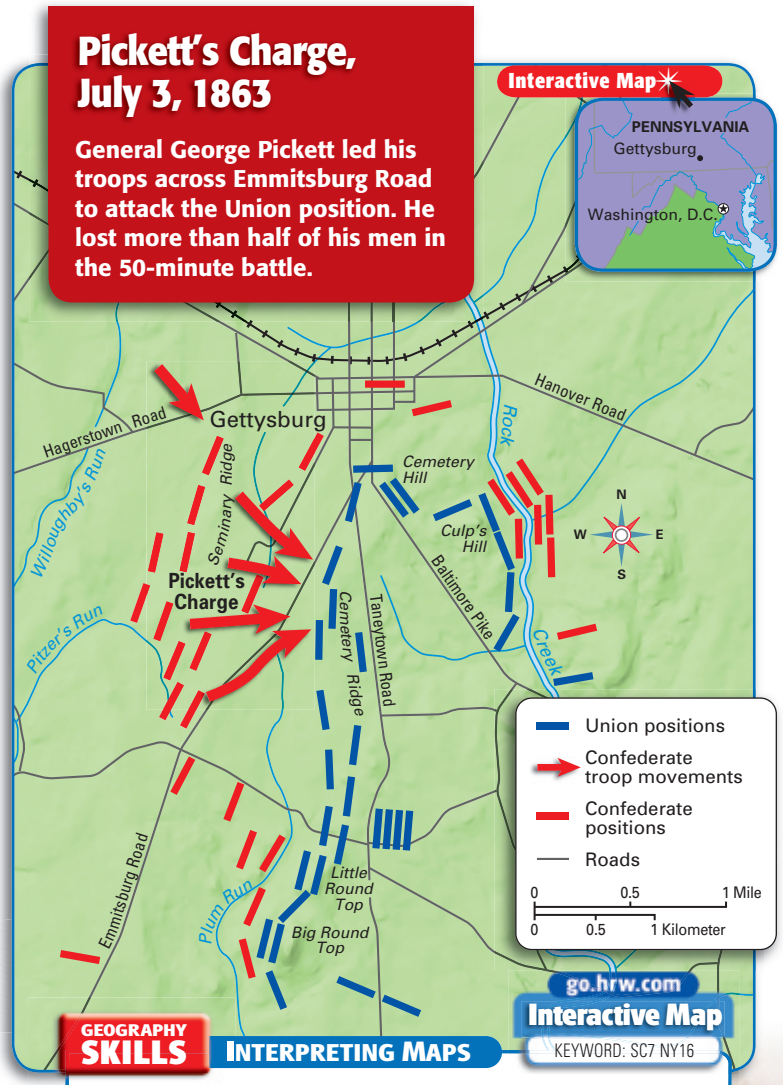
Day Two: July 2, 1863, 10 a.m.

Pickett's Charge

On the third day of battle, Longstreet again tried to convince Lee not to attack. But Lee thought that the Union forces were severely battered and ready to break. Because of this, he planned to attack the center of the Union line on Cemetery Ridge. Such a tactic, he felt, would not be expected. Indeed, General Meade left only about 5,750 troops to defend the center.

For over an hour, the Confederates shelled Cemetery Ridge with cannon fire. For a while, the Union cannons fired back. Then they slacked off. The Confederates assumed that they had seriously damaged the Union artillery. In reality, the Confederate barrage did little damage.

The task of charging the Union center fell to three divisions of Confederate soldiers. General **George Pickett** commanded the largest unit. In late afternoon, nearly 15,000 men took part in **Pickett's Charge**. For one mile, the Confederates marched slowly up toward Cemetery Ridge. Showered with cannon and rifle fire, they suffered severe losses. But eventually, some of them almost reached their destination. Then Union reinforcements added to the barrage on the rebels. Soon the



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Human-Environment Interaction** How do you think geography affected Pickett's Charge?
2. **Movement** In which direction did Pickett's soldiers charge?



Pickett's Charge

Pickett's Charge proved a disaster for the Confederate attackers. Fewer than half of them survived.

Day Three: July 3, 1863, 3 p.m.

Confederates retreated, leaving about 7,500 casualties on the field of battle. Distressed by this defeat, General Lee rode among the survivors and told them, "It is all my fault."

On the fourth day, Lee began to retreat to Virginia. In all, nearly 75,000 Confederate soldiers and 90,000 Union troops had fought during the Battle of Gettysburg.

FOCUS ON READING

The first sentence of the paragraph to the right is a main idea. The rest of this paragraph supports the idea.

General Meade decided not to follow Lee's army. This decision angered Lincoln. He felt that Meade had missed an opportunity to crush the Confederates and possibly end the war.

Aftermath of Gettysburg

Gettysburg was a turning point in the war. Lee's troops would never again launch an attack in the North. The Union victory at Gettysburg took place on the day before Grant's capture of Vicksburg, Mississippi. These victories made northerners believe that the war could be won.

In addition, the Union win at Gettysburg helped to end the South's search for foreign influence in the war. After Gettysburg, Great Britain and France refused to provide aid to the Confederacy. The South's attempt at cotton diplomacy failed.

The Gettysburg Address

On November 19, 1863, at the dedicating ceremony of the Gettysburg battlefield cemetery, President Lincoln gave a speech called the **Gettysburg Address**, in which he praised the bravery of Union soldiers and renewed his commitment to winning the Civil War. This short but moving speech is one of the most famous in American history. In one of its frequently quoted lines, Lincoln referenced the Declaration of Independence and its ideals of liberty, equality, and democracy. He reminded listeners that the war was being fought for those reasons.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY

execute to perform, carry out

Lincoln rededicated himself to winning the war and preserving the Union. A difficult road still lay ahead.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** Why was Gettysburg a turning point?

Union Campaigns Cripple the Confederacy

Lincoln had been impressed with General Grant's successes in capturing Vicksburg. He transferred Grant to the East and gave him command of the Union army. In early 1864, Grant forced Lee to fight a series of battles in Virginia that stretched Confederate soldiers and supplies to their limits.

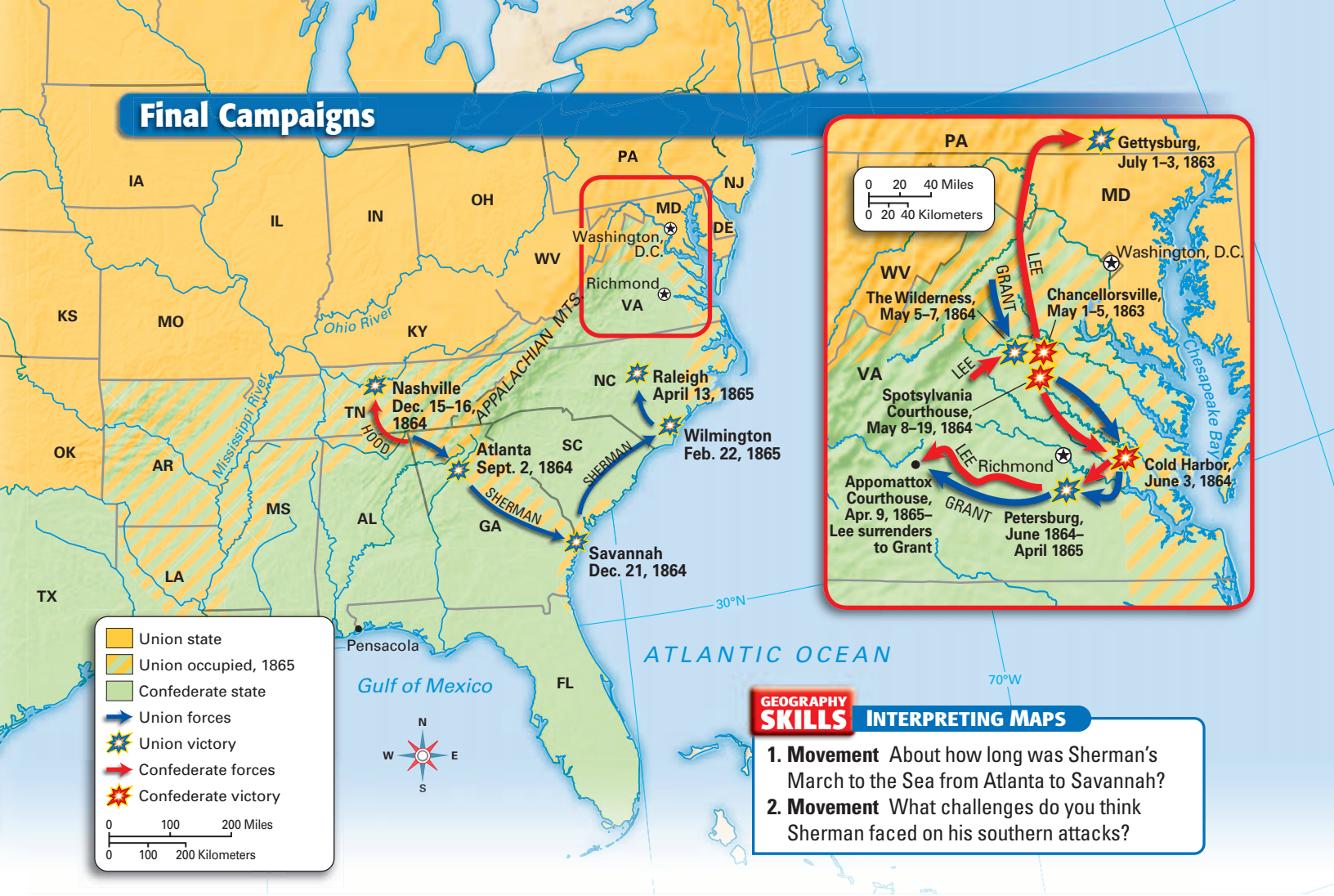
Wilderness Campaign in the East

From May through June, the armies fought in northern and central Virginia. Union troops launched the **Wilderness Campaign**—a series of battles designed to capture the Confederate capital at Richmond, Virginia. The first battle took place in early May, in woods about 50 miles outside of Richmond. Grant then ordered General Meade to Spotsylvania, where the fighting raged for five days.

Over the next month, Union soldiers moved the Confederate troops back toward Richmond. However, Grant experienced his worst defeat at the Battle of Cold Harbor in early June, just 10 miles northeast of Richmond. In only a few hours the Union army suffered 7,000 casualties. The battle delayed Grant's plans to take the Confederate capital.

Union forces had suffered twice as many casualties as the Confederates had, yet Grant continued his strategy. He knew he would be getting additional soldiers, and Lee could not. Grant slowly but surely advanced his troops through Virginia. He told another officer, "I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer."

After Cold Harbor, General Grant moved south of Richmond. He had hoped to take control of the key railroad junction at Petersburg, Virginia. Lee's army, however, formed a solid defense, and Grant could not **execute** his attack. Grant was winning the war, but he still had not captured Richmond. Facing re-election, Lincoln was especially discouraged by this failure.



GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Movement** About how long was Sherman's March to the Sea from Atlanta to Savannah?
2. **Movement** What challenges do you think Sherman faced on his southern attacks?

Sherman Strikes the South

Lincoln needed a victory for the Union army to help him win re-election in 1864. The bold campaign of General **William Tecumseh Sherman** provided this key victory. Sherman carried out the Union plan to destroy southern railroads and industries.

In the spring of 1864, Sherman marched south from Tennessee with 100,000 troops. His goal was to take Atlanta, Georgia, and knock out an important railroad link. From May through August, Sherman's army moved steadily through the Appalachian Mountains toward Atlanta. Several times, Sherman avoided defenses set up by Confederate general Joseph Johnston.

In July, Sherman was within sight of Atlanta. Confederate president Jefferson Davis gave General John Hood command of Confederate forces in the region. Hood repeatedly attacked Sherman in a final attempt to save Atlanta, but the Union troops proved stronger. The Confederate troops retreated as Sherman held Atlanta under siege.

Atlanta fell to Sherman's troops on September 2, 1864. Much of the city was destroyed by artillery and fire. Sherman ordered the residents who still remained to leave. Responding to his critics, Sherman later wrote, "War is war, and not popularity-seeking." The loss of Atlanta cost the South an important railroad link and its center of industry.

Many people in the North had been upset with the length of the war. However, the capture of Atlanta showed that progress was being made in defeating the South. This success helped to convince Union voters to re-elect Lincoln in a landslide.

Sherman did not wait long to begin his next campaign. His goal was the port city of Savannah, Georgia. In mid-November 1864,

Sherman left Atlanta with a force of about 60,000 men. He said he would "make Georgia howl!"

During his March to the Sea, Sherman practiced **total war**—destroying civilian and economic resources. Sherman believed that total war would ruin the South's economy and its ability to fight. He ordered his troops to destroy railways, bridges, crops, livestock, and other resources. They burned plantations and freed slaves.

Sherman's army reached Savannah on December 10, 1864. They left behind a path of destruction 60 miles wide. Sherman believed that this march would speed the end of the war. He wanted to break the South's will to fight by marching Union troops through the heart of the Confederacy. In the end, Sherman's destruction of the South led to anger and resentment toward the people of the North that would last for generations.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions**

How did Sherman hope to help the Union with his total-war strategy?

Causes and Effects of the Civil War

QUICK FACTS

Causes

- Disagreement over the institution of slavery
- Economic differences
- Political differences

Effects

- Slavery ends
- 620,000 Americans killed
- Military districts created
- Southern economy in ruins

ANALYSIS SKILL **INTERPRETING CHARTS**

How important was slavery to the Civil War?

The South Surrenders

In early April, Sherman closed in on the last Confederate defenders in North Carolina. At the same time, Grant finally broke through the Confederate defenses at Petersburg. On April 2, Lee was forced to retreat from Richmond.

Fighting Ends

By the second week of April 1865, Grant had surrounded Lee's army and demanded the soldiers' surrender. Lee hoped to join other Confederates in fighting in North Carolina, but Grant cut off his escape just west of Richmond. Lee tried some last minute attacks but could not break the Union line. Lee's forces were running low on supplies. General James Longstreet told about the condition of Confederate troops. "Many weary soldiers were picked up . . . some with, many without, arms [weapons],—all asking for food."

Trapped by the Union army, Lee recognized that the situation was hopeless. "There is nothing left for me to do but go and see General Grant," Lee said, "and I would rather die a thousand deaths."

On April 9, 1865, the Union and Confederate leaders met at a home in the small town of **Appomattox Courthouse** where Lee surrendered to Grant, thus ending the Civil War.

During the meeting, Grant assured Lee that his troops would be fed and allowed to keep their horses, and they would not be tried for treason. Then Lee signed the surrender documents. The long, bloody war had finally ended. Grant later wrote that he found the scene at Appomattox Courthouse more tragic than joyful.

> "I felt . . . sad and depressed at the downfall of a foe [enemy] who had fought so long and valiantly [bravely], and had suffered so much for a cause, though that cause was, I believe, one of the worst for which a people ever fought."
>
> —Ulysses S. Grant, *Battle Cry of Freedom*



Surrender at Appomattox

Union general Grant rose to shake hands with Confederate general Lee after the surrender. Grant allowed Lee to keep his sword and Lee's men to keep their horses.

Was it important for Grant and Lee to shake hands? Why or why not?

As General Lee returned to his troops, General Grant stopped Union forces from cheering their victory. "The war is over," Grant said with relief. "The rebels are our countrymen again."

The Effects of the War

The Civil War had deep and long-lasting effects. Almost 620,000 Americans lost their lives during the four years of fighting.

The defeat of the South ended slavery there. The majority of former slaves, however, had no homes or jobs. The southern economy was in ruins.

A tremendous amount of hostility remained, even after the fighting had ceased. The war was over, but the question remained: How could the United States be united once more?

READING CHECK **Predicting** What problems might the Union face following the Civil War?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW After four long years of battles, the Civil War ended with General Lee's surrender at Appomattox Courthouse. In the next chapter you will read about the consequences of the war in the South.

Section 5 Assessment

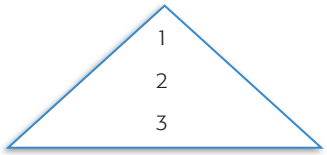
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP16

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Identify** What Confederate general died from his wounds at Chancellorsville?
   b. Draw Conclusions Why was the Union army defeated at Chancellorsville?
2. **a. Identify** What was the **Gettysburg Address**?
   b. Analyze Why was geography important to the outcome of the Battle of Gettysburg?
3. **a. Recall** What was the purpose of the **Wilderness Campaign**?
   b. Draw Conclusions In what way was the capture of Atlanta an important victory for President Lincoln?
4. **a. Identify** What events led to Lee's surrender at **Appomattox Courthouse**?
   b. Summarize What problems did the South face at the end of the war?

Critical Thinking

5. **Supporting a Point of View** Review your notes on the end of the Civil War. Then copy the graphic organizer below. Use it to show the three events in this section that you think contributed most to the end of the Civil War and explain why.



FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Taking Notes on the End of the War** As you read this section, take notes on the Battle of Gettysburg, the Wilderness Campaign, the fall of Atlanta, and the South's surrender. Be sure to answer the following questions: Who? Where? When? Why? and How?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Interpreting Political Cartoons

Define the Skill

Political cartoons are drawings that express views on important issues. They have been used throughout history to influence public opinion. The ability to interpret political cartoons will help you understand issues and people's attitudes about them.

Learn the Skill

Political cartoons use both words and images to convey their message. They often contain caricatures or symbolism. A caricature is a drawing that exaggerates the features of a person or object. Symbolism is the use of one thing to represent something else. Cartoonists use these techniques to help make their point clear. They also use titles, labels, and captions to get their message across.

Use these steps to interpret political cartoons.

1. Read any title, labels, and caption to identify the cartoon's general topic.
2. Identify the people and objects. Determine if they are exaggerated and, if so, why. Identify any symbols and analyze their meaning.
3. Draw conclusions about the message the cartoonist is trying to convey.

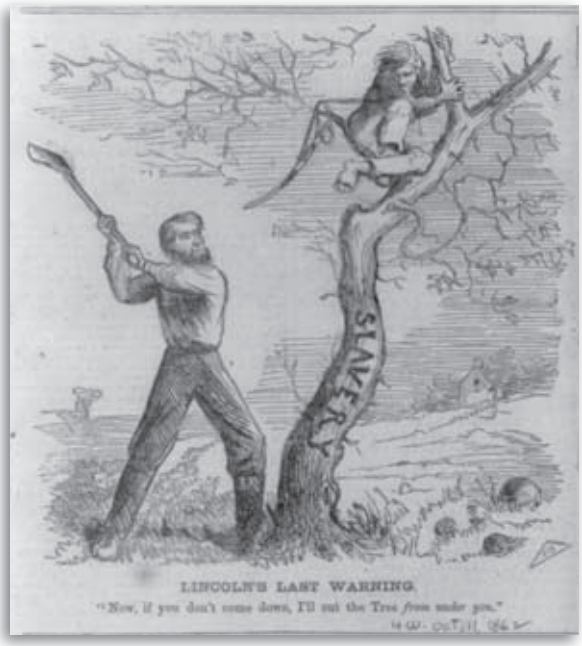
The following cartoon was published in the North in 1863. The cartoonist has used symbols to make his point. Lady Liberty, representing the Union, is being threatened by the Copperheads. The cartoonist has expressed his opinion of these people by drawing them as the poisonous snake for which they were named. This cartoon clearly supports the Union's continuing to fight the war.



Practice the Skill

Apply the guidelines to interpret the cartoon below and answer the questions that follow.

1. What do the tree and the man in it symbolize?
2. What policy or action of President Lincoln is this cartoon supporting?



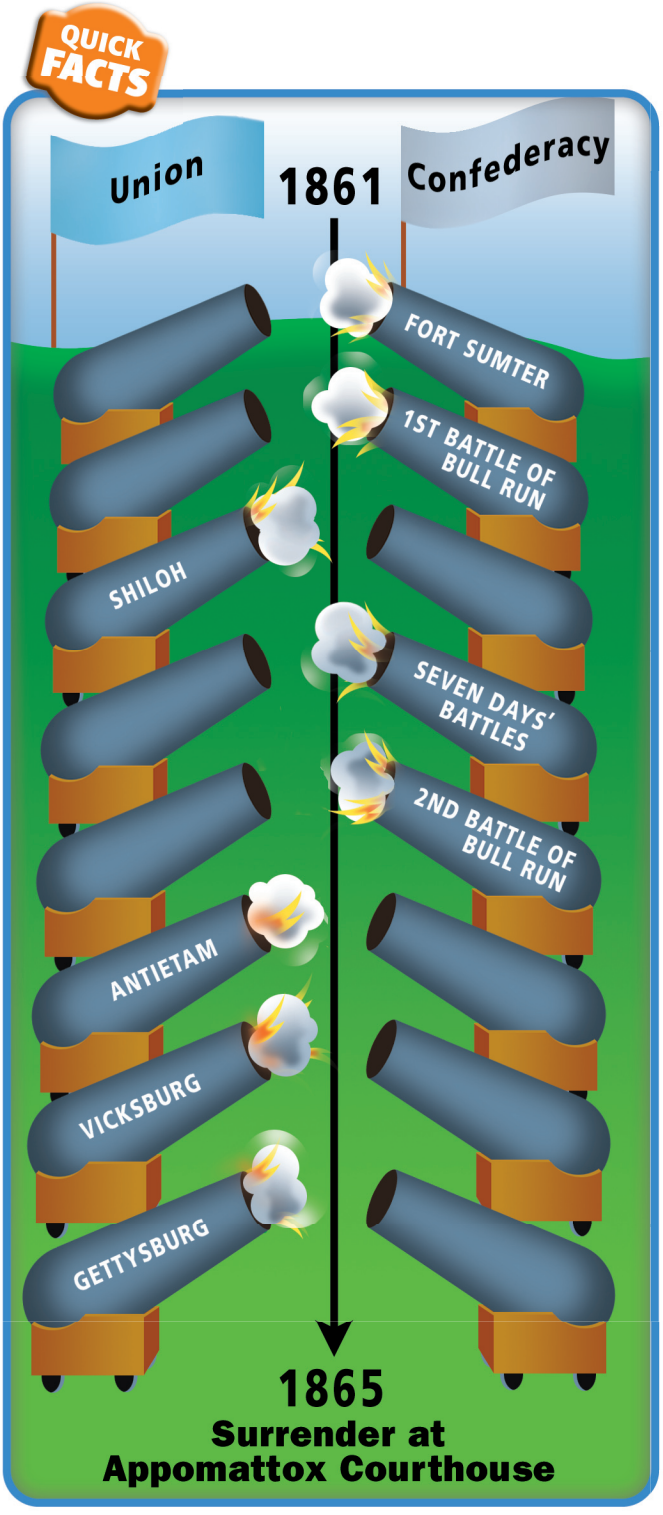
CHAPTER 16

Chapter Review

HOLT
History's Impact
▶ **video series**
Review the video to answer the closing question:
How do you think the age of a country relates to its citizens' national pride?

Visual Summary

Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Match the numbered definitions with the correct terms from the list below.

a. contrabands
b. cotton diplomacy
c. Second Battle of Bull Run
d. Siege of Vicksburg
e. Thomas "Stonewall" Jackson

1. Attack by Union general Ulysses S. Grant that gave the North control of the Mississippi River
2. Confederate general who held off Union attacks and helped the South win the First Battle of Bull Run
3. Important Confederate victory in which General Robert E. Lee defeated Union troops and pushed into Union territory for the first time
4. Southern strategy of using cotton exports to gain Britain's support in the Civil War
5. Term given to escaped slaves from the South

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 510–515)*

6. **a. Identify** When and where did fighting in the U.S. Civil War begin?

   b. Analyze How did civilians help the war effort in both the North and the South?

   c. Elaborate Why do you think the border states chose to remain in the Union despite their support of slavery?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 516–521)*

7. **a. Identify** What was the first major battle of the war? What was the outcome of the battle?

   b. Analyze What was the Union army hoping to accomplish when it marched into Virginia at the start of the war?

   c. Evaluate Was the Union's naval blockade of the South successful? Why or why not?

SECTION 3 *(Pages 522–525)*

8. a. Identify Which side did the Cherokee support in the fighting at Pea Ridge? Why?

b. Draw Conclusions What progress did Union leaders make in the war in the West?

c. Evaluate Which victory in the West was most valuable to the Union? Why?

SECTION 4 *(Pages 528–534)*

9. a. Describe What responsibilities did women take on during the war?

b. Analyze What opposition to the war did President Lincoln face? How did he deal with that opposition?

c. Predict What might be some possible problems that the newly freed slaves in the South might face?

SECTION 5 *(Pages 536–543)*

10. a. Recall When and where did the war finally end?

b. Compare and Contrast How were the efforts of Generals Grant and Sherman at the end of the war similar and different?

c. Elaborate What do you think led to the South's defeat in the Civil War? Explain.

Social Studies Skills

Interpreting Political Cartoons *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the political cartoon below.*



11. What do you think the artist is saying about the politicians in this cartoon?

Reading Skills

Supporting Facts and Details *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> Lee was unaware that Union soldiers were encamped closer to town. He had been suffering from lack of enemy information for three days because his cavalry chief "Jeb" Stuart was not performing his duties. Stuart and his cavalry had gone off on their own raiding party, disobeying Lee's orders. *(p. 537)*

12. What is the main idea of the above reading selection?

a. "Jeb" Stuart was not performing his duties.

b. Stuart and his cavalry had gone off on their own.

c. Stuart and his cavalry disobeyed Lee's orders.

d. Lee was suffering from a lack of enemy information.

Reviewing Themes

13. Society and Culture What effects did the Civil War have on American society?

14. Politics What political difficulties did the Emancipation Proclamation cause for President Lincoln?

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY16

15. Activity: Writing a Poem Soldiers in the Civil War came from all walks of life. Despite the hope for glory and adventure, many encountered dangerous and uncomfortable conditions. Enter the activity keyword to learn more about Civil War soldiers. After viewing photographs and reading letters, write a poem describing the life of a soldier. Your poem should reflect on the soldier's emotions and experiences.

FOCUS ON WRITING

16. Write Your Newspaper Article Review your notes. Then choose the subject you think would make the best newspaper article. Write an attention-grabbing headline. Then write your article, giving as many facts as possible.

CHAPTER 16

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Use the map below to answer the following question.**



The place where two major battles of the Civil War were fought is indicated on the map by which letter?

A W
B X
C Y
D Z

2 **The Battle of Gettysburg was an important battle of the Civil War because**

A it was an overwhelming Confederate victory.
B the Union army's advance on the Confederate capital was stopped.
C it ended Lee's hopes of advancing into northern territory.
D it enabled the Union to control the Mississippi River.

3 **Overall command of Confederate forces in Virginia during most of the Civil War was held by**

A Jefferson Davis.
B William Tecumseh Sherman.
C Thomas "Stonewall" Jackson.
D Robert E. Lee.

4 **Which of Lincoln's speeches and writings reflected the statement that "all men are created equal"?**

A the Emancipation Proclamation
B the first inaugural address (1861)
C the second inaugural address (1865)
D the Gettysburg Address

5 **The tactics that Sherman used against Confederate armies in the South were based on what strategy?**

A cutting off troops from their officers
B a naval blockade of southern ports
C destroying the South's resources and economy
D hit-and-run attacks on major southern cities

6 **In the War of 1812 the British navy blockaded American seaports in the hope that the U.S. economy would suffer and the United States would surrender. Which Civil War strategy was similar?**

A Scott's plan to destroy the southern economy
B Sherman's March to the Sea
C General Ulysses S. Grant's capture of Vicksburg
D Admiral David Farragut's defeat of New Orleans

7 **Read the following quote from Grant about Lee's surrender and use it to answer the question below.**

> "What General Lee's feelings were I do not know. He was a man of much dignity, without expression on his face. It was impossible to say whether he felt inwardly glad that the end had finally come, or felt sad over the result, and was too manly to show it. Whatever his feelings, they were entirely hidden from me."
>
> –Ulysses S. Grant, adapted from *Personal Memoirs of U.S. Grant, Vol. 2*

Document-Based Question **What is your opinion about what Lee might have been feeling during his surrender?**

CHAPTER 17 1865–1877

Reconstruction

Focus Question

How do issues of power, wealth, and morality influence war?

SECTION 1

Rebuilding the South 552

Focus on New York City Lincoln in State

SECTION 2

The Fight over Reconstruction 558

Primary Source Supporting Radical Republican Ideas

Primary Source Johnson vs. Stevens

Focus on New York *Gitlow* v. *New York*

Quick Facts The Reconstruction Amendments

SECTION 3

Reconstruction in the South 564

Supreme Court Decisions *Plessy* v. *Ferguson*

Quick Facts Hopes Raised and Denied

Focus on Writing

Job History When the Civil War ended, it was time to rebuild. People were ready to get back to work. But life had changed for many people and would continue to change. As you read this chapter, think about jobs people may have had during Reconstruction.





HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**
Watch the video to understand the impact of the preservation of the Union.

What You Will Learn...

The ruins of this Virginia plantation stand as a bleak reminder of the changes brought to the South by the Civil War. In this chapter you will learn about the challenges that faced the nation after the Civil War and attempts to meet those challenges.





1868
President Andrew Johnson is impeached and almost removed from office.

1870
Hiram Revels becomes the first African American to serve in the U.S. Senate.

1873
Jay Cooke and Company fails, an early step in the financial panic of 1877.

1877
The Compromise of 1877 ends Reconstruction.

1870 | 1875 | 1880

1868
The Meiji dynasty returns to power in Japan.

1869
The Suez Canal opens, linking the Mediterranean and Red seas.

1871
Otto von Bismarck and Wilhelm I unite Germany.





Reading Social Studies

by Kylene Beers

Economics | Geography | Politics | Society and Culture | Science and Technology

Focus on Themes In this chapter you will read about the time immediately after the Civil War. You will see how the government tried to rebuild the South and will learn about how life changed for African Americans after slavery was declared illegal. You will read about the **political** conflicts that emerged as southern leadership worked to gain control of Reconstruction efforts. Throughout the chapter, you will read how the **culture** of the South changed after the War.

Analyzing Historical Information

Focus on Reading History books are full of information. As you read, you are confronted with names, dates, places, terms, and descriptions on every page. You don't want to have to deal with anything unimportant or untrue.

Identifying Relevant and Essential Information Information in a history book should be relevant to the topic you're studying. It should also be essential to understanding the topic and be verifiable. Anything else distracts from the material you are studying.

The first passage below includes several pieces of irrelevant and nonessential information. In the second, this information has been removed. Note how much easier the revised passage is to comprehend.

First Passage

President Abraham Lincoln, who was very tall, wanted to reunite the nation as quickly and painlessly as possible. He had proposed a plan for readmitting the southern states even before the war ended, which happened on a Sunday. Called the Ten Percent Plan, it offered southerners amnesty, or official pardon, for all illegal acts supporting the rebellion. Today a group called Amnesty International works to protect the rights of prisoners. Lincoln's plan certainly would have worked if it would have been implemented.

Lincoln's appearance and the day on which the war ended are not essential facts.

Amnesty International is not relevant to this topic.

There is no way to prove the accuracy of the last sentence.

Revised Passage

President Abraham Lincoln wanted to reunite the nation as quickly and painlessly as possible. He had proposed a plan for readmitting the southern states even before the war ended. Called the Ten Percent Plan, it offered southerners amnesty, or official pardon, for all illegal acts supporting the rebellion.

From Chapter 17, p. 553

You Try It!

The following passage is adapted from the chapter you are about to read. As you read, look for irrelevant, nonessential, or unverifiable information.

The Freedmen's Bureau

In 1865 Congress established the Freedmen's Bureau, an agency providing relief for freedpeople and certain poor people in the South. The Bureau had a difficult job. It may have been one of the most difficult jobs ever. At its high point, about 900 agents served the entire South. All 900 people could fit into one hotel ballroom today. Bureau commissioner Oliver O. Howard eventually decided to use the Bureau's limited budget to distribute food to the poor and to provide education and legal help for freedpeople. One common food in the South at that time was salted meat. The Bureau also helped African American war veterans. Today the Department of Veterans' Affairs assists American war veterans.

From Chapter 17, p. 556

After you read the passage, answer the following questions.

1. Which sentence in this passage is unverifiable and should be cut?
2. Find two sentences in this passage that are irrelevant to the discussion of the Freedmen's Bureau. What makes those sentences irrelevant?
3. Look at the last sentence of the passage. Do you think this sentence is essential to the discussion? Why or why not?

As you read Chapter 17, ask yourself what makes the information you are reading essential to a study of Reconstruction.

Key Terms and People

Chapter 17

Section 1

Reconstruction *(p. 552)*
Ten Percent Plan *(p. 553)*
Thirteenth Amendment *(p. 554)*
Freedmen's Bureau *(p. 556)*
Andrew Johnson *(p. 557)*

Section 2

Black Codes *(p. 558)*
Radical Republicans *(p. 559)*
Civil Rights Act of 1866 *(p. 560)*
Fourteenth Amendment *(p. 561)*
Reconstruction Acts *(p. 561)*
impeachment *(p. 562)*
Fifteenth Amendment *(p. 563)*

Section 3

Hiram Revels *(p. 565)*
Ku Klux Klan *(p. 566)*
Compromise of 1877 *(p. 567)*
poll tax *(p. 568)*
segregation *(p. 568)*
Jim Crow laws *(p. 568)*
Plessy v. *Ferguson* *(p. 569)*
sharecropping *(p. 569)*

Academic Vocabulary

Success in school is related to knowing academic vocabulary—the words that are frequently used in school assignments and discussions. In this chapter, you will learn the following academic words:

procedure *(p. 553)*
principle *(p. 560)*

SECTION 1

Rebuilding the South

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. President Lincoln and Congress differed in their views as Reconstruction began.
2. The end of the Civil War meant freedom for African Americans in the South.
3. President Johnson's plan began the process of Reconstruction.

The Big Idea

The nation faced many problems in rebuilding the Union.

Key Terms and People

Reconstruction, *p. 552*
Ten Percent Plan, *p. 553*
Thirteenth Amendment, *p. 554*
Freedmen's Bureau, *p. 556*
Andrew Johnson, *p. 557*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on the different ways the U.S. government attempted to reconstruct the south after the Civil War. Write your notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.

Rebuilding and Reconstruction
1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

If YOU were there...

You are a young soldier who has been fighting in the Civil War for many months. Now that the war is over, you are on your way home. During your journey, you pass plantation manor homes, houses, and barns that have been burned down. No one is doing spring planting in the fields. As you near your family's farm, you see that fences and sheds have been destroyed. You wonder what is left of your home and family.

What would you think your future on the farm would be like?

BUILDING BACKGROUND When the Civil War ended, much of the South lay in ruins. Like the young soldier above, many people returned to destroyed homes and farms. Harvests of corn, cotton, rice, and other crops fell far below normal. Many farm animals had been killed or were roaming free. These were some of the challenges in restoring the nation.

Reconstruction Begins

After the Civil War ended in 1865, the U.S. government faced the problem of dealing with the defeated southern states. The challenges of **Reconstruction**, the process of readmitting the former Confederate states to the Union, lasted from 1865 to 1877.



Damaged South

Tired southern soldiers returned home to find that the world they had known before the war was gone. Cities, towns, and farms had been ruined. Because of high food prices and widespread crop failures, many southerners faced starvation. The Confederate money held by most southerners was now worthless. Banks failed, and merchants had gone bankrupt because people could not pay their debts.

Former Confederate general Braxton Bragg was one of many southerners who faced economic hardship. He found that "*all, all* was lost, except my debts." In South Carolina, Mary Boykin Chesnut wrote in her diary about the isolation she experienced after the war. "We are shut in here . . . All RR's [railroads] destroyed—bridges gone. We are cut off from the world."

Lincoln's Plan

President Abraham Lincoln wanted to reunite the nation as quickly and painlessly as possible. He had proposed a plan for readmitting the southern states even before the war ended. Called the **Ten Percent Plan**, it offered southerners amnesty, or official pardon, for all illegal acts supporting the rebellion. To receive amnesty, southerners had to do two things. They had to swear an oath of loyalty to the United States. They also had to agree that slavery was illegal. Once 10 percent of voters in a state made these pledges, they could form a new government. The state then could be readmitted to the Union.

Louisiana quickly elected a new state legislature under the Ten Percent Plan. Other southern states that had been occupied by Union troops soon followed Louisiana back into the United States.

Wade-Davis Bill

Some politicians argued that Congress, not the president, should control the southern states' return to the Union. They believed that Congress had the power to admit new states. Also, many Republican members of Congress thought the Ten Percent Plan did not go far enough. A senator from Michigan expressed their views.

> "The people of the North are not such fools as to … turn around and say to the traitors, 'all you have to do [to return] is … take an oath that henceforth you will be true to the Government.'"
>
> –Senator Jacob Howard, quoted in *Reconstruction: America's Unfinished Revolution, 1863–1877,* by Eric Foner

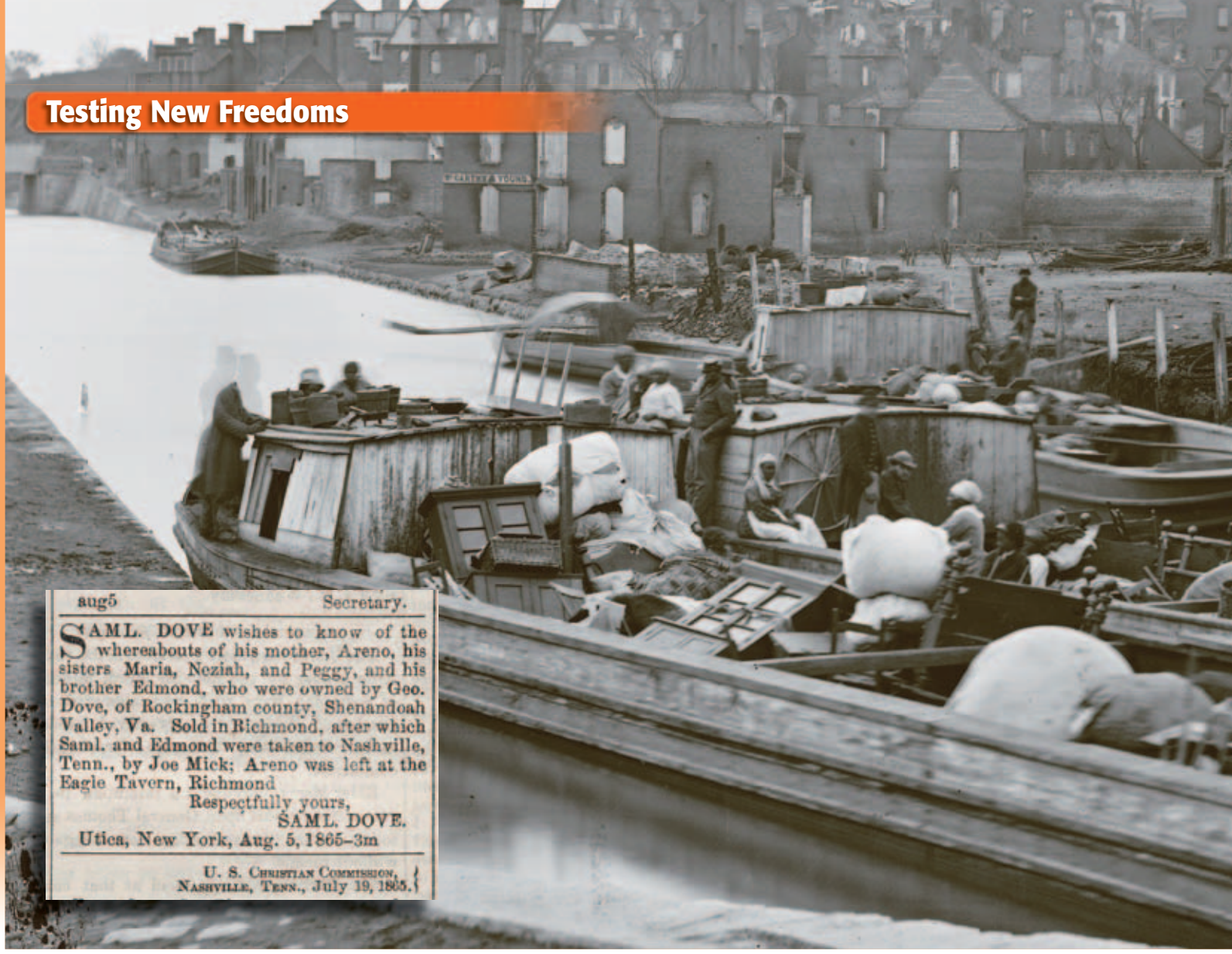
Two Republicans—Senator Benjamin Wade and Representative Henry Davis—had an alternative to Lincoln's plan. Following **procedures** of the Wade-Davis bill, a state had to meet two conditions before it could rejoin the Union. First, it had to ban slavery. Second, a majority of adult males in the state had to take the loyalty oath.

Academic Vocabulary

procedure a series of steps taken to accomplish a task



War destroyed Richmond, Virginia, once the capital of the Confederacy.



aug5 Secretary.

SAML. DOVE wishes to know of the whereabouts of his mother, Areno, his sisters Maria, Neziah, and Peggy, and his brother Edmond, who were owned by Geo. Dove, of Rockingham county, Shenandoah Valley, Va. Sold in Richmond, after which Saml. and Edmond were taken to Nashville, Tenn., by Joe Mick; Areno was left at the Eagle Tavern, Richmond

Respectfully yours,
SAML. DOVE.

Utica, New York, Aug. 5, 1865–3m

U. S. Christian Commission,
Nashville, Tenn., July 19, 1865.

Under the Wade-Davis bill, only southerners who swore that they had never supported the Confederacy could vote or hold office. In general, the bill was much stricter than the Ten Percent Plan. Its provisions would make it harder for southern states to rejoin the Union quickly.

President Lincoln therefore refused to sign the bill into law. He thought that few southern states would agree to meet its requirements. He believed that his plan would help restore order more quickly.

READING CHECK **Contrasting** How was the Ten Percent Plan different from the Wade-Davis bill?

Freedom for African Americans

One thing Republicans agreed on was abolishing slavery. The Emancipation Proclamation had freed slaves only in areas that had not been occupied by Union forces, not in the border states. Many people feared that the federal courts might someday declare the proclamation unconstitutional.

Slavery Ends

On January 31, 1865, at President Lincoln's urging, Congress proposed the **Thirteenth Amendment**. This amendment made slavery illegal throughout the United States.





The freedpeople at left have packed their household belongings and are leaving Richmond. Many people traveled in search of relatives. Others placed newspaper advertisements looking for long-lost relatives. For other freedpeople, like the couple above, freedom brought the right to marry.

In what ways did former slaves react to freedom?

The amendment was ratified and took effect on December 18, 1865. When abolitionist William Lloyd Garrison heard the news, he declared that his work was now finished. He called for the American Anti-Slavery Society to break up. Not all abolitionists agreed that their work was done, however. Frederick Douglass insisted that "slavery is not abolished until the black man has the ballot [vote]."

Freedom brought important changes to newly freed slaves. Many couples held ceremonies to legalize marriages that had not been recognized under slavery. Many freedpeople searched for relatives who had been sold away from their families years earlier. Others placed newspaper ads seeking information about their children. Many women began to work at home instead of in the fields. Still others adopted children of dead relatives to keep families together. Church members established voluntary associations and mutual-aid societies to help those in need.

Now that they could travel without a pass, many freedpeople moved from mostly white counties to places with more African Americans. Other freedpeople traveled simply to test their new freedom of movement. A South Carolina woman explained this need. "I must go, if I stay here I'll never know I'm free."

For most former slaves, freedom to travel was just the first step on a long road toward equal rights and new ways of life. Adults took new last names and began to insist on being called Mr. or Mrs. as a sign of respect, rather than by their first names or by nicknames. Freedpeople began to demand the same economic and political rights as white citizens. Henry Adams, a former slave, argued that "if I cannot do like a white man I am not free."

Forty Acres to Farm?

Many former slaves wanted their own land to farm. Near the end of the Civil War, Union general William Tecumseh Sherman had issued an order to break up plantations in coastal South Carolina and Georgia. He wanted to divide the land into 40-acre plots and give them to former slaves as compensation for their forced labor before the war.

Many white planters refused to surrender their land. Some freedpeople pointed out that it was only fair that they receive some of this land because their labor had made the plantations prosper. In the end, the U.S. government returned the land to its original owners. At this time, many freedpeople were unsure about where they would live, what kind of work they would do, and what rights they had. Freedoms that were theirs by law were difficult to enforce.

Freedmen's Bureau

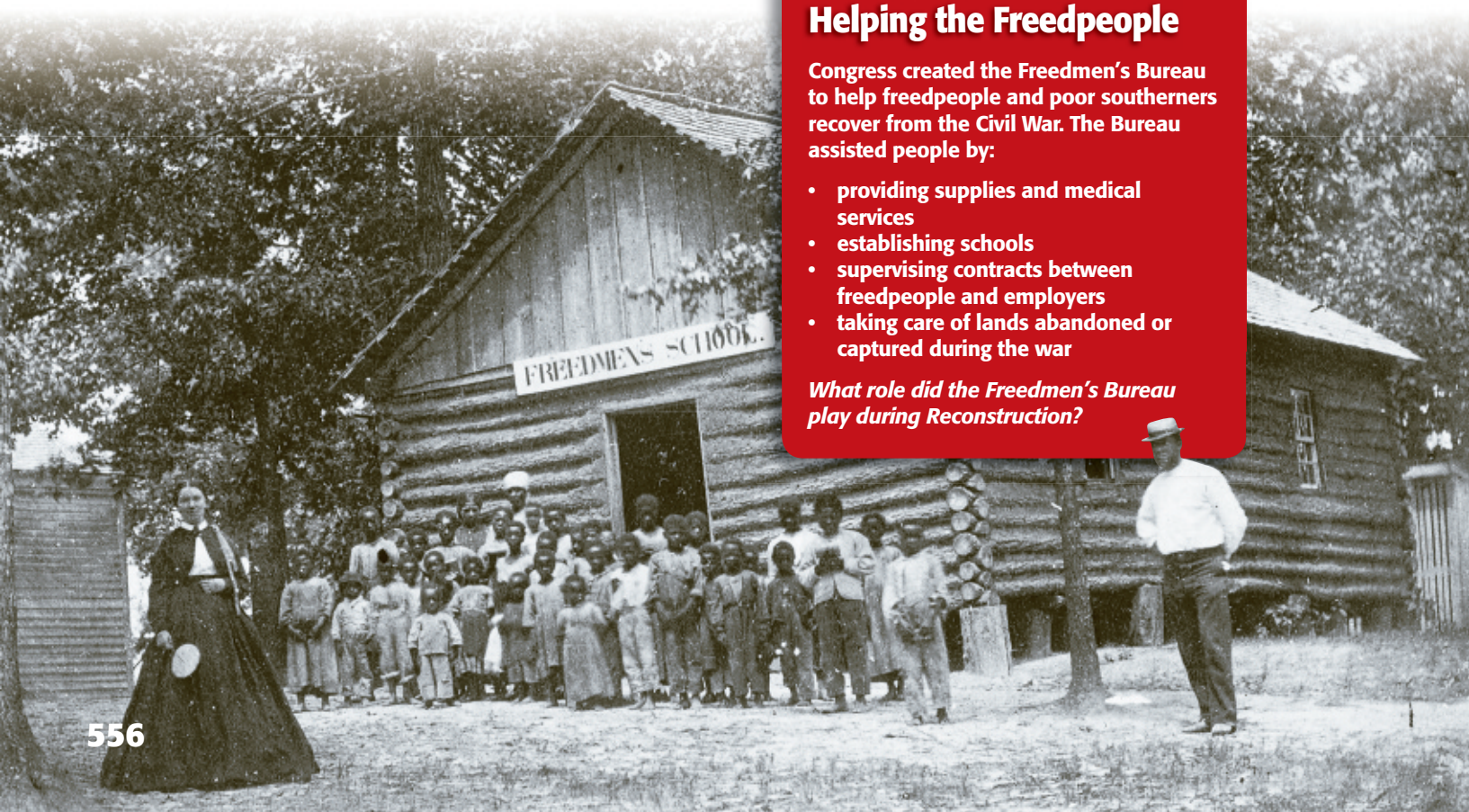
In 1865 Congress established the **Freedmen's Bureau**, an agency providing relief for freedpeople and certain poor people in the South. The Bureau had a difficult job. At its high point, about 900 agents served the entire South. Bureau commissioner Oliver O. Howard eventually decided to use the Bureau's limited budget to distribute food to the poor and to provide education and legal help for freedpeople. The Bureau also helped African American war veterans.

The Freedmen's Bureau played an important role in establishing more schools in the South. Laws against educating slaves meant that most freedpeople had never learned to read or write. Before the war ended, however, northern groups, such as the American Missionary Association, began providing books and teachers to African Americans. The teachers were mostly women who were committed to helping freedpeople. One teacher said of her students, "I never before saw children so eager to learn . . . It is wonderful how [they] . . . can have so great a desire for knowledge, and such a capacity for attaining [reaching] it."

After the war, some freedpeople organized their own education efforts. For example, Freedmen's Bureau agents found that some African Americans had opened schools in abandoned buildings. Many white southerners continued to believe that African Americans should not be educated. Despite opposition, by 1869 more than 150,000 African American students were attending more than 3,000 schools. The Freedmen's Bureau also helped establish a number of universities for African Americans, including Howard and Fisk universities.

Students quickly filled the new classrooms. Working adults attended classes in the evening. African Americans hoped that education would help them to understand and protect their rights and to enable them to find better jobs. Both black and white southerners benefited from the effort to provide greater access to education in the South.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** How did the Freedmen's Bureau help reform education in the South?



Helping the Freedpeople

Congress created the Freedmen's Bureau to help freedpeople and poor southerners recover from the Civil War. The Bureau assisted people by:

- **providing supplies and medical services**
- **establishing schools**
- **supervising contracts between freedpeople and employers**
- **taking care of lands abandoned or captured during the war**

What role did the Freedmen's Bureau play during Reconstruction?

President Johnson's Reconstruction Plan

While the Freedmen's Bureau was helping African Americans, the issue of how the South would politically rejoin the Union remained unresolved. Soon, however, a tragic event ended Lincoln's dream of peacefully reuniting the country.

A New President

On the evening of April 14, 1865, President Lincoln and his wife attended a play at Ford's Theater in Washington, D.C. During the play, John Wilkes Booth, a southerner who opposed Lincoln's policies, sneaked into the president's theater box and shot him. Lincoln was rushed to a boardinghouse across the street, where he died early the next morning. Vice President **Andrew Johnson** was sworn into office quickly. Reconstruction had now become his responsibility. He would have to win the trust of a nation shocked at its leader's death.

Johnson's plan for bringing southern states back into the Union was similar to Lincoln's plan. However, he decided that wealthy southerners and former Confederate officials would need a presidential pardon to receive amnesty. Johnson shocked Radical Republicans by eventually pardoning more than 7,000 people by 1866.

New State Governments

Johnson was a Democrat whom Republicans had put on the ticket in 1864 to appeal to the border states. A former slaveholder, he was a stubborn man who would soon face a hostile Congress.

Johnson offered a mild program for setting up new southern state governments. First, he appointed a temporary governor for each state. Then he required that the states revise their constitutions. Next, voters elected state and federal representatives. The new state government had to declare that secession was illegal. It also had to ratify the Thirteenth Amendment and refuse to pay Confederate debts.

By the end of 1865, all the southern states except Texas had created new governments. Johnson approved them all and declared that the United States was restored. Newly elected representatives came to Washington from each reconstructed southern state. However, Republicans complained that many new representatives had been leaders of the Confederacy. Congress therefore refused to readmit the southern states into the Union. Clearly, the nation was still divided.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What was President Johnson's plan for Reconstruction?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned about early plans for Reconstruction. In the next section, you will learn that disagreements about Reconstruction became so serious that the president was almost removed from office.

FOCUS ON NEW YORK CITY

Lincoln's coffin was placed aboard a "funeral train" after lying in state at the White House. When the coffin arrived in New York City, it was accompanied by a long procession. Thousands of people gathered in the streets to pay final respect to the man who had ended slavery and saved the Union. City officials tried to ban African Americans from marching in the procession, but the War Department intervened. Lincoln's body was then moved to Springfield, Illinois, where he was buried.

Section 1 Assessment

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP17

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a.** **Identify** What does **Reconstruction** mean?
   b. **Summarize** What was President Lincoln's plan for Reconstruction?
2. **a.** **Recall** What is the **Thirteenth Amendment**?
   b. **Elaborate** In your opinion, what was the most important accomplishment of the **Freedmen's Bureau**? Explain.
3. **a.** **Recall** Why was President Lincoln killed?
   b. **Analyze** Why did some Americans oppose President Johnson's Reconstruction plan?

Critical Thinking

4. **Summarizing** Review your notes on Reconstruction. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to show how African Americans were affected by the end of the war.



FOCUS ON WRITING

5. **Considering Historical Context** Many people planned to continue doing what they had done before the war. Others planned to start a new life. How do you think events and conditions you just read about might have affected their plans?

SECTION 2

The Fight over Reconstruction

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Black Codes led to opposition to President Johnson's plan for Reconstruction.
2. The Fourteenth Amendment ensured citizenship for African Americans.
3. Radical Republicans in Congress took charge of Reconstruction.
4. The Fifteenth Amendment gave African Americans the right to vote.

The Big Idea

The return to power of the pre-war southern leadership led Republicans in Congress to take control of Reconstruction.

Key Terms and People

Black Codes, *p. 558*
Radical Republicans, *p. 559*
Civil Rights Act of 1866, *p. 560*
Fourteenth Amendment, *p. 561*
Reconstruction Acts, *p. 561*
impeachment, *p. 562*
Fifteenth Amendment, *p. 563*

TAKING NOTES As you read, take notes on how Republicans in Congress took over Reconstruction and how they changed Reconstruction policies. Write your notes in a graphic organizer like the one below.

Issues that Concerned Republicans	Changes by the Republican Congress

If YOU were there...

A member of Congress, you belong to the same political party as the president. But you strongly disagree with his ideas about Reconstruction and civil rights for African Americans. Now some of the president's opponents are trying to remove him from office. You do not think he is a good president. On the other hand, you think removing him would be bad for the unity of the country.

Will you vote to remove the president?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Americans were bitterly divided about what should happen in the South during Reconstruction. They disagreed about ending racial inequality and guaranteeing civil rights for African Americans. These conflicts split political parties. They led to showdowns between Congress and the president. Political fights even threatened the president's job.

Opposition to President Johnson

In 1866 Congress continued to debate the rules for restoring the Union. Meanwhile, new state legislatures approved by President Johnson had already begun passing laws to deny African Americans' civil rights. "This is a white man's government, and intended for white men only," declared Governor Benjamin F. Perry of South Carolina.

Black Codes

Soon, every southern state passed **Black Codes**, or laws that greatly limited the freedom of African Americans. They required African Americans to sign work contracts, creating working conditions similar to those under slavery. In most southern states, any African Americans who could not prove they were employed could be arrested. Their punishment might be one year of work without pay. African Americans were also prevented from owning guns. In addition, they were not allowed to rent property except in cities.

The Black Codes alarmed many Americans. As one Civil War veteran asked, "If you call this freedom, what do you call slavery?"

African Americans organized to oppose the codes. One group sent a petition to officials in South Carolina.

> "We simply ask . . . that the same laws which govern *white men* shall govern *black men* . . . that, in short, we be dealt with as others are—in equity [equality] and justice."
>
> —Petition from an African American convention held in South Carolina, quoted in *There Is a River: The Black Struggle for Freedom in America* by Vincent Harding

Radical Republicans

The Black Codes angered many Republicans. They thought the South was returning to its old policy of states' rights. Most Republicans were moderates who wanted the South to have loyal state governments. They also believed that African Americans should have rights as citizens. They hoped that the government would not have to force the South to follow federal laws.

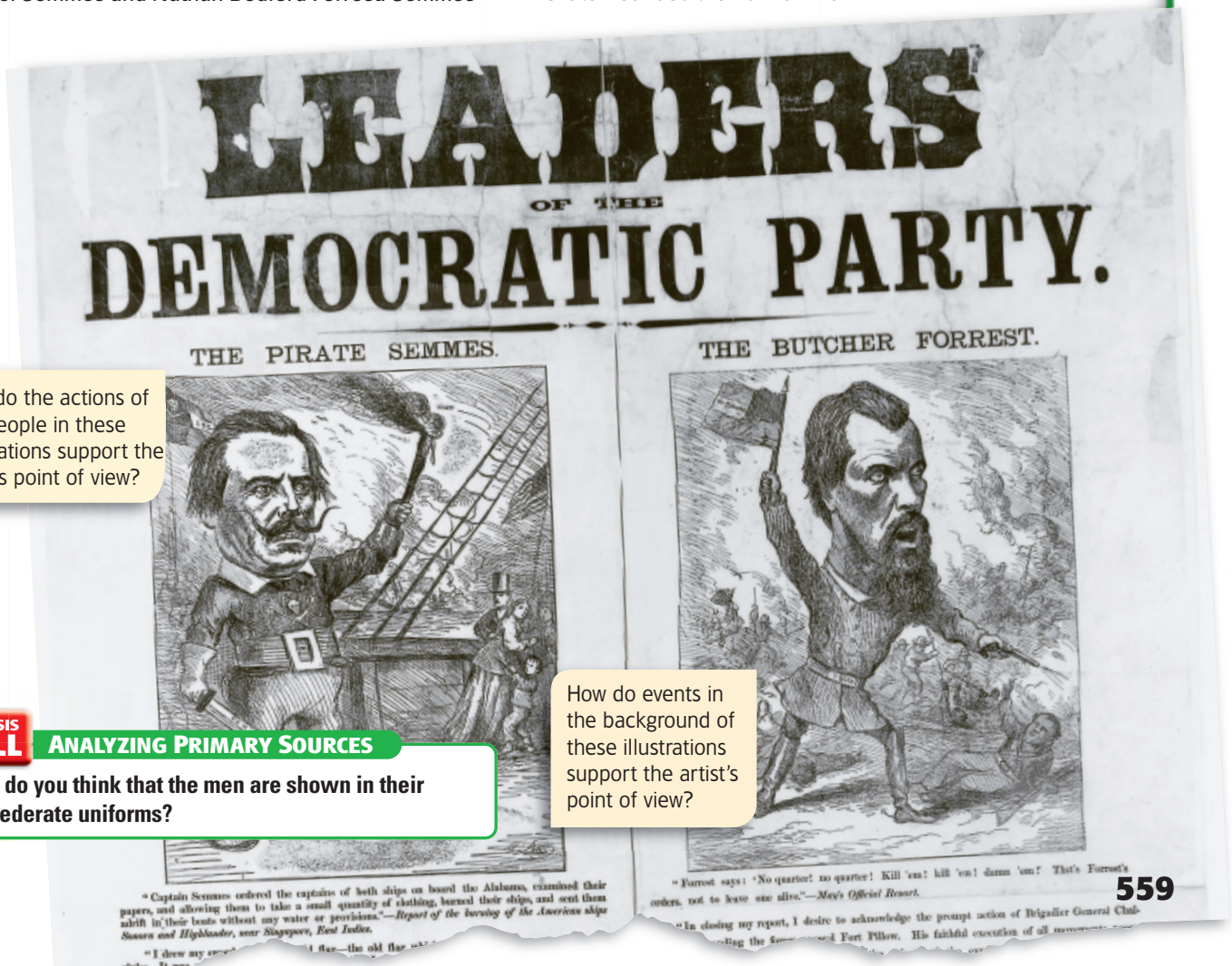
Radical Republicans, on the other hand, took a harsher stance. They wanted the federal government to force change in the South. Like the moderates, they thought the Black Codes were cruel and unjust. The Radicals, however, wanted the federal government to be much more involved in Reconstruction. They feared that too many southern leaders remained loyal to the former Confederacy and would not enforce the new laws. Thaddeus Stevens

Primary Source

POLITICAL CARTOON

Supporting Radical Republican Ideas

Republicans were outraged to see former Confederates return to power as leaders of the Democratic Party. This 1868 political cartoon shows former Confederates Raphael Semmes and Nathan Bedford Forrest. Semmes was a Confederate admiral who had captured 62 Union merchant ships during the Civil War. Forrest was a cavalry officer known for brutality who later founded the Ku Klux Klan.



How do the actions of the people in these illustrations support the artist's point of view?

How do events in the background of these illustrations support the artist's point of view?

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING PRIMARY SOURCES**

Why do you think that the men are shown in their Confederate uniforms?

Primary Source

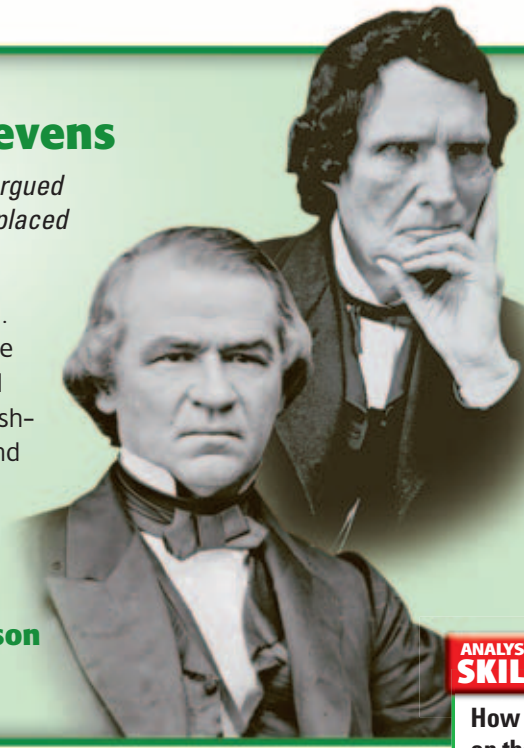
POINTS OF VIEW

Johnson vs. Stevens

President Andrew Johnson argued that the South should not be placed under military control.

"Military governments . . . established for an indefinite period, would have divided the people into the vanquishers and the vanquished, and would have envenomed [made poisonous] hatred rather than have restored affection."

—Andrew Johnson



Thaddeus Stevens believed that Congress had the power to treat the South as conquered territory.

"The future condition of the conquered power depends on the will of the conqueror. They must come in as new states or remain as conquered provinces. Congress . . . is the only power that can act in the matter."

—Thaddeus Stevens

ANALYSIS SKILL **IDENTIFYING POINTS OF VIEW**

How did Johnson's and Stevens's views on the South differ?

of Pennsylvania and Charles Sumner of Massachusetts were the leaders of the Radical Republicans.

A harsh critic of President Johnson, Stevens was known for his honesty and sharp tongue. He wanted economic and political justice for both African Americans and poor white southerners. Sumner had been a strong opponent of slavery before the Civil War. He continued to argue tirelessly for African Americans' civil rights, including the right to vote and the right to fair laws.

Both Stevens and Sumner believed that President Johnson's Reconstruction plan was a failure. Although the Radicals did not control Congress, they began to gain support among moderates when President Johnson ignored criticism of the Black Codes. Stevens believed the federal government could not allow racial inequality to survive.

ACADEMIC VOCABULARY
principle basic belief, rule, or law

READING CHECK **Comparing and Contrasting**
How were Radical Republicans and moderate Republicans similar and different?

Fourteenth Amendment

Urged on by the Radicals in 1866, Congress proposed a new bill. It would give the Freedmen's Bureau more powers. The law would allow the Freedmen's Bureau to use military courts to try people accused of violating African Americans' rights. The bill's supporters hoped that these courts would be fairer than local courts in the South.

Johnson versus Congress

Surprising many members of Congress, Johnson vetoed the Freedmen's Bureau Bill. He insisted that Congress could not pass any new laws until the southern states were represented in Congress. Johnson also argued that the Freedmen's Bureau was unconstitutional.

Republicans responded with the **Civil Rights Act of 1866**. This act provided African Americans with the same legal rights as white Americans. President Johnson once again used his veto power. He argued that the act gave too much power to the federal government. He also rejected the **principle** of equal

rights for African Americans. Congress, however, overrode Johnson's veto.

Many Republicans worried about what would happen when the southern states were readmitted. Fearing that the Civil Rights Act might be overturned, the Republicans proposed the **Fourteenth Amendment** in the summer of 1866. The Fourteenth Amendment included the following provisions.

1. It defined all people born or naturalized within the United States, except Native Americans, as citizens.
2. It guaranteed citizens the equal protection of the laws.
3. It said that states could not "deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law."
4. It banned many former Confederate officials from holding state or federal offices.
5. It made state laws subject to federal court review.
6. It gave Congress the power to pass any laws needed to enforce it.

1866 Elections

President Johnson and most Democrats opposed the Fourteenth Amendment. As a result, civil rights for African Americans became a key issue in the 1866 congressional elections. To help the Democrats, Johnson traveled around the country defending his Reconstruction plan. Johnson's speaking tour was a disaster. It did little to win votes for the Democratic Party. Johnson even got into arguments with people in the audiences of some of his speaking engagements.

Two major riots in the South also hurt Johnson's campaign. On May 1, 1866, a dispute in Memphis, Tennessee, took place between local police and black Union soldiers. The dispute turned into a three-day wave of violence against African Americans. About three months later, another riot took place during a political demonstration in New Orleans. During that dispute, 34 African Americans and three white Republicans were killed.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What issue did the Fourteenth Amendment address? How did it affect the congressional elections of 1866?

Congress Takes Control of Reconstruction

The 1866 elections gave the Republican Party a commanding two-thirds majority in both the House and the Senate. This majority gave the Republicans the power to override any presidential veto. In addition, the Republicans became united as the moderates joined with the Radicals. Together, they called for a new form of Reconstruction.

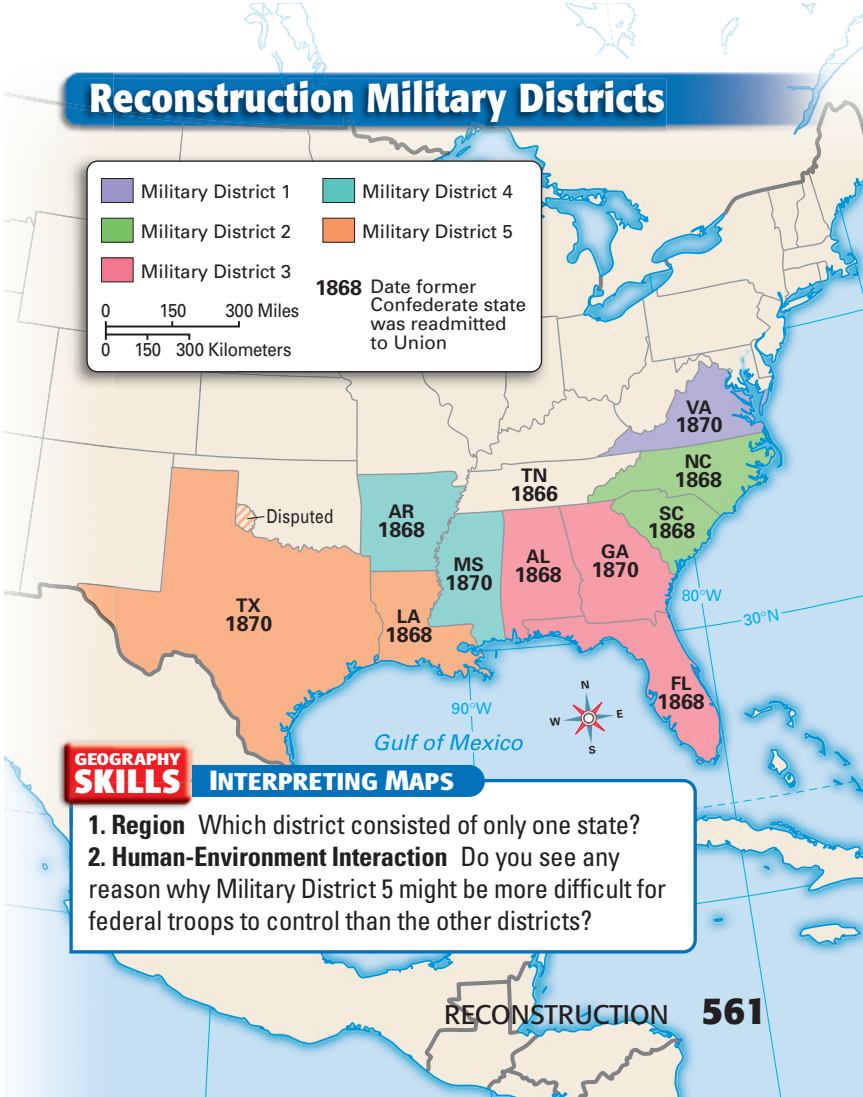
Reconstruction Acts

In March 1867, Congress passed the first of several **Reconstruction Acts**. These laws divided the South into five districts. A U.S. military commander controlled each district.



FOCUS ON NEW YORK

The Fourteenth Amendment was an important element in a landmark 1925 court case *Gitlow* v. *New York*. The Supreme Court ruled that a citizen's freedom of speech and freedom of the press are protected from state actions by the Fourteenth Amendment.



The military would remain in control of the South until the southern states rejoined the Union. To be readmitted, a state had to write a new state constitution supporting the Fourteenth Amendment. Finally, the state had to give African American men the right to vote.

Thaddeus Stevens was one of the new Reconstruction Acts' most enthusiastic supporters. He spoke in Congress to defend the acts.

> "Have not loyal blacks quite as good a right to choose rulers and make laws as rebel whites? Every man, no matter what his race or color . . . has an equal right to justice, honesty, and fair play with every other man; and the law should secure him those rights."
>
> –Thaddeus Stevens, quoted in *Sources of the American Republic*, edited by Marvin Meyers et al.

President on Trial

President Johnson strongly disagreed with Stevens. He argued that African Americans did not deserve the same treatment as white people. The Reconstruction Acts, he said, used "powers not granted to the federal government or any one of its branches." Knowing that Johnson did not support its Reconstruction policies, Congress passed a law limiting his power. This law prevented the president from removing cabinet officials without Senate approval. Johnson quickly broke the law by firing Edwin Stanton, the secretary of war.

For the first time in United States history, the House of Representatives responded by voting to impeach the president. **Impeachment** is the process used by a legislative body to bring charges of wrongdoing against a public official. The next step, under Article I of the Constitution, was a trial in the Senate. A two-thirds majority was required to find Johnson guilty and remove him from office.

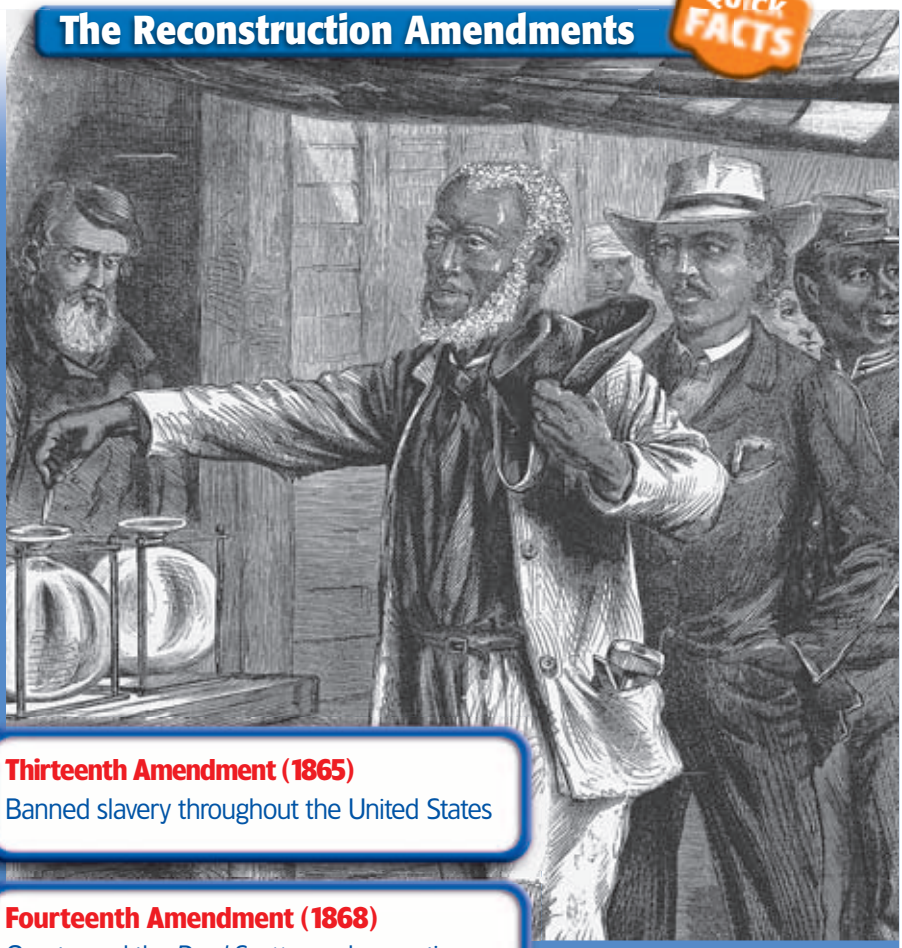
Although Johnson was unpopular with Republicans, some of them believed he was being judged unfairly. Others did not trust the president pro tempore of the Senate, Benjamin Wade. He would become president if Johnson were removed from office. By a single vote, Senate Republicans failed to convict Johnson. Even so, the trial weakened his power as president.

Election of 1868

Johnson did not run for another term in 1868. The Democrats chose

The Reconstruction Amendments

QUICK FACTS



Thirteenth Amendment (1865)
Banned slavery throughout the United States

Fourteenth Amendment (1868)
Overturned the *Dred Scott* case by granting citizenship to all people born in the United States (except for Native Americans)

Fifteenth Amendment (1870)
Gave African American men the right to vote

This Reconstruction-era painting shows African American men voting after passage of the Fifteenth Amendment.

What right did the Fifteenth Amendment protect?

former New York governor Horatio Seymour as their presidential candidate. The Republicans chose Ulysses S. Grant. As a war hero, Grant appealed to many northern voters. He had no political experience but supported the congressional Reconstruction plan. He ran under the slogan "Let Us Have Peace."

Shortly after Grant was nominated, Congress readmitted seven southern states—Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, North Carolina, and South Carolina. (Tennessee had already been readmitted in 1866.) Under the terms of readmission, these seven states approved the Fourteenth Amendment. They also agreed to let African American men vote. However, white southerners used violence to try to keep African Americans away from the polls.

Despite such tactics, hundreds of thousands of African Americans voted for Grant and the "party of Lincoln." The *New Orleans Tribune* reported that many former slaves "see clearly enough that the Republican party [is] their political life boat." African American votes helped Grant to win a narrow victory.

READING CHECK **Analyzing** To what voters did Grant appeal in the presidential election of 1868?

Fifteenth Amendment

After Grant's victory, Congressional Republicans wanted to protect their Reconstruction plan. They worried that the southern states might try to keep black voters from the polls in future elections. Also, some Radical Republicans argued that it was not fair that many northern states still had laws preventing African Americans from voting. After all, every southern state was required to grant suffrage to African American men.

In 1869 Congress proposed the **Fifteenth Amendment**, which gave African American men the right to vote. Abolitionist William Lloyd Garrison praised what he saw as "this wonderful, quiet, sudden transformation of four millions of human beings from . . . the auction block to the ballot-box." The amendment went into effect in 1870 as one of the last Reconstruction laws passed at the federal level.

The Fifteenth Amendment did not please every reformer, however. Many women were angry because the amendment did not also grant them the right to vote.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** How did Radical Republicans take control of Reconstruction?

THE IMPACT TODAY

The Voting Rights Act of 1965 enforces and expands the voting protections of the Fifteenth Amendment.

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned that Congress took control of Reconstruction and took steps to protect the rights of African Americans. In the next section you will learn about increasing opposition to Reconstruction.

go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP17

Section 2 Assessment

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a. Describe** What were **Black Codes**?
   b. Make Inferences Why did Republicans think Johnson's Reconstruction plan was a failure?
2. **a. Recall** What was the **Civil Rights Act of 1866**?
   b. Summarize Why was the **Fourteenth Amendment** important?
3. **a. Recall** Why was President Johnson impeached?
   b. Evaluate Which element of the **Reconstruction Acts** do you believe was most important? Why?
4. **a. Recall** What does the **Fifteenth Amendment** state?
   b. Elaborate Do you think that women should have been included in the Fifteenth Amendment? Explain.

Critical Thinking

5. **Identify** Review your notes on the issues that led Republicans to take over Reconstruction. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to identify the main provisions of the Fourteenth Amendment and their effects.

Provisions	Effects

FOCUS ON WRITING

6. **Recognizing Cause-and-Effect Relationships** As you have read in this section, social and political unrest continued long after the war ended. How could this unrest cause people to leave their jobs? What new jobs might they find?

SECTION 3

Reconstruction in the South

What You Will Learn...

Main Ideas

1. Reconstruction governments helped reform the South.
2. The Ku Klux Klan was organized as African Americans moved into positions of power.
3. As Reconstruction ended, the rights of African Americans were restricted.
4. Southern business leaders relied on industry to rebuild the South.

The Big Idea

As Reconstruction ended, African Americans faced new hurdles and the South attempted to rebuild.

Key Terms and People

Hiram Revels, *p. 565*
Ku Klux Klan, *p. 566*
Compromise of 1877, *p. 567*
poll tax, *p. 568*
segregation, *p. 568*
Jim Crow laws, *p. 568*
Plessy v. *Ferguson*, *p. 569*
sharecropping, *p. 569*

TAKING NOTES As you read, look for information related to the South's efforts to rebuild and the effects on African Americans.

Rebuilding the South	→	Effects on African Americans

If YOU were there...

You live on a farm in the South in the 1870s. Times are hard because you do not own your farm. Instead, you and your family work in a landowner's cotton fields. You never seem to earn enough to buy land of your own. Some of your neighbors have decided to give up farming and move to the city. Others are going to work in the textile mills. But you have always been a farmer.

Will you decide to change your way of life?

BUILDING BACKGROUND Reconstruction affected politics and economics in the South. Republican and Democratic politicians fought over policies and programs. New state governments began reforms, but later leaders ended many of them. Some parts of the southern economy improved. However, many farmers, like the family above, went through hard times.

Reconstruction Governments

After Grant became president in 1869, the Republicans seemed stronger than ever. They controlled most southern governments, partly because of the support of African American voters. However, most of the Republican officeholders were unpopular with white southerners.

Carpetbaggers and Scalawags

Some of these office-holders were northern-born Republicans who had moved South after the war. Many white southerners called them carpetbaggers. Supposedly, they had rushed South carrying all their possessions in bags made from carpeting. Many southerners resented these northerners, accusing them—often unfairly—of trying to profit from Reconstruction.

Southern Democrats cared even less for white southern Republicans. They referred to them as scalawags, or greedy rascals. Democrats believed that these southerners had betrayed the South by

African American Representation in the South, 1870



Hiram Revels was the son of former slaves and helped organize African American regiments in the Civil War. Revels was selected to fill the U.S. Senate seat formerly held by Jefferson Davis, president of the Confederacy.



Blanche K. Bruce escaped from slavery and began a school for African Americans before the Civil War. Bruce was the first African American elected to a full six-year term in the U.S. Senate.

GEOGRAPHY SKILLS INTERPRETING MAPS

1. **Location** Which state had the most African American state legislators?
2. **Region** Which states had the least African American representation?

voting for the Republican Party. Many southern Republicans were small farmers who had supported the Union during the war. Others, like Mississippi governor James Alcorn, were former members of the Whig Party. They preferred to become Republicans rather than join the Democrats.

African American Leaders

African Americans were the largest group of southern Republican voters. During Reconstruction, more than 600 African Americans won election to state legislatures. Some 16 of these politicians were elected to Congress. Other African Americans held local offices in counties throughout the South.

African American politicians came from many backgrounds. **Hiram Revels** was born free in North Carolina and went to college in Illinois. He became a Methodist minister and served as a chaplain in the Union army. In 1870 Revels became the first African American in the U.S. Senate. He took over the seat previously held by Confederate president Jefferson Davis. Unlike Revels, Blanche K. Bruce grew up in slavery in Virginia. Bruce became an important Republican in Mississippi and served one term as a U.S. senator.

State Governments Change Direction

FOCUS ON READING
How does the heading of this section tell you about what you will learn?

Reconstruction governments provided money for many new programs and organizations in the South. They helped to establish some of the first state-funded public school systems in the South. They also built new hospitals, prisons, and orphanages and passed laws prohibiting discrimination against African Americans.

Southern states under Republican control spent large amounts of money. They aided the construction of railroads, bridges, and public buildings. These improvements were intended to help the southern economy recover from the war. To get the money for these projects, the Reconstruction governments raised taxes and issued bonds.

READING CHECK **Summarizing** What reforms did Reconstruction state governments carry out?

Ku Klux Klan

As more African Americans took office, resistance to Reconstruction increased among white southerners. Democrats claimed that the Reconstruction governments were corrupt, illegal, and unjust. They also disliked having federal soldiers stationed in their states. Many white southerners disapproved of African American officeholders. One Democrat noted, "'A white man's government' [is] the most popular rallying cry we have."

In 1866 a group of white southerners in Tennessee created the **Ku Klux Klan**. This secret society opposed civil rights, particularly suffrage, for African Americans. The Klan used violence and terror against African Americans. The group's membership grew rapidly as it spread throughout the South. Klan members wore robes and disguises to hide their identities. They attacked—and even murdered—African Americans, white Republican voters, and public officials, usually at night.

Local governments did little to stop the violence. Many officials feared the Klan or were sympathetic to its activities. In 1870 and 1871 the federal government took action. Congress passed laws that made it a federal crime to interfere with elections or to deny citizens equal protection under the law.

Within a few years, the Klan was no longer an organized threat. But groups of whites continued to assault African Americans and Republicans throughout the 1870s.

READING CHECK **Drawing Conclusions** Why did southerners join the Ku Klux Klan?

The Ku Klux Klan





Members of the Ku Klux Klan often attacked under cover of darkness to hide their identities. This klansman from Tennessee, shown on the left, even disguised his horse.

Why do you think Klan members disguised themselves?

Reconstruction Ends

The violence of the Ku Klux Klan was not the only challenge to Reconstruction. Republicans slowly lost control of southern state governments to the Democratic Party. The General Amnesty Act of 1872 allowed former Confederates, except those who had held high ranks, to serve in public office. Many of these former Confederates, most of whom were Democrats, were soon elected to southern governments.

The Republican Party also began losing its power in the North. Although President Grant was re-elected in 1872, financial and political scandals in his administration upset voters. In his first term, a gold-buying scheme in which Grant's cousin took a leading role led to a brief crisis on the stock market called Black Friday. During his second term, his personal secretary was involved in the Whiskey Ring scandal, in which whiskey distillers and public officials worked together to steal liquor taxes from the federal government. Furthermore, people blamed Republican policies for the Panic of 1873.

Panic of 1873

This severe economic downturn began in September 1873 when Jay Cooke and Company, a major investor in railroads and the largest financier of the Union's Civil War effort, declared bankruptcy. The company had lied about the value of land along the side of the Northern Pacific Railroad that it owned and was trying to sell. When the truth leaked out, the company failed.

The failure of such an important business sent panic through the stock market, and investors began selling shares of stock more rapidly than people wanted to buy them. Companies had to buy their shares back from the investors. Soon, 89 of the nation's 364 railroads had failed as well. The failure of almost 18,000 other businesses followed within two years, leaving the nation in an economic crisis. By 1876 unemployment had risen to 14 percent, with an estimated 2 million people out of work. The high unemployment rate set off numerous strikes and protests around the nation, many involving railroad workers. In 1874 the Democrats gained control of the House of Representatives. Northerners were becoming less concerned about southern racism and more concerned about their financial well-being.

Election of 1876

Republicans could tell that northern support for Reconstruction was fading. Voters' attention was shifting to economic problems. In 1874 the Republican Party lost control of the House of Representatives to the Democrats. The Republicans in Congress managed to pass one last civil rights law. The Civil Rights Act of 1875 guaranteed African Americans equal rights in public places, such as theaters and public transportation. But as Americans became increasingly worried about economic problems and government corruption, the Republican Party began to abandon Reconstruction.

Republicans selected Ohio governor Rutherford B. Hayes as their 1876 presidential candidate. He believed in ending federal support of the Reconstruction governments. The Democrats nominated New York governor Samuel J. Tilden. During the election, Democrats in the South again used violence at the polls to keep Republican voters away.

The election between Hayes and Tilden was close. Tilden appeared to have won. Republicans challenged the electoral votes in Oregon and three southern states. A special commission of members of Congress and Supreme Court justices was appointed to settle the issue.

The commission narrowly decided to give all the disputed votes to Hayes. Hayes thus won the presidency by one electoral vote. In the **Compromise of 1877**, the Democrats agreed to accept Hayes's victory. In return, they wanted all remaining federal troops removed from the South. They also asked for funding for internal improvements in the South and



Plessy v. *Ferguson* (1896)

Background of the Case In 1892, Homer Plessy took a seat in the "whites only" car of a train in Louisiana. He was arrested, put on trial, and convicted of violating Louisiana's segregation law. Plessy argued that the Louisiana law violated the Thirteenth Amendment and denied him the equal protection of the law as guaranteed.

The Court's Ruling

The Court ruled that the Louisiana "separate-but-equal" law was constitutional.

The Court's Reasoning

The Court stated that the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments did not apply. The Court decided that the case had nothing to do with the abolition of slavery mentioned in the Thirteenth Amendment. The justices also ruled that the Fourteenth Amendment was not designed to eliminate social barriers to equality between the races, only political barriers.

Justice John Marshall Harlan disagreed with the Court's ruling. In a dissenting opinion, he wrote that "in respect of civil rights, all citizens are equal before the law."

Why It Matters

Plessy was important because it approved the idea of separate-but-equal facilities for people based on race. The doctrine of separate-but-equal led to segregation in trains, buses, schools, restaurants, and many other social institutions.

The separate-but-equal doctrine led to unequal treatment of minority groups for decades. It was finally struck down by another Supreme Court ruling, *Brown* v. *Board of Education,* in 1954.

ANALYSIS SKILL **ANALYZING INFORMATION**

1. **Why did the Court reject Plessy's arguments?**
2. **Why was *Plessy* v. *Ferguson* an important Supreme Court case?**

the appointment of a southern Democrat to the president's cabinet. Shortly after he took office in 1877, President Hayes removed the last of the federal troops from the South.

Redeemers

Gradually, Democrats regained control of state governments in the South. In each state, they moved quickly to get rid of the Reconstruction reforms.

Democrats who brought their party back to power in the South were called Redeemers. They came from a variety of backgrounds. For instance, U.S. senator John T. Morgan of Alabama was a former general in the Confederate army. Newspaper editor Henry Grady of Georgia was interested in promoting southern industry.

Redeemers wanted to reduce the size of state government and limit the rights of African Americans. They lowered state budgets and got rid of a variety of social programs. The Redeemers cut property taxes and cut public funding for schools. They also succeeded in limiting African Americans' civil rights.

African Americans' Rights Restricted

Redeemers set up the poll tax in an effort to deny the vote to African Americans. The **poll tax** was a special tax people had to pay before they could vote.

Some states also targeted African American voters by requiring them to pass a literacy test. A so-called grandfather clause written into law affected men whose fathers or grandfathers could vote before 1867. In those cases, a voter did not have to pay a poll tax or pass a literacy test. As a result, almost every white man could escape the voting restrictions.

Redeemer governments also introduced legal **segregation**, the forced separation of whites and African Americans in public places. **Jim Crow laws**—laws that enforced segregation—became common in southern states in the 1880s.

African Americans challenged Jim Crow laws in court. In 1883, however, the U.S. Supreme Court ruled that the Civil Rights Act of 1875 was unconstitutional. The Court

also ruled that the Fourteenth Amendment applied only to the actions of state governments. This ruling allowed private individuals and businesses to practice segregation.

Plessy v. *Ferguson*

In 1896 the U.S. Supreme Court returned to the issue of segregation. When Homer Plessy, an African American, refused to leave the whites-only Louisiana train car he was riding on, he was arrested and accused of breaking a state law requiring separate cars for blacks and whites. Plessy sued the railroad company and lost. His lawyers argued that the law violated his right to equal treatment under the Fourteenth Amendment. He then appealed to the U.S. Supreme Court. The Supreme Court ruled against Plessy in ***Plessy* v. *Ferguson***. Segregation was allowed, said the Court, if "separate-but-equal" facilities were provided. Among the justices, only John Marshall Harlan disagreed with the Court's decision. He explained his disagreement in a dissenting opinion:

> "In the eye of the law, there is in the country no superior, dominant [controlling], ruling class of citizens … Our constitution is color-blind, and neither knows nor tolerates classes among citizens. In respect of civil rights, all citizens are equal before the law."
>
> —John Marshall Harlan, quoted in *Plessy v. Ferguson: A Brief History with Documents*, edited by Brook Thomas

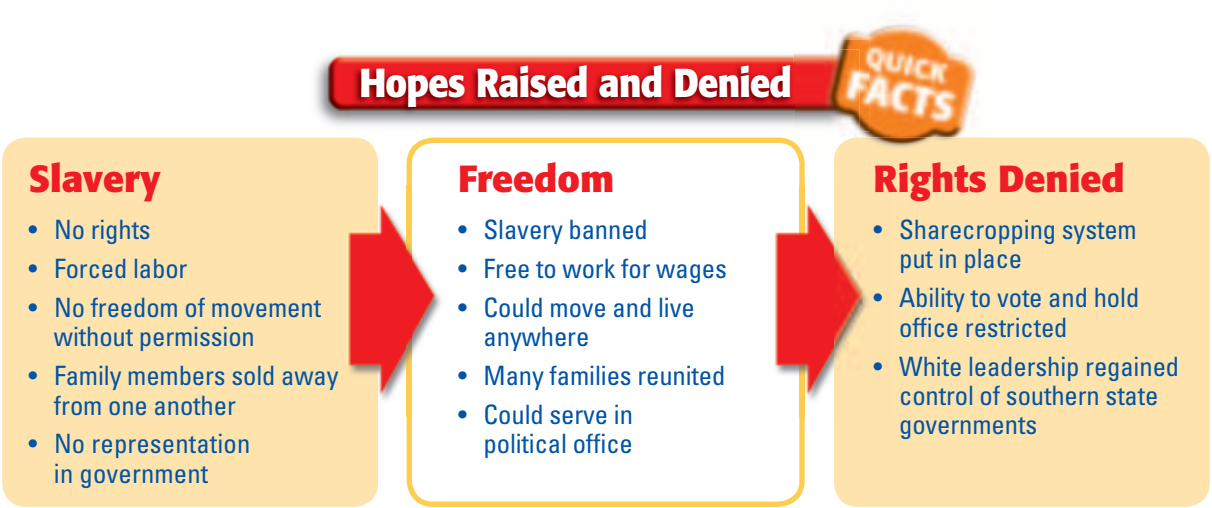
Despite Harlan's view, segregation became widespread across the country. African Americans were forced to use separate public schools, libraries, and parks. When they existed, these facilities were usually of poorer quality than those created for whites. In practice, these so-called separate-but-equal facilities were separate and unequal.

Farming in the South

Few African Americans in the South could afford to buy or even rent farms. Moving West also was costly. Many African Americans therefore remained on plantations. Others tried to make a living in the cities.

African Americans who stayed on plantations often became part of a system known as **sharecropping**, or sharing the crop. Landowners provided the land, tools, and supplies, and sharecroppers provided the labor. At harvest time, the sharecropper usually had to give most of the crop to the landowner. Whatever remained belonged to the sharecropper. Many sharecroppers hoped to save enough money from selling their share of the crops to one day be able to buy a farm. Unfortunately, only a few ever achieved this dream.

Instead, most sharecroppers lived in a cycle of debt. When they needed food, clothing, or supplies, most families had to buy goods on credit because they had little cash.





When sharecroppers sold their crops, they hoped to be able to pay off these debts. However, bad weather, poor harvests, or low crop prices often made this dream impossible.

Sharecroppers usually grew cotton, one of the South's most important cash crops. When too many farmers planted cotton, however, the supply became excessive. As a result, the price per bale of cotton dropped. Many farmers understood the drawbacks of planting cotton. However, farmers felt pressure from banks and others to keep raising cotton. A southern farmer explained why so many sharecroppers depended on cotton:

> "Cotton is the thing to get credit on in this country … You can always sell cotton … [Y]ou load up your wagon with wheat or corn …and I doubt some days whether you could sell it."
>
> –Anonymous farmer quoted in *The Promise of the New South*, by Edward L. Ayers

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** How were African Americans' rights restricted?

Rebuilding Southern Industry

The southern economy suffered through cycles of good and bad years as cotton prices went up and down. Some business leaders hoped industry would strengthen the southern economy and create a New South.

Southern Industry

Henry Grady, an Atlanta newspaper editor, was a leader of the New South movement. "The new South presents . . . a diversified [varied] industry that meets the complex needs of this complex age," he wrote. Grady and his supporters felt that with its cheap and abundant labor, the South could build factories and provide a workforce for them.

The most successful industrial development in the South involved textile production. Businesspeople built textile mills in many small towns to produce cotton fabric. Many people from rural areas came to work in the mills, but African Americans were not allowed to work in most of them.





"The New South...is stirred with the breath of a new life."

—Henry Grady

Atlanta rebuilt quickly after the war, becoming a leading railroad and industrial center. Newspaper editor Henry Grady gave stirring speeches about the need for industry in the South. He became one of the best-known spokesmen of the "New South."

Why might Grady point to Atlanta as a model for economic change?

Southern Mill Life

Work in the cotton mills appealed to farm families who had trouble making ends meet. As one mill worker explained, "It was a necessity to move and get a job, rather than depend on the farm." Recruiters sent out by the mills promised good wages and steady work.

Entire families often worked in the same cotton mill. Mills employed large numbers of women and children. Many children started working at about the age of 12. Some children started working at an even earlier age. Women did most of the spinning and were valued workers. However, few women had the opportunity to advance within the company.

Many mill workers were proud of the skills they used, but they did not enjoy their work. One unhappy worker described it as "the same thing over and over again . . . The more you do, the more they want done." Workers often labored 12 hours a day, six days a week. Cotton dust and lint filled the air, causing asthma and an illness known as brown-lung disease. Fast-moving machinery caused injuries and even deaths. Despite the long hours and dangerous working conditions, wages remained low. However, mill work did offer an alternative to farming.

READING CHECK **Finding Main Ideas** What did southern business leaders hope industry would do?

SUMMARY AND PREVIEW In this section you learned about the end of Reconstruction. In the next chapter you will learn about America's continued westward expansion.

Section 3 Assessment

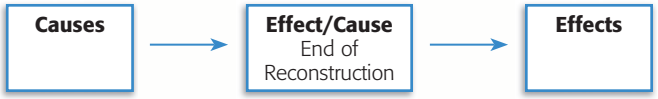
go.hrw.com
Online Quiz
KEYWORD: SC7 HP17

Reviewing Ideas, Terms, and People

1. **a.** **Identify** Who were some prominent African American leaders during Reconstruction?
   b. **Evaluate** What do you think was the most important change made by Reconstruction state governments? Explain your answer.
2. **a.** **Recall** For what reasons did some local governments not stop the **Ku Klux Klan**?
   b. **Draw Conclusions** How did the Ku Klux Klan's use of terror interfere with elections in the South?
3. **a.** **Recall** How did Reconstruction come to an end?
   b. **Explain** What was the relationship between **Jim Crow laws** and **segregation**?
4. **a.** **Identify** Who was Henry Grady, and why was he important?
   b. **Predict** What are some possible results of the rise of the "New South"?

Critical Thinking

5. **Identifying Causes and Effects** Review your notes on Reconstruction governments. Then copy the graphic organizer below and use it to show why Reconstruction ended, as well as the results of its end.



WRITING JOURNAL

6. **Relating Historical Change to Individual Choice** Despite the difficulties of Reconstruction, the Freedmen's Bureau and plans to bring industry to the "New South" did create new jobs. What might have led people to leave their jobs for new ones?

Social Studies Skills

Analysis | Critical Thinking | Civic Participation | Study

Chance, Oversight, and Error in History

Understand the Skill

Sometimes, history can seem very routine. One event leads to others which, in turn, lead to still others. You learn to look for cause-and-effect relationships among events. You learn how point of view and bias can influence decisions and actions. These approaches to the study of history imply that the events of the past are orderly and predictable.

In fact, many of the events of the past *are* orderly and predictable! They may seem even more so since they're over and done with, and we know how things turned out. Yet, predictable patterns of behavior *do* exist throughout history. Recognizing them is one of the great values and rewards of studying the past. As the philosopher George Santayana once famously said, "Those who cannot remember the past are condemned to repeat it."

At its most basic level, however, history is people, and people are "human." They make mistakes. Unexpected things happen to them, both good things and bad. This is the unpredictable element of history. The current phrase "stuff happens" is just as true of the past as it is today. Mistakes, oversights, and just plain "dumb luck" have shaped the course of history—and have helped to make the study of it so exciting.

Learn the Skill

California merchant John Sutter decided to build a sawmill along a nearby American river in 1848. He planned to sell the lumber it produced to settlers who were moving into the area. Sutter put James W. Marshall to work building the mill. To install the large water wheel that would power the saw, Marshall first had to deepen the river bed next to the mill. During his digging, he noticed some shiny bits of yellow metal in the water. The result of this accidental find was the California gold rush, which sent thousands of Americans to California, and speeded settlement of the West.

In 1863 the army of Confederate General Robert E. Lee invaded Maryland. The Civil War had been going well for the South. Lee hoped a southern victory on Union soil would convince the British to aid the South in the war. However, a Confederate officer forgot his cigars as his unit left its camp in the Maryland countryside. Wrapped around the cigars was a copy of Lee's battle plans. When a Union soldier came upon the abandoned camp, he spotted the cigars. This chance discovery enabled the Union army to defeat Lee at the Battle of Antietam. The Union victory helped keep the British out of the war. More importantly, it allowed President Lincoln to issue the Emancipation Proclamation and begin the process of ending slavery in the United States.

Practice the Skill

In April 1865 President Lincoln was assassinated while attending the theater in Washington, D.C. Bodyguard John Parker was stationed outside the door of the president's box. However, Parker left his post to find a seat from which he could watch the play. This allowed the killer to enter the box and shoot the unprotected president.

Write an essay about how this chance event altered the course of history. How might Reconstruction, North–South relations, and African Americans' struggle for equality have been different had Lincoln lived?

CHAPTER 17

Chapter Review

HOLT

History's Impact

▶ **video series**

Review the video to answer the closing question:

Name three ways the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments are related.

Visual Summary

QUICK FACTS

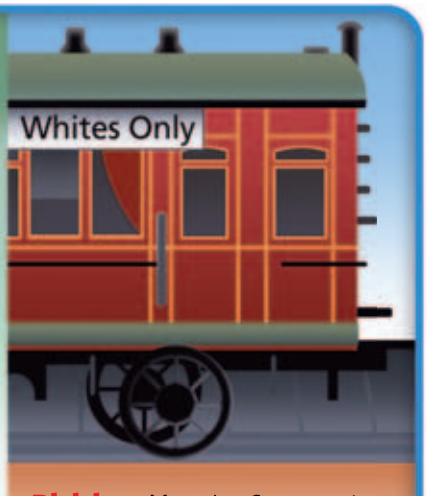
Use the visual summary below to help you review the main ideas of the chapter.



Reform During Reconstruction, the Freedmen's Bureau opened schools for former slaves and performed other services to help the poorest southerners.



Dispute Differing ideas about how to govern the South led to conflicts between African Americans and white southerners, as well as between Republicans and Democrats.



Division After the Compromise of 1877 ended Reconstruction, segregation laws were enacted by southern governments and upheld by the U.S. Supreme Court.

Reviewing Vocabulary, Terms, and People

Complete each sentence by filling in the blank with the correct term or person from the chapter.

1. _____ were laws that allowed racial segregation in public places.
2. The Radical Republicans were led by _____, a member of Congress from Pennsylvania.
3. The period from 1865 to 1877 that focused on reuniting the nation is known as _____.
4. Following the Civil War, many African Americans in the South made a living by participating in the _____ system.
5. After opposing Congress, Andrew Johnson became the first president to face _____ proceedings.
6. The _____ Amendment made slavery in the United States illegal.
7. In 1870 _____ became the first African American to serve in the U.S. Senate.

Comprehension and Critical Thinking

SECTION 1 *(Pages 552–557)*

8. **a. Describe** How did the lives of African Americans change after the Civil War?
   b. Compare and Contrast How was President Johnson's Reconstruction plan similar and different from President Lincoln's Ten Percent Plan?
   c. Evaluate Which of the three Reconstruction plans that were originally proposed do you think would have been the most successful? Why?

SECTION 2 *(Pages 558–563)*

9. **a. Identify** Who were the Radical Republicans, and how did they change Reconstruction?
   b. Analyze How did the debate over the Fourteenth Amendment affect the election of 1866?
   c. Elaborate Do you think Congress was right to impeach President Andrew Johnson? Explain.

SECTION 3 *(Pages 564–571)*

10. a. Describe What reforms did Reconstruction governments in the South support?

b. Draw Conclusions In what ways did southern governments attempt to reverse the accomplishments of Reconstruction?

c. Evaluate Do you think the South was successful or unsuccessful in its rebuilding efforts? Explain your answer.

Reviewing Themes

11. Politics Explain the political struggles that took place during Reconstruction.

12. Society and Culture How were the lives of ordinary southerners affected in the years after Reconstruction?

Using the Internet

go.hrw.com
KEYWORD: SC7 NY17

13. Activity: Drawing Conclusions A challenge for anyone trying to understand Reconstruction is drawing conclusions from primary and secondary sources from the time period. This activity will help you see how complex this can be. Enter the activity keyword, and then rate the credibility of the sources provided. Make sure you explain whether the source is a primary or secondary source, whether or not you think the source is credible, and the reasons for your thoughts.

Reading Skills

Analyzing Historical Information *Use the Reading Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> Radical Republicans, on the other hand, took a harsher stance. They wanted the Federal government to force change in the South. Like the moderates, they thought the Black Codes were cruel and unjust. *(p. 559)*

14. Which of the following is relevant information for the passage above?

a. Thaddeus Stevens was a Radical Republican.

b. Andrew Johnson was a Democrat.

c. Radical Republicans wanted the federal government to make major changes in the South.

d. Radical Republicans were eventually removed from power.

Social Studies Skills

Chance, Oversight, and Error in History *Use the Social Studies Skills taught in this chapter to answer the question about the reading selection below.*

> Johnson's speaking tour was a disaster. It did little to win votes for the Democratic Party. Johnson even got into arguments with people in the audiences of some of his speaking engagements. *(p. 561)*

15. Which of the following is an example of chance, oversight, or error that affected history?

a. Johnson got into arguments with audiences.

b. The tour was a disaster.

c. The tour did not win votes.

d. Johnson spoke for the Democratic Party.

Focus on Writing

16. Writing a Job History Review your notes about the changing job scene during Reconstruction. Put yourself in the shoes of a person living then. It could be anyone—a returning soldier, a shopkeeper, a schoolteacher, or a politician. What jobs would that person seek? Why would he or she leave one job for another?

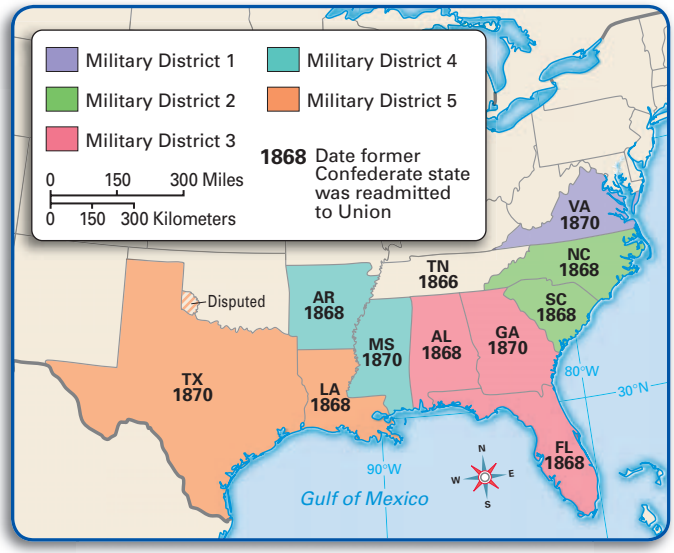
Write a brief job history for that person during Reconstruction. Include at least four jobs. Make each job description two to four sentences long. End each one with a sentence or two about why the person left that job. Add one sentence explaining why he or she took the next job. Be sure to include specific historical details.

CHAPTER 17

Standardized Test Practice

DIRECTIONS: Read each question and write the letter of the best response.

1 **Use the map below to answer the following question.**



Which military district contained the largest number of states?

A Military District 2
B Military District 3
C Military District 4
D Military District 5

2 **What can you infer from the map information?**

A South Carolina was difficult to reconstruct.
B The largest number of troops was in Military District 1.
C Military District 5 was the last district to end Reconstruction.
D Tennessee was readmitted to the Union before the other southern states.

3 **The quickest approach to reuniting the nation was proposed by the**

A Ten Percent Plan.
B Wade-Davis Bill.
C Civil Rights Act of 1866.
D Compromise of 1877.

4 **What development convinced Republicans in Congress to take control of Reconstruction from the president?**

A President Abraham Lincoln was assassinated by a southern sympathizer.
B President Andrew Johnson vetoed the Wade-Davis bill.
C Southern states began passing Black Codes to restrict African Americans' freedoms.
D White southern women refused to support the Fifteenth Amendment.

5 **Which of the following limited opportunities for African Americans in the South after Reconstruction ended?**

A Ten Percent plan
B Radical Republicans
C Jim Crow laws
D carpetbaggers

6 **Examine the following passage from a northern schoolteacher's letter home and then use it to answer the question.**

> "Wishing to work where there was the most need—there are so many places where nothing has been done for the freedmen, and where they are sorely persecuted—we came here. A schoolhouse built by the soldiers had just been destroyed by the citizens. The feeling is intensely bitter against anything northern. The affairs of the [Freedmen's] Bureau have been very much mismanaged in Columbus, and our government has been disgraced by the troops who were stationed here."
>
> –Sarah Chase, from *Dear Ones at Home*

Document-Based Question **What were some of the problems facing the Freedmen's Bureau in the South?**

A Nation Torn Apart

Part A: Short-Answer Questions

Directions: Read and examine the following documents. Then, on a separate sheet of paper, answer the questions using complete sentences.

DOCUMENT 1

General Winfield Scott planned to overwhelm the South by attacking both its territory and its economy. The press called this strategy the Anaconda Plan. In 1861, a Cincinnati publisher printed this political cartoon portraying Scott's plan.



1a. Why did the artist draw ships along the snake's body?

1b. Do you think the Anaconda Plan was a good strategy? Why or why not?

Taking Notes

As you read the source material, take thorough notes on facts, statistics, comparisons, and quotations. Take special care to spell names correctly and to record dates and facts accurately. If you use a direct quotation from a source, copy it word for word and enclose it in quotation marks. Along with each note, include the number of its source and its page number.

Organizing Your Ideas and Information

Informative research reports are usually organized in one of these ways:

- Chronological order (the order in which events occurred)
- Order of importance
- Causes (actions or situations that make something else happen) and effects (what happened as a result of something else).

Use one of these orders to organize your notes in an outline. Here is a partial outline for a paper on Robert E. Lee.

The Thesis/Big Idea: Robert E. Lee's decision to decline the leadership of the Union army had serious consequences for the path of the Civil War.

I. Lee's Military Expertise
   A. Achievements at the U.S. Military Academy
   B. Achievements during the Mexican War
II. Lee's Personality and Character
   A. Intelligence and strength
   B. Honesty and fairness
   C. Daring and courage
III. Lee's Military Victories
   A. Battle of Fredericksburg
   B. Battle of Chancellorsville

TIP **Seeing Different Viewpoints** Consult a variety of sources, including those with different points of view on the topic. Reading sources with different opinions will give you a more complete picture of your subject. For example, reading articles about Robert E. Lee written by a southern writer as well as a northern writer may give you a more balanced view of Lee.

TIP **Recording Others' Ideas** You will be taking three types of notes.
Paraphrases Restatements of all the ideas in your own words.
Summaries Brief restatements of only the most important parts.
Direct quotations The writer's exact words inside quotation marks.

2. Write

You can use this framework to help you write your first draft.

A Writer's Framework

Introduction

- Start with a quote or an interesting historical detail to grab your reader's attention.
- State the main idea of your report.
- Provide any historical background readers need to understand your main idea.

Body

- Present your information under at least three main ideas, using logical order.
- Write at least one paragraph for each of these main ideas.
- Add supporting details, facts, or examples to each paragraph.

Conclusion

- Restate your main idea, using slightly different words.
- Include a general comment about your topic.
- You might comment on how the historical information in your report relates to later historical events.

Studying a Model

Here is a model of a research report. Study it to see how one student developed a paper. The first and the concluding paragraphs are shown in full. The paragraphs in the body of the paper are summarized.

INTRODUCTORY PARAGRAPH

Attention grabber

Statement of thesis

"I cannot raise my hand against my birthplace, my home, my children." With these words, Robert E. Lee changed the course of the Civil War. Abraham Lincoln had turned to Lee as his first choice for commander of the Union army. However, Lee turned Lincoln down, choosing instead to side with his home state of Virginia and take command of the Confederate army. Lee's decision to turn Lincoln down weakened the North and strengthened the Confederates, turning what might have been an easy victory for the North into a long, costly war.

BODY PARAGRAPHS

In the first part of the body, the student points out that Lee graduated from the U.S. Military Academy at West Point, served in the Mexican War, and was a member of the Union army. She goes on to explain that he would have been a strong leader for the North, and his absence made the North weaker.

In the middle of the report, the writer discusses Lee's personality and character. She includes information about the strength of character he showed while in the military academy and while leading the Confederate army. She discusses and gives examples of his intelligence, his daring, his courage, and his honesty.

In the last part of the body of the report, the student provides examples of Lee leading the outnumbered Confederate army to a series of victories. The student provides details of the battles of Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville and explains how a lesser general than Lee may have lost both battles.

CONCLUDING PARAGRAPH

Summary of main points

Restatement of big idea

Lee's brilliant and resourceful leadership bedeviled a series of Union generals. He won battles that most generals would have lost. If Lee had used these skills to lead the larger and more powerful Union army, the Civil War might have ended in months instead of years.

3. Evaluate and Revise

Evaluating and Revising Your Draft

Evaluate your first draft by carefully reading it twice. Ask the questions below to decide which parts of your first draft should be revised.

Evaluation Questions for an Informative Report

- Does the introduction attract the readers' interest and state the big idea/thesis of your report?
- Does the body of your report have at least three paragraphs that develop your big idea? Is the main idea in each paragraph clearly stated?
- Have you included enough information to support each of your main ideas? Are all facts, details, and examples accurate? Are all of them clearly related to the main ideas they support?
- Is the report clearly organized? Does it use chronological order, order of importance, or cause and effect?
- Does the conclusion restate the big idea of your report? Does it end with a general comment about the importance or significance of your topic?
- Have you included at least three sources in your bibliography? Have you included all the sources you used and not any you did not use?

TIP **Organizing Your Time** By creating a schedule and following it, you can avoid that panicky moment when the due date is near and you haven't even started your research. To create your schedule and manage your time, include these six steps.

1. Develop a question and research your topic (10% of your total time).
2. Research and take notes (25%).
3. Write your main idea statement and create an outline (15%).
4. Write a first draft (25%).
5. Evaluate and revise your first draft (15%).
6. Proofread and publish your report (10%).

4. Proofread and Publish

Proofreading

To improve your report before sharing it, check the following:

- The spelling and capitalization of all proper names for people, places, things, and events.
- Punctuation marks around any direct quotation.
- Your list of sources (Works Cited or Bibliography) against a guide to writing research papers. Make sure you follow the examples in the guide when punctuating and capitalizing your source listings.

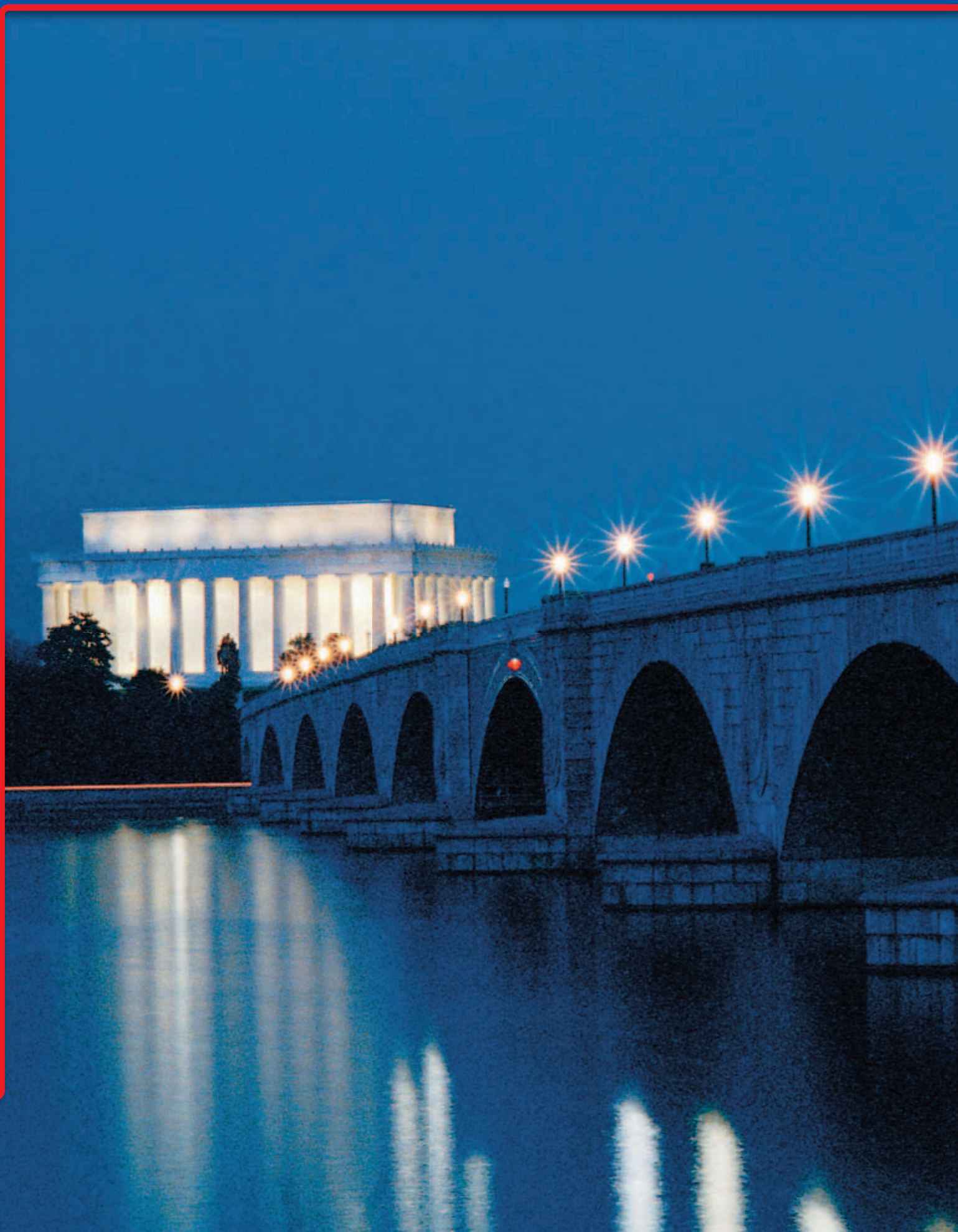
Publishing

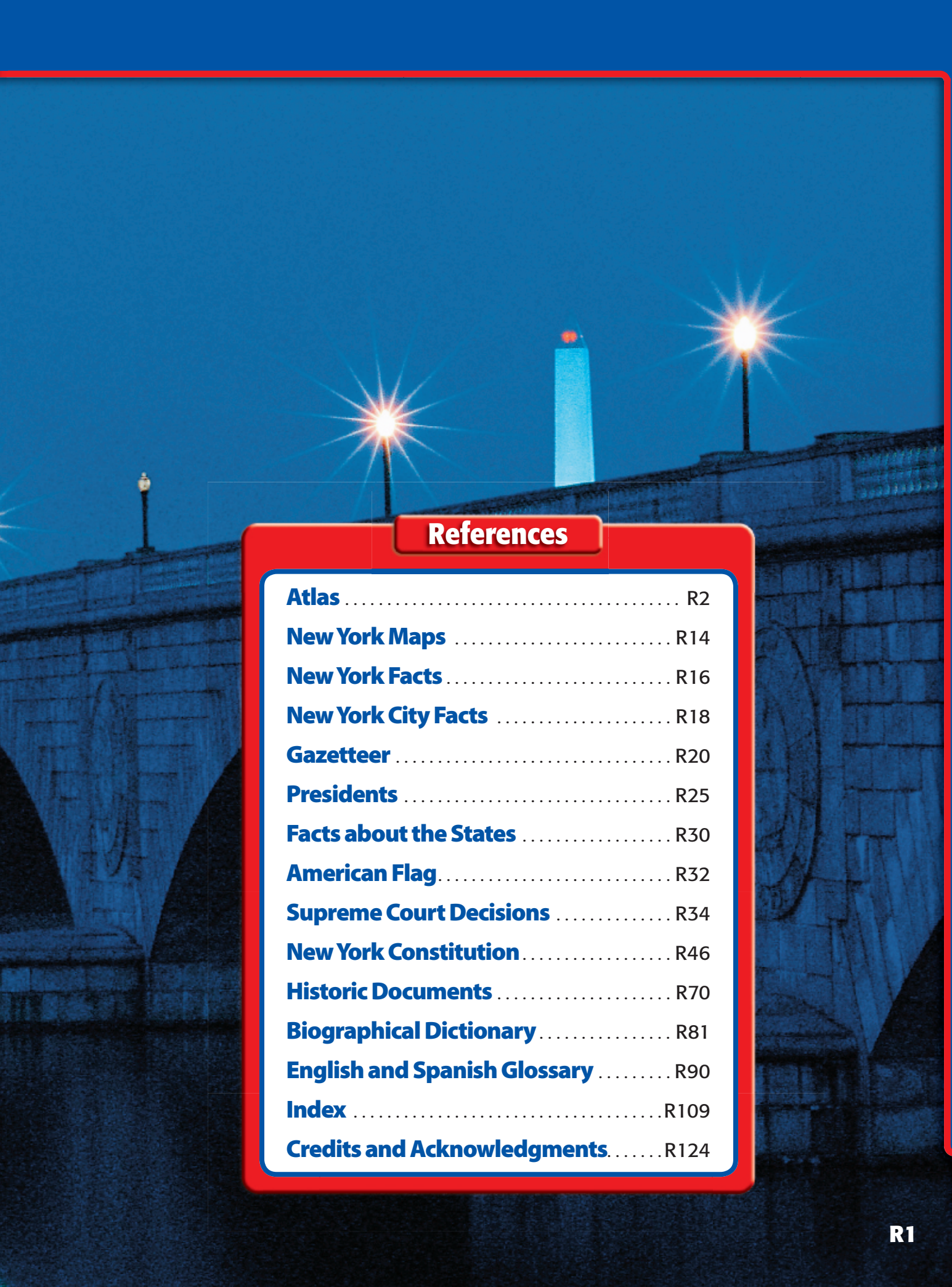
Choose one or more of these ideas to publish your report.

- Share your report with your classmates by turning it into an informative speech.
- Submit your report to an online discussion group that focuses on the Civil War and ask for feedback.
- With your classmates, create a magazine that includes reports on several different topics or post the reports on your school Web site.

5. Practice and Apply

Use the steps and strategies outlined in this workshop to research and write an informative report on the Civil War.





References

Atlas R2
New York Maps R14
New York Facts R16
New York City Facts R18
Gazetteer R20
Presidents R25
Facts about the States R30
American Flag R32
Supreme Court Decisions R34
New York Constitution R46
Historic Documents R70
Biographical Dictionary R81
English and Spanish Glossary R90
Index R109
Credits and Acknowledgments R124

The United States of America: Political



To understand the relative locations of Alaska and Hawaii, as well as the vast distances separating them from the rest of the United States, see the world map.


CANADA
MINNESOTA
WISCONSIN
MICHIGAN
IOWA
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
OHIO
MISSOURI
KENTUCKY
WEST VIRGINIA
VIRGINIA
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW YORK
MAINE
VT
NH
MA
CT
RI
NJ
DE
MD
TENNESSEE
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
ALABAMA
MISSISSIPPI
LOUISIANA
ARKANSAS
Grand Forks
Fargo
Duluth
Superior
Marquette
Sault Ste. Marie
Minneapolis
St. Paul
Green Bay
Madison
Milwaukee
Grand Rapids
Saginaw
Lansing
Detroit
Ann Arbor
Toledo
Cleveland
Youngstown
Akron
Buffalo
Rochester
Syracuse
Albany
Burlington
Montpelier
Augusta
Portland
Concord
Manchester
Boston
Worcester
Providence
Hartford
New Haven
Bridgeport
Yonkers
New York City
Jersey City
Newark
Trenton
Camden
Atlantic City
Dover
Baltimore
Annapolis
Washington, D.C.
Pittsburgh
Allentown
Harrisburg
Philadelphia
Richmond
Newport News
Virginia Beach
Norfolk
Charleston
Columbus
Dayton
Cincinnati
Indianapolis
Fort Wayne
South Bend
Gary
Chicago
Rockford
Peoria
Springfield
Cedar Rapids
Davenport
Des Moines
Sioux City
Sioux Falls
Omaha
Lincoln
Kansas City
Topeka
St. Louis
East St. Louis
Jefferson City
Wichita
Springfield
Louisville
Evansville
Frankfort
Lexington
Nashville
Knoxville
Chattanooga
Asheville
Charlotte
Winston-Salem
Greensboro
Durham
Raleigh
Greenville
Columbia
Atlanta
Macon
Savannah
Charleston
Huntsville
Birmingham
Montgomery
Meridian
Vicksburg
Jackson
Memphis
Little Rock
Pine Bluff
Fayetteville
Tulsa
Shreveport
Dallas
Waco
Beaumont
Houston
Galveston
New Orleans
Baton Rouge
Biloxi
Mobile
Pensacola
Tallahassee
Jacksonville
Gainesville
Orlando
Tampa
St. Petersburg
Fort Myers
Fort Lauderdale
Miami
Lake Superior
Lake Michigan
Lake Huron
Lake Erie
Lake Ontario
Lake Champlain
St. Lawrence River
Hudson R.
Connecticut R.
Susquehanna River
Long Island
Long Island Sound
Cape Cod
Delaware Bay
Chesapeake Bay
Cape Hatteras
Cape Canaveral
Cape Sable
Florida Keys
Straits of Florida
Sea Islands
Red River
Minnesota River
Mississippi River
Missouri River
Illinois River
Ohio River
Kentucky Lake
Lake Barkley
Keystone Lake
Eufaula Lake
Lake Texoma
Toledo Bend Reservoir
Chandeleur Islands
Chattahoochee R.
Savannah River
Lake Okeechobee
Gulf of Mexico
ATLANTIC OCEAN
THE BAHAMAS
National capital
State capitals
Other cities
0 100 200 Miles
0 100 200 Kilometers
Projection: Albers Equal Area
90°W
85°W
80°W
75°W
70°W
40°N
35°N
30°N
25°N

The United States of America: Physical



To understand the relative locations of Alaska and Hawaii, as well as the vast distances separating them from the rest of the United States, see the world map.


CANADA
Isle Royale
Lake Superior
Mesabi Range
Red River
Minnesota River
Mississippi River
Wisconsin River
Lake Michigan
Lake Huron
Lake Ontario
Lake Erie
St. Lawrence River
St. Lawrence Seaway
St. John River
Lake Champlain
Adirondack Mts.
Green Mts.
White Mts.
Longfellow Mts.
Penobscot River
Connecticut River
Hudson R.
Catskill Mts.
Cape Cod
Long Island Sound
Long Island
Allegheny R.
Susquehanna River
Delaware River
PLATEAU
MOUNTAINS
40°N
Missouri River
Des Moines River
Illinois River
Wabash River
Scioto River
Ohio River
Monongahela R.
Potomac River
Delaware Bay
Chesapeake Bay
ATLANTIC OCEAN
70°W
Kansas R.
PLAINS
ALLEGHENY
APPALACHIAN
Kanawha River
James River
Roanoke River
Pamlico Sound
Cape Hatteras
35°N
Lake of the Ozarks
OZARK PLATEAU
Lake Barkley
Cumberland River
Cumberland Plateau
BLUE RIDGE
PIEDMONT
Keystone Lake
Kentucky Lake
Great Smoky Mts.
Eufaula Lake
Arkansas River
White River
Tennessee River
Ouachita Mts.
Lake Texoma
Tombigbee River
Coosa River
Savannah River
Oconee River
Altamaha River
Sea Islands
Okefenokee Swamp
Trinity River
Sabine River
Red River
Mississippi River
Pearl River
Alabama R.
Chattahoochee River
Brazos River
Toledo Bend Reservoir
COASTAL PLAIN
GULF
Chandeleur Islands
Mississippi Delta
Gulf of Mexico
FLORIDA PENINSULA
Cape Canaveral
80°W
Lake Okeechobee
The Everglades
Cape Sable
Florida Keys
Straits of Florida
THE BAHAMAS
25°N
75°W
85°W
90°W
95°W
25°N
N
W
E
S
ELEVATION
Feet
Meters
13,120
4,000
6,560
2,000
1,640
500
656
200
(Sea level) 0
0 (Sea level)
Below sea level
Below sea level
0 100 200 Miles
0 100 200 Kilometers
Projection: Albers Equal Area

World: Political



	COUNTRY	CAPITAL
1	Antigua and Barbuda	St. Johns
2	St. Kitts and Nevis	Basseterre
3	Dominica	Roseau
4	St. Lucia	Castries
5	St. Vincent and the Grenadines	Kingstown
6	Barbados	Bridgetown
7	Grenada	St. George's





	COUNTRY	CAPITAL
1	Czech Republic	Prague
2	Slovakia	Bratislava
3	Slovenia	Ljubljana
4	Croatia	Zagreb
5	Bosnia and Herzegovina	Sarajevo
6	Macedonia	Skopje
7	Serbia	Belgrade
8	Montenegro	Podgorica
9	Lithuania	Vilnius
10	Latvia	Riga
11	Estonia	Tallinn
12	Kosovo	Pristina

North America: Political



South America: Political



ATLAS

Europe: Political



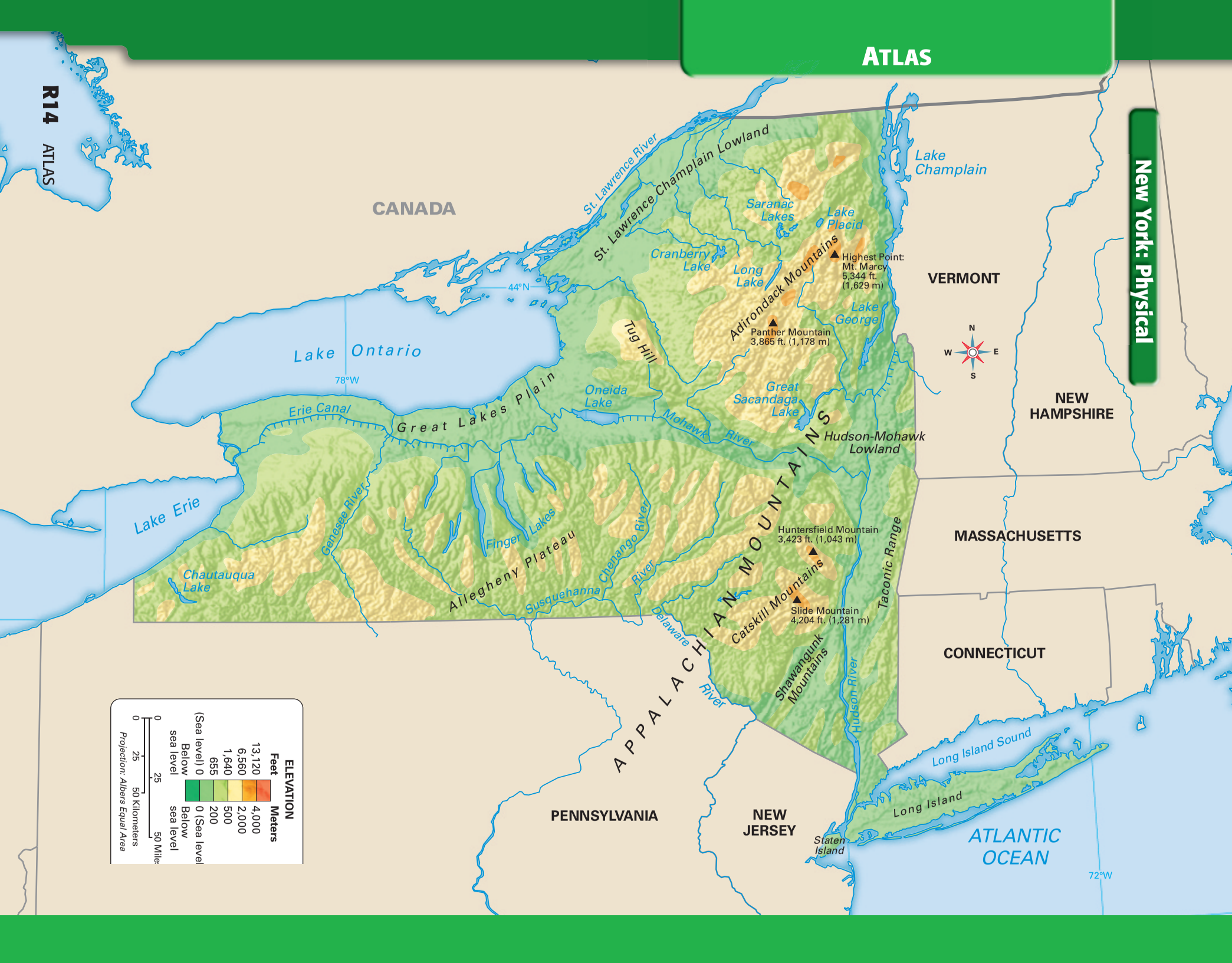

Asia: Political
Boundaries
National capitals
Other cities
0 250 500 750 Miles
0 250 500 750 Kilometers
Projection: Two-Point Equidistant
North Pole
EUROPE
AFRICA
ASIA
RUSSIA
KAZAKHSTAN
MONGOLIA
CHINA
INDIA
PAKISTAN
AFGHANISTAN
IRAN
IRAQ
SAUDI ARABIA
TURKEY
SYRIA
JORDAN
ISRAEL
LEBANON
CYPRUS
GEORGIA
ARMENIA
AZERBAIJAN
TURKMENISTAN
UZBEKISTAN
TAJIKISTAN
KYRGYZSTAN
NORTH KOREA
SOUTH KOREA
JAPAN
TAIWAN
NEPAL
BHUTAN
BANGLADESH
MYANMAR (BURMA)
LAOS
THAILAND
CAMBODIA
VIETNAM
PHILIPPINES
BRUNEI
MALAYSIA
SINGAPORE
INDONESIA
EAST TIMOR
AUSTRALIA
New Guinea
KUWAIT
BAHRAIN
QATAR
UNITED ARAB EMIRATES
OMAN
YEMEN
MALDIVES
SRI LANKA
Moscow
Yekaterinburg
Chelyabinsk
Omsk
Novosibirsk
Irkutsk
Yakutsk
Vladivostok
Sapporo
Tokyo
Yokohama
Nagoya
Osaka
Kyoto
Hiroshima
Pusan
Seoul
P'yongyang
Harbin
Changchun
Fushun
Dalian
Beijing
Qingdao
Nagasaki
Shanghai
Nanjing
Xi'an
Wuhan
Chengdu
Chongqing
Taipei
Hong Kong
Macao
Guangzhou
Hanoi
Vientiane
Phnom Penh
Ho Chi Minh City
Bangkok
Yangon (Rangoon)
Mandalay
Dhaka
Kolkata (Calcutta)
Chittagong
Thimphu
Kathmandu
New Delhi
Delhi
Jaipur
Ahmadabad
Bhopal
Nagpur
Hyderabad
Chennai (Madras)
Bangalore
Mumbai (Bombay)
Karachi
Lahore
Faisalabad
Islamabad
Kabul
Dushanbe
Ashgabat
Tashkent
Almaty
Astana
Bishkek
Ulaanbaatar
Baku
Yerevan
Tbilisi
Istanbul
Izmir
Ankara
Aleppo
Damascus
Amman
Beirut
Nicosia
Tel Aviv
Jerusalem
Baghdad
Basra
Mosul
Tehran
Mashhad
Isfahan
Shiraz
Kuwait City
Manama
Doha
Abu Dhabi
Riyadh
Mecca
Jidda
Masqat (Muscat)
Sanaa
Socotra (YEMEN)
Male
Colombo
Medan
Kuala Lumpur
Singapore
Jakarta
Semarang
Surabaya
Bandung
Ujung Pandang
Manila
Bandar Seri Begawan
Medan
Ural Mountains
Caspian Sea
Black Sea
Mediterranean Sea
Red Sea
Persian Gulf
Gulf of Aden
Arabian Sea
Bay of Bengal
Andaman Sea
Gulf of Thailand
South China Sea
East China Sea
Yellow Sea
Sea of Okhotsk
Bering Sea
Barents Sea
Kara Sea
Laptev Sea
Aleutian Islands
Kuril Islands (RUSSIA)
Sakhalin Island
Lake Baikal
Lake Balkhash
Aral Sea
Ob River
Irtysh
Yenisey River
Angara River
Lena River
Amur River
Ural River
Volga River
Euphrates River
Tigris River
Indus
Ganges River
Brahmaputra River
Nu River
Irrawaddy River
Mekong
Chang (Yangtze) River
Huang He (Yellow River)
Great Wall of China
Arctic Circle
Tropic of Cancer
Equator
Lakshadweep Islands (INDIA)
Andaman Islands (INDIA)
Nicobar Islands (INDIA)
Celebes Sea
Arafura Sea
Java Sea
Luzon Strait
Hainan (CHINA)
PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
ATLAS R11
ATLAS

Africa: Political




Australia and New Zealand: Political
ASIA
NORTH AMERICA
NORTH PACIFIC OCEAN
SOUTH PACIFIC OCEAN
INDIAN OCEAN
AUSTRALIA
NEW ZEALAND
MICRONESIA
MELANESIA
POLYNESIA
FEDERATED STATES OF MICRONESIA
MARSHALL ISLANDS
PALAU
GUAM
NAURU
KIRIBATI
TUVALU
SOLOMON ISLANDS
VANUATU
FIJI
TONGA
SAMOA
PAPUA NEW GUINEA
Bonin Islands (JAPAN)
Volcano Islands (JAPAN)
Northern Marianas (U.S.)
Guam (U.S.)
Agana
Wake Island (U.S.)
Midway Island (U.S.)
Hawaiian Islands
Hawaii (U.S.)
Johnston Island (U.S.)
Eniwetok I.
Kwajalein Island
Majuro
Koror
Truk Is.
Palikir
Kingman Reef (U.S.)
Palmyra Island (U.S.)
Howland I. (U.S.)
Washington Island
Fanning Island
Baker I. (U.S.)
Tarawa
Yaren
Gilbert Islands
Jarvis I. (U.S.)
Bismarck Archipelago
New Guinea
McKean I.
Phoenix Islands
Gardner I.
Starbuck Island
Tokelau (N.Z.)
Marquesas Islands (FRANCE)
Manihiki Island
Port Moresby
Honiara
Guadalcanal I.
Funafuti
American Samoa
Pago Pago
Apia
Wallis & Futuna (FR.)
Society Islands (FRANCE)
Cook Islands (NEW ZEALAND)
Tuamotu Archipelago (FRANCE)
Papeete
Tahiti (FRANCE)
French Polynesia
Christmas Island (AUSTRALIA)
Timor Sea
Arafura Sea
Coral Sea
Darwin
Espiritu Santo I.
Malekula I.
Port-Vila
New Caledonia (FRANCE)
Noumea
Loyalty Islands (FRANCE)
Suva
Niue (N.Z.)
Rarotonga Island
Nuku'alofa
Tubuai Islands (FRANCE)
Rapa Island (FRANCE)
Pitcairn (U.K.)
Pitcairn Island
Ducie Island
Easter Island (CHILE)
Flinders R.
Brisbane
Perth
Darling R.
Lachlan R.
Murray R.
Adelaide
Sydney
Canberra
Melbourne
Hobart
Norfolk Island (AUSTRALIA)
Kermadec Islands (N.Z.)
North Island
Auckland
Wellington
South Island
Christchurch
Chatham Islands (N.Z.)
Bounty Islands (N.Z.)
Auckland Islands (NEW ZEALAND)
Tasman Sea
Philippine Sea
South China Sea
International Date Line
Tropic of Cancer
Tropic of Capricorn
Equator
30°N
15°N
0°
15°S
30°S
45°S
120°E
135 E
150°E
165°E
180°
165°W
150°W
135 W
120 W
65°W
50 W
35°W
20°W
N
S
E
W
Boundaries
National capitals
Other cities
0 500 1,000 Miles
0 500 1,000 Kilometers
Projection: Mercator

New York: Physical




New York: Political
CANADA
St. Lawrence River
Lake Champlain
Malone
Plattsburgh
Canton
Elizabethtown
VERMONT
44°N
Watertown
Lowville
Adirondack Park
Lake George
Lake Pleasant
Lake George
Lake Ontario
78°W
Oswego
Oneida Lake
Great Sacandaga Lake
Hudson Falls
NEW HAMPSHIRE
Rome
Mohawk River
Utica
Herkimer
Ballston Spa
Lockport
Albion
Rochester
Niagara Falls
Wampsville
Lyons
Syracuse
Auburn
Mechanicville
Batavia
Canandaigua
Geneva
Schenectady
Troy
Buffalo
Warsaw
Geneseo
Penn Yan
Ovid
Albany
Cooperstown
Lake Erie
Hamburg
Cortland
Norwich
Finger Lakes
Ithaca
Oneonta
MASSACHUSETTS
Bath
Watkins Glen
Delhi
Catskill
Hudson
Mayville
Chautauqua Lake
Little Valley
Belmont
Elmira
Owego
Binghamton
Jamestown
Olean
Catskill Park
Kingston
Hudson River
CONNECTICUT
Monticello
Poughkeepsie
Newburgh
Middletown
Carmel
Goshen
Peekskill
New City
Long Island Sound
White Plains
Yonkers
Bronx
Long Island
Riverhead
Mineola
NEW YORK CITY
Jamaica
St. George
Brooklyn
Staten Island
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW JERSEY
ATLANTIC OCEAN
72°W
N
W
E
S
★ State capital
• Other cities
0 25 50 Kilometers
0 25 50 Miles
Projection: Albers Equal Area
ATLAS R15
ATLAS

New York Governors

George Clinton (1777–1795)
John Jay (1795–1801)
George Clinton (1801–1804)
Morgan Lewis (1804–1807)
Daniel D. Tompkins (1807–1817)
John Tayler (1817)
De Witt Clinton (1817–1822)
Joseph C. Yates (1823–1824)
De Witt Clinton (1825–1828)
Nathaniel Pitcher (1828)
Martin Van Buren (1829)
Enos T. Throop (1829–1832)
William L. Marcy (1833–1838)
William H. Seward (1839–1842)
William C. Bouck (1843–1844)
Silas Wright (1845–1846)
John Young (1847–1848)
Hamilton Fish (1849–1850)
Washington Hunt (1851–1852)
Horatio Seymour (1853–1854)
Myron H. Clark (1855–1856)
John A. King (1857–1858)
Edwin D. Morgan (1859–1862)
Horatio Seymour (1863–1864)
Reuben E. Fenton (1865–1868)
John T. Hoffman (1869–1872)
John A. Dix (1873–1874)
Samuel J. Tilden (1875–1876)
Lucius Robinson (1877–1879)
Alonzo B. Cornell (1880–1882)
Grover Cleveland (1883–1884)
David B. Hill (1885–1891)
Roswell P. Flower (1892–1894)
Levi P. Morton (1895–1896)
Frank S. Black (1897–1898)
Theodore Roosevelt (1899–1900)
Benjamin B. Odell, Jr. (1901–1904)
Frank W. Higgins (1905–1906)
Charles E. Hughes (1907–1910)
Horace White (1910)
John A. Dix (1911–1912)
William Sulzer (1913)
Martin H. Glynn (1913–1914)
Charles S. Whitman (1915–1918)
Alfred E. Smith (1919–1920)
Nathan L. Miller (1921–1922)
Alfred E. Smith (1923–1928)
Franklin D. Roosevelt (1929–1932)
Herbert H. Lehman (1933–1942)
Charles Poletti (1942)
Thomas E. Dewey (1943–1954)
W. Averell Harriman (1955–1958)
Nelson A. Rockefeller (1959–1973)
Malcolm Wilson (1973–1974)
Hugh L. Carey (1975–1982)
Mario M. Cuomo (1983–1994)
George E. Pataki (1995–2006)
Eliot Spitzer (2007–2008)
David Paterson (2008–)

New York Government

Executive Branch

Carries out the laws and policies of state government

Governor

- Elected by voters to a four-year term
- No term limits
- Appoints officials and some judges
- Can veto whole laws or items of laws regarding budgets

Lieutenant Governor

- Elected along with governor
- Hold various responsibilities, include replacing governor should he or she leave office

Cabinet

- Consists of officials appointed by governor
- Offers advice to governor on specific areas of knowledge

Legislative Branch

Makes state laws

Bicameral System

- Has two houses—State Senate and Assembly
- Both houses take part in law-making
- Legislature can override the governor's veto with a two-thirds vote in both houses

State Senate

- 62 senators
- Serve two-year terms
- No term limits

Assembly

- 150 Assembly members
- Serve two-year terms
- No term limits

Judicial Branch

Decides conflicts and questions about the law

Trial Courts

- Hear civil and criminal cases
- Five divisions of superior courts

Appellate Courts

- Hear and determine appeals from the lower courts
- Four divisions of appellate courts

State of New York Court of Appeals

- Determines statewide principles of law in deciding specific law-suits
- Focuses on broad issues of law, not individual factual disputes
- Has one chief judge and six associate judges
- Judges appointed by governor with approval of the Senate
- Judges serve 14-year terms

New York Facts

State tree	Sugar maple
State bird	Bluebird
State marine animal	Trout
State animal	Beaver
State insect	Ladybug
State fossil	Sea scorpion
State shell	Bay scallop
State flower	Rose
State fruit	Apple
Capital	Albany
Year of Statehood	1788 (11th state)
Nickname	The Empire State
Motto	Excelsior (Ever Upward)
Song	"I Love New York"
Highest Elevation	Mt. Marcy, 5,344 feet above sea level
Lowest Elevation	Sea level
Total Area	54,475 square miles
National Rank in Land Area	27
Total Coastline	1,850 miles (includes every bay and inlet on Long Island)
	127 miles (Atlantic coastline only)
Largest City	New York City
Largest Lake	Lake Oneida
Number of Counties	62
Longest River	Hudson River
Population	19,190,115 (as of 2003)
National Rank in Population	3
Length (North to South)	310 miles
Width (East to West)	440 miles (including Long Island)



The rose is the New York State flower.



New York City Facts

Mayors Since 1898 Consolidation

Robert A. Van Wyck (1898–1901)
Seth Low (1902–1903)
George B. McClellan Jr. (1904–1909)
William Jay Gaynor (1910–1913)
Ardolph Loges Kline (1913–1913)
John Purroy Mitchel (1914–1917)
John F. Hylan (1918–1925)
James J. Walker (1926–1932)
Joseph V. McKee (1932–1932)
John P. O'Brien (1933)
Fiorello H. LaGuardia (1934–1945)
William O'Dwyer (1946–1950)
Vincent R. Impellitteri (1950–1953)
Robert F. Wagner Jr. (1954–1965)
John V. Lindsay (1966–1973)
Abraham D. Beame (1974–1977)
Edward I. Koch (1978–1989)
David N. Dinkins (1990–1993)
Rudolph W. Giuliani (1994–2001)
Michael R. Bloomberg (2002–)

City Nicknames

Gotham
The Big Apple
The Capital of The World (Novum Caput Mundi)
The City So Nice, They Named It Twice
The City That Never Sleeps
The Empire City

New York City Industry

New York City economy is based on its leading role in several industries, including financial services and banking, media, clothing manufacture, insurance, tourism, and the arts. The city has an enormous gross product figure of more than $1 trillion, second only to Tokyo. When compared to the gross product figures of entire countries, New York City ranks 17th, ahead of nations such as Australia, Ireland, Pakistan, and Chile.



Solomon R. Guggenheim Museum, New York City

History of New York City, 1620–2020

1624 Established as trading post by Dutch (New Amsterdam)

1664 English take control from Dutch and rename the city New York

1792 New York Stock Exchange founded

1863 Civil War draft riots

1620 — 1780

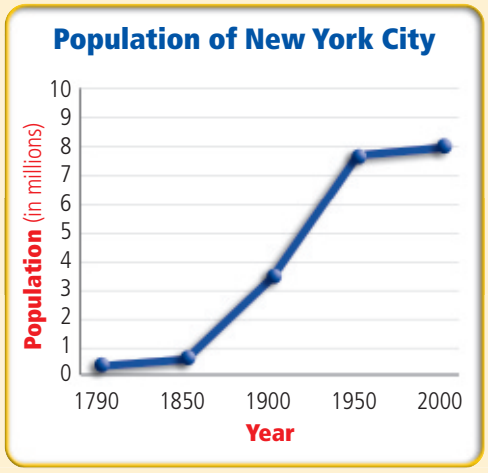
1883 Brooklyn Bridge, then world's longest suspension bridge, opens

Brooklyn Bridge





New York City Population



Source: *U.S. Census Bureau*

New York City has been the largest city in the United States since the beginning of the nation. It is also the most densely populated city in the United States. The city was home to an estimated 8,250,567 people in 2007, making it the 13th most populous city in the world.

Ethnicity Of the more than 8 million people who live in New York City, more than a third were born outside of the United States. A 2005 survey found nearly 170 different languages spoken in the city. The city is home to the largest Jewish community outside of Israel, the largest Puerto Rican community outside of Puerto Rico, and the largest African American and Italian communities in the United States.

1886 Statue of Liberty dedicated

1892 Ellis Island opens to receive immigrants

1898 New charter approves consolidation of five boroughs: The Bronx, Brooklyn, Manhattan, Queens, and Staten Island

1904 First section of New York Subway opens

1926 First Macy's Thanksgiving Day Parade

1929 Stock market crash

1931 Empire State Building opens, then world's tallest

2001 Terrorist attack destroys World Trade Center; killing about 2,800

2020



The Statue of Liberty



This artist's sketch shows the new building that will stand where the World Trade Center once stood.

Gazetteer

A

Africa Second-largest continent. Lies in both the Northern and the Southern Hemispheres. p. 18
Alabama (AL) State in the southern United States. Admitted as a state in 1819. Capital: Montgomery. (33°N 87°W) p. 286
Alaska (AK) U.S. state in northwestern North America. Purchased from Russia in 1867. Became a territory in 1912. Admitted as a state in 1959. Capital: Juneau. (64°N 150°W) p. 6
Albany Capital of New York. (42°N 74°W). p. 130
Andes Mountains a mountain range along the west coast of South America p. 8
Appalachian Mountains Mountain system in eastern North America that extends from Canada to central Alabama. p. 89
Arctic Region around the North Pole including Arctic Ocean, parts of Alaska, Canada, Russia and Scandinavian countries. (90°N 0°E) p. 12
Arizona (AZ) State in the southwestern United States. Organized into a territory in 1863. Admitted as a state in 1912. Capital: Phoenix. (34°N 113°W) p. 10
Arkansas (AR) State in the south-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1836. Capital: Little Rock. (35°N 93°W) p. 55
Asia Largest continent. Occupies the same land mass as Europe. p. 6
Athens an ancient city and modern capital of Greece; the world's first democracy developed in Athens around 500 BC (38°N 24°E) p. 23
Atlanta Capital of Georgia. (33°N 84°W) p. 541
Atlantic Ocean Vast body of water separating North and South America from Europe and Africa. p. 13

B

Baltimore Maryland city northeast of Washington, D.C., on the Chesapeake Bay. (39°N 76°W) p. 286
Bering Land Bridge Land bridge that once connected what is now Alaska with Siberia. p. 6
Boston Capital of Massachusetts. (42°N 71°W) p. 80
Buena Vista City in northeastern Mexico. (33°N 117°W) p. 360
Bull Run Creek in northeastern Virginia where the Confederates won two major battles during the Civil War. p. 517
Bunker Hill Hill in Boston, Massachusetts. Site of an early Revolutionary War battle. p. 115

C

Cahokia a site in modern Missouri where the Mississippian culture built large settlements (38°N 90°W) p. 11
California (CA) State in the western United States. Admitted as a state in 1850. Capital: Sacramento. (38°N 121°W) p. 12
Canada Country in northern North America. Capital: Ottawa. p. 6
Cape of Good Hope Southern tip of Africa. p. 40
Caribbean Sea Arm of the Atlantic Ocean between North and South America. p. 9
Central America Region of land connecting North and South America. p. 8
Charleston Port city in southeastern South Carolina. Originally called Charles Town. (33°N 80°W) p. 76
Chesapeake Bay Inlet of the Atlantic Ocean in Virginia and Maryland. p. 73
Chicago Large U.S. city in northeastern Illinois on Lake Michigan. Major port (41°N 87°W) p. 396
Chile a country in western South America; the Inca Empire stretched into central Chile p. 9
China Country in East Asia with the world's largest population. Capital: Beijing. (Official name: People's Republic of China) p. 25
Columbia River River in northwestern United States and southwestern Canada. Forms part of boundary between Oregon and Washington. p. 276
Colorado (CO) State in the southwestern United States. Admitted as a state in 1876. Capital: Denver. (39°N 107°W) p. 10
Concord One of two northeastern Massachusetts towns (along with Lexington) where the first fighting of the American Revolution took place in 1775. (42°N 71°W) p. 113
Connecticut (CT) State in the northeastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1788. Capital: Hartford. (41°N 73°W) p. 57
Cuzco a city in Peru; it was the capital of the Inca Empire (14°S 72°W) p. 8

D

Delaware (DE) State in the eastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1787. Capital: Dover. (38°N 75°W) p. 57
District of Columbia Federal district between Maryland and Virginia where the capital of the United States is located. (39°N 77°W) p. 240

E

Ecuador Republic in northwest South America. Capital: Quito. (2°S 78°W) p. 8
England Region of the United Kingdom that makes up most of the southern part of the island of Great Britain. Capital: London. (51°N 1°W) p. 25
Erie Canal An early 1800s building project that created a waterway between the New York cities of Albany, the capital, and Buffalo, on Lake Erie. p. 295
Europe Continent occupying the same land mass as Asia. p. 24

F

Florence a city in Italy; ruled by the Medici family in the 1400s, it was a major center for culture and trade (44°N 11°E) p. 27
Florida (FL) State in the southeastern United States. Organized as a territory in 1822. Admitted as a state in 1845. Capital: Tallahassee. (30°N 84°W) p. 48
Fort McHenry U.S. fort that guarded Baltimore, Maryland. The British attacked the fort in the War of 1812. p. 286
Fort Necessity Site where the French defeated British colonists in 1754, in what was the first battle of the French and Indian War. p. 96
Fort Sumter Fort on Charleston Harbor, South Carolina. Attack by Confederate forces here began the Civil War. p. 511
France Country in Western Europe. Capital: Paris. (46°N 0°W) p. 24

G

Georgia (GA) State in the southeastern United States. Admitted as a state in 1788. One of the original thirteen colonies. Capital: Atlanta. (32°N 84°W) p. 48
Germany Country in central Europe. Capital: Berlin. (51°N 8°E) p. 53
Gettysburg Town in southern Pennsylvania. (40°N 77°W) p. 537
Ghana a West African country located between the Niger and Senegal Rivers; it was the site of a powerful empire established around AD 300. p. 16
Great Basin Elevated region made up of parts of California, Idaho, Nevada, Oregon, Utah, and Wyoming that was home to many Native Americans. p. 10
Great Britain Kingdom in western Europe that includes England, Scotland, and Wales. p. 92
Great Lakes Chain of lakes located in central North America that extends across the U.S.-Canada border. Includes Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie, and Lake Ontario. p. 13
Great Plains Region of central North America that lies between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains. p. 14
Greece a country in southern Europe with mountains, rugged coastlines and scenic islands; the country is called the birthplace of democracy p. 22
Greenland an island in the North Atlantic that was settled by the Vikings p. 38
Gulf of Mexico Gulf on the southeastern coast of North America, bordered by the United States, Mexico, and Cuba. p. 7

H

Hartford Capital of Connecticut. (41°N 72°W) p. 287
Hawaii (HI) U.S. state in the central Pacific Ocean; includes eight major islands. Admitted as a state in 1959. Capital: Honolulu. (21°N 158°W) p. R2
Hispaniola Island that includes the countries of Haiti and the Dominican Republic. p. 43
Hudson Bay Inland sea in east-central Canada. Explored by Henry Hudson in 1610. p. 13
Hudson River River flowing from northeastern to southern New York. p. 86

I

Idaho (ID) State in the northwestern United States. Admitted as a state in 1890. Capital: Boise. (44°N 115°W) p. R2
Illinois (IL) State in the north-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1818. Capital: Springfield. (40°N 90°W) p. 155
India Large republic in southern Asia. Capital: New Delhi. (28°N 77°E) p. 41
Indiana (IN) State in the north-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1816 Capital: Indianapolis. (40°N 86°W) p. 155
Indian Ocean Vast body of water east of Africa, south of Asia, west of Australia, and north of Antarctica. p. 41
Iowa (IA) State in the north-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1846. Capital: Des Moines. (42°N 94°W) p. R3

Ireland Island in the British Isles. Divided into Northern Ireland (Capital: Belfast), and the Republic of Ireland (Capital: Dublin). (54°N 8°W) p. 438
Italy Country in southern Europe. Capital: Rome. (44°N 11°E) p. 26

J

Jamestown First successful English colony in North America. Established in eastern Virginia in 1607. p. 72

K

Kansas (KS) State in the central United States. Organized as a territory in 1854. Admitted as a state in 1861. Capital: Topeka. (38°N 99°W) p. 50
Kentucky (KY) State in the east-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1792. Capital: Frankfort. (37°N 87°W) p. 272

L

Lake Erie One of the Great Lakes. Located in the United States and Canada. p. 285
Latin America Spanish-speaking countries of North and South America that were once claimed by Spain or Portugal. p. 300
Lexington One of two northeastern Massachusetts towns (along with Concord) where the first fighting of the American Revolution took place in 1775. (42°N 71°W) p. 113
Liberia Country on the west coast of Africa. (6°N 10°W) p. 455
London Capital of the United Kingdom, in England. (52°N 0°W) p. 78
Los Angeles Large city in southern California. (34°N 118°W) p. 358
Louisiana (LA) State in the southeastern United States carved out of the Louisiana Territory. Admitted as a state in 1812. Capital: Baton Rouge. (31°N 92°W) p. R3

M

Maine (ME) State in the northeastern United States. Admitted as a state in 1820. Capital: Augusta. (45°N 70°W) p. 128
Mali a West African country located on the Niger River; it was the location of an empire that reached its height around 1300 p. 16
Manhattan Island Island at the north end of New York Bay. One of the five boroughs that make up New York City. p. 57
Maryland (MD) State in the east-central United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1788. Capital: Annapolis. (39°N 76°W) p. 75
Massachusetts (MA) State in the northeastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1788. Capital: Boston. (42°N 72°W) p. 79
Mecca an ancient city in Arabia and the birthplace of Muhammad (21°N 40°E) p. 18
Mediterranean Sea Large sea bordered by southern Europe, Southwest Asia, and northern Africa. p. 18
Mesoamerica Area from Mexico to northern Central America during pre-Spanish culture. p. 7
Mexico Country in southern North America. Capital: Mexico City. p. 6
Michigan (MI) State in the north-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1837. Capital: Lansing. (46°N 87°W) p. 155
Minnesota (MN) State in the north-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1858. Capital: St. Paul. (46°N 90°W) p. R3
Mississippi (MS) State in the southeastern United States. Admitted as a state in 1817. Capital: Jackson. (32°N 89°W) p. 332
Mississippi River River that flows from Minnesota south to the Gulf of Mexico. p. 11
Missouri (MO) State in the central United States. Admitted as a state in 1821. Capital: Jefferson City. (38°N 93°W) p. 304
Missouri River River that flows from southern Montana and joins the Mississippi River. p. 11
Montana (MT) State in the northwestern United States. Admitted as a state in 1889. Capital: Helena. (47°N 112°W) p. 277
Montreal City in southeastern Canada founded by the French in 1642. (46°N 74°W) p. 54

N

Nebraska (NE) State in the central United States. Admitted as a state in 1867. Capital: Lincoln. (41°N 101°W) pp. R2–3
Netherlands Country in northwestern Europe. Capital: Amsterdam. (52°N 5°E) p. 53
Nevada (NV) State in the western United States. Organized as a territory in 1861. Admitted as a state in 1864. Capital: Carson City. (39°N 117°W) p. 356

New Amsterdam Dutch settlement on the island of Manhattan. Founded in 1626. p. 57
New England Northeastern section of the United States. Made up of Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Vermont. p. 80
New Hampshire (NH) State in the northeastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1788. Capital: Concord. (44°N 71°W) p. 83
New Jersey (NJ) State in the northeastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1787. Capital: Trenton. (40°N 75°W) p. 57
New Mexico (NM) State in the southwestern United States. Admitted as a state in 1912. Capital: Santa Fe. (34°N 107°W) p. 10
New Orleans Port city in southeastern Louisiana. (30°N 90°W) p. 57
New Spain Vast area of North America controlled by Spain. p. 47
New Sweden Swedish colony in North America that was located along the Delaware River. p. 57
New York (NY) State in the northeastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1788. Capital: Albany. (42°N 78°W) p. 57
New York City Largest city in the United States. (41°N 74°W) p. 57
Niger River Major river in West Africa. p. 18
North America Continent in the northern Western Hemisphere. p. 6
North Carolina (NC) State in the southeastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1789. Capital: Raleigh. (35°N 81°W) p. 54
North Dakota (ND) State in the north-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1889. Capital: Bismarck. (47°N 102°W) pp. R2–3

O

Ohio (OH) State in the north-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1803. Capital: Columbus. (40°N 83°W) p. 155
Ohio River River that flows through Pennsylvania, Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois. p. 11
Oklahoma (OK) State in the south-central United States. Organized as a territory in 1890. Admitted as a state in 1907. Capital: Oklahoma City. (36°N 98°W) p. 48
Oregon (OR) State in the northwestern United States. Admitted as a state in 1859. Capital: Salem. (43°N 122°W) p. 355

P

Pacific Ocean Body of water extending from the Arctic Circle to Antarctica and from western North and South America to Australia, the Malay Archipelago, and East Asia. p. 9
Pennsylvania (PA) State in the eastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1787. Capital: Harrisburg. (41°N 78°W) p. 86
Peru Country in western South America. Capital: Lima. (10°S 75°W) p. 9
Philadelphia City in southeastern Pennsylvania. Capital of the United States from 1790 to 1800. (40°N 75°W) p. 86
Philippines Country in the western Pacific Ocean. Made up of about 7,100 islands. Capital: Manila. (14°N 125°E) p. 580
Plymouth Site in Massachusetts where the Pilgrims first landed in North America in 1620. (42°N 70°W) p. 79
Portugal Country in southwestern Europe on the western Iberian Peninsula. (38°N 8°W) p. 39
Providence Capital of Rhode Island. (42°N 71°W) p. 82

R

Rhode Island (RI) State in the northeastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1790. Capital: Providence. (41°N 71°W) p. 82
Richmond Capital of Virginia. Capital of the Confederate States of America during the Civil War. (37°N 7°W) p. 419
Rio Grande Spanish for Great River. Forms the border between Texas and Mexico. p. 358
Roanoke Island Island off the coast of North Carolina. Site of England's first settlement attempt in North America. p. 54
Rocky Mountains Mountain range in western North America that extends from Alaska south to New Mexico. p. 13
Rome City in Italy near the Mediterranean Sea; it was the capital of the Roman Empire (42°N 13°E) p. 23
Russia Vast country that extends from Eastern Europe through northeastern Asia. Capital: Moscow. (61°N 60°E) p. 300

S

Sacramento River River in northwest California. Sacramento, capital of California, sits at its head. (38°N 121°W) p. 365
Sahara World's largest desert, located in northern Africa. p. 17
San Antonio City in southern Texas. Site of the Mexican victory over Texas forces at the Alamo during the Texas Revolution. (29°N 99°W) p. 352
San Diego City in southern California. Located on San Diego Bay. (33°N 117°W) p. 358
San Francisco City in western California on a peninsula between the Pacific Ocean and San Francisco Bay. (37°N 122°W) p. 358
Santa Fe Capital of New Mexico. (35°N 106°W) p. 349
Saratoga Site in eastern New York of a Revolutionary War battle, the turning point of the war. p. 130
Savannah Port city in southeastern Georgia. Founded by James Oglethorpe in 1733. (32°N 81°W) p. 76
Scandinavia Large peninsula in northern Europe p. 38
Seneca Falls Village in west-central New York State. Site of the first women's rights convention in the United States in 1848. (43°N 77°W) p. 464
Sierra Nevada Large mountain range in eastern California. p. 12
Songhai a large and powerful empire in West Africa during the 1400s and 1500s. p. 16
South America Continent in the southern Western Hemisphere. p. 6
South Carolina (SC) State in the southeastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1788. Capital: Columbia. (34°N 81°W) p. 76
South Dakota (SD) State in the north-central United States. Organized as part of the Dakota Territory in 1861. Admitted as a state in 1889. Capital: Pierre. (44°N 102°W) pp. R2–3
Spain Country in southwestern Europe that occupies the greater part of the Iberian Peninsula. Capital: Madrid. (40°N 4°W) p. 41

T

Tennessee (TN) State in the south-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1796. Capital: Nashville. (36°N 88°W) p. 272
Tenochtitlán Aztec island-city that was located on the site that is now Mexico City. p. 8
Texas (TX) State in the south-central United States. Independent republic from 1836 to 1845. Admitted as a state in 1845. Capital: Austin. (31°N 101°W) p. 12
Timbuktu a city in West Africa that began as a camp for traders around AD 1100 and became a major center of culture and learning. (17°N 3°W) p. 18

U

United States of America Country in central North America. Capital: Washington, D.C. p. 6
Utah (UT) State in the western United States. Admitted as a state in 1896. Capital: Salt Lake City. (39°N 112°W) p. 10

V

Valley Forge Site in southeastern Pennsylvania where General George Washington and his troops spent the harsh winter of 1777–78. p. 132
Vermont (VT) State in the northeastern United States. Admitted as a state in 1791. Capital: Montpelier. (44°N 73°W) p. R3
Vicksburg City in western Mississippi on the bluffs above the Mississippi River. (42°N 85°W) p. 522
Virginia (VA) State in the eastern United States. One of the original thirteen colonies. Admitted as a state in 1788. Capital: Richmond. (37°N 80°W) p. 54

W

Washington (WA) State in the northwestern United States. Admitted as a state in 1889. Capital: Olympia. (47°N 121°W) p. R2
Washington, D.C. Capital of the United States. Located on the Potomac River between Virginia and Maryland. (39°N 77°W) p. 240
West Virginia (WV) State in the east-central United States. Part of Virginia until the area refused to join the Confederacy in 1861. Admitted as a state in 1863. Capital: Charleston. (39°N 81°W) p. 512
Wisconsin (WI) State in the north-central United States. Admitted as a state in 1848. Capital: Madison. (44°N 91°W) p. 155
Wyoming (WY) State in the northwestern United States. Admitted as a state in 1890. Capital: Cheyenne. (43°N 108°W) p. 361

Presidents





1 George Washington

Born: 1732 **Died:** 1799
Years in Office: 1789–97
Political Party: None
Home State: Virginia
Vice President: John Adams



2 John Adams

Born: 1735 **Died:** 1826
Years in Office: 1797–1801
Political Party: Federalist
Home State: Massachusetts
Vice President: Thomas Jefferson



3 Thomas Jefferson

Born: 1743 **Died:** 1826
Years in Office: 1801–09
Political Party: Republican*
Home State: Virginia
Vice Presidents: Aaron Burr, George Clinton



4 James Madison

Born: 1751 **Died:** 1836
Years in Office: 1809–17
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Virginia
Vice Presidents: George Clinton, Elbridge Gerry



5 James Monroe

Born: 1758 **Died:** 1831
Years in Office: 1817–25
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Virginia
Vice President: Daniel D. Tompkins



6 John Quincy Adams

Born: 1767 **Died:** 1848
Years in Office: 1825–29
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Massachusetts
Vice President: John C. Calhoun



7 Andrew Jackson

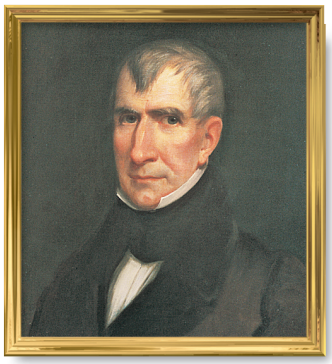
Born: 1767 **Died:** 1845
Years in Office: 1829–37
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Tennessee
Vice Presidents: John C. Calhoun, Martin Van Buren



8 Martin Van Buren

Born: 1782 **Died:** 1862
Years in Office: 1837–41
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: New York
Vice President: Richard M. Johnson

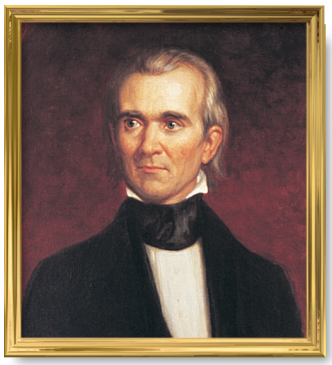
* The Republican Party of the third through sixth presidents is not the party of Abraham Lincoln, which was founded in 1854.



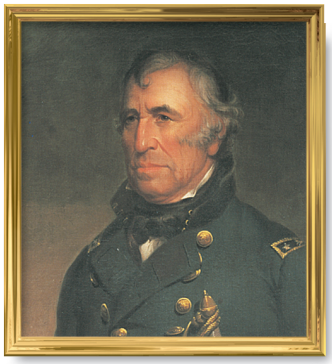
9 William Henry Harrison
Born: 1773 **Died:** 1841
Years in Office: 1841
Political Party: Whig
Home State: Ohio
Vice President: John Tyler



10 John Tyler
Born: 1790 **Died:** 1862
Years in Office: 1841–45
Political Party: Whig
Home State: Virginia
Vice President: None



11 James K. Polk
Born: 1795 **Died:** 1849
Years in Office: 1845–49
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Tennessee
Vice President: George M. Dallas



12 Zachary Taylor
Born: 1784 **Died:** 1850
Years in Office: 1849–50
Political Party: Whig
Home State: Louisiana
Vice President: Millard Fillmore



13 Millard Fillmore
Born: 1800 **Died:** 1874
Years in Office: 1850–53
Political Party: Whig
Home State: New York
Vice President: None



14 Franklin Pierce
Born: 1804 **Died:** 1869
Years in Office: 1853–57
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: New Hampshire
Vice President: William R. King



15 James Buchanan
Born: 1791 **Died:** 1868
Years in Office: 1857–61
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Pennsylvania
Vice President: John C. Breckinridge



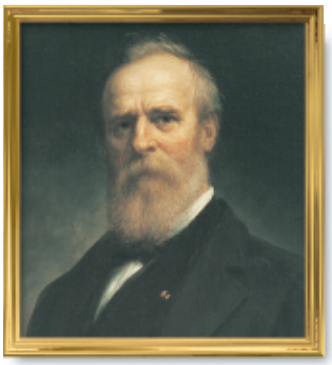
16 Abraham Lincoln
Born: 1809 **Died:** 1865
Years in Office: 1861–65
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Illinois
Vice Presidents: Hannibal Hamlin, Andrew Johnson



17 Andrew Johnson
Born: 1808 **Died:** 1875
Years in Office: 1865–69
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Tennessee
Vice President: None



18 Ulysses S. Grant
Born: 1822 **Died:** 1885
Years in Office: 1869–77
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Illinois
Vice Presidents: Schuyler Colfax, Henry Wilson



19 Rutherford B. Hayes
Born: 1822 **Died:** 1893
Years in Office: 1877–81
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Ohio
Vice President: William A. Wheeler



20 James A. Garfield
Born: 1831 **Died:** 1881
Years in Office: 1881
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Ohio
Vice President: Chester A. Arthur



21 Chester A. Arthur
Born: 1829 **Died:** 1886
Years in Office: 1881–85
Political Party: Republican
Home State: New York
Vice President: None



22 Grover Cleveland
Born: 1837 **Died:** 1908
Years in Office: 1885–89
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: New York
Vice President: Thomas A. Hendricks



23 Benjamin Harrison
Born: 1833 **Died:** 1901
Years in Office: 1889–93
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Indiana
Vice President: Levi P. Morton



24 Grover Cleveland
Born: 1837 **Died:** 1908
Years in Office: 1893–97
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: New York
Vice President: Adlai E. Stevenson



25 William McKinley
Born: 1843 **Died:** 1901
Years in Office: 1897–1901
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Ohio
Vice Presidents: Garret A. Hobart, Theodore Roosevelt



26 Theodore Roosevelt
Born: 1858 **Died:** 1919
Years in Office: 1901–09
Political Party: Republican
Home State: New York
Vice President: Charles W. Fairbanks



27 William Howard Taft
Born: 1857 **Died:** 1930
Years in Office: 1909–13
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Ohio
Vice President: James S. Sherman



28 Woodrow Wilson
Born: 1856 **Died:** 1924
Years in Office: 1913–21
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: New Jersey
Vice President: Thomas R. Marshall



29 Warren G. Harding
Born: 1865 **Died:** 1923
Years in Office: 1921–23
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Ohio
Vice President: Calvin Coolidge



30 Calvin Coolidge
Born: 1872 **Died:** 1933
Years in Office: 1923–29
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Massachusetts
Vice President: Charles G. Dawes



31 Herbert Hoover
Born: 1874 **Died:** 1964
Years in Office: 1929–33
Political Party: Republican
Home State: California
Vice President: Charles Curtis



32 Franklin D. Roosevelt
Born: 1882 **Died:** 1945
Years in Office: 1933–45
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: New York
Vice Presidents: John Nance Garner, Henry Wallace, Harry S Truman



33 Harry S Truman
Born: 1884 **Died:** 1972
Years in Office: 1945–53
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Missouri
Vice President: Alben W. Barkley



34 Dwight D. Eisenhower
Born: 1890 **Died:** 1969
Years in Office: 1953–61
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Kansas
Vice President: Richard M. Nixon



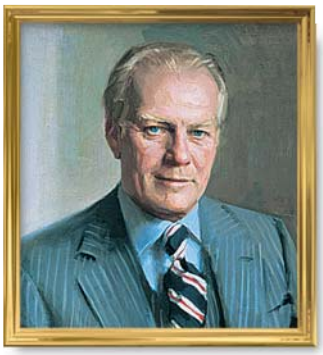
35 John F. Kennedy
Born: 1917 **Died:** 1963
Years in Office: 1961–63
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Massachusetts
Vice President: Lyndon B. Johnson



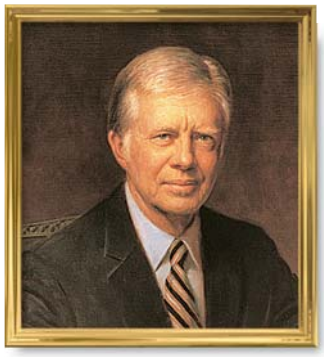
36 Lyndon B. Johnson
Born: 1908 **Died:** 1973
Years in Office: 1963–69
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Texas
Vice President: Hubert H. Humphrey



37 Richard M. Nixon
Born: 1913 **Died:** 1994
Years in Office: 1969–74
Political Party: Republican
Home State: California
Vice Presidents: Spiro T. Agnew, Gerald R. Ford



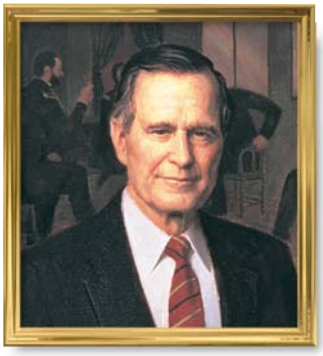
38 Gerald R. Ford
Born: 1913 **Died:** 2006
Years in Office: 1974–77
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Michigan
Vice President: Nelson A. Rockefeller



39 Jimmy Carter
Born: 1924
Years in Office: 1977–81
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Georgia
Vice President: Walter F. Mondale



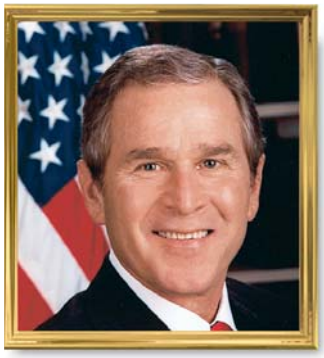
40 Ronald Reagan
Born: 1911 **Died:** 2004
Years in Office: 1981–89
Political Party: Republican
Home State: California
Vice President: George Bush



41 George Bush
Born: 1924
Years in Office: 1989–93
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Texas
Vice President: J. Danforth Quayle



42 Bill Clinton
Born: 1946
Years in Office: 1993–2001
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Arkansas
Vice President: Albert Gore Jr.



43 George W. Bush
Born: 1946
Years in Office: 2001–2009
Political Party: Republican
Home State: Texas
Vice President: Richard B. Cheney



44 Barack Obama
Born: 1961
Years in Office: 2009–
Political Party: Democratic
Home State: Illinois
Vice President: Joe Biden

Facts about the States

State	Year of Statehood	2006 Population	Area (Sq. Mi.)	Population Density (Sq. Mi.)	Capital
Alabama	1819	4,599,030	50,744	88.7	Montgomery
Alaska	1959	670,053	571,951	1.1	Juneau
Arizona	1912	6,166,318	113,635	49.1	Phoenix
Arkansas	1836	2,810,872	52,068	52.3	Little Rock
California	1850	36,457,549	155,959	227.5	Sacramento
Colorado	1876	4,753,377	103,718	43.9	Denver
Connecticut	1788	3,504,809	4,845	719.0	Hartford
Delaware	1787	853,476	1,954	418.4	Dover
District of Columbia	—	581,530	61	9,235.8	—
Florida	1845	18,089,888	53,927	315.6	Tallahassee
Georgia	1788	9,363,941	57,906	150.0	Atlanta
Hawaii	1959	1,285,498	6,423	195.8	Honolulu
Idaho	1890	1,466,465	82,747	16.5	Boise
Illinois	1818	12,831,970	55,584	227.6	Springfield
Indiana	1816	6,313,520	35,867	172.7	Indianapolis
Iowa	1846	2,982,085	55,869	52.7	Des Moines
Kansas	1861	2,764,075	81,815	33.3	Topeka
Kentucky	1792	4,206,074	39,728	103.7	Frankfort
Louisiana	1812	4,287,768	43,562	103.2	Baton Rouge
Maine	1820	1,321,574	30,862	42.3	Augusta
Maryland	1788	5,615,727	9,774	563.6	Annapolis
Massachusetts	1788	6,437,193	7,840	820.6	Boston
Michigan	1837	10,095,643	56,804	177.5	Lansing
Minnesota	1858	5,167,101	79,610	63.6	St. Paul

State	Year of Statehood	2006 Population	Area (Sq. Mi.)	Population Density (Sq. Mi.)	Capital
Mississippi	1817	2,910,540	46,907	61.4	Jackson
Missouri	1821	5,842,713	68,886	82.8	Jefferson City
Montana	1889	944,632	145,552	6.3	Helena
Nebraska	1867	1,768,331	76,872	22.6	Lincoln
Nevada	1864	2,495,529	109,826	20.4	Carson City
New Hampshire	1788	1,314,895	8,968	143.6	Concord
New Jersey	1787	8,724,560	7,417	1,164.7	Trenton
New Mexico	1912	1,954,599	121,356	15.4	Santa Fe
New York	1788	19,306,183	47,214	406.4	Albany
North Carolina	1789	8,856,505	48,711	172.6	Raleigh
North Dakota	1889	635,867	68,976	9.2	Bismarck
Ohio	1803	11,478,006	40,948	279.3	Columbus
Oklahoma	1907	3,579,212	68,667	51.1	Oklahoma City
Oregon	1859	3,700,758	95,997	37.1	Salem
Pennsylvania	1787	12,440,621	44,817	275.9	Harrisburg
Rhode Island	1790	1,067,610	1,045	1,029.8	Providence
South Carolina	1788	4,321,249	30,109	137.7	Columbia
South Dakota	1889	781,919	75,885	10.1	Pierre
Tennessee	1796	6,038,803	41,217	141.7	Nashville
Texas	1845	23,507,783	261,797	84.5	Austin
Utah	1896	2,550,063	82,144	28.6	Salt Lake City
Vermont	1791	623,908	9,250	66.9	Montpelier
Virginia	1788	7,642,884	39,594	186.6	Richmond
Washington	1889	6,395,798	66,544	92.1	Olympia
West Virginia	1863	1,818,470	24,078	75.2	Charleston
Wisconsin	1848	5,556,506	54,310	100.8	Madison
Wyoming	1890	515,004	97,100	5.2	Cheyenne

American Flag



The American flag is a symbol of the nation. It is recognized instantly, whether as a big banner waving in the wind or a tiny emblem worn on a lapel. The flag is so important that it is a major theme of the national anthem, "The Star-Spangled Banner." One of the most popular names for the flag is the Stars and Stripes. It is also known as Old Glory.

THE MEANING OF THE FLAG

The American flag has 13 stripes—7 red and 6 white. In the upper-left corner of the flag is the union—50 white five-pointed stars against a blue background.

The 13 stripes stand for the original 13 American states, and the 50 stars represent the states of the nation today. According to the U.S. Department of State, the colors of the flag also are symbolic:

Red stands for courage.

White symbolizes purity.

Blue is the color of vigilance, perseverance, and justice.

DISPLAYING THE FLAG

It is customary not to display the American flag in bad weather. It is also customary for the flag to be displayed outdoors only from sunrise to sunset, except on certain occasions. In a few special places, however, the flag is always flown day and night. When flown at night, the flag should be illuminated.

Near a speaker's platform, the flag should occupy the place of honor at the speaker's right. When carried in a parade with other flags, the American flag should be on the marching right or in front at the center. When flying with the flags of the 50 states, the national flag must be at the center and the highest point. In a group of national flags, all should be of equal size and all should be flown from staffs, or flagpoles, of equal height.

The flag should never touch the ground or the floor. It should not be marked with any insignia, pictures, or words. Nor should it be used in any disrespectful way—as an advertising decoration, for instance. The flag should never be dipped to honor any person or thing.

SALUTING THE FLAG

The United States, like other countries, has a flag code, or rules for displaying and honoring the flag. For example, all those present should stand at attention facing the flag and salute it when it is being raised or lowered or when it is carried past them in a parade or procession. A man wearing a hat should take it off and hold it with his right hand over his heart. All women and hatless men should stand with their right hands over their hearts to show their respect for the flag. The flag should also receive these honors during the playing of the national anthem and the reciting of the Pledge of Allegiance.

THE PLEDGE OF ALLEGIANCE

The Pledge of Allegiance was written in 1892 by Massachusetts magazine (*Youth's Companion*) editor Francis Bellamy. (Congress added the words "under God" in 1954.)

> ***I pledge allegiance to the flag of the United States of America and to the republic for which it stands, one nation under God, indivisible, with liberty and justice for all.***

Civilians should say the Pledge of Allegiance with their right hands placed over their hearts. People in the armed forces give the military salute. By saying the Pledge of Allegiance, we promise loyalty ("pledge allegiance") to the United States and its ideals.

"THE STAR-SPANGLED BANNER"

"The Star-Spangled Banner" is the national anthem of the United States. It was written by Francis Scott Key during the War of 1812. While being detained by the British aboard a ship on September 13–14, 1814, Key watched the British bombardment of Fort McHenry at Baltimore. The attack lasted 25 hours. The smoke was so thick that Key could not tell who had won. When the air cleared, Key saw the American flag that was still flying over the fort. "The Star-Spangled Banner" is sung to music written by British composer John Stafford Smith. In 1931 Congress designated "The Star-Spangled Banner" as the national anthem.

I

Oh, say, can you see, by the dawn's early light,
What so proudly we hailed at the twilight's last gleaming,
Whose broad stripes and bright stars through the perilous fight,
O'er the ramparts we watched were so gallantly streaming?
And the rockets' red glare, the bombs bursting in air,
Gave proof through the night that our flag was still there.
Oh, say, does that star-spangled banner yet wave
O'er the land of the free, and the home of the brave?

II

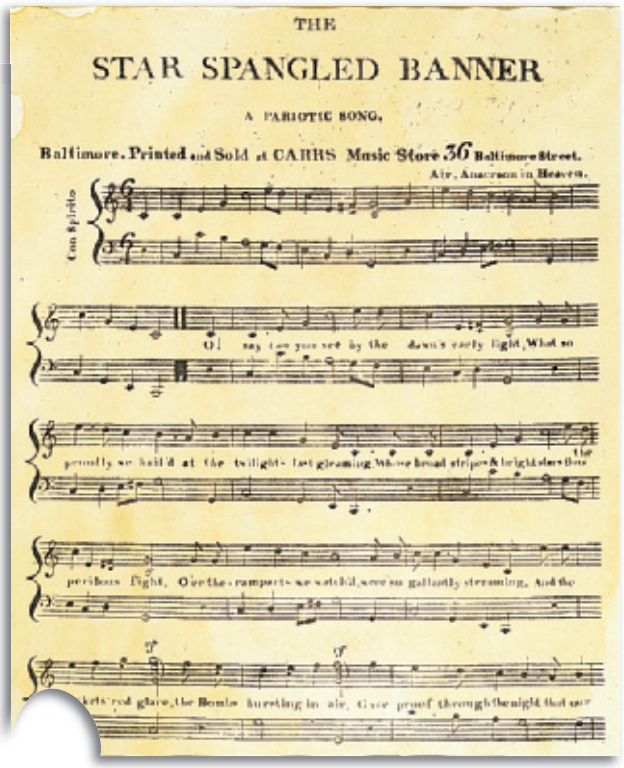
On the shore, dimly seen through the mists of the deep,
Where the foe's haughty host in dread silence reposes,
What is that which the breeze, o'er the towering steep,
As it fitfully blows, half conceals, half discloses?
Now it catches the gleam of the morning's first beam,
In full glory reflected, now shines on the stream.
'Tis the star-spangled banner; oh, long may it wave
O'er the land of the free, and the home of the brave!

III

And where is that band who so vauntingly swore
That the havoc of war and the battle's confusion
A home and a country should leave us no more?
Their blood has washed out their foul footsteps' pollution.
No refuge could save the hireling and slave
From the terror of flight, or the gloom of the grave:
And the star-spangled banner in triumph doth wave
O'er the land of the free, and the home of the brave!

IV

Oh! thus be it ever when freemen shall stand
Between their loved homes and the war's desolation!
Blest with victory and peace, may the heaven-rescued land
Praise the Power that hath made and preserved us a nation!
Then conquer we must, for our cause it is just,
And this be our motto: "In God is our trust!"
And the star-spangled banner in triumph shall wave,
O'er the land of the free, and the home of the brave!


THE
STAR SPANGLED BANNER
A PATRIOTIC SONG.
Baltimore. Printed and Sold at CARR'S Music Store 36 Baltimore Street.
Air, American in Heaven.

Sheet music to the national anthem

"AMERICA, THE BEAUTIFUL"

One of the most beloved songs celebrating our nation is "America, the Beautiful." Katharine Lee Bates first wrote the lyrics to the song in 1893 after visiting Colorado. The version of the song we know today is set to music by Samuel A. Ward. The first and last stanzas of "America, the Beautiful" are shown below.

O beautiful for spacious skies,
For amber waves of grain,
For purple mountain majesties
Above the fruited plain!
America! America!
God shed his grace on thee
And crown thy good with brotherhood
From sea to shining sea!

O beautiful for patriot dream
That sees beyond the years
Thine alabaster cities gleam
Undimmed by human tears!
America! America!
God shed his grace on thee
And crown thy good with brotherhood
From sea to shining sea!

Supreme Court Decisions

Marbury v. *Madison* (1803)

Significance This ruling established the Supreme Court's power of judicial review, by which the Court decides whether laws passed by Congress are constitutional. This decision greatly increased the prestige of the Court and gave the judiciary branch a powerful check against the legislative and executive branches.

Background William Marbury and several others were commissioned as judges by Federalist president John Adams during his last days in office. This act angered the new Democratic-Republican president, Thomas Jefferson. Jefferson ordered his secretary of state, James Madison, not to deliver the commissions. Marbury took advantage of a section in the Judiciary Act of 1789 that allowed him to take his case directly to the Supreme Court. He sued Madison, demanding the commission and the judgeship.

Decision This case was decided on February 24, 1803, by a vote of 5 to 0. Chief Justice John Marshall spoke for the Court, which decided against Marbury. The court ruled that although Marbury's commission had been unfairly withheld, he could not lawfully take his case to the Supreme Court without first trying it in a lower court. Marshall said that the section of the Judiciary Act that Marbury had used was actually unconstitutional and that the Constitution must take priority over laws passed by Congress.

McCulloch v. *Maryland* (1819)

Significance This ruling established that Congress had the constitutional power to charter a national bank. The case also established the principle of national supremacy, which states that the Constitution and other laws of the federal government take priority over state laws. In addition, the ruling reinforced the loose-construction interpretation of the Constitution favored by many Federalists.

Background In 1816 the federal government set up the Second Bank of the United States to stabilize the economy following the War of 1812. Many states were opposed to the competition provided by the new national bank. Some of these states passed heavy taxes on the Bank. The national bank refused to pay the taxes. This led the state of Maryland to sue James McCulloch, the cashier of the Baltimore, Maryland, branch of the national bank.

Decision This case was decided on March 6, 1819, by a vote of 7 to 0. Chief Justice John Marshall spoke for the unanimous Court, which ruled that the national bank was constitutional because it helped the federal government carry out other powers granted to it by the Constitution. The Court declared that any attempt by the states to interfere with the duties of the federal government could not be permitted.

Gibbons v. *Ogden* (1824)

Significance This ruling was the first case to deal with the clause of the Constitution that allows Congress to regulate interstate and foreign commerce. This case was important because it reinforced both the authority of the federal government over the states and the division of powers between the federal government and the state governments.

Background Steamboat operators who wanted to travel on New York waters had to obtain a state license. Thomas Gibbons had a federal license to travel along the coast, but not a state license for New York. He wanted the freedom to compete with state-licensed Aaron Ogden for steam travel between New Jersey and the New York island of Manhattan.

Decision This case was decided on March 2, 1824, by a vote of 6 to 0. Chief Justice John Marshall spoke for the Court, which ruled in favor of Gibbons. The Court stated that the congressional statute (Gibbons's federal license) took priority over the state statute (Ogden's state-monopoly license). The ruling also defined commerce as more than simply the exchange of goods, broadening it to include the transportation of people and the use of new inventions (such as the steamboat).



Supreme Court Building, Washington, D.C.

Worcester v. *Georgia* (1832)

Significance This ruling made Georgia's removal of the Cherokee illegal. However, Georgia, with President Andrew Jackson's support, defied the Court's decision. By not enforcing the Court's ruling, Jackson violated his constitutional oath as president. As a result, the Cherokee and other American Indian tribes continued to be forced off of lands protected by treaties.

Background The state of Georgia wanted to remove Cherokee Indians from lands they held by treaty. Samuel Worcester, a missionary who worked with the Cherokee Nation, was arrested for failing to take an oath of allegiance to the state and to obey a Georgia militia order to leave the Cherokee's lands. Worcester sued, charging that Georgia had no legal authority on Cherokee lands.

Decision This case was decided on March 3, 1832, by a vote of 5 to 1 in favor of Worcester. Chief Justice John Marshall spoke for the Supreme Court, which ruled that the Cherokee were an independent political community. The Court decided that only the federal government, not the state of Georgia, had authority over legal matters involving the Cherokee people.

Dred Scott v. *Sandford* (1857)

Significance This ruling denied enslaved African Americans U.S. citizenship and the right to sue in federal court. The decision also invalidated the Missouri Compromise, which had prevented slavery in territories north of the 36° 30′ line of latitude. The ruling increased the controversy over the expansion of slavery in new states and territories.

Background John Emerson, an army doctor, took his slave Dred Scott with him to live in Illinois and then Wisconsin Territory, both of which had banned slavery. In 1842 the two moved to Missouri, a slave state. Four years later, Scott sued for his freedom according to a Missouri legal principle of "once free, always free." The principle meant that a slave was entitled to freedom if he or she had once lived in a free state or territory.

Decision This case was decided March 6-7, 1857, by a vote of 7 to 2. Chief Justice Roger B. Taney spoke for the Court, which ruled that slaves did not have the right to sue in federal courts because they were considered property, not citizens. In addition, the Court ruled that Congress did not have the power to abolish slavery in territories because that power was not strictly defined in the Constitution. Furthermore, the Court overturned the once-free, always-free principle.

Civil Rights Cases (1883)

Significance This ruling struck down the Civil Rights Act of 1875. It allowed private businesses to discriminate based on race or color. The Court ruled that Congress could only make laws preventing states, not private individuals or companies, from discriminating.

Background Five separate cases were combined under this one decision. After the Civil Rights Act of 1875 was passed, individuals and private businesses continued to discriminate against former slaves and other African Americans. In the five separate cases, African Americans were denied the same accommodations that whites were provided.

Decision The case was decided on October 15, 1883, by a vote of 8 to 1. Justice Joseph P. Bradley wrote the opinion, which said of the 14th Amendment, "Individual invasion of individual rights is not the subject-matter of the amendment." Justice John Marshall Harlan was the lone dissenter, claiming that the 13th Amendment gave Congress the right to make the law. "The letter of the law is the body," he said. "[T]he sense and reason of the law is the soul."

Wabash, St. Louis & Pacific Railroad v. *Illinois* (1886)

Significance This ruling reversed an earlier decision in *Munn* v. *Illinois* and removed the power from the states to regulate railroad rates. It reasserted the authority of Congress over interstate commerce and led to the creation of the Interstate Commerce Commission.

Background The state of Illinois passed a law attempting to regulate the shipping rates of railroads that passed through the state, including the Wabash, St. Louis & Pacific line. In an attempt to operate without regulation, the railroad company sued the state.

Decision The Court struck down the Illinois law, saying that the state was able to regulate businesses that operated only within its boundaries. Businesses that operated between states were subject to regulation by the national government.

United States v. *E. C. Knight Co.* (1895)

Significance This ruling effectively put most monopolies out of the reach of the Sherman Antitrust Act of 1890. It declared that local manufacturing was out of the scope of the interstate-commerce regulatory power of Congress.

Background The E. C. Knight Company enjoyed a virtual monopoly of sugar refining within the United States. The federal government sued the company under the Sherman Antitrust Act in an attempt to break this monopoly and allow other companies to refine sugar.

Decision The court ruled that although the act was legal, it did not apply to manufacturing. Justice Melville Fuller said that manufacturing was not interstate commerce and could therefore not be regulated by Congress.

In Re Debs (1895)

Significance In this ruling the Court upheld the right of the federal government to halt strikes organized by union workers. After losing his case, Debs ran for president from his jail cell.

Background Railway union official Eugene V. Debs had organized a strike of union workers. The government petitioned him to halt the strike, and a court held him in contempt when he refused. Debs fought his conviction.

Decision In a unanimous decision, the Court declared that the federal government did have the power to order Debs to halt the strike. Justice David J. Brewer wrote the opinion of the Court, which stated the U.S. government "acts directly upon each citizen."

Plessy v. *Ferguson* (1896)

Significance This case upheld the constitutionality of racial segregation by ruling that separate facilities for different races were legal as long as those facilities were equal to one another. This case provided a legal justification for racial segregation for nearly 60 years until it was overturned by *Brown* v. *Board of Education* in 1954.

Background An 1890 Louisiana law required that all railway companies in the state use "separate-but-equal" railcars for white and African American passengers. A group of citizens in New Orleans banded together to challenge the law and chose Homer Plessy to test the law in 1892. Plessy took a seat in a whites-only coach, and when he refused to move, he was arrested. Plessy eventually sought review by the U.S. Supreme Court, claiming that the Louisiana law violated his Fourteenth Amendment right to equal protection.

Decision This case was decided on May 18, 1896, by a vote of 7 to 1. Justice Henry Billings Brown spoke for the Court, which upheld the constitutionality of the Louisiana law that segregated railcars. Justice John M. Harlan dissented, arguing that the Constitution should not be interpreted in ways that recognize class or racial distinctions.

Northern Securities Co. v. *United States* (1904)

Significance In this ruling the Court declared that the federal government had the right to break up companies if their formation was illegal, whether or not dissolving the company would have a harmful impact on the business community.

Background The Northern Securities Company held stock in several major railroads. Although President Theodore Roosevelt claimed the company was a trust and therefore illegal under the Sherman Antitrust Act, some disagreed that the idea of trusts extended into the realm of owning stocks.

Decision In a 5-to-4 decision, the Court ruled that the formation of the company was illegal, and that the federal government had the power to disband it. Writing for the majority, Justice John Marshall Harlan said, "every corporation created by a state is necessarily subject to the supreme law of the land," meaning the federal government.

Lochner v. *New York* (1905)

Significance This decision established the Supreme Court's role in overseeing state regulations. For more than 30 years, Lochner was often used as a precedent in striking down state laws such as minimum-wage laws, child labor laws, and regulations placed on the banking and transportation industries.

Background In 1895 the state of New York passed a labor law limiting bakers to working no more than 10 hours per day or 60 hours per week. The purpose of the law was to protect the health of bakers, who worked in hot and damp conditions and breathed in large quantities of flour dust. In 1902 Joseph Lochner, the owner of a small bakery in New York, claimed that the state law violated his Fourteenth Amendment rights by unfairly depriving him of the liberty to make contracts with employees. This case went to the U.S. Supreme Court.

Decision This case was decided on April 17, 1905, by a vote of 5 to 4 in favor of Lochner. The Supreme Court judged that the Fourteenth Amendment protected the right to sell and buy labor, and that any state law restricting that right was unconstitutional. The Court rejected the argument that the limited workday and workweek were necessary to protect the health of bakery workers.

Muller v. *Oregon* (1908)

Significance A landmark for cases involving social reform, this decision established the Court's recognition of social and economic conditions (in this case, women's health) as a factor in making laws.

Background In 1903 Oregon passed a law limiting workdays to 10 hours for female workers in laundries and factories. In 1905 Curt Muller's Grand Laundry was found guilty of breaking this law. Muller appealed, claiming that the state law violated his freedom of contract (the Supreme Court had upheld a similar claim that year in *Lochner* v. *New York*). When this case came to the Court, the National Consumers' League hired lawyer Louis D. Brandeis to present Oregon's argument. Brandeis argued that the Court had already defended the state's police power to protect its citizens' health, safety, and welfare.

Decision This case was decided on February 24, 1908, by a vote of 9 to 0 upholding the Oregon law. The Court agreed that women's well-being was in the state's public interest and that the 10-hour law was a valid way to protect their well-being.

Schechter Poultry Corporation v. United States (1935)

Significance This ruling declared that the United States could not regulate businesses that operated only within one state. It dealt a severe blow to President Franklin Roosevelt's New Deal.

Background In an attempt to lessen the effects of the Great Depression, Roosevelt encouraged Congress to pass a Recovery Act that set a minimum wage and restricted working hours. The Schechter Poultry Corporation, which operated only within New York City, maintained that the federal government did not have a constitutional right to regulate its businesses practices.

Decision In a unanimous decision, the Court upheld the Schechter Corporation's claim. Chief Justice Charles Evans Hughes wrote the opinion, which stated that the transactions in the case—wages, salaries, and working hours—were a local concern outside of the scope of federal regulation.

Korematsu v. United States (1944)

Significance This case addressed the question of whether government action that treats a racial group differently from other people violates the Equal Protection Clause of the Fourteenth Amendment. The ruling in the case held that distinctions based on race are "inherently suspect," and that laws and rules based on race must withstand "strict scrutiny" by the courts. The Court still applies the "strict scrutiny" standard today to cases involving race and other groups.

Background When the United States declared war on Japan in 1941, about 112,000 Japanese Americans lived on the West Coast. About 70,000 of these Japanese Americans were citizens. In 1942 the U.S. military was afraid that these people could not be trusted in wartime. They ordered most of the Japanese Americans to move to special camps far from their homes. Fred Korematsu, a Japanese American and an American citizen, did not go to the camps as ordered. He stayed in California and was arrested. He was sent to a camp in Utah. Korematsu then sued, claiming that the government acted illegally when it sent people of Japanese descent to camps.

Decision By a 6-to-3 margin, the Supreme Court said the orders moving the Japanese-Americans into the camps were constitutional. Justice Hugo Black wrote the opinion for the Court. He said that the unusual demands of wartime security justified the orders. However, he made it clear that distinctions based on race are "inherently suspect," and that laws based on race must withstand "strict scrutiny" by the courts. Justice Robert H. Jackson dissented; he wrote that Korematsu was "convicted of an act not commonly a crime … being present in the state [where] he is a citizen, near where he was born, and where all his life he has lived." Justice Frank Murphy, another dissenter, said the military order was based on racial prejudice.

Brown v. Board of Education (1954)

Significance This ruling reversed the Supreme Court's earlier position on segregation set by *Plessy v. Ferguson* (1896). The decision also inspired Congress and the federal courts to help carry out further civil rights reforms for African Americans.

Background Beginning in the 1930s, the National Association for the Advancement of Colored People (NAACP) began using the courts to challenge racial segregation in public education. In 1952 the NAACP took a number of school segregation cases to the Supreme Court. These included the Brown family's suit against the school board of Topeka, Kansas, over its "separate-but-equal" policy.

Decision This case was decided on May 17, 1954, by a vote of 9 to 0. Chief Justice Earl Warren spoke for the unanimous Court, which ruled that segregation in public education created inequality. The Court held that racial segregation in public schools was by nature unequal, even if the school facilities were equal. The Court noted that such segregation created feelings of inferiority that could not be undone. Therefore, enforced separation of the races in public education is unconstitutional.

Watkins v. *United States* (1957)

Significance The decision limited the inquiry powers of Congress. It was expected not to engage in law enforcement (an executive function), nor to act as a trial agency (a judicial function), but to inquire only as far as was necessary for the functioning of Congress.

Background Watkins was a labor union officer who appeared before the House Un-American Activities Committee during the 1950s Red Scare. Although he was willing to answer personal questions about himself and others whom he knew to be members of the Communist Party, he would not answer questions about past members of the Communist Party. He was therefore held in contempt of Congress.

Decision In a vote of 6 to 1 handed down on June 17, 1957, the Court threw out the charge of contempt against Watkins. Congress, it said, did not have the right to invade the private lives of individuals.

Mapp v. *Ohio* (1961)

Significance In this ruling the Court declared that evidence discovered in the process of an illegal search could not be used in state courts.

Background While searching for a bombing suspect, police found evidence of a separate crime in the house of Dollree Mapp. The police did not have permission to enter the home, nor did they have a search warrant. Upon conviction for the separate crime, Mapp appealed her case to the Supreme Court.

Decision In a 5-to-3 decision, the Court stated that convictions based on illegally obtained evidence must be overturned. Justice Tom Clark wrote for the majority, "all evidence obtained by searches and seizures in violation of the Constitution is … inadmissible in a state court."

Baker v. *Carr* (1962)

Significance Through this decision, the Court ruled that the judiciary branch may involve itself in hearing cases about political matters.

Background Voters from Tennessee sued their state in federal court, arguing that the way the state drew the boundary lines between representative districts created unequal representation within the legislature, and therefore unequal protection under the laws of the state. Tennessee argued that the federal court did not have the jurisdiction to hear the case.

Decision By a 6-to-2 margin, the Court decided that the federal court did have the right to hear the case and that the voters had the right to sue over the issue. Writing for the majority, Justice William Brennan said that the voters "are entitled to a trial and a decision" on whether they were denied equal protection.

Engel v. *Vitale* (1962)

Significance This case deals with the specific issue of organized prayer in schools and the broader issue of the proper relationship between government and religion under the First Amendment. The question in the case was whether a state violates the First Amendment when it composes a prayer that students must say at the beginning of each school day.

Background The state of New York recommended that public schools in the state begin the day by having students recite a prayer written by the state government. A group of parents sued to stop the official prayer, saying that it was contrary to their beliefs and their children's beliefs. They believed the law was unconstitutional because it "established" (officially supported) religion. Though students were permitted to remain silent, the parents claimed that there would always be pressure on students to pray.

Decision By a 6-to-1 margin (two justices did not take part in the case), the Court agreed with the parents. It struck down the state law. Justice Hugo Black wrote for the decision for the majority. He pointed out that the prayer was clearly religious. He said that under the First Amendment, "it is no part of the business of government to compose official prayers for any group of American people to recite as part of a religious program carried on by government." Black, referring to Jefferson and Madison, said "These men knew that the First Amendment, which tried to put an end to governmental control of religion and prayer, was not written to destroy either."

Gideon v. *Wainwright* (1963)

Significance This ruling was one of several key Supreme Court decisions establishing free legal help for those who cannot otherwise afford representation in court.

Background Clarence Earl Gideon was accused of robbery in Florida. Gideon could not afford a lawyer for his trial, and the judge refused to supply him with one for free. Gideon tried to defend himself and was found guilty. He eventually appealed to the U.S. Supreme Court, claiming that the lower court's denial of a court-appointed lawyer violated his Sixth and Fourteenth Amendment rights.

Decision This case was decided on March 18, 1963, by a vote of 9 to 0 in favor of Gideon. The Court agreed that the Sixth Amendment (which protects a citizen's right to have a lawyer for his or her defense) applied to the states because it fell under the due process clause of the Fourteenth Amendment. Thus, the states are required to provide legal aid to those defendants in criminal cases who cannot afford to pay for legal representation.

Heart of Atlanta Motel v. *United States* (1964)

Significance This ruling upheld the public accommodations clause of the Civil Rights Act of 1964. It enforced the right of African Americans to receive access to the same accommodations as whites and gave Congress judicial backing for passing more civil rights legislation.

Background The owner of the Heart of Atlanta Motel routinely discriminated against African Americans. He claimed that his business was not an interstate business and therefore not subject to regulation by congressional acts.

Decision In a unanimous decision, the Court declared that as a business that served people from across state boundaries, the Heart of Atlanta Motel was in fact an interstate business and that, therefore, congressional acts did apply.

Miranda v. *Arizona* (1966)

Significance This decision ruled that an accused person's Fifth Amendment rights begin at the time of arrest. The ruling caused controversy because it made the questioning of suspects and collecting evidence more difficult for law enforcement officers.

Background In 1963 Ernesto Miranda was arrested in Arizona for a kidnapping. Miranda signed a confession and was later found guilty of the crime. The arresting police officers, however, admitted that they had not told Miranda of his right to talk with an attorney before his confession. Miranda appealed his conviction on the grounds that by not informing him of his legal rights the police had violated his Fifth Amendment right against self-incrimination.

Decision This case was decided on June 13, 1966, by a vote of 5 to 4. Chief Justice Earl Warren spoke for the Court, which ruled in Miranda's favor. The Court decided that an accused person must be given four warnings after being taken into police custody: (1) the suspect has the right to remain silent, (2) anything the suspect says can and will be used against him or her, (3) the suspect has the right to consult with an attorney and to have an attorney present during questioning, and (4) if the suspect cannot afford a lawyer, one will be provided before questioning begins.

Tinker v. *Des Moines Independent Community School District* (1969)

Significance This ruling established the extent to which American public school students can take part in political protests in their schools. The question the case raised is whether, under the First Amendment, school officials can prohibit students from wearing armbands to symbolize political protest.

Background Students in Des Moines, Iowa, decided to wear black armbands to protest the Vietnam War. Two days before the protest, the school board created a new policy. The policy stated that any student who wore an armband to school and refused to remove it would be suspended. Three students wore armbands and were suspended. They said that their First Amendment right to freedom of speech had been violated. In 1969 the United States Supreme Court decided their case.

The Decision By a 7-to-2 margin, the Court agreed with the students. Justice Abe Fortas wrote the decision for the majority. He said that students do not "shed their constitutional rights to freedom of speech ... at the schoolhouse gate." Fortas admitted that school officials had the right to set rules. However, their rules must be consistent with the First Amendment. In this case, Des Moines school officials thought their rule was justified. They feared that the protest would disrupt learning. Fortas's opinion held that wearing an armband symbolizing political protest was a form of speech called symbolic speech. Symbolic speech is conduct that expresses an idea. Symbolic speech is protected in the same manner as the spoken word. Fortas wrote that student symbolic speech could be punished only if it disrupts the learning process. Fortas also noted that school officials allowed other political symbols, such as campaign buttons, to be worn in school.

Reed v. *Reed* (1971)

Significance This ruling was the first in a century of Fourteenth Amendment decisions to say that gender discrimination violated the equal protection clause. This case was later used to strike down other statutes that discriminated against women.

Background Cecil and Sally Reed were separated. When their son died without a will, the law gave preference to Cecil to be appointed the administrator of the son's estate. Sally sued Cecil for the right to administer the estate, challenging the gender preference in the law.

Decision This case was decided on November 22, 1971, by a vote of 7 to 0. Chief Justice Warren Burger spoke for the unanimous Supreme Court. Although the Court had upheld laws based on gender preference in the past, in this case it reversed its position. The Court declared that gender discrimination violated the equal protection clause of the Fourteenth Amendment and therefore could not be the basis for a law.

New York Times v. *United States* (1971)

Significance In this ruling the Court dismissed the idea of "prior restraint," or attempting to stop an action before it happens, by the government as unconstitutional. The ruling allowed the *New York Times* to continue publishing documents that were critical of the government's handling of the Vietnam War.

Background The *New York Times* began publishing a series of papers called the Pentagon Papers that were critical of the government. The government attempted to stop publication of the papers with a court order, citing national security. Because of the national importance of the case, the Supreme Court agreed to hear the case quickly.

Decision In a 6-to-3 decision, the Court declared that the government could not stop publication of the Pentagon Papers. Although the government did have the right to stop publication if it could prove the danger to national security, the Court said that in this case the government had not met the burden of proof.

Roe v. *Wade* (1973)

Significance This ruling made abortions available to women during their first trimester of pregnancy, even when their health was not in danger.

Background The case was brought in the name of Jane Roe against the restrictive abortion laws of Texas. Until this case, states had widely varying laws about the availability of abortions, some restricting them altogether.

Decision With a 7 to 2 decision, the Court said that elective abortions must be available to any woman in her first three months of pregnancy. Because of the variety of moral opinions about when life begins, the court ruled that a fetus does not have the same rights as an infant.

United States v. *Nixon* (1974)

Significance This ruling forced President Nixon to turn over tapes of White House conversations to the congressional committee investigating his wrongdoing in the Watergate breakin. Nixon resigned shortly after.

Background Nixon had been secretly taping every conversation that took place in the Oval Office. After the president was implicated in the cover-up of the Watergate Hotel break in, Congress wanted to hear these tapes. Nixon refused to hand them over, claiming "executive privilege" to keep some information secret.

Decision In a unanimous decision, the Court ruled that Nixon must turn the tapes over to the prosecution as requested. Writing for the court, Chief Justice Warren Burger stated that finding the truth requires that courts have all the evidence they need, even if it includes presidential communication.

New Jersey v. *TLO* (1985)

Significance In this ruling, the Court declared that searches of juveniles on school grounds are not subject to the same standards of "reasonableness" and "probable cause" that protect other citizens.

Background T. L. O. was a fourteen year old who was caught smoking in the girls' bathroom of her school. A principal at the school questioned the girl and searched her purse, finding marijuana and other drug paraphernalia.

Decision In a 7 to 2 decision, the Court ruled that the suspension of the rules of "reasonable" search and seizure as defined by the Fourth Amendment and later court rulings applied only to school officials and not to law enforcement officers.

Texas v. *Johnson* (1989)

Significance This ruling answered the question of whether the First Amendment protects burning the U.S. flag as a form of symbolic speech. It deals with the limits of symbolic speech. This case is particularly important because it involves burning the flag, one of our national symbols.

Background At the 1984 Republican National Convention in Texas, Gregory Lee Johnson doused a U.S. flag with kerosene. He did this during a demonstration, as a form of protest. Johnson was convicted of violating a Texas law that made it a crime to desecrate [treat disrespectfully] the national flag. He was sentenced to one year in prison and fined $2,000. The Texas Court of Criminal Appeals reversed the conviction because, it said, Johnson's burning of the flag was a form of symbolic speech protected by the First Amendment. Texas then appealed to the U.S. Supreme Court.

Decision The Court ruled for Johnson, five to four. Justice William Brennan wrote for the majority. He said that Johnson was within his constitutional rights when he burned the U.S. flag in protest. As in Tinker v. Des Moines Independent Community School District (1969), the Court looked at the First Amendment and "symbolic speech." Brennan concluded that Johnson's burning the flag was a form of symbolic speech—like the students wearing armbands in Des Moines—is protected by the First Amendment. According to Brennan, "Government may not prohibit the expression

of an idea [because it is] offensive." Chief Justice Rehnquist dissented. He said the flag is "the visible symbol embodying our Nation. It does not represent the views of any particular political party, and it does not represent any particular political philosophy. The flag is not simply another 'idea' or 'point of view' competing for recognition in the marketplace of ideas." Since this decision, several amendments banning flag burning have been proposed in Congress, but so far all have failed.

Cruzan v. *Director, Missouri Department of Health* (1990)

Significance This ruling helped define who may refuse medical treatment. Although the issue is still undecided, this case began a series of efforts to provide legislative and judicial guidelines for the "right to die."

Background The parents of comatose patient Nancy Cruzan wanted to remove her life support system. The Department of Health ruled that Cruzan had not previously made clear her desire to refuse medical treatment in the event of brain damage.

Decision By a 5-to-4 margin, the Court ruled that Cruzan's parents could not remove her from life support because she had not clearly expressed her desires previously. Writing for the majority, Chief Justice William Rehnquist stated that it was Nancy's demand to be removed from life support, not her parents' wishes, that the state must respect in such cases.

Planned Parenthood of Southeastern Pennsylvania, et al. v. *Casey* (1992)

Significance In this ruling the Court upheld its decision in *Roe* v. *Wade* of the right to elective abortion, but allowed the state of Pennsylvania to impose restrictions of notification and consent upon minors.

Background In 1988 and 1989, Pennsylvania revised its laws to require that, to receive an abortion, minors must receive consent from a parent, and married women must notify their husbands. The laws were challenged by several abortion clinics and physicians.

Decision In a 5-to-4 decision, the Court upheld its previous ruling of *Roe* v. *Wade* that women have the right to an abortion in the first trimester of pregnancy, but provided that a state may require that minors have the consent of one parent 24 hours before the procedure. The Court struck down the part of the Pennsylvania laws that required married women to notify their husbands, saying that it could be an "undue burden" upon women.

Vernonia School District v. *Acton* (1995)

Significance This ruling allowed random drug testing of minors on school property as a safety measure.

Background James Acton, a student athlete in the Vernonia School District, refused to participate in drug testing, stating that the policy invaded his right to privacy and was an illegal search and seizure.

Decision In a 6-to-3 decision, the Court ruled that while on school property, students are subject to greater control of personal rights than are free adults. Furthermore, concern over the safety of minors under governmental supervision outweighs the minimal intrusion into a student's privacy.

Bush v. *Gore* (2000)

Significance In this ruling, the question before the court was whether ballots that could not be read by voting machines should be recounted by hand. The broader issues were whether the Supreme Court can overrule state court decisions on state laws, and whether an appointed judiciary can affect the result of democratic elections.

Background The 2000 presidential election between Democrat Al Gore and Republican George Bush was very close. Ultimately, the outcome would be determined by votes in the state of Florida. People in Florida voted by punching a hole in a ballot card. The votes were counted by a machine that detected these holes. According to that count, Bush won the state of Florida by a few hundred votes. Florida's Election Commission declared that Bush had won Florida. However, about 60,000 ballots were not counted because the machines could not detect a hole in the ballot. Gore argued in the Florida Supreme Court that these votes should be recounted by hand. The Florida Supreme Court ordered counties to recount all those votes. Bush appealed to the United States Supreme Court, which issued an order to stop the recounts while it made a decision.

The Decision On December 12, 2000, the Supreme Court voted 5 to 4 to end the hand recount of votes ordered by the Florida Supreme Court. The majority said that the Florida Supreme Court had ordered a recount without setting standards for what was a valid vote. Different vote-counters might use different standards. The Court said that this inconsistency meant that votes were treated arbitrarily—based on a person's choice rather than on standards. This arbitrariness, said the Court, violated the due process clause and the equal protection clause of the Constitution. Also, the justices said that Florida law required the vote count to be finalized by December 12. The justices said that rules for recounts could not be made by that date, so they ordered election officials to stop recounting votes.

Gratz v. Bollinger and *Grutter v. Bollinger* (2003)

Significance These cases considered whether a university violates the Constitution by using race as a factor for admitting students to its undergraduate school and its law school. The ruling affects use of affirmative action programs in higher education. The decisions gave colleges guidelines as to what is permitted and what is not. The decisions were limited to higher education and may not apply to other affirmative action programs such as those for applying for a job or for a government contract.

Background Jennifer Gratz and Barbara Grutter are both white. They challenged the University of Michigan's affirmative action admissions policies. Gratz said that the university violated the Constitution by considering race as a factor in its undergraduate admissions programs. Grutter claimed that the University of Michigan Law School did so.

Decisions In Gratz, the Court ruled 6 to 3 that the undergraduate program—which gave each minority applicant an automatic 20 points toward admission—was unconstitutional. Chief Justice William Rehnquist's opinion held that the policy violated the equal protection clause because it did not consider each applicant individually. "The ... automatic distribution of 20 points has the effect of making 'the factor of race ... decisive' for virtually every minimally qualified underrepresented minority applicant." The result was different when the Court turned to the affirmative action policy of Michigan's Law School, however, which used race as one factor for admission. In Grutter, by a 5-to-4 margin, the Court held that this policy did not violate the equal protection clause. Justice Sandra Day O'Connor wrote for the majority. "Truly individualized consideration demands that race be used in a flexible, nonmechanical way ... Universities can ... consider race or ethnicity ... as a 'plus' factor [when individually considering] each and every applicant." Thus, the law school's policy was constitutional.

United States v. *American Library Association* (2003)

Significance This case deals with the constitutionality of a federal law called the Children's Internet Protection Act (CIPA). The law was designed to protect children from being exposed to pornographic Web sites while using computers in public libraries. The question before the court was this: Does a public library violate the First Amendment by installing Internet filtering software on its public computers?

Background CIPA applies to public libraries that accept federal money to help pay for Internet access. These libraries must install filtering software to block pornographic images. Some library associations sued to block these filtering requirements. They argued that by linking money and filters, the law required public libraries to violate the First Amendment's guarantees of free speech. The libraries argued that filters block some nonpornographic sites along with pornographic ones. That, they said, violates library patrons' First Amendment rights. CIPA does allow anyone to ask a librarian to unblock a specific Web site. It also allows adults to ask that the filter be turned off altogether. But, the libraries argued, people using the library would find these remedies embarrassing and impractical.

Decision In this case, Chief Justice William Rehnquist authored a plurality opinion. He explained that the law does not require any library to accept federal money. A library can choose to do without federal money. If the library makes that choice, it does not have to install Internet filters. And Rehnquist did not think that filtering software's tendency to overblock nonpornographic sites was a constitutional problem. Adult patrons could simply ask a librarian to unblock a blocked site or could have the filter disabled entirely.

The Dissents Justice John Paul Stevens viewed CIPA "as a blunt nationwide restraint on adult access to an enormous amount of valuable" and often constitutionally protected speech. Justice David Souter noted that he would have joined the plurality if the First Amendment interests raised in this case were those of children rather than those of adults.

Hamdi v. *Rumsfeld* and *Rasul* v. *Bush* (2004)

Significance These cases addressed the balance between the government's powers to fight terrorism and the Constitution's promise of due process. Each case raised a slightly different question:

1. Can the government hold American citizens for an indefinite period as "enemy combatants" and not permit them access to American courts, and

2. Do foreigners captured overseas and jailed at Guantánamo Bay, Cuba, have the right to take their cases to American courts to decide if they are being held legally?

Background In *Hamdi* v. *Rumsfeld*, Yaser Hamdi, an American citizen, was captured in Afghanistan in 2001. The U.S. military said Hamdi was an enemy combatant and claimed that "it has the authority to hold ... enemy combatants captured on the battlefield ... to prevent them from returning to the battle." Hamdi's attorney said that Hamdi deserved the due process rights that other Americans have, including a hearing in court to argue that he was not an enemy combatant.

The prisoners in *Rasul* v. *Bush* also claimed they were wrongly imprisoned. They wanted a court hearing, but Guantánamo Bay Naval Base is on Cuban soil. Cuba leases the base to the United States. In an earlier case, the Court had ruled that "if an alien is outside the country's sovereign territory, then ... the alien is not permitted access to the courts of the United States to enforce the Constitution."

Decision In *Hamdi*, the Court ruled 6 to 3 that Hamdi had a right to a hearing. Justice Sandra Day O'Connor wrote that the Court has "made clear that a state of war is not a blank check for the president when it comes to the rights of the nation's citizens." The government decided not to prosecute Hamdi. In *Rasul*, also decided 6 to 3, Justice John Paul Stevens wrote that the prisoners had been held for more than two years in territory under U.S. control. Thus, even though the prisoners are not on U.S. soil, they can ask U.S. courts if their detention is legal. The *Rasul* cases were still pending when this book was printed.

New York Constitution

The state of New York has had five different constitutions, the first of which was adopted in 1777. The current constitution was adopted in 1938. Like other state constitutions and the federal constitution, the document establishes the structure of the government and provides a framework for the passage and enforcement of specific laws. Below is an excerpt from the current New York state constitution.

THE CONSTITUTION OF NEW YORK

***[Preamble]**

We The People of the State of New York, grateful to Almighty God for our Freedom, in order to secure its blessings, DO ESTABLISH THIS CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE I

Bill Of Rights

[Rights, privileges and franchise secured; power of legislature to dispense with primary elections in certain cases]

Section 1. No member of this state shall be disfranchised, or deprived of any of the rights or privileges secured to any citizen thereof, unless by the law of the land, or the judgment of his or her peers, except that the legislature may provide that there shall be no primary election held to nominate candidates for public office or to elect persons to party positions for any political party or parties in any unit of representation of the state from which such candidates or persons are nominated or elected whenever there is no contest or contests for such nominations or election as may be prescribed by general law. (Amended by vote of the people November 3, 1959; November 7, 2001.)**

[Trial by jury; how waived]

§2. Trial by jury in all cases in which it has heretofore been guaranteed by constitutional provision shall remain inviolate forever; but a jury trial may be waived by the parties in all civil cases in the manner to be prescribed by law. The legislature may provide, however, by law, that a verdict may be rendered by not less than five-sixths of the jury in any civil case. A jury trial may be waived by the defendant in all criminal cases, except those in which the crime charged may be punishable by death, by a written instrument signed by the defendant in person in open court before and with the approval of a judge or justice of a court having jurisdiction to try the offense. The legislature may enact laws, not inconsistent herewith, governing the form, content, manner and time of presentation of the instrument effectuating such waiver. (Amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Freedom of worship; religious liberty]

§3. The free exercise and enjoyment of religious profession and worship, without discrimination or preference, shall forever be allowed in this state to all humankind;

(continued next page)

and no person shall be rendered incompetent to be a witness on account of his or her opinions on matters of religious belief; but the liberty of conscience hereby secured shall not be so construed as to excuse acts of licentiousness, or justify practices inconsistent with the peace or safety of this state. (Amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

[Habeas corpus]
§4. The privilege of a writ or order of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless, in case of rebellion or invasion, the public safety requires it. (Amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Bail; fines; punishments; detention of witnesses]
§5. Excessive bail shall not be required nor excessive fines imposed, nor shall cruel and unusual punishments be inflicted, nor shall witnesses be unreasonably detained.

[Grand jury; protection of certain enumerated rights; duty of public officers to sign waiver of immunity and give testimony; penalty for refusal]
§6. No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime (except in cases of impeachment, and in cases of militia when in actual service, and the land, air and naval forces in time of war, or which this state may keep with the consent of congress in time of peace, and in cases of petit larceny under the regulation of the legislature), unless on indictment of a grand jury, except that a person held for the action of a grand jury upon a charge for such an offense, other than one punishable by death or life imprisonment, with the consent of the district attorney, may waive indictment by a grand jury and consent to be prosecuted on an information filed by the district attorney; such waiver shall be evidenced by written instrument signed by the defendant in open court in the presence of his or her counsel. In any trial in any court whatever the party accused shall be allowed to appear and defend in person and with counsel as in civil actions and shall be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation and be confronted with the witnesses against him or her. No person shall be subject to be twice put in jeopardy for the same offense; nor shall he or she be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself or herself, providing, that any public officer who, upon being called before a grand jury to testify concerning the conduct of his or her present office or of any public office held by him or her within five years prior to such grand jury call to testify, or the performance of his or her official duties in any such present or prior offices, refuses to sign a waiver of immunity against subsequent criminal prosecution, or to answer any relevant question concerning such matters before such grand jury, shall by virtue of such refusal, be disqualified from holding any other public office or public employment for a period of five years from the date of such refusal to sign a waiver of immunity against subsequent prosecution, or to answer any relevant question concerning such matters before such grand jury, and shall be removed from his or her present office by the appropriate authority or shall forfeit his or her present office at the suit of the attorney-general. The power of grand juries to inquire into the wilful misconduct in office of public officers, and to find indictments or to direct the filing of informations in connection with such inquiries, shall never be suspended or impaired by law. No person shall be deprived of life, liberty or property without due process of law. (Amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and

(continued next page)

approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 8, 1949; November 3, 1959; November 6, 1973; November 7, 2001.)

[Compensation for taking private property; private roads; drainage of agricultural lands]
§7. (a) Private property shall not be taken for public use without just compensation. (c) Private roads may be opened in the manner to be prescribed by law; but in every case the necessity of the road and the amount of all damage to be sustained by the opening thereof shall be first determined by a jury of freeholders, and such amount, together with the expenses of the proceedings, shall be paid by the person to be benefitted. (d) The use of property for the drainage of swamp or agricultural lands is declared to be a public use, and general laws may be passed permitting the owners or occupants of swamp or agricultural lands to construct and maintain for the drainage thereof, necessary drains, ditches and dykes upon the lands of others, under proper restrictions, on making just compensation, and such compensation together with the cost of such drainage may be assessed, wholly or partly, against any property benefitted thereby; but no special laws shall be enacted for such purposes. (Amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938. Subdivision (e) repealed by vote of the people November 5, 1963. Subdivision (b) repealed by vote of the people November 3, 1964.)

[Freedom of speech and press; criminal prosecutions for libel]
§8. Every citizen may freely speak, write and publish his or her sentiments on all subjects, being responsible for the abuse of that right; and no law shall be passed to restrain or abridge the liberty of speech or of the press. In all criminal prosecutions or indictments for libels, the truth may be given in evidence to the jury; and if it shall appear to the jury that the matter charged as libelous is true, and was published with good motives and for justifiable ends, the party shall be acquitted; and the jury shall have the right to determine the law and the fact. (Amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

[Right to assemble and petition; divorce; lotteries; pool-selling and gambling; laws to prevent; pari-mutual betting on horse races permitted; games of chance, bingo or lotto authorized under certain restrictions]
§9. 1. No law shall be passed abridging the rights of the people peaceably to assemble and to petition the government, or any department thereof; nor shall any divorce be granted otherwise than by due judicial proceedings; except as hereinafter provided, no lottery or the sale of lottery tickets, pool-selling, book-making, or any other kind of gambling, except lotteries operated by the state and the sale of lottery tickets in connection therewith as may be authorized and prescribed by the legislature, the net proceeds of which shall be applied exclusively to or in aid or support of education in this state as the legislature may prescribe, and except pari-mutual betting on horse races as may be prescribed by the legislature and from which the state shall derive a reasonable revenue for the support of government, shall hereafter be authorized or allowed within this state; and the legislature shall pass appropriate laws to prevent offenses against any of the provisions of this section.
2. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this section, any city, town or village within the state may by an approving vote of the majority of the qualified electors in

(continued next page)

such municipality voting on a proposition therefor submitted at a general or special election authorize, subject to state legislative supervision and control, the conduct of one or both of the following categories of games of chance commonly known as: (a) bingo or lotto, in which prizes are awarded on the basis of designated numbers or symbols on a card conforming to numbers or symbols selected at random; (b) games in which prizes are awarded on the basis of a winning number or numbers, color or colors, or symbol or symbols determined by chance from among those previously selected or played, whether determined as the result of the spinning of a wheel, a drawing or otherwise by chance. If authorized, such games shall be subject to the following restrictions, among others which may be prescribed by the legislature: (1) only bona fide religious, charitable or non-profit organizations of veterans, volunteer firefighter and similar non-profit organizations shall be permitted to conduct such games; (2) the entire net proceeds of any game shall be exclusively devoted to the lawful purposes of such organizations; (3) no person except a bona fide member of any such organization shall participate in the management or operation of such game; and (4) no person shall receive any remuneration for participating in the management or operation of any such game. Unless otherwise provided by law, no single prize shall exceed two hundred fifty dollars, nor shall any series of prizes on one occasion aggregate more than one thousand dollars. The legislature shall pass appropriate laws to effectuate the purposes of this subdivision, ensure that such games are rigidly regulated to prevent commercialized gambling, prevent participation by criminal and other undesirable elements and the diversion of funds from the purposes authorized hereunder and establish a method by which a municipality which has authorized such games may rescind or revoke such authorization. Unless permitted by the legislature, no municipality shall have the power to pass local laws or ordinances relating to such games. Nothing in this section shall prevent the legislature from passing laws more restrictive than any of the provisions of this section. (Amendment approved by vote of the people November 7, 1939; further amended by vote of the people November 5, 1957; November 8, 1966; November 4, 1975; November 6, 1984; November 7, 2001.)

[Section 10 which dealt with ownership of lands, yellowtail tenures and escheat was repealed by amendment approved by vote of the people November 6, 1962]

[Equal protection of laws; discrimination in civil rights prohibited]

§11. No person shall be denied the equal protection of the laws of this state or any subdivision thereof. No person shall, because of race, color, creed or religion, be subjected to any discrimination in his or her civil rights by any other person or by any firm, corporation, or institution, or by the state or any agency or subdivision of the state. (New. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

[Security against unreasonable searches, seizures and interceptions]

§12. The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized. The right of the people to be secure against unreasonable interception of telephone and telegraph communications shall not be violated, and ex parte orders or warrants shall issue only

(continued next page)

upon oath or affirmation that there is reasonable ground to believe that evidence of crime may be thus obtained, and identifying the particular means of communication, and particularly describing the person or persons whose communications are to be intercepted and the purpose thereof. (New. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Section 13 which dealt with purchase of lands of Indians was repealed by amendment approved by vote of the people November 6, 1962]
[Common law and acts of the colonial and state legislatures]
§14. Such parts of the common law, and of the acts of the legislature of the colony of New York, as together did form the law of the said colony, on the nineteenth day of April, one thousand seven hundred seventy-five, and the resolutions of the congress of the said colony, and of the convention of the State of New York, in force on the twentieth day of April, one thousand seven hundred seventy-seven, which have not since expired, or been repealed or altered; and such acts of the legislature of this state as are now in force, shall be and continue the law of this state, subject to such alterations as the legislature shall make concerning the same. But all such parts of the common law, and such of the said acts, or parts thereof, as are repugnant to this constitution, are hereby abrogated.
(Formerly §16. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Section 15 which dealt with certain grants of lands and of charters made by the king of Great Britain and the state and obligations and contracts not to be impaired was repealed by amendment approved by vote of the people November 6, 1962]

[Damages for injuries causing death]
§16. The right of action now existing to recover damages for injuries resulting in death, shall never be abrogated; and the amount recoverable shall not be subject to any statutory limitation. (Formerly §18. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Labor not a commodity; hours and wages in public work; right to organize and bargain collectively]
§17. Labor of human beings is not a commodity nor an article of commerce and shall never be so considered or construed. No laborer, worker or mechanic, in the employ of a contractor or subcontractor engaged in the performance of any public work, shall be permitted to work more than eight hours in any day or more than five days in any week, except in cases of extraordinary emergency; nor shall he or she be paid less than the rate of wages prevailing in the same trade or occupation in the locality within the state where such public work is to be situated, erected or used. Employees shall have the right to organize and to bargain collectively through representatives of their own choosing. (New. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

[Workers' compensation]
§18. Nothing contained in this constitution shall be construed to limit the power of the legislature to enact laws for the protection of the lives, health, or safety of

(continued next page)

employees; or for the payment, either by employers, or by employers and employees or otherwise, either directly or through a state or other system of insurance or otherwise, of compensation for injuries to employees or for death of employees resulting from such injuries without regard to fault as a cause thereof, except where the injury is occasioned by the wilful intention of the injured employee to bring about the injury or death of himself or herself or of another, or where the injury results solely from the intoxication of the injured employee while on duty; or for the adjustment, determination and settlement, with or without trial by jury, of issues which may arise under such legislation; or to provide that the right of such compensation, and the remedy therefor shall be exclusive of all other rights and remedies for injuries to employees or for death resulting from such injuries; or to provide that the amount of such compensation for death shall not exceed a fixed or determinable sum; provided that all moneys paid by an employer to his or her employees or their legal representatives, by reason of the enactment of any of the laws herein authorized, shall be held to be a proper charge in the cost of operating the business of the employer. (Formerly §19. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

ARTICLE II

SUFFRAGE

[Qualifications of voters]
Section 1. Every citizen shall be entitled to vote at every election for all officers elected by the people and upon all questions submitted to the vote of the people provided that such citizen is eighteen years of age or over and shall have been a resident of this state, and of the county, city, or village for thirty days next preceding an election. . . .

ARTICLE III

LEGISLATURE

[Legislative power]
Section 1. The legislative power of this state shall be vested in the senate and assembly.

[Number and terms of senators and assemblymen]
§2. The senate shall consist of fifty members, except as hereinafter provided. The senators elected in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety-five shall hold their offices for three years, and their successors shall be chosen for two years. The assembly shall consist of one hundred and fifty members. The assembly members elected in the year one thousand nine hundred and thirty-eight, and their successors, shall be chosen for two years. (Amended by vote of the people November 2, 1937; November 7, 2001.)

***[Senate districts]**
§3. The senate districts described in section three of article three of this constitution as adopted by the people on November sixth, eighteen hundred ninety-four are hereby continued for all of the purposes of future reapportionments of senate districts

(continued next page)

pursuant to section four of this article. (Formerly §3. Repealed and replaced by new §3 amended by vote of the people November 6, 1962.)

. . .

[Apportionment of assemblymen; creation of assembly districts]

§5. The members of the assembly shall be chosen by single districts and shall be apportioned by the legislature at each regular session at which the senate districts are readjusted or altered, and by the same law, among the several counties of the state, as nearly as may be according to the number of their respective inhabitants, excluding aliens. Every county heretofore established and separately organized, except the county of Hamilton, shall always be entitled to one member of assembly, and no county shall hereafter be erected unless its population shall entitle it to a member. The county of Hamilton shall elect with the county of Fulton, until the population of the county of Hamilton shall, according to the ratio, entitle it to a member. But the legislature may abolish the said county of Hamilton and annex the territory thereof to some other county or counties.

The quotient obtained by dividing the whole number of inhabitants of the state, excluding aliens, by the number of members of assembly, shall be the ratio for apportionment, which shall be made as follows: One member of assembly shall be apportioned to every county, including Fulton and Hamilton as one county, containing less than the ratio and one-half over. Two members shall be apportioned to every other county. The remaining members of assembly shall be apportioned to the counties having more than two ratios according to the number of inhabitants, excluding aliens. Members apportioned on remainders shall be apportioned to the counties having the highest remainders in the order thereof respectively. No county shall have more members of assembly than a county having a greater number of inhabitants, excluding aliens.

*The assembly districts, including the present ones, as existing immediately before the enactment of a law making an apportionment of members of assembly among the counties, shall continue to be the assembly districts of the state until the expiration of the terms of members then in office, except for the purpose of an election of members of assembly for full terms beginning at such expirations.

In any county entitled to more than one member, the board of supervisors, and in any city embracing an entire county and having no board of supervisors, the common council, or if there be none, the body exercising the powers of a common council, shall assemble at such times as the legislature making an apportionment shall prescribe, and divide such counties into assembly districts as nearly equal in number of inhabitants, excluding aliens, as may be, of convenient and contiguous territory in as compact form as practicable, each of which shall be wholly within a senate district formed under the same apportionment, equal to the number of members of assembly to which such county shall be entitled, and shall cause to be filed in the office of the secretary of state and of the clerk of such county, a description of such districts, specifying the number of each district and of the inhabitants thereof, excluding aliens, according to the census or enumeration used as the population basis for the formation of such districts; and such apportionment and districts shall remain unaltered until after the next reapportionment of members of assembly, except that the board of supervisors of any county containing a town having more than a ratio of apportionment and one-half over may alter the assembly districts in a senate district containing such town at any time on or before March first, nineteen hundred forty-six. In counties having more than one senate district, the

(continued next page)

same number of assembly districts shall be put in each senate district, unless the assembly districts cannot be evenly divided among the senate districts of any county, in which case one more assembly district shall be put in the senate district in such county having the largest, or one less assembly district shall be put in the senate district in such county having the smallest number of inhabitants, excluding aliens, as the case may require. No town, except a town having more than a ratio of apportionment and one-half over, and no block in a city inclosed by streets or public ways, shall be divided in the formation of assembly districts, nor shall any districts contain a greater excess in population over an adjoining district in the same senate district, than the population of a town or block therein adjoining such assembly district. Towns or blocks which, from their location may be included in either of two districts, shall be so placed as to make said districts most nearly equal in number of inhabitants, excluding aliens. Nothing in this section shall prevent the division, at any time, of counties and towns and the erection of new towns by the legislature. An apportionment by the legislature, or other body, shall be subject to review by the supreme court, at the suit of any citizen, under such reasonable regulations as the legislature may prescribe; and any court before which a cause may be pending involving an apportionment, shall give precedence thereto over all other causes and proceedings, and if said court be not in session it shall convene promptly for the disposition of the same. (Amended by vote of the people November 6, 1945.)

. . .

[Powers of each house]

§9. A majority of each house shall constitute a quorum to do business. Each house shall determine the rules of its own proceedings, and be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members; shall choose its own officers; and the senate shall choose a temporary president and the assembly shall choose a speaker. (Formerly §10. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938. Amended by vote of the people November 5, 1963.)

. . .

[Bills may originate in either house; may be amended by the other]

§12. Any bill may originate in either house of the legislature, and all bills passed by one house may be amended by the other. (Formerly §13. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

. . .

[Two-thirds bills]

§20. The assent of two-thirds of the members elected to each branch of the legislature shall be requisite to every bill appropriating the public moneys or property for local or private purposes.

. . .

[When yeas and nays necessary; three-fifths to constitute quorum]

§23. On the final passage, in either house of the legislature, of any act which imposes, continues or revives a tax, or creates a debt or charge, or makes, continues or revives any appropriation of public or trust money or property, or releases, discharges or commutes any claim or demand of the state, the question shall be taken by yeas and nays, which shall be duly entered upon the journals, and three-fifths of all the members elected to either house shall, in all such cases, be necessary to constitute a quo-

(continued next page)

rum therein. (Formerly §25. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)
. . .

ARTICLE IV

EXECUTIVE

[Executive power; election and terms of governor and lieutenant-governor]
Section 1. The executive power shall be vested in the governor, who shall hold office for four years; the lieutenant-governor shall be chosen at the same time, and for the same term. The governor and lieutenant- governor shall be chosen at the general election held in the year nineteen hundred thirty-eight, and each fourth year thereafter. They shall be chosen jointly, by the casting by each voter of a single vote applicable to both offices, and the legislature by law shall provide for making such choice in such manner. The respective persons having the highest number of votes cast jointly for them for governor and lieutenant-governor respectively shall be elected. (Amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 3, 1953; November 7, 2001.)

[Qualifications of governor and lieutenant-governor]
§2. No person shall be eligible to the office of governor or lieutenantgovernor, except a citizen of the United States, of the age of not less than thirty years, and who shall have been five years next preceding the election a resident of this state. (Amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

[Powers and duties of governor; compensation]
§3. The governor shall be commander-in-chief of the military and naval forces of the state. The governor shall have power to convene the legislature, or the senate only, on extraordinary occasions. At extraordinary sessions convened pursuant to the provisions of this section no subject shall be acted upon, except such as the governor may recommend for consideration. The governor shall communicate by message to the legislature at every session the condition of the state, and recommend such matters to it as he or she shall judge expedient. The governor shall expedite all such measures as may be resolved upon by the legislature, and shall take care that the laws are faithfully executed. The governor shall receive for his or her services an annual salary to be fixed by joint resolution of the senate and assembly, and there shall be provided for his or her use a suitable and furnished executive residence. (Formerly §4. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 3, 1953; November 5, 1963; November 7, 2001.)

[Reprieves, commutations and pardons; powers and duties of governor relating to grants of]
§4. The governor shall have the power to grant reprieves, commutations and pardons after conviction, for all offenses except treason and cases of impeachment, upon such conditions and with such restrictions and limitations, as he or she may think proper,

(continued next page)

subject to such regulations as may be provided by law relative to the manner of applying for pardons. Upon conviction for treason, the governor shall have power to suspend the execution of the sentence, until the case shall be reported to the legislature at its next meeting, when the legislature shall either pardon, or commute the sentence, direct the execution of the sentence, or grant a further reprieve. The governor shall annually communicate to the legislature each case of reprieve, commutation or pardon granted, stating the name of the convict, the crime of which the convict was convicted, the sentence and its date, and the date of the commutation, pardon or reprieve. (Formerly §5. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

[When lieutenant-governor to act as governor]
§5. In case of the removal of the governor from office or of his or her death or resignation, the lieutenant-governor shall become governor for the remainder of the term. In case the governor-elect shall decline to serve or shall die, the lieutenant-governor-elect shall become governor for the full term. In case the governor is impeached, is absent from the state or is otherwise unable to discharge the powers and duties of the office of governor, the lieutenant-governor shall act as governor until the inability shall cease or until the term of the governor shall expire. In case of the failure of the governor-elect to take the oath of office at the commencement of his or her term, the lieutenant-governor-elect shall act as governor until the governor shall take the oath. (Formerly §6. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 8, 1949; November 5, 1963; November 7, 2001.)
. . .

[Action by governor on legislative bills; reconsideration after veto]
§7. Every bill which shall have passed the senate and assembly shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the governor; if the governor approve, he or she shall sign it; but if not, he or she shall return it with his or her objections to the house in which it shall have originated, which shall enter the objections at large on the journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of the members elected to that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent together reconsidered; and if approved by two-thirds of the members elected to that house, it shall become a law notwithstanding the objections of the governor. In all such cases the votes in both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the members voting shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the governor within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him or her, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he or she had signed it, unless the legislature shall, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not become a law without the approval of the governor. No bill shall become a law after the final adjournment of the legislature, unless approved by the governor within thirty days after such adjournment. If any bill presented to the governor contain several items of appropriation of money, the governor may object to one or more of such items while approving of the other portion of the bill. In such case the governor shall append to the bill, at the time of signing it, a statement of the items to which he or

(continued next page)

she objects; and the appropriation so objected to shall not take effect. If the legislature be in session, he or she shall transmit to the house in which the bill originated a copy of such statement, and the items objected to shall be separately reconsidered. If on reconsideration one or more of such items be approved by two-thirds of the members elected to each house, the same shall be part of the law, notwithstanding the objections of the governor. All the provisions of this section, in relation to bills not approved by the governor, shall apply in cases in which he or she shall withhold approval from any item or items contained in a bill appropriating money. (Formerly §9. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

. . .

ARTICLE V

OFFICERS AND CIVIL DEPARTMENTS

[Comptroller and attorney-general; payment of state moneys without audit void]

Section 1. The comptroller and attorney-general shall be chosen at the same general election as the governor and hold office for the same term, and shall possess the qualifications provided in section 2 of article IV. The legislature shall provide for filling vacancies in the office of comptroller and of attorney-general. No election of a comptroller or an attorney-general shall be had except at the time of electing a governor. The comptroller shall be required: (1) To audit all vouchers before payment and all official accounts; (2) to audit the accrual and collection of all revenues and receipts; and (3) to prescribe such methods of accounting as are necessary for the performance of the foregoing duties. The payment of any money of the state, or of any money under its control, or the refund of any money paid to the state, except upon audit by the comptroller, shall be void, and may be restrained upon the suit of any taxpayer with the consent of the supreme court in appellate division on notice to the attorney-general. In such respect the legislature shall define the powers and duties and may also assign to him or her: (1) supervision of the accounts of any political subdivision of the state; and (2) powers and duties pertaining to or connected with the assessment and taxation of real estate, including determination of ratios which the assessed valuation of taxable real property bears to the full valuation thereof, but not including any of those powers and duties reserved to officers of a county, city, town or village by virtue of sections seven and eight of article nine of this constitution. The legislature shall assign to him or her no administrative duties, excepting such as may be incidental to the performance of these functions, any other provision of this constitution to the contrary notwithstanding. (Amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 3, 1953; November 8, 1955; November 7, 2001.)

[Civil departments in the state government]

§2. There shall be not more than twenty civil departments in the state government, including those referred to in this constitution. The legislature may by law change the names of the departments referred to in this constitution. (Amended by Constitutional

(continued next page)

Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 2, 1943; November 3, 1959; November 7, 1961.)
. . .

ARTICLE VI*

JUDICIARY

[Unified court system; organization; process]
Section 1. a. There shall be a unified court system for the state. The state-wide courts shall consist of the court of appeals, the supreme court including the appellate divisions thereof, the court of claims, the county court, the surrogate's court and the family court, as hereinafter provided. The legislature shall establish in and for the city of New York, as part of the unified court system for the state, a single, city-wide court of civil jurisdiction and a single, city-wide court of criminal jurisdiction, as hereinafter provided, and may upon the request of the mayor and the local legislative body of the city of New York, merge the two courts into one city-wide court of both civil and criminal jurisdiction. The unified court system for the state shall also include the district, town, city and village courts outside the city of New York, as hereinafter provided.
b. The court of appeals, the supreme court including the appellate divisions thereof, the court of claims, the county court, the surrogate's court, the family court, the courts or court of civil and criminal jurisdiction of the city of New York, and such other courts as the legislature may determine shall be courts of record.
c. All processes, warrants and other mandates of the court of appeals, the supreme court including the appellate divisions thereof, the court of claims, the county court, the surrogate's court and the family court may be served and executed in any part of the state. All processes, warrants and other mandates of the courts or court of civil and criminal jurisdiction of the city of New York may, subject to such limitation as may be prescribed by the legislature, be served and executed in any part of the state. The legislature may provide that processes, warrants and other mandates of the district court may be served and executed in any part of the state and that processes, warrants and other mandates of town, village and city courts outside the city of New York may be served and executed in any part of the county in which such courts are located or in any part of any adjoining county.
. . .

[Judicial departments; appellate divisions, how constituted; governor to designate justices; temporary assignments; jurisdiction]
§4. a. The state shall be divided into four judicial departments. The first department shall consist of the counties within the first judicial district of the state. The second department shall consist of the counties within the second, ninth, tenth and eleventh judicial districts of the state. The third department shall consist of the counties within the third, fourth and sixth judicial districts of the state. The fourth department shall consist of the counties within the fifth, seventh and eighth judicial districts of the state. Each department shall be bounded by the lines of judicial districts. Once every ten years the legislature may alter the boundaries of the judicial departments, but without changing the number thereof.

(continued next page)

b. The appellate divisions of the supreme court are continued, and shall consist of seven justices of the supreme court in each of the first and second departments, and five justices in each of the other departments. In each appellate division, four justices shall constitute a quorum, and the concurrence of three shall be necessary to a decision. No more than five justices shall sit in any case.
c. The governor shall designate the presiding justice of each appellate division, who shall act as such during his or her term of office and shall be a resident of the department. The other justices of the appellate divisions shall be designated by the governor, from all the justices elected to the supreme court, for terms of five years or the unexpired portions of their respective terms of office, if less than five years.
d. The justices heretofore designated shall continue to sit in the appellate divisions until the terms of their respective designations shall expire. From time to time as the terms of the designations expire, or vacancies occur, the governor shall make new designations. The governor may also, on request of any appellate division, make temporary designations in case of the absence or inability to act of any justice in such appellate division, for service only during such absence or inability to act.
e. In case any appellate division shall certify to the governor that one or more additional justices are needed for the speedy disposition of the business before it, the governor may designate an additional justice or additional justices; but when the need for such additional justice or justices shall no longer exist, the appellate division shall so certify to the governor, and thereupon service under such designation or designations shall cease.
f. A majority of the justices designated to sit in any appellate division shall at all times be residents of the department.
g. Whenever the appellate division in any department shall be unable to dispose of its business within a reasonable time, a majority of the presiding justices of the several departments, at a meeting called by the presiding justice of the department in arrears, may transfer any pending appeals from such department to any other department for hearing and determination.
h. A justice of the appellate division of the supreme court in any department may be temporarily designated by the presiding justice of his or her department to the appellate division in another judicial department upon agreement by the presiding justices of the appellate division of the departments concerned.
i. In the event that the disqualification, absence or inability to act of justices in any appellate division prevents there being a quorum of justices qualified to hear an appeal, the justices qualified to hear the appeal may transfer it to the appellate division in another department for hearing and determination. In the event that the justices in any appellate division qualified to hear an appeal are equally divided, said justices may transfer the appeal to the appellate division in another department for hearing and determination. Each appellate division shall have power to appoint and remove its clerk.
j. No justice of the appellate division shall, within the department to which he or she may be designated to perform the duties of an appellate justice, exercise any of the powers of a justice of the supreme court, other than those of a justice out of court, and those pertaining to the appellate division, except that the justice may decide causes or proceedings theretofore submitted, or hear and decide motions submitted by consent of counsel, but any such justice, when not actually engaged in performing the duties

(continued next page)

of such appellate justice in the department to which he or she is designated, may hold any term of the supreme court and exercise any of the powers of a justice of the supreme court in any judicial district in any other department of the state.
k. The appellate divisions of the supreme court shall have all the jurisdiction possessed by them on the effective date of this article and such additional jurisdiction as may be prescribed by law, provided, however, that the right to appeal to the appellate divisions from a judgment or order which does not finally determine an action or special proceeding may be limited or conditioned by law. (Subdivision e amended by vote of the people November 8, 1977; further amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)
. . .

[Administrative supervision of court system]
§28. a. The chief judge of the court of appeals shall be the chief judge of the state of New York and shall be the chief judicial officer of the unified court system. There shall be an administrative board of the courts which shall consist of the chief judge of the court of appeals as chairperson and the presiding justice of the appellate division of the supreme court of each judicial department. The chief judge shall, with the advice and consent of the administrative board of the courts, appoint a chief administrator of the courts who shall serve at the pleasure of the chief judge. b. The chief administrator, on behalf of the chief judge, shall supervise the administration and operation of the unified court system. In the exercise of such responsibility, the chief administrator of the courts shall have such powers and duties as may be delegated to him or her by the chief judge and such additional powers and duties as may be provided by law. c. The chief judge, after consultation with the administrative board, shall establish standards and administrative policies for general application throughout the state, which shall be submitted by the chief judge to the court of appeals, together with the recommendations, if any, of the administrative board. Such standards and administrative policies shall be promulgated after approval by the court of appeals. (Formerly §28. Repealed and new §28 added by vote of the people November 8, 1977; amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)
. . .

ARTICLE VII

State Finances

[Estimates by departments, the legislature and the judiciary of needed appropriations; hearings]
Section 1. For the preparation of the budget, the head of each department of state government, except the legislature and judiciary, shall furnish the governor such estimates and information in such form and at such times as the governor may require, copies of which shall forthwith be furnished to the appropriate committees of the legislature. The governor shall hold hearings thereon at which the governor may require the attendance of heads of departments and their subordinates. Designated representatives of such committees shall be entitled to attend the hearings thereon and to make inquiry concerning any part thereof.

(continued next page)

Itemized estimates of the financial needs of the legislature, certified by the presiding officer of each house, and of the judiciary, approved by the court of appeals and certified by the chief judge of the court of appeals, shall be transmitted to the governor not later than the first day of December in each year for inclusion in the budget without revision but with such recommendations as the governor may deem proper. Copies of the itemized estimates of the financial needs of the judiciary also shall forthwith be transmitted to the appropriate committees of the legislature. (Amended by vote of the people November 8, 1977; November 7, 2001.)

[Executive budget]
§2. Annually, on or before the first day of February in each year following the year fixed by the constitution for the election of governor and lieutenant governor, and on or before the second Tuesday following the first day of the annual meeting of the legislature, in all other years, the governor shall submit to the legislature a budget containing a complete plan of expenditures proposed to be made before the close of the ensuing fiscal year and all moneys and revenues estimated to be available therefor, together with an explanation of the basis of such estimates and recommendations as to proposed legislation, if any, which the governor may deem necessary to provide moneys and revenues sufficient to meet such proposed expenditures. It shall also contain such other recommendations and information as the governor may deem proper and such additional information as may be required by law. (New. Derived in part from former §2 of Art. 4-a. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; amended by vote of the people November 2, 1965; November 7, 2001.)
. . .

ARTICLE IX*

LOCAL GOVERNMENTS

Bill of rights for local governments.
Section 1. Effective local self-government and intergovernmental cooperation are purposes of the people of the state. In furtherance thereof, local governments shall have the following rights, powers, privileges and immunities in addition to those granted by other provisions of this constitution:
(a) Every local government, except a county wholly included within a city, shall have a legislative body elective by the people thereof. Every local government shall have power to adopt local laws as provided by this article.
(b) All officers of every local government whose election or appointment is not provided for by this constitution shall be elected by the people of the local government, or of some division thereof, or appointed by such officers of the local government as may be provided by law.
(c) Local governments shall have power to agree, as authorized by act of the legislature, with the federal government, a state or one or more other governments within or without the state, to provide cooperatively, jointly or by contract any facility, service, activity or undertaking which each participating local government has the power to provide separately. Each such local government shall have power to apportion its share of the

(continued next page)

cost thereof upon such portion of its area as may be authorized by act of the legislature.
(d) No local government or any part of the territory thereof shall be annexed to another until the people, if any, of the territory proposed to be annexed shall have consented thereto by majority vote on a referendum and until the governing board of each local government, the area of which is affected, shall have consented thereto upon the basis of a determination that the annexation is in the over-all public interest. The consent of the governing board of a county shall be required only where a boundary of the county is affected. On or before July first, nineteen hundred sixty-four, the legislature shall provide, where such consent of a governing board is not granted, for adjudication and determination, on the law and the facts, in a proceeding initiated in the supreme court, of the issue of whether the annexation is in the over-all public interest.
(e) Local governments shall have power to take by eminent domain private property within their boundaries for public use together with excess land or property but no more than is sufficient to provide for appropriate disposition or use of land or property which abuts on that necessary for such public use, and to sell or lease that not devoted to such use. The legislature may authorize and regulate the exercise of the power of eminent domain and excess condemnation by a local government outside its boundaries.
(f) No local government shall be prohibited by the legislature (1) from making a fair return on the value of the property used and useful in its operation of a gas, electric or water public utility service, over and above costs of operation and maintenance and necessary and proper reserves, in addition to an amount equivalent to taxes which such service, if privately owned, would pay to such local government, or (2) from using such profits for payment of refunds to consumers or for any other lawful purpose.
(g) A local government shall have power to apportion its cost of a governmental service or function upon any portion of its area, as authorized by act of the legislature.
(h) (1) Counties, other than those wholly included within a city, shall be empowered by general law, or by special law enacted upon county request pursuant to section two of this article, to adopt, amend or repeal alternative forms of county government provided by the legislature or to prepare, adopt, amend or repeal alternative forms of their own. Any such form of government or any amendment thereof, by act of the legislature or by local law, may transfer one or more functions or duties of the county or of the cities, towns, villages, districts or other units of government wholly contained in such county to each other or when authorized by the legislature to the state, or may abolish one or more offices, departments, agencies or units of government provided, however, that no such form or amendment, except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subdivision, shall become effective unless approved on a referendum by a majority of the votes cast thereon in the area of the county outside of cities, and in the cities of the county, if any, considered as one unit. Where an alternative form of county government or any amendment thereof, by act of the legislature or by local law, provides for the transfer of any function or duty to or from any village or the abolition of any office, department, agency or unit of government of a village wholly contained in such county, such form or amendment shall not become effective unless it shall also be approved on the referendum by a majority of the votes cast thereon in all the villages so affected considered as one unit. (2) After the adoption of an alternative form of county government by a county, any amendment thereof by act of the legislature or by local law which abolishes or creates an elective county office, changes the voting or

(continued next page)

veto power of or the method of removing an elective county officer during his or her term of office, abolishes, curtails or transfers to another county officer or agency any power of an elective county officer or changes the form or composition of the county legislative body shall be subject to a permissive referendum as provided by the legislature. (Amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

. . .

ARTICLE X

CORPORATIONS

[Corporations; formation of]
Section 1. Corporations may be formed under general law; but shall not be created by special act, except for municipal purposes, and in cases where, in the judgment of the legislature, the objects of the corporation cannot be attained under general laws. All general laws and special acts passed pursuant to this section may be altered from time to time or repealed. (Formerly §1 of Art. 8. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.) [Dues of corporations] §2. Dues from corporations shall be secured by such individual liability of the corporators and other means as may be prescribed by law. (Formerly §2 of Art. 8. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

. . .

ARTICLE XI

EDUCATION

[Common schools]
Section 1. The legislature shall provide for the maintenance and support of a system of free common schools, wherein all the children of this state may be educated. (Formerly §1 of Art. 9. Renumbered by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Regents of the University]
§2. The corporation created in the year one thousand seven hundred eighty-four, under the name of The Regents of the University of the State of New York, is hereby continued under the name of The University of the State of New York. It shall be governed and its corporate powers, which may be increased, modified or diminished by the legislature, shall be exercised by not less than nine regents. (Formerly §2 of Art. 9. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

(continued next page)

[Use of public property or money in aid of denominational schools prohibited; transportation of children authorized]
§3. Neither the state nor any subdivision thereof, shall use its property or credit or any public money, or authorize or permit either to be used, directly or indirectly, in aid or maintenance, other than for examination or inspection, of any school or institution of learning wholly or in part under the control or direction of any religious denomination, or in which any denominational tenet or doctrine is taught, but the legislature may provide for the transportation of children to and from any school or institution of learning. (Formerly §4 of Art. 9. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938. Formerly §4, renumbered §3 without change by amendment approved by vote of the people November 6, 1962; former § 4 repealed by same amendment.)

ARTICLE XII*

Defense

[Defense; militia]
Section 1. The defense and protection of the state and of the United States is an obligation of all persons within the state. The legislature shall provide for the discharge of this obligation and for the maintenance and regulation of an organized militia.
. . .

ARTICLE XIII

Public Officers

[Oath of office; no other test for public office]
Section 1. Members of the legislature, and all officers, executive and judicial, except such inferior officers as shall be by law exempted, shall, before they enter on the duties of their respective offices, take and subscribe the following oath or affirmation: "I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will support the constitution of the United States, and the constitution of the State of New York, and that I will faithfully discharge the duties of the office of ....., according to the best of my ability;" and no other oath, declaration or test shall be required as a qualification for any office of public trust, except that any committee of a political party may, by rule, provide for equal representation of the sexes on any such committee, and a state convention of a political party, at which candidates for public office are nominated, may, by rule, provide for equal representation of the sexes on any committee of such party. (Amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)
. . .

ARTICLE XIV

CONSERVATION

. . .

[Forest and wild life conservation; use or disposition of certain lands authorized]

§3. 1. Forest and wild life conservation are hereby declared to be policies of the state. For the purpose of carrying out such policies the legislature may appropriate moneys for the acquisition by the state of land, outside of the Adirondack and Catskill parks as now fixed by law, for the practice of forest or wild life conservation. The prohibitions of section 1 of this article shall not apply to any lands heretofore or hereafter acquired or dedicated for such purposes within the forest preserve counties but outside of the Adirondack and Catskill parks as now fixed by law, except that such lands shall not be leased, sold or exchanged, or be taken by any corporation, public or private.

2. As to any other lands of the state, now owned or hereafter acquired, constituting the forest preserve referred to in section one of this article, but outside of the Adirondack and Catskill parks as now fixed by law, and consisting in any case of not more than one hundred contiguous acres entirely separated from any other portion of the forest preserve, the legislature may by appropriate legislation, notwithstanding the provisions of section one of this article, authorize: (a) the dedication thereof for the practice of forest or wild life conservation; or (b) the use thereof for public recreational or other state purposes or the sale, exchange or other disposition thereof; provided, however, that all moneys derived from the sale or other disposition of any of such lands shall be paid into a special fund of the treasury and be expended only for the acquisition of additional lands for such forest preserve within either such Adirondack or Catskill park. (Formerly §16 of Art. 7. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 5, 1957; November 6, 1973.)

[Protection of natural resources; development of agricultural lands]

§4. The policy of the state shall be to conserve and protect its natural resources and scenic beauty and encourage the development and improvement of its agricultural lands for the production of food and other agricultural products. The legislature, in implementing this policy, shall include adequate provision for the abatement of air and water pollution and of excessive and unnecessary noise, the protection of agricultural lands, wetlands and shorelines, and the development and regulation of water resources. The legislature shall further provide for the acquisition of lands and waters, including improvements thereon and any interest therein, outside the forest preserve counties, and the dedication of properties so acquired or now owned, which because of their natural beauty, wilderness character, or geological, ecological or historical significance, shall be preserved and administered for the use and enjoyment of the people. Properties so dedicated shall constitute the state nature and historical preserve and they shall not be taken or otherwise disposed of except by law enacted by two successive regular sessions of the legislature. (New. Added by vote of the people November 4, 1969.)

. . .

ARTICLE XV

CANALS

[Disposition of canals and canal properties prohibited]
Section 1. The legislature shall not sell, abandon or otherwise dispose of the now existing or future improved barge canal, the divisions of which are the Erie canal, the Oswego canal, the Champlain canal, and the Cayuga and Seneca canals, or of the terminals constructed as part of the barge canal system; nor shall it sell, abandon or otherwise dispose of any portion of the canal system existing prior to the barge canal improvement which portion forms a part of, or functions as a part of, the present barge canal system; but such canals and terminals shall remain the property of the state and under its management and control forever. This prohibition shall not prevent the legislature, by appropriate laws, from authorizing the granting of revocable permits or leases for periods of time as authorized by the legislature for the occupancy or use of such lands or structures. (Formerly §8 of Art. 7. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; November 5, 1991.)
. . .

ARTICLE XVI*

TAXATION

[Power of taxation; exemptions from taxation]
Section 1. The power of taxation shall never be surrendered, suspended or contracted away, except as to securities issued for public purposes pursuant to law. Any laws which delegate the taxing power shall specify the types of taxes which may be imposed thereunder and provide for their review.

Exemptions from taxation may be granted only by general laws. Exemptions may be altered or repealed except those exempting real or personal property used exclusively for religious, educational or charitable purposes as defined by law and owned by any corporation or association organized or conducted exclusively for one or more of such purposes and not operating for profit.
. . .

ARTICLE XVII

SOCIAL WELFARE

[Public relief and care]
Section 1. The aid, care and support of the needy are public concerns and shall be provided by the state and by such of its subdivisions, and in such manner and by such means, as the legislature may from time to time determine. (New. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

(continued next page)

[State board of social welfare; powers and duties]
§2. The state board of social welfare shall be continued. It shall visit and inspect, or cause to be visited and inspected by members of its staff, all public and private institutions, whether state, county, municipal, incorporated or not incorporated, which are in receipt of public funds and which are of a charitable, eleemosynary, correctional or reformatory character, including all reformatories for juveniles and institutions or agencies exercising custody of dependent, neglected or delinquent children, but excepting state institutions for the education and support of the blind, the deaf and the dumb, and excepting also such institutions as are hereinafter made subject to the visitation and inspection of the department of mental hygiene or the state commission of correction. As to institutions, whether incorporated or not incorporated, having inmates, but not in receipt of public funds, which are of a charitable, eleemosynary, correctional or reformatory character, and agencies, whether incorporated or not incorporated, not in receipt of public funds, which exercise custody of dependent, neglected or delinquent children, the state board of social welfare shall make inspections, or cause inspections to be made by members of its staff, but solely as to matters directly affecting the health, safety, treatment and training of their inmates, or of the children under their custody. Subject to the control of the legislature and pursuant to the procedure prescribed by general law, the state board of social welfare may make rules and regulations, not inconsistent with this constitution, with respect to all of the functions, powers and duties with which the department and the state board of social welfare are herein or shall be charged. (New. Derived in part from former §11 of Art. 8. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Public health]
§3. The protection and promotion of the health of the inhabitants of the state are matters of public concern and provision therefor shall be made by the state and by such of its subdivisions and in such manner, and by such means as the legislature shall from time to time determine. (New. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Care and treatment of persons suffering from mental disorder or defect; visitation of institutions for]
§4. The care and treatment of persons suffering from mental disorder or defect and the protection of the mental health of the inhabitants of the state may be provided by state and local authorities and in such manner as the legislature may from time to time determine. The head of the department of mental hygiene shall visit and inspect, or cause to be visited and inspected by members of his or her staff, all institutions either public or private used for the care and treatment of persons suffering from mental disorder or defect. (New. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

[Institutions for detention of criminals; probation; parole; state commission of correction]
§5. The legislature may provide for the maintenance and support of institutions for the detention of persons charged with or convicted of crime and for systems of probation and parole of persons convicted of crime. There shall be a state commission of

(continued next page)

correction, which shall visit and inspect or cause to be visited and inspected by members of its staff, all institutions used for the detention of sane adults charged with or convicted of crime. (New. Derived in part from former §11 of Art. 8. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938. Amended by vote of the people November 6, 1973.)

[Visitation and inspection]
§6. Visitation and inspection as herein authorized, shall not be exclusive of other visitation and inspection now or hereafter authorized by law. (New. Derived from former §13 of Art. 8. Adopted by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

[Loans for hospital construction]
§7. Notwithstanding any other provision of this constitution, the legislature may authorize the state, a municipality or a public corporation acting as an instrumentality of the state or municipality to lend its money or credit to or in aid of any corporation or association, regulated by law as to its charges, profits, dividends, and disposition of its property or franchises, for the purpose of providing such hospital or other facilities for the prevention, diagnosis or treatment of human disease, pain, injury, disability, deformity or physical condition, and for facilities incidental or appurtenant thereto as may be prescribed by law. (New. Added by vote of the people November 4, 1969.)

ARTICLE XVIII*

HOUSING

[Housing and nursing home accommodations for persons of low income; slum clearance]
Section 1. Subject to the provisions of this article, the legislature may provide in such manner, by such means and upon such terms and conditions as it may prescribe for low rent housing and nursing home accommodations for persons of low income as defined by law, or for the clearance, replanning, reconstruction and rehabilitation of substandard and insanitary areas, or for both such purposes, and for recreational and other facilities incidental or appurtenant thereto. (Amended by vote of the people November 2, 1965.)
. . .

ARTICLE XIX

AMENDMENTS TO CONSTITUTION

[Amendments to constitution; how proposed, voted upon and ratified; failure of attorney-general to render opinion not to affect validity]
Section 1. Any amendment or amendments to this constitution may be proposed in the senate and assembly whereupon such amendment or amendments shall be referred to the attorney-general whose duty it shall be within twenty days thereafter to render an opinion in writing to the senate and assembly as to the effect of such amendment

(continued next page)

or amendments upon other provisions of the constitution. Upon receiving such opinion, if the amendment or amendments as proposed or as amended shall be agreed to by a majority of the members elected to each of the two houses, such proposed amendment or amendments shall be entered on their journals, and the ayes and noes taken thereon, and referred to the next regular legislative session convening after the succeeding general election of members of the assembly, and shall be published for three months previous to the time of making such choice; and if in such legislative session, such proposed amendment or amendments shall be agreed to by a majority of all the members elected to each house, then it shall be the duty of the legislature to submit each proposed amendment or amendments to the people for approval in such manner and at such times as the legislature shall prescribe; and if the people shall approve and ratify such amendment or amendments by a majority of the electors voting thereon, such amendment or amendments shall become a part of the constitution on the first day of January next after such approval. Neither the failure of the attorney-general to render an opinion concerning such a proposed amendment nor his or her failure to do so timely shall affect the validity of such proposed amendment or legislative action thereon. (Formerly §1 of Art. 14. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 4, 1941; November 7, 2001.)

[Future constitutional conventions; how called; election of delegates; compensation; quorum; submission of amendments; officers; employees; rules; vacancies]

§2. At the general election to be held in the year nineteen hundred fifty-seven, and every twentieth year thereafter, and also at such times as the legislature may by law provide, the question "Shall there be a convention to revise the constitution and amend the same?" shall be submitted to and decided by the electors of the state; and in case a majority of the electors voting thereon shall decide in favor of a convention for such purpose, the electors of every senate district of the state, as then organized, shall elect three delegates at the next ensuing general election, and the electors of the state voting at the same election shall elect fifteen delegates-at-large. The delegates so elected shall convene at the capitol on the first Tuesday of April next ensuing after their election, and shall continue their session until the business of such convention shall have been completed. Every delegate shall receive for his or her services the same compensation as shall then be annually payable to the members of the assembly and be reimbursed for actual traveling expenses, while the convention is in session, to the extent that a member of the assembly would then be entitled thereto in the case of a session of the legislature. A majority of the convention shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business, and no amendment to the constitution shall be submitted for approval to the electors as hereinafter provided, unless by the assent of a majority of all the delegates elected to the convention, the ayes and noes being entered on the journal to be kept. The convention shall have the power to appoint such officers, employees and assistants as it may deem necessary, and fix their compensation and to provide for the printing of its documents, journal, proceedings and other expenses of said convention. The convention shall determine the rules of its own proceedings, choose its own officers, and be the judge of the election, returns and qualifications of its members. In case of a vacancy, by death, resignation or other cause, of any district

(continued next page)

delegate elected to the convention, such vacancy shall be filled by a vote of the remaining delegates representing the district in which such vacancy occurs. If such vacancy occurs in the office of a delegate-at-large, such vacancy shall be filled by a vote of the remaining delegates-at-large. Any proposed constitution or constitutional amendment which shall have been adopted by such convention, shall be submitted to a vote of the electors of the state at the time and in the manner provided by such convention, at an election which shall be held not less than six weeks after the adjournment of such convention. Upon the approval of such constitution or constitutional amendments, in the manner provided in the last preceding section, such constitution or constitutional amendment, shall go into effect on the first day of January next after such approval. (Formerly §2 of Art. 14. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938; further amended by vote of the people November 7, 2001.)

[Amendments simultaneously submitted by convention and legislature]
§3. Any amendment proposed by a constitutional convention relating to the same subject as an amendment proposed by the legislature, coincidently submitted to the people for approval shall, if approved, be deemed to supersede the amendment so proposed by the legislature. (Formerly §3 of Art. 14. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

ARTICLE XX

When to Take Effect

[Time of taking effect]
Section 1. This constitution shall be in force from and including the first day of January, one thousand nine hundred thirty-nine, except as herein otherwise provided. (Formerly §1 of Art. 15. Renumbered and amended by Constitutional Convention of 1938 and approved by vote of the people November 8, 1938.)

Done in Convention at the Capitol in the city of Albany, the twenty-fifth day of August, in the year one thousand nine hundred thirty- eight, and of the Independence of the United States of America the one hundred and sixty-third.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

FREDERICK E. CRANE,
President and Delegate-at-Large
U.H. Boyden, *Secretary*

Historic Documents

Magna Carta

England's King John angered many people with high taxes. In 1215 a group of English nobles joined the archbishop of Canterbury to force the king to agree to sign Magna Carta. This document stated that the king was subject to the rule of law, just as other citizens of England were. It also presented the ideas of a fair and speedy trial and due process of law. These principles are still a part of the U.S. Bill of Rights.

1. In the first place have granted to God, and by this our present charter confirmed for us and our heirs for ever that the English church shall be free, and shall have its rights undiminished and its liberties unimpaired . . . We have also granted to all free men of our kingdom, for ourselves and our heirs for ever, all the liberties written below, to be had and held by them and their heirs of us and our heirs.
2. If any of our earls or barons or others holding of us in chief by knight service dies, and at his death his heir be of full age and owe relief he shall have his inheritance on payment of the old relief, namely the heir or heirs of an earl 100 for a whole earl's barony, the heir or heirs of a baron 100 for a whole barony, the heir or heirs of a knight 100s, at most, for a whole knight's fee; and he who owes less shall give less according to the ancient usage of fiefs.
3. If, however, the heir of any such be under age and a ward, he shall have his inheritance when he comes of age without paying relief and without making fine.

40. To no one will we sell, to no one will we refuse or delay right or justice.
41. All merchants shall be able to go out of and come into England safely and securely and stay and travel throughout England, as well by land as by water, for buying and selling by the ancient and right customs free from all evil tolls, except in time of war and if they are of the land that is at war with us . . .
42. It shall be lawful in future for anyone, without prejudicing the allegiance due to us, to leave our kingdom and return safely and securely by land and water, save, in the public interest, for a short period in time of war—except for those imprisoned or outlawed in accordance with the law of the kingdom and natives of a land that is at war with us and merchants (who shall be treated as aforesaid).
62. And we have fully remitted and pardoned to everyone all the ill–will, indignation and rancour that have arisen between us and our men, clergy and laity, from the time of the quarrel. Furthermore, we have fully remitted to all, clergy and laity, and as far as pertains to us have completely forgiven, all trespasses occasioned by the same quarrel between Easter in the sixteenth year of our reign and the restoration of peace. And, besides, we have caused to be made for them letters testimonial patent of the lord Stephen archbishop of Canterbury, of the lord Henry archbishop of Dublin and of the aforementioned bishops and of master Pandulf about this security and the aforementioned concessions.
63. An oath, moreover, has been taken, as well on our part as on the part of the barons, that all these things aforesaid shall be observed in good faith and without evil disposition. Witness the above–mentioned and many others. Given by our hand in the meadow which is called Runnymede between Windsor and Staines on the fifteenth day of June, in the seventeenth year of our reign.

From "English Bill of Rights." Britannica Online. Vers. 99.1. 1994–1999. Copyright © 1994–1999 Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc.

The Mayflower Compact

In November 1620, the Pilgrim leaders aboard the Mayflower *drafted the Mayflower Compact. This was the first document in the English colonies to establish guidelines for self-government. This excerpt from the Mayflower Compact describes the principles of the Pilgrim colony's government.*

The Mayflower Compact

We whose names are underwritten, the loyal subjects of our dread Sovereign Lord King James, by the Grace of God of Great Britain, France and Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith, etc.

Having undertaken, for the Glory of God and advancement of the Christian Faith and Honour of our King and Country, a Voyage to plant the First Colony in the Northern Parts of Virginia, do by these presents solemnly and mutually in the presence of God and one of another, Covenant and Combine ourselves together into a Civil Body Politic, for our better ordering and preservation and furtherance of the ends aforesaid; and by virtue hereof to enact, constitute and frame such just and equal Laws, Ordinances, Acts, Constitutions and Offices, from time to time, as shall be thought most meet and convenient for the general good of the Colony, unto which we promise all due submission and obedience. In witness whereof we have hereunder subscribed our names at Cape Cod, the 11th of November, in the year of the reign of our Sovereign Lord King James, of England, France and Ireland the eighteenth, and of Scotland the fifty-fourth. Anno Domini 1620.

From William Bradford, *Of Plymouth Plantation, 1620–1647* (Samuel Eliot Morison, ed., 1952), 75–76

Fundamental Orders of Connecticut

In January 1639, settlers in Connecticut led by Thomas Hooker drew up the Fundamental Orders of Connecticut—America's first written Constitution. It is essentially a compact among the settlers and a body of laws.

Forasmuch as it hath pleased the All-mighty God by the wise disposition of his divyne pruvidence so to Order and dispose of things that we the Inhabitants and Residents of Windsor, Harteford and Wethersfield are now cohabiting and dwelling in and uppon the River of Conectecotte and the Lands thereunto adioyneing; As also in our Civell Affaires to be guided and governed according to such Lawes, Rules, Orders and decrees as shall be made, ordered & decreed, as followeth:—

1. It is Ordered . . . that there shall be yerely two generall Assemblies or Courts, the one the second thursday in Aprill, the other the second thursday in September, following; the first shall be called the Courte of Election, wherein shall be yerely Chosen . . . soe many Magestrats and other publike Officers as shall be found requisitte: which choise shall be made by all that are admitted freemen and have taken the Oath of Fidelity, and doe cohabitte within this Jurisdiction, (having beene admitted Inhabitants by the major part of the Towne wherein they live,) or the major parte of such as shall be then present . . .

From F. N. Thorpe, ed., *Federal and State Constitutions,* vol. 1 (1909), 519.

The English Bill of Rights

In 1689, after the Glorious Revolution, Parliament passed the English Bill of Rights, which ensured that Parliament would have supreme power over the monarchy. The bill also protected the rights of English citizens.

By assuming and exercising a power of dispensing with and suspending of laws and the execution of laws without consent of Parliament; . . .

By levying money for and to the use of the Crown by pretence of prerogative for other time and in other manner than the same was granted by Parliament;

By raising and keeping a standing army within this kingdom in time of peace without consent of Parliament, and quartering soldiers contrary to law; . . .

And excessive bail hath been required of persons committed in criminal cases to elude the benefit of the laws made for the liberty of the subjects;

And excessive fines have been imposed;

And illegal and cruel punishments inflicted;

And several grants and promises made of fines and forfeitures before any conviction or judgment against the persons upon whom the same were to be levied;

All which are utterly and directly contrary to the known laws and statutes and freedom of this realm . . .

From "English Bill of Rights." Britannica Online. Vers. 99.1. 1994–1999. Copyright © 1994–1999 Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc.

Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom

In 1777 Thomas Jefferson wrote the Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom. Jefferson hoped that by separating church and state, Virginians could practice their religion—whatever it might be—freely.

. . . to compel a man to furnish contributions of money for the propagation of opinions which he disbelieves, is sinful and tyrannical; that even the forcing him to support this or that teacher of his own religious persuasion, is depriving him of the comfortable liberty of giving his contributions to the particular pastor . . . that our civil rights have no dependence on our religious opinions, any more than our opinions in physics or geometry; that therefore the proscribing any citizen as unworthy the public confidence by laying upon him an incapacity of being called to offices of trust and emolument, unless he profess or renounce this or that religious opinion, is depriving him injuriously of those privileges and advantages to which in common with his fellow-citizens he has a natural right . . .

Be it enacted by the General Assembly, That no man shall be compelled to frequent or support any religious worship, place, or ministry whatsoever, nor shall be enforced, restrained, molested, or burthened in his body or goods, nor shall otherwise suffer on account of his religious opinions or belief; but that all men shall be free to profess, and by argument to maintain, their opinion in matters of religion, and that the same shall in no wise diminish enlarge, or affect their civil capacities.

. . . yet we are free to declare, and do declare, that the rights hereby asserted are of the natural rights of mankind, and that if any act shall be hereafter passed to repeal the present, or to narrow its operation, such act shall be an infringement of natural right.

From W. W. Hening, ed., *Statutes at Large of Virginia,* Vol. 12 (1823): 84–86.

Objections to This Constitution of Government

George Mason played a behind-the-scenes role in the Revolutionary War and wrote Virginia's Declaration of Rights. He attended the Constitutional Convention in 1787. Mason criticized the proposed Constitution for allowing slavery, creating a strong central government, and lacking a bill of rights. As a result, he refused to sign the Constitution. In the following excerpt, Mason explains why he would not sign the Constitution.

There is no Declaration of Rights, and the laws of the general government being paramount to the laws and constitution of the several States, the Declarations of Rights in the separate States are no security. Nor are the people secured even in the enjoyment of the benefit of the common law.

In the House of Representatives there is not the substance but the shadow only of representation . . .

The Senate have the power of altering all money bills, and of originating appropriations of money, and the salaries of the officers of their own appointment, in conjunction with the president of the United States, although they are not the representatives of the people or amenable to them. . . .

The Judiciary of the United States is so constructed and extended, as to absorb and destroy the judiciaries of the several States; thereby rendering law as tedious, intricate and expensive, and justice as unattainable, by a great part of the community, as in England, and enabling the rich to oppress and ruin the poor.

The President of the United States has no Constitutional Council, a thing unknown in any safe and regular government. He will therefore be unsupported by proper information and advice, and will generally be directed by minions and favorites; or he will become a tool to the Senate . . .

The President of the United States has the unrestrained power of granting pardons for treason, which may be sometimes exercised to screen from punishment those whom he had secretly instigated to commit the crime, and thereby prevent a discovery of his own guilt. . . .

From http://gunstonhall.org/documents/objections.html.

Washington's Farewell Address

In 1796 at the end of his second term as president, George Washington wrote his farewell address with the help of Alexander Hamilton and James Madison. In it he spoke of the dangers facing the young nation. He warned against the dangers of political parties and sectionalism, and he advised the nation against permanent alliances with other nations.

In contemplating the causes, which may disturb our Union, it occurs as matter of serious concern, that any ground should have been furnished for characterizing parties by geographical discriminations-Northern and Southern-Atlantic and Western . . .

No alliances, however strict, between the parts can be an adequate substitute; they must inevitably experience the infractions and interruptions which all alliances in all times have experienced . . .

The great rule of conduct for us, in regard to foreign nations, is, in extending our commercial relations, to have with them as little political connexion as possible. So far as we have already formed engagements, let them be fulfilled with perfect good faith. Here let us stop.

From *Annals of Congress,* 4th Congress, pp. 2869–2880. American Memory. Library of Congress. 1999.

Jefferson's 1801 Inaugural Address

In 1800 Thomas Jefferson, representing the Democratic-Republican Party, ran against the Federalist candidate, President John Adams. Jefferson won the election and used his inaugural address to try to bridge the gap between the new political parties and to reach out to the Federalists.

March 4, 1801

Friends and Fellow–Citizens:

Called upon to undertake the duties of the first executive office of our country, I avail myself of the presence of that portion of my fellow–citizens which is here assembled to express my grateful thanks for the favor with which they have been pleased to look toward me, to declare a sincere consciousness that the task is above my talents, and that I approach it with those anxious and awful presentiments which the greatness of the charge and the weakness of my powers so justly inspire. A rising nation, spread over a wide and fruitful land, traversing all the seas with the rich productions of their industry, engaged in commerce with nations who feel power and forget right, advancing rapidly to destinies beyond the reach of mortal eye when I contemplate these transcendent objects, and see the honor, the happiness, and the hopes of this beloved country committed to the issue, and the auspices of this day, I shrink from the contemplation, and humble myself before the magnitude of the undertaking. . . .

I repair, then, fellow–citizens, to the post you have assigned me. With experience enough in subordinate offices to have seen the difficulties of this the greatest of all, I have learnt to expect that it will rarely fall to the lot of imperfect man to retire from this station with the reputation and the favor which bring him into it. Without pretensions to that high confidence you reposed in our first and greatest revolutionary character, whose preeminent services had entitled him to the first place in his country's love and destined for him the fairest page in the volume of faithful history, I ask so much confidence only as may give firmness and effect to the legal administration of your affairs.

From *Inaugural Addresses of the Presidents of the United States*. 1989. Bartleby Library.

John Quincy Adams's Fourth of July 1821 Address

John Quincy Adams made the following Fourth of July speech in 1821.

And now, friends and countrymen, if the wise and learned philosophers of the elder world, the first observers of nutation and aberration, the discoverers of maddening ether and invisible planets, the inventors of Congreve rockets and Shrapnel shells, should find their hearts disposed to enquire what has America done for the benefit of mankind?

Let our answer be this: America, with the same voice which spoke herself into existence as a nation, proclaimed to mankind the inextinguishable rights of human nature, and the only lawful foundations of government.

She has abstained from interference in the concerns of others, even when conflict has been for principles to which she clings, as to the last vital drop that visits the heart. . . .

[America's] glory is not *dominion*, but *liberty*. Her march is the march of the mind. She has a spear and a shield: but the motto upon her shield is, *Freedom, Independence, Peace*. This has been her Declaration: this has been, as far as her necessary intercourse with the rest of mankind would permit, her practice.

From *An Address . . . Celebrating the Anniversary of Independence . . . on the Fourth of July 1821 . . .* Hilliard and Metcalf, 1821.

Monroe Doctrine

In 1823 President James Monroe proclaimed the Monroe Doctrine. Designed to end European influence in the Western Hemisphere, it became a cornerstone of U.S. foreign policy.

With the existing colonies or dependencies of any European power we have not interfered and shall not interfere. But with the governments who have declared their independence and maintained it, and whose independence we have, on great consideration and on just principles, acknowledged, we could not view any interposition for the purpose of oppressing them, or controlling in any other manner their destiny, by any European power in any other light than as the manifestation of an unfriendly disposition toward the United States. . . .

Our policy in regard to Europe, which was adopted at an early stage of the wars which have so long agitated that quarter of the globe, nevertheless remains the same, which is not to interfere in the internal concerns of any of its powers; to consider the government de facto as the legitimate government for us; to cultivate friendly relations with it, and to preserve those relations by a frank, firm, and manly policy, meeting in all instances the just claims of every power, submitting to injuries from none.

From "The Monroe Doctrine" by James Monroe. Reprinted in *The Annals of America: Volume 5, 1821–1832.* Copyright © 1976 by Encyclopaedia Britannica.

Seneca Falls Declaration of Sentiments

One of the first documents to express the desire for equal rights for women is the Declaration of Sentiments, issued in 1848 at the Seneca Falls Convention in Seneca Falls, New York. Led by Elizabeth Cady Stanton and Lucretia Mott, the delegates adopted a set of resolutions modeled on the Declaration of Independence.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one portion of the family of man to assume among the people of the earth a position different from that which they have hitherto occupied, but one to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes that impel them to such a course.

We hold these truths to be self–evident: that all men and women are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that to secure these rights governments are instituted, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed. Whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of those who suffer from it to refuse allegiance to it, and to insist upon the institution of a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness.

From "Seneca Falls Declaration on Women's Rights." Reprinted in *The Annals of America: Volume 7, 1841–1849.* Copyright © 1976 by Encyclopaedia Britannica.

Denmark Vesey Document

Some enslaved African Americans struck back against the slave system in the South by using violence. Denmark Vesey, a free African American, planned a revolt in 1822. He was betrayed before the revolt began, and he and other people were executed. Included below is an excerpt from a report of Vesey's trial.

William, the slave of Mr. Paul, testified as follows:—Mingo Harth told me *that Denmark Vesey was the chiefest man, and more concerned than any one else*—Denmark Vesey is an old man in whose yard my master's negro woman Sarah cooks—he was her father-in-law, having married her mother Beck, and though they have been parted some time, yet he visited her at her house near the Intendant's (Major Hamilton), where I have often heard him speak of the rising—*He said he would not like to have a white man in his presence—that he had a great hatred for the whites,* and that if all were like him they would resist the whites—he studies all he can to put it into the heads of the blacks to have a rising against the whites, and tried to induce me to join—he tries to induce all his acquaintances—this has been his chief study and delight for a considerable time—my last conversation with him was in April—he studies the Bible a great deal and tries to prove from it that slavery and bondage is against the Bible. I am persuaded that Denmark Vesey was chiefly concerned in business. . . .

Frank, Mrs. Ferguson's slave gave the following evidence—I know Denmark Vesey and have been to his house—I have heard him say that the negroe's situation was so bad he did not know how they could endure it, and was astonished they did not rise and fend for themselves, and he advised me to join and rise—he said he was going about to see different people, and mentioned the names of Ned Bennett and Peter Poyas as concerned with him—that he had spoken to Ned and Peter on this subject; and that they were to go about and tell the blacks that they were free, and must rise and *fight for themselves*—that they would take the Magazines and Guard-Houses, and the city and be free—that he was going to send *into the country* to inform the people there too—he said he wanted me to join them—I said I could not answer—he said if I would not go into the country for him he could get others—he said himself, Ned Bennett, Peter Poyas and Monday Gell were the principal men and himself the head man. He said they were the principal men to go about and inform the people and fix them, etc. that *one party would land on South-Bay, one about Wappoo, and about the farms*—that the party which was to land on South-Bay was to take the Guard-House and get arms and then they would be able to go on—that the attack was to commence about 12 o'clock at night—*that great numbers would come from all about,* and it must succeed as so many were engaged in it—that they would kill all the whites—that they would leave their master's houses and assemble together near the lines, march down and meet the party which would land on South-Bay— . . .

The court *unanimously* found Denmark Vesey GUILTY, and passed upon him the sentence of DEATH. After his conviction, a good deal of testimony was given against him during the succeeding trials.—

From Lionel H. Kennedy and Thomas Parker, comps., "The Trial of Denmark Vesey, a Free Black Man," in *An Official Report of the Trials of Sundry Negroes charged with an Attempt to Raise an Insurrection in the State of South Carolina* (Charleston, 1822), 85–90.

Lincoln's First Inaugural Address

After his election as president of the United States in 1860, Abraham Lincoln pledged that there would be no war unless the South started it. He discusses the disagreements that led to the nation's greatest crisis in the excerpt below from his first inaugural address.

March 4, 1861

Fellow–Citizens of the United States:

In compliance with a custom as old as the Government itself, I appear before you to address you briefly and to take in your presence the oath prescribed by the Constitution of the United States to be taken by the President "before he enters on the execution of this office." . . .

I have no purpose, directly or indirectly, to interfere with the institution of slavery in the States where it exists. I believe I have no lawful right to do so, and I have no inclination to do so.

Those who nominated and elected me did so with full knowledge that I had made this and many similar declarations and had never recanted them; and more than this, they placed in the platform for my acceptance, and as a law to themselves and to me, the clear and emphatic resolution which I now read:

. . . In any law upon this subject ought not all the safeguards of liberty known in civilized and humane jurisprudence to be introduced, so that a free man be not in any case surrendered as a slave? And might it not be well at the same time to provide by law for the enforcement of that clause in the Constitution which guarantees that "the citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States?" . . .

It follows from these views that no State upon its own mere motion can lawfully get out of the Union; that resolves and ordinances to that effect are legally void, and that acts of violence within any State or States against the authority of the United States are insurrectionary or revolutionary, according to circumstances.

I therefore consider that in view of the Constitution and the laws the Union is unbroken, and to the extent of my ability, I shall take care, as the Constitution itself expressly enjoins upon me, that the laws of the Union be faithfully executed in all the States. . . .

One section of our country believes slavery is right and ought to be extended, while the other believes it is wrong and ought not to be extended. This is the only substantial dispute.

Physically speaking, we can not separate. We can not remove our respective sections from each other nor build an impassable wall between them. A husband and wife may be divorced and go out of the presence and beyond the reach of each other, but the different parts of our country can not do this.

This country, with its institutions, belongs to the people who inhabit it. Whenever they shall grow weary of the existing Government, they can exercise their constitutional right of amending it or their revolutionary right to dismember or overthrow it. . . .

In your hands, my dissatisfied fellow–countrymen, and not in mine, is the momentous issue of civil war. The Government will not assail you. You can have no conflict without being yourselves the aggressors. You have no oath registered in heaven to destroy the Government, while I shall have the most solemn one to "preserve, protect, and defend it."

I am loath to close. We are not enemies, but friends. We must not be enemies. Though passion may have strained it must not break our bonds of affection. The mystic chords of memory, stretching from every battlefield and patriot grave to every living heart and hearthstone all over this broad land, will yet swell the chorus of the Union, when again touched, as surely they will be, by the better angels of our nature.

From *Inaugural Addresses of the Presidents of the United States*. 1989. Bartleby Library.

The Emancipation Proclamation

When the Union army won the Battle of Antietam, President Abraham Lincoln decided to issue the Emancipation Proclamation, which freed all enslaved people in states under Confederate control. The proclamation, which went into effect on January 1, 1863, was a step toward the Thirteenth Amendment (1865), which ended slavery in all of the United States.

That on the 1st day of January, in the year of our Lord 1863, all persons held as slaves within any state or designated part of a state, the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States, shall be then, thenceforward, and forever free; and the executive government of the United States, including the military and naval authority thereof, will recognize and maintain the freedom of such persons and will do no act or acts to repress such persons, or any of them, in any efforts they may make for their actual freedom. . . .

And I further declare and make known that such persons of suitable condition will be received into the armed service of the United States to garrison forts, positions, stations, and other places, and to man vessels of all sorts in said service.

And upon this act, sincerely believed to be an act of justice, warranted by the Constitution upon military necessity, I invoke the considerate judgment of mankind and the gracious favor of Almighty God.

From "Emancipation Proclamation" by Abraham Lincoln. Reprinted in *The Annals of America: Volume 9, 1858–1865*. Copyright © 1976 by Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc.

Lincoln's Gettysburg Address

On November 19, 1863, Abraham Lincoln addressed a crowd gathered to dedicate a cemetery at the Gettysburg battlefield. His short speech, which is excerpted below, reminded Americans of the ideals on which the Republic was founded.

FOUR SCORE AND SEVEN YEARS ago our fathers brought forth on this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal.

Now we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether that nation or any nation so conceived and so dedicated can long endure. We are met on a great battlefield of that war. We have come to dedicate a portion of that field as a final resting–place for those who here gave their lives that that nation might live. It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this.

But in a larger sense, we cannot dedicate—we cannot consecrate—we cannot hallow—this ground. The brave men, living and dead, who struggled here have consecrated it far above our poor power to add or detract. The world will little note nor long remember what we say here, but it can never forget what they did here. It is for us, the living, rather, to be dedicated here to the unfinished work which they who fought here have thus far so nobly advanced.

It is rather for us to be here dedicated to the great task remaining before us—that from these honored dead we take increased devotion to that cause for which they gave the last full measure of devotion; that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom; and that government of the people, by the people, for the people shall not perish from the earth.

From "The Gettysburg Address" by Abraham Lincoln. Reprinted in *The Annals of America: Volume 9, 1858–1865*. Copyright ©1976 by Encyclopaedia Britannica, Inc.

Lincoln's Second Inaugural Address

On March 4, 1865, President Lincoln laid out his approach to Reconstruction in his second inaugural address. As the excerpt below shows, Lincoln hoped to peacefully reunite the nation and its people.

At this second appearing to take the oath of the Presidential office there is less occasion for an extended address than there was at the first. Then a statement somewhat in detail of a course to be pursued seemed fitting and proper. Now, at the expiration of four years, during which public declarations have been constantly called forth on every point and phase of the great contest which still absorbs the attention and engrosses the energies of the nation, little that is new could be presented. The progress of our arms, upon which all else chiefly depends, is as well known to the public as to myself, and it is, I trust, reasonably satisfactory and encouraging to all. With high hope for the future, no prediction in regard to it is ventured.

On the occasion corresponding to this four years ago all thoughts were anxiously directed to an impending civil war. All dreaded it, all sought to avert it. While the inaugural address was being delivered from this place, devoted altogether to saving the Union without war, urgent agents were in the city seeking to destroy it without war—seeking to dissolve the Union and divide effects by negotiation. Both parties deprecated war, but one of them would make war rather than let the nation survive, and the other would accept war rather than let it perish, and the war came. . . .

With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the battle and for his widow and his orphan, to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations.

From *Inaugural Addresses of the Presidents of the United States*. 1989. Bartleby Library.

Declaration of Rights for Women

Included below are excerpts from a speech made on July 4, 1876, by Susan B. Anthony in support of rights for women.

Susan B. Anthony, July 4, 1876

While the nation is buoyant with patriotism, and all hearts are attuned to praise, it is with sorrow we come to strike the one discordant note, on this one-hundredth anniversary of our country's birth. When subjects of kings, emperors, and czars from the old world join in our national jubilee, shall the women of the republic refuse to lay their hands with benedictions on the nation's head? . . . Yet we cannot forget, even in this glad hour, that while all men of every race, and clime, and condition, have been invested with the full rights of citizenship under our hospitable flag, all women still suffer the degradation of disfranchisement.

The history of our country the past one hundred years has been a series of assumptions and usurpations of power over woman, in direct opposition to the principles of just government, acknowledged by the United States as its foundations, which are:

First - the natural rights of each individual

Second - the equality of these rights

Third - that rights not delegated are retained by the individual

Fourth - that no person can exercise the rights of others without delegated authority

Fifth - that the non-use of rights does not destroy them

And for the violation of these fundamental principles of our government, we arraign our rulers on this Fourth day of July, 1876 . . .

These articles of impeachment against our rulers we now submit to the impartial judgment of the people. To all these wrongs and oppressions woman has not submitted in silence and resignation. From the beginning of the century, when Abigail Adams, the wife of one president and the mother of another, said, "We will not hold ourselves bound to obey laws in which we have no voice or representation," until now, woman's discontent has been steadily increasing, culminating nearly thirty years ago in a simultaneous movement among the women of the nation, demanding the right of suffrage. . . .

And now, at the close of a hundred years, as the hour hand of the great clock that marks the centuries points to 1876, we declare our faith in the principles of self-government; our full equality with man in natural rights . . . We ask of our rulers, at this hour, no special favors, no special privileges, no special legislation. We ask justice, we ask equality, we ask that all the civil and political rights that belong to citizens of the United States, be guaranteed to us and our daughters forever.

From *History of Woman Suffrage,* vol. 3. Elizabeth Cady Stanton, Susan B. Anthony, and Matilda Joslyn Gage, eds. 1887.

Biographical Dictionary

A

Adams, John (1735–1826) American statesman, he was a delegate to the Continental Congress, a member of the committee that drafted the Declaration of Independence, vice president to George Washington, and the second president of the United States. (p. 266)

Adams, John Quincy (1767–1848) Son of President John Adams and the secretary of state to James Monroe, he largely formulated the Monroe Doctrine. He was the sixth president of the United States and later became a representative in Congress. (p. 305)

Adams, Samuel (1722–1803) American revolutionary who led the agitation that led to the Boston Tea Party; he signed the Declaration of Independence. (p. 99)

Alcott, Louisa May (1832–1888) American novelist, her revised letters written as a Civil War nurse were published as *Hospital Sketches*. She is famed for the novel *Little Women* and its sequels. (p. 447)

Anthony, Susan B. (1820–1906) American social reformer, she was active in the temperance, abolitionist, and women's suffrage movements and was co-organizer and president of the National Woman Suffrage Association. (p. 465)

Aristotle (384–322 BC) Greek philosopher, he thought that people should live in moderation and use reason. (p. 22)

Arkwright, Richard (1732–1792) English inventor, he patented the water-powered spinning frame, improving the production of cotton thread. (p. 385)

Askia the Great (c. 1443–1538) Songhai ruler, he overthrew Sunni Baru. Originally named Muhammad Ture, he took the military title askia and became known as Askia the Great. (p. 19)

Astor, John Jacob (1763–1848) American fur trader and financier, he founded the fur-trading post of Astoria and the American Fur Company. (p. 346)

Austin, Stephen F. (1793–1836) American colonizer in Texas, he was imprisoned for urging Texas statehood after Santa Anna suspended Mexico's constitution. After helping Texas win independence from Mexico, he became secretary of state for the Texas Republic. (p. 351)

B

Bagley, Sarah G. (d. 1847?) American mill worker and union activist, she advocated the 10-hour workday for private industry. She was elected vice president of the New England Working Men's Association, becoming the first woman to hold such high rank in the American labor movement. (p. 395)

Banneker, Benjamin (1731–1806) African American mathematician and astronomer, he was hired by Thomas Jefferson to help survey land for the new capital in Washington, D.C. (p. 240)



Barton, Clara (1821–1912) Founder of the American Red Cross, she obtained and administered supplies and care to the Union soldiers during the American Civil War. (p. 534)

Beecher, Catharine (1800–1878) American educator and the daughter of Lyman Beecher, she promoted education for women in such writings as *An Essay on the Education of Female Teachers*. She founded the first all-female academy. (p. 451)

Beecher, Lyman (1775–1863) American clergyman, he disapproved of the style of preaching of the Great Awakening ministers. He served as president of the Lane Theological Seminary and supported female higher education. (p. 448)

Bell, John (1797–1869) Senator from Tennessee, he supported the Union over slavery and helped found the Constitutional Union Party. (p. 495)

Bingham, George Caleb (1811–1879) American painter who specialized in painting scenes of everyday life in the West. (p. 310)

Black Hawk (1767–1838) Native American leader of Fox and Sauk Indians, he resisted the U.S.-ordered removal of Indian nations from Illinois and raided settlements and fought the U.S. Army. (p. 335)

Bolívar, Simon (1783–1830) South American revolutionary leader who was nicknamed the Liberator, he fought many battles for independence, winning the support of many U.S. leaders. (p. 300)

Breckinridge, John C. (1821–1875) Vice president under James Buchanan, he was also a senator from Kentucky. He later served as a general in the Confederate army. (p. 495)

Brooks, Preston (1819–1857) American congressman, he assaulted and beat Senator Charles Sumner for his antislavery speeches and for insulting a pro-slavery relative. He was nicknamed Bully Brooks by northerners. (p. 487)

Brown, John (1800–1859) American abolitionist, he started the Pottawatomie Massacre in Kansas to revenge killings of abolitionists; he later seized the federal arsenal at Harpers Ferry, Virginia, to encourage a slave revolt. He was later tried and executed. (p. 493)

Buchanan, James (1791–1868) American politician and fifteenth president of the United States, he was chosen as the Democratic nominee for president in 1854 for being politically experienced and not offensive to slave states. (p. 488)

Burns, Anthony (1834–1862) American enslaved African, he ran away and was arrested in Boston. His arrest became the center of violent protests by northern opponents of the Fugitive Slave Act. (p. 480)

C

Calhoun, John C. (1782–1850) American politician and supporter of slavery and states' rights, he served as vice president to Andrew Jackson and was instrumental in the South Carolina nullification crisis. (p. 323)

Cartier, Jacques (1491–1557) French sailor and explorer, he made three voyages to Canada for Francis I. (p. 54)

Clark, George Rogers (1752–1818) American Revolutionary soldier and frontier leader, he captured the British trading village of Kaskaskia during the Revolution and encouraged Indian leaders to remain neutral. (p. 133)

Clark, William (1770–1838) American soldier and friend of Meriwether Lewis, he was invited to explore the Louisiana Purchase and joined what became known as the Lewis and Clark expedition. (p. 275)

Clay, Henry (1777–1852) American politician from Kentucky, he was known as the Great Pacificator because of his support of the Missouri Compromise. He developed the Compromise of 1850 to try to avoid civil war. (p. 302)



Cole, Thomas (1801–1848) American painter, he was the founder of the Hudson River school, a group of artists who emphasized the beauty of the American landscape, especially the Hudson River valley. (p. 310)

Columbus, Christopher (1451–1506) Italian explorer, he was convinced that he could reach Asia by sailing westward across the Atlantic Ocean. He gained the support of Spain's monarchs and commanded a small fleet that reached the so-called New World, setting off a tide of European exploration of the area. (p. 42)

Cooper, James Fenimore (1789–1851) Well-known early American novelist, he wrote *The Last of the Mohicans* and many stories about the West. (p. 309)

Cooper, Peter (1791–1883) American ironworks manufacturer who designed and built *Tom Thumb,* the first American locomotive. (p. 398)

Cortés, Hernán (1485–1547) Spanish conquistador, he conquered Mexico and brought about the fall of the Aztec Empire. (p. 46)

Crittenden, John J. (1787–1863) Kentucky senator, he attempted to save the Union by reconciling differences between northern and southern states in the Senate proposal known as Crittenden's Compromise. (p. 497)

D

da Vinci, Leonardo (1452–1519) Italian painter, sculptor, architect, engineer, scientist, and inventor. (p. 26)

Davis, Jefferson (1808–1889) First and only president of the Confederate States of America after the election of President Abraham Lincoln in 1860 led to the secession of many southern states. (p. 496)

Deere, John (1804–1886) American industrialist; he developed a steel plow to ease difficulty of turning thick soil on the Great Plains. (p. 404)

Dickinson, Emily (1830–1886) American poet, she lived a reclusive life, and her poems were not widely acclaimed until after her death. (p. 445)

Dix, Dorothea (1802–1887) American philanthropist and social reformer, she helped change the prison system nationwide by advocating the development of state hospitals for treatment for the mentally ill instead of imprisonment. (p. 450)

Douglas, Stephen (1813–1861) American politician and pro-slavery nominee for president, he debated Abraham Lincoln about slavery during the Illinois senatorial race. He proposed the unpopular Kansas-Nebraska Act, and he established the Freeport Doctrine, upholding the idea of popular sovereignty. (p. 484)



Douglass, Frederick (1817–1895) American abolitionist and writer, he escaped slavery and became a leading African American spokesman and writer. He published his biography, *The Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass,* and founded the abolitionist newspaper, the *North Star.* (pp. 456, 460)

E

Edwards, Jonathan (1703–1758) Important and influential revivalist leader in the Great Awakening religious movement, he delivered dramatic sermons on the choice between salvation and damnation. (p. 94)

Emerson, Ralph Waldo (1803–1882) American essayist and poet, he was a supporter of the transcendentalist philosophy of self-reliance. (p. 443)



Equiano, Olaudah (c. 1750–1797) African American abolitionist, he was an enslaved African who was eventually freed and became a leader of the abolitionist movement and writer of *The Interesting Narrative of the Life of Olaudah Equiano.* (p. 77)

Eriksson, Lief (c. 1000) Norwegian explorer, son of Erik the Red, was first European to explore the Americas. (p. 38)

F

Farragut, David (1801–1870) American soldier, he was the first commissioned American admiral, and in the Civil War he captured New Orleans and maintained a blockade along the Gulf Coast against Confederate forces. (p. 524)



Finney, Charles Grandison (1792–1875) American clergyman and educator, he became influential in the Second Great Awakening after a dramatic religious experience and conversion. He led long revivals that annoyed conventional ministers. (p. 448)

Franklin, Benjamin (1706–1790) American statesman, he was a philosopher, scientist, inventor, writer, publisher, first U.S. postmaster, and member of the committee to draft the Constitution. He invented bifocals and the lightning rod and wrote *Poor Richard's Almanack.* (p. 169)

Frémont, John C. (1813–1890) American explorer, army officer, and politician, he was chosen as the first Republican candidate for president. He was against the spread of slavery, and he was rejected by all but the free states as a "single issue" candidate in the election of 1856. (p. 489)

Fuller, Margaret (1810–1850) A journalist, critic, and women's rights activist, she was a member of the Transcendentalist group of authors. (p. 443)

Fulton, Robert (1765–1815) American engineer and inventor, he built the first commercially successful full-sized steamboat, the *Clermont,* which led to the development of commercial steamboat ferry services for goods and people. (p. 397)

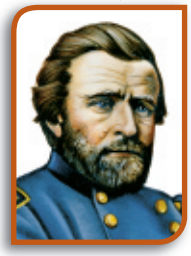
G

Gallaudet, Thomas (1787–1851) American educator, he studied techniques for instructing hearing-impaired people and established the first American school for the hearing impaired. (p. 451)

Gálvez, Bernardo de (1746–1786) Governor of Spanish Louisiana, he captured key cities from the British, greatly aiding the American Patriot movement and enabling the Spanish acquisition of Florida. (p. 131)

Garrison, William Lloyd (1805–1879) American journalist and reformer; he published the famous antislavery newspaper, the *Liberator,* and helped found the American Anti–Slavery Society, promoting immediate emancipation and racial equality. (p. 455)

Grant, Ulysses S. (1822–1885) Eighteenth president of the United States, he received a field promotion to lieutenant general in charge of all Union forces after leading a successful battle. He accepted General Lee's surrender of Confederate forces at Appomattox Courthouse, ending the Civil War. (p. 522)



Grimké, Angelina (1805–1879) and **Sarah** (1792–1873) American sisters and reformers, they were the daughters of a slaveholding family from South Carolina who became antislavery supporters and lecturers for the American Anti-Slavery Society. They also took up the women's rights campaign. (p. 455)

Gutenberg, Johannes (c. 1400–1468) German inventor credited with the invention of the movable-type printing press. (p. 27)

H

Hamilton, Alexander (1755–1804) American statesman and member of the Continental Congress and the Constitutional Convention, he was an author of the *Federalist Papers,* which supported ratification of the Constitution. He was the first secretary of treasury under George Washington and developed the Bank of the United States. (p. 238)

Harrison, William Henry (1773–1841) American politician, he served as the governor of Indian Territory and fought Tecumseh in the Battle of Tippecanoe. He was the ninth president of the United States. (p. 331)

Hawthorne, Nathaniel (1804–1864) American writer, he is famous for his many stories and books, including *The Scarlet Letter,* and he is recognized as one of the first authors to write in a unique American style. (p. 444)

Henry the Navigator (1394–1460) Prince of Portugal who established a school of navigation and financed trips of exploration. (p. 39)

Hidalgo y Costilla, Father Miguel (1753–1811) Mexican priest and revolutionist, he led a rebellion of about 80,000 impoverished Indians and *mestizos* against Spain in the hope of improving living conditions; though defeated, the rebellion eventually grew and helped lead to Mexican independence. (p. 350)

Hutchinson, Anne (1591–1643) Puritan leader who angered other Puritans by claiming that people's relationship to God did not need guidance from ministers; she was tried and convicted of undermining church authorities and was banished from Massachusetts Bay Colony; she later established the colony of Portsmouth in present-day Rhode Island. (p. 82)



I

Irving, Washington (1783–1859) Early American satirical writer, he was the first American writer to gain international acclaim. His works include *Rip Van Winkle* and *The Legend of Sleepy Hollow.* He often used American history and authentic American settings and characters. (p. 308)

J

Jackson, Andrew (1767–1845) Nicknamed Old Hickory, he was an American hero in the Battle of New Orleans. As commander of the Tennessee militia, he defeated the Creek Indians, securing 23 million acres of land. His election as the seventh president of the United States marked an era of democracy called Jacksonian Democracy. (pp. 286, 325)

Jackson, Thomas "Stonewall" (1824–1863) American Confederate general, he led the Shenandoah Valley campaign and fought with Lee in the Seven Days' Battles and the First and Second Battles of Bull Run. (p. 517)

Jefferson, Thomas (1743–1826) American statesman, and member of two Continental Congresses, chairman of the committee to draft the Declaration of Independence, the Declaration's main author and one of its signers, and the third president of the United States. (pp. 119, 239, 266, 271)



Johnson, Andrew (1808–1875) American politician and the seventeenth president of the United States upon the assassination of Lincoln, he was impeached for his unpopular ideas about Reconstruction. He held onto the office by a one-vote margin. (p. 557)

Jones, John Paul (1747–1792) American naval officer famed for bravery, his most famous victory was the defeat of the British warship *Serapis,* during which he declared, "I have not yet begun to fight!" (p. 133)

L

Lafayette, Marquis de (1757–1834) French statesman and officer who viewed the American Revolution as important to the world, he helped finance the Revolution and served as major general. (p. 131)

Las Casas, Bartolomé de (1474–1566) Spanish missionary and historian, he became the first ordained Catholic priest in the New World and advocated for the welfare and protection of Native Americans as well as preached against the slavery system. (p. 51)

Lee, Robert E. (1807–1870) American soldier, he refused Lincoln's offer to head the Union Army and agreed to lead Confederate forces. He successfully led several major battles until his defeat at Gettysburg, and he surrendered to the Union's commander General Grant at Appomattox Courthouse. (p. 518)



Lewis, Meriwether (1774–1809) Former army captain selected by President Jefferson to explore the Louisiana Purchase, he led the expedition that became known as the Lewis and Clark expedition. (p. 275)

Lincoln, Abraham (1809–1865) Sixteenth president of the United States, he promoted equal rights for African Americans in the famed Lincoln-Douglas debates. He issued the Emancipation Proclamation and set in motion the Civil War, but he was determined to preserve the Union. He was assassinated in 1865. (pp. 490, 535)

Little Turtle (c. 1752–1812) Miami chief who led a Native American alliance that raided settlements in the Northwest Territory, he was defeated and forced to sign the Treaty of Greenville, and he later became an advocate for peace. (p. 246)

Locke, John (1632–1704) English philosopher during the Enlightenment who argued that there was a social contract between people and their government. His ideas influenced the writers of the Declaration of Independence and U.S. Constitution. (p. 95)

Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth (1807–1882) American poet in the mid-nineteenth century, he is best known for his story-poems, such as "Paul Revere's Ride" in *Tales of a Wayside Inn* and *The Song of Hiawatha.* (p. 445)

Lowell, Francis Cabot (1775–1817) American industrialist who developed the Lowell system, a mill system that included looms that could both weave thread and spin cloth. He hired young women to live and work in his mill. (p. 392)

M

Madison, James (1751–1836) American statesman, he was a delegate to the Constitutional Convention, the fourth president of the United States, the author of some of the *Federalist Papers,* and is called the father of the Constitution for his proposals at the Constitutional Convention. He led the United States through the War of 1812. (pp. 164, 187, 216, 283)

Magellan (muh–JEL–uhn), **Ferdinand** (1480–1521) Portuguese captain of a Spanish fleet that sought a western route to Asia via the "Southern Ocean", he found a passage through South America, now known as the Strait of Magellan, but died during the expedition. His crew of 18 people with one remaining ship successfully circumnavigated the world. (p. 44)

Mann, Horace (1796–1859) American educator, he is considered the father of American public education. He was a leader of the common-school movement, advocating education for all children. (p. 450)



Mansa Musa (d. 1332?) Emperor of Mali, grandson or grandnephew of Sundiata, made pilgrimage to Mecca in 1324. (pp. 18, 21)

Marion, Francis (1732?–1795) Revolutionary War commander of Marion's Brigade, a group of guerrilla soldiers in South Carolina that used surprise raids against British communications and supply lines. (p. 136)

Marshall, John (1755–1835) Federalist leader who served in the House of Representatives and as U.S. Secretary of State, he later became the Chief Justice of the U.S. Supreme Court, establishing in *Marbury* v. *Madison* the Supreme Court's power of judicial review. (p. 270)

Marshall, Thurgood (1908–1993) First African American U.S. Supreme Court Justice, he represented as a lawyer the National Association for the Advancement of Colored People and fought racial segregation. (p. 186)

Mason, George (1725–1792) American Patriot who became an Antifederalist and refused to sign the Constitution. (p. 170)

McClellan, George B. (1826–1885) American army general put in charge of Union troops and later removed by Lincoln for failure to press Lee's Confederate troops in Richmond. (p. 517)

McCormick, Cyrus (1809–1884) American inventor and industrialist, he invented the mechanical reaper and harvesting machine that quickly cut down wheat. (p. 404)

Melville, Herman (1819–1891) American writer, he based his books on his own sailing experiences and is famous for *Moby-Dick*. (p. 445)

Michelangelo (1475–1564) Italian sculptor, painter, architect, and poet. (p. 26)

Moctezuma II (1466–1520) Emperor of Mexico's Aztec Empire, he welcomed explorer Cortés as a god but was taken prisoner by him. He was later killed, and the Aztec capital was destroyed during the following Aztec uprising. (p. 46)

Monroe, James (1758–1831) Leading Revolutionary figure and negotiator of the Louisiana Purchase, he was the fifth president of the United States. He put forth the Monroe Doctrine establishing the U.S. sphere of influence in the Western Hemisphere that became the foundation of U.S. foreign policy. (p. 299)

Morse, Samuel F. B. (1791–1872) American artist and inventor, he applied scientists' discoveries of electricity and magnetism to develop the telegraph, which soon sent messages all across the country. (p. 402)



Mott, Lucretia (1793–1880) American reformer, she planned the Seneca Falls Convention with Elizabeth Cady Stanton, the first organized meeting for women's rights in the United States. (p. 464)

O

O'Connor, Sandra Day (1930–) Associate justice of the U.S. Supreme Court, she was the first woman appointed to the Court. (p. 186)

Osceola (c.1804–1838) Florida Seminole leader, he resisted removal by the U.S. government despite an earlier treaty that Seminole leaders had been forced to sign. He was eventually captured and died in prison. (p. 335)

P

Paine, Thomas (1737–1809) American political philosopher and author, he urged an immediate declaration of independence from England in his anonymously and simply written pamphlet, *Common Sense*. (p. 118)

Penn, William (1644–1718) Quaker leader who founded a colony for Quakers in Pennsylvania; the colony provided an important example of representative self-government and became a model of freedom and tolerance. (p. 86)

Perry, Oliver Hazard (1785–1819) American naval captain who put together the fleet that defeated the British at the Battle of Lake Erie in the War of 1812. (p. 285)

Pickett, George (1825–1875) American general in the Confederate army, he was famed for Pickett's Charge, a failed but heroic effort at Cemetery Ridge in the Battle of Gettysburg, often considered a turning point of the Civil War. (p. 539)

Pierce, Franklin (1804–1869) Democratic candidate for president in 1852 and the fourteenth president of the United States, he made the Gadsden Purchase, which opened the Northwest for settlement, and passed the unpopular Kansas-Nebraska Act. (p. 483)

Pike, Zebulon (1779–1813) Army officer sent on a mission to explore the West, he was ordered to find the headwaters of the Red River. He attempted to climb what is now known as Pikes Peak in Colorado. (p. 276)

Pizarro (puh–ZAHR–oh), **Francisco** (c. 1475–1541) Spanish conquistador who sailed with Balboa on the discovery of the Pacific Ocean, he later pursued rumors of golden cities in the Andes Mountains of South America and conquered the Inca Empire. (p. 47)

Plato (c. 428-348 BC) Greek philosopher, student of Plato and teacher of Aristotle, wrote The Republic. (p. 22)

Pocahontas (c.1595–1617) American Indian princess, she saved the life of John Smith when he was captured and sentenced to death by the Powhatan. She was later taken prisoner by the English, converted to Christianity, and married colonist John Rolfe. (p. 73)

Poe, Edgar Allan (1809–1849) American writer, he is famed for his haunting poem "The Raven," as well as many other chilling or romantic stories and poems. He is credited with creating the first detective story, *The Gold Bug*. (p. 445)

Polk, James K. (1795–1849) Eleventh president of the United States, he settled the Oregon boundary with Great Britain and successfully conducted the Mexican-American War. (p. 355)



Pontiac (c.1720–1769) Ottawa chief who united the Great Lakes' Indians to try to halt the advance of European settlements, he attacked British forts in a rebellion known as Pontiac's Rebellion; he eventually surrendered in 1766. (p. 97)

R

Revels, Hiram (1822–1901) American clergyman, educator, and politician, he became the first African American in the U.S. Senate. (p. 565)

Rochambeau, Comte de (1725–1807) French soldier who commanded the French troops in the American Revolutionary War. He was with General George Washington at the Battle of Yorktown. (p. 131)

S

Sacagawea (sak–uh–juh–WEE–uh) (1786?–1812) Shoshone woman who, along with her French fur-trapper husband, accompanied and aided Lewis and Clark on their expedition. (p. 276)

Santa Anna, Antonio López de (1794–1876) Mexican general and politician, he was president of Mexico and became a dictator. He fought in the Texas Revolution and seized the Alamo but was defeated and captured by Sam Houston at San Jacinto. (p. 351)

Scott, Dred (1795?–1858) Enslaved African who filed suit for his freedom stating that his time living in a free state made him a free man; the Supreme Court ruling known as the *Dred Scott* decision upheld slavery and found the Missouri Compromise unconstitutional. (p. 489)

Scott, Winfield (1786–1866) American general, he served as commander in the Mexican War and used a two-part strategy against the South in the Civil War; he wanted to destroy the South's economy with a naval blockade and gain control of the Mississippi River. (p. 513)

Sequoya (between 1760 and 1770–1843) American Indian scholar and craftsman, he created a writing system for the Cherokee language and taught literacy to many Cherokee. (p. 333)

Shays, Daniel (1747?–1825) Revolutionary War officer who led Shays's Rebellion, an uprising of farmers in western Massachusetts that shut down the courts so that farmers would not lose their farms for tax debts. He was defeated and condemned to death, but pardoned. (p. 161)

Sherman, William Tecumseh (1820–1891) American Union army officer, his famous March to the Sea captured Atlanta, Georgia, marking an important turning point in the war. (p. 541)

Singer, Isaac (1811–1875) American inventor; he patented an improved sewing machine and by 1860, was the largest manufacturer of sewing machines in the country. (p. 405)

Slater, Samuel (1768–1835) English industrialist who brought a design for a textile mill to America, he is considered the founder of the American cotton industry. (p. 386)

Smith, John (c.1580–1631) English colonist to the Americas who helped found the Jamestown Colony and encouraged settlers to work harder and build better housing. (p. 73)

Socrates (c. 470–399 BC) Greek philosopher and teacher who wanted to make people question their own beliefs and think for themselves. (p. 22)

Squanto (?–1622) Patuxet Indian who was captured and enslaved in Spain but later escaped to England and then America; he taught the Pilgrims native farming methods and helped them establish relations with the Wampanoag, the Indians at the feast later known as Thanksgiving. (p. 79)

Stanton, Elizabeth Cady (1815–1902) American woman suffrage leader, she organized the Seneca Falls Convention with Lucretia Mott. The convention was the first organized meeting for women's rights in the United States, which launched the suffrage movement. (pp. 464, 467)



Steuben, Baron Friedrich von (1730–1794) Prussian soldier who helped train American forces at Valley Forge in the American Revolutionary War. (p. 131)

Stevens, Thaddeus (1792–1868) American lawyer and politician, he was the leader of the Radical Republicans in the Reconstruction effort and was an opponent and critic of Andrew Johnson's policies. He sought economic justice for freedmen and poor southerners. (p. 560)

Stone, Lucy (1818–1893) American woman suffragist, she was a well–known and accomplished antislavery speaker who supported the women's rights movement. (p. 465)

Stowe, Harriet Beecher (1811–1896) American author and daughter of Lyman Beecher, she was an abolitionist and author of the famous antislavery novel, *Uncle Tom's Cabin.* (p. 481)

Stuyvesant (STY–vi–suhnt), **Peter** (c. 1610–1672) Director general of the Dutch New Netherland colony, he was forced to surrender New Netherland to the English. (p. 85)

Sumner, Charles (1811–1874) A senator from Massachusetts, he was attacked by Preston Brooks with a cane over the issue of slavery. (p. 487)

Sutter, John (1803–1880) American pioneer who built Sutter's Fort, a trading post on the California frontier; gold was discovered, leading to the California gold rush. (p. 365)

T

Taney (TAW–nee), **Roger B.** (1777–1864) U.S. Supreme Court Chief Justice, he wrote the majority opinion in the *Dred Scott* decision, stating that African Americans were not citizens and that the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional. (p. 490)

Tecumseh (1768–1813) Shawnee chief who attempted to form an Indian confederation to resist white settlement in the Northwest Territory. (p. 280)

Thoreau, Henry David (1817–1862) American writer and transcendentalist philosopher, he studied nature and published a magazine article, "Civil Disobedience," as well as his famous book, *Walden Pond.* (p. 443)

Truth, Sojourner (c.1797–1883) American evangelist and reformer, she was born an enslaved African but was later freed and became a speaker for abolition and women's suffrage. (p. 456)

Tubman, Harriet (c.1820–1913) American abolitionist who escaped slavery and assisted other enslaved Africans to escape; she is the most famous Underground Railroad conductor and is known as the Moses of her people. (p. 458)

Turner, Nat (1800–1831) American slave leader, he claimed that divine inspiration had led him to end the slavery system. Called Nat Turner's Rebellion, the slave revolt was the most violent one in U.S. history; he was tried, convicted, and executed. (p. 428)

V

Vallejo, Mariano Guadalupe (1808–1890) American soldier and politician, he increased settlement in northern California and became a rich cattleman. He helped in the effort to get statehood for California. (p. 357)



Van Buren, Martin (1782–1862) American politician and secretary of state under Andrew Jackson, he later became the eighth president of the United States. (p. 324)

W



Washington, George (1732–1799) Revolutionary War hero and Patriot leader, he served as a representative to the Continental Congresses, commanded the Continental Army, and was unanimously elected to two terms as president of the United States. (pp. 114, 234)

Washington, Martha (1732–1802) Wife of George Washington, she was the first First Lady. (p. 234)

Webster, Daniel (1782–1852) American lawyer and statesman, he spoke out against nullification and states' rights, believing that the country should stay unified. (p. 328)

Whitman, Walt (1819–1892) American poet, he gained recognition abroad and later at home for unrhymed works of poetry praising the United States, Americans, democracy, and individualism.(p. 445)

Whitney, Eli (1765–1825) American inventor whose cotton gin changed cotton harvesting procedures and enabled large increases in cotton production; he introduced the technology of mass production through the development of interchangeable parts in gun-making. (p. 387)

Winthrop, John (1588–1649) Leader of the Massachusetts Bay Colony who led Puritan colonists to Massachusetts to establish an ideal Christian community; he later became the colony's first governor. (p. 80)

Y

Young, Brigham (1801–1877) American religious leader who headed the Mormon Church after the murder of Joseph Smith, he moved the community to Utah, leading thousands along what came to be known as the Mormon Trail to the main settlement at Salt Lake City. (p. 349)

English and Spanish Glossary

MARK	AS IN	RESPELLING	EXAMPLE
a	alphabet	a	*AL-fuh-bet
ā	Asia	ay	AY-zhuh
ä	cart, top	ah	KAHRT, TAHP
e	let, ten	e	LET, TEN
ē	even, leaf	ee	EE-vuhn, LEEF
i	it, tip, British	i	IT, TIP, BRIT-ish
ī	site, buy, Ohio	y	SYT, BY, oh-HY-oh
ə	iris	eye	EYE-ris
k	card	k	KAHRD
ō	over, rainbow	oh	OH-vuhr, RAYN-boh
u̇	book, wood	ooh	BOOHK, WOOHD
ȯ	all, orchid	aw	AWL, AWR-kid
ȯi	foil, coin	oy	FOYL, KOYN
au̇	out	ow	OWT
ə	cup, butter	uh	KUHP, BUHT-uhr
ü	rule, food	oo	ROOL, FOOD
yü	few	yoo	FYOO
zh	vision	zh	VIZH-uhn

*A syllable printed in small capital letters receives heavier emphasis than the other syllable(s) in a word.

Phonetic Respelling and Pronunciation Guide

Many of the key terms in this textbook have been respelled to help you pronounce them. The letter combinations used in the respelling throughout the narrative are explained in the following phonetic respelling and pronunciation guide. The guide is adapted from *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary, Eleventh Edition; Merriam-Webster's Biographical Dictionary;* and *Merriam-Webster's Geographical Dictionary.*

A

abolition an end to slavery (p. 454)
abolición fin de la esclavitud (pág. 454)

Adams-Onís Treaty (1819) an agreement in which Spain gave East Florida to the United States (p. 299)
tratado de Adams y Onís (1819) acuerdo en el que España cedió el territorio del este de Florida a Estados Unidos (pág. 299)

African Diaspora the population of displaced Africans and their descendants around the world (p. 60)
Diáspora africana población de africanos desplazados y sus descendientes en todo el mundo (pág. 60)

Alamo Spanish mission in San Antonio, Texas, that was the site of a famous battle of the Texas Revolution in 1836 (p. 352)
El Álamo misión española en San Antonio, Texas; escenario de una famosa batalla durante la Revolución texana de 1836 (pág. 352)

Alien and Sedition Acts (1798) laws passed by a Federalist-dominated Congress aimed at protecting the government from treasonous ideas, actions, and people (p. 253)
Leyes de No Intervención Extranjera (1798) leyes aprobadas por un Congreso mayormente federalista con el fin de proteger al gobierno de la influencia de ideas, acciones y personas desleales (pág. 253)

amendment official change, correction, or addition to a law or constitution (p. 173)
enmienda cambio, corrección o adición realizado de manera oficial a una ley o constitución (pág. 173)

American Anti-Slavery Society an organization started by William Lloyd Garrison whose members wanted immediate emancipation and racial equality for African Americans (p. 455)
Sociedad Americana contra la Esclavitud organización fundada por William Lloyd Garrison cuyos miembros pedían la emancipación inmediata y la igualdad racial de los afroamericanos (pág. 455)

American System Henry Clay's plan for raising tariffs to pay for internal improvements such as better roads and canals (p. 302)
Sistema estadounidense plan de alza de impuestos creado por Henry Clay para realizar mejoras internas como la reparación de caminos y canales (pág. 302)

Antifederalists people who opposed ratification of the Constitution (p. 170)
antifederalistas personas que se oponían a la aprobación de la Constitución (pág. 170)

Appomattox Courthouse Virginia town where General Robert E. Lee was forced to surrender, thus ending the Civil War (p. 542)
Appomattox Courthouse poblado de Virginia donde el general Robert E. Lee fue obligado a rendirse, dando fin a la Guerra Civil (pág. 542)

Articles of Confederation (1777) the document that created the first central government for the United States; was replaced by the Constitution in 1789 (p. 154)
Artículos de la Confederación (1777) documento que creó el primer gobierno central en Estados Unidos; fue reemplazado por la Constitución en 1789 (pág. 154)

astrolabe a device that enabled navigators to learn their ship's location by charting the position of the stars (p. 40)
astrolabio instrumento que permitía a los navegantes determinar la posición de una embarcación según la posición de las estrellas (pág. 40)

B

Bacon's Rebellion (1676) an atttack led by Nathaniel Bacon against American Indians and the colonial government in Virginia (p. 74)
Rebelión de Bacon (1676) ataque encabezado por Nathaniel Bacon contra los indígenas norteamericanos y el gobierno colonial en Virginia (pág. 74)

Bank of the United States a national bank chartered by Congress in 1791 to provide security for the U.S. economy (p. 242)
Banco de Estados Unidos banco nacional constituido por el Congreso en 1791 para dar establidad a la economía de Estados Unidos (pág. 242)

Battle of Antietam (1862) a Union victory in the Civil War that marked the bloodiest single-day battle in U.S. military history (p. 519)
batalla de Antietam (1862) victoria del ejército de la Unión durante la Guerra Civil en la batalla de un solo día más sangrienta en la historia militar de Estados Unidos (pág. 519)

Battle of Bunker Hill (1775) a Revolutionary War battle in Boston that demonstrated that the colonists could fight well against the British army (p. 115)
batalla de Bunker Hill (1775) batalla de la Guerra de Independencia estadounidense que tuvo lugar en Boston; en ésta se demostró que los colonos podían luchar bien contra el ejército británico (pág. 115)

Battle of Fallen Timbers (1794) a battle between U.S. troops and an American Indian confederation that ended Indian efforts to halt white settlement in the Northwest Territory (p. 247)
batalla de Fallen Timbers (1794) batalla entre las tropas estadounidenses y una confederación de indígenas norteamericanos que puso fin a los intentos de los indígenas para detener la emigración de personas de raza blanca al Territorio del Noroeste (pág. 247)

Battle of Gettysburg (1863) a Union Civil War victory that turned the tide against the Confederates at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania (p. 537)
batalla de Gettysburg (1863) victoria del ejército de la Unión durante la Guerra Civil que cambió el curso de la guerra en contra de los confederados en Gettysburg, Pensilvania (pág. 537)

Battle of Lake Erie (1813) U.S. victory in the War of 1812, led by Oliver Hazard Perry; broke Britain's control of Lake Erie (p. 285)
batalla del lago Erie (1813) victoria en la Guerra de 1812 en la que el ejército estadounidense, comandado por Oliver Hazard Perry, puso fin al control británico del lago Erie (pág. 285)

Battle of New Orleans (1815) the greatest U.S. victory in the War of 1812; actually took place two weeks after a peace treaty had been signed ending the war (p. 286)
batalla de Nueva Orleáns (1815) la mayor victoria del ejército estadounidense en la Guerra de 1812; tuvo lugar dos semanas después de la firma de un tratado de paz en el que se declaraba el final de la guerra (pág. 286)

Battle of San Jacinto (1836) the final battle of the Texas Revolution; resulted in the defeat of the Mexican army and independence for Texas (p. 352)
batalla de San Jacinto (1836) batalla final de la Revolución texana en la que fue derrotado el ejército mexicano y Texas obtuvo su independencia (pág. 352)

Battle of Saratoga (1777) a Revolutionary War battle in New York that resulted in a major defeat of British troops; marked the Patriots' greatest victory up to that point in the war (p. 130)
batalla de Saratoga (1777) batalla de la Guerra de Independencia estadounidense que tuvo lugar en Nueva York y en la que las fuerzas británicas sufrieron una de sus mayores derrotas; los patriotas obtuvieron su mayor victoria hasta ese momento (pág. 130)

Battle of Shiloh (1862) a Civil War battle in Tennessee in which the Union army gained greater control over the Mississippi River valley (p. 523)
batalla de Shiloh (1862) batalla de la Guerra Civil en Tennessee en la que el ejército de la Unión adquirió mayor control sobre el valle del río Mississippi (pág. 523)

Battle of Tippecanoe (1811) U.S. victory over an Indian confederation that wanted to stop white settlement in the Northwest Territory; increased tensions between Great Britain and the United States (p. 282)
batalla de Tippecanoe (1811) victoria del ejército estadounidense sobre la confederación indígena que intentaba evitar el establecimiento de poblaciones de blancos en el Territorio del Noroeste; esta batalla aumentó las hostilidades entre Gran Bretaña y Estados Unidos (pág. 282)

Battle of Trenton (1776) a Revolutionary War battle in New Jersey in which Patriot forces captured more than 900 Hessian troops (p. 129)

batalla de Trenton (1776) batalla de la Guerra de Independencia estadounidense que tuvo lugar en Nueva Jersey; en esta batalla las fuerzas de los patriotas capturaron a más de 900 soldados mercenarios hessianos (pág. 129)

Battle of Yorktown (1781) the last major battle of the Revolutionary War; site of British general Charles Cornwallis's surrender to the Patriots in Virginia (p. 137)
batalla de Yorktown (1781) la última batalla importante de la Guerra de Independencia estadounidense; lugar donde se rindió el general británico Charles Cornwallis ante las tropas de los patriotas en Virginia (pág. 137)

Bear Flag Revolt (1846) a revolt against Mexico by American settlers in California who declared the territory an independent republic (p. 358)
Revuelta de Bear Flag (1846) rebelión iniciada por colonos estadounidenses en contra de México para declarar al territorio de California una república independiente (pág. 358)

Berbers a group of people from northern Africa (p. 16)
bereberes grupo de pueblos que habitaban en el norte de África (pág. 16)

Bering Land Bridge a strip of land connecting Alaska with Russia that emerged from underwater around 38,000 BC (p. 6)
Puente de Tierra de Bering franja de tierra que conecta Alaska actual con Asia del nordeste que fue expuesta por bajos niveles del mar durante el último período glaciar (pág. 6)

Bill of Rights the first 10 amendments to the Constitution; ratified in 1791 (p. 173)
Declaración de Derechos primeras 10 enmiendas hechas a la Constitución; aprobada en 1791 (pág. 173)

Black Codes laws passed in the southern states during Reconstruction that greatly limited the freedom and rights of African Americans (p. 558)
códigos para negros decretos aprobados en los estados sureños en la época de la Reconstrucción que limitaron en gran medida la libertad y los derechos de los afroamericanos (pág. 558)

Black Death a series of plagues that killed about 25 million people in Europe starting in 1347 (p. 25)
Peste Negra serie de plagas que asolaron Europa, causando la muerte a casi 25 millones de personas; comenzaron en 1347 (pág. 25)

bond a certificate that represents money the government has borrowed from private citizens (p. 238)
bono certificado que representa dinero que el gobierno toma prestado de los ciudadanos (pág. 238)

border states Delaware, Kentucky, Maryland, and Missouri; slave states that lay between the North and the South and did not join the Confederacy during the Civil War (p. 512)
estados fronterizos Delaware, Kentucky, Maryland y Missouri; estados ubicados entre el Norte y el Sur, que practicaban la esclavitud y que no se unieron a la Confederación durante la Guerra Civil (pág. 512)

Boston Massacre (1770) an incident in which British soldiers fired into a crowd of colonists, killing five people (p. 101)
matanza de Boston (1770) incidente en el que los soldados británicos dispararon entre una multitud de colonos, ocasionando la muerte a cinco personas (pág. 101)

Boston Tea Party (1773) a protest against the Tea Act in which a group of colonists boarded British tea ships and dumped more than 340 chests of tea into Boston Harbor (p. 102)
Motín del Té de Boston (1773) protesta en contra de la Ley del Té en la que un grupo de colonos abordó barcos británicos que transportaban té y arrojó al mar alrededor de 340 baúles con este producto en el puerto de Boston (pág. 102)

Bureau of Indian Affairs a government agency created in the 1800s to oversee federal policy toward Native Americans (p. 332)
Oficina de Asuntos Indígenas agencia creada por el gobierno en el siglo XIX para encargarse de las políticas federales sobre los indígenas norteamericanos (pág. 332)

C

Californios Spanish colonists in California in the 1800s (p. 357)
californios colonos españoles que vivían en California en el siglo XIX (pág. 357)

caravels ships that used triangular sails to sail against the wind, and had rudders to improve steering (p. 40)
carabelas barcos que usaban velas triangulares para navegar contra el viento y que tenían timones para mejorar la dirección (pág. 40)

charter an official document that gives a person the right to establish a colony (p. 54)
carta de constitución documento real que da a una persona el derecho a establecer una colonia (pág. 54)

checks and balances a system established by the Constitution that prevents any branch of government from becoming too powerful (p. 167)
pesos y contrapesos sistema establecido por la Constitución para evitar que cualquier poder del gobierno adquiera demasiada autoridad en relación con los demás (pág. 167)

circumnavigate to travel all the way around the globe (p. 44)
circunnavegar viajar rodeando por completo la Tierra (pág. 44)

Civil Rights Act of 1866 a law that gave African Americans legal rights equal to those of white Americans (p. 560)
Ley de Derechos Civiles de 1866 ley que daba a los afroamericanos derechos legales similares a los que tenían los ciudadanos de raza blanca (pág. 560)

Clermont the first full-sized U.S. commercial steamboat; developed by Robert Fulton and tested in 1807 (p. 397)
Clermont primer barco comercial de vapor de grandes dimensiones, diseñado por Robert Fulton y probado en 1807 (pág. 397)

Columbian Exchange the transfer of plants, animals, and diseases between the Americas and Europe, Asia, and Africa (p. 45)
intercambio colombino intercambio de plantas y animales entre el Nuevo Mundo y el Viejo Mundo que tuvo lugar tras el viaje de Colón (pág. 45)

Committees of Correspondence committees created by the Massachusetts House of Representatives in the 1760s to help towns and colonies share information about resisting British laws (p. 99)
comités de correspondencia comités creados por la Cámara de Representantes de Massachusetts en la década de 1760 para que poblados y colonias compartieran información que los ayudara a resistirse a las leyes británicas (pág. 99)

common-school movement a social reform effort that began in the mid-1800s and promoted the idea of having all children educated in a common place regardless of social class or background (p. 450)
movimiento de escuelas comunes reforma social iniciada a mediados del siglo XIX para fomentar la idea de que todos los niños debían recibir educación en un mismo lugar sin importar su origen o clase social (pág. 450)

Common Sense (1776) a pamphlet written by Thomas Paine that criticized monarchies and convinced many American colonists of the need to break away from Britain (p. 118)
Sentido común (1776) folleto escrito por Thomas Paine en el que criticaba a las monarquías con el fin de convencer a los colonos estadounidenses de la necesidad de independizarse de Gran Bretaña (pág. 118)

Compromise of 1850 Henry Clay's proposed agreement that allowed California to enter the Union as a free state and divided the rest of the Mexican Cession into two territories where slavery would be decided by popular sovereignty (p. 479)
Acuerdo de 1850 acuerdo redactado por Henry Clay en que se permitía a California ingresar en la Unión como estado libre y se proponía la división del resto del territorio cedido por México en dos partes donde la esclavitud sería reglamentada por soberanía popular (pág. 479)

Compromise of 1877 an agreement to settle the disputed presidential election of 1876; Democrats agreed to accept Republican Rutherford B. Hayes as president in return for the removal of federal troops from the South (p. 567)
Acuerdo de 1877 acuerdo en el que se resolvió la disputa de las elecciones presidenciales de 1876; los demócratas aceptaron al republicano Rutherford B. Hayes como presidente a cambio del retiro de las tropas federales del Sur (pág. 567)

Confederate States of America the nation formed by the southern states when they seceded from the Union; also known as the Confederacy (p. 496)
Estados Confederados de América nación formada por los estados del Sur cuando se separaron de la Unión; también conocida como Confederación (pág. 496)

conquistador a Spanish soldier and explorer who led military expeditions in the Americas and captured land for Spain (p. 46)
conquistador soldado y explorador español que encabezó expediciones militares en América y capturó territorios en nombre de España (pág. 46)

constitution a set of basic principles that determines the powers and duties of a government (p. 153)
constitución conjunto de principios básicos que determina los poderes y las obligaciones de un gobierno (pág. 153)

Constitutional Convention (1787) a meeting held in Philadelphia at which delegates from the states wrote the Constitution (p. 164)
Convención Constitucional (1787) encuentro realizado en Filadelfia en el que delegados de los estados redactaron la Constitución (pág. 164)

Constitutional Union Party a political party formed in 1860 by a group of northerners and southerners who supported the Union, its laws, and the Constitution (p. 495)
Partido Constitucional por la Unión partido político formado en 1860 por habitantes del Norte y del Sur en apoyo de la Unión, sus leyes y la Constitución (pág. 495)

Continental Army the army created by the Second Continental Congress in 1775 to defend the American colonies from Britain (p. 114)
Ejército Continental ejército creado por el Segundo Congreso Continental en 1775 para defender las colonias estadounidenses del dominio británico (pág. 114)

contraband an escaped slave who joined the Union army during the Civil War (p. 531)
contrabando bienes introducidos en un país de forma ilegal; esclavo que escapó y que se unió al ejército de la Unión durante la Guerra Civil (pág. 531)

Convention of 1818 an agreement between the United States and Great Britain that settled fishing rights and established new North American borders (p. 298)

Convención de 1818 acuerdo entre Estados Unidos y Gran Bretaña para definir los derechos de pesca y establecer las nuevas fronteras norteamericanas (pág. 298)

Copperheads a group of northern Democrats who opposed abolition and sympathized with the South during the Civil War (p. 532)
copperheads grupo de demócratas del Norte que se oponían a la abolición de la esclavitud y simpatizaban con las creencias sureñas durante la Guerra Civil (pág. 532)

cotton belt a region stretching from South Carolina to east Texas where most U.S. cotton was produced during the mid-1800s (p. 416)
región algodonera zona que se extendía desde Carolina del Sur hasta el este de Texas, en la que se producía la mayor parte del algodón cosechado en Estados Unidos a mediados del siglo XIX (pág. 416)

cotton diplomacy Confederate efforts to use the importance of southern cotton to Britain's textile industry to persuade the British to support the Confederacy in the Civil War (p. 513)
diplomacia del algodón esfuerzos de la Confederación por aprovechar la influencia del algodón del Sur en la industria textil británica para convencer a Gran Bretaña de apoyar su causa durante la Guerra Civil (pág. 513)

cotton gin a machine invented by Eli Whitney in 1793 to remove seeds from short-staple cotton; revolutionized the cotton industry (p. 415)
desmotadora de algodón máquina inventada por Eli Whitney en 1793 para separar las fibras de algodón de las semillas; revolucionó la industria del algodón (pág. 415)

culture the common values and traditions of a society, such as language, government, and family relationships (p. 7)
cultura valores y tradiciones comunes de una sociedad, como el lenguaje, la forma de gobierno y las relaciones familiares (pág. 7)

Cumberland Road the first federal road project, construction of which began in 1815; ran from Cumberland, Maryland, to present-day Wheeling, West Virginia (p. 303)
camino de Cumberland primer proyecto federal de construcción de carreteras, iniciado en 1815 para crear un camino entre Cumberland, Maryland y el poblado que actualmente lleva el nombre de Wheeling, en Virginia Occidental (pág. 303)

D

Declaration of Independence (1776) the document written to declare the colonies free from British rule (p. 119)
Declaración de Independencia (1776) documento redactado para declarar la independencia de las colonias del dominio británico (pág. 119)

Declaration of Sentiments (1848) a statement written and signed by women's rights supporters at the Seneca Falls Convention; detailed their beliefs about social injustice against women (p. 464)
Declaración de Sentimientos (1848) declaración redactada y firmada por una serie de personas en apoyo de los derechos de la mujer durante la Convención de Seneca Falls, en la que se describía con detalle su punto de vista sobre las injusticias sociales que afectaban a las mujeres (pág. 464)

democracy a government in which people rule themselves (p. 23)
democracia gobierno en el que el pueblo se gobierna a sí mismo (pág. 23)

Democratic Party a political party formed by supporters of Andrew Jackson after the presidential election of 1824 (p. 323)
Partido Demócrata partido político formado por partidarios de Andrew Jackson después de las elecciones presidenciales de 1824 (pág. 323)

Democratic-Republican Party a political party founded in the 1790s by Thomas Jefferson, James Madison, and other leaders who wanted to preserve the power of the state governments and promote agriculture (p. 250)
Partido Demócrata Republicano partido político formado en la década de 1790 por Thomas Jefferson, James Madison y otros líderes políticos con el fin de preservar el poder de los gobiernos estatales y promover la agricultura (pág. 250)

deport to send an immigrant back to his or her country of origin (p. 222)
deportar enviar a un inmigrante de regreso a su país de origen (pág. 222)

depression a steep drop in economic activity combined with rising unemployment (p. 161)
depresión descenso considerable en la actividad económica, combinado con un alza en el desempleo (pág. 161)

Donner party a group of western travelers who were stranded in the Sierra Nevada during the winter of 1846–47; only 45 of the party's 87 members survived (p. 365)
grupo Donner grupo de viajeros del Oeste extraviados en la Sierra Nevada durante el invierno de 1846–47; sólo 45 de los 87 viajeros sobrevivieron (pág. 365)

double jeopardy the act of trying a person twice for the same crime (p. 218)
doble proceso acto de juzgar a una persona dos veces por el mismo delito (pág. 218)

draft a system of required service in the armed forces (p. 223)
conscripción sistema de servicio obligatorio en las fuerzas armadas (pág. 223)

due process the fair application of the law (p. 218)
debido proceso aplicación justa de la ley (pág. 218)

E

electoral college a group of people selected from each of the states to cast votes in presidential elections (p. 234)
colegio electoral grupo de personas elegido en cada estado para votar en las elecciones presidenciales (pág. 234)

emancipation freeing of the slaves (p. 529)
emancipación liberación de los esclavos (pág. 529)

Emancipation Proclamation (1862) an order issued by President Abraham Lincoln freeing the slaves in areas rebelling against the Union; took effect January 1, 1863 (p. 529)
Proclamación de Emancipación (1862) decreto emitido por el presidente Abraham Lincoln para liberar a los esclavos en las áreas que luchaban contra la Unión; entró en vigor el primero de enero de 1863 (pág. 529)

embargo the banning of trade with a country (p. 279)
embargo prohibición del comercio con un país (pág. 279)

Embargo Act (1807) a law that prohibited American merchants from trading with other countries (p. 279)
Ley de Embargo (1807) ley que prohibía a los comerciantes estadounidenses comerciar con otros países (pág. 279)

eminent domain the government's power to take personal property to benefit the public (p. 218)
derecho de expropiación poder otorgado al gobierno para tomar propiedades particulares por el bien común (pág. 218)

empresarios agents who were contracted by the Mexican republic to bring settlers to Texas in the early l800s (p. 350)
empresarios personas contratadas por la República Mexicana para reclutar personas que desearan establecer poblaciones en Texas a principios del siglo XIX (pág. 350)

encomienda system a system in Spanish America that gave settlers the right to tax local Indians or to demand their labor in exchange for protecting them and converting them to Christianity (p. 50)
sistema de encomienda sistema adoptado en la América española que permitía a los colonos cobrar impuestos a los indígenas o exigirles trabajo a cambio de su protección y de convertirlos al cristianismo (pág. 50)

English Bill of Rights (1689) a shift of political power from the British monarchy to Parliament (pp. 91, 152)
Declaración de Derechos inglesa (1689) cambio del poder político de la monarquía británica al Parlamento inglés (pág. 91, 152)

Enlightenment the Age of Reason; movement that began in Europe in the 1700s as people began examining the natural world, society, and government (p. 95)
Ilustración Era de la Razón; movimiento iniciado en Europa en el siglo XVIII cuando las personas empezaron a adquirir más conocimientos sobre la naturaleza, la sociedad y el gobierno (pág. 95)

environment the climate and landscape that surrounds living things (p. 7)
medio ambiente el clima y paisaje donde habitan seres vivos (pág. 7)

Era of Good Feelings a period of peace, pride, and progress for the United States from 1815 to 1825 (p. 303)
Era de los buenos sentimientos período de paz, orgullo y progreso de los Estados Unidos de 1815 a 1825 (pág. 303)

Erie Canal the canal that runs from Albany to Buffalo, New York; completed in 1825 (p. 303)
canal de Erie canal que va de Albany a Búfalo, en el estado de Nueva York; completado en 1825 (pág. 303)

executive branch the division of the federal government that includes the president and the administrative departments; enforces the nation's laws (p. 167)
poder ejectivo división del gobierno federal que incluye al presidente y a los departamentos administrativos; vigila el cumplimiento de las leyes de la nación (pág. 167)

executive orders nonlegislative directives issued by the U.S. president in certain circumstances; executive orders have the force of congressional law (p. 185)
órdenes ejecutivas órdenes no legislativas dictadas por el presidente de Estados Unidos en circunstancias específicas; tienen la misma validez que las leyes del Congreso (pág. 185)

F

factor a crop broker who managed the trade between southern planters and their customers (p. 417)
comisionado intermediario que administraba el intercambio comercial entre las plantaciones del Sur y sus clientes (pág. 417)

federal system a system that divided powers between the states and the federal government (p. 182)
sistema federal sistema en el que se distribuye el poder entre los estados y el gobierno federal (pág. 182)

federalism U.S. system of government in which power is distributed between a central government and individual states (p. 167)
federalismo sistema de gobierno de Estados Unidos en el que el poder está distribuido entre una autoridad centralizada y varios estados (pág. 167)

Federalist Papers a series of essays that defended and explained the Constitution and tried to reassure Americans that the states would not be overpowered by the proposed national government (p. 171)
Federalist Papers serie de ensayos que defienden y explican la Constitución con el propósito de que los ciudadanos quedaran convencidos de que el gobierno nacional propuesto no tendría supremacía sobre el gobierno de los estados (pág. 171)

Federalist Party a political party created in the 1790s and influenced by Alexander Hamilton that wanted to strengthen the federal government and promote industry and trade (p. 250)
Partido Federalista partido político creado en la década de 1790 siguiendo las ideas de Alexander Hamilton para fortalecer al gobierno federal y fomentar la industria y el intercambio comercial (pág. 250)

Federalists people who supported ratification of the Constitution (p. 170)
federalistas personas que apoyaban la ratificación de la Constitución (pág. 170)

Fifteenth Amendment (1870) a constitutional amendment that gave African American men the right to vote (p. 563)
Decimoquinta Enmienda (1870) enmienda constitucional que otorgaba a los hombres afroamericanos el derecho al voto (pág. 563)

54th Massachusetts Infantry African American Civil War regiment that attacked Fort Wagner in South Carolina (p. 531)

54to Batallón de Infantería de Massachusetts regimiento de la Guerra Civil formado por soldados afroamericanos que atacó el fuerte Wagner en Carolina del Sur (pág. 531)

First Battle of Bull Run (1861) the first major battle of the Civil War, resulting in a Confederate victory; showed that the Civil War would not be won easily (p. 517)
primera batalla de Bull Run (1861) primera batalla importante de la Guerra Civil, en la cual el ejército confederado obtuvo la victoria; en esta batalla se demostró que ninguno de los bandos ganaría la guerra con facilidad (pág. 517)

First Continental Congress (1774) a meeting of colonial delegates in Philadelphia to decide how to respond to the closing of Boston Harbor, increased taxes, and abuses of authority by the British government; delegates petitioned King George III, listing the freedoms they believed colonists should enjoy (p. 112)
Primer Congreso Continental (1774) encuentro de delegados de las colonias en Filadelfia para decidir cómo responderían al cierre del puerto de Boston, al alza de impuestos y a los abusos de la autoridad británica; los delegados hicieron una serie de peticiones al rey Jorge III, incluyendo los derechos que consideraban justos para los colonos (pág. 112)

folktale a story that often provides a moral lesson (p. 427)
cuento popular narración que con frecuencia ofrece una moraleja (pág. 427)

Fort Sumter a federal outpost in Charleston, South Carolina, that was attacked by the Confederates in April 1861, sparking the Civil War (p. 511)
fuerte Sumter puesto de avanzada federal en Charleston, Carolina del Sur, cuyo ataque por parte de los confederados en abril de 1861 dio origen a la Guerra Civil (pág. 511)

forty-niner a gold-seeker who moved to California during the gold rush (p. 365)
gambusino buscador de oro que emigró a California durante la fiebre del oro (pág. 365)

Fourteenth Amendment (1866) a constitutional amendment giving full rights of citizenship to all people born or naturalized in the United States, except for American Indians (p. 561)
Decimocuarta Enmienda (1866) enmienda constitucional que otorgaba derechos totales de ciudadanía a todas las personas nacidas en Estados Unidos o naturalizadas estadounidenses, con excepción de los indígenas (pág. 561)

Freedmen's Bureau an agency established by Congress in 1865 to help poor people throughout the South (p. 556)
Oficina de Esclavos Libertos oficina creada por el Congreso en 1865 para ayudar a los pobres del Sur del país (pág. 556)

Freeport Doctrine (1858) a statement made by Stephen Douglas during the Lincoln-Douglas debates that pointed out how people could use popular sovereignty to determine if their state or territory should permit slavery (p. 492)
Doctrina de Freeport (1858) declaración hecha por Stephen Douglas durante los debates Lincoln-Douglas que señalaba que el pueblo podía usar la soberanía popular para decidir si su estado o territorio debía permitir la esclavitud (pág. 492)

Free-Soil Party a political party formed in 1848 by anti-slavery northerners who left the Whig and Democratic parties because neither addressed the slavery issue (p. 477)
Partido Tierra Libre partido político formado en 1848 por abolicionistas de los estados del Norte que habían abandonado al Partido Whig y al Partido Demócrata porque ninguno de los dos apoyaba esta causa (pág. 477)

French Revolution French rebellion that began in 1789 in which the French people overthrew the monarchy and made their country a republic (p. 243)
Revolución francesa rebelión francesa iniciada en 1789 en la que la población francesa derrocó la monarquía y convirtió el país en una república (pág. 243)

Fugitive Slave Act (1850) a law that made it a crime to help runaway slaves; allowed for the arrest of escaped slaves in areas where slavery was illegal and required their return to slaveholders (p. 479)
Ley de Esclavos Fugitivos (1850) ley que calificaba como delito el ayudar a un esclavo a escapar de su amo, además de permitir la captura de esclavos fugitivos en zonas donde la esclavitud era ilegal para devolverlos a sus dueños (pág. 479)

G

Gadsden Purchase (1853) U.S. purchase of land from Mexico that included the southern parts of present-day Arizona and New Mexico (p. 361)
Compra de Gadsden (1853) compra por parte del gobierno de Estados Unidos de territorio mexicano que incluía la región ocupada actualmente por el sur de Arizona y Nuevo México (pág. 361)

Gettysburg Address (1863) a speech given by Abraham Lincoln in which he praised the bravery of Union soldiers and renewed his commitment to winning the Civil War (p. 540)
Discurso de Gettysburg (1863) discurso presentado por Abraham Lincoln en el que alababa la valentía de las tropas de la Unión y renovaba su compromiso de triunfar en la Guerra Civil (pág. 540)

Gibbons* v. *Ogden (1824) a Supreme Court ruling that reinforced the federal government's authority over the states (p. 397)
Gibbons* contra *Ogden (1824) decreto de la Corte Suprema que reforzó la autoridad del gobierno federal sobre los estados (pág. 397)

Great Awakening a religious movement that became widespread in the American colonies in the 1730s and 1740s (p. 94)
Gran Despertar movimiento religioso que tuvo gran popularidad en las colonias estadounidenses en las décadas de 1730 y 1740 (pág. 94)

Great Compromise (1787) an agreement worked out at the Constitutional Convention establishing that a state's population would determine representation in the lower house of the legislature, while each state would have equal representation in the upper house of the legislature (p. 165)
Gran Acuerdo (1787) acuerdo redactado durante la Convención Constitucional en el que se establece que la población de un estado debe determinar su representación en la cámara baja de la asamblea legislativa y que cada estado debe tener igual representación en la cámara alta de ésta (pág. 165)

H

habeas corpus the constitutional protection against unlawful imprisonment (p. 532)
hábeas corpus protección constitucional contra el encarcelamiento ilegal (pág. 532)

hajj a pilgrimage to Mecca made by devout Muslims (p. 18)
hajj peregrinaje a la Meca que realizan los musulmanes devotos (pág. 18)

Hartford Convention (1815) a meeting of Federalists at Hartford, Connecticut, to protest the War of 1812 (p. 287)
Convención de Hartford (1815) encuentro de federalistas en Hartford, Connecticut, para protestar por la Guerra de 1812 (pág. 287)

Hudson River school a group of American artists in the mid-1800s whose paintings focused on the American landscape (p. 310)
Escuela del Río Hudson grupo de artistas norteamericanos a mediados del siglo XIX cuya obra muestra diversos paisajes del territorio estadounidense (pág. 310)

hunter-gatherer a person who hunts animals and gathers wild plants to provide for his or her needs (p. 6)
cazador y recolector persona que caza animales y recolecta plantas para satisfacer sus necesidades (pág. 6)

I

immigrant a person who moves to another country after leaving his or her homeland (p. 78)
inmigrante persona que abandona su país para establecerse en un país diferente (pág. 78)

immune having a natural resistance to disease (p. 58)
inmune la condición de tener resistencia natural contra la enfermedad (pág. 58)

impeach to bring charges against (p. 184)
someter a juicio político presentar cargos en contra de un funcionario (pág. 184)

impeachment the process used by a legislative body to bring charges of wrongdoing against a public official (p. 562)
juicio político proceso por el cual se presentan cargos en contra de un funcionario público (pág. 562)

impressment the practice of forcing people to serve in the army or navy; led to increased tensions between Great Britain and the United States in the early 1800s (p. 279)
leva práctica que obligaba a las personas a servir en el ejército o la marina; aumentó las fricciones entre Gran Bretaña y Estados Unidos a principios del siglo XIX (pág. 279)

indentured servant a colonist who received free passage to North America in exchange for working without pay for a certain number of years (p. 74)
sirviente por contrato colono que recibía un pasaje gratuito a Norteamérica a cambio de trabajar sin salario por varios años (pág. 74)

Indian Removal Act (1830) a congressional act that authorized the removal of Native Americans who lived east of the Mississippi River (p. 332)
Ley de Expulsión de Indígenas (1830) ley redactada por el Congreso que autorizaba la expulsión de los indígenas norteamericanos que habitaban al este del río Mississippi (pág. 332)

Indian Territory an area covering most of present-day Oklahoma to which most Native Americans in the Southeast were forced to move in the 1830s (p. 332)
Territorio Indígena área que abarcaba la mayor parte del actual estado de Oklahoma a la que la mayoría de las tribus indígenas del sureste fueron obligadas a trasladarse durante la década de 1830 (pág. 332)

indict to formally accuse (p. 218)
procesar acusar formalmente (pág. 218)

Industrial Revolution a period of rapid growth in the use of machines in manufacturing and production that began in the mid-1700s (p. 385)
revolución industrial período de rápido desarrollo debido al uso de maquinaria en la fabricación y producción; comenzó a mediados del siglo XVIII (pág. 385)

inflation increased prices for goods and services combined with the reduced value of money (p. 161)
inflación alza en los precios de los bienes al mismo tiempo que se produce una devaluación del dinero (pág. 161)

interchangeable parts a process developed by Eli Whitney in the 1790s that called for making each part of a machine exactly the same (p. 387)
piezas intercambiables proceso desarrollado por Eli Whitney en la década de 1790 para que las piezas de todas las máquinas similares fueran exactamente iguales (pág. 387)

interest group a group of people who share common interests for political action (p. 224)
grupo de interés grupo de personas que comparten intereses comunes en lo que respecta a iniciativas políticas (pág. 224)

interstate commerce trade between two or more states (p. 160)
comercio interestatal intercambio comercial entre dos o más estados (pág. 160)

Intolerable Acts (1774) laws passed by Parliament to punish the colonists for the Boston Tea Party and to tighten government control of the colonies (p. 102)
Ley de Asuntos Intolerables (1774) serie de decretos aprobados por el Parlamento para castigar a los colonos que participaron en el Motín del Té de Boston y para aumentar su control sobre las colonias (pág. 102)

ironclad a warship that is heavily armored with iron (p. 520)
acorazado buque de guerra fuertemente protegido con hierro (pág. 520)

Iroquois League a political confederation of five northeastern Native American nations of the Seneca, Oneida, Mohawk, Cayuga, and Onondaga that made decisions concerning war and peace (p. 14)
Liga de Iroqueses confederación política formada por cinco naciones indígenas del noreste de Estados Unidos (los senecas, los oneidas, los mohawks, los cayugas y los onondagas) para tomar decisiones relacionadas con asuntos de guerra y de paz (pág. 14)

J

Jacksonian Democracy an expansion of voting rights during the popular Andrew Jackson administration (p. 323)
democracia jacksoniana ampliación del derecho al voto durante el popular gobierno del presidente Andrew Jackson (pág. 323)

Jamestown the first colony in America; set up in 1607 along the James River in Virginia (p. 72)
Jamestown primera colonia estadounidense; fundada en 1607 a lo largo del río James en Virginia (pág. 72)

Jay's Treaty (1794) an agreement negotiated by John Jay to work out problems between Britain and the United States over northwestern lands, British seizure of U.S. ships, and U.S. debts owed to the British (p. 245)
Tratado de Jay (1794) acuerdo negociado por John Jay para resolver los problemas entre Gran Bretaña y Estados Unidos por los territorios del noroeste, por la incautación británica de barcos estadounidenses, y por las deudas estadounidenses con los británicos (pág. 245)

Jim Crow law a law that enforced segregation in the southern states (p. 568)
ley de Jim Crow ley que fomentaba la segregación en los estados del Sur (pág. 568)

John Brown's raid (1859) an incident in which abolitionist John Brown and 21 other men captured a federal arsenal in Harpers Ferry, Virginia, in hope of starting a slave rebellion (p. 493)
ataque de John Brown (1859) incidente en el que el abolicionista John Brown y otros 21 hombres se apropiaron de un arsenal federal en Harpers Ferry, Virginia, con la esperanza de iniciar una rebelión de esclavos (pág. 493)

joint-stock company a business formed by a group of people who jointly make an investment and share in the profits and losses (p. 27)
sociedad por acciones negocio formado por un grupo de personas que realizan una inversión conjuntamente y comparten las ganancias y las pérdidas (pág. 27)

judicial branch the division of the federal government that is made up of the national courts; interprets laws, punishes criminals, and settles disputes between states (p. 167)
poder judicial división del gobierno federal conformada por las cortes de justicia; interpreta las leyes, castiga a los delincuentes y resuelve las disputas entre estados (pág. 167)

judicial review the Supreme Court's power to declare acts of Congress unconstitutional (p. 270)
recurso de inconstitucionalidad poder de la Corte Suprema para declarar inconstitucionales las acciones del Congreso (pág. 270)

Judiciary Act of 1789 legislation passed by Congress that created the federal court system (p. 236)
Ley de Judicatura de 1789 decreto aprobado por el Congreso para crear el sistema federal de tribunales (pág. 236)

K

Kansas-Nebraska Act (1854) a law that allowed voters in Kansas and Nebraska to choose whether to allow slavery (p. 485)
Ley de Kansas y Nebraska (1854) ley que permitía a los votantes de Kansas y Nebraska decidir la aprobación o abolición de la esclavitud (pág. 485)

Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions (1798–99) Republican documents that argued that the Alien and Sedition Acts were unconstitutional (p. 253)
Resoluciones de Kentucky y Virginia (1798–99) documentos republicanos que argumentaban el carácter inconstitucional de las Leyes de No Intervención Extranjera (pág. 253)

Kitchen Cabinet President Andrew Jackson's group of informal advisers; so called because they often met in the White House kitchen (p. 324)
gabinete de la cocina grupo informal de consejeros del presidente Andrew Jackson; llamado así porque solían reunirse en la cocina de la Casa Blanca (pág. 324)

kivas underground ceremonial chambers at the center of Anasazi communities (p. 11)
kivas cámaras ceremoniales subterráneas en el centro de las comunidades anasazi (pág. 11)

knights warriors who fought on horseback in return for land from nobles (p. 24)
caballeros guerreros que luchaban a caballo a cambio de tierras que les proporcionaban los nobles (pág. 24)

Know-Nothing Party a political organization founded in 1849 by nativists who supported measures making it difficult for foreigners to become citizens and to hold office (p. 440)
Partido de los Ignorantes organización política fundada en 1849 por un grupo de nativistas; apoyaba medidas que dificultaban a los inmigrantes de otros países la adquisición de la ciudadanía estadounidense y su nombramiento en cargos públicos (pág. 440)

Ku Klux Klan a secret society created by white southerners in 1866 that used terror and violence to keep African Americans from obtaining their civil rights (p. 566)
Ku Klux Klan sociedad secreta creada en 1866 por personas de raza blanca del Sur que usaba el terror y la violencia para impedir que los afroamericanos obtuvieran derechos civiles (pág. 566)

L

Land Ordinance of 1785 legislation passed by Congress authorizing surveys and the division of public lands in the western region of the country (p. 155)
Ordenanza de Territorios de 1785 decreto aprobado por el Congreso en el que se autorizaban las mediciones de terreno y la división de territorios públicos en el oeste del país (pág. 155)

legislative branch the division of the government that proposes bills and passes them into laws (p. 167)
poder legislativo división del gobierno federal que propone proyectos de ley y los somete a aprobación para convertirlos en leyes (pág. 167)

Lewis and Clark expedition an expedition led by Meriwether Lewis and William Clark that began in 1804 to explore the Louisiana Purchase (p. 275)
expedición de Lewis y Clark expedición encabezada por Meriwether Lewis y William Clark que partió en 1804 para explorar el territorio adquirido en la Compra de Louisiana (pág. 275)

Lincoln-Douglas debates a series of debates between Republican Abraham Lincoln and Democrat Stephen Douglas during the 1858 U.S. Senate campaign in Illinois (p. 491)
debates Lincoln-Douglas serie de debates entre el republicano Abraham Lincoln y el demócrata Stephen Douglas durante la campaña de 1858 para el Senado estadounidense en Illinois (pág. 491)

Line of Demarcation boundary between Spanish and Portuguese territories in the New World (p. 44)
Línea de Demarcación límite entre los territories españoles y portugueses en el Nuevo Mundo (pág. 44)

loose construction a way of interpreting the Constitution that allows the federal government to take actions that the Constitution does not specifically forbid it from taking (p. 242)
interpretación flexible interpretación de la Constitución que permite al gobierno federal tomar acciones que el mismo documento no prohíbe de manera específica (pág. 242)

Louisiana Purchase (1803) the purchase of French land between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains that doubled the size of the United States (p. 274)
Compra de Luisiana (1803) adquisición del territorio francés localizado entre el río Mississippi y las montañas Rocallosas, que duplicó el tamaño del territorio de Estados Unidos (pág. 274)

Lowell system the use of waterpowered textile mills that employed young, unmarried women in the 1800s (p. 392)
sistema de Lowell el uso de molinos de agua en la industria textil, medida que dio empleo a muchas mujeres jóvenes solteras en el siglo XIX (pág. 392)

Loyalists colonists who sided with Britain in the American Revolution (p. 119)
leales colonos que apoyaron la causa británica durante la Guerra de Independencia estadounidense (pág. 119)

M

Magna Carta (1215) a charter of liberties agreed to by King John of England, it made the king obey the same laws as citizens (p. 152)
Carta Magna (1215) carta de libertades, firmada por el rey Juan de Inglaterra, que establecía que el rey debía obedecer las mismas leyes que el resto de los ciudadanos (pág. 152)

majority rule the idea that policies are decided by the greatest number of people (p. 216)
principio de la mayoría idea de que las políticas se adoptan en función de lo que decida el mayor número de personas (pág. 216)

manifest destiny a belief shared by many Americans in the mid-1800s that the United States should expand across the continent to the Pacific Ocean (p. 354)
destino manifiesto creencia de muchos ciudadanos estadounidenses a mediados del siglo XIX de que Estados Unidos debía expandirse por todo el continente hasta el océano Pacífico (pág. 354)

Marbury* v. *Madison (1803) U.S. Supreme Court case that established the principle of judicial review (p. 270)
Marbury* contra *Madison (1803) caso de la Corte Suprema que dio origen al recurso de inconstitucionalidad (pág. 270)

mass production the efficient production of large numbers of identical goods (p. 387)
producción en masa producción eficiente de grandes cantidades de productos idénticos (pág. 387)

matrilineal related to ancestry traced through the maternal, or mother's, line (p. 14)
materno basado en linaje seguido por línea materna, o de la madre (pág. 14)

Mayflower Compact (1620) a document written by the Pilgrims establishing themselves as a political society and setting guidelines for self-government (p. 79)
Pacto del Mayflower (1620) documento redactado por los peregrinos en el que se constituían en una sociedad política y establecían los principios para gobernarse a sí mismos (pág. 79)

McCulloch* v. *Maryland (1819) U.S. Supreme Court case that declared the Second Bank of the United States was constitutional and that Maryland could not interfere with it (p. 330)
McCulloch* contra *Maryland (1819) caso de la Corte Suprema que declaraba que el Segundo Banco de la Nación era constitucional y que Maryland no podía intervenir en sus operaciones (pág. 330)

mercenaries hired foreign soldiers (p. 128)
mercenarios soldados extranjeros a sueldo (pág. 128)

middle class the social and economic level between the wealthy and the poor (p. 440)
clase media nivel social y económico ubicado entre la clase rica y la clase pobre (pág. 440)

Middle Passage a voyage that brought enslaved Africans across the Atlantic Ocean to North America and the West Indies (pp. 59, 94)
Paso Central viaje a través del océano Atlántico para transportar esclavos africanos a Norteamérica y a las Antillas (pág. 59, 94)

migration the movement of people from one region to another (p. 6)
migración desplazamiento de personas de una región a otra (pág. 6)

minutemen American colonial militia members ready to fight at a minute's notice (p. 114)
milicianos miembros de la milicia norteamericana en la época colonial que estaban preparados para combatir en cualquier momento si la situación lo requería (pág. 114)

Missouri Compromise (1820) an agreement proposed by Henry Clay that allowed Missouri to enter the Union as a slave state and Maine to enter as a free state and outlawed slavery in any territories or states north of 36°30′ latitude (p. 305)
Acuerdo de Missouri (1820) acuerdo redactado por Henry Clay en el que se aceptaba a Missouri en la Unión como estado esclavista y a Maine como estado libre, además de prohibir la esclavitud en los territorios o estados localizados al norte del paralelo 36°30′ (pág. 305)

Monroe Doctrine (1823) President James Monroe's statement forbidding further colonization in the Americas and declaring that any attempt by a foreign country to colonize would be considered an act of hostility (p. 300)
Doctrina Monroe (1823) declaración hecha por el presidente James Monroe en la que se prohibía la colonización adicional del continente americano a partir de entonces, considerando cualquier intento de colonización por parte de un país extranjero como inicio de hostilidades (pág. 300)

Mormon a member of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (p. 349)
mormón miembro de la Iglesia de Jesucristo de los Santos de los Últimos Días (pág. 349)

Morse code a system developed by Alfred Lewis Vail for the telegraph that used a certain combination of dots and dashes to represent each letter of the alphabet (p. 403)
clave Morse sistema desarrollado por Alfred Lewis Vail para el telégrafo en el que una combinación de puntos y rayas representa cada letra del alfabeto (pág. 403)

mosques buildings used for Muslim prayer (p. 19)
mezquitas edificios musulmanes para la oración (pág. 19)

mountain men men hired by eastern companies to trap animals for fur in the Rocky Mountains and other western regions of the United States (p. 346)
montañeses hombres contratados por compañías del este para atrapar animales y obtener sus pieles en las montañas Rocallosas y en otras regiones del oeste de Estados Unidos (pág. 346)

N

national debt the total amount of money owed by a country to its lenders (p. 238)
deuda pública cantidad de dinero que un país debe a sus acreedores (pág. 238)

nationalism a sense of pride and devotion to a nation (p. 302)
nacionalismo sentimiento de orgullo y lealtad a una nación (pág. 302)

nativists U.S. citizens who opposed immigration because they were suspicious of immigrants and feared losing jobs to them (p. 440)
nativistas ciudadanos estadounidenses que se oponían a la aceptación de inmigrantes porque sospechaban de ellos y temían que se apropiaran de sus empleos (pág. 440)

Nat Turner's Rebellion (1831) a rebellion in which Nat Turner led a group of slaves in Virginia in an unsuccessful attempt to overthrow and kill planter families (p. 428)
Rebelión de Nat Turner (1831) rebelión de un grupo de esclavos encabezados por Nat Turner en Virginia en un intento frustrado de derrocar y asesinar a los dueños de plantaciones y a sus familias (pág. 428)

naturalized citizen a person born in another country who has been granted citizenship in the United States (p. 222)
ciudadano naturalizado persona nacida en otro país que ha obtenido la ciudadanía estadounidense (pág. 222)

Neutrality Proclamation (1793) a statement made by President George Washington that the United States would not side with any of the nations at war in Europe following the French Revolution (p. 244)
Proclamación de Neutralidad (1793) declaración en la que el presidente George Washington anunció que Estados Unidos no sería aliado de ninguna de las naciones europeas en guerra después de la Revolución francesa (pág. 244)

New Jersey Plan a proposal to create a unicameral legislature with equal representation of states rather than representation by population; rejected at the Constitutional Convention (p. 165)
Plan de Nueva Jersey propuesta para la creación de un gobierno con una sola cámara que contara con la misma representación por parte de cada estado, sin basarse en el tamaño de su población; la propuesta fue rechazada en la Convención Constitucional (pág. 165)

nominating conventions a meeting at which a political party selects its presidential and vice presidential candidate; first held in the 1820s (p. 323)
convenciones de nominación encuentro en el que un partido político elige a sus candidatos a la presidencia y la vicepresidencia; se realizaron por primera vez en la década de 1820 (pág. 323)

Non-Intercourse Act (1809) a law that replaced the Embargo Act and restored trade with all nations except Britain, France, and their colonies (p. 280)
Ley de No Interacción (1809) ley que reemplazaba a la Ley de Embargo, restableciendo el intercambio comercial con todas las naciones, excepto Gran Bretaña, Francia y sus colonias (pág. 280)

Northwest Ordinance of 1787 legislation passed by Congress to establish a political structure for the Northwest Territory and create a system for the admission of new states (p. 155)
Ordenanza del Noroeste de 1787 ley aprobada por el Congreso para establecer una estructura política en el Territorio del Noroeste y crear un proceso de admisión de nuevos estados (pág. 155)

Northwest Passage a nonexistent path through North America that early explorers searched for that would allow ships to sail from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean (p. 54)
Pasaje del Noroeste ruta a lo largo de Norteamérica para cruzar en barco del océano Atlántico al océano Pacífico (pág. 54)

Northwest Territory lands including present-day Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Ohio, and Wisconsin; organized by the Northwest Ordinance of 1787 (p. 155)
Territorio del Noroeste organización del territorio que incluía los actuales estados de Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Ohio y Wisconsin; creado por la Ordenanza del Noroeste de 1787 (pág. 155)

nullification crisis a dispute led by John C. Calhoun that said that states could ignore federal laws if they believed those laws violated the Constitution (p. 328)
crisis de anulación controversia iniciada por John C. Calhoun que argumentaba que los estados podían hacer caso omiso a las leyes federales si consideraban que dichas leyes violaban la Constitución (pág. 328)

O

Oregon Trail a 2,000-mile trail stretching through the Great Plains from western Missouri to the Oregon Territory (p. 348)
Camino de Oregón ruta de 2,000 millas que cruzaba las Grandes Planicies desde el oeste de Missouri hasta el Territorio de Oregón (pág. 348)

P

Paleo-Indians the first Americans who crossed from Asia into North America sometime between 38,000 and 10,000 BC (p. 6)
paleoindígenas primeros habitantes de América que cruzaron de Asia a Norteamérica entre el 38,000 y el 10,000 a. C. (pág. 6)

Panic of 1837 a financial crisis in the United States that led to an economic depression (p. 331)
Pánico de 1837 crisis financiera en Estados Unidos que provocó una depresión económica (pág. 331)

pardon freedom from punishment (p. 185)
indulto liberación de un castigo (pág. 185)

Patriots American colonists who fought for independence from Great Britain during the Revolutionary War (p. 113)
patriotas colonos estadounidenses que lucharon para independizarse de Gran Bretaña durante la Guerra de Independencia estadounidense (pág. 113)

petition to make a formal request of the government (p. 217)
petición hacer una solicitud formal al gobierno (pág. 217)

Pickett's Charge (1863) a failed Confederate attack during the Civil War led by General George Pickett at the Battle of Gettysburg (p. 538)
ataque de Pickett (1863) ataque fallido del ejército confederado, al mando del general George Pickett, en la batalla de Gettysburg durante la Guerra Civil (pág. 538)

Pilgrim a member of a Puritan Separatist sect that left England in the early 1600s to settle in the Americas (p. 78)
peregrino miembro de una secta separatista puritana que emigró de Inglaterra a principios del siglo XVII para establecerse en América (pág. 78)

Pinckney's Treaty (1795) an agreement between the United States and Spain that changed Florida's border and made it easier for American ships to use the port of New Orleans (p. 245)
tratado de Pinckney (1795) acuerdo entre Estados Unidos y España que modificó los límites de Florida y facilitó a los barcos estadounidenses el uso del puerto de Nueva Orleáns (pág. 245)

placer miner a person who mines for gold by using pans or other devices to wash gold nuggets out of loose rock and gravel (p. 366)
buscador de oro con batea persona que busca oro con bateas u otros dispositivos similares para lavar las pepitas de oro y separarlas de las piedras y la gravilla del lecho de un río (pág. 366)

plantation a large farm that usually specialized in growing one kind of crop for profit (p. 50)
plantación gran finca que por lo general se especializa en un cultivo específico para obtener ganancias (pág. 50)

planter a large-scale farmer who held more than 20 slaves (p. 416)
hacendado agricultor a gran escala que tenía más de 20 esclavos (pág. 416)

Plessy* v. *Ferguson (1896) U.S. Supreme Court case that established the separate-but-equal doctrine for public facilities (p. 569)
Plessy* contra *Ferguson (1896) caso en el que la Corte Suprema estableció la doctrina de "separados pero iguales" en los lugares públicos (pág. 569)

political action committee (PAC) an organization that collects money to distribute to candidates who support the same issues as the contributors (p. 224)
comité de acción política (PAC, por sus siglas en inglés) organización que recolecta dinero para distribuirlo entre los candidatos que apoyan los mismos asuntos que los contribuyentes (pág. 224)

political party a group of people who organize to help elect government officials and influence government policies (p. 250)
partido político grupo de personas que se organiza para facilitar la elección de los funcionarios del gobierno e influye en las políticas gubernamentales (pág. 250)

poll tax a special tax that a person had to pay in order to vote (p. 568)
impuesto electoral impuesto especial que debía pagar una persona para poder votar (pág. 568)

popular sovereignty the idea that political authority belongs to the people (pp. 167, 476)
soberanía popular idea de que la autoridad política pertenece al pueblo (págs. 167, 476)

Pottawatomie Massacre (1856) an incident in which abolitionist John Brown and seven other men murdered pro-slavery Kansans (p. 487)
matanza de Pottawatomie (1856) incidente en el que el abolicionista John Brown y siete hombres más asesinaron a habitantes de Kansas que apoyaban la esclavitud (pág. 487)

precedent an action or decision that later serves as an example (p. 235)
precedente acción o decisión que más tarde sirve de ejemplo (pág. 235)

privateer a private ship authorized by a nation to attack its enemies (p. 244)
corsario barco privado autorizado por una nación para atacar a sus enemigos (pág. 244)

prospect to search for gold (p. 366)
catear buscar oro (pág. 366)

Protestant Reformation a religious movement begun by Martin Luther and others in 1517 to reform the Catholic Church (p. 53)
Reforma protestante movimiento religioso iniciado por Martín Lutero y otros en 1517 para reformar la Iglesia católica (pág. 53)

Protestants reformers who protested certain practices of the Catholic Church (p. 53)
protestantes reformistas que protestaban por ciertas prácticas de la Iglesia católica (pág. 53)

pueblos aboveground houses made of a heavy clay called adobe that were built by Native Americans of the southwestern United States (p. 11)
pueblos casas elevadas por encima del suelo hechas con una arcilla fuerte llamada adobe que construían los indígenas norteamericanos del sudoeste de Estados Unidos (pág. 11)

Puritans Protestants who wanted to reform the Church of England (p. 78)
puritanos protestantes que querían reformar la Iglesia anglicana (pág. 78)

Q

Quakers Society of Friends; Protestant sect founded in 1640s in England whose members believed that salvation was available to all people (p. 86)
cuáqueros Sociedad de Amigos; secta protestante fundada en la década de 1640 en Inglaterra cuyos miembros creían que la salvación estaba al alcance de todos (pág. 86)

Quartering Act (1774) One of the Coercive or Intolerable Acts that helped fan the flames of revolution in the English colonies. It required each colonist to provide a place in their home, or quarter, for British soldiers. (p. 92)
Ley de Acuartelamiento (1774) Uno de los actos coersitivos o intolerables que ayudó a inspirar la revolución en las colonias inglesas. Requería que cada colono proveyera alojamiento en su casa para los soldados británicos. (pág. 92)

R

Radical Republicans members of Congress who felt that southern states needed to make great social changes before they could be readmitted to the Union (p. 559)
republicanos radicales integrantes del Congreso convencidos de que los estados del Sur necesitaban realizar grandes cambios sociales antes de volver a ser admitidos en la Unión (pág. 559)

ratification an official approval (p. 154)
ratificación aprobación formal (pág. 154)

reason clear and ordered thinking; Greek philosopher Aristotle believed it was the basis of a good life (p. 23)
razón pensamiento claro y ordenado; el filósofo griego Aristóteles creía que era la base para una buena vida (pág. 23)

Reconstruction (1865–77) the period following the Civil War during which the U.S. government worked to reunite the nation and to rebuild the southern states (p. 552)
Reconstrucción (1865–77) período posterior a la Guerra Civil en el que el gobierno de Estados Unidos trabajó por lograr la unificación de la nación y la reconstrucción de los estados del Sur (pág. 552)

Reconstruction Acts (1867–68) the laws that put the southern states under U.S. military control and required them to draft new constitutions upholding the Fourteenth Amendment (p. 561)
Leyes de Reconstrucción (1867–68) leyes que declaraban a los estados del Sur territorio sujeto a control militar estadounidense y los obligaban a reformar sus constituciones, de manera que defendieran la Decimocuarta Enmienda (pág. 561)

Redcoats British soldiers who fought against the colonists in the American Revolution; so called because of their bright red uniforms (p. 114)
casacas rojas soldados británicos que lucharon contra los colonos en la Guerra de Independencia estadounidense, llamados así por el color rojo brillante de sus uniformes (pág. 114)

Republican Party a political party formed in the 1850s to stop the spread of slavery in the West (p. 488)
Partido Republicano partido político formado en la década de 1850 para detener la expansión de la esclavitud en el Oeste (pág. 488)

Rhode Island system a system developed by Samuel Slater in the mid-1800s in which whole families were hired as textile workers and factory work was divided into simple tasks (p. 391)
Sistema de Rhode Island sistema desarrollado por Samuel Slater a mediados del siglo XIX mediante el cual se contrataba a familias completas para trabajar en la industria textil y en el que el trabajo de las fábricas estaba dividido en tareas sencillas (pág. 391)

Rush-Bagot Agreement (1817) an agreement that limited naval power on the Great Lakes for both the United States and British Canada (p. 298)
Acuerdo de Rush-Bagot (1817) acuerdo que limitaba el poder naval en los Grandes Lagos a embarcaciones de Estados Unidos y de la Canadá británica (pág. 298)

S

Santa Fe Trail an important trade trail west from Independence, Missouri, to Santa Fe, New Mexico (p. 349)
Camino de Santa Fe importante ruta comercial que va desde Independence, Missouri, hasta Santa Fe, Nuevo México (pág. 349)

search warrant a judge's order authorizing the search of a person's home or property to look for evidence of a crime (p. 218)
orden de cateo orden de un juez que permite registrar el hogar y las propiedades de una persona en busca de posibles pruebas de un delito (pág. 218)

secession the act of formally withdrawing from the Union (p. 496)
secesión acto de separarse formalmente de la Unión (pág. 496)

Second Battle of Bull Run (1862) a Civil War battle in which the Confederate army forced most of the Union army out of Virginia (p. 518)
segunda batalla de Bull Run (1862) batalla de la Guerra Civil en la que el ejército confederado obligó a gran parte de las tropas de la Unión a abandonar el territorio de Virginia (pág. 518)

Second Continental Congress (1775) a meeting of colonial delegates in Philadelphia to decide how to react to fighting at Lexington and Concord (p. 114)
Segundo Congreso Continental (1775) reunión de delegados coloniales realizada en Filadelfia para tomar decisiones acerca de la lucha en Lexington y Concord (pág. 114)

Second Great Awakening a period of religious evangelism that began in the 1790s and became widespread in the United States by the 1830s (p. 448)
Segundo Gran Despertar período de evangelización religiosa iniciado en la década de 1790 que se extendió por Estados Unidos para la década de 1830 (pág. 448)

sectionalism a devotion to the interests of one geographic region over the interests of the country as a whole (pp. 304, 477)
regionalismo dedicación a los intereses de una región geográfica y no a los de un país (págs. 304, 477)

segregation the forced separation of people of different races in public places (p. 568)
segregación separación obligada de personas de diferentes razas en lugares públicos (pág. 568)

Seneca Falls Convention (1848) the first national women's rights convention at which the Declaration of Sentiments was written (p. 464)
Convención de Seneca Falls (1848) primera convención nacional a favor de los derechos de la mujer, en la cual se redactó la Declaración de Sentimientos (pág. 464)

Seven Days' Battles (1862) a series of Civil War battles in which Confederate army successes forced the Union army to retreat from Richmond, Virginia, the Confederate capital (p. 518)
batallas de los Siete Días (1862) serie de batallas de la Guerra Civil en las que las victorias del ejército confederado obligaron a las tropas de la Unión a retirarse de Richmond, Virginia, la capital confederada (pág. 518)

sharecropping a system used on southern farms after the Civil War in which farmers worked land owned by someone else in return for a small portion of the crops (p. 569)
cultivo de aparceros sistema usado en las fincas sureñas después de la Guerra Civil en el que los agricultores trabajaban las tierras de otra persona a cambio de una pequeña porción de la cosecha (pág. 569)

Shays's Rebellion (1786–87) an uprising of Massachusetts's farmers, led by Daniel Shays, to protest high taxes, heavy debt, and farm foreclosures (p. 161)
Rebelión de Shays (1786–87) rebelión de los agricultores de Massachusetts, encabezados por Daniel Shays, para protestar por los altos impuestos, el aumento de sus deudas y la confiscación de las granjas (pág. 161)

Siege of Vicksburg (1863) the Union army's six-week blockade of Vicksburg that led the city to surrender during the Civil War (p. 524)
Sitio de Vicksburg (1863) bloqueo de seis semanas realizado por el ejército de la Unión en Vicksburg para forzar la rendición de esa ciudad durante la Guerra Civil (pág. 524)

slave codes laws passed in the colonies to control slaves (p. 77)
códigos de esclavos leyes aprobadas por las colonias para el control de los esclavos (pág. 77)

Spanish Armada a large Spanish fleet defeated by England in 1588 (p. 53)
Armada española gran flota de barcos de guerra que España reunió para protegerse de la piratería inglesa (pág. 53)

speculator an investor who buys items at low prices in hope that their values will rise (p. 239)
especulador inversionista que compra artículos a precios bajos con la esperanza de que aumente su valor (pág. 239)

spirituals emotional Christian songs sung by enslaved people in the South that mixed African and European elements and usually expressed slaves' religious beliefs (p. 427)
espirituales canciones religiosas cantadas con gran emotividad por los esclavos del Sur que combinaban elementos de origen africano y europeo y solían expresar sus creencias religiosas (pág. 427)

spoils system a politicians' practice of giving government jobs to his or her supporters (p. 324)
tráfico de influencias práctica de los políticos de ofrecer empleos a las personas que los apoyan (pág. 324)

Stamp Act of 1765 a law passed by Parliament that raised tax money by requiring colonists to pay for an official stamp whenever they bought paper items such as newspapers, licenses, and legal documents (p. 100)
Ley del Timbre de 1765 ley aprobada por el Parlamento para recaudar impuestos en la que se obligaba a los colonos a pagar un timbre oficial cada vez que compraran artículos de papel, como periódicos, licencias y documentos legales (pág. 100)

staple crop a crop that is continuously in demand (p. 87)
cultivo básico producto de demanda constante (pág. 87)

states' rights doctrine the belief that the power of the states should be greater than the power of the federal government (p. 328)
doctrina de los derechos estatales creencia de que el poder de los estados debe ser mayor que el del gobierno federal (pág. 328)

strict construction a way of interpreting the Constitution that allows the federal government to take only those actions the Constitution specifically says it can take (p. 242)
interpretación estricta interpretación de la Constitución que sólo permite al gobierno federal realizar las acciones permitidas de manera específica en ella (pág. 242)

strike the refusal of workers to perform their jobs until employers meet their demands (p. 394)
huelga negativa de los empleados a trabajar hasta que sus empleadores satisfagan sus demandas (pág. 394)

suffrage voting rights (p. 153)
sufragio derecho al voto (pág. 153)

T

tariff a tax on imports or exports (p. 159)
arancel impuestos pagados por los bienes importados o exportados (pág. 159)

Tariff of Abominations (1828) the nickname given to a tariff by southerners who opposed it (p. 327)
Arancel de abominaciones (1828) sobrenombre dado a un nuevo impuesto por los habitantes del Sur que se oponían a éste (pág. 327)

Tea Act (1773) a law passed by Parliament allowing the British East India Company to sell its low-cost tea directly to the colonies, undermining colonial tea merchants; led to the Boston Tea Party (p. 102)
Tea Act/Ley del Té (1773) ley aprobada por el Parlamento británico que le permitía a la British East India Company vender té a bajo costo a las colonias sin intermediarios, afectando a los comerciantes locales de té; esta decisión dio origen al Motín del Té de Boston (pág. 102)

technology the tools used to produce goods or to do work (p. 387)
tecnología herramientas utilizadas para producir bienes o realizar un trabajo (pág. 387)

teepees cone-shaped shelters made of buffalo skins used by Native Americans in the Plains region (p. 14)
tipis tiendas de piel de búfalo de forma cónica que usaban como vivienda los indígenas norteamericanos en la región de las Planicies (pág. 14)

telegraph a machine perfected by Samuel F. B. Morse in 1832 that uses pulses of electric current to send messages across long distances through wires (p. 402)
telégrafo máquina perfeccionada por Samuel F. B. Morse en 1832 que emplea impulsos eléctricos transmitidos por cables para enviar mensajes a grandes distancias (pág. 402)

temperance movement a social reform effort begun in the mid-1800s to encourage people to drink less alcohol (p. 449)
movimiento de abstinencia movimiento de reforma social iniciado a mediados del siglo XIX para fomentar la disminución en el consumo de bebidas alcohólicas (pág. 449)

Ten Percent Plan President Abraham Lincoln's plan for Reconstruction; once 10 percent of voters in a former Confederate state took a U.S. loyalty oath, they could form a new state government and be readmitted to the Union (p. 553)
Plan del Diez por Ciento plan de Reconstrucción del presidente Abraham Lincoln; si el 10 por ciento de los votantes de un estado que había sido parte de la Confederación juraba lealtad a la nación, tenían derecho a formar un nuevo gobierno y ser readmitidos en la Unión (pág. 553)

tenements poorly built, overcrowded housing where many immigrants lived (p. 442)
barracas casas mal construidas donde vivían amontonados una gran cantidad de inmigrantes (pág. 442)

textile cloth (p. 385)
textil tela (pág. 385)

Thirteenth Amendment (1865) a constitutional amendment that outlawed slavery (p. 554)
Decimotercera Enmienda (1865) enmienda constitucional que abolió la esclavitud (pág. 554)

Three-Fifths Compromise (1787) an agreement worked out at the Constitutional Convention stating that only three-fifths of the slaves in a state would count when determining its population for representation in the lower house of Congress (p. 166)
Acuerdo de las Tres Quintas Partes (1787) acuerdo negociado durante la Convención Constitucional en el que se estableció que solamente tres quintas de los esclavos en un estado contarían para determinar la representación de ese estado en el Congreso (pág. 166)

Toleration Act of 1649 a Maryland law that made restricting the religious rights of Christians a crime; the first law guaranteeing religious freedom to be passed in America (p. 75)
Ley de Tolerancia de 1649 ley de Maryland que calificaba como delito la restricción de los derechos religiosos de los cristianos; fue la primera ley que garantizó la libertad religiosa en América (pág. 75)

total war a type of war in which an army destroys its opponent's ability to fight by targeting civilian and economic as well as military resources (p. 542)
guerra total tipo de guerra en la que un ejército destruye la capacidad de lucha de su oponente mediante ataques a la población civil, la economía y los recursos militares (pág. 542)

totems images of ancestors or animal spirits; often carved onto tall, wooden poles by Native American peoples of the Pacific Northwest (p. 12)
tótems imágenes de antepasados o animales; a menudo talladas en troncos de árboles cortados por los indígenas de la costa noroeste del Pacífico (pág. 12)

town meeting a political meeting at which people make decisions on local issues; used primarily in New England (p. 91)
reunión del pueblo reunión política en la que los habitantes de una población toman decisiones sobre temas locales; se realizan principalmente en Nueva Inglaterra (pág. 91)

trade unions workers' organizations that try to improve working conditions (p. 394)
sindicatos organizaciones formadas por trabajadores para mejorar sus condiciones laborales (pág. 394)

Trail of Tears (1838–39) an 800-mile forced march made by the Cherokee from their homeland in Georgia to Indian Territory; resulted in the deaths of almost one-fourth of the Cherokee people (p. 334)
Ruta de las lágrimas (1838–39) marcha forzada de 800 millas que realizó la tribu cherokee desde su territorio natal en Georgia hasta el Territorio Indígena, y en la que perdió la vida casi una cuarta parte del pueblo cherokee (pág. 334)

transcendentalism the idea that people could rise above the material things in life; a popular movement among New England writers and thinkers in the mid-1800s (p. 443)
trascendentalismo creencia de que las personas podían prescindir de los objetos materiales en la vida; movimiento popular entre los escritores y pensadores de Nueva Inglaterra a mediados del siglo XIX (pág. 443)

Transportation Revolution the rapid growth in the speed and convenience of transportation (p. 396)
revolución del transporte rápido crecimiento de la velocidad y comodidad ofrecida por los medios de transporte (pág. 396)

Treaty of Fort Jackson a treaty signed after the U.S. victory at the Battle of Horseshoe Bend; the Creek were forced to give up 23 million acres of their land (p. 286)
tratado del fuerte Jackson tratado que se firmó tras la victoria de Estados Unidos en la batalla de Horseshoe Bend; los indígenas creek se vieron obligados a ceder 23 millones de acres de su territorio (pág. 286)

Treaty of Ghent (1814) a treaty signed by the United States and Britain ending the War of 1812 (p. 287)
tratado de Gante (1814) tratado firmado por Estados Unidos y Gran Bretaña para dar fin a la Guerra de 1812 (pág. 287)

Treaty of Greenville (1795) an agreement between Native American confederation leaders and the U.S. government that gave the United States Indian lands in the Northwest Territory and guaranteed that U.S. citizens could safely travel through the region (p. 247)
tratado de Greenville (1795) acuerdo entre los líderes de la confederación de indígenas norteamericanos y el gobierno estadounidense que otorgó a Estados Unidos parte del Territorio del Noroeste y garantizó la seguridad a los ciudadanos estadounidenses que viajaran por esas tierras (pág. 247)

Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (1848) a treaty that ended the Mexican War and gave the United States much of Mexico's northern territory (p. 361)
tratado de Guadalupe Hidalgo (1848) tratado que daba por terminada la Guerra contra México y daba posesión a Estados Unidos de gran parte del norte del territorio mexicano (pág. 361)

Treaty of Paris of 1783 a peace agreement that officially ended the Revolutionary War and established British recognition of the independence of the United States (p. 139)
tratado de París de 1783 acuerdo de paz que oficialmente daba por terminada la Guerra de Independencia estadounidense y en el que Gran Bretaña reconocía la soberanía de Estados Unidos (pág. 139)

Treaty of Tordesillas (1494) a treaty between Spain and Portugal that moved the Line of Demarcation (p. 44)
Tratado de Tordesillas (1494) tratado entre España y Portugal que modificó la Línea de Demarcación (pág. 44)

Tredegar Iron Works a large iron factory that operated in Richmond, Virginia, in the early to mid-1800s (p. 419)
Tredegar Iron Works gran fábrica de acero que operaba a mediados del siglo XIX en Richmond, Virginia (pág. 419)

triangular trade trading networks in which goods and slaves moved among England, the American colonies, and Africa (p. 93)
comercio triangular redes de intercambio de esclavos y bienes entre Inglaterra, las colonias americanas y África (pág. 93)

U

Uncle Tom's Cabin (1852) an antislavery novel written by Harriet Beecher Stowe that showed northerners the violent reality of slavery and drew many people to the abolitionists' cause (p. 481)
La cabaña del tío Tom (1852) novela abolicionista escrita por Harriet Beecher Stowe que mostró a los habitantes del norte del país la cruda realidad de la esclavitud e hizo que muchos de ellos se unieran a la causa abolicionista (pág. 481)

Underground Railroad a network of people who helped thousands of enslaved people escape to the North by providing transportation and hiding places (p. 456)
Tren Clandestino red de personas que ayudó a miles de esclavos a escapar al Norte ofreciéndoles transporte y lugares para ocultarse (pág. 456)

USS *Constitution* a large warship (p. 278)
USS *Constitution* gran buque de guerra (pág. 278)

utopian communities places where people worked to establish a perfect society; such communities were popular in the United States during the late 1700s and early to mid-1800s (p. 444)
comunidades utópicas lugares en los que un grupo de personas trabajaba para establecer una sociedad perfecta, como las que se popularizaron en Estados Unidos a finales del siglo XVIII y principios y mediados del XIX (pág. 444)

V

vaqueros Mexican cowboys in the West who tended cattle and horses (p. 357)
vaqueros arrieros mexicanos que vivían en el Oeste y se ganaban la vida arreando ganado y caballos (pág. 357)

veto to cancel (p. 184)
vetar cancelar (pág. 184)

Virginia Plan (1787) the plan for government proposed at the Constitutional Convention in which the national government would have supreme power and a legislative branch would have two houses with representation determined by state population (p. 164)
Plan de Virginia (1787) plan del gobierno propuesto en la Convención Constitucional por el que el gobierno nacional tendría poder supremo y habría un Poder Legislativo con dos cámaras en las que la representación de cada estado sería determinada por su población (pág. 164)

Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom (1786) a document that gave people in Virginia freedom of worship and prohibited tax money from being used to fund churches (p. 153)
Estatuto de Virginia por la Libertad Religiosa (1786) documento que reconocía a los habitantes de Virginia la libertad de culto y prohibía utilizar el dinero procedente de impuestos para financiar iglesias (pág. 153)

W

War Hawks members of Congress who wanted to declare war against Britain after the Battle of Tippecanoe (p. 282)
halcones de guerra integrantes del Congreso que tenían la intención de declarar la guerra a Gran Bretaña tras la batalla de Tippecanoe (pág. 282)

Whig Party a political party formed in 1834 by opponents of Andrew Jackson and who supported a strong legislature (p. 330)
Partido Whig partido político formado en 1834 por oponentes de Andrew Jackson que apoyaba una asamblea legislativa con mucha autoridad (pág. 330)

Whiskey Rebellion (1794) a protest of small farmers in Pennsylvania against new taxes on whiskey (p. 247)
Rebelión del Whisky (1794) protesta de pequeños agricultores de Pensilvania contra los nuevos impuestos sobre la producción de whisky (pág. 247)

Wilderness Campaign (1864) a series of battles between Union and Confederate forces in northern and central Virginia that delayed the Union capture of Richmond (p. 540)
Campaña Wilderness (1864) serie de batallas entre la Unión y los confederados en el norte y el centro de Virginia que retrasaron la captura de Richmond por parte de la Unión (pág. 540)

Wilmot Proviso (1846) a proposal to outlaw slavery in the territory added to the United States by the Mexican Cession; passed in the House of Representatives but was defeated in the Senate (p. 476)
Condición de Wilmot (1846) propuesta de prohibir la esclavitud en el territorio adherido a Estados Unidos por la Cesión mexicana; aprobada por la Cámara de Representantes, pero rechazada por el Senado (pág. 476)

Worcester* v. *Georgia (1832) the Supreme Court ruling that stated that the Cherokee nation was a distinct territory over which only the federal government had authority; ignored by both President Andrew Jackson and the state of Georgia (p. 334)
Worcester* contra *Georgia (1832) resolución de la Corte Suprema que establecía que la nación cherokee era un territorio distinto sobre el que sólo el gobierno federal tenía autoridad; fue ignorada por el presidente Andrew Jackson y por el estado de Georgia (pág. 334)

X

XYZ affair (1797) an incident in which French agents attempted to get a bribe and loans from U.S. diplomats in exchange for an agreement that French privateers would no longer attack American ships; it led to an undeclared naval war between the two countries (p. 252)
incidente XYZ (1797) incidente en el que funcionarios franceses intentaron obtener sobornos y préstamos de diplomáticos estadounidenses a cambio de un acuerdo por el cual sus barcos corsarios no atacarían más a los barcos estadounidenses; provocó una guerra no declarada entre las fuerzas navales de ambas naciones (pág. 252)

Y

yeomen owners of small farms (p. 422)
pequeños terratenientes propietarios de granjas pequeñas (pág. 422)

Index

KEY TO INDEX

c = chart	*p* = photo
f = feature	*R* = Reference
m = map	

A

abolition, 454–59, 455*p,* 456*p,* 457*m,* 458*p;* creation of Republican Party and, 488; definition of, 454; and Emancipation Proclamation, 529; Fugitive Slave Act and, 480; opposition to, 458–59; women's rights and, 461–62
accused, rights of the, 218–19
Adams, Abigail, 120, 235
Adams, John, 119, 164, 387, R19; Boston Massacre and, 101; election of 1796, 250–51; election of 1800, 266–67, 267*p;* XYZ Affair, 251–52, 251*p*
Adams, John Quincy, 295*p,* 299, 300–01, R19; election of 1824, 305; election of 1828, 323–24; Fourth of July (1821) Address, R34
Adams, Samuel, 120*p,* 170; Boston Massacre and, 101; Committees of Correspondence and, 99; Sons of Liberty and, 100; tax revolt and, 101; Townshend Acts and, 100
Adams-Onís Treaty, 299, 299*m*
adobe, 11, 12
advisory council, 90
Afonso, King of Kongo, 59
Africa: colonization of, 455; slavery and, 74, 93; trade with, 45, 45*m;* triangular trade, 92*m,* 93–94, 93*p*
Africa: Political, R12*m*
African Americans, 422*p;* abolitionist movement and, 454–59, 455*p,* 456*p,* 457*m,* 458*p;* Black Codes and, 558–60; in Boston Massacre, 101; civil rights of, 560–61; in the Civil War, 530–31; colonization in Africa and, 455; in Congress, 549*p,* 565, 565*m,* 565*p;* culture of, 61; Declaration of Independence and, 121; discrimination and, 423; Dred Scott decision and, 489–91, 490*m;* education and, 452–15, 556, 556*p;* Emancipation Proclamation and, 528–30; farming and, 569–70, 569*p;* free southern, 423; Freedmen's Bureau and, 556, 556*p;* freedpeople, 555-56, 555*p*–56*p;* Fugitive Slave Act and, 479–80; in Gold Rush, 367; Great Awakening and, 95; Jim Crow laws and, 568; Ku Klux Klan and, 566, 566*p,* 567*p;* Middle Passage and, 93*p,* 94; *Plessy* v. *Ferguson,* 568*f,* 568; poll taxes and, 214, 214*p,* 568–69; population of, 60*m,* 76*c;* Radical Republicans and, 559–60, 559*p;* Redeemers and, 568; religion and, 449; in Revolutionary War, 126–27; on the Supreme Court, 186; Thirteenth Amendment and, 554–55; voting rights of, 153, 209, 322, 423, 561, 561*m,* 562*p,* 563; in War of 1812, 286; Washington, D.C. and, 240, 240*p*
African Diaspora, 60–61, 60*m*
agreement, 237
agriculture: in Middle Colonies, 87; in New England colonies, 83; scientific, 417; slavery and, 414; in the South, 420–22; in southern colonies, 77; staple crops, 87; technology in, 404, 404*p. See also* farming
Alabama, R24; cotton in, 416*m;* during Reconstruction, 561*m;* secedes from the Union, 496; slavery in, 426; in War of 1812, 286
Alamo, 352, 352*m,* 352*p*
Alaska, R24; Bering Land Bridge, 6–7, 7*m;* Native Americans in, 12, 13*m;* Russia and, 347
Albany Congress, 164
Albright, Madeleine, 223
alcohol abuse, 449
Alcorn, James, 565
Alcott, Louisa May, 447
Aleut culture, 12, 13*m*
Alexander VI, Pope, 44
Algonquian culture, 13*m,* 14, 95
Alien and Sedition Acts (1798), 253, 268
Almoravids, 17–18
Almy, William, 386
amendments, 173
American Anti-Slavery Society, 455, 456, 555
American Colonization Society, 455
American Crisis, The (Paine), 128
American Fur Company, 346
American Indians. *See* Native Americans; individual culture areas
American Missionary Society, 556
American Red Cross, 534
American Revolution. *See* Revolutionary War
American Slavery As It Is (Grimké), 455
American System, 302
Americans with Disabilities Act (1990), 179
"America, the Beautiful" (Bates), R27
Anaconda Plan, 520
Anasazi culture, 10–11, 362
Anderson, Joseph R., 411*p,* 419
Anderson, Robert, 511
Andes Mountains, 8, 9*m*
Andros, Sir Edmund, 91
Anglican Church, 53
Anglo-Californians, 365
Annapolis Convention, 162
Anthony, Susan B., 463*p,* 465, 466
Antietam, Battle of, 516–19, 530, 545
Antifederalists, 170, 171, 172, 173
Apache culture, 13*m,* 14, 362
Appalachian Mountains, 272
appeal courts, 186, 199*f*
Appeal to the Christian Women of the South (Grimké), 455
Appeal to the Colored Citizens of the World (Walker), 455
Appomattox Courthouse, Virginia, 541*m,* 542–43, 545
apportionment, 183
apprentices, 83, 390
Arapaho culture, 13*m,* 14
architecture, 309*p,* 310–11. *See also* housing
Aristotle, 22
Arizona, 49, R24; Gadsden Purchase and, 361; Mexican Americans in, 363; Mexican Cession and, 361; Mexico and, 356; Native Americans in, 10, 12, 13*m*
Arkansas, 55, R24; in Civil War, 512, 525; cotton in, 416*m;* during Reconstruction, 563
Arkwright, Richard, 385
armored warfare, 47p
Army, U.S., 347*m;* Mexican War and, 358
Army of the Potomac, 506–07*p,* 514–15, 517, 518, 536; naval strategy, 520
Arnold, Benedict, 115, 128, 136
art, 309*p,* 309–10, 444, 444*p,* 445*p;* of the Renaissance, 26
Arthur, T.S., 463
Articles of Confederation, 154, 158, 162, 168*f*
Asia: trade with, 40–41, 41*m*
Asia: Political, R11*m*
Askia the Great, 19–20
assemblies, 90–91
assembly, freedom of, 205, 217
assembly line, 388*f*
Astor, John Jacob, 346–47; in New York City 347
astrolabe, 40
Atlantic Ocean, exploration of, 38
Attucks, Crispus, 101
Audubon, John, 309*p*
Austin, Stephen F., 350, 353
Australia and New Zealand: Political, R13*m*
Avery College, 452
Aztec culture, 8, 9*m,* 46–47, 48, 50

B

Bache, Sarah Franklin, 138
Bacon, Nathaniel, 74
Bacon's Rebellion, 74
Bagley, Sarah, 394*f,* 395
bail, 220
Balboa, Vasco Núñez de, 44
Baldwin, Abraham, 203
Bank of the United States, 242, 269; Second, 329–30
banks and banking, 241–42, 269, 329–30
Banneker, Benjamin, 240, 240*p*
Barbary States (North Africa), 278
Barton, Clara, 534, 534*p*
Battle of Brooklyn, *See* Battle of Long Island.
Battle of Long Island, 128
Bassett, Richard, 203
Bastille (Paris), 243, 243*p*
Bear Flag Revolt, 358, 359*m*
Beauregard, Pierre, 516
Bedford, Gunning, Jr., 203
Beecher, Catherine, 451
Beecher, Lyman, 448–49
Bell, John, 495, 495*m*
Bellows, Henry, 514
Berbers, 16
Bering Land Bridge, 6–7, 7*m*
Berkeley, John Lord, 86
Bett, Mum, 123*p*
bicameral legislature, 81, 165
Biddle, Nicholas, 330
Bill of Rights (English), 91, 152, 157, R32
Bill of Rights (U.S.), 173, 204–05, 216–21
Billy Budd **(Melville),** 445
Bingham, George Caleb, 310
Biography: Banneker, Benjamin, 240; Clay, Henry, 304; Douglass, Frederick, 460; Equiano, Olaudah, 93; Farragut, David, 523; Franklin, Benjamin, 169; Hutchinson, Anne, 82; Jackson, Andrew, 325; Jefferson, Thomas, 271; Lee, Robert E., 519; Lincoln, Abraham, 535; Madison, James, 187; Mann, Horace, 451; Morse, Samuel F. B., 403; Musa, Mansa, 21; Penn, William, 86; Pontiac, 97; Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 467; Vallejo, Mariano Guadalupe, 357; Washington, George, 117
Black Codes, 558–60
Black Death, 25, 28–29, 28*p*–29*p*
Black Hawk, Chief, 335
Black Hawk War, 335
Blackfoot culture, 13*m,* 14
Blackwell, Elizabeth, 514
Blair, John, 203
Bleeding Kansas, 486–87, 486*p*
blockades, 159*m,* 285*m,* 513, 520–21
Blount, William, 203
Bolívar, Simon, 300
Bonaparte, Napoleon, 273–74
bonds, 238
Bonhomme Richard **(ship),** 133
Book of Mormon, 349
Booth, John Wilkes, 535*f,* 557
borders, 298, 299*m,* 355
border states, 510, 512, 525, 529
Boston, 113*m,* 114, 115–116, 115*m;* Intolerable Acts and, 103
Boston Gazette (newspaper), 101*f*
Boston Manufacturing Company, 392
Boston Massacre, 101, 101*f,* 101*p,* 103
Boston Tea Party, 102, 103
Bowie, Jim, 352
boycott, 99, 100
Bradford, William, 79
Bragg, Braxton, 553
Brazil, 60
Brearley, David, 203
Breckinridge, John C., 495, 495*m*
Breed's Hill, 115, 115*m*
Britain. *See* England; Great Britain
British East India Company, 102
British West Indies, 160
Brook Farm, Massachusetts, 444
Brooks, Preston, 487
Broom, Jacob, 203
Brown, John, 485–86, 493–94, 494*p*
Brown, Moses, 386
Brown, Smith, 386
Brown, William Wells, 456
Brown v. Board of Education (1954), 179
Bruce, Blanche K., 565, 565*p*
Buchanan, James, 489, 496, R20
Buena Vista, Battle of, 360, 360*p*
buffalo, 14
Bull Run, First Battle of, 506, 516–17, 545; Second Battle of, 518, 545
Bunker Hill, Battle of, 115, 115*m*
Burgoyne, John, 129–130
Burnet, David, 351
Burns, Anthony, 480, 481
Burnside, Ambrose E., 536
Burr, Aaron, 250, 266–67
Bush, Geoge W., 583, R23
Butler, Pierce, 203
Byzantine Empire, 26

C

Cabeza de Vaca, Álvar Núñez, 48–49, 49*m*
cabinet, 185
Cabot, John, 54, 55*m,* 56*m*
Cahokia, 11, 133
Calhoun, John C., 282, 323, 328, 329*p,* 478, 479
California, R24; Bear Flag Revolt, 358, 359*m;* California Trail, 364; as colony, 356–57; economy of, 367, 369; gains statehood, 369; gold rush, 365–69, 365*p,* 366*p,* 367*p;* immigrants to, 368; Mexican Americans in, 363, 364–65; Mexican Cession and, 361; Mexican War and, 358, 359*m;* Native Americans in, 12, 13*m,* 364–65, 368; Oregon Trail, 347–48, 347*m,* 364; slavery issue and, 477, 477*m,* 478–479; Spain and, 356–57, 357*p*
California Trail, 364
Californios, 357, 358
Calvert, Cecilius, 75
Canada, 54, 56*m,* 96*m;* borders, 355; in French and Indian War, 96; Native Americans in, 12, 13*m;* in Revolutionary War, 120, 128; U.S. foreign policy and, 298; War of 1812, 284–85, 285*m*
canals, 303–04, 303*m,* 512
Cape of Good Hope, 40, 41*m*
capital punishment, 220
Capitol Building, 268
caravel, 39*p,* 40
Carolinas, 48, 76, 76*m,* 97. *See also* North Carolina; South Carolina
carpetbaggers, 564
Carroll, Daniel, 203
Carteret, Sir George, 86
Cartier, Jacques, 54, 55, 56*m*
cash crop, 418
Cass, Lewis, 477
Catlin, George, 310*p*
Cayuga culture, 13*m,* 14
Cazenovia Fugitive Slave Convention, 480*f*
Cemetery Ridge, 538–39
Central America: Spain and, 46–47, 300
Chamberlain, Joshua, 538
Champlain, Samuel de, 55, 56*m*
Chancellorsville, Battle of, 536–37, 541*m*
Charles I, King of England, 75, 80
Charles II, King of England, 76
Charleston, South Carolina, 417, 511
charter, 54, 90
checks and balances, 167–68, 184*f,* 269*f*
Cherokee culture, 13*m,* 14, 333–34
Chesapeake Bay, 72–73, 73*m*
Chesapeake **(ship),** 279
Chesnut, Mary Boykin, 512, 553
Chevalier, Michel, 398
Chicago, Illinois, 401
children, labor and, 390–91, 392–94, 392*p,* 393*p,* 571
China: immigrants from, 368; Silk Road and, 25; trade with, 355

Chinook culture, 12, 13*m*
Christianity: in Middle Ages, 24–25; Native Americans and, 50–51; Protestant Reformation, 53, 53*p*
church and state, 82*f*
Church of England, 53, 78
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, 348–49
circuit courts, 185
circuit riding, 185*f*
circumnavigation, 44–45
cities: growth of, 401, 440, 441*p,* 442; immigrants and, 440, 441*p,* 442; of the South, 422; tenements in, 442
citizenship: duties of, 223, 224*p,* 225*p;* gaining, 222–23, 223*p*
city-states, 23
civil court, 219
civil liberties, 155
civil rights: of African Americans, 560–61; Black Codes and, 558–60; Ku Klux Klan and, 566, 566p, 566*p*
Civil Rights Act (1866), 560–61
Civil Rights Act (1875), 567, 568
Civil War: 506-545; Abraham Lincoln and, 510–11, 529–30, 535*f,* 540; African Americans in, 530*p,* 531; battles, 516–17, 518, 519, 523, 524–25, 536–40; beginnings of, 510–512; blockades in, 520; border states in, 512; causes of, 542f, and civilian life, 534; Confederate strategy, 519; and economics, 512–13; and emancipation, 529–30, 529*m;* effects of, 542*f,* 543; end of, 542–43; and Europe, 506; and Great Britain, 513; ironclads in, 520–21; in Louisiana, 523–24; in Maryland, 519; in Mississippi, 524–25, 526–27*f;* in Missouri, 525; Native Americans in, 525; in New York, 515, 533; opposition to, 532; Peninsular Campaign, 517; in Pennsylvania, 505*p,* 538–39; resources in North and South, 512–13; soldiers in, 514–15, 530*p,* 531, 532–34; supply lines, 513, 520, 522; Union strategy, 516, 520, 522–23, 536–37, 540–42; in Virginia, 516–18; in the West, 522–27; women in, 514, 528, 534
Clark, George Rogers, 133–134
Clark, William, 275–76
Classical Period, 23
Clay, Henry, 281*p,* 282, 302, 355, 478–79
Clermont (steamship), 397; in New York, 275, 397
Clinton, Bill, 184, R23
Clinton, Henry, 135
closed markets, 160
Clotel (Brown), 456
Clymer, George, 203
coal, 400–01
Coercive Acts (1774), 102–03
Cole, Thomas, 310, 310*p,* 444*p*
colonial courts, 92
colonial New York, 85–86
colony. *See* company colony; proprietary colony; royal colony
Colorado, R24; Mexican Cession and, 361; Native Americans in, 10, 12, 13*m;* Pike's expedition to, 276–77
Columbia River, 276, 347, 347*m*
Columbian Exchange, 45, 45*m*
Columbus, Christopher, 42–44, 43*m,* 44*p*
commerce clause, Native Americans and, 193*f*
Committee of Thirteen, 154
Committees of Correspondence, 99, 101, 102
common-school movement, 450–51
Common Sense **(Paine),** 110, 118, 354
community service, 224–25, 225*p*
company colony, 72, 90
company stores, 391
compass, 40
compensation, 555
Compromise of 1850, 478–79, 484
Compromise of 1877, 567–68
Concord, Battle of, 114
concurrent powers, 182
Confederate Army, 510, 514, 534; rebel yell, 517; naval strategy, 520
Confederate States of America, 496–97, 512, 512*m,* 513*g,* 519, 529–30, 536–39
Confederation Congress, 160, 163
Congress, U.S.: African Americans in, 549*p,* 565, 565*m,* 565*p;* Alien and Sedition Acts, 253; Articles of Confederation and, 154, 158; Bank of the United States, 242; Constitution and the, 189–95; declaration of war, 185; delegated powers of, 182; elastic clause, 182, 194; Land Ordinances and, 155; Missouri Compromise, 304–05; organization of, 183; vetoes and, 184–85; Wade-Davis Bill, 553–54. *See also* House of Representatives, U.S.; Senate, U.S.
Connecticut, 57, R24; colonial, 82, 83; constitution of, 153; government in, 90, 91–92; labor laws in, 395; ratification of the Constitution, 203
conquistadors, 46, 47p, 48
constitution, 153
Constitution, U.S.: amendments to, 173, 202, 204–15; Bill of Rights and, 173, 216–81; checks and balances, 168–69; creation of, 164–68; education and, 220–21; loose construction of, 242; origins of, 156–57; ratification of, 170–73, 203; strengths of, 168*f;* strict construction of, 242; text of, 188–215. *See also* individual amendments
Constitution, USS (warship), 278, 279*p,* 284
Constitutional Convention, 162, 163–64, 163*p,* 164*p;* Great Compromise, 164–65; New Jersey Plan, 165; Three-Fifths Compromise, 166; Virginia Plan, 164–65
Constitutional Union Party, 495, 495*m*
constitutions, state, 153
Continental Army, 114, 116, 126, 158
Continental Congress: First, 112; Second, 114, 119, 131, 154
Continental Navy, 133
contrabands, 531
Convention of 1818, 298, 299*m*
Cooper, James Fenimore, 309, 312*f*
Cooper, Peter, 398
Copeland, John A., 494
Copperheads, 532
Cornwallis, Charles, 129, 136, 137
Coronado, Francisco Vásquez de, 49–50, 49*m*
Corps of Discovery, 275–76
Cortés, Hernán, 46–47, 49*m,* 56*m,* 360
cotton, 326–27, 414, 415–16, 416*g,* 416*m,* 417*g,* 506, 569–70
cotton belt, 416–17, 416*m,* 417*g*
cotton diplomacy, 513
cotton gin, 410*p,* 415–16, 415*p*
Council of State, 91
Council of the Indies, 47
county meetings, 91
court systems, 167, 185–86, 199*f,* 236; colonial, 92
cowboys, 356*p*
Creek culture, 13*m,* 14, 282, 333
Creek War, 285*m,* 286
criminal court, 219
Crittenden, John J., 497
Croatoan, 54
Crockett, Davy, 352
crop rotation, 418
cruel and unusual punishment, 220
Crusades, 24–25
Culp's Hill, 538–39
culture, 7, 308–13, 443–44, 444*p,* 445*p*
Cumberland Road, 303, 303*m*
currency: in Revolutionary War, 161
Cuzco, 8, 47

D

Dana, Richard Henry, Jr., 357
Dante Alighieri, 26
Dare, Virginia, 54
Daughters of Liberty, 100
Davis, Henry, 553

Davis, Jefferson, 477, 496, 523, 534, 565
Dawes, William, 114
Dayton, Jonathan, 203
death penalty, 220
Declaration of Independence, 119, 153, 173; Native Americans and, 121; signing of, 120*p;* text of, 122–125; women and, 120
Declaration of Rights, 112, 114
Declaration of Rights for Women, R40
Declaration of Sentiments, 464, R35
Declaratory Act, 100
Deere, John, 403*p,* 404
deforestation, 401
Delano, Alonzo, 367
Delaware, 57, R24; Civil War in, 512; colonial, 86; ratification of the Constitution, 172, 203
Delaware River, 57, 92–93
delegated powers, 182
democracy, 156*f;* demonstrations and, 323*f;* Greek, 23; Tocqueville and, 224
Democratic Party: election of 1852, 483–84; election of 1860, 495, 495*m;* election of 1868, 562–63; election of 1876, 567–68; emancipation and, 529; formation of Republican Party and, 488; in Reconstruction, 564–65
Democratic-Republican Party, 250; election of 1800, 266–67
Denmark, 38
Denmark Vesey Document, R36
deportation, 222
depression, economic, 161
Detroit, 57, 285, 285*m*
Dias, Bartolomeu, 40, 41*m*
Dickinson, Emily, 445
Dickinson, John, 203
direct democracy, 23
disabled Americans, 451
discrimination, 423
dissenters, 80
district courts, 185, 199*f*
District of Columbia, 240, R24; Compromise of 1850 and, 479. *See also* Washington, D.C.
division of labor, 387*p*
Dix, Dorothea, 450
Djenné, 18
Dogrib culture, 12, 13*m*
Dominion of New England, 91–92
Donner party, 365
Dorchester Heights, 116
double jeopardy, 218
Douglas, Stephen, 488, 511, 535*f;* debates and, 491–92, 492*p;* election of 1860, 495, 495*m;* Kansas-Nebraska Act (1854), 484–85
Douglass, Frederick, 456, 460, 460*p,* 464, 555
draft, military, 223, 532
draft riots, 532
Drake, Sir Francis, 53
***Dred Scott* decision,** 489–90, 489*f,* 491
Dunny, Patrick, 439
Dutch, 57, 59; exploration by the, 54, 56*m. See also* Netherlands
Dutch and English in New York, 86
Dutch West India Company, 57

E

economics, 331; Civil War and, 514; of cotton, 419*p;* depression, 161, 330; inflation, 160–61, 330, 367; mass production and, 386–87*p;* national debt, 330; Panic of 1837, 330, 394; plantations and, 59; trade and, 27
economy: American System, 302; of California, 369; and the Civil War, 512–13; interstate commerce and the, 160; of Jamestown, 74; of Middle Colonies, 87; national debt, 238–39, 239*c;* of New England, 83; of the South, 418*p,* 553; of southern colonies, 75; states' debts, 239–40, 239*c*
education: African Americans and, 452–53, 556, 556*p;* civil liberties and, 154*m,* 155; colonial, 84; common-school movement, 450; Constitution and, 220–21; public and, 311; of Native Americans, 333–34; in New England, 450; slavery and, 426; women and, 84, 451, 462. *See also* higher education
Edwards, Jonathan, 94
Eighteenth Amendment, 210
Eighth Amendment, 205, 218, 220
Einstein, Albert, 223
Eisenhower, Dwight D., 214, R22
El Camino Real, 48
elastic clause, 182, 194, 242
election: of 1796, 250–51, 251*m;* of 1800, 266–67, 267*p;* of 1804, 279; of 1808, 283; of 1812, 283; of 1824, 305, 323; of 1828, 310, 323–24; of 1836, 330; of 1840, 331; of 1844, 355, 403; of 1852, 483–84; of 1854, 488–89; of 1860, 495, 495*m;* of 1866, 561; of 1868, 562–63; of 1876, 567; function of an, 224, 225*p;* presidential, 196
electoral college, 196, 196*m,* 234
Eleventh Amendment, 206
Elizabeth I, Queen of England, 53
Ellison, William, 425
Ellsworth, Oliver, 166
emancipation, 454, 529
Emancipation Proclamation, 507, 528–30, 529*m,* 554, R38
embargo, 279
Embargo Act (1807), 279–80, 281*f*
Emerson, John, 489
Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 443
eminent domain, 218
empresarios, 350
encomienda system, 50
England: colonies of, 72–77, 73*m,* 75*p,* 76*m,* 78–84, 81*m,* 81*p,* 86, 90–97, 91*p,* 92*m,* 93*p,* 94*p,* 96*m;* economy of, 92–93; English Bill of Rights, 91; exploration by, 54, 55*m,* 56*m;* Great Migration, 80; Navigation Acts, 92–93; political change in, 91–92, 91*p;* religion in, 75; slave trade and, 59; Spain and, 53; trade laws of, 92–93; Treaty of Paris (1783), 158. *See also* Great Britain
Enlightenment, 95, 152*f,* 157
English Bill of Rights, 91, 152, 157, R32
environments, 7
equal rights, 560–61
Equiano, Olaudah, 77, 93, 93*p*
Era of Good Feelings, 303–04
Erie Canal, 303, 303*m,* 306*f*–07*f*
Erik the Red, 38
Eriksson, Leif, 38–39
Estevanico, 49, 49*p*
Europe: American Revolution and, 130–131; in Middle Ages, 24–25; Protestant Reformation in, 53, 53*p;* in Renaissance, 26–27, 26*p;* trade routes and, 25
Europe: Political, R10*m*
executive branch, 167; checks and balances, 184*f;* Constitution and the, 196–98; organization of, 184–85; separation of powers, 183. *See also* President, U.S.; Vice President, U.S.
executive orders, 185

F

factories, 385–88, 404, 411*p;* families and, 390–91, 391*p,* 571; immigrants and, 394; in the New South, 570–71, 570*p;* in the South, 418–19; steam power and, 404; trade unions and, 394–95
factors, 417
Fair Employment Act (1942), 179
Fallen Timbers, Battle of, 246*m,* 247

families: factories and, 390–91, 391*p,* 571; Pilgrim, 80; slavery and, 61, 426–27
farming, 7; equipment, 404; in the South, 569–70, 569*p. See also* agriculture
Farragut, David, 523–24
federal courts, 185, 236
federal government, 171, 182; branches of, 183; concurrent powers and, 182; delegated powers of, 182; functions of, 269; organizing the, 235–36; Tenth Amendment and, 221
federalism, 167, 182, 201*f*
Federalist Papers, 171, 172*f*
Federalist Party, 250; election of 1800, 266–67; Embargo Act and, 280
Federalists, 170–71, 266, 269
Ferdinand, King of Spain, 42
feudalism, 24
Few, William, 203
Fifteenth Amendment, 209, 562*f,* 563
Fifth Amendment, 157, 204, 218, 219, 490
54th Massachusetts Infantry, 530*p,* 531
Fillmore, Millard, 484, 488, R20
Finney, Charles Grandison, 448–49
fire protection, 442
First Amendment, 156, 204, 216–17, 217*p,* 458
First Seminole War, 299
FitzSimons, Thomas, 203
Florida, R24; exploration of, 48–49, 49*m,* 55, 56*m;* and French and Indian War, 96; Native Americans in, 299, 335, 335*m;* during Reconstruction, 561*m;* secedes from the Union, 496; Second Seminole War, 335, 335*m;* Spain and, 76, 245, 245*m,* 299, 299*m*
folk music, 310
folktales, 427
Ford's Theater, 557
foreign policy, 130; with Britain, 298, 299*m,* 300; with Canada, 298; of Jefferson, 272–73; Monroe Doctrine, 300–01; with Spain, 299, 299*m*
Fort Christina, 57
Fort Detroit, 97, 285, 285*m*
Fort Donelson, 522
Fort Greenville, 246
Fort Henry, 522
Fort McHenry, 286
Fort Mims, 285*m,* 286
Fort Necessity, 96
Fort Sackville, 133–134, 134*m*
Fort Sumter, 497, 506, 511, 516, 545
Fort Ticonderoga, 115, 116, 130
Fort Wagner, 531
Forty-niners, 365–68, 365*p,* 366*p,* 367*p,* 477
Fountain of Youth, 48
Four Corners, 10
Fourteenth Amendment, 208–09, 560–61, 562*f,* 563, 569
Fourth Amendment, 204, 218
France: American Revolution and, 130–131, 137; empire of, 96*m;* England and, 243, 243*p,* 244, 278; exploration by, 54, 55, 55*m,* 56*m,* 57; French and Indian War, 96; Louisiana and, 273–74; in Middle Ages, 24; Native Americans and, 57; revolution in, 243, 243*p,* 244; XYZ Affair, 252, 252*f*
Franklin, Benjamin, 84, 111, 119, 120, 120*p,* 131, 133, 169, 169*p,* 170, 203
Franklin, William, 119, 120
Franks, 24
Fredericksburg, Battle of, 536
Free Soil Party, 477, 488
free states, 304–05, 304*m,* 457*m,* 476–77, 477*m,* 512*m*
Freedmen's Bureau, 556, 556*p,* 560–61
freedpeople, 555, 555*p*–56*p,* 556
Freeport Doctrine, 491–92
Frémont, John C., 358, 489
French and Indian War, 96, 98, 130
French Revolution, 243, 243*p,* 244
French West Indies, 245
Fugitive Slave Act, 479–80, 481, 484
Fugitive Slave law, 478
Fuller, Margaret, 443
Fulton, Robert, 380*p,* 397
Fundamental Orders of Connecticut, 82, 153, R31
fur trade, 85, 86, 346
Futrell, Mary Hatwood, 221

G

Gadsden Purchase, 361
gag rule, 458
Gage, Thomas, 103, 113–114
Gallatin, Albert, 251*p,* 268, 269, 388
Gallaudet, Thomas, 451
Gálvez, Bernardo de, 131
Gama, Vasco da, 40, 41*m*
gang-labor system, 424
Gao, 18, 20
Garrison, William Lloyd, 435, 455, 455*p,* 530, 555, 563
Gates, Horatio, 136
Gaul, 24
General Amnesty Act (1872), 567
General Court of Massachusetts, 81–82, 84
Genet, Edmond, 244
George II, King of England, 76
George III, King of England, 97, 112, 114, 119
Georgia, 48, R24; Civil War in, 513, 533; colony of, 76, 76*m;* cotton in, 416m; Native Americans in, 334; ratification of the Constitution, 203; during Reconstruction, 563; Revolutionary War in, 135, 136; secedes from the Union, 496; slavery in, 426
German, Obadiah, 283
Germany: American Revolution and, 128, 129; immigrants from, 368, 439
Gettysburg, Battle of, 505p, 536-40, 537–38p, 541*m,* 545
Gettysburg Address, 540, R38
Ghana, Kingdom of, 16–18, 17*p,* 18*m*
Gibbons, Thomas, 397
Gibbons v. Ogden (1824), 304, 397, R28
Gilman, Nicholas, 203
Gitlow* v. *New York, 561
gold, 17, 48, 334
Gold Rush, 364–69, 366*p,* 367*p*
Goliad, Texas, 352, 352*m*
Gorham, Nathaniel, 203
government: branches of, 167; colonial, 90–91, 91*f,* 100; federalism, 167; formation of, 153–54; General Court of Massachusetts, 81–82; of Greece, 22–23; influencing, 224; models of, 153; in Pennsylvania, 86; religion and, 82*f;* Roman, 23–24, 24*p. See also* federal government; state government
Grady, Henry, 568, 570, 570*p*
Grand Canyon, 49
Grant, Ulysses S., 507, 522, 542–43, 562–63, R21
Great Awakening, 94–95, 94*p;* Second, 448–49, 450, 454
Great Britain: colonial policy of, 90, 93, 97, 102–03, 102–03*f;* colonial taxation by, 98–100; Declaration of Independence and, 119; Embargo Act and, 279–80; North American empire of, 96*m;* and French and Indian War, 96; Industrial Revolution in, 384–85, 388; and Jay's Treaty, 245; Oregon Country and, 347; and Proclamation of 1763, 97; trains in, 398; and Treaty of Paris (1763), 96, 96*m;* and Treaty of Paris (1783), 139, 139*m,* 158; U.S. Civil War and, 506, 513; and triangular trade, 92*m,* 93; and U.S.-Canadian border, 355–56; U.S. foreign policy and, 298, 299*m,* 300; U.S. trade with, 159, 159*m,* 160; and War of 1812, 284–86, 285*m,* 286*p. See also* England
Great Compromise, 164–65
Great Lakes, 55, 56*m,* 57, 298

Great Migration, 80
Great Plains, 13*m,* 14, 276
Greece, 22–23, 311
Greene, Catherine, 415
Greene, Nathanael, 136
Greenland, 38
Grenville, George, 98, 100
Grimké, Angelina and Sarah, 455, 459, 461–62
Grundy, Felix, 282
guerrilla warfare, 136, 136*p*
Gutenberg, Johannes, 27, 52*p*

H

habeas corpus, 532
haciendas, 50
hajj, 18
Hale, Nathan, 128
Hamilton, Alexander, 162, 170, 171, 171*p,* 172, 203; Federalist Party and, 250; Jefferson and, 239, 240–42, 241*p;* national bank and, 241–42; national debt and, 238–40, 239*c;* in New York City, 245; as secretary of the treasury, 235, 235*p;* Washington and, 249; Whiskey Rebellion and, 247; Zenger and, 92
Hamlet, James, 479, 481
Hancock, John, 120*p*
Harmar, Josiah, 246, 246*m*
Harpers Ferry, Virginia, 493–94, 519
Harrison, William Henry, 484, R20; Battle of Tippecanoe and, 281–82; election of 1840, 331; War of 1812, 285
Hartford Convention, 287, 328
Harvard, 84, 452
harvesting machine, 404
Hawaii, R24
Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 444
Hayes, Rutherford B., 567, R21
Hays, Mary Ludwig, 127
headright system, 74
Helper, Hinton Rowan, 418–19
Henrietta Maria, Queen of England, 75
Henry, Patrick, 100, 112–113, 164, 170, 239
Henry the Navigator, 39
Henry VIII, King of England, 53
Henson, Josiah, 426
Hiawatha (Longfellow), 445
Hidalgo y Costilla, Father Miguel, 350
higher education, 84, 452
Hill, D.H., 518
Hispanic Americans, 214. *See also* Mexican Americans; Puerto Rican Americans
Hispaniola, 43, 43*m,* 58
history and geography: America's Growth, 1760, 88–89; America's Growth, 1820, 288–89; America's Growth, 1850, 370–71; Atlantic Slave Trade, 62–63; Black Death, 28–29; Erie Canal, 306–07; Indian Removal Treaties, 336–37; Origins of the Constitution, 156–57
Holland, 130. *See also* Dutch; Netherlands
Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 217
Hooker, Joseph, 536–37
Hooker, Thomas, 82
Hope Leslie (Sedgwick), 309
Hopewell culture, 11
Hopi culture, 12, 13*m*
Horseshoe Bend, Battle of, 285*m,* 286
Horton, James, 390
House of Burgesses, 91, 100, 153
House of Representatives, U.S., 167, 183; Constitution and the, 189; impeachment and, 184; term of office, 190*f;* Ways and Means Committee, 183. *See also* Congress, U.S.
housing: factory, 391, 392; Native American, 12, 14, 14*p;* tenements, 442
Houston, Sam, 351, 353
Howard, Oliver O., 556
Howe, Elias, 405
Howe, Samuel Gridley, 451
Howe, William, 116, 128, 130
Hudson, Henry, 54, 56*m*
Hudson Bay, 54, 56*m*
Hudson River, 397
Hudson River School, 309–10, 310*p*
Huguenots, 53, 55, 86
humanism, 26
hunter-gatherers, 6–7
Hupa culture, 12, 13*m*
Hurricane Katrina, 583
Hutchinson, Anne, 82, 82*p,* 83

I

Ice Age, 6–7
Idaho, R24
Illinois, 535*f,* R24; coal mining in, 400; Mormons in, 349; Native Americans in, 11, 335; in Northwest Territory, 154*m,* 155
immigrants: Chinese, 368; cities and, 440, 441*p,* 442; factories and, 394; German, 368, 439; Irish, 438; from Mexico; nativists and, 440; Pilgrim, 78–79; population of, 438, 439; push-pull factors, 439; rights of, 222–23
immune, 58
impeachment, 184, 198, 562
impressment, 278–79
Inca culture, 8–9, 9*m,* 47, 48, 50
Incidents in the Life of a Slave Girl (Jacobs), 456
indentured servants, 74, 87
Independence Hall, 163*p,* 164
Indian Affairs, Bureau of, 332
Indian Ocean, 44
Indian Removal Act (1830), 332–34, 333*p,* 335
Indian Territory, 332, 347*m*
Indiana, 535*f,* R24; in Northwest Territory, 154*m,* 155
Indiana Territory, 281–82
Indians. *See* Native Americans
indictment, 218
indigo, 77
Industrial Revolution: beginning of, 384–85; in Great Britain, 384–85, 388; inventions during, 387; manufacturing in the, 386*p,* 387–89, 387*p,* 388; in New York, 404; textile industry, 385–86, 385*p*
inflation, 160–61, 330, 367
Ingersoll, Jared, 203
Institute for Colored Youth, 452
interchangeable parts, 386*p,* 387
interest groups, 224
interstate commerce, 160, 304
Intolerable Acts (1774), 102–103, 103*f*
Inuit culture, 12, 13*m*
inventions, 402–05, 403*p. See also* science and technology
Iowa, R24
Ireland: immigrants from, 303, 438; potato famine in, 438
iron ore, 401
ironclads, 511, 520
Iroquois in New York, 8, 14
Iroquois League, 13*m,* 95, 96*m,* 120
Irving, Washington, 308–09, 313*f*
Isabella, Queen of Spain, 42
Islam, 18–19; in Ghana, 17–18
Italy: in Renaissance, 26

J

Jackson, Andrew, 299, 319*p,* R19; biography, 325; election of 1824, 305; election of 1828, 310, 323–24; inauguration of, 324; Indian Removal Act and, 332, 334; nullification crisis and, 328–29; regional differences and, 326–27; Second Bank of the United States and, 329–30; states' rights doctrine and, 328–29; Tariff of Abominations and, 327; Texas and, 353; in War of 1812, 286

Jackson, Stonewall, 517, 519, 536
Jackson, William, 203
Jacksonian Democracy, 323
Jacobs, Harriet, 456
James II, King of England, 91
Jamestown, 72–73, 73*m,* 74
Jay, John, 170, 171, 172, 245
Jay's Treaty (1794), 245
Jefferson, Thomas, 119, 120*p,* 164, 271*f,* R19; architecture and, 311; Articles of Confederation and, 154; Democratic-Republican Party, 250; election of 1800, 266–67, 267*p;* Embargo Act (1807), 279–80; foreign policy of, 272–73; France and, 244; freedom of religion and, 217; Hamilton and, 239, 240–42, 241*p;* inauguration of, 268; Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, 253; manufacturing and, 389; policies of, 268–69; as secretary of state, 235, 235*p;* state constitutions and, 153; states' rights doctrine and, 328; Supreme Court and, 269–70
Jim Crow laws, 568
Joao III, King of Portugal, 59
Johnson, Andrew, R20; Black Codes and, 558–60; election of 1866, 561; impeachment of, 184, 562; Reconstruction and, 557
Johnson, William Samuel, 203
Johnston, Joseph E., 517
joint-stock companies, 27, 79
Jolliet, Louis, 55, 56m
Jones, John Paul, 133
judicial branch, 167; checks and balances, 184*f;* Constitution and the, 199–200; organization of, 185–86; separation of powers, 183. *See also* court systems; Supreme Court, U.S.
judicial review, 270
Judiciary Act (1789), 185, 236
Judiciary Act (1801), 269
jury duty, 223, 224*p*
jury trial, 219, 223

K

Kansas, 50, R24; Bleeding Kansas, 486–87, 486*p;* in the Civil War, 525, 531; slavery issue in, 484–85, 485*m*
Kansas-Nebraska Act (1854), 484–85, 484*m,* 485*m,* 488–89
Kaskaskia, 133
Kearny, Stephen, 358
Kemble, Frances, 303
Kennedy, John F., 214, R22
Kentucky: 272, 448, R24
Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, 253
Key, Francis Scott, 286, R27
Key to Uncle Tom's Cabin, A **(Stowe),** 481
King, B.B., 19*p*
King, Rufus, 203
King Philip, 95
King Philip's War, 95
Kitchen Cabinet, 324
kivas, 11
knights, 24
Know-Nothing Party, 440, 488
Knox, Henry, 116, 235*p*
Kongo, 59
kora, 19*p*
Kouyate, Soriba, 19*p*
Ku Klux Klan, 566, 566*p,* 567
Kwakiutl culture, 12, 13*m*

L

La Salle, Rene-Robert de, 55, 56*m,* 57
labor laws, 395
labor strikes, 394
Labrador, 298
Lady at Home, The (magazine), 463
Lafayette, Marquis de, 131
Lafitte, Jean, 286
Lake Erie, 303, 303*m;* Battle of, 285, 285*m*
Lake Texcoco, 8
land grants, 353
Land Ordinances (1785 and 1787), 154*m,* 155
Langdon, John, 203
Larcom, Lucy, 392, 394, 409
Las Casas, Bartolomé de, 51, 51p, 59
Last of the Mohicans, The (Cooper), 309, 312*f*
Latin language, 26
Latrobe, John, 398
laws, bills become, 192
Leaves of Grass (Whitman), 445
Lee, Richard Henry, 170
Lee, Robert E., 493, 507, 518, 519, 536–39, 542–43
"Legend of Sleepy Hollow, The" (Irving), 309, 313*f*
legislative branch, 167; checks and balances, 184f; Constitution and the, 189–95; organization of, 183; separation of powers, 183. *See also* Congress, U.S.; House of Representatives, U.S.; Senate, U.S.
Lenape group in New York, 15
Leonardo da Vinci, 26
Leopard (ship), 279
Lewis, Meriwether, 273–76
Lewis and Clark expedition, 273*m,* 274–76
Lexington, Battle of, 113*p,* 114
libel, 217
Liberator, The (newspaper), 435, 455
Liberia, 455
Liberty (ship), 100
limited government, 153
Lincoln, Abraham: 535*f,* R20; assassination of, 548*p,* 557; Civil War and, 529–33, 536–39; debates and, 491–92, 492*p;* Dred Scott decision and, 490, 491; election of 1860, 495, 495*m;* election of 1864, 531–33; first inaugural address of, 497, R37; on John Brown, 494; secession and, 496–97, 510; on slavery, 510; Stowe and, 481; Ten Percent Plan and, 553; Wade-Davis bill and, 554
Lincoln, Mary Todd, 512
Lincoln's Cooper Union Address, 495
Lincoln's First Inaugural Address, R37
Lincoln's funeral in New York City, 557
Lincoln's Second Inaugural Address, R39
Line of Demarcation, 44
Linking to Today: armored warfare, 47*p;* commerce clause and Native Americans, 193*f;* democracy, 323*f;* Louisiana Purchase, 277*f;* manufacturing, 388*f;* Mexican Americans, 362*f;* music from Africa, 19*p*
literature, 308–09; African American, 427, 456; American romanticists, 444–45; frontier, 312f–13f; transcendentalism, 443–44
Little Round Top, 538
Little Turtle, 244p, 246, 247
Little Women (Alcott), 447
Livingston, Robert R., 119, 120p, 273–74
Livingston, William, 203
Locke, John, 95, 153
London Company, 74
Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, 445, 446
longhouse, 14*p*
Longstreet, James, 538–39
loose construction, 242
lords, 24
Los Angeles, California, 358
Louis XIV, King of France, 57
Louis XVI, King of France, 131, 244
Louisiana, R24; Civil War in, 523–24, 531; cotton in, 416*m;* France and, 57, 96*m,* 273–74; and French and Indian War, 96; during Reconstruction, 563; secedes from the Union, 496; Spain and, 96*m,* 273–74; Ten Percent Plan and, 553
Louisiana Purchase, 272–77, 273*m,* 274*p,* 275*p,* 277*m*
Lovejoy, Elijah, 458
Lowell, Francis Cabot, 392, 418

Lowell, Massachusetts, 392
Lowell girls, 392–94, 392*p,* 393*p*
Lowell system, 392
Loyalists, 119–120
Luther, Martin, 53, 53*p*

M

machine tools, 386*p*
Madison, Dolley, 187, 286*p*
Madison, James, 162, 164, 164*p,* 170, 171, 172, 173, 235, 239, 244, R19; Bill of Rights and, 216; biography of, 187, 187*p*; closed markets and, 160; Democratic-Republican Party, 250; election of 1808, 283; election of 1812, 283; *Federalist Papers*, 172*f*; Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, 253; national bank and, 242; as secretary of state, 268; states' debts and, 239–40; states' rights doctrine and, 328; War of 1812, 283; Washington and, 249
Magellan, Ferdinand, 44
Magna Carta, 152, 157, R30
Maine, 128, R24; Missouri Compromise and, 304*m,* 305
maize, 7, 8
majority rule, 216
Mali, Kingdom of, 18–19, 18*m,* 21
Malintzin, 46
Manassas, Battle of, 516–17
Mandan culture, 13*m,* 14, 276
Manhattan Island, 57, 85
manifest destiny, 354–55
Mann, Horace, 450, 451, 451*p*
Mannahatta, 55
Mansa Musa, 18–19, 21, 21*p*
Manuel, King of Portugal, 40
manufacturing, in Industrial Revolution, 386*p,* 386–89, 387*p,* 388*f,* 388*p*
maps, 7*m,* 9*m,* 13*m,* 18*m,* 41*m,* 43*m,* 49*m,* 50*m,* 55*m,* 56*m,* 60*m,* 73*m,* 76*m,* 91*m,* 92*m,* 96*m,* 113*m,* 115*m,* 127*m,* 130*m,* 134*m,* 139*m,* 154*m,* 159*m,* 196*m,* 245*m,* 246*m,* 251*m,* 273*m,* 285*m,* 299*m,* 303*m,* 304*m,* 317*m,* 335*m,* 347*m,* 352*m,* 359*m,* 362*m,* 375*m,* 400*m,* 416*m,* 428*m,* 457*m,* 484*m,* 495*m,* 501*m,* 512*m,* 517*m,* 521*m,* 523*m,* 529*m,* 539*m,* 541*m,* 547*m,* 561*m,* 565*m*; interpreting maps: expansion, 372, 372*m*
Marbury, William, 269
Marbury v. Madison (1803), 269–70, R28
Marco Polo, 25, 39
Marie-Antoinette, Queen of France, 244
Marion, Francis, 136, 136*p*
Marquette, Jacques, 55, 56*m*
Marshall, John, 270, 270p, 334
Marshall, Thurgood, 186
Maryland, R24; Articles of Confederation and, 154; Civil War in, 512, 517, 519; colony of, 75; ratification of the Constitution, 203
Mason, Biddy, 367
Mason, George, 170, 171p
mass production, 386*p*–87*p,* 387, 405
Massachusetts, R24; Boston Massacre, 101, 101*f;* colonial, 80–81, 83; education in, 311, 450, 451; General Court, 81–82; immigrants in, 438; Pilgrims in, 79; ratification of the Constitution, 203; reform groups in, 450; Revolutionary War in, 113–114, 113*m,* 113*p,* 115; tax revolt in, 99, 101
Massachusetts Bay Colony, 80–81, 84
Massachusetts Bay Company, 80
Massasoit, 79
mathematics, 23
matrilineal society, 14
Maya culture, 8, 8*p*
Mayflower (ship), 79
Mayflower Compact, 79, 79*f,* 153, 156, R31
McClellan, George B., 517, 522, 532–33, 536
McCormick, Cyrus, 404
McCulloch, James, 330
McCulloch* v. *Maryland (1819), 304, 330, R28
McDowell, Irvin, 516
McGuffey, William Holmes, 450
McHenry, James, 203
McMillan, Harry, 424, 426
Meade, George, 537, 540
Mecca, 18
Medici family, 27
medicine, 514; in the Civil War, 533–34
Melville, Herman, 445
Memphis, Tennessee, 561
mercantilism, 27, 92–93
mercenaries, 128, 129
merchants, 83
Merrimack, 520
Mesoamerica, 8, 10, 13*m*
mestizos, 350
Metacomet, 95
Mexican Americans, 361; in California, 364; effects of Mexican-American War on, 362; population of, 362*f;* property rights of, 362
Mexican Cession, 361, 476, 478, 479
Mexican-American War, 358–63, 359*m,* 360*p,* 361*p,* 47; effects of, 362–63, 519
Mexico: conquistadors and, 46; Gadsden Purchase and, 361; independence of, 350; Native Americans in, 8–9, 9*m;* Spain and, 300; Texas and, 350–53; war in, 357–63, 359*m,* 360*p,* 361*p*
Mexico City, 46
Michelangelo, 26
Michigan, R24; immigrants in, 439; in Northwest Territory, 154*m,* 155
Middle Ages, 24–25
middle class, 440
Middle Colonies, 85–87, 85*p;* characteristics of, 86*f;* economy of, 87; government in, 91; in Revolutionary War, 127–130, 127*m,* 129*p;* women in, 87
Middle Passage, 59–60, 93*p,* 94
midnight judges, 269
"Midnight Ride of Paul Revere, The" (Longfellow), 446
Mifflin, Thomas, 203
migration, 6–7, 7*m*
military service, 223, 224*p*
militia, 95, 114, 115, 204, 218, 511, 514
mining: coal, 400–02, 400*m;* gold, 366–69, 366*p*
Minnesota, R24
Mint, U.S., 241
Minuit, Peter, 57
minutemen, 114
missions, 48, 356–57
Mississippi, R25; Civil War in, 523–25; secedes from the Union, 496
Mississippi River, 48, 55, 56*m,* 57, 397*p;* trade along the, 159, 159*m,* 513, 522–25
Mississippian culture, 11
Missouri, R25; becomes a state, 304; Civil War in, 512, 525; Oregon Trail, 347, 347*m;* as a slave state, 476
Missouri Compromise (1820), 304–05, 304*m,* 476; Dred Scott decision and, 490
Missouri River, 275
Moby-Dick (Melville), 445
Moctezuma II, 46–47
Mohawk culture, 13*m,* 14
Molasses Act (1733), 93
molasses, 94
Mongols, 25
***Monitor*,** 507, 521
Monks Mound, 11
Monroe, James, 294*p*, R19; Florida and, 299; Louisiana Purchase and, 273–74; Monroe Doctrine and, 300–01
Monroe Doctrine, 300–01, R35
Montagnais culture, 12, 13*m*
Montana, R25
Montesquieu, Baron de, 153
Montgomery, Richard, 128
Monticello, 263*p*
Montreal, 54, 56*m,* 128
Morgan, John T., 568
Mormon Trail, 347*m,* 349
Mormons, 348–49, 363
Morris, Gouverneur, 166, 166*p,* 203

Morrow, Edwin P., 211*p*
Morse, Samuel F. B., 402–03, 403*f,* 403*p*
Morse code, 403
mosque, 19
Mott, Lucretia, 464
Mound Builders, 11
Mount Holyoke College, 451
mountain men, 346
Muhammad, 17
Murray, Judith Sargent, 235
music, 308*p,* 310, 427; African, 19*p;* spirituals, 61, 427
Muslims, 17–18; Crusades and, 24–25

N

Napoléon, 273–74
Narváez, Pánfilo de, 48–49
Nassau, 133, 520
Nat Turner's Rebellion, 428–29, 428*m,* 428*p,* 429, 459
national bank, 241–42, 304
national debt, 238–40, 239*c,* 330
national government, 154, 167, 201*f;* supremacy of, 202
National Guard, 218
National Road, 303, 303*m*
nationalism, 302, 310
Native Americans: beliefs of, 15; in California, 364–65, 369; Christianity and, 50–51; in the Civil War, 525; colonists and, 95; Columbus and, 43; commerce clause and, 193*f;* Creek War, 285*m,* 286; culture groups, 7, 12–15, 13*m;* Declaration of Independence and, 121; disease and, 45, 58–59; education of, 333–34; France and, 57; Indian Removal Act and, 332–34, 333*p,* 335, 335*m;* labor of, 357; Lewis and Clark expedition, 276; in literature, 309; Mexican Cession and, 362; in Northwest Territory, 246–47, 246m; Pilgrims and, 79; Powhatan Confederacy, 73; property rights of, 362; Revolutionary War and, 120; Spain and, 49, 50–51; Treaty of Greenville and, 280; Vikings and, 39
nativists, 440
natural rights, 95
naturalized citizens, 222, 223
Navajo culture, 13*m,* 14, 362
navigation, 39–40
Navigation Acts, 92–93
Navy, U.S.: War of 1812, 284–85, 285*m*
Nebraska, R25; slavery issue in, 484–85
necessary and proper clause, 182, 194
Netherlands: colonies of, 85–87, 85*p*
neutrality, 278
Neutrality Proclamation, 244–45, 245*m*
Nevada, 356, 361, R25
New Amsterdam, 57, 85–86, 85*p*
New England: colonies in, 78–84, 81*m;* economy of, 83; education in, 84, 450; factories in, 404; government in, 91; textile mills in, 386; Vikings in, 38–39
New England Primer, 84
New-England Tale, A (Sedgwick), 309
New England Working Men's Association, 395
New France, 55, 56*m,* 96*m*
New Hampshire, R25; colonial, 83; government in, 91–92; labor laws in, 395; ratification of the Constitution, 172, 203
New Jersey, 57, R25; Civil War in, 512; colonial, 85–86; government in, 91–92; immigrants in, 438; ratification of the Constitution, 203; Revolutionary War in, 128–129, 129*p;* voting rights in, 153
New Jersey Plan, 165
New Mexico, R25; Compromise of 1850 and, 479; Gadsden Purchase and, 361; Mexican Cession and, 361; Mexican-American War and, 358; Mexico and, 356; Native Americans in, 11–12, 13*m;* Santa Fe Trail, 347*m,* 348; Spain and, 356
New Mexico Territory, 347*m*
New Netherlands, 57, 85–86
New Orleans, 57, 96, 159*m,* 245, 245*m,* 417, 561; Jefferson and, 272–73
New Orleans, Battle of, 286, 285*m,* 310, 523
New South, 570–71, 570*p*
New Spain, 47–51, 50*m,* 96*m,* 356, 357; slaves and, 60
New Sweden, 57
New York, 57; 1810 population, 272; Albany Congress, 164; Astor, John Jacob, in New York City, 347; Battle of Long Island, 128; charities, 450; Civil War in New York, 515, 533; *Clermont* in, 275, 397; colonial New York, 85–86; Cooper, Peter 398; draft riots, 532; Dutch and English in New York, 86; exploration of, 54, 56m; first presidential inauguration, 236; first state constitution, 188; *Gitlow* v. *New York,* 561; government in, 91–92; Hamilton, Andrew, in New York City, 245; Henry Hudson in, 54; in Revolutionary War, 100, 115, 128, 129–130, 130*m;* Industrial Revolution in, 404; Iroquois in, 8, 14; Lenape group in, 15; Lincoln's Cooper Union Address, 495; Lincoln's funeral in New York City, 557; Loyalists in, 128; Mannahatta, 55; Minuit, Peter, 57; NYPD, 449; ratification of the Constitution, 172; secession of New York City, 172; shipping prices, 303; slavery in New York City, 423; Sloat, John D., 358; Sojourner Truth and, 456; Stamp Act Congress in, 100; Swartwout, Samuel, 324; transportation in, 303; writers from, 309
New York African Free School, 452
New York City, 57, 86; Andrew Hamilton in, 245; as nation's capital, 237, 237p; Battle of Long Island, 128; charities in, 450; draft riots, 532; Dutch and English in, 86; ethnic groups in, 440m; first presidential inauguration, 236; John Jacob Astor in, 347; Lenape group in, 15; Lincoln's Cooper Union Address, 495; Lincoln's funeral in, 557; Loyalists in, 128; Mannahatta, 55; NYPD, 449; Peter Cooper in, 398; Peter Minuit in, 57; population density, 441m; secession of, 172; slavery in, 423; Swartwout, Samuel, 324
New York Stock Exchange, 237
Newfoundland, 38, 298
Newman, Robert, 114
Newspapers, 401; growth in publishing of, 455
Nez Percé, 276
Niña (caravel), 42
Nineteenth Amendment, 179, 211, 211*p*
Ninth Amendment, 205, 220–21
nobles, 24
nominating conventions, 323
Non-Intercourse Act (1809), 280
North: African Americans in the, 452; economy of, 326; election of 1860, 495, 495*m;* resources, 512; response to secession, 497; slavery and the, 476–77, 477*m*
North, Prime Minister Lord, 137
North America: culture areas of, 13*m;* early societies of, 10–15, 11*p,* 13*m,* 14*p;* migration to, 6–7; Northwest Passage, 54, 55*m*
North America: Political, R8*m*
North Carolina, 54, R25; Civil War in, 512; colony of, 76; ratification of the Constitution, 203; during Reconstruction, 563; Revolutionary War in, 135; state debt of, 239. *See also* Carolinas
North Dakota, R25
Northeast culture areas, 13*m,* 14
Northup, Solomon, 425
Northwest Ordinance (1787), 155
Northwest Passage, 54, 55*m,* 56*m*
Northwest Territory, 154*m,* 155; conflict in, 246–47, 246*m;* Treaty of Greenville and, 247
Norway, 38
nullification crisis, 328–29
NYPD, 449

O

Oates, William, 538
Obama, Barack, R29
Oberlin College, 452
"Objections to This Constitution of Government" (George Mason), R33
O'Connor, Sandra Day, 186
Ogden, Aaron, 397
Oglethorpe, James, 76
Ohio, R25; admitted to the Union, 272; Civil War in, 523; labor laws in, 395; Mormons in, 348–49; Native Americans in, 246; in Northwest Territory, 154*m,* 155; roads in, 303, 303*m*
Oklahoma, 48, 50, R25
Old Three Hundred, 351
Olive Branch Petition, 114
Olmec culture, 8
Oneida culture, 13*m,* 14, 120
Onís, Luis de, 299
online research, 412–13
Onondaga culture, 13*m,* 14
Oregon, 356, R25; annexation of, 355; gains statehood, 355; Oregon Trail, 347–48, 347*m,* 364
Oregon Country, 273*m,* 347, 355
Oregon Territory, 347*m,* 370*m*
Oregon Trail, 347–48, 347*m,* 364
Osceola, 335
O'Sullivan, John, 354
Otis, James, 99
Over Mountain Men, 133
Oviedo, Fernández de, 58

P

Pacific Northwest, 346–48
Pacific Ocean, 44, 276
Paine, Thomas, 110, 118, 128, 354
Paiute culture, 12, 13*m*
Palenque, 8*p*
Paleo-Indians, 6–7
Palestine, 25
Panic of 1837, 330, 394
Panic of 1873, 567
paper industry, 401
pardons, 185
Parker, John, 114
Paterson, William, 203
Patriots, 113, 114, 115, 120, 126, 130
Pawnee culture, 13*m,* 14
Pawtucket, Rhode Island, 386, 390
Peace Democrats. *See* Copperheads.
Pearson, Richard, 133
peninsulares, 50
Penn, William, 86, 86p
Pennsylvania, R25; Civil War in, 505*p,* 512, 538–40; coal mining in, 400; colonial, 86; economy of, 87; immigrants in, 438; labor laws in, 395; ratification of the Constitution, 203; Revolutionary War in, 128, 132, 132*p*
Perry, Benjamin F., 558
Perry, Oliver Hazard, 285
petition, freedom to, 205, 217
Philadelphia, 86, 130, 237; Constitu-tional Convention in, 162, 163–64, 163*p,* 164*p;* First Continental Congress in, 112; as nation's capital, 240; Second Continental Congress in, 114
Philip II, King of Spain, 53
Philippines, 44
Pickett's Charge, 538
Pierce, Franklin, 483–84, 488, R20
Pike, Zebulon, 273*m,* 276–77
Pikes Peak, 277
Pilgrims, 78–79; life of, 80; Native Americans and, 79; women, 80
Pinckney, Charles Cotesworth, 203, 266
Pinckney, Thomas, 245, 250
Pinckney's Treaty (1795), 245–46, 245*m*
Pinta (caravel), 42
Pioneers, The (Cooper), 309
pirates, 53, 278
Pitcher, Molly, 127
Pizarro, Francisco, 47, 49*m*
placer mining, 366–67
plague, 25, 28–29, 28*p*–29*p*
plantations, 50, 59, 74, 77, 327, 411*p,* 415, 420–21, 421*p,* 424, 549*p*
planters, 416, 417, 421
Plato, 22, 26
plea bargain, 219
Pledge of Allegiance, R26
***Plessy* v. *Ferguson* (1896),** 568*f,* 569
Plymouth Colony, 69*p,* 81*p*
Plymouth Rock, 79
Pocahontas, 73
Poe, Edgar Allan, 445
political action committees (PACs), 224
political participation, 224
political parties, 183, 250; changes in, 488–89; nominating conventions, 323; in 1800s, 322–23. *See also* Democratic Party; Democratic-Republican Party; Federalist Party; Free Soil Party; Know-Nothing Party; Republican Party; Whig Party
politics: explaining the process of, 258–59*f*
Polk, James K., 360, R20; Mexican-American War and, 358; new territory and, 355–56; slavery and, 476
poll taxes, 214, 214*p,* 568–69
polygamy, 349
Ponce de León, Juan, 48, 49*m,* 56*m*
Pontiac, 69p, 97, 97p
Poor Richard's Almanac (Franklin), 133
Pope, John, 518
popular sovereignty, 167, 476–77, 479, 491
population: of African Americans, 60*m,* 76*c;* of California, 369*g;* House of Representatives and, 183; immigrant, 438, 439; Mexican American, 362*f;* rural, 236, 236*c;* of the South, 430; urban, 236–37, 236*c*
Portugal: exploration by, 39–41, 41*m;* slave trade and, 59–61
Pory, John, 74*f*
potlatches, 12
Pottawatomie Massacre, 486–87
Powhatan Confederacy, 73
Preamble to the Constitution, 157, 188
precedent, 235
Prescott, Samuel, 114
President, U.S., 167, 184; as commander in chief, 185; Constitution and the, 196–98; disability of, 214–15; executive orders, 185; pardons and the, 185, 557; term of office, 190*f;* veto power of, 184–85
president *pro tempore,* 183
presidios, 48, 356
press, freedom of the, 205, 217
Preston, Thomas, 101
printing press, 27, 52*p,* 53
prison reform, 450
privateers, 244, 252
Privy Council, 90
Proclamation of 1763, 97, 121
Prohibition, 210
propaganda, 101, 224
property rights: Mexican Cession and, 362; women's rights and, 466
proprietary colony, 75, 90
prospect, 366
Prosser, Gabriel, 428
Protestant Reformation, 53, 53*p*
Protestants, 53, 53*p,* 75, 440
Providence, Rhode Island, 82
Publius, 171
Pueblo culture, 12, 13*m*
pueblos, 11, 48
Puerto Rican Americans, 222
Puerto Rico, 48, 49m, 222
Puritans, 78–79, 80–82
pyramids, 8

Q

Quakers, 86, 94, 452, 454
Quartering Act, 102

Quebec Act, 102
Quebec, Canada, 55, 56*m,* 128; in French and Indian War, 96
Quincy, Josiah, 101, 280, 450
Qur'an, 17, 18

R

Radical Republicans, 559–60
railroads, 369, 381*p,* 398–401, 398–399*p,* 400*m,* 512; effect of, 401
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 54
Randolph, Edmund, 164–65, 235*p*
ratification, 154, 172, 203
Raven, The (Poe), 445
Read, George, 203
Reading Skills, analyzing historical information, 550; bias and historical events, 296; causes and effects in history, 382; chronological order, 150; drawing conclusions about the past, 320; fact, opinions, and history, 474; inferences about history, 232; information and propaganda, 436; main ideas in social studies, 110; online research, 412; outlining and history, 36; public documents in history, 264; specialized vocabulary of social studies, 4; summarizing historical text, 180; supporting facts and details, 508; vocabulary clues, 70; vocabulary in context, 344
reaper, 404
reason and philosophy, 22
Reconstruction: 550-75; Black Codes and, 558–60; different views of, 552–54; Ku Klux Klan and, 566, 566*p;* military districts, 561*m;* in the New South, 570–71, 570*p;* Panic of 1873 and, 567; Redeemers and, 568
Reconstruction Acts, 561–62
Reconstruction amendments, 209, 562*p*
Redcoats, 114
Redeemers, 568
Reed, Esther DeBerdt, 138
reform movements: abolition of slavery, 454–459; education, 450–53; prison reform, 450; temperance movement, 449–50; women's rights, 461–66
religion: African Americans and, 449, 555; in England, 75; freedom of, 153, 204, 217; government and, 82*f;* Great Awakening, 94–95, 94*p;* Islam, 17–18; in Middle Colonies, 85–86; Mormons, 349; music and, 310; Native American, 15; in New England colonies, 78–79, 81–82; in Pennsylvania, 86; Protestant Reformation, 53; Puritan, 82; Second Great Awakening, 448–49; in slave culture, 61, 427; in the South, 422; Toleration Act and, 75; in West Africa, 18–19. *See also individual religions*
Renaissance, 26–27, 26*p*
republic, 23
Republic of Texas, 351, 352*m,* 353, 356
Republic, The (Plato), 22
Republican Motherhood, 235
Republican Party: creation of, 488; election of 1860, 495, 495*m;* election of 1868, 562–63; election of 1876, 567; emancipation and, 529; Radical Republicans, 559–60. *See also* Democratic-Republican Party
research, online, 412–13
reserved powers, 182
Revels, Hiram, 549*p,* 565, 565*p*
Revere, Paul, 101, 113–14, 113*m,* 172
revivals, 94–95, 94*p,* 310, 422
Revolutionary War: African Americans in, 126–27; battles of, 128–30, 133–34; early battles of, 113*p,* 114, 115–16, 115*m;* economics of, 238–39; Europe and, 130–31; French Revolution and, 244; Hessians in, 128, 129; in Middle Colonies, 127–30, 127*m,* 129*p;* Native Americans and, 120; in New York, 100, 115, 128, 129–130, 130m; sea battles, 133; in the South, 135–37, 136*p,* 137*m;* Treaty of Paris and, 139, 139*m;* war debts, 160–61; in the West, 133–34, 134*m;* women in, 127, 138
Reynolds, Mary, 424
Rhode Island, R25; colonial, 82–83; Constitutional Convention, 164; government in, 91–92; ratification of the Constitution, 172
Rhode Island system, 391
rice, 77
Richmond, Virginia, 419, 513, 516–18, 536, 553*p,* 540
Rio Grande, 358
"Rip Van Winkle" (Irving), 309
roads, 48, 303, 303*m,* 327, 417, 512
Roanoke Island, 54, 56*m*
Rochambeau, Comte de, 137
Rocky Mountains, 298, 347*m*
Rolfe, John, 73
Roman Catholic Church, 24, 75, 440; Native Americans and, 51; in New Spain, 48; Protestant Reformation and, 53
Rome, 23–24, 24*p,* 311
Roosevelt, Franklin D., 184, 213, R22
royal colony, 73, 76, 90
Rush-Bagot Agreement, 298
Russia: empire of, 96*m;* Oregon Country and, 355
Rutledge, John, 166, 166*p,* 203

S

Sacagawea, 276
Sack of Lawrence, 486
Sacramento River, 365
Saint Clair, Arthur, 246
Saint Lawrence River, 54, 55, 56*m*
Saint Louis, 57
Salem, Massachusetts, 83
salt, 17, 17p, 20
Salt Lake City, 347*m,* 349
Samoset, 79
Sampson, Deborah, 127
San Diego, California, 358, 359*m*
San Francisco, California, 358, 359*m,* 366, 369*g,* 368*p*
San Jacinto, Battle of, 352, 352*m*
San Salvador, 43, 43*m*
Sanitary Commission, 514
Santa Anna, Antonio López de, 351–52, 360
Santa Fe, New Mexico, 347*m,* 348, 356
Santa Fe Trail, 347*m,* 348
Santa Maria **(ship),** 42
Saratoga, Battle of, 129–130, 130*m*
satire, 309
Savannah, Georgia, 76, 417
scalawags, 564–65
Scandinavia, 38–39
Scarlet Letter, The (Hawthorne), 435*p,* 444
Scientific Revolution, 95
Scott, Dred, 489–90, 490*f*
Scott, Winfield, 359*m,* 360, 361, 484, 513
Scott* v. *Sandford (1857), R28–29. *See also Dred Scott* decision
sea dogs, 53
search and seizure, 218
search warrant, 218
secession, 496–97
secession of New York City, 172
Second Amendment, 204, 218
Second Seminole War, 335, 335*m*
sectionalism, 304, 477
segregation, 568, 569
Selective Service, 223
self-government, 153; Puritan, 81–82
Seminary Ridge, 538
Seminole culture, 13*m,* 14, 299, 335
Senate, U.S., 167; Constitution and the, 190; Louisiana Purchase and, 274; president of the, 183; Seventeenth Amendment and, 210; term of office, 190f. *See also* Congress, U.S.; legislative branch

Seneca culture, 13*m,* 14
Seneca Falls Convention, 435*p,* 464, 464*p*
Seneca Falls Declaration of Sentiments, R35
Sentiments of an American Woman, 138
separate but equal, 569
Separatists, 78
Sequoya, 333
Serapis (warship), 133
Seven Cities of Gold, 49–50
Seven Days' Battles, 517–18, 545
Seven Years' War, 96
Seventeenth Amendment, 210
Seventh Amendment, 204, 205, 218, 219
Seward, William, 478, 485, 495
sewing machine, 404*p,* 405
sharecropping, 569–70
Sharpsburg, Battle of; *see* Antietam
Shays, Daniel, 111, 160–61*p,* 161–62
Shays's Rebellion, 111, 160–61*p,* 161–62
Sherman, Roger, 89, 119, 120*p,* 164*p,* 203
Sherman, William Tecumseh, 541-542, 541*m,* 555
Shiloh, Battle of, 523, 545
shipbuilding, 39*p,* 40, 83
Shoshone culture, 12, 13*m,* 276
Sierra Nevada, 358, 364, 365
Signal Corps, 533*f*
Silk Road, 25
Silvester, Naomi, 80
Singer, Isaac, 405
Sirius (steamship), 381*p*
Sixteenth Amendment, 210
Sixth Amendment, 204, 205, 218, 219, 223
skills, analysis: analyzing diagrams, 279; analyzing information, 40, 48, 185, 193, 201, 205, 209, 211, 214, 269, 311, 489, 568; analyzing points of view, 51, 119, 166, 241, 282, 329, 334, 560; analyzing primary sources, 44, 59, 74, 79, 101, 119, 132, 138, 166, 172, 248, 268, 276, 281, 300, 324, 329, 330, 391, 394, 429, 451, 458, 464, 478, 479, 480, 491, 494, 520, 524, 531, 559; analyzing visuals, 39, 81, 103, 137, 225, 235, 246, 356, 385, 393, 421, 428, 439, 441, 512, 513, 514, 519; drawing conclusions, 419; interpreting charts, 76, 416, 542; interpreting political cartoons, 252, 281, 330, 520, 544, 559; reading time lines, 25, 207, 245, 275, 281, 405, 463; geography: interpreting maps, 7*m,* 9*m,* 13*m,* 18*m,* 29*m,* 41*m,* 43*m,* 49*m,* 50*m,* 55*m,* 56*m,* 60*m,* 63*m,* 73*m,* 89*m,* 91*m,* 92*m,* 96*m,* 115*m,* 127*m,* 134*m,* 139*m,* 154*m,* 159*m,* 196*m,* 251*m,* 273*m,* 285*m,* 289*m,* 299*m,* 303*m,* 304*m,* 307*m,* 335*m,* 337*m,* 347*m,* 359*m,* 362*m,* 371*m,* 400*m,* 457*m,* 477*m,* 485*m,* 495*m,* 511*m,* 517*m,* 521*m,* 523*m,* 527*m,* 529*m,* 539*m,* 541*m,* 561*m,* 565*m*; speaking: giving an oral report, 108; taking notes: 6, 10, 16, 22, 38, 42, 46, 52, 58, 72, 78, 85, 90, 98, 112, 118, 126, 135, 152, 158, 163, 170, 182, 216, 222, 234, 238, 243, 250, 266, 272, 278, 284, 298, 302, 308, 322, 326, 332, 346, 350, 354, 364, 384, 390, 396, 402, 414, 420, 424, 438, 443, 448, 454, 461, 476, 483, 488, 493, 510, 516, 522, 528, 536, 552, 558, 564; writing: an autobiographical sketch, 1; a biographical narrative, 144; a biographical sketch, 410; cause and effect in history, 376; a character sketch, 294; comparing people and events, 502; explaining a political process, 258; an infomercial, 68; an interview, 318; a job history, 548; a letter, 34; a letter of recommendation, 262; a newspaper advertisement, 380; a newspaper article, 506; a newspaper editorial, 148; a Nobel nomination, 230; an outline for a documentary film, 342; a pamphlet, 1; a persuasive letter, 434; a social studies report, 576; a travelogue, 2. *See also* history and geography; Linking to Today; Reading Skills; Social Studies Skills
slander, 217
Slater, John, 391
Slater, Samuel, 386, 390, 391
Slatersville, 391
slave auctions, 425, 426
slave codes, 77, 426, 429
slave narratives, 456, 481
slave revolts, 428–29, 428*m,* 428*p,* 493–94
slave states, 304–05, 304*m,* 457*m,* 476–77, 477*m,* 512*m*
slave trade, 41, 59–61, 166, 417, 478; West Africa and, 20
slavery, 327, 411*p,* 424–429; abolition of, 454–59, 457*m,* 458*p;* Africa and, 93; agriculture and, 414, 417; buying freedom, 425; compensation for, 553; culture and, 61, 426–27; daily life under, 425–27, 426*p,* 427*p;* Declaration of Independence and, 121; domestic, 425, 425*p;* Dred Scott decision and, 489–90, 489*f,* 491; education and, 426; Emancipation Proclamation and, 530; families and, 426–27; Fugitive Slave Act and, 479–80; gang-labor system, 424; Kansas-Nebraska Act, 484–85, 484*m,* 485*m;* Lincoln and, 510, 535*f;* manifest destiny and, 355; in Middle Colonies, 87; Middle Passage, 93*p,* 94; in Northwest Territory, 154*m,* 155; regional differences about, 476–77, 477*m;* religion and, 61, 427; skilled jobs and, 425; in southern colonies, 76, 77; in Texas, 351; Thirteenth Amendment and, 208, 554–55; Three-Fifths Compromise, 166; Underground Railroad and, 456–58, 457*m;* in Virginia, 74
slavery in New York City, 423
slaves: culture of, 61, 426–28
Slidell, John, 357
Sloat, John D., 358
smelting process, 401
Smith, John, 73
Smith, Joseph, 349
Smith, Margaret Bayard, 324*f*
Smith, Margaret Chase, 217
smuggling, 93, 98, 100, 102
Snake River, 364
Social Studies Skills, accepting social responsibility, 468; assessing primary and secondary sources, 498; chance, oversight, and error in history, 572; determine different points of view, 174; determining the context of statements, 226; framing historical questions, 64; identifying central issues, 314; interpreting diagrams, 30; interpreting graphs, 430; interpreting maps: expansion, 372; interpreting political cartoons, 544; interpreting time lines, 104; making group decisions, 254; personal conviction and bias, 406; solving problems, 338; understanding historical interpretation, 140; working in groups to solve issues, 290
Society of Friends, 86. *See also* Quakers
Socrates, 22
Songhai Empire, 18*m,* 19–20
Soninke culture, 16
Sons of Liberty, 100, 102, 114, 247
Soto, Hernando de, 48, 49*m,* 55, 56*m*
South: African Americans in, 422–23, 422*p;* colonies in the, 72–77, 73*m,* 75*p,* 76*m,* 91; cotton in, 414–17, 416*m,* 418*p;* economy of, 77, 326–27, 418*p,* 513, 553; education in the, 453; election of 1860, 495, 495*m;* factories in, 418–19; farming in, 326–27, 418, 420, 569–70, 569*g;* Freedmen's Bureau in, 556, 556*p;* Ku Klux Klan and, 566, 566*p;* New South, 570–71, 570*p;* nullification crisis and, 328–29; religion in, 422; resources, 512; Revolutionary War in, 135–37, 136*p,* 137*m;* rivers in, 513; slavery

in, 76, 77, 166, 476–77, 477*m;* society in, 420–23; state government in the, 557, 564–65, 565*p;* urban life in the, 422
South America, 44; Monroe Doctrine and, 300–01; Native Americans in, 8–9, 8*p,* 9*m;* Spain and, 47–48, 300
South America: Political, R9*m*
South Carolina, R25; agriculture in, 77; Black Codes in, 559; in Civil War, 531; colony of, 76; economy of, 328; freed people in, 555; nullification crisis and, 328–29; plantations, 411*p;* ratification of the Constitution, 203; during Reconstruction, 563; Revolutionary War in, 135, 136, 136*p;* secedes from the Union, 473*p,* 496. *See also* Carolinas
South Dakota, R25
Southeast culture areas, 13*m,* 14
Southwest, 356–57; exploration of, 48–50, 49*m*
Southwest culture area, 12, 13*m*
Spaight, Richard Dobbs, 203
Spain: Adams-Onís Treaty, 299; American Revolution and, 130–31; California and, 356–57; Central America and, 46–47, 300; empire of, 96*m*; England and, 53; exploration by, 42–44; Florida and, 245, 245*m,* 299, 299*m;* Louisiana and, 273; Mexico and, 300; Native Americans and, 49, 50–51; New Mexico and, 356; Pinckney's Treaty, 245–46, 245*m;* slave trade and, 59–61; South America and, 47–48, 300; trade with, 159, 159*m;* viceroyalties of, 50–51, 50*m*
Spanish Armada, 53, 53*p*
Spanish Florida, 76
Spanish language, 362
Speaker of the House, 183
speculators, 239
speech, freedom of, 204, 217
spinning machine, 385, 385*p*
spirituals, 61, 310, 427
spoils system, 324
Spy, The (Cooper), 309
Squanto, 79
Stamp Act (1765), 100, 102
Stamp Act Congress, 100
Stamp Act Congress in New York, 100
Stanton, Edwin, 529, 560
Stanton, Elizabeth Cady, 464, 466, 467, 467*p*
staple crops, 87
"Star-Spangled Banner, The" (Key), 286, R27
state constitutions, 153
state courts, 236
state government, 167, 201*f;* concurrent powers and, 182; Constitution and, 200–01; delegated powers of, 182; nullification crisis and, 328–29; powers denied, 195; Redeemers and, 568; reserved powers of, 182; in the South, 557, 564–65, 565*p;* Tenth Amendment and, 221; Thirteenth Amendment and, 557
states' rights doctrine, 328–29
steam power, 404
steamboat, 397, 397*p;* cotton trade and, 417, 418
steel industry, 401
Stephens, Alexander, 421
Stephens, Ann Sophia, 444
Stevens, Thaddeus, 560, 560*p,* 562
Stockton, Robert, 358
Stone, Lucy, 465–66
Stowe, Harriet Beecher, 473*p,* 481, 482*f*
Strauss, Levi, 368
strict construction, 242
strikes, 394
Strong, George Templeton, 399
Stuyvesant, Peter, 57, 85*p,* 86
Subarctic culture area, 12, 13*m*
suffrage, 153, 211, 211*p*. *See also* voting rights
Sugar Act (1764), 98, 102
sugarcane, 418
Sumner, Charles, 487, 560
Sundiata, 18
Supreme Court, U.S., 168; decisions, 185*f,* 186, 269*f,* 304, 329–30, 334, 397, 489*f,* 490, 491, 568*f;* Jefferson and, 269–70, 270*p;* judicial review, 270; term of office, 190*f*. *See also* judicial branch; *individual cases*
Sutter, John, 365
Sutter's Fort, 365
Swamp Fox, 136, 136p
Sutter, John, 365
Swartwout, Samuel, 324
Sweden, 38
symbolic speech, 217

T

Taino culture, 43
Talleyrand-Périgord, Charles-Maurice de, 252, 274
Taney, Roger B., 490
Tariff of Abominations, 327
tariffs: British, 159; Confederation Congress and, 160; Hamilton and, 247; protective, 241; regional differences and, 326–27; transportation and, 302. *See also* taxes
Tarleton, Banastre, 135
taxation without representation, 100
taxes: Boston Tea Party and, 102; House Ways and Means Committee, 183. *See also* tariffs
Taylor, Zachary, 477, 484, R20; Mexican-American War and, 357–58, 360, 360p
Tea Act (1773), 102
tea tax, 102
technology. *See* inventions; science and technology
Tecumseh, 280–82
teepees, 14
telegraph, 402–03, 403*p*
temperance movement, 449–50, 464
Ten Percent Plan, 553
tenements, 442
Tennessee, R25; admitted to the Union, 272; Civil War in, 512, 522; during Reconstruction, 563; Revolutionary War in, 133; Second Great Awakening in, 448
Tenochtitlán, 8, 46–47
Tenth Amendment, 205, 220, 221
terms of office, 190*f,* 212
Texas, 49, R25; Alamo, 351–52, 352*m,* 353*p;* annexation of, 355, 356, 358; as a colony, 350–51; Compromise of 1850 and, 478, 479; independence of, 351; Mexican Cession and, 361; Mexican-American War and, 357, 359*m;* Mexico and, 350–53, 351*p,* 352*m,* 356, 357; Native Americans in, 13*m,* 14; secedes from the Union, 496; slavery in, 351, 353
Texas Rangers, 353
Texas Revolution, 351–53, 352*m*
textile industry, 385–86, 385*p,* 392-94, 393*p,* 570-71
Thacher, James, 130
Thames River, Battle of the, 285, 285*m*
Thanksgiving, 79
Third Amendment, 204, 218
Thirteenth Amendment, 208–209, 554–55, 557, 562*f*
Thomson, Charles, 120*p*
Thoreau, Henry David, 443
Three-Fifths Compromise, 166
Tilden, Samuel J., 567
Timbuktu, 18, 19, 20
Tippecanoe, Battle of, 281–82
tobacco, 45, 59, 73, 77, 327, 418
Tocqueville, Alexis de, 224, 405
Toleration Act (1649), 75
Tom Thumb (locomotive), 381*p,* 398
Tompkins, Sally Louisa, 534
Tories, 119–20

totems, 12
town meeting, 91, 91*f,* 152*f,* 153
Townshend Acts (1767), 100, 102, 103
Trade: barriers to, 159*m;* with Britain, 159, 159*m,* 160; with China, 355; closed markets, 160; cotton, 417, 419*p;* economics and, 27; in Middle Ages, 25; in Middle Colonies, 87; overland, 14*m;* with Spain, 159, 159*m. See also* free trade; triangular trade
trade laws, 92–93
trade unions, 394–95
Trail of Tears, 333*p,* 334
transcendentalism, 443–44
Transcontinental Railroad, 369
transportation, 302; canals, 303–04, 303*m;* railroad, 381*p,* 398–401; revolution in, 396; roads, 48, 303–04, 303*m,* 327, 417; ships, 73m; steamboat, 397, 397*p;* tariffs and, 302
Travis, William, 352
Treaty of Dancing Rabbit Creek, 333
Treaty of Fort Jackson (1814), 286
Treaty of Ghent (1814), 287, 298
Treaty of Greenville (1795), 247, 280
Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (1848), 361, 362
Treaty of Paris (1763), 96, 111
Treaty of Paris (1783), 111, 139, 139*m,* 158
Treaty of Tordesillas (1494), 43*m,* 44
Tredegar Iron Works, 411*p,* 419
Trenton, Battle of, 129
trials, 219
triangular trade, 92*m,* 93–94, 93*p*
tricksters, 427
Truth, Sojourner, 456, 459*p*
Tubman, Harriet, 458, 456*p*
Ture, Muhammad, 19
Turner, Nat, 428–29, 428*m,* 428*p*
Twelfth Amendment, 206–07
Twentieth Amendment, 211–12
Twenty-fifth Amendment, 214–15
Twenty-first Amendment, 212
Twenty-fourth Amendment, 214
Twenty-second Amendment, 184, 213
Twenty-seventh Amendment, 215
Twenty-sixth Amendment, 179, 215
Twenty-third Amendment, 213
Two Years Before the Mast (Dana), 357
Tyler, John, 355, R20
tyranny, 118

U

Uncle Tom's Cabin (Stowe), 481, 482*f*
Underground Railroad, 456–58, 457*m*
unicameral legislature, 165
Union Army, 529–31, 532*p; see also* Army of the Potomac
United States of America: Physical, R4–5*m*
United States of America: Political, R2–3*m*
Utah, R25; Compromise of 1850 and, 479; Mexican Cession and, 361; Mormons in, 349; Native Americans in, 11–12
Utah Territory, 347*m,* 349
Ute culture, 12, 13*m*
utopian communities, 444

V

Vail, Alfred Lewis, 403
Vallandingham, Clement L., 532
Vallejo, Mariano Guadalupe, 357, 357*p,* 359*m*
Valley Forge, 132, 132*p*
Van Buren, Martin, 319*p,* 324, 328, 477, R19; election of 1836, 330, 331; labor and, 395
vaqueros, 356*p,* 357
vassal, 24
Veracruz, Mexico, 359*m,* 360
Vermont, R25
Verrazano, Giovanni da, 54, 55*m*
Vesey, Denmark, 428. *See also* Denmark Vesey Document
Vespucci, Amerigo, 44
veto, 184
Vice President, 184; as president of the Senate, 183; term of office, 190*f*
Vicksburg, Siege of, 522–25, 526–27, 545
Vikings, 38–39
Vinland, 39
Virginia, R25; Articles of Confederation and, 162; Civil War in, 507, 512, 516–17, 520–21, 534; education in, 84; government in, 91; House of Burgesses, 100, 153; Jamestown, 72–73, 73*m,* 74; ratification of the Constitution, 172, 203; Revolutionary War in, 131, 135, 136–37, 137*m;* slave revolts in, 493–94; slavery in, 74–75, 426; state debt of, 239; tax revolt in, 100; western frontier and, 97
Virginia, 507, 520
Virginia Company, 72–75, 73*m,* 91
Virginia Declaration of Rights, 173
Virginia Plan, 164–65
Virginia Statute for Religious Freedom, 153, 156, 217, R32
volunteer groups, 224–25, 225*p*
Von Steuben, Baron Friedrich, 131, 132
voting: age, 215; elections and, 224
voting rights, 153; of African Americans, 209, 423, 561, 561*m,* 562*p,* 563; poll taxes and, 568–69; in 1800s, 322–23; in Washington, D.C., 213; of women, 211, 211*p,* 563
Voting Rights Act (1970), 215

W

Wabash River, 282
Wade, Benjamin, 553, 562
Wade-Davis bill, 553–54
wagon trains, 348, 348*p*
Walker, David, 455
Wall Street, 237
Waltham, Massachusetts, 392
Wampanoag culture, 95
war debts, 160–61
War Hawks, 282–83
War of 1812, 283; battles of, 284–86, 285*m,* 286*p;* causes and effects of, 287*f;* manufacturing and the, 389; Rush-Bagot Agreement and, 298
War of Independence. *See* Revolutionary War
Washington, R25
Washington, D.C.: Civil War in, 512, 516; design of, 240; as nation's capital, 240, 240*p,* 268; voting rights in, 213; in War of 1812, 285*m,* 286, 286*p. See also* District of Columbia
Washington, George, R19; biography, 117, 117*p;* cabinet of, 235*p;* at Constitutional Convention, 164, 164*p;* court system and, 235–36; farewell address of, 248*f,* 249, R33; as Federalist, 170; in French and Indian War, 96; inauguration of, 234–235; Jay's Treaty, 245; national bank and, 242; Neutrality Proclamation, 244–45; Northwest Territory and, 246–47, 246*m;* Pinckney's Treaty, 245–46, 245*m;* as president, 235–36, 235*p;* in Revolutionary War, 114, 116, 126, 128–29, 129*p,* 132, 139; Whiskey Rebellion and, 247

Washington, Martha, 235
Washington's Farewell Address, R33
water frame, 385, 385*p*
water screw, 23
water rights, 363
Wayne, Anthony, 246
Webster, Daniel, 329, 329*p,* 399, 478*f,* 479
Weld, Charles Richard, 399
Weld, Theodore, 454, 462
West: conflicts in the, 280–82; economy of, 327; frontier, 97; fur trade in the, 346; Lewis and Clark expedition, 273*m,* 274–76; movement to the, 346–49, 347*m,* 348*p,* 354–55; Oregon Country and, 347, 347*m;* Oregon Trail, 347–48, 347*m;* Pike's expedition, 276–77; Revolutionary War in, 133–34, 134*m;* water rights, 363
West Africa, 16–21, 17p, 18*m,* 19*p,* 21*p*
West culture area, 12, 13*m*
West Indies, 159*m*
West Virginia, R25; Civil War in, 512, 517; coal mining in, 400; roads in, 303, 303*m*
whaling, 83
Whig Party, 330, 339, 488; election of 1852, 484
Whiskey Rebellion, 247
White, John, 54
White House, 268, 324
Whitefield, George, 94*p,* 95
Whitman, Walt, 445
Whitney, Eli, 387, 415–16, 415*p*
Wilderness Campaign, 540
William and Mary College, 84
Williams, Joseph E., 531*f*
Williams, Roger, 82–83
Williamson, Hugh, 203
Wilmot Proviso, 476–77
Wilson, James, 164*p,* 203
Winthrop, John, 80, 81
Wisconsin, R25; in Northwest Territory, 154*m,* 155
witchcraft trials, 83
women: in Civil War, 514, 532*p,* 534; Daughters of Liberty, 62; Declaration of Independence and, 120; education and, 84, 451, 451*p,* 462; first ladies, 235; in Gold Rush, 366, 367, 367*p;* Great Awakening and, 95; labor reform and, 395; in Middle Colonies, 87; in the military, 223; mill workers, 571; Mormon, 348; in New Spain, 47; Pilgrim, 80; on plantations, 421; Quaker, 86; reform groups and, 450; in Revolutionary War, 127, 138; slaves, 424, 425*p;* on the Supreme Court, 186; in textile industry, 381, 392–94, 393*p;* voting rights of, 153, 211, 211*p,* 563; on wagon trains, 348, 348*p*
women's rights, 461–62; leaders, 465–66; property rights and, 466; Seneca Falls Convention, 464–65, 464*p;* voting rights, 24, 153, 211, 211*p,* 322, 563
Woodward, Charlotte, 464
***Worcester* v. *Georgia* (1832),** 334
World: Political, R6–7*m*
writers from New York, 309
writs of assistance, 100
Wyoming, 361, R25

X

XYZ Affair, 251–52, 252*f*

Y

yeomen, 422
Yorktown, Battle of, 111, 136–37, 137*m*
Young, Brigham, 349, 363

Z

Zavala, Lorenzo de, 351
Zenger, John Peter, 92
Zuni culture, 12, 13*m*

Credits and Acknowledgments

For permission to reproduce copyrighted material, grateful acknowledgment is made to the following sources:

Norwegian-American Historical Association: From quote by Gro Svendsen from *Frontier Mother: The Letters of Gro Svendsen,* translated and edited by Pauline Farseth and Theodore C. Blegen. Copyright © 1950 Norwegian-American Historical Association.

Sources Cited:

Quote by an Aztec messenger from *The Broken Spears: The Aztec Account of the Conquest of Mexico*, Expanded and Updated Edition, edited by Miguel León-Portilla. Published by Beacon Press, Boston, 1992.

From *Yesterday: A Memoir of a Russian Jewish Family* by Miriam Shomer Zunser, edited by Emily Wortis Leider. Published by HarperCollins Publishers, New York, 1978.

Quote by a Hungarian immigrant from *This Was America* by Oscar Handlin. Published by Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Mass., 1949.

Illustration and Photo Credits

Front Cover: Rusty Kennedy.

vi Mary Evans Picture Library; viii (br), American Antiquarian Society; ix (tr), National Archives/PRC Archive, (tr), National Archives (NARA); x © Bettmann/CORBIS; xi (cr), Collection of Matthew Isenburg, (b), Courtesy of the California History Room, California State Library, Sacramento, California; xvi (l), American Museum of Textile History, (c), Christie's Images/ Bridgeman Art Library, (r), The Fine Arts Museum of San Francisco, Gift of Eleanor Martin, 37566; xvii David Young-Wolff/ PhotoEdit; xviii (t), Library of Congress/ PRC Archive; xix Courtesy of Oberlin Archives; xxii © SuperStock; H2 © Bettmann/CORBIS; H4 (tl), The Granger Collection, New York; H6 © Bettmann/CORBIS; H7 (t), The Granger Collection, New York; H8 (t), Library of Congress; H9 (c), The Granger Collection, New York

Unit One. Pages 00-01 © Burstein Collection/ CORBIS; **Chapter 1:** Pages 02-03 © Annie Griffiths/CORBIS; 02 (br), The Art Archive/ National Anthropological Museum Mexico/Dagli Orti; 03 (bc), ©Yoshio Tomii/ SuperStock, (br), ©Rabatti - Domingie/akg-images; 07 (t), Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC. Photograph by Chip Clark # 90-14563, (c), PRC Archive, (b), Getty Images; 11, © David Muench/CORBIS; 13 (tr), From the Collection of Gilcrease Museum, Tulsa, (bl), © 2000 The Art Institute of Chicago (detail), (tl), Ohio Historical Society; 14 (tl), Marilyn Wynn/Nativestock Pictures, (tr), The Granger Collection, New York; 17 (tl), Carol Beckwith & Angela Fisher/HAGA/The Image Works, Inc., (tl), © John Elk III Photography; 19 (bc), Reuters/Corbis, (br), AFP/Getty Images; 21 (br), The Granger Collection, New York; 23 (b), Ben Mangor/SuperStock; 24 (bc), © Archivo Iconografico, S.A./CORBIS, (bl), ©Christopher Groenhout/Lonely Planet Images; 25 (bl), © Bettmann/CORBIS, (br), ©G K & Vikki Hart/PhotoDisc, (bc), The Granger Collection, New York. **Chapter 2:** Pages 34-35 (all), © Rebecca Marvil/Index Stock Imagery, Inc.; 34 (b), National Maritime Museum; 35 (cl), SuperStock, (c), Tate Gallery, London/ Art Resource, NY, (bl), Fundacion Miguel Mujica Gallo, Museo do Oro del Peru, (bc), G. Tortoli/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection, Ltd., (br), Victoria & Albert Museum, London/ Art Resource, NY, (cr), David Muench/Corbis; 40 (bkgd), © Royalty Free/CORBIS; 44 SuperStock; 47 (br), © Scott Nelson/Getty Images; 49 The Granger Collection, New York; 51 (cr), PRC Archive; 52 (bl), Saint Bride Printing Library; 53 (bl), AKG-Images, (br), Mary Evans Picture Library; 54 (t), Tate Gallery, London/Art Resource, NY; 59 (br), Copyright The New York Public Library / Art Resource, NY. **Chapter 3:** Pages 68-69 (t), Ted Curtin for Plimoth Plantation, (c), Courtesy of the Pilgrim Society, Plymouth, Massachusetts; 68 (bl), © David Ball/CORBIS; 69 (br), © Culver Pictures, Inc., (bl), © SuperStock, (cr), Courtesy of the Burton Historical Collection, Detroit Public Library; 75 (t), Colonial Williamsburg Foundation; 82 (t), Art Reference: PRC Archive; 85 (b), © SuperStock; 86 (bl), Art Reference: Historical Society of Pennsylvania; 88 (l), SuperStock; 89 (t), NASA, (b), © SuperStock, Inc./SuperStock; 93 (r), Art Reference: Royal Albert Memorial Museum, Exeter, Devon, UK/ Bridgeman Art Library, (l), Private Collection, / www.bridgeman.co.uk; 94 (t), National Portrait Library, London/Bridgeman Art Library; 97 (tr), Art Reference: Courtesy of the Burton Historical Collection, Detroit Public Library; 99 (t), Virginia Historical Society; 101 (t), Peter Newark's American Pictures; 102 (tr), Courtesy of the Massachusetts Historical Society, (tl), © Hulton-Deutsch Collection/ CORBIS; 103 (tl), © Bettmann/CORBIS, (tr), American Antiquarian Society. **Chapter 4:** Pages 108-109 (t), © James Lemass/Index Stock Imagery; 108 (cl), The Granger Collection, New York; 109 (br), © Christie's Images, (cr), North Wind Picture Archives; 113 (b), © Concord Museum/Photograph by Chip Fanelli, (t), The Granger Collection, New York; 117 (br), © Robert Llewellyn/ SuperStock; 119 (br), The Granger Collection, New York, (bl), © 2003-2005 clipart.com; 120 (t), © Bettmann/CORBIS; 123 (br), The Granger Collection, New York; 127 (l), #1921.101, ©Collection of The New-York Historical Society, (r), ©Collection of The New-York Historical Society, neg. 31665; 128-129 (t), © SuperStock; 130 (r), Chateau de Versailles, France/Giraudon/ Bridgeman Art Library, (l), Saratoga National Historic Park; 131 (r), Hotel Galvez, Galveston, Texas, (l), Falmouth Art Gallery, Cornwall, UK/The Bridgeman Art Library; 132 © SuperStock, Inc. / SuperStock; 136 (t), The Granger Collection, New York; 138 The Granger Collection, New York; 148 (b), Library of Congress/PRC Archive.

Unit Two. Chapter 5: Pages 148-149 (t), © 2009 Jay Mallin; 149 (br), © Andrea Jemolo/CORBIS, (bl), © Nik Wheeler/CORBIS, (c), Collection of the American Numismatic Society, New York; 153 The Granger Collection, New York; 156 (t), © Bettmann/CORBIS, (b), © Bettmann/ CORBIS; 157 (t), © Bettmann/CORBIS, (c), © Michael Nicholson/CORBIS, (br), © Archivo Iconografico, S.A./CORBIS; 160-161 (b), The Granger Collection, New York; 163 © Dennis Degnan/CORBIS; 164 (t), Hall of Representatives, Washington, DC/ Bridgeman Art Library, (bl), Independence National Historical Park, (bc), Stock MontageStrock, (br), Portrait by Robert S. Susan, Collection of the Supreme Court of the United States; 166 (l), South Carolina Legal History Collection, (r), City of Bristol Museum and Art Gallery/ Bridgeman Art Library; 167 © Alex Wong/ Getty Images; 169 (br), American Antiquarian Society; 171 (r), © Bettmann/CORBIS, (l), Stock Montage, Inc., (bkgd), © Alan Schein Photography/CORBIS. **Chapter 6:** Pages 178-179 (t), Sam Dudgeon/HRW Photo; 179 (b), © Bettmannn/CORBIS, (cl), PRC Archive, (cr), © Tony Freeman/PhotoEdit; 185 Getty Images; 187 (bc), National Archives (NARA), (br), National Archives/PRC Archive; 192 (br), Dennis Cook/AP/Wide World Photos; 192-193 (bc), © Mark Wilson/Getty Images; 193 (br), © Brooks Kraft/CORBIS; 194 © Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 204 (bl), © Yang Liu/CORBIS, (bc), Norm Detlaff, Las Cruces Sun-News/AP/Wide World Photos; 205 (bl), ©Alex Webb/Magnum Photos, (bc), © David Young-Wolff/PhotoEdit, (br), © Bettmann/ CORBIS; 206-207 (bkgd), © Royalty-Free/ CORBIS; 209 (t), Library of Congress/PRC Archive; 211 (tr), Library of Congress; 213 (l), © Bettmann/CORBIS, 213 (r), © Oscar White/CORBIS; 214 (tr), ©1978 Matt Herron/ TakeStock, (tc), Texas State Library & Archives Commission, (tl), Dr. Hector P. Garcia Papers, Special Collections & Archives, Texas A&M University-Corpus Christi, Bell Library; 217 (b), © Daily News Pix; 219 © Spencer Grant/PhotoEdit; 220-221 (b), © Ariel Skelley/ CORBIS; 223 (t), © David Butow/CORBIS; 224 (tl), ©James Pickerell/The Image Works, (tr), © Brownie Harris/CORBIS; 225 (l), © Ariel Skelly/CORBIS, (c), Janet Knott/The Boston Globe. Republished with permission of The Globe Newspaper Company, Inc., (r), © Jeff Greenberg/PhotoEdit. **Chapter 7:** Pages 230-231 (t), © Miles Ertman/Masterfile; 230 (b), © Christie's Images; 231 (bl), Giraudon/Art Resource, NY, (r), Art Resource, NY; 235 (r), Library of Congress/PRC Archive; 237 (inset), © Collection of The New-York Historical Society, 31907.32; 240 (b), © Joseph Sohm; Chromosohm, Inc./CORBIS, (c), Photo ©2004 Roger Foley; 241 (r), Stock Montage/ Getty Images, (l), Stock Montage, Inc.; 243 (b), Réunion des Musées Nationaux/Art Resource, NY; 244 (l), Chicago Historical Society, (r), Library of Congress/PRC Archive, (c), Chicago Historical Society, #i35980aa; 245 (l), HRW Photo Research Library; 246 Courtesy Ohio Historical Society; 248 © Museum of the City of New York/CORBIS; 251 (tl), ©The New York Historical Society, New York, NY/ Bridgeman Art Library, (tc), The Art Archive/Chateau de Biernacourt/ Dagli Orti, (bl), Independence National Historical Park Collection, (bc), The Henry Luce III Center for the Study of American Culture/SuperStock, (tr), ©The New-York Historical Society, New York, NY/ Bridgeman Art Library, (br), National Portrait Gallery, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC/Art Resource, NY; 252 Library of Congress/PRC Archive.

Unit Three. Chapter 8: Pages 262-263 (t), Superstock; 262 (b), The Granger Collection, New York; 263 (cl), Benninghoff Collection of the American Revolution, (cr), Portrait of the Founder, Munetada Kurozumi. Image courtesy of Kurozumikyo Shinto, (cr), Library of Congress, LC-USZC4-6466; 267 (l), The Art Archive/Chateau de Blernacourt/Dagli Orti; (r), © Bettmann/CORBIS; (bkgd), © Alan Schein Photography/CORBIS; 269 (b), Getty Images; 270 Washington and Lee University; 275 (r), © Jeff Vanuga/CORBIS, (l), © Joseph Sohm/Chromosohm, Inc./CORBIS; 280 (l), The Mariners Museum, (r), North Wind

Picture Archives; 281 (t), North Wind Picture Archives, (br), © 1993 Mickey Osterreischer/ Black Star, (bl), The Granger Collection, New York; 282 (r), National Portrait Gallery, Smithsonian Institution; gift of Mrs. Herbert Lee Pratt, Jr, (l), ©The Field Museum, Neg #A93851.1c, Chicago; 286 (inset), © New-York Historical Society/ Bridgeman Art Library, (b), © Bettmann/CORBIS; 288 (c), © Craig Tuttle/CORBIS; 289 (tl), © Bettmann/ CORBIS, (b), © Tom Bean/Getty Images, (tr), © SuperStock. **Chapter 9:** Pages 294-295 (t), © Lee Snider/Photo Images/CORBIS; 294 (tl), National Portrait Gallery, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC/Art Resource, NY; 295 (bl), Courtesy PRC Archive, (c), Library of Congress #LC-USZC4-5801, (br), The Granger Collection, New York; 302 (b), Maryland Historical Society, Baltimore, Maryland; 303 (t), © Bettmann/CORBIS; 308 © Andre Jenny/Alamy Photos; 309 Library of Congress/PRC Archive; 310 (c), Smithsonian American Art Museum, Washington DC/Art Resource, NYSmithsonian American Art Museum, Washington DC/Art Resource, NY, (l), American Antiquarian Society; 311 (r), © Francis G. Mayer/CORBIS. **Chapter 10:** Pages 318-319 (t), Detroit Publishing Company Collection, from Birth of A Century, KEA Publishing Services Ltd.; 318 (b), The Granger Collection, New York; 319 (cl), Janice L. and David J. Frent Collection of Political Americana, (bl), The Stapleton Collection, UK/ Bridgeman Art Library, (cr), National Portrait Gallery, Smithsonian Institution/Art Resource, NY, (br), The Art Archive; 323 (r), R.W. Norton Art Gallery, Shreveport, LA. Used by permission., (l), David Young-Wolff/PhotoEdit; 325 (br), The Hermitage, Home of Andrew Jackson; 327 (l), American Museum of Textile History, (c), Christie's Images/ Bridgeman Art Library, (r), The Fine Arts Museum of San Francisco, Gift of Eleanor Martin, 37566; 330 The Granger Collection, New York; 333 © SuperStock, Inc. / SuperStock; 337 (all), Smithsonian American Art Museum, Washington, DC /Art Resource, NY. **Chapter 11:** Pages 342-343 (t), Seaver Center for Western History Research, Natural History Museum of Los Angeles County; 343 (cr), © The Oakland Museum, The City of Oakland, (br), Library of Congress, LC-USZC4-1307/PRC Archive, (cl), Panhandle-Plains Historical Museum, Research Center, Canyon, Texas; 347 (c), © Bettmann/CORBIS; 348 (t), Used by permission, Utah State Historical Society, all rights reserved.; 351 (tl), Institute of Texan Cultures, University of Texas at San Antonio (colorized); 351 (tr), Courtesy Texas General Land Office, HRW Photo by Peter Van Steen; 352 (b), Jack Lewis/TxDOT, (bl), The Center For American History, University of Texas at Austin; 355 (t), Library of Congress/PRC Archive; 356 (b), James Walker, Vaqueros in a Horse Corral, 1877, #0126.1480, From the Collection of Gilcrease Museum, Tulsa, Oklahoma.; 357 (t), Society of California Pioneers; 360-361 (t), Texas State Library and Archives Commission; 362 (t), J. Griffiths Smith/TxDOT; 365 (br), Collection of Matthew Isenburg, (bl), Collection of Matthew Isenburg; 366 (t), Courtesy of the California History Room, California State Library, Sacramento, California; 367 (tl), Seaver Center for Western History Research; 369 (t), Library of Congress. #LC-USZC4-7421; 370 (c), © George F. Mobley/Getty Images; 371 (t), © Bettmann/CORBIS, (b), © Lester Lefkowitz/CORBIS, (c), © SuperStock, Inc./ SuperStock; 375 (br), The Granger Collection, New York.

Unit Four: Pages 378-379 Tontine Coffee House, c.1797 (oil on linen), Guy, Francis (1760-1820)/© New-York Historical Society, New York, USA,/ Bridgeman Art Library. **Chapter 12:** Pages 380-381 (c), © Marilyn Root/Index Stock Imagery, Inc.; 380 (b), Fenimore Art Museum, Cooperstown, New York/Photo by Richard Walker; 381 (bl), NASA, (cr), © Southeast Museum, (cl), PRC Archive, (br), © CORBIS; 386 (l), Samuel Finley Breese Morse, Eli Whitney (1765-1825), Yale University Art Gallery. Gift of George Hoadley, B.A. 1801., (r), Museum of Connecticut History; 387 (l), Museum of Connecticut History, (r), New Haven Colony Historical Society; 388 © Bob Krist/ CORBIS; 391 Rhode Island Historical Society; 392 Jack Naylor Collection; 397 Library of Congress, Detroit Publishing Company Collection, #LC-D401-19395; 402 Museum of Connecticut History; 403 (bl), Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC (Photograph by Charles Phillips), (br), Courtesy John Deere & Company Archives; 404 (r), National Museum of American History, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC (#89-6626), (c) and (l), U.S. Patent Office. **Chapter 13:** Pages 410-411 (t), Penn School Papers, Southern Historical Collection, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Wilson Library, #P.3615/0824(A); 410 (b), National Museum of American History, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC. Photo by Kim Neilson, #83-2953; 411 (c), Library of Congress, (b), © Hulton-Deutsch Collection/CORBIS; 422 (tl), The Valentine Museum, (tr), Collection of the American Numismatic Society, New York; 425 The J. Paul Getty Museum, Los Angeles; 426-427 (t), Hauling the Whole Week's Picking by WIlliam Henry Brown, The Historic New Orleans Collection; 427 (tr), South Carolina Historical Society; 428 (tr), North Wind Picture Archives; 432 Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 435 (cl), Courtesy of the Massachusetts Historical Society, (cr), PRC Archive, (bl), Photo © David Modica, courtesy American Printing House for the Blind Museum, (br), Peter Newark's American Pictures; 437 Library of Congress; 439 (c), Wiliam B. Becker Collection/American Museum of Photography. **Chapter 14:** Pages 434-435 (t), The Metropolitan Museum of Art, Gift of I.N. Phelps Stokes, Edward S. Hawes, Alice Mary Hawes, Marion Augusta Hawes, 1937.[37.14.22]. All rights reserved, The Metropolitan Museum of Art.; 443 © Royalty-Free/CORBIS; 444 Brooklyn Museum of Art, Gift of the Brooklyn Institute of Arts and Sciences/ Bridgeman Art Library; 449 (inset), Hulton Archive/Getty Images, (b), The Granger Collection, New York; 452 Courtesy of Oberlin Archives; 453 Museum of Art, Rhode Island School of Design, Gift of Lucy T. Aldrich; 455 (t), Trustees of the Boston Public Library; 456 Library of Congress; 457 (t), Courtesy of the Levi Coffin House Association and Waynet, (b), Courtesy of The Brooklyn Museum of Art [40.59]; 458 Library of Congress; 459 Courtesy of the Massachusetts Historical Society; 460 (r), Library of Congress, Manuscript Division; 462 (l), Courtesy of the Massachusetts Historical Society, (r), The Granger Collection, New York; 463 (l), Courtesy of the Susan B. Anthony House, Rochester, NY, (r), Library of Congress/PRC Archive; 465 Stock Montage, Inc.; 466 © Bettmann/CORBIS; 467 (r), © 1973 Historical Documents Co. Harcourt Photo by Maria Paraskevas.; 470 Sam Dudgeon/HRW; 471 © CORBIS. **Chapter 15:** Pages 472-473 (t), © Dave G. Houser; 473 (bl), The Art Archive/Private Collection/Dagli Orti, (br), India Office Library & Records,

The British Library, (cr), Chicago Historical Society, (cl), PRC Archive; 478 (b), PRC Archive; 480 (t), The J. Paul Getty Museum, Los Angeles.; 483 (b), Library of Congress, LC-USZ62-92043; 486 (b), Kansas State Historical Society, Topeka, Kansas; 487 (t), The Granger Collection, New York; 489 (b), Missouri Historical Society, (cl), Getty Images; 491 (tr), Library of Congress/PRC Archive; 492 (t), The Museum of American Political Life, University of Hartford, West Hartford, CT.; 494 (t), Ohio Historical Society; 496 (b), Boston Athenaeum.

Unit 5: Pages 504-505 Historical Art Prints; **Chapter 16:** Pages 506-507 (t), Library of Congress, Brady Civil War Photo Collection, #LC-B8171-7514; 506 (b), Confederate Museum, United Daughters of the Confederacy; 507 (b), Chicago Historical Society, # i26736aa, (cl), © SuperStock, (cr), © SuperStock; 518-519 (b), National Park Service; 519 (br), Library of Congress/PRC Archive; 520 (t), Library of Congress/ PRC Archive; 524 (b), © 1989, The Greenwich Workshop, Inc., Reproduced with the permission of the Greenwich Workshop, Inc., Shelton, CT; 528 (b), SuperStock; 529 (b), South Carolina Historical Society; 530 (inset), Courtesy of the Massachusetts Historical Society, (t), Library of Congress; 532 (b), © Bettmann/CORBIS; 533 (t), National Museum of American History, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, DC (ID#84-9312), (b), © REUTERS/Kai Pfaffenbach/CORBIS; 534 (t), American Antiquarian Society; 543 (t), © SuperStock; 544 (t), The Granger Collection, New York. **Chapter 17:** Pages 548-549 (t), © Paul Rocheleau; 548 (b), © Kean Collection/Getty Images; 549 (bl), © Michael Maslan Historic Photographs/CORBIS, (cr), Herbert F. Johnson Museum of Art, Cornell University, (cl), The Granger Collection, New York; 552-553 (b), National Archives (NARA); 554-555 (t), Library of Congress; 554 (inset), Chicago Historical Society; 555 (t), University of Texas at El Paso Library, Special Collections Department, Ada Tharp Photograph Collection.; 556 (b), © William Gladstone Collection; 559 (b), Library of Congress, #LC-USZ62-43958; 560 (l), Library of Congress, (r), © CORBIS; 562 (b), North Wind Picture Archives; 565 (t), Library of Congress, (b), Library of Congress; 566 (r), The Granger Collection, New York, (l), Tennessee State Museum Collection. Photography by June Dorman; 568 (t), Getty Images; 570 (t), Courtesy of The Charleston Renaissance Gallery, Robert M. Hicklin, Jr. Inc., Charleston, South Carolina; 571 © Bettmann/CORBIS.

Back Matter: Pages R0-R1: (bkgd) © Royalty-free/CORBIS; R25-R29, Presidents #1-42: White House Historical Association (White House Collection); R29 (bc) The White House, photo by Eric Draper; (br) © Pete Souza; R32, © PhotoDisc/Getty Images; R33, The Granger Collection, New York; R35, Toom Brakefield/ Digital Vision/Getty Images.

Staff Credits. The people who contributed to ***Holt McDougal United States History and New York History: Beginnings to 1877*** are listed below. They represent editorial, design, intellectual property resources, production, emedia, and permissions. Lissa B. Anderson, Charles Becker, Ed Blake, Gillian Brody, Erin Cornett, Michelle Dike, Mescal Evler, Leanna Ford, Bob Fullilove, Rhonda Haynes, Wilonda Ieans, Cathy Jenevein, Shannon Johnston, Cathy Kuhles, Debbie Lofland, Bob McClellan, Joe Melomo, Richard Metzger, Mercedes Newman, Holly Norman, Nathan O'Neal, Karl Pallmeyer, Shelly Ramos, Gene Rumann, Kay Selke, Ken Shepardson, Michele Shukers, Chris Smith, Jeannie Taylor, Joni Wackwitz, Ken Whiteside, Nadyne Wood